ISSN 1007-9327 (print)
ISSN 2219-2840 (online)

World Journal of *Gastroenterology*

World J Gastroenterol 2016 February 21; 22(7): 2159-2402

Published by Baishideng Publishing Group Inc

World Journal of Gastroenterology

A peer-reviewed, online, open-access journal of gastroenterology and hepatology

Editorial Board

2014-2017

The *World Journal of Gastroenterology* Editorial Board consists of 1376 members, representing a team of worldwide experts in gastroenterology and hepatology. They are from 68 countries, including Algeria (2), Argentina (7), Australia (31), Austria (9), Belgium (11), Brazil (20), Brunei Darussalam (1), Bulgaria (2), Cambodia (1), Canada (26), Chile (4), China (164), Croatia (2), Cuba (1), Czech (6), Denmark (2), Egypt (9), Estonia (2), Finland (6), France (20), Germany (58), Greece (31), Guatemala (1), Hungary (15), Iceland (1), India (33), Indonesia (2), Iran (10), Ireland (9), Israel (18), Italy (194), Japan (149), Jordan (1), Kuwait (1), Lebanon (7), Lithuania (1), Malaysia (1), Mexico (11), Morocco (1), Netherlands (5), New Zealand (4), Nigeria (3), Norway (6), Pakistan (6), Poland (12), Portugal (8), Puerto Rico (1), Qatar (1), Romania (10), Russia (3), Saudi Arabia (2), Singapore (7), Slovenia (2), South Africa (1), South Korea (69), Spain (51), Sri Lanka (1), Sudan (1), Sweden (12), Switzerland (5), Thailand (7), Trinidad and Tobago (1), Tunisia (2), Turkey (55), United Kingdom (49), United States (180), Venezuela (1), and Vietnam (1).

Gordon Stanley Howarth, *Roseworthy*
Seungha Kang, *Brisbane*
Alfred King Lam, *Gold Coast*
Ian C Lawrance, *PerthFremantle*
Barbara Anne Leggett, *Brisbane*
Daniel A Lemberg, *Sydney*
Rupert W Leong, *Sydney*
Finlay A Macrae, *Victoria*
Vance Matthews, *Melbourne*
David L Morris, *Sydney*
Reme Mountifield, *Bedford Park*
Hans J Netter, *Melbourne*
Nam Q Nguyen, *Adelaide*
Liang Qiao, *Westmead*
Rajvinder Singh, *Adelaide*
Ross Cyril Smith, *StLeonards*
Kevin J Spring, *Sydney*
Debbie Trinder, *Fremantle*
Daniel R van Langenberg, *Box Hill*
David Ian Watson, *Adelaide*
Desmond Yip, *Garran*
Li Zhang, *Sydney*

Austria

Felix Aigner, *Innsbruck*
Gabriela A Berlakovich, *Vienna*
Herwig R Cerwenka, *Graz*
Peter Ferenci, *Wien*
Alfred Gangl, *Vienna*
Kurt Lenz, *Linz*
Markus Peck-Radosavljevic, *Vienna*
Markus Raderer, *Vienna*
Stefan Riss, *Vienna*

Belgium

Michael George Adler, *Brussels*
Benedicte Y De Winter, *Antwerp*
Mark De Ridder, *Jette*
Olivier Detry, *Liege*
Denis Dufrane Dufrane, *Brussels*
Sven M Francque, *Edegem*
Nikos Kotzampassakis, *Liège*
Geert KMM Robaeys, *Genk*
Xavier Sagaert, *Leuven*
Peter Starkel, *Brussels*
Eddie Wisse, *Keerbergen*

Brazil

SMP Balzan, *Santa Cruz do Sul*
JLF Caboclo, *Sao jose do rio preto*
Fábio Guilherme Campos, *Sao Paulo*
Claudia RL Cardoso, *Rio de Janeiro*
Roberto J Carvalho-Filho, *Sao Paulo*
Carla Daltro, *Salvador*
José Sebastiao dos Santos, *Ribeirao Preto*
Eduardo LR Mello, *Rio de Janeiro*
Sthela Maria Murad-Regadas, *Fortaleza*
Claudia PMS Oliveira, *Sao Paulo*
Júlio C Pereira-Lima, *Porto Alegre*
Marcos V Perini, *Sao Paulo*
Vietla Satyanarayana Rao, *Fortaleza*
Raquel Rocha, *Salvador*
AC Simoes e Silva, *Belo Horizonte*
Mauricio F Silva, *Porto Alefre*
Aytan Miranda Sipahi, *Sao Paulo*
Rosa Leonôra Salerno Soares, *Niterói*
Cristiane Valle Tovo, *Porto Alegre*
Eduardo Garcia Vilela, *Belo Horizonte*

Brunei Darussalam

Vui Heng Chong, *Bandar Seri Begawan*

Bulgaria

Tanya Kirilova Kadiyska, *Sofia*
Mihaela Petrova, *Sofia*

Cambodia

Francois Rouet, *Phnom Penh*

Canada

Brian Bressler, *Vancouver*
Frank J Burczynski, *Winnipeg*
Wangxue Chen, *Ottawa*
Francesco Crea, *Vancouver*
Mirko Diksic, *Montreal*
Jane A Foster, *Hamilton*
Hugh J Freeman, *Vancouver*
Shahrokh M Ghobadloo, *Ottawa*
Yuewen Gong, *Winnipeg*
Philip H Gordon, *Quebec*
Rakesh Kumar, *Edmonton*
Wolfgang A Kunze, *Hamilton*
Patrick Labonte, *Laval*
Zhikang Peng, *Winnipeg*
Jayadev Raju, *Ottawa*
Maitreyi Raman, *Calgary*
Giada Sebastiani, *Montreal*
Maida J Sewitch, *Montreal*
Eldon A Shaffer, *Alberta*
Christopher W Teshima, *Edmonton*
Jean Sévigny, *Québec*
Pingchang Yang, *Hamilton*
Pingchang Yang, *Hamilton*
Eric M Yoshida, *Vancouver*
Bin Zheng, *Edmonton*

Chile

Marcelo A Beltran, *La Serena*
Flavio Nervi, *Santiago*
Adolfo Parra-Blanco, *Santiago*
Alejandro Soza, *Santiago*

China

Zhao-Xiang Bian, *Hong Kong*
San-Jun Cai, *Shanghai*
Guang-Wen Cao, *Shanghai*
Long Chen, *Nanjing*
Ru-Fu Chen, *Guangzhou*
George G Chen, *Hong Kong*
Li-Bo Chen, *Wuhan*
Jia-Xu Chen, *Beijing*
Hong-Song Chen, *Beijing*
Lin Chen, *Beijing*
Yang-Chao Chen, *Hong Kong*
Zhen Chen, *Shanghai*
Ying-Sheng Cheng, *Shanghai*
Kent-Man Chu, *Hong Kong*
Zhi-Jun Dai, *Xi'an*
Jing-Yu Deng, *Tianjin*
Yi-Qi Du, *Shanghai*
Zhi Du, *Tianjin*
Hani El-Nezami, *Hong Kong*
Bao-Ying Fei, *Hangzhou*
Chang-Ming Gao, *Nanjing*
Jian-Ping Gong, *Chongqing*
Zuo-Jiong Gong, *Wuhan*
Jing-Shan Gong, *Shenzhen*
Guo-Li Gu, *Beijing*
Yong-Song Guan, *Chengdu*
Mao-Lin Guo, *Luoyang*
Jun-Ming Guo, *Ningbo*
Yan-Mei Guo, *Shanghai*
Xiao-Zhong Guo, *Shenyang*
Guo-Hong Han, *Xi'an*
Ming-Liang He, *Hong Kong*
Peng Hou, *Xi'an*
Zhao-Hui Huang, *Wuxi*
Feng Ji, *Hangzhou*
Simon Law, *Hong Kong*
Yu-Yuan Li, *Guangzhou*
Meng-Sen Li, *Haikou*
Shu-De Li, *Shanghai*
Zong-Fang Li, *Xi'an*
Qing-Quan Li, *Shanghai*
Kang Li, *Lasa*
Han Liang, *Tianjin*
Xing'e Liu, *Hangzhou*
Zheng-Wen Liu, *Xi'an*
Xiao-Fang Liu, *Yantai*
Bin Liu, *Tianjin*
Quan-Da Liu, *Beijing*
Hai-Feng Liu, *Beijing*
Fei Liu, *Shanghai*
Ai-Guo Lu, *Shanghai*
He-Sheng Luo, *Wuhan*
Xiao-Peng Ma, *Shanghai*
Yong Meng, *Shantou*
Ke-Jun Nan, *Xi'an*
Siew Chien Ng, *Hong Kong*
Simon SM Ng, *Hong Kong*
Zhao-Shan Niu, *Qingdao*
Di Qu, *Shanghai*
Ju-Wei Mu, *Beijing*
Rui-Hua Shi, *Nanjing*
Bao-Min Shi, *Shanghai*
Xiao-Dong Sun, *Hangzhou*
Si-Yu Sun, *Shenyang*
Guang-Hong Tan, *Haikou*
Wen-Fu Tang, *Chengdu*
Anthony YB Teoh, *Hong Kong*
Wei-Dong Tong, *Chongqing*
Eric Tse, *Hong Kong*
Hong Tu, *Shanghai*

Rong Tu, *Haikou*
Jian-She Wang, *Shanghai*
Kai Wang, *Jinan*
Xiao-Ping Wang, *Xianyang*
Xiu-Yan Wang, *Shanghai*
Dao-Rong Wang, *Yangzhou*
De-Sheng Wang, *Xi'an*
Chun-You Wang, *Wuhan*
Ge Wang, *Chongqing*
Xi-Shan Wang, *Harbin*
Wei-hong Wang, *Beijing*
Zhen-Ning Wang, *Shenyang*
Wai Man Raymond Wong, *Hong Kong*
Chun-Ming Wong, *Hong Kong*
Jian Wu, *Shanghai*
Sheng-Li Wu, *Xi'an*
Wu-Jun Wu, *Xi'an*
Qing Xia, *Chengdu*
Yan Xin, *Shenyang*
Dong-Ping Xu, *Beijing*
Jian-Min Xu, *Shanghai*
Wei Xu, *Changchun*
Ming Yan, *Jinan*
Xin-Min Yan, *Kunming*
Yi-Qun Yan, *Shanghai*
Feng Yang, *Shanghai*
Yong-Ping Yang, *Beijing*
He-Rui Yao, *Guangzhou*
Thomas Yau, *Hong Kong*
Winnie Yeo, *Hong Kong*
Jing You, *Kunming*
Jian-Qing Yu, *Wuhan*
Ying-Yan Yu, *Shanghai*
Wei-Zheng Zeng, *Chengdu*
Zong-Ming Zhang, *Beijing*
Dian-Liang Zhang, *Qingdao*
Ya-Ping Zhang, *Shijiazhuang*
You-Cheng Zhang, *Lanzhou*
Jian-Zhong Zhang, *Beijing*
Ji-Yuan Zhang, *Beijing*
Hai-Tao Zhao, *Beijing*
Jian Zhao, *Shanghai*
Jian-Hong Zhong, *Nanning*
Ying-Qiang Zhong, *Guangzhou*
Ping-Hong Zhou, *Shanghai*
Yan-Ming Zhou, *Xiamen*
Tong Zhou, *Nanchong*
Li-Ming Zhou, *Chengdu*
Guo-Xiong Zhou, *Nantong*
Feng-Shang Zhu, *Shanghai*
Jiang-Fan Zhu, *Shanghai*
Zhao-Hui Zhu, *Beijing*

Croatia
Tajana Filipec Kanizaj, *Zagreb*
Mario Tadic, *Zagreb*

Cuba
Damian Casadesus, *Havana*

Czech
Jan Bures, *Hradec Kralove*
Marcela Kopacova, *Hradec Kralove*
Otto Kucera, *Hradec Kralove*
Marek Minarik, *Prague*
Pavel Soucek, *Prague*
Miroslav Zavoral, *Prague*

Denmark
Vibeke Andersen, *Odense*
E Michael Danielsen, *Copenhagen*

Egypt
Mohamed MM Abdel-Latif, *Assiut*
Hussein Atta, *Cairo*
Ashraf Elbahrawy, *Cairo*
Mortada Hassan El-Shabrawi, *Cairo*
Mona El Said El-Raziky, *Cairo*
Elrashdy M Redwan, *New Borg Alrab*
Zeinab Nabil Ahmed Said, *Cairo*
Ragaa HM Salama, *Assiut*
Maha Maher Shehata, *Mansoura*

Estonia
Margus Lember, *Tartu*
Tamara Vorobjova, *Tartu*

Finland
Marko Kalliomäki, *Turku*
Thomas Kietzmann, *Oulu*
Kaija-Leena Kolho, *Helsinki*
Eija Korkeila, *Turku*
Heikki Makisalo, *Helsinki*
Tanja Pessi, *Tampere*

France
Armando Abergel Clermont, *Ferrand*
Elie K Chouillard, *Polssy*
Pierre Cordelier, *Toulouse*
Pascal P Crenn, *Garches*
Catherine Daniel, *Lille*
Fanny Daniel, *Paris*
Cedric Dray, *Toulouse*
Benoit Foligne, *Lille*
Jean-Noel Freund, *Strasbourg*
Hervé Guillou, *Toulouse*
Nathalie Janel, *Paris*
Majid Khatib, *Bordeaux*
Jacques Marescaux, *Strasbourg*
Jean-Claude Marie, *Paris*
Driffa Moussata, *Pierre Benite*
Hang Nguyen, *Clermont-Ferrand*
Hugo Perazzo, *Paris*
Alain L Servin, *Chatenay-Malabry*
Chang Xian Zhang, *Lyon*

Germany
Stavros A Antoniou, *Monchengladbach*
Erwin Biecker, *Siegburg*
Hubert E Blum, *Freiburg*
Thomas Bock, *Berlin*
Katja Breitkopf-Heinlein, *Mannheim*
Elke Cario, *Essen*
Güralp Onur Ceyhan, *Munich*
Angel Cid-Arregui, *Heidelberg*
Michael Clemens Roggendorf, *München*
Christoph F Dietrich, *Bad Mergentheim*
Valentin Fuhrmann, *Hamburg*
Nikolaus Gassler, *Aachen*
Andreas Geier, *Wuerzburg*
Markus Gerhard, *Munich*
Anton Gillessen, *Muenster*
Thorsten Oliver Goetze, *Offenbach*
Daniel Nils Gotthardt, *Heidelberg*
Robert Grützmann, *Dresden*
Thilo Hackert, *Heidelberg*
Claus Hellerbrand, *Regensburg*
Harald Peter Hoensch, *Darmstadt*
Jens Hoeppner, *Freiburg*
Richard Hummel, *Muenster*
Jakob Robert Izbicki, *Hamburg*
Gernot Maximilian Kaiser, *Essen*
Matthias Kapischke, *Hamburg*
Michael Keese, *Frankfurt*
Andrej Khandoga, *Munich*
Jorg Kleeff, *Munich*
Alfred Koenigsrainer, *Tuebingen*
Peter Christopher Konturek, *Saalfeld*
Michael Linnebacher, *Rostock*
Stefan Maier, *Kaufbeuren*
Oliver Mann, *Hamburg*
Marc E Martignoni, *Munic*
Thomas Minor, *Bonn*
Oliver Moeschler, *Osnabrueck*
Jonas Mudter, *Eutin*
Sebastian Mueller, *Heidelberg*
Matthias Ocker, *Berlin*
Andreas Ommer, *Essen*
Albrecht Piiper, *Frankfurt*
Esther Raskopf, *Bonn*
Christoph Reichel, *Bad Brückenau*
Elke Roeb, *Giessen*
Udo Rolle, *Frankfurt*
Karl-Herbert Schafer, *Zweibrücken*
Peter Schemmer, *Heidelberg*
Andreas G Schreyer, *Regensburg*
Manuel A Silva, *Penzberg*
Georgios C Sotiropoulos, *Essen*
Ulrike S Stein, *Berlin*
Dirk Uhlmann, *Leipzig*
Michael Weiss, *Halle*
Hong-Lei Weng, *Mannheim*
Karsten Wursthorn, *Hamburg*

Greece
Alexandra Alexopoulou, *Athens*
Nikolaos Antonakopoulos, *Athens*
Stelios F Assimakopoulos, *Patras*
Grigoris Chatzimavroudis, *Thessaloniki*
Evangelos Cholongitas, *Thessaloniki*
Gregory Christodoulidis, *Larisa*
George N Dalekos, *Larissa*
Urania Georgopoulou, *Athens*
Eleni Gigi, *Thessaloniki*

Stavros Gourgiotis, *Athens*
Leontios J Hadjileontiadis, *Thessaloniki*
Thomas Hyphantis, *Ioannina*
Ioannis Kanellos, *Thessaloniki*
Stylianos Karatapanis, *Rhodes*
Michael Koutsilieris, *Athens*
Spiros D Ladas, *Athens*
Theodoros K Liakakos, *Athens*
Emanuel K Manesis, *Athens*
Spilios Manolakopoulos, *Athens*
Gerassimos John Mantzaris, *Athens*
Athanasios D Marinis, *Piraeus*
Nikolaos Ioannis Nikiteas, *Athens*
Konstantinos X Papamichael, *Athens*
George Sgourakis, *Athens*
Konstantinos C Thomopoulos, *Patras*
Konstantinos Triantafyllou, *Athens*
Christos Triantos, *Patras*
Georgios Zacharakis, *Athens*
Petros Zezos, *Alexandroupolis*
Demosthenes E Ziogas, *Ioannina*

Guatemala

Carlos Maria Parellada, *Guatemala*

Hungary

Mihaly Boros, *Szeged*
Tamás Decsi, *Pécs*
Gyula Farkas, *Szeged*
Andrea Furka, *Debrecen*
Y vette Mandi, *Szeged*
Peter L Lakatos, *Budapest*
Pal Miheller, *Budapest*
Tamás Molnar, *Szeged*
Attila Olah, *Gyor*
Maria Papp, *Debrecen*
Zoltan Rakonczay, *Szeged*
Ferenc Sipos, *Budapest*
Miklós Tanyi, *Debrecen*
Tibor Wittmann, *Szeged*

Iceland

Tryggvi Bjorn Stefánsson, *Reykjavík*

India

Brij B Agarwal, *New Delhi*
Deepak N Amarapurkar, *Mumbai*
Shams ul Bari, *Srinagar*
Sriparna Basu, *Varanasi*
Runu Chakravarty, *Kolkata*
Devendra C Desai, *Mumbai*
Nutan D Desai, *Mumbai*
Suneela Sunil Dhaneshwar, *Pune*
Radha K Dhiman, *Chandigarh*
Pankaj Garg, *Mohali*
Uday C Ghoshal, *Lucknow*
Kalpesh Jani, *Vadodara*
Premashis Kar, *New Delhi*
Jyotdeep Kaur, *Chandigarh*
Rakesh Kochhar, *Chandigarh*
Pradyumna K Mishra, *Mumbai*
Asish K Mukhopadhyay, *Kolkata*
Imtiyaz Murtaza, *Srinagar*
P Nagarajan, *New Delhi*
Samiran Nundy, *Delhi*
Gopal Pande, *Hyderabad*
Benjamin Perakath, *Vellore*
Arun Prasad, *New Delhi*
D Nageshwar Reddy, *Hyderabad*
Lekha Saha, *Chandigarh*
Sundeep Singh Saluja, *New Delhi*
Mahesh Prakash Sharma, *New Delhi*
Sadiq Saleem Sikora, *Bangalore*
Sarman Singh, *New Delhi*
Rajeev Sinha, *Jhansi*
Rupjyoti Talukdar, *Hyderabad*
Rakesh Kumar Tandon, *New Delhi*
Narayanan Thirumoorthy, *Coimbatore*

Indonesia

David Handojo Muljono, *Jakarta*
Andi Utama, *Jakarta*

Iran

Arezoo Aghakhani, *Tehran*
Seyed Mohsen Dehghani, *Shiraz*
Ahad Eshraghian, *Shiraz*
Hossein Khedmat, *Tehran*
Sadegh Massarrat, *Tehran*
Marjan Mohammadi, *Tehran*
Roja Rahimi, *Tehran*
Farzaneh Sabahi, *Tehran*
Majid Sadeghizadeh, *Tehran*
Farideh Siavoshi, *Tehran*

Ireland

Gary Alan Bass, *Dublin*
David J Brayden, *Dublin*
Ronan A Cahill, *Dublin*
Glen A Doherty, *Dublin*
Liam J Fanning, *Cork*
Barry Philip McMahon, *Dublin*
RossMcManus, *Dublin*
Dervla O'Malley, *Cork*
Sinead M Smith, *Dublin*

Israel

Dan Carter, *Ramat Gan*
Jorge-Shmuel Delgado, *Metar*
Eli Magen, *Ashdod*
Nitsan Maharshak, *Tel Aviv*
Shaul Mordechai, *Beer Sheva*
Menachem Moshkowitz, *Tel Aviv*
William Bahij Nseir, *Nazareth*
Shimon Reif, *Jerusalem*
Ram Reifen, *Rehovot*
Ariella Bar-Gil Shitrit, *Jerusalem*
Noam Shussman, *Jerusalem*
Igor Sukhotnik, *Haifa*
Nir Wasserberg, *Petach Tiqwa*
Jacob Yahav, *Rehovot*
Doron Levi Zamir, *Gedera*
Shira Zelber-Sagi, *Haifa*
Romy Zemel, *Petach-Tikva*

Italy

Ludovico Abenavoli, *Catanzaro*
Luigi Elio Adinolfi, *Naples*
Carlo Virginio Agostoni, *Milan*
Anna Alisi, *Rome*
Piero Luigi Almasio, *Palermo*
Donato Francesco Altomare, *Bari*
Amedeo Amedei, *Florence*
Pietro Andreone, *Bologna*
Imerio Angriman, *Padova*
Vito Annese, *Florence*
Paolo Aurello, *Rome*
Salavtore Auricchio, *Naples*
Gian Luca Baiocchi, *Brescia*
Gianpaolo Balzano, *Milan*
Antonio Basoli, *Rome*
Gabrio Bassotti, *San Sisto*
Mauro Bernardi, *Bologna*
Alberto Biondi, *Rome*
Ennio Biscaldi, *Genova*
Massimo Bolognesi, *Padua*
Luigi Bonavina, *Milano*
Aldo Bove, *Chieti*
Raffaele Bruno, *Pavia*
Luigi Brusciano, *Napoli*
Giuseppe Cabibbo, *Palermo*
Carlo Calabrese, *Bologna*
Daniele Calistri, *Meldola*
Vincenza Calvaruso, *Palermo*
Lorenzo Camellini, *Reggio Emilia*
Marco Candela, *Bologna*
Raffaele Capasso, *Naples*
Lucia Carulli, *Modena*
Renato David Caviglia, *Rome*
Luigina Cellini, *Chieti*
Giuseppe Chiarioni, *Verona*
Claudio Chiesa, *Rome*
Michele Cicala, *Roma*
Rachele Ciccocioppo, *Pavia*
Sandro Contini, *Parma*
Gaetano Corso, *Foggia*
Renato Costi, *Parma*
Alessandro Cucchetti, *Bologna*
Rosario Cuomo, *Napoli*
Giuseppe Currò, *Messina*
Paola De Nardi, *Milano*
Giovanni D De Palma, *Naples*
Raffaele De Palma, *Napoli*
Giuseppina De Petro, *Brescia*
Valli De Re, *Aviano*
Paolo De Simone, *Pisa*
Giuliana Decorti, *Trieste*
Emanuele Miraglia del Giudice, *Napoli*
Isidoro Di Carlo, *Catania*
Matteo Nicola Dario Di Minno, *Naples*
Massimo Donadelli, *Verona*
Mirko D'Onofrio, *Verona*
Maria Pina Dore, *Sassari*
Luca Elli, *Milano*
Massimiliano Fabozzi, *Aosta*

Massimo Falconi, *Ancona*
Ezio Falletto, *Turin*
Silvia Fargion, *Milan*
Matteo Fassan, *Verona*
Gianfranco Delle Fave, *Roma*
Alessandro Federico, *Naples*
Francesco Feo, *Sassari*
Davide Festi, *Bologna*
Natale Figura, *Siena*
Vincenzo Formica, *Rome*
Mirella Fraquelli, *Milan*
Marzio Frazzoni, *Modena*
Walter Fries, *Messina*
Gennaro Galizia, *Naples*
Andrea Galli, *Florence*
Matteo Garcovich, *Rome*
Eugenio Gaudio, *Rome*
Paola Ghiorzo, *Genoa*
Edoardo G Giannini, *Genova*
Luca Gianotti, *Monza*
Maria Cecilia Giron, *Padova*
Alberto Grassi, *Rimini*
Gabriele Grassi, *Trieste*
Francesco Greco, *Bergamo*
Luigi Greco, *Naples*
Antonio Grieco, *Rome*
Fabio Grizzi, *Rozzano*
Laurino Grossi, *Pescara*
Simone Guglielmetti, *Milan*
Tiberiu Hershcovici, *Jerusalem*
Calogero Iacono, *Verona*
Enzo Ierardi, *Bari*
Amedeo Indriolo, *Bergamo*
Raffaele Iorio, *Naples*
Paola Iovino, *Salerno*
Angelo A Izzo, *Naples*
Loreta Kondili, *Rome*
Filippo La Torre, *Rome*
Giuseppe La Torre, *Rome*
Giovanni Latella, *L'Aquila*
Salvatore Leonardi, *Catania*
Massimo Libra, *Catania*
Anna Licata, *Palermo*
C armela Loguercio, *Naples*
Amedeo Lonardo, *Modena*
Carmelo Luigiano, *Catania*
Francesco Luzza, *Catanzaro*
Giovanni Maconi, *Milano*
Antonio Macrì, *Messina*
Mariano Malaguarnera, *Catania*
Francesco Manguso, *Napoli*
Tommaso Maria Manzia, *Rome*
Daniele Marrelli, *Siena*
Gabriele Masselli, *Rome*
Sara Massironi, *Milan*
Giuseppe Mazzarella, *Avellino*
Michele Milella, *Rome*
Giovanni Milito, *Rome*
Antonella d'Arminio Monforte, *Milan*
Fabrizio Montecucco, *Genoa*
Giovanni Monteleone, *Rome*
Mario Morino, *Torino*
Vincenzo La Mura, *Milan*
Gerardo Nardone, *Naples*
Riccardo Nascimbeni, *Brescia*
Gabriella Nesi, *Florence*
Giuseppe Nigri, *Rome*
Erica Novo, *Turin*
Veronica Ojetti, *Rome*
Michele Orditura, *Naples*
Fabio Pace, *Seriate*
Lucia Pacifico, *Rome*
Omero Alessandro Paoluzi, *Rome*
Valerio Pazienza, *San Giovanni Rotondo*
Rinaldo Pellicano, *Turin*
Adriano M Pellicelli, *Rome*
Nadia Peparini, *Ciampino*
Mario Pescatori, *Rome*
Antonio Picardi, *Rome*
Alberto Pilotto, *Padova*
Alberto Piperno, *Monza*
Anna Chiara Piscaglia, *Rome*
Maurizio Pompili, *Rome*
Francesca Romana Ponziani, *Rome*
Cosimo Prantera, *Rome*
Girolamo Ranieri, *Bari*
Carlo Ratto, *Tome*
Barbara Renga, *Perugia*
Alessandro Repici, *Rozzano*
Maria Elena Riccioni, *Rome*
Lucia Ricci-Vitiani, *Rome*
Luciana Rigoli, *Messina*
Mario Rizzetto, *Torino*
Ballarin Roberto, *Modena*
Roberto G Romanelli, *Florence*
Claudio Romano, *Messina*
Luca Roncucci, *Modena*
Cesare Ruffolo, *Treviso*
L ucia Sacchetti, *Napoli*
Rodolfo Sacco, *Pisa*
Lapo Sali, *Florence*
Romina Salpini, *Rome*
Giulio Aniello, *Santoro Treviso*
Armando Santoro, *Rozzano*
Edoardo Savarino, *Padua*
Marco Senzolo, *Padua*
Annalucia Serafino, *Rome*
Giuseppe S Sica, *Rome*
Pierpaolo Sileri, *Rome*
Cosimo Sperti, *Padua*
Vincenzo Stanghellini, *Bologna*
Cristina Stasi, *Florence*
Gabriele Stocco, *Trieste*
Roberto Tarquini, *Florence*
Mario Testini, *Bari*
Guido Torzilli, *Milan*
Guido Alberto Massimo, *Tiberio Brescia*
Giuseppe Toffoli, *Aviano*
Alberto Tommasini, *Trieste*
Francesco Tonelli, *Florence*
Cesare Tosetti Porretta, *Terme*
Lucio Trevisani, *Cona*
Guglielmo M Trovato, *Catania*
Mariapia Vairetti, *Pavia*
Luca Vittorio Valenti, *Milano*
Mariateresa T Ventura, *Bari*
Giuseppe Verlato, *Verona*
Marco Vivarelli, *Ancona*
Giovanni Li Volti, *Catania*
Giuseppe Zanotti, *Padua*
Vincenzo Zara, *Lecce*
Gianguglielmo Zehender, *Milan*
Anna Linda Zignego, *Florence*
Rocco Antonio Zoccali, *Messina*
Angelo Zullo, *Rome*

Japan

Yasushi Adachi, *Sapporo*
Takafumi Ando, *Nagoya*
Masahiro Arai, *Tokyo*
Makoto Arai, *Chiba*
Takaaki Arigami, *Kagoshima*
Itaru Endo,*Yokohama*
Munechika Enjoji, *Fukuoka*
Shunji Fujimori, *Tokyo*
Yasuhiro Fujino, *Akashi*
Toshiyoshi Fujiwara, *Okayama*
Yosuke Fukunaga, *Tokyo*
Toshio Fukusato, *Tokyo*
Takahisa Furuta, *Hamamatsu*
Osamu Handa, *Kyoto*
Naoki Hashimoto, *Osaka*
Yoichi Hiasa, *Toon*
Masatsugu Hiraki, *Saga*
Satoshi Hirano, *Sapporo*
Keiji Hirata, *Fukuoka*
Toru Hiyama, *Higashihiroshima*
Akira Hokama, *Nishihara*
Shu Hoteya, *Tokyo*
Masao Ichinose, *Wakayama*
Tatsuya Ide, *Kurume*
Masahiro Iizuka, *Akita*
Toshiro Iizuka, *Tokyo*
Kenichi Ikejima, *Tokyo*
Tetsuya Ikemoto, *Tokushima*
Hiroyuki Imaeda, *Saitama*
Atsushi Imagawa, *Kan-onji*
Hiroo Imazu, *Tokyo*
Shuji Isaji, *Tsu*
Toru Ishikawa, *Niigata*
Toshiyuki Ishiwata, *Tokyo*
Soichi Itaba, *Kitakyushu*
Yoshiaki Iwasaki, *Okayama*
Tatehiro Kagawa, *Isehara*
Satoru Kakizaki, *Maebashi*
Naomi Kakushima, *Shizuoka*
Terumi Kamisawa, *Tokyo*
Akihide Kamiya, *Isehara*
Osamu Kanauchi, *Tokyo*
Tatsuo Kanda, *Chiba*
Shin Kariya, *Okayama*
Shigeyuki Kawa, *Matsumoto*
Takumi Kawaguchi, *Kurume*
Takashi Kawai, *Tokyo*
Soo Ryang Kim, *Kobe*
Shinsuke Kiriyama, *Gunma*
Tsuneo Kitamura, *Urayasu*
Masayuki Kitano, *Osakasayama*
Hirotoshi Kobayashi, *Tokyo*
Hironori Koga, *Kurume*
Takashi Kojima, *Sapporo*
Satoshi Kokura, *Kyoto*
Shuhei Komatsu, *Kyoto*
Tadashi Kondo, *Tokyo*
Yasuteru Kondo, *Sendai*
Yasuhiro Kuramitsu, *Yamaguchi*
Yukinori Kurokawa, *Osaka*
Shin Maeda, *Yokohama*
Koutarou Maeda, *Toyoake*

Hitoshi Maruyama, *Chiba*
Atsushi Masamune, *Sendai*
Hiroyuki Matsubayashi, *Suntogun*
Akihisa Matsuda, *Inzai*
Hirofumi Matsui, *Tsukuba*
Akira Matsumori, *Kyoto*
Yoichi Matsuo, *Nagoya*
Y Matsuzaki, *Ami*
Toshihiro Mitaka, *Sapporo*
Kouichi Miura, *Akita*
Shinichi Miyagawa, *Matumoto*
Eiji Miyoshi, *Suita*
Toru Mizuguchi, *Sapporo*
Nobumasa Mizuno, *Nagoya*
Zenichi Morise, *Nagoya*
Tomohiko Moriyama, *Fukuoka*
Kunihiko Murase, *Tusima*
Michihiro Mutoh, *Tsukiji*
Akihito Nagahara, *Tokyo*
Hikaru Nagahara, *Tokyo*
Hidenari Nagai, *Tokyo*
Koichi Nagata, *Shimotsuke-shi*
Masaki Nagaya, *Kawasaki*
Hisato Nakajima, *Nishi-Shinbashi*
Toshifusa Nakajima, *Tokyo*
Hiroshi Nakano, *Kawasaki*
Hiroshi Nakase, *Kyoto*
Toshiyuki Nakayama, *Nagasaki*
Takahiro Nakazawa, *Nagoya*
Shoji Natsugoe, *Kagoshima City*
Tsutomu Nishida, *Suita*
Shuji Nomoto, *Naogya*
Sachiyo Nomura, *Tokyo*
Takeshi Ogura, *Takatsukishi*
Nobuhiro Ohkohchi, *Tsukuba*
Toshifumi Ohkusa, *Kashiwa*
Hirohide Ohnishi, *Akita*
Teruo Okano, *Tokyo*
Satoshi Osawa, *Hamamatsu*
Motoyuki Otsuka, *Tokyo*
Michitaka Ozaki, *Sapporo*
Satoru Saito, *Yokohama*
Naoaki Sakata, *Sendai*
Ken Sato, *Maebashi*
Toshiro Sato, *Tokyo*
Tomoyuki Shibata, *Toyoake*
Tomohiko Shimatani, *Kure*
Yukihiro Shimizu, *Nanto*
Tadashi Shimoyama, *Hirosaki*
Masayuki Sho, *Nara*
Ikuo Shoji, *Kobe*
Atsushi Sofuni, *Tokyo*
Takeshi Suda, *Niigata*
M Sugimoto, *Hamamatsu*
Ken Sugimoto, *Hamamatsu*
Haruhiko Sugimura, *Hamamatsu*
Shoichiro Sumi, *Kyoto*
Hidekazu Suzuki, *Tokyo*
Masahiro Tajika, *Nagoya*
Hitoshi Takagi, *Takasaki*
Toru Takahashi, *Niigata*
Yoshihisa Takahashi, *Tokyo*
Shinsuke Takeno, *Fukuoka*
Akihiro Tamori, *Osaka*
Kyosuke Tanaka, *Tsu*
Shinji Tanaka, *Hiroshima*
Atsushi Tanaka, *Tokyo*
Yasuhito Tanaka, *Nagoya*
Shinji Tanaka, *Tokyo*
Minoru Tomizawa, *Yotsukaido City*
Kyoko Tsukiyama-Kohara, *Kagoshima*
Takuya Watanabe, *Niigata*
Kazuhiro Watanabe, *Sendai*
Satoshi Yamagiwa, *Niigata*
Takayuki Yamamoto, *Yokkaichi*
Hiroshi Yamamoto, *Otsu*
Kosho Yamanouchi, *Nagasaki*
Ichiro Yasuda, *Gifu*
Yutaka Yata, *Maebashi-city*
Shin-ichi Yokota, *Sapporo*
Norimasa Yoshida, *Kyoto*
Hiroshi Yoshida, *Tama-City*
Hitoshi Yoshiji, *Kashihara*
Kazuhiko Yoshimatsu, *Tokyo*
Kentaro Yoshioka, *Toyoake*
Nobuhiro Zaima, *Nara*

Jordan
Khaled Ali Jadallah, *Irbid*

Kuwait
Islam Khan, *Kuwait*

Lebanon
Bassam N Abboud, *Beirut*
Kassem A Barada, *Beirut*
Marwan Ghosn, *Beirut*
Iyad A Issa, *Beirut*
Fadi H Mourad, *Beirut*
AIa Sharara, *Beirut*
Rita Slim, *Beirut*

Lithuania
Antanas Mickevicius, *Kaunas*

Malaysia
Huck Joo Tan, *Petaling Jaya*

Mexico
Richard A Awad, *Mexico City*
Carlos R Camara-Lemarroy, *Monterrey*
Norberto C Chavez-Tapia, *Mexico City*
Wolfgang Gaertner, *Mexico City*
Diego Garcia-Compean, *Monterrey*
Arturo Panduro, *Guadalajara*
OT Teramoto-Matsubara, *Mexico City*
Felix Tellez-Avila, *Mexico City*
Omar Vergara-Fernandez, *Mexico City*
Saúl Villa-Trevino, *Cuidad de México*

Morocco
Samir Ahboucha, *Khouribga*

Netherlands
Robert J de Knegt, *Rotterdam*
Tom Johannes Gerardus Gevers, *Nijmegen*
Menno Hoekstra, *Leiden*
BW Marcel Spanier, *Arnhem*
Karel van Erpecum, *Utrecht*

New Zealand
Leo K Cheng, *Auckland*
Andrew Stewart Day, *Christchurch*
Jonathan Barnes Koea, *Auckland*
Max Petrov, *Auckland*

Nigeria
Olufunmilayo Adenike Lesi, *Lagos*
Jesse Abiodun Otegbayo, *Ibadan*
Stella Ifeanyi Smith, *Lagos*

Norway
Trond Berg, *Oslo*
Trond Arnulf Buanes, *Krokkleiva*
Thomas de Lange, *Rud*
Magdy El-Salhy, *Stord*
Rasmus Goll, *Tromso*
Dag Arne Lihaug Hoff, *Aalesund*

Pakistan
Zaigham Abbas, *Karachi*
Usman A Ashfaq, *Faisalabad*
Muhammad Adnan Bawany, *Hyderabad*
Muhammad Idrees, *Lahore*
Saeed Sadiq Hamid, *Karachi*
Yasir Waheed, *Islamabad*

Poland
Thomas Brzozowski, *Cracow*
Magdalena Chmiela, *Lodz*
Krzysztof Jonderko, *Sosnowiec*
Anna Kasicka-Jonderko, *Sosnowiec*
Michal Kukla, *Katowice*
Tomasz Hubert Mach, *Krakow*
Agata Mulak, *Wroclaw*
Danuta Owczarek, *Kraków*
Piotr Socha, *Warsaw*
Piotr Stalke, *Gdansk*
Julian Teodor Swierczynski, *Gdansk*
Anna M Zawilak-Pawlik, *Wroclaw*

Portugal
Marie Isabelle Cremers, *Setubal*
Ceu Figueiredo, *Porto*
Ana Isabel Lopes, *LIsbon*
M Paula Macedo, *Lisboa*
Ricardo Marcos, *Porto*
Rui T Marinho, *Lisboa*
Guida Portela-Gomes, *Estoril*

Filipa F Vale, *Lisbon*

Puerto Rico

Caroline B Appleyard, *Ponce*

Qatar

Abdulbari Bener, *Doha*

Romania

Mihai Ciocirlan, *Bucharest*
Dan LucianDumitrascu, *Cluj-Napoca*
Carmen Fierbinteanu-Braticevici, *Bucharest*
Romeo G Mihaila, *Sibiu*
Lucian Negreanu, *Bucharest*
Adrian Saftoiu, *Craiova*
Andrada Seicean, *Cluj-Napoca*
Ioan Sporea, *Timisoara*
Letiţia Adela Maria Streba, *Craiova*
Anca Trifan, *Iasi*

Russia

Victor Pasechnikov, *Stavropol*
Vasiliy Ivanovich Reshetnyak, *Moscow*
Vitaly Skoropad, *Obninsk*

Saudi Arabia

Abdul-Wahed N Meshikhes, *Dammam*
M Ezzedien Rabie, *Khamis Mushait*

Singapore

Brian KP Goh, *Singapore*
Richie Soong, *Singapore*
Ker-Kan Tan, *Singapore*
Kok-Yang Tan, *Singapore*
Yee-Joo Tan, *Singapore*
Mark Wong, *Singapore*
Hong Ping Xia, *Singapore*

Slovenia

Matjaz Homan, *Ljubljana*
Martina Perse, *Ljubljana*

South Korea

Sang Hoon Ahn, *Seoul*
Seung Hyuk Baik, *Seoul*
Soon Koo Baik, *Wonju*
Soo-Cheon Chae, *Iksan*
Byung-Ho Choe, *Daegu*
Suck Chei Choi, *Iksan*
Hoon Jai Chun, *Seoul*
Yeun-Jun Chung, *Seoul*
Young-Hwa Chung, *Seoul*
Ki-Baik Hahm, *Seongnam*
Sang Young Han, *Busan*
Seok Joo Han, *Seoul*
Seung-Heon Hong, *Iksan*
Jin-Hyeok Hwang, *Seoungnam*
Jeong Won Jang, *Seoul*
Jin-Young Jang, *Seoul*
Dae-Won Jun, *Seoul*
Young Do Jung, *Kwangju*
Gyeong Hoon Kang, *Seoul*
Sung-Bum Kang, *Seoul*
Koo Jeong Kang, *Daegu*
Ki Mun Kang, *Jinju*
Chang Moo Kang, *Seodaemun-gu*
Gwang Ha Kim, *Busan*
Sang Soo Kim, *Goyang-si*
Jin Cheon Kim, *Seoul*
Tae Il Kim, *Seoul*
Jin Hong Kim, *Suwon*
Kyung Mo Kim, *Seoul*
Kyongmin Kim, *Suwon*
Hyung-Ho Kim, *Seongnam*
Seoung Hoon Kim, *Goyang*
Sang Il Kim, *Seoul*
Hyun-Soo Kim, *Wonju*
Jung Mogg Kim, *Seoul*
Dong Yi Kim, *Gwangju*
Kyun-Hwan Kim, *Seoul*
Jong-Han Kim, *Ansan*
Sang Wun Kim, *Seoul*
Ja-Lok Ku, *Seoul*
Kyu Taek Lee, *Seoul*
Hae-Wan Lee, *Chuncheon*
Inchul Lee, *Seoul*
Jung Eun Lee, *Seoul*
Sang Chul Lee, *Daejeon*
Song Woo Lee, *Ansan-si*
Hyuk-Joon Lee, *Seoul*
Seong-Wook Lee, *Yongin*
Kil Yeon Lee, *Seoul*
Jong-Inn Lee, *Seoul*
Kyung A Lee, *Seoul*
Jong-Baeck Lim, *Seoul*
Eun-Yi Moon, *Seoul*
SH Noh, *Seoul*
Seung Woon Paik, *Seoul*
Won Sang Park, *Seoul*
Sung-Joo Park, *Iksan*
Kyung Sik Park, *Daegu*
Se Hoon Park, *Seoul*
Yoonkyung Park, *Gwangju*
Seung-Wan Ryu, *Daegu*
Il Han Song, *Cheonan*
Myeong Jun Song, *Daejeon*
Yun Kyoung Yim, *Daejeon*
Dae-Yeul Yu *Daejeon*

Spain

Mariam Aguas, *Valencia*
Raul J Andrade, *Málaga*
Antonio Arroyo, *Elche*
Josep M Bordas, *Barcelona*
Lisardo Boscá, *Madrid*
Ricardo Robles Campos, *Murcia*
Jordi Camps, *Reus*
Carlos Cervera *Barcelona*
Alfonso Clemente, *Granada*
Pilar Codoner-Franch, *Valencia*
Fernando J Corrales, *Pamplona*
Fermin Sánchez de Medina, *Granada*
Alberto Herreros de Tejada, *Majadahonda*
Enrique de-Madaria, *Alicante*
JE Dominguez-Munoz, *Santiago de Compostela*
Vicente Felipo, *Valencia*
CM Fernandez-Rodriguez, *Madrid*
Carmen Frontela-Saseta, *Murcia*
Julio Galvez, *Granada*
Maria Teresa García, *Vigo*
MI Garcia-Fernandez, *Málaga*
Emilio Gonzalez-Reimers, *La Laguna*
Marcel Jimenez, *Bellaterra*
Angel Lanas, *Zaragoza*
Juan Ramón Larrubia, *Guadalajara*
Antonio Lopez-Sanroman, *Madrid*
Vicente Lorenzo-Zuniga, *Badalona*
Alfredo J Lucendo, *Tomelloso*
Vicenta Soledad Martinez-Zorzano, *Vigo*
José Manuel Martin-Villa, *Madrid*
Julio Mayol, *Madrid*
Manuel Morales-Ruiz, *Barcelona*
Alfredo Moreno-Egea, *Murcia*
Albert Pares, *Barcelona*
Maria Pellise, *Barcelona*
José Perea, *Madrid*
Miguel Angel Plaza, *Zaragoza*
María J Pozo, *Cáceres*
Enrique Quintero, *La Laguna*
Jose M Ramia, *Madrid*
Francisco Rodriguez-Frias, *Barcelona*
Silvia Ruiz-Gaspa, *Barcelona*
Xavier Serra-Aracil, *Barcelona*
Vincent Soriano, *Madrid*
Javier Suarez, *Pamplona*
Carlos Taxonera, *Madrid*
M Isabel Torres, *Jaén*
Manuel Vazquez-Carrera, *Barcelona*
Benito Velayos, *Valladolid*
Silvia Vidal, *Barcelona*

Sri Lanka

Arjuna Priyadarsin De Silva, *Colombo*

Sudan

Ishag Adam, *Khartoum*

Sweden

Roland G Andersson, *Lund*
Bergthor Björnsson, *Linkoping*
Johan Christopher Bohr, *Örebro*
Mauro D'Amato, *Stockholm*
Thomas Franzen, *Norrkoping*
Evangelos Kalaitzakis, *Lund*
Riadh Sadik, *Gothenburg*
Per Anders Sandstrom, *Linkoping*
Ervin Toth, *Malmö*
Konstantinos Tsimogiannis, *Vasteras*
Apostolos V Tsolakis, *Uppsala*

Switzerland

Gieri Cathomas, *Liestal*
Jean Louis Frossard, *Geneve*
Christian Toso, *Geneva*
Stephan Robert Vavricka, *Zurich*
Dominique Velin, *Lausanne*

Thailand

Thawatchai Akaraviputh, *Bangkok*
P Yoysungnoen Chintana, *Pathumthani*
Veerapol Kukongviriyapan, *Muang*
Vijittra Leardkamolkarn, *Bangkok*
Varut Lohsiriwat, *Bangkok*
Somchai Pinlaor, *Khaon Kaen*
D Wattanasirichaigoon, *Bangkok*

Trinidad and Tobago

B Shivananda Nayak, *Mount Hope*

Tunisia

Ibtissem Ghedira, *Sousse*
Lilia Zouiten-Mekki, *Tunis*

Turkey

Inci Alican, *Istanbul*
Mustafa Altindis, *Sakarya*
Mutay Aslan, *Antalya*
Oktar Asoglu, *Istanbul*
Yasemin Hatice Balaban, *Istanbul*
Metin Basaranoglu, *Ankara*
Yusuf Bayraktar, *Ankara*
Süleyman Bayram, *Adiyaman*
Ahmet Bilici, *Istanbul*
Ahmet Sedat Boyacioglu, *Ankara*
Züleyha Akkan Cetinkaya, *Kocaeli*
Cavit Col, *Bolu*
Yasar Colak, *Istanbul*
Cagatay Erden Daphan, *Kirikkale*
Mehmet Demir, *Hatay*
Ahmet Merih Dobrucali, *Istanbul*
Gülsüm Ozlem Elpek, *Antalya*
Ayse Basak Engin, *Ankara*
Eren Ersoy, *Ankara*
Osman Ersoy, *Ankara*
Yusuf Ziya Erzin, *Istanbul*
Mukaddes Esrefoglu, *Istanbul*
Levent Filik, *Ankara*
Ozgur Harmanci, *Ankara*
Koray Hekimoglu, *Ankara*
Abdurrahman Kadayifci, *Gaziantep*
Cem Kalayci, *Istanbul*
Selin Kapan, *Istanbul*
Huseyin Kayadibi, *Adana*
Sabahattin Kaymakoglu, *Istanbul*
Metin Kement, *Istanbul*
Mevlut Kurt, *Bolu*
Resat Ozaras, *Istanbul*
Elvan Ozbek, *Adapazari*
Cengiz Ozcan, *Mersin*
Hasan Ozen, *Ankara*
Halil Ozguc, *Bursa*
Mehmet Ozturk, *Izmir*
Orhan V Ozkan, *Sakarya*
Semra Paydas, *Adana*
Ozlem Durmaz Suoglu, *Istanbul*
Ilker Tasci, *Ankara*
Müge Tecder-ünal, *Ankara*
Mesut Tez, *Ankara*
Serdar Topaloglu, *Trabzon*
Murat Toruner, *Ankara*
Gokhan Tumgor, *Adana*
Oguz Uskudar, *Adana*
Mehmet Yalniz, *Elazig*
Mehmet Yaman, *Elazig*
Veli Yazisiz, *Antalya*
Yusuf Yilmaz, *Istanbul*
Ozlem Yilmaz, *Izmir*
Oya Yucel, *Istanbul*
Ilhami Yuksel, *Ankara*

United Kingdom

Nadeem Ahmad Afzal, *Southampton*
Navneet K Ahluwalia, *Stockport*
Yeng S Ang, *Lancashire*
Ramesh P Arasaradnam, *Coventry*
Ian Leonard Phillip Beales, *Norwich*
John Beynon, *Swansea*
Barbara Braden, *Oxford*
Simon Bramhall, *Birmingham*
Geoffrey Burnstock, *London*
Ian Chau, *Sutton*
Thean Soon Chew, *London*
Helen G Coleman, *Belfast*
Anil Dhawan, *London*
Sunil Dolwani, *Cardiff*
Piers Gatenby, *London*
Anil T George, *London*
Pasquale Giordano, *London*
Paul Henderson, *Edinburgh*
Georgina Louise Hold, *Aberdeen*
Stefan Hubscher, *Birmingham*
Robin D Hughes, *London*
Nusrat Husain, *Manchester*
Matt W Johnson, *Luton*
Konrad Koss, *Macclesfield*
Anastasios Koulaouzidis, *Edinburgh*
Simon Lal, *Salford*
John S Leeds, *Aberdeen*
JK K Limdi, *Manchester*
Hongxiang Liu, *Cambridge*
Michael Joseph McGarvey, *London*
Michael Anthony Mendall, *London*
Alexander H Mirnezami, *Southampton*
J Bernadette Moore, *Guildford*
Claudio Nicoletti, *Norwich*
Savvas Papagrigoriadis, *London*
Sylvia LF Pender, *Southampton*
David Mark Pritchard, *Liverpool*
James A Ross, *Edinburgh*
Kamran Rostami, *Worcester*
Xiong Z Ruan, *London*
Frank I Tovey, *London*
Dhiraj Tripathi, *Birmingham*
Vamsi R Velchuru, *Great Yarmouth*
Nicholas T Ventham, *Edinburgh*
Diego Vergani, *London*
Jack Westwood Winter, *Glasgow*
Terence Wong, *London*
Ling Yang, *Oxford*

United States

Daniel E Abbott, *Cincinnati*
Ghassan K Abou-Alfa, *New York*
Julian Abrams, *New York*
David William Adelson, *Los Angeles*
Jonathan Steven Alexander, *Shreveport*
Tauseef Ali, *Oklahoma City*
Mohamed R Ali, *Sacramento*
Rajagopal N Aravalli, *Minneapolis*
Hassan Ashktorab, *Washington*
Shashi Bala, *Worcester*
Charles F Barish, *Raleigh*
P Patrick Basu, *New York*
Robert L Bell, *Berkeley Heights*
David Bentrem, *Chicago*
Henry J Binder, *New Haven*
Joshua Bleier, *Philadelphia*
Wojciech Blonski, *Johnson City*
Kenneth Boorom, *Corvallis*
Brian Boulay, *Chicago*
Carla W Brady, *Durham*
Kyle E Brown, *Iowa City*
Adeel A Butt, *Pittsburgh*
Weibiao Cao, *Providence*
Andrea Castillo, *Cheney*
Fernando J Castro, *Weston*
Adam S Cheifetz, *Boston*
Xiaoxin Luke Chen, *Durham*
Ramsey Cheung, *Palo Alto*
Parimal Chowdhury, *Little Rock*
Edward John Ciaccio, *New York*
Dahn L Clemens, *Omaha*
Yingzi Cong, *Galveston*
Laura Iris Cosen-Binker, *Boston*
Joseph John Cullen, *Lowa*
Mark J Czaja, *Bronx*
Mariana D Dabeva, *Bronx*
Christopher James Damman, *Seattle*
Isabelle G De Plaen, *Chicago*
Punita Dhawan, *Nashville*
Hui Dong, *La Jolla*
Wael El-Rifai, *Nashville*
Sukru H Emre, *New Haven*
Paul Feuerstadt, *Hamden*
Josef E Fischer, *Boston*
Laurie N Fishman, *Boston*
Joseph Che Forbi, *Atlanta*
Temitope Foster, *Atlanta*
Amy E Foxx-Orenstein, *Scottsdale*
Daniel E Freedberg, *New York*
Shai Friedland, *Palo Alto*
Virgilio George, *Indianapolis*
Ajay Goel, *Dallas*
Oliver Grundmann, *Gainesville*
Stefano Guandalini, *Chicago*
Chakshu Gupta, *St. Joseph*
Grigoriy E Gurvits, *New York*

Xiaonan Han, *Cincinnati*
Mohamed Hassan, *Jackson*
Martin Hauer-Jensen, *Little Rock*
Koichi Hayano, *Boston*
Yingli Hee, *Atlanta*
Samuel B Ho, *San Diego*
Jason Ken Hou, *Houston*
Lifang Hou, *Chicago*
K-Qin Hu, *Orange*
Jamal A Ibdah, *Columbia*
Robert Thomas Jensen, *Bethesda*
Huanguang "Charlie" Jia, *Gainesville*
Rome Jutabha, *Los Angeles*
Andreas M Kaiser, *Los Angeles*
Avinash Kambadakone, *Boston*
David Edward Kaplan, *Philadelphia*
Randeep Kashyap, *Rochester*
Rashmi Kaul, *Tulsa*
Ali Keshavarzian, *Chicago*
Amir Maqbul Khan, *Marshall*
Nabeel Hasan Khan, *New Orleans*
Sahil Khanna, *Rochester*
Kusum K Kharbanda, *Omaha*
Hyun Sik Kim, *Pittsburgh*
Joseph Kim, *Duarte*
Jae S Kim, *Gainesville*
Miran Kim, *Providence*
Timothy R Koch, *Washington*
Burton I Korelitz, *New York*
Betsy Kren, *Minneapolis*
Shiu-Ming Kuo, *Buffalo*
Michelle Lai, *Boston*
Andreas Larentzakis, *Boston*
Edward Wolfgang Lee, *Los Angeles*
Daniel A Leffler, *Boston*
Michael Leitman, *New York*
Suthat Liangpunsakul, *Indianapolis*
Joseph K Lim, *New Haven*
Elaine Y Lin, *Bronx*
Henry C Lin, *Albuquerque*
Rohit Loomba, *La Jolla*
James David Luketich, *Pittsburgh*
Li Ma, *Stanford*
Mohammad F Madhoun, *Oklahoma City*
Thomas C Mahl, *Buffalo*
Ashish Malhotra, *Bettendorf*
Pranoti Mandrekar, *Worcester*
John Marks, *Wynnewood*
Wendy M Mars, *Pittsburgh*
Julien Vahe Matricon, *San Antonio*
Craig J McClain, *Louisville*
Tamir Miloh, *Phoenix*
Ayse Leyla Mindikoglu, *Baltimore*
Huanbiao Mo, *Denton*
Klaus Monkemuller, *Birmingham*
John Morton, *Stanford*
Adnan Muhammad, *Tampa*
Michael J Nowicki, *Jackson*
Patrick I Okolo, *Baltimore*
Giusepp Orlando, *Winston Salem*
Natalia A Osna, *Omaha*
Virendra N Pandey, *Newark*
Mansour A Parsi, *Cleveland*
Michael F Picco, *Jacksonville*
Daniel S Pratt, *Boston*
Xiaofa Qin, *Newark*
Janardan K Reddy, *Chicago*
Victor E Reyes, *Galveston*
Jon Marc Rhoads, *Houston*
Giulia Roda, *New York*
Jean-Francois Armand Rossignol, *Tampa*
Paul A Rufo, *Boston*
Madhusudana Girija Sanal, *New York*
Miguel Saps, *Chicago*
Sushil Sarna, *Galveston*
Ann O Scheimann, *Baltimore*
Bernd Schnabl, *La Jolla*
Matthew J Schuchert, *Pittsburgh*
Ekihiro Seki, *La Jolla*
Chanjuan Shi, *Nashville*
David Quan Shih, *Los Angeles*
Shadab A Siddiqi, *Orlando*
William B Silverman, *Iowa City*
Shashideep Singhal, *New York*
Bronislaw L Slomiany, *Newark*
Steven F Solga, *Bethlehem*
Byoung-Joon Song, *Bethesda*
Dario Sorrentino, *Roanoke*
Scott R Steele, *Fort Lewis*
Branko Stefanovic, *Tallahassee*
Arun Swaminath, *New York*
Kazuaki Takabe, *Richmond*
Naoki Tanaka, *Bethesda*
Hans Ludger Tillmann, *Durham*
George Triadafilopoulos, *Stanford*
John Richardson Thompson, *Nashville*
Andrew Ukleja, *Weston*
Miranda AL van Tilburg, *Chapel Hill*
Gilberto Vaughan, *Atlanta*
Vijayakumar Velu, *Atlanta*
Gebhard Wagener, *New York*
Kasper Saonun Wang, *Los Angeles*
Xiangbing Wang, *New Brunswick*
Daoyan Wei, *Houston*
Theodore H Welling, *Ann Arbor*
C Mel Wilcox, *Birmingham*
Jacqueline Lee Wolf, *Boston*
Laura Ann Woollett, *Cincinnati*
Harry Hua-Xiang Xia, *East Hanover*
Wen Xie, *Pittsburgh*
Guang Yu Yang, *Chicago*
Michele T Yip-Schneider, *Indianapolis*
Sam Zakhari, *Bethesda*
Kezhong Zhang, *Detroit*
Huiping Zhou, *Richmond*
Xiao-Jian Zhou, *Cambridge*
Richard Zubarik, *Burlington*

Venezuela
Miguel Angel Chiurillo, *Barquisimeto*

Vietnam
Van Bang Nguyen, *Hanoi*

World Journal of Gastroenterology

Contents

Weekly Volume 22 Number 7 February 21, 2016

EDITORIAL

2159 Pharmacological cyclin dependent kinase inhibitors: Implications for colorectal cancer
Balakrishnan A, Vyas A, Deshpande K, Vyas D

TOPIC HIGHLIGHT

2165 Diagnostic imaging and radiation exposure in inflammatory bowel disease
Zakeri N, Pollok RCG

2179 Diet therapy for inflammatory bowel diseases: The established and the new
Durchschein F, Petritsch W, Hammer HF

2195 Role of regulatory T cell in the pathogenesis of inflammatory bowel disease
Yamada A, Arakaki R, Saito M, Tsunematsu T, Kudo Y, Ishimaru N

2206 miRNAs as new molecular insights into inflammatory bowel disease: Crucial regulators in autoimmunity and inflammation
Xu XM, Zhang HJ

2219 Gut microbiota role in irritable bowel syndrome: New therapeutic strategies
Distrutti E, Monaldi L, Ricci P, Fiorucci S

2242 Inflammation in irritable bowel syndrome: Myth or new treatment target?
Sinagra E, Pompei G, Tomasello G, Cappello F, Morreale GC, Amvrosiadis G, Rossi F, Lo Monte AI, Rizzo AG, Raimondo D

REVIEW

2256 Management of pancreatic fluid collections: A comprehensive review of the literature
Tyberg A, Karia K, Gabr M, Desai A, Doshi R, Gaidhane M, Sharaiha RZ, Kahaleh M

2271 Hepatitis E virus: An ancient hidden enemy in Latin America
Fierro NA, Realpe M, Meraz-Medina T, Roman S, Panduro A

2284 Genomic characterization of esophageal squamous cell carcinoma: Insights from next-generation sequencing
Sasaki Y, Tamura M, Koyama R, Nakagaki T, Adachi Y, Tokino T

2294 Role of Tim-3 in hepatitis B virus infection: An overview
Liu Y, Gao LF, Liang XH, Ma CH

MINIREVIEWS

2304 Chronic pancreatitis: A diagnostic dilemma

Duggan SN, Ní Chonchubhair HM, Lawal O, O'Connor DB, Conlon KC

ORIGINAL ARTICLE

Basic Study

2314 Mutation analysis of 13 driver genes of colorectal cancer-related pathways in Taiwanese patients

Chang YC, Chang JG, Liu TC, Lin CY, Yang SF, Ho CM, Chen WT, Chang YS

2326 Choledochojejunostomy with an innovative magnetic compressive anastomosis: How to determine optimal pressure?

Xue F, Guo HC, Li JP, Lu JW, Wang HH, Ma F, Liu YX, Lv Y

Retrospective Study

2336 Recurrent colorectal cancer after endoscopic resection when additional surgery was recommended

Takatsu Y, Fukunaga Y, Hamasaki S, Ogura A, Nagata J, Nagasaki T, Akiyoshi T, Konishi T, Fujimoto Y, Nagayama S, Ueno M

2342 Risk factors of biliary intervention by imaging after living donor liver transplantation

Lee SK, Choi JY, Yeo DM, Lee YJ, Yoon SK, Bae SH, Jang JW, Kim HY, Kim DG, You YK

2349 Using typical endoscopic features to diagnose esophageal squamous papilloma

Wong MW, Bair MJ, Shih SC, Chu CH, Wang HY, Wang TE, Chang CW, Chen MJ

Clinical Trials Study

2357 Effects of endoplasmic reticulum stress on the expression of inflammatory cytokines in patients with ulcerative colitis

Li N, Wang XM, Jiang LJ, Zhang M, Li N, Wei ZZ, Zheng N, Zhao YJ

Observational Study

2366 Endoscopic dilation of complete oesophageal obstructions with a combined antegrade-retrograde rendezvous technique

Bertolini R, Meyenberger C, Putora PM, Albrecht F, Broglie MA, Stoeckli SJ, Sulz MC

2373 *CD24* genetic variants contribute to overall survival in patients with gastric cancer

Jia ZF, Wang LZ, Cao XY, Wang C, Cao DH, Wu X, You LL, Jin MS, Wang YP, Zhou BS, Jiang J

CASE REPORT

2383 Rare type of pancreatitis as the first presentation of anti-neutrophil cytoplasmic antibody-related vasculitis

Iida T, Adachi T, Tabeya T, Nakagaki S, Yabana T, Goto A, Kondo Y, Kasai K

2391 Cystic micropapillary neoplasm of peribiliary glands with concomitant perihilar cholangiocarcinoma

Uchida T, Yamamoto Y, Ito T, Okamura Y, Sugiura T, Uesaka K, Nakanuma Y

2398 Laparoscopic resection of adult colon duplication causing intussusception

Kyo K, Azuma M, Okamoto K, Nishiyama M, Shimamura T, Maema A, Shirakawa M, Nakamura T, Koda K, Yokoyama H

World Journal of Gastroenterology
Volume 22 Number 7 February 21, 2016

Contents

ABOUT COVER

Editorial board member of *World Journal of Gastroenterology*, Anastasios Koulaouzidis, MD, FEBG, FRSPH, FRCP Edin, Associate Specialist, Centre for Liver and Digestive Disorders, The Royal Infirmary of Edinburgh, Edinburgh EH16 4SA, United Kingdom

AIMS AND SCOPE

World Journal of Gastroenterology (*World J Gastroenterol*, *WJG*, print ISSN 1007-9327, online ISSN 2219-2840, DOI: 10.3748) is a peer-reviewed open access journal. *WJG* was established on October 1, 1995. It is published weekly on the 7th, 14th, 21st, and 28th each month. The *WJG* Editorial Board consists of 1376 experts in gastroenterology and hepatology from 68 countries.

The primary task of *WJG* is to rapidly publish high-quality original articles, reviews, and commentaries in the fields of gastroenterology, hepatology, gastrointestinal endoscopy, gastrointestinal surgery, hepatobiliary surgery, gastrointestinal oncology, gastrointestinal radiation oncology, gastrointestinal imaging, gastrointestinal interventional therapy, gastrointestinal infectious diseases, gastrointestinal pharmacology, gastrointestinal pathophysiology, gastrointestinal pathology, evidence-based medicine in gastroenterology, pancreatology, gastrointestinal laboratory medicine, gastrointestinal molecular biology, gastrointestinal immunology, gastrointestinal microbiology, gastrointestinal genetics, gastrointestinal translational medicine, gastrointestinal diagnostics, and gastrointestinal therapeutics. *WJG* is dedicated to become an influential and prestigious journal in gastroenterology and hepatology, to promote the development of above disciplines, and to improve the diagnostic and therapeutic skill and expertise of clinicians.

INDEXING/ABSTRACTING

World Journal of Gastroenterology is now indexed in Current Contents®/Clinical Medicine, Science Citation Index Expanded (also known as SciSearch®), Journal Citation Reports®, Index Medicus, MEDLINE, PubMed, PubMed Central, Digital Object Identifier, and Directory of Open Access Journals. According to the 2014 Journal Citation Reports® released by Thomson Reuters (ISI), the 2014 impact factor for *WJG* is 2.369, ranking 41 among 76 journals in gastroenterology and hepatology, quartile in category Q2.

FLYLEAF I-IX Editorial Board

NAME OF JOURNAL
World Journal of Gastroenterology

ISSN
ISSN 1007-9327 (print)
ISSN 2219-2840 (online)

LAUNCH DATE
October 1, 1995

FREQUENCY
Weekly

EDITORIAL OFFICE
Jin-Lei Wang, Director
Xiu-Xia Song, Vice Director
World Journal of Gastroenterology
Room 903, Building D, Ocean International Center,
No. 62 Dongsihuan Zhonglu, Chaoyang District,
Beijing 100025, China
Telephone: +86-10-59080039
Fax: +86-10-85381893
E-mail: editorialoffice@wjgnet.com
Help Desk: http://www.wjgnet.com/esps/helpdesk.aspx
http://www.wjgnet.com

PUBLISHER
Baishideng Publishing Group Inc
8226 Regency Drive,
Pleasanton, CA 94588, USA
Telephone: +1-925-223-8242
Fax: +1-925-223-8243
E-mail: bpgoffice@wjgnet.com
Help Desk: http://www.wjgnet.com/esps/helpdesk.aspx
http://www.wjgnet.com

PUBLICATION DATE
February 21, 2016

INSTRUCTIONS TO AUTHORS
Full instructions are available online at http://www.wjgnet.com/bpg/g_info_20160116143427.htm

ONLINE SUBMISSION
http://www.wjgnet.com/esps/

World Journal of Gastroenterology

Submit a Manuscript: http://www.wjgnet.com/esps/
Help Desk: http://www.wjgnet.com/esps/helpdesk.aspx
DOI: 10.3748/wjg.v22.i7.2159

World J Gastroenterol 2016 February 21; 22(7): 2159-2164
ISSN 1007-9327 (print) ISSN 2219-2840 (online)

EDITORIAL

Pharmacological cyclin dependent kinase inhibitors: Implications for colorectal cancer

Archana Balakrishnan, Arpita Vyas, Kaivalya Deshpande, Dinesh Vyas

Archana Balakrishnan, Arpita Vyas, Kaivalya Deshpande, College of Human Medicine, Michigan State University, East Lansing, MI 48824, United States

Dinesh Vyas, Texas Tech University at the Permian Basin, Odessa, TX 79707, United States

Author contributions: Balakrishnan A and Vyas D collected the material; Balakrishnan A wrote the manuscript with the supervision of Vyas D; Deshpande K and Vyas A contributed equally to the research; all authors approved the manuscript.

Conflict-of-interest statement: The authors declare no financial conflict of interest

Correspondence to: Dinesh Vyas, MD, MS, FACS, MD, MS, FACS, Associate Professor, Associate Dean Surgery Research, Associate Program Director Surgery Residency, Texas Tech University at the Permian Basin, Odessa, TX 79707, United States. dineshvyas@yahoo.com
Telephone: +1-432-7035290
Fax: +1-432-7035290

Received: August 21, 2015
Peer-review started: August 21, 2015
First decision: October 14, 2015
Revised: December 4, 2015
Accepted: December 30, 2015
Article in press: December 30, 2015
Published online: February 21, 2016

Abstract

Colorectal cancer accounts for a significant proportion of cancer deaths worldwide. The need to develop more chemotherapeutic agents to combat this disease is critical. Cyclin dependent kinases (CDKs), along with its binding partner cyclins, serve to control the growth of cells through the cell cycle. A new class of drugs, termed CDK inhibitors, has been studied in preclinical and now clinical trials. These inhibitors are believed to act as an anti-cancer drug by blocking CDKs to block the uncontrolled cellular proliferation that is hallmark of cancers like colorectal cancer. CDK article provides overview of the emerging drug class of CDK inhibitors and provides a list of ones that are currently in clinical trials.

Key words: Colorectal cancer; Cyclin; Cyclin dependent kinase inhibitor

Core tip: This article provides a brief overview of an emerging drug class, cyclin-dependent kinases inhibitors and their potential implications in colorectal cancer treatment.

Balakrishnan A, Vyas A, Deshpande K, Vyas D. Pharmacological cyclin dependent kinase inhibitors: Implications for colorectal cancer. *World J Gastroenterol* 2016; 22(7): 2159-2164 Available from: URL: http://www.wjgnet.com/1007-9327/full/v22/i7/2159.htm DOI: http://dx.doi.org/10.3748/wjg.v22.i7.2159

INTRODUCTION

In the United States, colorectal cancer (CRC) is among the three most common causes of death and accounts for approximately 8.4% of all cancer related deaths[1]. Colorectal cancer is primarily asymptomatic in earlier stages and therefore, often not diagnosed until the later stages of the disease. Currently, surgical

intervention with chemotherapy is the primary treatment for patient[2]. In metastatic disease, systemic chemotherapy is coupled with surgical resection of metastases, which are commonly seen in the liver[3,4]. A deeper understanding of the intricate molecular biology that mediates the pathogenesis of this disease may be beneficial in identifying new drug targets with the ultimate goal of improving survival time.

GOALS AND LIMITATIONS OF CURRENT THERAPEUTICS

Current therapeutic agents against cancerous cells aim to disrupt the rapid proliferation of cancerous cells; this is achieved either through directly targeting and killing cancerous cells or indirectly by slowing down cell growth. These drugs can be given systemically *via* oral medication or in a more targeted manner by direct injection into the blood[5]. Using drugs in combination has been proven to increase survival time and can prevent some drugs from developing resistance. Molecular pathways that mediate the processes of apoptosis, angiogenesis, invasion and the cell cycle are main targets of chemotherapy[6]. By understanding how molecular mechanisms regulate essential cellular processes, chemotherapeutic agents can be developed to combat the cancerous cells. The mammalian cell cycle, for example, is precisely regulated during periods of development and growth. This regulation is essential for proper cell differentiation and proliferation. Any loss of control over the events of the cell cycle can lead to unregulated growth and is associated with cancer development[7].

There have been several chemotherapeutic drugs that are FDA approved and are currently used in cancer treatment. Development of resistance to chemotherapeutic agents, difficulties in controlling metastatic disease and devastating side effects to drugs are only some of the limitations of the current arsenal of drugs[8,9]. The various limitations to the current drugs available that make the need to discover new drugs even greater. In this article, the authors aim to provide an update of search of cyclin-dependent kinases (CDK) inhibitors as an anti-cancer drug and provide information on new areas for therapy.

OVERVIEW OF CYCLINS AND CYCLIN DEPENDENT KINASES

Disruptions of the cell cycle have been well documented to be involved in the genesis and propagation of a variety of cancers, including colorectal cancer. The cell cycle is divided into two broad stages: mitosis and interphase. Mitosis is characterized as a period of division, whereas interphase is a period of metabolic growth[10]. The cell cycle itself is closely regulated by cyclins, a protein that activates CDK, a group of serine/threonine proteases. Cyclins serve as the regulatory unit that is vital for CDK activity; it is the interaction of cyclins with CDKs that helps mediate normal development and proliferation of mammalian cells[11]. Alterations in the function of any of the cell cycle regulator proteins such as cyclins and CDK are a hallmark of cancer development[12].

There have been numerous families of cyclins identified that are associated with specific stages of the cell cycle. Although different families of cyclins differ in primary amino acid sequence, they all share a common 100 amino acids sequence termed the cyclin box. This structure is responsible for binding to cyclin dependent kinases[13]. When a cyclin binding partner binds to its respective CDKs, it is now in the active form and can serve as a modulating signal that allows for progression through the cell cycle. Typically, these kinases are serine or threonine kinases that belong to a larger family of kinases that includes mitogen-activated kinases and glycogen synthase kinases[14]. There currently have been over nine CDK' s identified, with five of them being directly implicated with regulation of specific checkpoints in the cell cycle. Activated CDK's serve a regulatory role in the cell cycle and in transcription[15].

CDK INHIBITORS

It has been established in previous literature that deregulation in the function or mutation of the structure of CDK can result in disease processes[16,17]. Any changes in the levels of CDK interacting proteins can impact the phosphorylation of CDK[18]. For example, the loss of Cables, a CDK interacting protein, is linked to development of cancers including colon cancer[19]. The intricate and complex binding between cyclins and CDKs is difficult to mimic in vitro and success to fully elucidate the binding pattern has been limited[20]. In recent years, studies have been done to understand more about the roles of CDK inhibitors and if they can regulate uncontrolled cellular proliferation.

There are two families of CDK-inhibitors: INK4 and CIP/KIP class[21]. These two families differ in the particular cyclin families that they interact with. The inhibitor of CDK4 family, or INK4 consists of four individual proteins that selectively inhibit the D family of cyclins. The kinase inhibitor protein family or CIP/KIP is composed of three proteins that act to interact with other cyclin families. The inhibitor of CDK4 family, or INK4 consists of four individual proteins that selectively inhibit the D family of cyclins. The kinase inhibitor protein family or CIP/KIP is composed of three proteins that act to interact with other cyclin families[22]. From a mechanistic standpoint, it has been theorized that CDK-inhibitors can be used as an anti-cancer drug by blocking CDK's and therefore halting the uncontrolled cellular proliferation seen in cancer. Flavopiridol was the first CDK inhibitor ever tested in human clinical trials. This drug showed promise in preclinical cellular studies and was initially tested in patients with a

variety of carcinomas, including colon[23]. This drug was the first of it's kind to be tested in a clinical trial and set the stage for more investigation and further study of CDK inhibitors. Unfortunately, flavopiridol has had limited success individually and in combination with other medications as an anti-cancer drug. Since the testing of the first CDK inhibitor, flavopiridol, several other CDK inhibitors have been developed and tested. Inhibitors have been developed that target various stages of the cell cycle based on the specific cyclin-CDK blocked.

PHARMACOLOGICAL CDK INHIBITORS

There is great variability in the range of action of CDK inhibitors - some target specific points in the cell cycle while others are pan-CDK inhibitors that act much more broadly. This cell cycle attenuating effect documented in the literature of cellular CDK inhibitors implicate the use of pharmacological CDK inhibitors as an anti-cancer drug. There are several that have entered clinical testing. Here is a selected list of CDK–inhibitors that have entered or are in various stages of clinical trials[24].

CDK-INHIBITORS AND COLORECTAL CANCER

Based on preclinical research on colorectal cancers, there have been a few CDK alterations that have been strongly linked to the progression of the cancer. Understanding these cellular changes can serve as a potential indicator of prognosis and help scientists focus on the areas needed in drug development. The overexpression of CDK1 has been associated with increased risk of metastasis[4]. CDK2 overexpression has been seen in roughly 86% carcinomas[25]. Lastly, CDK4 overexpression is linked to a poor prognosis in colorectal cancer[26].

From the list of inhibitors currently in clinical trials, found in Table 1[23,27-41], there have been a few that have been studied more specifically in colorectal cancer. One that has shown particular promise is PD-0332991, from Pfizer, New York, NY. This is an inhibitor of CDK4 and CDK6. Studies done in human carcinoma cells have shown inhibited growth[42]. Additional studies done in mice with human colon carcinoma, Colo-205, have shown significant tumor regression[43]. This drug has shown promise as a clinically useful CDK-inhibitor that can potentially be used in colorectal cancers. Phase I clinical studies have been conducted that have shown positive results in patients with colorectal cancers[44,45].

LIMITATIONS TO CDK-INHIBITORS

A major difficulty in identifying CDK-inhibitors is finding one that has the potential to target a specific cyclin; a majority that have entered clinical trials either directly impact multiple cyclins/CDKs or have off target effects[46]. The poor selectivity between different CDKs results in a higher dose of CDK-inhibitor being used[47]. Lower doses of CDK-inhibitors used in trials have proved to be inefficient; yet, the proper management of dosage is critical to avoid reaching toxic doses. The challenges in finding a highly selective CDK-inhibitor has resulted in higher dosage that renders the side effects seen from CDK inhibitors in clinical trials become a limiting factor for their use. For example, flavopiridol has a dose-limiting toxicity of secretory diarrhea[48]. This inhibitor is a pan-CDK inhibitor and therefore requires a higher dose to elicit a cytotoxic effect. The high degree of homology amongst the group of CDKs, particularly in the ATP-binding site, has made it quite challenging to identify selective targets against particular CDKs[49]. Further work must be done to identify more selective molecular signatures of individual CDKs in preclinical studies to develop more targeted CDK-inhibitors.

Despite the promise that CDK-inhibitors hold, it is important to be cautious of any potential limitations. These compounds were identified over a decade ago and have been studied ever since. Although a few CDK-inhibitors have entered clinical trials, none have yet to show the promise of being a potent anti-cancer drug. CDK-inhibitors are a type of kinase inhibitor. A major concern that has been noted with the use of kinase inhibitors is the possibility of acquired drug resistance over the treatment regimen. For example, Imatinib, a well-established tyrosine kinase inhibitor, is known to cause an acquired resistance during the treatment course[50]. This resistance can be conferred through point mutations in the oncogene that result in the drug becoming less effective during the treatment regimen[51]. Currently, there have not been any reported incidents of CDK-inhibitors resulting in acquired resistance in the literature. However, it is important to note that there are highly conserved side chains present in CDKs that are specific targets of CDK-inhibitors[52]. Any point mutation or alteration of the unique molecular signature that CDK-inhibitors target can potentially confer resistance to the drug.

POTENTIAL ALTERNATIVES BESIDES CDK-INHIBITORS

There is a clear association between the role of cyclins and cyclin dependent kinases in regulation of the cell cycle. The research and studies of CDK-inhibitors have proved that much more work must be done. Instead of focusing on CDK-inhibitors, it would be wise to investigate other potential aspects of cyclins and CDKs that can be harnessed to develop therapeutics. We have chosen to discuss two other methods of potentially interrupting the cell cycle to create an anti-cancer drug: Cyclin-groove inhibitors and the

Table 1 Cyclin dependent kinases-inhibitors that have entered clinical trials

Drug name	Cyclin/CDK targeted	Manufacturer	Potential implications
Flavopiridol	Cyclin D and CDK-4/6 Cyclin E and CDK-2 Cyclin A and CDK-2 Cyclin A and CDK-1	Sanofi-Aventis, Bridgewater, NJ, United States	Renal cancer, Prostate cancer, colon cancer, non-Hodgkin's lymphoma[23]
PD-00332991	Cyclin D and CDK-4/6	Pfizer, New York, NY, United States	Breast cancer[25] Gastrointestinal tumors[26]
P276-00	Cyclin D and CDK-4/6 Cyclin E and CDK-2 Cyclin A and CDK-2	Piramal Life Sciences Limited, Mumbai, India	Mantle Cell Lymphoma[27]
PHA-848125	Cyclin D and CDK-4/6 Cyclin E and CDK-2 Cyclin A and CDK-2	Nerviano Medical Sciences, Nerviano, Italy	Metastatic solid tumors[27,28]
LY2835219	Cyclin D and CDK-4/6	Eli Lilly, Indianapolis, IN, United States	Lung cancers[29]
LEE011	Cyclin D and CDK-4/6	Novartis, Basel, Switzerland	Gastrointestinal cancers[30] Breast Cancer[31]
AZD5438	Cyclin D and CDK-4/6 Cyclin E and CDK-2 Cyclin A and CDK-2 Cyclin A and CDK-1	Astra Zeneca, London, England	Solid malignancies[32]
BAY 1000394	Cyclin D and CDK-4/6 Cyclin E and CDK-2 Cyclin A and CDK-2 Cyclin B and CDK-1	Bayer, Barmen, Germany	Small cell lung cancer[33]
P1446A-05	Cyclin D and CDK-4/6	Piramal Life Sciences Limited, Mumbai, India	Advanced malignancies[34]
SNS-032	Cyclin E and CDK-2 Cyclin A and CDK-2 Cyclin B and CDK-1	Sunesis Pharmaceutical, South San Francisco, CA, United States	Multiple myeloma, chronic lymphocytic leukemia[35]
Bryostatin-1	Cyclin E and CDK-2 Cyclin A and CDK-2 Cyclin B and CDK-1	Ellisville, MO, United States	Metastatic renal cell carcinoma, soft tissue sarcoma[36]
Roscovitine	Cyclin E and CDK-2 Cyclin A and CDK-2 Cyclin B and CDK-1	Cyclacel Pharmaceuticals, Short Hills, NJ, United States	Advanced malignancies[37]
Dinaciclib	Cyclin E and CDK-2 Cyclin A and CDK-2 Cyclin B and CDK-1	Merck, Whitehouse Station, NJ, United States	Breast Cancer[38]
UCN-01	Cyclin E and CDK-2 Cyclin A and CDK-2 Cyclin B and CDK-1	Sigma-Aldrich. St. Louis, MO, United States	Breast Cancer[39]

CDK: Cyclin dependent kinase.

disruption of the cyclin-CDK interaction through peptides.

The cyclin binding groove is utilized in substrate recruitment. Theoretically, being able to place a cyclin groove inhibitor (CGI) peptide in this pocket would prevent cyclin from binding to CDKs[53]. The CGI peptide could potentially be used as an anti-cancer drug that acts by stopping the characteristic uncontrolled proliferation seen in cancer. Preclinical studies using cell permeable CGI peptides have been done in cellular models and *in vivo* using a mouse tumor model. These studies have shown promising results of blocking CDK activity[54]. The process of identifying and understanding the intricate protein structure and binding has been a hurdle in discovery of a CGI peptide suitable for clinical trial[55]. However, this is an avenue of research that should be investigated further and actively pursued.

An essential and critical step required for CDK control over the cell cycle is the disruption of the cyclin-CDK interaction. Studies have identified a peptide termed NBI1 that acts as a non-competitive inhibitor with certain cyclins[56]. Other preclinical studies in cell models have garnered more information about this novel peptide[57]. Further studies must be done in order to fully understand the capabilities of this peptide and see if there is a potential for clinical application. There are still many aspects of cyclin-CDK interactions that are not fully understood, so there may be other ways besides the use of CDK-inhibitors to disrupt uncontrolled cellular proliferation.

CONCLUSION

The discovery of cyclins and their enzyme effectors, the cyclin dependent kinases, has been monumental to deepening the understanding of the intricate and complex regulatory mechanisms of cell cycle. The mission to develop CDK inhibitors as a potent anti-cancer drug has been excellent in theory but limited in clinical results. Combination therapies with CDK-inhibitors and other cancer drug types have yielded better results but continued work must be done to increase the specificity and effectiveness of these

treatments. Further work must be done in both preclinical studies and clinical studies to identify and understand the complex molecular mechanisms that regulate the cell cycle.

REFERENCES

1 **Society AC**. Cancer Facts and Figures 2015. Atlanta: American Cancer Society, 2015
2 **Jin JS**, Tsao TY, Sun PC, Yu CP, Tzao C. SAHA inhibits the growth of colon tumors by decreasing histone deacetylase and the expression of cyclin D1 and survivin. *Pathol Oncol Res* 2012; **18**: 713-720 [PMID: 22270866 DOI: 10.1007/s12253-012-9499-7]
3 **Siriwardena AK**, Mason JM, Mullamitha S, Hancock HC, Jegatheeswaran S. Management of colorectal cancer presenting with synchronous liver metastases. *Nat Rev Clin Oncol* 2014; **11**: 446-459 [PMID: 24889770 DOI: 10.1038/nrclinonc.2014.90]
4 **Akgül Ö**, Çetinkaya E, Ersöz Ş, Tez M. Role of surgery in colorectal cancer liver metastases. *World J Gastroenterol* 2014; **20**: 6113-6122 [PMID: 24876733 DOI: 10.3748/wjg.v20.i20.6113]
5 **Gall TM**, Tsakok M, Wasan H, Jiao LR. Pancreatic cancer: current management and treatment strategies. *Postgrad Med J* 2015; **91**: 601-607 [PMID: 26243882 DOI: 10.1136/postgradmedj-2014-133222]
6 **Kim JH**. Chemotherapy for colorectal cancer in the elderly. *World J Gastroenterol* 2015; **21**: 5158-5166 [PMID: 25954089 DOI: 10.3748/wjg.v21.i17.5158]
7 **Santamaria D**, Ortega S. Cyclins and CDKS in development and cancer: lessons from genetically modified mice. *Front Biosci* 2006; **11**: 1164-1188 [PMID: 16146805]
8 **Blagosklonny MV**. Flavopiridol, an inhibitor of transcription: implications, problems and solutions. *Cell Cycle* 2004; **3**: 1537-1542 [PMID: 15539947]
9 **Jonker DJ**, O'Callaghan CJ, Karapetis CS, Zalcberg JR, Tu D, Au HJ, Berry SR, Krahn M, Price T, Simes RJ, Tebbutt NC, van Hazel G, Wierzbicki R, Langer C, Moore MJ. Cetuximab for the treatment of colorectal cancer. *N Engl J Med* 2007; **357**: 2040-2048 [PMID: 18003960 DOI: 10.1056/NEJMoa071834]
10 **Nath S**, Ghatak D, Das P, Roychoudhury S. Transcriptional control of mitosis: deregulation and cancer. *Front Endocrinol* (Lausanne) 2015; **6**: 60 [PMID: 25999914 DOI: 10.3389/fendo.2015.00060]
11 **Abreu Velez AM**, Howard MS. Tumor-suppressor Genes, Cell Cycle Regulatory Checkpoints, and the Skin. *N Am J Med Sci* 2015; **7**: 176-188 [PMID: 26110128 DOI: 10.4103/1947-2714.157476]
12 **Cicenas J**, Kalyan K, Sorokinas A, Jatulyte A, Valiunas D, Kaupinis A, Valius M. Highlights of the Latest Advances in Research on CDK Inhibitors. *Cancers* (Basel) 2014; **6**: 2224-2242 [PMID: 25349887 DOI: 10.3390/cancers6042224]
13 **Noble ME**, Endicott JA, Brown NR, Johnson LN. The cyclin box fold: protein recognition in cell-cycle and transcription control. *Trends Biochem Sci* 1997; **22**: 482-487 [PMID: 9433129]
14 **Manning G**, Whyte DB, Martinez R, Hunter T, Sudarsanam S. The protein kinase complement of the human genome. *Science* 2002; **298**: 1912-1934 [PMID: 12471243 DOI: 10.1126/science.1075762]
15 **Malumbres M**. Cyclin-dependent kinases. *Genome Biol* 2014; **15**: 122 [PMID: 25180339]
16 **Deshpande A**, Sicinski P, Hinds PW. Cyclins and cdks in development and cancer: a perspective. *Oncogene* 2005; **24**: 2909-2915 [PMID: 15838524 DOI: 10.1038/sj.onc.1208618]
17 **Casimiro MC**, Velasco-Velázquez M, Aguirre-Alvarado C, Pestell RG. Overview of cyclins D1 function in cancer and the CDK inhibitor landscape: past and present. *Expert Opin Investig Drugs* 2014; **23**: 295-304 [PMID: 24387133 DOI: 10.1517/13543784.2014.867017]
18 **Endicott JA**, Noble ME. Structural characterization of the cyclin-dependent protein kinase family. *Biochem Soc Trans* 2013; **41**: 1008-1016 [PMID: 23863171 DOI: 10.1042/bst20130097]
19 **Wu CL**, Kirley SD, Xiao H, Chuang Y, Chung DC, Zukerberg LR. Cables enhances cdk2 tyrosine 15 phosphorylation by Wee1, inhibits cell growth, and is lost in many human colon and squamous cancers. *Cancer Res* 2001; **61**: 7325-7332 [PMID: 11585773]
20 **Malumbres M**, Harlow E, Hunt T, Hunter T, Lahti JM, Manning G, Morgan DO, Tsai LH, Wolgemuth DJ. Cyclin-dependent kinases: a family portrait. *Nat Cell Biol* 2009; **11**: 1275-1276 [PMID: 19884882 DOI: 10.1038/ncb1109-1275]
21 **Harper JW**. Cyclin dependent kinase inhibitors. *Cancer Surv* 1997; **29**: 91-107 [PMID: 9338098]
22 **Dai Y**, Grant S. Cyclin-dependent kinase inhibitors. *Curr Opin Pharmacol* 2003; **3**: 362-370 [PMID: 12901944]
23 **Senderowicz AM**. Flavopiridol: the first cyclin-dependent kinase inhibitor in human clinical trials. *Invest New Drugs* 1999; **17**: 313-320 [PMID: 10665481]
24 Health NIo. Clinical Trials Home. 2014
25 **Ogino S**, Kawasaki T, Kirkner GJ, Yamaji T, Loda M, Fuchs CS. Loss of nuclear p27 (CDKN1B/KIP1) in colorectal cancer is correlated with microsatellite instability and CIMP. *Mod Pathol* 2007; **20**: 15-22 [PMID: 17086168 DOI: 10.1038/modpathol.3800709]
26 **Albanese C**, Johnson J, Watanabe G, Eklund N, Vu D, Arnold A, Pestell RG. Transforming p21ras mutants and c-Ets-2 activate the cyclin D1 promoter through distinguishable regions. *J Biol Chem* 1995; **270**: 23589-23597 [PMID: 7559524]
27 **Rocca A**, Farolfi A, Bravaccini S, Schirone A, Amadori D. Palbociclib (PD 0332991): targeting the cell cycle machinery in breast cancer. *Expert Opin Pharmacother* 2014; **15**: 407-420 [PMID: 24369047 DOI: 10.1517/14656566.2014.870555]
28 ClinicalTrials.gov. Efficacy and Safety of PD-0332991 in Patients With Advanced Gastrointestinal Stromal Tumors Refractory to Imatinib and Sunitinib (CYCLIGIST). In: Health NIo, editor. Study Record Detail: Jul 22, 2013
29 **Cassaday RD**, Goy A, Advani S, Chawla P, Nachankar R, Gandhi M, Gopal AK. A phase II, single-arm, open-label, multicenter study to evaluate the efficacy and safety of P276-00, a cyclin-dependent kinase inhibitor, in patients with relapsed or refractory mantle cell lymphoma. *Clin Lymphoma Myeloma Leuk* 2015; **15**: 392-397 [PMID: 25816934 DOI: 10.1016/j.clml.2015.02.021]
30 **Weiss GJ**, Hidalgo M, Borad MJ, Laheru D, Tibes R, Ramanathan RK, Blaydorn L, Jameson G, Jimeno A, Isaacs JD, Scaburri A, Pacciarini MA, Fiorentini F, Ciomei M, Von Hoff DD. Phase I study of the safety, tolerability and pharmacokinetics of PHA-848125AC, a dual tropomyosin receptor kinase A and cyclin-dependent kinase inhibitor, in patients with advanced solid malignancies. *Invest New Drugs* 2012; **30**: 2334-2343 [PMID: 22160853 DOI: 10.1007/s10637-011-9774-6]
31 ClinicalTrials.gov. Abemaciclib (LY2835219) in Participants with Previously Treated Lung Cancer. Study Record Detail: National Institutes of Health. May: 23, 2014
32 ClinicalTrials.gov. LEE011 in Neuroendocrine Tumors of Foregut Origin. Study Record Detail: National Institutes of Health. Apr: 15, 2015
33 ClinicalTrials.gov. Study of LEE011, BYL719 and Letrozole in Advanced ER Breast Cancer. Study Record Detail: National Institutes of Health. May: 30, 2013
34 **Boss DS**, Schwartz GK, Middleton MR, Amakye DD, Swaisland H, Midgley RS, Ranson M, Danson S, Calvert H, Plummer R, Morris C, Carvajal RD, Chirieac LR, Schellens JH, Shapiro GI. Safety, tolerability, pharmacokinetics and pharmacodynamics of the oral cyclin-dependent kinase inhibitor AZD5438 when administered at intermittent and continuous dosing schedules in patients with advanced solid tumours. *Ann Oncol* 2010; **21**: 884-894 [PMID: 19825886 DOI: 10.1093/annonc/mdp377]
35 ClinicalTrials.gov. Clinical Study to Evaluate the Maximum Tolerated Dose of BAY1000394 When Given Together With Chemotherapy and the Effectiveness of This Combination Treatment in Shrinking a Specific Type of Lung Tumors (Smal Cell Lung Cancer). In: Health NIo, editor Study Record Detail. Apr: 5, 2012
36 ClinicalTrials.gov. A Study Of Selective CDKInhibitor P1446A-05 In Subjects With Advanced Refractory Malignancies (Serenity). Feb: 3, 2009

37 **Tong WG**, Chen R, Plunkett W, Siegel D, Sinha R, Harvey RD, Badros AZ, Popplewell L, Coutre S, Fox JA, Mahadocon K, Chen T, Kegley P, Hoch U, Wierda WG. Phase I and pharmacologic study of SNS-032, a potent and selective Cdk2, 7, and 9 inhibitor, in patients with advanced chronic lymphocytic leukemia and multiple myeloma. *J Clin Oncol* 2010; **28**: 3015-3022 [PMID: 20479412 DOI: 10.1200/jco.2009.26.1347]

38 **Plimack ER**, Tan T, Wong YN, von Mehren MM, Malizzia L, Roethke SK, Litwin S, Li T, Hudes GR, Haas NB. A phase I study of temsirolimus and bryostatin-1 in patients with metastatic renal cell carcinoma and soft tissue sarcoma. *Oncologist* 2014; **19**: 354-355 [PMID: 24674872 DOI: 10.1634/theoncologist.2014-0020]

39 **Le Tourneau C**, Faivre S, Laurence V, Delbaldo C, Vera K, Girre V, Chiao J, Armour S, Frame S, Green SR, Gianella-Borradori A, Diéras V, Raymond E. Phase I evaluation of seliciclib (R-roscovitine), a novel oral cyclin-dependent kinase inhibitor, in patients with advanced malignancies. *Eur J Cancer* 2010; **46**: 3243-3250 [PMID: 20822897 DOI: 10.1016/j.ejca.2010.08.001]

40 **Mitri Z**, Karakas C, Wei C, Briones B, Simmons H, Ibrahim N, Alvarez R, Murray JL, Keyomarsi K, Moulder S. A phase 1 study with dose expansion of the CDK inhibitor dinaciclib (SCH 727965) in combination with epirubicin in patients with metastatic triple negative breast cancer. *Invest New Drugs* 2015; **33**: 890-894 [PMID: 25947565 DOI: 10.1007/s10637-015-0244-4]

41 **Ma CX**, Ellis MJ, Petroni GR, Guo Z, Cai SR, Ryan CE, Craig Lockhart A, Naughton MJ, Pluard TJ, Brenin CM, Picus J, Creekmore AN, Mwandoro T, Yarde ER, Reed J, Ebbert M, Bernard PS, Watson M, Doyle LA, Dancey J, Piwnica-Worms H, Fracasso PM. A phase II study of UCN-01 in combination with irinotecan in patients with metastatic triple negative breast cancer. *Breast Cancer Res Treat* 2013; **137**: 483-492 [PMID: 23242585 DOI: 10.1007/s10549-012-2378-9]

42 **Li C**, Qi L, Bellail AC, Hao C, Liu T. PD-0332991 induces G1 arrest of colorectal carcinoma cells through inhibition of the cyclin-dependent kinase-6 and retinoblastoma protein axis. *Oncol Lett* 2014; **7**: 1673-1678 [PMID: 24765199 DOI: 10.3892/ol.2014.1957]

43 **Fry DW**, Harvey PJ, Keller PR, Elliott WL, Meade M, Trachet E, Albassam M, Zheng X, Leopold WR, Pryer NK, Toogood PL. Specific inhibition of cyclin-dependent kinase 4/6 by PD 0332991 and associated antitumor activity in human tumor xenografts. *Mol Cancer Ther* 2004; **3**: 1427-1438 [PMID: 15542782]

44 **Flaherty KT**, Lorusso PM, Demichele A, Abramson VG, Courtney R, Randolph SS, Shaik MN, Wilner KD, O'Dwyer PJ, Schwartz GK. Phase I, dose-escalation trial of the oral cyclin-dependent kinase 4/6 inhibitor PD 0332991, administered using a 21-day schedule in patients with advanced cancer. *Clin Cancer Res* 2012; **18**: 568-576 [PMID: 22090362 DOI: 10.1158/1078-0432.ccr-11-0509]

45 **Schwartz GK**, LoRusso PM, Dickson MA, Randolph SS, Shaik MN, Wilner KD, Courtney R, O'Dwyer PJ. Phase I study of PD 0332991, a cyclin-dependent kinase inhibitor, administered in 3-week cycles (Schedule 2/1). *Br J Cancer* 2011; **104**: 1862-1868 [PMID: 21610706 DOI: 10.1038/bjc.2011.177]

46 **Miller DM**, Flaherty KT. Cyclin-dependent kinases as therapeutic targets in melanoma. *Pigment Cell Melanoma Res* 2014; **27**: 351-365 [PMID: 24405945 DOI: 10.1111/pcmr.12211]

47 **Malínková V**, Vylíčil J, Kryštof V. Cyclin-dependent kinase inhibitors for cancer therapy: a patent review (2009 - 2014). *Expert Opin Ther Pat* 2015; **25**: 953-970 [PMID: 26161698 DOI: 10.1517/13543776.2015.1045414]

48 **Bose P**, Simmons GL, Grant S. Cyclin-dependent kinase inhibitor therapy for hematologic malignancies. *Expert Opin Investig Drugs* 2013; **22**: 723-738 [PMID: 23647051 DOI: 10.1517/13543784.2013.789859]

49 **Mariaule G**, Belmont P. Cyclin-dependent kinase inhibitors as marketed anticancer drugs: where are we now? A short survey. *Molecules* 2014; **19**: 14366-14382 [PMID: 25215591 DOI: 10.3390/molecules190914366]

50 **Bixby D**, Talpaz M. Seeking the causes and solutions to imatinib-resistance in chronic myeloid leukemia. *Leukemia* 2011; **25**: 7-22 [PMID: 21102425 DOI: 10.1038/leu.2010.238]

51 **Wang WL**, Conley A, Reynoso D, Nolden L, Lazar AJ, George S, Trent JC. Mechanisms of resistance to imatinib and sunitinib in gastrointestinal stromal tumor. *Cancer Chemother Pharmacol* 2011; **67** Suppl 1: S15-S24 [PMID: 21181476 DOI: 10.1007/s00280-010-1513-8]

52 **Krystof V**, Uldrijan S. Cyclin-dependent kinase inhibitors as anticancer drugs. *Curr Drug Targets* 2010; **11**: 291-302 [PMID: 20210754]

53 **Karthiga A**, Tripathi SK, Shanmugam R, Suryanarayanan V, Singh SK. Targeting the cyclin-binding groove site to inhibit the catalytic activity of CDK2/cyclin A complex using p27(KIP1)-derived peptidomimetic inhibitors. *J Chem Biol* 2015; **8**: 11-24 [PMID: 25584078 DOI: 10.1007/s12154-014-0124-y]

54 **Chen YN**, Sharma SK, Ramsey TM, Jiang L, Martin MS, Baker K, Adams PD, Bair KW, Kaelin WG. Selective killing of transformed cells by cyclin/cyclin-dependent kinase 2 antagonists. *Proc Natl Acad Sci USA* 1999; **96**: 4325-4329 [PMID: 10200261]

55 **Biondi RM**, Nebreda AR. Signalling specificity of Ser/Thr protein kinases through docking-site-mediated interactions. *Biochem J* 2003; **372**: 1-13 [PMID: 12600273 DOI: 10.1042/bj20021641]

56 **Canela N**, Orzáez M, Fucho R, Mateo F, Gutierrez R, Pineda-Lucena A, Bachs O, Pérez-Payá E. Identification of an hexapeptide that binds to a surface pocket in cyclin A and inhibits the catalytic activity of the complex cyclin-dependent kinase 2-cyclin A. *J Biol Chem* 2006; **281**: 35942-35953 [PMID: 17001081 DOI: 10.1074/jbc.M603511200]

57 **Orzáez M**, Guevara T, Sancho M, Pérez-Payá E. Intrinsic caspase-8 activation mediates sensitization of erlotinib-resistant tumor cells to erlotinib/cell-cycle inhibitors combination treatment. *Cell Death Dis* 2012; **3**: e415 [PMID: 23096116 DOI: 10.1038/cddis.2012.155]

P- Reviewer: Beaulieu JF **S- Editor**: Yu J
L- Editor: A **E- Editor**: Liu XM

World Journal of Gastroenterology

Submit a Manuscript: http://www.wjgnet.com/esps/
Help Desk: http://www.wjgnet.com/esps/helpdesk.aspx
DOI: 10.3748/wjg.v22.i7.2165

World J Gastroenterol 2016 February 21; 22(7): 2165-2178
ISSN 1007-9327 (print) ISSN 2219-2840 (online)

TOPIC HIGHLIGHT

2016 Inflammatory Bowel Disease: Global view

Diagnostic imaging and radiation exposure in inflammatory bowel disease

Nekisa Zakeri, Richard CG Pollok

Nekisa Zakeri, Department of Gastroenterology, St George's Hospital, London SW17 0QT, United Kingdom

Richard CG Pollok, Department of Gastroenterology, Consultant Gastroenterologist and Honorary Senior Lecturer, St George's Hospital, London SW17 0QT, United Kingdom

Author contributions: Zakeri N and Pollok RCG both contributed to the literature analysis and writing of this manuscript.

Conflict-of-interest statement: The authors have no conflict of interest to report.

Correspondence to: Richard CG Pollok, PhD, FRCP, BSc, DTM&H, Department of Gastroenterology, Consultant Gastroenterologist and Honorary Senior Lecturer, St George's Hospital, London SW17 0QT, United Kingdom. richard.pollok@nhs.net
Telephone: +44-208-7251206
Fax: +44-208-7250830

Received: September 21, 2015
Peer-review started: September 23, 2015
First decision: October 14, 2015
Revised: November 2, 2015
Accepted: December 12, 2015
Article in press: December 12, 2015
Published online: February 21, 2016

Abstract

Diagnostic imaging plays a key role in the diagnosis and management of inflammatory bowel disease (IBD). However due to the relapsing nature of IBD, there is growing concern that IBD patients may be exposed to potentially harmful cumulative levels of ionising radiation in their lifetime, increasing malignant potential in a population already at risk. In this review we explore the proportion of IBD patients exposed to high cumulative radiation doses, the risk factors associated with higher radiation exposures, and we compare conventional diagnostic imaging with newer radiation-free imaging techniques used in the evaluation of patients with IBD. While computed tomography (CT) performs well as an imaging modality for IBD, the effective radiation dose is considerably higher than other abdominal imaging modalities. It is increasingly recognised that CT imaging remains responsible for the majority of diagnostic medical radiation to which IBD patients are exposed. Magnetic resonance imaging (MRI) and small intestine contrast enhanced ultrasonography (SICUS) have now emerged as suitable radiation-free alternatives to CT imaging, with comparable diagnostic accuracy. The routine use of MRI and SICUS for the clinical evaluation of patients with known or suspected small bowel Crohn's disease is to be encouraged wherever possible. More provision is needed for out-of-hours radiation-free imaging modalities to reduce the need for CT.

Key words: Diagnostic medical radiation; Inflammatory bowel disease; Small bowel follow-through; Computerised tomography; Nuclear medicine; Magnetic resonance enterography; Small intestine contrast-enhanced ultrasonography

Core tip: Due to the chronic and relapsing nature of inflammatory bowel disease (IBD), patients are at risk of exposure to potentially harmful cumulative radiation

doses in their lifetime. Computed tomography (CT) imaging remains responsible for the majority of this radiation exposure. As well as new reduced radiation CT imaging techniques, radiation-free alternatives magnetic resonance imaging and small intestine contrast enhanced ultrasonography have emerged, offering comparable diagnostic accuracy. In this review we explore the proportion of IBD patients exposed to high cumulative radiation doses, the factors associated with higher radiation exposures, and we compare conventional imaging with newer radiation-free imaging techniques for the evaluation of patients with IBD.

Zakeri N, Pollok RCG. Diagnostic imaging and radiation exposure in inflammatory bowel disease. *World J Gastroenterol* 2016; 22(7): 2165-2178 Available from: URL: http://www.wjgnet.com/1007-9327/full/v22/i7/2165.htm DOI: http://dx.doi.org/10.3748/wjg.v22.i7.2165

INTRODUCTION

Inflammatory bowel disease (IBD), consisting of ulcerative colitis (UC) and Crohn's disease (CD), is a chronic relapsing-remitting inflammatory disorder of the gastrointestinal tract. The prevalence of IBD is increasing worldwide, with 2.2 million and 1.4 million people affected in Europe and United States respectively[1].

Diagnostic imaging is required to aid the diagnosis of IBD, assess disease extent and severity, detect complications including extra-intestinal manifestations, and monitor response to treatment. Due to the relapsing nature of IBD, multiple imaging studies are often required. Despite this, in clinical practice cumulative exposure to radiation is not routinely monitored.

Patients with IBD have an increased lifetime risk of developing colorectal and small intestinal cancers, irrespective of diagnostic radiation exposure[2,3]. There is growing concern that repeated X-ray based imaging may additionally expose this typically young cohort of patients to harmful cumulative levels of ionising radiation, further increasing their lifetime cancer risk.

In this article we review the proportion of IBD patients exposed to potentially harmful cumulative radiation doses and the risk factors associated with higher radiation exposures. We explore and compare conventional diagnostic imaging and newer radiation-free imaging techniques for the evaluation of patients with IBD.

RADIATION EXPOSURE AND CANCER RISK

Extensive study of the atomic bomb survivors from Hiroshima and Nagasaki has formed the basis for quantitative estimates of radiation-induced cancer risk. In this large cohort of survivors, the rates of solid cancer deaths were positively associated with higher radiation doses and younger age of exposure[4,5]. In a 2012 study of the atomic bomb survivors, the relative risk of solid cancers increased by 29% per decade decrease in the initial age of radiation exposure[5]. Younger people appear to be inherently more radiosensitive, and have more remaining life-years during which a cancer may develop[4].

It is estimated that diagnostic medical radiation (DMR) exposure may be responsible for up to 2% of cancers worldwide[6]. Younger patients and females appear to have the greatest radiation-induced cancer risk[7]. Epidemiological data suggests that ionising radiation levels as low as 50 millisieverts (mSv) have been implicated in the development of solid tumours[8]. Potentially harmful radiation exposure is, therefore, commonly defined as cumulative effective dose (CED) > 50 mSv; the equivalent of five computed tomography (CT) abdominal-pelvis scans. A reference table comparing radiation exposure doses of common diagnostic gastrointestinal imaging techniques is included in Table 1[9,10].

Table 1 Radiation doses from gastrointestinal imaging studies in comparison to background radiation, condensed from RadiologyInfo.org[9] and Mettler *et al*[10]

Imaging procedure	Average effective dose (mSv)	Time period for equivalent effective dose from natural background radiation[1]
Multiphase CT abdomen and pelvis	31	10.3 yr
PET/CT	25	8.3 yr
CT Abdomen and Pelvis	10	3.3 yr
CT Colonography	10	3.3 yr
CT Abdomen	8	2.7 yr
Barium Enema	8	2.7 yr
Small bowel follow-through	5	1.7 yr
X-ray abdomen	0.7	2.8 mo

[1]Based on the assumption of an average effective dose of 3 mSv per year from natural background radiation. CT: Computed tomography; PET: Positron emission tomography.

CUMULATIVE RADIATION EXPOSURE IN IBD PATIENTS

Several published studies have attempted to quantify the proportion of IBD patients exposed to potentially harmful cumulative levels of ionising radiation (summarised in Table 2). Desmond *et al*[11] first evaluated DMR exposure in 354 patients with CD in a single tertiary centre in Ireland. CT imaging accounted for 77.2% of the total DMR exposure. The mean CED was 36.1 mSv and exceeded 75 mSv in 15.5% of patients. More recently, a meta-analysis by Chatu *et*

Table 2 Quantification of the cumulative effective dose of diagnostic radiation received by IBD patients, and factors associated with high cumulative radiation exposure (cumulative effective dose > 50 mSv); adapted from Chatu *et al*[12] with permission

Study	Number of patients (*n*)	Country	Design	Patient population	Outcome CED ⩾ 50 mSv	Mean/Median CED (mSv)	Factors associated with high radiation exposure
Newnham *et al*[59], 2007	100 (62 CD, 37 UC, 1 indeterminate colitis)	Australia	Retrospective study, single tertiary centre, patients recruited consecutively from clinic	Adult (16-84 yr)	11/100 (11%) 9 CD, 2 UC	Median CED 10 mSv	Assessed: age, gender, disease, disease duration, previous surgery, immunomodulator use, referral source Significant: none
Desmond *et al*[11], 2008	354 CD	Ireland	Retrospective study, single tertiary centre, patients recruited from IBD database July 1992-June 2007	Adult and paediatric (8.6-78.3 yr)	CED ⩾ 75 mSv in 55/354 patients (15.5%)	Mean CED 36.1 mSv	Assessed: age, gender, smoking, FH, disease distribution, disease behaviour, medication, surgical history Significant: age < 17 at diagnosis, upper GI tract disease, penetrating disease, requirement for Ⅳ steroids, infliximab use, multiple surgeries
Peloquin *et al*[18], 2008	215 (103 CD, 112 UC)	United States	Retrospective study, population based inception cohort diagnosed between 1991 to 2001 from Olmsted County	Adult and paediatric (1.2-91.4 yr)	N/A	Median CED CD: 26.6 mSv UC: 10.5 mSv	N/A
Levi *et al*[60], 2009	324 (199 CD, 125 UC)	Israel	Retrospective study, single tertiary centre, patients diagnosed Jan 1999-Dec 2006, recruited from IBD database	Adult and paediatric ⩽ 17 yr (18) > 18 yr (306)	23/324 (7.1%)	Mean CED CD: 21.1mSv UC: 15.1mSv	Assessed: age, surgery, diagnosis, medical therapy, disease duration, gender Significant: CD, surgery, prednisolone use, disease duration, first year of disease, age
Palmer *et al*[61], 2009	1593 (965 CD, 628 UC)	United States	Retrospective study, population based cohort recruited from insurance claims database Jan 2003-December 2004	Paediatric (2-18 yr)	N/A (34% CD, 23% UC exposed to moderate radiation - at least 1 CT or 3 fluoroscopic procedures)	N/A	Assessed: age, gender, region, hospitalisation, surgery, ED encounter, medication Significant: hospitalisation, inpatient GI surgery, ED encounter, use of steroids
Kroeker *et al*[62], 2011	553 (371 CD, 182 UC)	Canada	Retrospective study, single tertiary centre, patients diagnosed 2003-2008, recruited from IBD database	Adult and paediatric (15-84 yr)	28/553 (5%) 27 CD, 1 UC	Mean CED CD: 14.3 mSv UC: 5.9 mSv	Assessed: age at diagnosis, gender, disease distribution, previous surgery Significant: previous surgery
Fuchs *et al*[63], 2011	257 (171 CD, 86 UC)	United States	Retrospective study single tertiary centre, patients reviewed Jan-May 2008	Paediatric (< 18 yr)	15/257 (5.8%) 14 CD, 1UC	Mean CED CD: 20.5 mSv UC: 11.7 mSv	Assessed in CD cohort: gender, disease behaviour, previous surgery, disease duration, elevated platelet count at diagnosis Significant: previous surgery, elevated platelet count at diagnosis
Sauer *et al*[64], 2011	117 (86 CD, 31 UC)	United States	Retrospective study, single tertiary centre, patients diagnosed 2002-2008	Paediatric (2-18 yr)	6/117 (5%) 6 CD	Median CED CD: 15.6 mSv UC: 7.2 mSv	N/A

Huang *et al*[65], 2011	105 (61 CD, 32 UC, 12 indeterminate colitis)	United States	Single tertiary paediatric centre, patients identified from medical records	Paediatric cohort (11 mo-18 yr)	6/105 (6%)	Mean CED 15 mSv	Assessed: surgery, disease type, disease location, racioethnic background, anti TNF agents, use of immunomodulators, hospital admissions, age at diagnosis Significant: CD, small bowel involvement, black ethnicity, number of hospital admissions, previous surgery, anti TNF alpha use
Butcher *et al*[17], 2012	280	United Kingdom	Retrospective study, single tertiary centre, consecutive patients attending IBD clinic	Adult cohort	6.3% CD	Mean CED 10.17 mSv Median CED 4.12 mSv	Significant: smoking status, disease duration, previous surgery
Jung *et al*[15], 2013	2199 (777 CD, 1422 UC)	South Korea	Retrospective study, multicentre conducted at 13 university hospitals in South Korea, patients diagnosed July 1987-Jan 2012 included	Adult cohort (Mean age: CD 29.2 yr; UC 42.2 yr)	34.7% CD, 8.4% UC	Mean CED CD: 53.6 mSv UC: 16.4 mSv	Assessed: gender, age at diagnosis, disease duration, disease extent, surgery, hospitalisation, 5-ASA use, steroids, immunomodulator use Significant: For CD - longer disease duration, ileocolonic disease, upper GI tract involvement, surgery, hospitalisation, steroids For UC - surgery, hospitalisation, infliximab use
Chatu *et al*[14], 2013	415 (217 CD, 198 UC)	United Kingdom	Retrospective study, single tertiary centre, patients consecutively recruited from clinic Jan 2011- June 2011	Adult cohort (Mean age: CD 30.8 yr; UC 36.9 yr)	32/415 (8%) 29 CD, 3 UC	Median CED CD: 7.2 mSv UC: 2.8 mSv	Assessed: gender, age at diagnosis, disease type, steroid use within 3 mo diagnosis, use of immunomodulators or biologics, extraintestinal features, IBD related surgery Significant: males, IBD related surgery
Estay *et al*[13], 2015	325 (82 CD, 243 UC)	Chile	Retrospective study, patients recruited from IBD Registry 2011-2013	Adult cohort (16-86 yr)	22/325 (6.8%): CD 16 (19.5%); UC 6 (2.5%)	Mean CED 11.97 mSv CD: 29.9 mSv UC: 5.92 mSv	Assessed in CD cohort only: age at diagnosis, disease duration, disease location, disease behaviour, perianal disease, surgery, hospitalisation, medications Significant: longer disease duration, ileal involvement, stricturing disease, treatment with steroids and biological agents, CD related hospitalisation or surgery

UC: Ulcerative colitis; CD: Crohn's disease; IBD: Inflammatory bowel disease; CED: Cumulative effective dose; mSv: Millisieverts of radiation; ED: Emergency department; FH: Family history.

al[12], evaluated six studies including a total of 1704 IBD patients. It reported a pooled estimate of 8.4% of IBD patients receiving high dose radiation exposure (CED > 50 mSv). More patients with CD (11.1%) were exposed to high cumulative radiation doses (CED > 50 mSv) than patients with UC (2%)[12].

Similar trends have been found in studies following this meta-analysis. A 2015 retrospective review of 325 IBD patients in Chile, reported 19.5% of patients with CD and 2.4% of patients with UC, to be exposed to CED > 50 mSv[13]. A recent United Kingdom retrospective study of 415 patients with IBD referred from primary care, reported a median total CED of 7.2 mSv in CD patients and 2.8 mSv in UC patients, with 8% of IBD patients overall exposed to CED > 50 mSv. Kaplan Meier analysis projected a probability

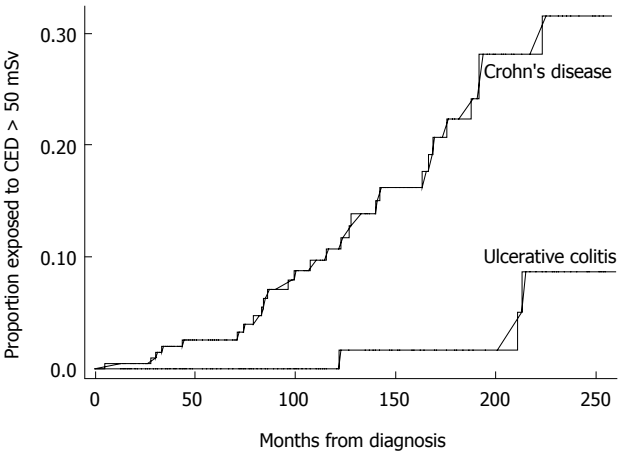


Figure 1 Kaplan Meier analysis showing the cumulative probability of being exposed to cumulative effective dose > 50 mSv from diagnosis according to inflammatory bowel disease type (Chatu *et al*[14], 2013).

of exposure to CED > 50 mSv of 6% and 14% at 10 years and 15 years from IBD diagnosis respectively (Figure 1)[14].

Concerningly, a retrospective study of IBD patients in South Korea, conducted across 13 university hospitals, reported even higher proportions of patients exposed to potentially harmful radiation levels. Thirty-four point seven percent of patients with CD and 8.4% of patients with UC were exposed to CED > 50 mSv[15]. CT imaging accounted for the vast majority of this radiation exposure (81.6% of the total CED in CD *vs* 71.2% in UC)[15], indicating that overuse of CT imaging remains a concern worldwide, and may reflect limited availability or lack of awareness of preferable imaging modalities.

Despite the high proportion of IBD patients exposed to high radiation doses, cumulative radiation exposures are not routinely recorded in clinical practice. The creation of IBD radiation diaries has been proposed to log total radiation exposures[16], and improve recognition among physicians where a patient has previously been exposed to ionising radiation.

FACTORS ASSOCIATED WITH INCREASED RADIATION EXPOSURE IN IBD PATIENTS

Risk factors for high radiation exposure in IBD patients have been widely studied[11-15,17]. In a cohort of 354 adult and paediatric patients with CD, Desmond *et al*[11] identified that patients diagnosed under the age of 17, patients with upper gastrointestinal (GI) disease, penetrating disease, multiple surgeries, or those that required intravenous steroids or infliximab, were at greater risk of receiving high cumulative radiation exposure. Following this, a 2012 meta-analysis of five studies evaluating risk factors in 2627 IBD patients, found a significant association with only previous IBD related surgery and corticosteroid use. The pooled adjusted odds ratios were 5.4 and 2.4, respectively[12].

Across studies, patients with CD consistently appear to receive higher cumulative radiation exposures than patients with UC, possibly due to a greater likelihood of extraluminal complications commonly examined by CT. After adjusting for time since symptom onset, a retrospective study by Peloquin *et al*[18] (2008) found patients with CD to be exposed to 2.46 times more diagnostic radiation than patients with UC (median CED 26.6 mSv in CD *vs* 10.5 mSv in UC).

A summary of outcomes from studies investigating predictive factors for high radiation exposure in IBD patients is provided in Table 2. While there are discrepancies regarding the significance of some associations, the majority of the risk factors described are surrogate markers of disease activity and severity. It is therefore apparent that patients with more severe disease, who are more likely to receive corticosteroids and require surgery, undergo more diagnostic imaging including greater use of CT imaging, to guide further management.

DIAGNOSTIC IMAGING MODALITIES IN IBD

Small bowel follow-through

A 2011 survey revealed small bowel follow-through (SBFT) to be the most frequently performed investigation in the United Kingdom for the assessment of small bowel CD[19]. CT was predominantly performed for suspected extra-luminal complications or obstruction[19]. SBFT and small bowel enteroclysis (SBE) have, for many years, been the routine first-line imaging modalities to evaluate small bowel involvement in patients with suspected or confirmed CD. Both SBFT and SBE have similar sensitivities (85%-95%) and specificities (89%-94%) for detecting radiological features of CD[20]. SBFT is usually preferred for patient tolerance, since nasal or oral intubation is not required. However, these techniques both employ ionising radiation and appear to have lower diagnostic accuracy compared to newer cross-sectional imaging modalities[21,22].

In a 2005 United States study, SBFT had a lower diagnostic yield for mild to moderate CD compared to CT enterography, video capsule endoscopy and ileoscopy[21]. A 2009 Korean study of 30 patients with CD, found a significantly lower sensitivity of SBFT for the detection of extra-enteric complications ($P < 0.01$), although no significant difference in the detection of active terminal ileitis, compared to CT and magnetic resonance enterography (MRE)[22]. Barium based studies may still have a role to play in the evaluation of small bowel CD, but are increasingly being replaced by alternative imaging modalities such as CT, MRE and small bowel ultrasound.

CT

In the United States, CT has largely superseded

SBFT as the preferred first-line imaging modality for CD. Between 2002 and 2007, there was a reported 840% increase in the use of CT enterography in IBD patients in Minnesota, United States[6]. Similarly, a 310% increase in use of abdominal CT imaging was reported in a United Kingdom study of IBD patients between 1990 and 2010[14]. CT imaging offers the advantages of widespread availability, rapid acquisition of images, high sensitivity and specificity for the detection of intramural and extra-intestinal disease, as well as being well tolerated by patients[4]. The effective radiation dose is, however, considerably higher than other abdominal imaging modalities (Table 1)[9,10]. The United States National Research Council estimates that one out of every 1000 patients undergoing a 10 mSv CT scan will develop a radiation-induced cancer in their lifetime[23].

Conventional CT abdominal-pelvis imaging is typically used for the detection of extra-intestinal complications of IBD, such as abscesses, fistula, bowel obstruction or perforation. It may have a limited role in the assessment of colonic disease activity. A small study by Patel *et al*[24] of 23 patients with UC (2012), identified positive correlation of contrast-enhanced CT features (bowel wall thickening, mucosal hyper-enhancement and mural stratification), compared with clinical assessment ($P < 0.05$) and colonoscopy ($P < 0.0001$) in evaluating UC disease severity. However, only increasing bowel wall thickness on CT correlated with histological disease severity[24].

Conventional CT is limited in its assessment of small bowel inflammation due to artefact produced from collapsed bowel loops. CT enterography (CTE) is a newer imaging technique, combining high resolution CT scanning with multiplanar reconstructions after administration of an oral and parenteral contrast which acts to promote bowel loop distension. This improves visualisation of the small bowel mucosa, enabling more accurate assessment of small bowel disease activity[25]. High correlation has been shown between quantitative measures of bowel wall thickness and terminal ileal mural attenuation at CTE compared with ileocolonoscopy and histological analysis in active CD[26]. Furthermore, CTE may be a useful adjunct to ileocolonoscopy. In a 2012 study of 153 patients with CD in the United States, CTE detected active small bowel disease in 36 of the 67 patients (54%) with normal ileoscopy appearances. The negative ileoscopy results were largely due to disease "skipping" of the terminal ileum, or confinement to intramural or mesenteric distal ileum. CTE also detected extra-colonic CD in 26% of patients[27].

Data for the benefit of CTE in assessing colonic disease is limited. A small study analysing CTE in 35 patients with inflammatory colitis, identified a sensitivity of 93% and specificity of 91% for the detection of moderate to severe disease in well-distended colons. However, there was a tendency for CTE to underestimate the full extent and severity of colonic disease[28].

CT colonography (CTC) is an emerging imaging technique developed for colonic evaluation. While colonoscopy remains standard practice for the assessment of colonic disease, CTC may offer advantages where colonoscopy is incomplete or contra-indicated. The majority of data comparing CTC and colonoscopy has been obtained from studies detecting colorectal cancer[25]. Only a few studies have investigated the efficacy of CTC in IBD, hence its role is not clearly defined. A small German prospective study of 21 IBD patients suggested sensitivities of 63.6% and 100% for the identification of acute and chronic IBD by CTC, with a specificity of 75% and 100% respectively[29]. CTC requires full bowel preparation, as well as air or carbon dioxide insufflation for colonic distension, and therefore is not always well tolerated. There have been reported cases of CTC-induced bowel perforation as well. Although the perforation rate is low, at around 0.04%, CTC is generally avoided in the acute phase of IBD[30].

Unfortunately while CT performs very well as an imaging modality there is an emerging recognition that it is responsible for the majority of the total radiation dose to which IBD patients are exposed[11-13,15]. Indeed in a recent study from Chile, abdominal-pelvic CT and CT enteroclysis accounted for 93.6% of the total CED exposure[13]. Excessive use of CT imaging in IBD patients presenting to the emergency department (ED) has also raised concern. In a study from the United States, no significant findings were observed in 32.8% of CT imaging studies carried out in IBD patients in the ED[31]. Preliminary algorithms to avoid inappropriate use of CT imaging in IBD patients presenting to the ED have been proposed and require validation[31,32].

Reduced radiation dose CT

Due to concerns regarding high radiation exposure from CT imaging, recent developments in technology have paved the way for strategies to reduce the radiation dose associated with CT imaging, without compromising diagnostic imaging quality. These techniques include tube current (mA) modulation, lowering tube potential modulation (kV), and minimising the number of dynamic CT phases[33]. Multiphase CT abdomen and pelvis imaging exposes a patient to around 31 mSv, equivalent to over three times the radiation dose of standard CT abdominal-pelvis imaging[9]. Single-phase CTE is in most cases believed to be sufficient to evaluate small bowel CD[33]. Reduced radiation CT techniques may help to lessen cumulative radiation exposures and bridge the gap in situations where radiation-free imaging is not widely available.

Nuclear medicine imaging

Technetium-99-m hexamethyl-propyleneamine oxime (99mTc-HMPAO) labeled white blood cell scintigraphy is an imaging technique that employs radioactive isotopes

to detect active inflammation[34]. It may be used in IBD to assess disease activity, but due to limited availability and high cost, it is not routinely performed. 99mTc-HMPAO white cell scintigraphy can visualise the entire GI tract and emits a lower radiation dose than CT (2-4 mSv)[35]. Reported uses include evaluating responses to treatment and differentiating between disease relapse and fibrotic tissue post surgery[36]. It also has a role in assessing disease extent in acute severe colitis, where colonoscopy is usually contra-indicated. A United Kingdom study by Subramanian *et al*[37] of 135 patients with UC, noted substantial correlation (k = 0.7) between 99mTc-HMPAO white cell scintigraphy and histological assessment of the proximal extent of disease involvement in patients with UC. Scintigraphy performed better than colonoscopy (P = 0.02) in assessing patients with more extensive colitis, while colonoscopy predicted disease extent more accurately in patients with limited colitis (P = 0.002)[37].

Positron emission tomography (PET) is a non-invasive nuclear imaging technique that provides three dimensional, quantitative imaging. It is primarily used for tumour staging, though preliminary data has shown it may have some value in the diagnosis of IBD[38,39]. PET imaging is expensive and its availability is limited to certain centres. Data on the potential role of Fluorine-18-Fluorodeoxyglucose/PET (^{18}F-FDG/PET) and PET/CT in IBD is limited and requires further review. Routine use of PET/CT for IBD assessment is unlikely due to the high doses of radiation involved (Table 1)[9,10].

RADIATION-FREE DIAGNOSTIC IMAGING MODALITIES

In view of the concerns over cumulative radiation exposure in IBD patients, alternative radiation-free imaging strategies have emerged as a focus of interest, and are increasingly being favoured in clinical practice. Studies comparing the diagnostic accuracies for radiation-free imaging *vs* conventional imaging modalities in small bowel CD are summarised in Table 3.

A 2008 meta-analysis by Horsthuis *et al*[40] comparing magnetic resonance imaging (MRI), ultrasonography (US), scintigraphy and CT across 33 studies, showed high per-patient sensitivity for the diagnosis of IBD with no significant differences between imaging modalities. Mean sensitivity estimates were 93%, 90%, 88% and 84% for MRI, US, white cell scintigraphy and CT respectively. Per-patient specificity was also high and comparable across imaging modalities: 93%, 96%, 85% and 95% for MRI, US, scintigraphy and CT respectively. The only significant difference was a lower specificity for scintigraphy compared to US (P = 0.009)[40]. Mean per-bowel-segment sensitivity estimates were lower across all imaging modalities (70%, 74%, 77% and 68% for MRI, US, scintigraphy and CT respectively). Per-bowel-segment analysis showed CT to be significantly less sensitive and specific compared to MRI (P = 0.037) and scintigraphy (P = 0.006)[40]. More recently, a 2011 systematic review by Panés *et al*[41] also compared US, MRI and CT for the assessment of disease location and extension in CD. Overall, US had superior diagnostic accuracy for the detection of disease localised to the terminal ileum and colon, while MRI performed better than US for the detection of CD lesions in the jejunum and proximal ileum. CT and MRI demonstrated similar diagnostic accuracy for the assessment of CD extension and activity[41].

MRE

MRE is a non-invasive technique used to obtain cross-sectional imaging of the small bowel without exposure to diagnostic medical radiation. MRE provides superior soft tissue contrast resolution compared to CTE, allowing detailed visualisation of inflammatory and fibrotic bowel wall[42]. A 2011 Italian prospective study by Fiorino *et al*[43] compared MRE and CTE in 44 patients with ileocolonic CD. They found comparable accuracy between MRE and CTE in localising CD, assessing bowel wall thickening, bowel wall enhancement and enteroenteric fistula. However, MRE was superior to CTE in detecting strictures (P = 0.04) and ileal wall enhancement (P = 0.02). A 2014 meta-analysis by Qiu *et al*[44] of 290 CD patients across six studies, found no significant difference between the diagnostic accuracy of MRE and CTE in detecting active small bowel CD and its complications including fistula, stenosis and abscess formation.

Given its proven diagnostic accuracy, updated guidelines by the European Crohn's and Colitis Organisation and the European Society of Gastrointestinal and Abdominal Radiology, advocate increased routine usage of MRI for the assessment of small bowel CD, to reduce radiation exposure in this cohort of patients[45].

Recently, diagnostic indices from MRE have been developed to attempt to quantify disease severity. The magnetic resonance index of activity score has demonstrated a significant correlation with the CD endoscopic index of severity[42]. In perianal CD, MRI remains the preferred imaging modality, permitting accurate diagnosis and staging of perianal fistula[42]. Drawbacks of MR imaging, however, include higher procedure costs, lengthy acquisition times and limited availability, particularly out of routine working hours.

The efficacy of MR Colonography (MRC) for the evaluation of colonic disease activity in IBD is less well defined. A 2005 study comparing MRC using contrast gadolinium enemas, to standard colonoscopy in 22 patients with suspected or known IBD revealed disappointing results, with a per-segment sensitivity of 58.8% and 31.6% for identifying colonic inflammation in UC and CD respectively[46]. Other studies have

Table 3 Comparison of diagnostic accuracies of radiation-free imaging (ultrasonography/magnetic resonance imaging) *vs* conventional ionising radiation imaging for the evaluation of small bowel Crohn's disease

Study	Country	Number of patients (*n*)	Design	Imaging compared	Study findings
Low *et al*[66], 2000	United States	26 CD	Prospective study, single centre	Contrast enhanced MR with single phase CT using findings from surgery, barium studies, endoscopy and histology as reference standard	Side-by-side comparison: MR imaging superior than helical CT in depiction of normal bowel wall, mural thickening or enhancement and overall GI tract evaluation MR images showed 55 (85%) and 52 (80%) of 65 abnormal bowel segments for the two observers, compared with helical CT which showed 39 (60%) and 43 (65%) of bowel segments affected by CD ($P < 0.001$, $P < 0.05$)
Maconi *et al*[67], 2003	Italy	128 CD	Prospective study, consecutive CD patients who underwent surgery immediately after diagnostic work-up	US, barium studies, CT to detect internal fistulae and intra-abdominal abscesses compared to intraoperative findings	Detecting internal fistula: comparable diagnostic accuracy of US (85.2%) and barium X-ray (84.8%) studies Sensitivity US (71.4%), X-ray (69.6%), Specificity US (95.8%), X-ray (95.8%) Detection of abscesses: US (90.9%), CT (86.4%) Overall diagnostic accuracy higher with CT than US (91.8% *vs* 86.9%) due to false positives with US
Parente *et al*[49], 2004	Italy	102 CD	Prospective study, consecutive patients with proven CD by BE and ileocolonoscopy enrolled from IBD clinic Dec 2002-July 2003 Adult cohort (⩾ 18 yr)	Conventional US *vs* oral contrast enhanced US, compared to BE and ileocolonoscopy as gold standard	Per segment analysis: Superior diagnostic accuracy of contrast US in detecting small bowel CD. Sensitivity: conventional US 91.4%, contrast US 96.1% Good correlation of disease extent measurements with BE: US ($r = 0.83$), contrast US ($r = 0.94$) Higher sensitivity and specificity with contrast US in detecting ⩾ 1 small bowel strictures: Sensitivity: US (74%), contrast US (88.8%) Specificity: US (93.3%), contrast Us (97.3%) US and contrast US more accurate in detecting internal fistulas than BE, but no significant difference in diagnostic accuracy between US and contrast US. US (80%), contrast US (86%), BE (67%) Significantly improved interobserver variability between sonographers with contrast US for detecting bowel wall thickness and disease location
Calabrese *et al*[55], 2005	Italy	28 CD	Prospective study, consecutive patients recruited from IBD clinic Adult cohort (age range 21-60 yr)	SICUS (performed by a sonologist of 1 yr experience) *vs* TUS (performed by an experienced sonologist of 10 yr experience), compared to SBE as gold standard	Sensitivity for detection of small bowel lesions: 96% TUS, 100% SICUS Greater correlation of extension of lesions between SICUS and SBE ($r = 0.88$) *vs* TUS and SBE ($r = 0.64$) Sensitivity for detection of ⩾ 1 stricture: 76% TUS, 94% SICUS Sensitivity and specificity for assessing prestenotic dilatation: 50% and 100% for TUS, *vs* 100% and 90% for SICUS
Horsthuis *et al*[40], 2007	Amsterdam	1735 (sample size 15-440)	Meta-analysis of 33 prospective studies published between Jan 1993- Feb 2006 Adult and paediatric cohort (age range 2-86 yr)	US, MRI, scintigraphy, CT US evaluated in 11 studies, MRI in 11, scintigraphy in 9 and CT in 7 studies	Per-patient analysis: Significantly lower specificity for scintigraphy *vs* US. No significant difference between mean sensitivities for diagnosis of IBD Sensitivities: 89.7% US, 93% MRI, 87.8% scintigraphy, 84.3% CT Specificities: 95.6% US, 92.8% MR, 84.5% scintigraphy, 95.1% CT Per bowel segment analysis: Significantly lower sensitivity and specificity for CT compared to scintigraphy and MRI. Sensitivities: 73.5% US, 70.4% MRI, 77.3% scintigraphy, 67.4% CT. Specificities: 92.9% US, 94% MRI, 90.3% scintigraphy, 90.2% CT

Lee *et al*[22], 2009	South Korea	30 CD	Prospective study, single centre, consecutive patients with known or suspected CD enrolled Adult cohort (age range 18-44 yr)	MRE, CT, SBFT for detection of active small bowel inflammation and extra enteric complications with ileocolonoscopy as reference standard	No significant difference between CTE, MRE and SBFT for the detection of active terminal ileitis. Sensitivity CTE (89%), MRE (83%), SBFT (67%-72%) Significantly higher sensitivity for MRE (100%) and CTE (100%) compared to SBFT (32% reader 1, 37% reader 2) for the detection of extra enteric complications
Siddiki *et al*[68], 2009	United States	33 CD	Prospective blinded study, single centre, consecutive patients with suspected active small bowel CD April 2005-May 2008 Adult cohort (age range 20-63 yr)	MRE, CTE compared with ileocolonoscopy	No significant difference between sensitivity of MRE (90.5%) and CTE (95.2%) in detecting active small bowel CD In 8 cases (24%) MRE and CTE identified active small bowel inflammation not detected at ileocolonoscopy MRE significantly lower image quality score than CTE
Ippolito *et al*[69], 2009	Italy	29 CD	Prospective study, Single centre, symptomatic patients with proven CD and suspected relapse, recruited from outpatient clinic Adult and paediatric cohort (age range 14-70 yr) Mean age 43.8 yr	Contrast MRE and contrast multi-detector CTE	Complete agreement between MRE and CTE in classification of disease activity (k = 1) Good level of agreement between MRE and CTE for wall thickening and mucosal hyperenhancement (k = 1), comb (k = 0.9) and halo signs (k = 0.86) CTE superior to MRE in detecting fibrofatty proliferation (P = 0.045) MRE depicted higher number of fistulas than CTE but non-significant (P = 0.083)
Schreyer *et al*[70], 2010	Germany	53 CD	Retrospective study, Single centre, Patients with advanced CD and acute abdominal pain attending the emergency department Adult cohort	Conventional CT, MRE	No significant difference in image quality between CT and MRE No significant difference in diagnosis of small bowel inflammation between CT (69.4%) and MRE (71.4%) CT detection of lymph nodes significantly higher than MRE No significant difference in detection of fistulae (CT n = 25, MRE n = 27) or abscesses (CT n = 32, MRE n = 32)
Panés *et al*[41], 2011	Spain	N/A	Systematic review of 68 prospective studies, minimum 15 patients per study	US, CT, MRI for diagnosis of CD, assessment of disease extent and activity, detection of complications	Sensitivity for diagnosis of suspected CD and evaluation of disease activity: US 84%, MRI 93% Specificity for diagnosis of suspected CD and evaluation of disease activity: US 92%, MRI 90% CT similar accuracy to MRI for assessment of disease activity and extension. US accuracy lower for disease proximal to terminal ileum US, CT, MRI all high accuracy for detection of fistulas, abscesses, stenosis. US higher false positive for abscesses
Fiorino *et al*[43], 2011	Italy	44 CD	Prospective study, Single centre, consecutive patients with ileocolonic CD requiring endoscopic or radiological evaluation Enrolled 2006-2009 Adult cohort (> 18 yr) Mean age 44 yr	CTE and MRE to assess disease activity and complications in ileocolonic CD, using ileocolonoscopy as reference standard	MRE significantly superior to CTE in detecting internal strictures: sensitivity (92% *vs* 85%), accuracy (95% *vs* 91%), specificity (90% *vs* 51%) Overall no significant difference in sensitivity and specificity of MRE and CTE in localising CD, bowel wall thickening, bowel wall enhancement, enteroenteric fistulas, detection of abdominal nodes, perivisceral fat enhancement Per segment analysis, MRE significantly superior to CTE in detecting ileal wall enhancement, with higher sensitivity (93% *vs* 81%) and accuracy (88% *vs* 81%), but lower specificity (72% *vs* 81%). MRE significantly superior in localising rectal disease, with higher accuracy (93% *vs* 85%), specificity (100% *vs* 50,9%) but lower sensitivity (72% *vs* 81%)

Jensen *et al*[71], 2011	Denmark	50 CD	Prospective, multicentre study, patients with symptomatic pre-existing CD requiring small bowel imaging for treatment decisions	MRE and CTE compared with gold standard of ileoscopy or surgery	No significant difference between MRE and CTE for detection of small bowel CD MRE: sensitivity 74%, specificity 80% CTE: sensitivity 83%, specificity 70% No significant difference for detection of small bowel stenosis. MRE: sensitivity 55%, specificity 92%. CTE: sensitivity 70%, specificity 92%
Chatu *et al*[50], 2012	United Kingdom	143 CD	Retrospective study, single tertiary centre, all symptomatic patients with known or suspected CD who underwent SICUS retrospectively were reviewed June 2007-Dec 2010 Adult cohort Mean age 36 yr	SICUS compared with SBFT, CT, histological findings from ileocolonoscopy or surgery, and CRP, using final diagnosis as the reference standard	Sensitivity of SICUS in detecting active small bowel CD in known or suspected cases 93%, specificity 99%, positive predictive value 98%, negative predictive value 95% Agreement between SICUS with SBFT (k = 0.88), CT (k = 0.91), histological findings (k = 0.62), CRP (k = 0.07)
Pallotta *et al*[51], 2012	Italy	49 CD	Prospective study, consecutive patients, adult and paediatric CD who underwent resective bowel surgery Jan 2000-Oct 2010 Mean age 37.7 yr (Age range 12-78 yr)	Conventional transabdominal US and SICUS compared to intraoperative and histological findings to assess CD complications	SICUS ability to: Detect at least one stricture: Sensitivity 97.5%, specificity 100%, k = 0.93 Detect two or more strictures: Sensitivity 75%, specificity 100%, k = 0.78 Detect fistulas: Sensitivity 96%, specificity 90.5%, k = 0.88 Detect intra-abdominal abscesses: Sensitivity 100%, specificity 95%, k = 0.89
Qiu *et al*[44], 2014	China	290 CD	Systematic review with meta-analysis including six studies, all prospective with enrollment of consecutive CD patients	MRE and CTE in detecting active small bowel CD and complications	Pooled sensitivity MRE in detecting active small bowel CD: 87.9%, specificity 81.2% Pooled sensitivity CTE in detecting active small bowel CD 85.8%, specificity 83.6% No significant difference between MRE and CTE in detecting fistula, stenosis and abscesses.
Kumar *et al*[52], 2015	United Kingdom	67 CD	Retrospective study, Single tertiary centre. Adult cohort (age 18.8-68.9 yr) CD patients requiring resective bowel surgery within 6 mo of SICUS/ MRE investigation being performed June 2007-December 2012	SICUS and MRE compared to intraoperative findings	Sensitivity of SICUS and MRE in detecting: Strictures: 87.5%, 100% Fistulae: 87.7%, 66.7 Abscesses: 100%, 100% Bowel dilatation: 100%, 66.7% Bowel wall thickening: 94.7% and 81.8% Compared with surgery, high level of agreement of SICUS, MRE in: Localising strictures: k = 0.75, 0.88 Fistulae: k = 0.82, 0.79 Abscesses k = 0.87, 0.77 High level of agreement between SICUS and MRE in identifying stricturing disease (k = 0.84), number and location of strictures (k = 0.85), fistulae (k = 0.65), mucosal thickening (k = 0.61)
Aloi *et al*[53], 2015	Italy	25 CD	Single tertiary centre for paediatric IBD Paediatric cohort with known or suspected small bowel CD	MRE, SICUS, CE for diagnosis of small bowel CD	Jejunum: Specificity CE significantly lower (61%) than MRE. No significant difference in sensitivity: SICUS 92%, CE 92%, MRE (75%) Proximal and mid-ileum: Specificity CE significantly lower. No significant difference in sensitivity: MRE 100%, CE 100%, SICUS 80% Terminal ileum: Sensitivity of SICUS and MRE (94%, 94%) higher than CE (81%), CE more specific

CD: Crohn's disease; MRE: Magnetic resonance enterography; CT: Computed tomography; CTE: Computerised tomography enterography; SICUS: Small intestine contrast-enhanced ultrasonography; CE: Capsule endoscopy; BE: Barium enteroclysis; SBFT: Small bowel follow-through; US: Ultrasonography; MRI: Magnetic resonance imaging.

since produced more promising results. A German study of 23 patients with suspected IBD, comparing MRC using water enemas to colonoscopy findings, identified a sensitivity of 87% and specificity of 100% for detecting colonic inflammatory changes[47]. Recent studies have supported the reliability of diffusion weighted imaging MRC (DWI-MRC) for detecting colonic inflammation in UC, without the need for bowel preparation[48]. Advances in contrast media and DWI-MRI may increase the sensitivity and role of MRC in evaluating colonic inflammation in IBD, particularly in patients intolerant to colonoscopy. However, larger

scale comparative data is still required.

Trans-abdominal US and small intestine contrast-enhanced US

Trans-abdominal US has increasingly been favoured as a non-invasive imaging tool useful for the diagnosis of small bowel CD. It has advantages over SBFT in detecting extra-intestinal disease, is more cost effective and better tolerated than MRI, and avoids the radiation exposure of CT imaging. However, conventional trans-abdominal US is often limited by the presence of endoluminal gas and collapsed bowel walls, which may obscure pathology[49]. Administering oral contrast prior to performing US promotes bowel loop distension, improving bowel wall visualisation. As a consequence, small intestine contrast-enhanced US (SICUS) has emerged as a more accurate alternative to conventional US for the diagnosis and monitoring of small bowel CD[45,49].

A prospective Italian study by Parente *et al*[49] of 102 patients with CD, compared conventional US with SICUS for the diagnosis of CD and its intraluminal complications. Per-segment analysis revealed a superior diagnostic accuracy of SICUS in detecting small bowel CD. Indeed use of an oral anechoic contrast agent resulted in an increase in sensitivity from 91.4% to 96.1%[49]. SICUS was also more accurate than conventional US in detecting strictures and measuring the extent of small bowel involvement. Both conventional US and SICUS had a higher diagnostic accuracy than SBE in detecting fistulas, using intra-operative findings as the gold standard[49]. More recently, a United Kingdom-based study of 143 patients with suspected or known CD, found SICUS to have a similar diagnostic yield compared to SBFT and CT (k coefficient 0.88 and 0.91 respectively) for the detection of features of small bowel CD in routine clinical practice[50]. The sensitivity and specificity of SICUS for the detection of active small bowel CD was 93% and 99% respectively, with a positive predictive value of 98% and a negative predictive value of 95%. Furthermore, there was substantial agreement between SICUS and histology obtained at ileocolonoscopy or surgery (k = 0.62)[50].

SICUS may also have a role to play in the pre-operative assessment of CD. A prospective study by Pallotta *et al*[51] of 49 patients with CD, compared SICUS with intra-operative findings for the detection of small intestinal complications of CD. SICUS demonstrated high sensitivity and specificity for the detection of small bowel strictures (97.5% sensitivity, 100% specificity, k = 0.78), fistulas (96% sensitivity, 90.5% specificity, k = 0.88), and abscesses (100% sensitivity, 95% specificity, k = 0.89)[51]. Similarly, Kumar *et al*[52] compared SICUS and MRE in routine clinical practice with intra-operative findings in patients with CD requiring surgery. Correlating SICUS and MRE with surgery, there was a high level of agreement in localising strictures (k = 0.75, k = 0.88), fistulae (k = 0.82, 0.79) and abscesses (k = 0.87, 0.77)[52].

SICUS may be particularly well suited to investigating small bowel CD in children, where routine additional challenges include poorer tolerance to ileocolonoscopy (IC) requiring general anaesthetic, difficulty lying still for a time-consuming MRI, and increased sensitivity to ionising radiation. A recent prospective study by Aloi *et al*[53] compared MRE, SICUS and video capsule endoscopy in the evaluation of 25 children with suspected or known CD. Overall there was no significant difference among the three imaging modalities for the detection of active small bowel CD. Combining diagnostic imaging improved collective sensitivities, and combining SICUS with the serological marker C-reactive protein increased the specificity for the detection of CD from 89% to 100% in the jejunum, and from 79% to 100% in the distal ileum ($P < 0.05$)[53].

Preliminary data has suggested a role for power Doppler imaging in enhancing the diagnostic accuracy of conventional US and SICUS. Power Doppler US allows assessment of bowel wall vascularity, which has been shown to correlate well with disease activity in CD[54]. It can also aid in distinguishing between inflammatory and fibrotic stenosis[50].

Overall, SICUS has emerged as an accurate, well tolerated, radiation-free imaging tool for the assessment of small bowel CD. Limitations include inter-observer variability and difficulty interpreting and comparing images retrospectively given that it is a dynamic procedure. The diagnostic accuracy of SICUS is operator dependent and often thought to be dependent on experience. Although, in a 2005 Italian study SICUS performed by a inexperienced sonographer achieved superior diagnostic accuracy for assessing small bowel CD lesions compared to conventional trans-abdominal US performed by an experienced sonographer[55]. The results of a large multi-centre prospective study comparing MRE with US in CD patients are keenly awaited[56].

Contrast enhanced ultrasonography

Contrast enhanced ultrasonography (CEUS) is a new technique that involves the administration of an intravenous contrast agent, real-time, during ultrasonography. It allows more accurate evaluation of bowel wall vascularisation. Mural hyper-enhancement following contrast in CEUS has been shown to correlate well with bowel inflammation and allows grading of CD activity[57,58]. CEUS also has the potential additional benefit of better distinguishing between inflammatory and fibro-stenotic lesions, which can be difficult with conventional ultrasound[58]. CEUS does not require oral preparation, therefore it is well tolerated by patients and can be repeatedly performed to monitor disease activity. Limitations include the need for specific software, and increased procedure time.

Current studies suggest a role for CEUS in monitoring treatment response in CD, but further prospective studies are required to quantify how well CEUS correlates with endoscopic changes and SICUS[57].

CONCLUSION

Increased awareness of the cumulative exposure of IBD patients to diagnostic medical radiation is warranted, particularly given the potential for an increased risk of radiation-induced malignancy in patients exposed at a younger age. Creation of radiation diaries is a useful consideration to log total radiation exposures. MRI and SICUS are alternative, radiation-free imaging modalities, with proven diagnostic accuracy, and should be routinely considered for the diagnosis and evaluation of patients with small bowel CD wherever possible. More provision is needed for out-of-hours radiation-free imaging modalities to reduce the need for CT.

REFERENCES

1 **Loftus EV**. Clinical epidemiology of inflammatory bowel disease: Incidence, prevalence, and environmental influences. *Gastroenterology* 2004; **126**: 1504-1517 [PMID: 15168363 DOI: 10.1053/j.gastro.2004.01.063]

2 **Jess T**, Gamborg M, Matzen P, Munkholm P, Sørensen TI. Increased risk of intestinal cancer in Crohn's disease: a meta-analysis of population-based cohort studies. *Am J Gastroenterol* 2005; **100**: 2724-2729 [PMID: 16393226 DOI: 10.1111/j.1572-0241.2005.00287.x]

3 **Xie J**, Itzkowitz SH. Cancer in inflammatory bowel disease. *World J Gastroenterol* 2008; **14**: 378-389 [PMID: 18200660 DOI: 10.3748/wjg.14.378]

4 **Brenner DJ**, Hall EJ. Computed tomography--an increasing source of radiation exposure. *N Engl J Med* 2007; **357**: 2277-2284 [PMID: 18046031 DOI: 10.1056/NEJMra072149]

5 **Ozasa K**, Shimizu Y, Suyama A, Kasagi F, Soda M, Grant EJ, Sakata R, Sugiyama H, Kodama K. Studies of the mortality of atomic bomb survivors, Report 14, 1950-2003: an overview of cancer and noncancer diseases. *Radiat Res* 2012; **177**: 229-243 [PMID: 22171960 DOI: 10.1667/RR2629.1]

6 **Flasar M**, Patil S. Radiating disparity in IBD. *Dig Dis Sci* 2014; **59**: 504-506 [PMID: 24318801 DOI: 10.1007/s10620-013-2922-4]

7 **Smith-Bindman R**, Lipson J, Marcus R, Kim KP, Mahesh M, Gould R, Berrington de González A, Miglioretti DL. Radiation dose associated with common computed tomography examinations and the associated lifetime attributable risk of cancer. *Arch Intern Med* 2009; **169**: 2078-2086 [PMID: 20008690 DOI: 10.1001/archinternmed.2009.427]

8 **Brenner DJ**, Doll R, Goodhead DT, Hall EJ, Land CE, Little JB, Lubin JH, Preston DL, Preston RJ, Puskin JS, Ron E, Sachs RK, Samet JM, Setlow RB, Zaider M. Cancer risks attributable to low doses of ionizing radiation: assessing what we really know. *Proc Natl Acad Sci USA* 2003; **100**: 13761-13766 [PMID: 14610281 DOI: 10.1073/pnas.2235592100]

9 Radiological Society of North America (RSNA), American college of Radiology (ACR). RadiologyInfo.org. Radiation dose in X-ray and CT exams. Accessed 2015-04. Available from: URL: http://www.radiologyinfo.org/en/pdf/sfty_xray.pdf

10 **Mettler FA**, Huda W, Yoshizumi TT, Mahesh M. Effective doses in radiology and diagnostic nuclear medicine: a catalog. *Radiology* 2008; **248**: 254-263 [PMID: 18566177 DOI: 10.1148/radiol.2481071451]

11 **Desmond AN**, O'Regan K, Curran C, McWilliams S, Fitzgerald T, Maher MM, Shanahan F. Crohn's disease: factors associated with exposure to high levels of diagnostic radiation. *Gut* 2008; **57**: 1524-1529 [PMID: 18443021 DOI: 10.1136/gut.2008.151415]

12 **Chatu S**, Subramanian V, Pollok RC. Meta-analysis: diagnostic medical radiation exposure in inflammatory bowel disease. *Aliment Pharmacol Ther* 2012; **35**: 529-539 [PMID: 22239831 DOI: 10.1111/j.1365-2036.2011.04975.x]

13 **Estay C**, Simian D, Lubascher J, Figueroa C, O'Brien A, Quera R. Ionizing radiation exposure in patients with inflammatory bowel disease: are we overexposing our patients? *J Dig Dis* 2015; **16**: 83-89 [PMID: 25420751 DOI: 10.1111/1751-2980.12213]

14 **Chatu S**, Poullis A, Holmes R, Greenhalgh R, Pollok RC. Temporal trends in imaging and associated radiation exposure in inflammatory bowel disease. *Int J Clin Pract* 2013; **67**: 1057-1065 [PMID: 24073979 DOI: 10.1111/ijcp.12187]

15 **Jung YS**, Park DI, Kim ER, Kim YH, Lee CK, Lee SH, Kim JH, Chan Huh K, Jung SA, Yoon SM, Song HJ, Boo SJ, Jang HJ, Kim YS, Lee KM, Shin JE. Quantifying exposure to diagnostic radiation and factors associated with exposure to high levels of radiation in Korean patients with inflammatory bowel disease. *Inflamm Bowel Dis* 2013; **19**: 1852-1857 [PMID: 23702806 DOI: 10.1097/MIB.0b013e31828c844f]

16 **Herfarth H**, Palmer L. Risk of radiation and choice of imaging. *Dig Dis* 2009; **27**: 278-284 [PMID: 19786752 DOI: 10.1159/000228561]

17 **Butcher RO**, Nixon E, Sapundzieski M, Filobbos R, Limdi JK. Radiation exposure in patients with inflammatory bowel disease--primum non nocere? *Scand J Gastroenterol* 2012; **47**: 1192-1199 [PMID: 22827741]

18 **Peloquin JM**, Pardi DS, Sandborn WJ, Fletcher JG, McCollough CH, Schueler BA, Kofler JA, Enders FT, Achenbach SJ, Loftus EV. Diagnostic ionizing radiation exposure in a population-based cohort of patients with inflammatory bowel disease. *Am J Gastroenterol* 2008; **103**: 2015-2022 [PMID: 18564113 DOI: 10.1111/j.1572-0241.2008.01920.x]

19 **Hafeez R**, Greenhalgh R, Rajan J, Bloom S, McCartney S, Halligan S, Taylor SA. Use of small bowel imaging for the diagnosis and staging of Crohn's disease--a survey of current UK practice. *Br J Radiol* 2011; **84**: 508-517 [PMID: 21081570 DOI: 10.1259/bjr/65972479]

20 **Saibeni S**, Rondonotti E, Iozzelli A, Spina L, Tontini GE, Cavallaro F, Ciscato C, de Franchis R, Sardanelli F, Vecchi M. Imaging of the small bowel in Crohn's disease: a review of old and new techniques. *World J Gastroenterol* 2007; **13**: 3279-3287 [PMID: 17659666 DOI: 10.3748/wjg.v13.i24.3279]

21 **Hara AK**, Leighton JA, Heigh RI, Sharma VK, Silva AC, De Petris G, Hentz JG, Fleischer DE. Crohn disease of the small bowel: preliminary comparison among CT enterography, capsule endoscopy, small-bowel follow-through, and ileoscopy. *Radiology* 2006; **238**: 128-134 [PMID: 16373764 DOI: 10.1148/radiol.2381050296]

22 **Lee SS**, Kim AY, Yang SK, Chung JW, Kim SY, Park SH, Ha HK. Crohn disease of the small bowel: comparison of CT enterography, MR enterography, and small-bowel follow-through as diagnostic techniques. *Radiology* 2009; **251**: 751-761 [PMID: 19276325 DOI: 10.1148/radiol.2513081184]

23 **Council NR**. Health Risks from Exposure to Low Levels of Ionizing Radiation: BEIR VII Phase 2. Washington, DC: The National Academies Press, 2006

24 **Patel B**, Mottola J, Sahni VA, Cantisani V, Ertruk M, Friedman S, Bellizzi AM, Marcantonio A, Mortele KJ. MDCT assessment of ulcerative colitis: radiologic analysis with clinical, endoscopic, and pathologic correlation. *Abdom Imaging* 2012; **37**: 61-69 [PMID: 21603899 DOI: 10.1007/s00261-011-9741-x]

25 **Laghi A**. Computed tomography colonography in 2014: an update on technique and indications. *World J Gastroenterol* 2014; **20**: 16858-16867 [PMID: 25492999 DOI: 10.3748/wjg.v20.i45.16858]

26 **Bodily KD**, Fletcher JG, Solem CA, Johnson CD, Fidler JL, Barlow JM, Bruesewitz MR, McCollough CH, Sandborn WJ, Loftus EV, Harmsen WS, Crownhart BS. Crohn Disease: mural attenuation and thickness at contrast-enhanced CT Enterography-

-correlation with endoscopic and histologic findings of inflammation. *Radiology* 2006; **238**: 505-516 [PMID: 16436815 DOI: 10.1148/radiol.2382041159]
27 **Samuel S**, Bruining DH, Loftus EV, Becker B, Fletcher JG, Mandrekar JN, Zinsmeister AR, Sandborn WJ. Endoscopic skipping of the distal terminal ileum in Crohn's disease can lead to negative results from ileocolonoscopy. *Clin Gastroenterol Hepatol* 2012; **10**: 1253-1259 [PMID: 22503995 DOI: 10.1016/j.cgh.2012.03.026]
28 **Johnson KT**, Hara AK, Johnson CD. Evaluation of colitis: usefulness of CT enterography technique. *Emerg Radiol* 2009; **16**: 277-282 [PMID: 19214608 DOI: 10.1007/s10140-008-0776-4]
29 **Andersen K**, Vogt C, Blondin D, Beck A, Heinen W, Aurich V, Häussinger D, Mödder U, Cohnen M. Multi-detector CT-colonography in inflammatory bowel disease: prospective analysis of CT-findings to high-resolution video colonoscopy. *Eur J Radiol* 2006; **58**: 140-146 [PMID: 16337356 DOI: 10.1016/j.ejrad.2005.11.004]
30 **Bellini D**, Rengo M, De Cecco CN, Iafrate F, Hassan C, Laghi A. Perforation rate in CT colonography: a systematic review of the literature and meta-analysis. *Eur Radiol* 2014; **24**: 1487-1496 [PMID: 24816935 DOI: 10.1007/s00330-014-3190-1]
31 **Govani SM**, Guentner AS, Waljee AK, Higgins PD. Risk stratification of emergency department patients with Crohn's disease could reduce computed tomography use by nearly half. *Clin Gastroenterol Hepatol* 2014; **12**: 1702-1707.e3 [PMID: 24642110 DOI: 10.1016/j.cgh.2014.02.036]
32 **Yarur AJ**, Mandalia AB, Dauer RM, Czul F, Deshpande AR, Kerman DH, Abreu MT, Sussman DA. Predictive factors for clinically actionable computed tomography findings in inflammatory bowel disease patients seen in the emergency department with acute gastrointestinal symptoms. *J Crohns Colitis* 2014; **8**: 504-512 [PMID: 24275204 DOI: 10.1016/j.crohns.2013.11.003]
33 **Park MJ**, Lim JS. Computed tomography enterography for evaluation of inflammatory bowel disease. *Clin Endosc* 2013; **46**: 327-366 [PMID: 23964329 DOI: 10.5946/ce.2013.46.4.327]
34 **Deepak P**, Bruining DH. Radiographical evaluation of ulcerative colitis. *Gastroenterol Rep* (Oxf) 2014; **2**: 169-177 [PMID: 24843072 DOI: 10.1093/gastro/gou026]
35 **Bennink RJ**, Peeters M, Rutgeerts P, Mortelmans L. Evaluation of early treatment response and predicting the need for colectomy in active ulcerative colitis with 99mTc-HMPAO white blood cell scintigraphy. *J Nucl Med* 2004; **45**: 1698-1704 [PMID: 15471836]
36 **Biancone L**, Scopinaro F, Ierardi M, Paoluzi P, Marcheggiano A, Di Paolo MC, Porowska B, Colella AC, Pallone F. 99mTc-HMPAO granulocyte scintigraphy in the early detection of postoperative asymptomatic recurrence in Crohn's disease. *Dig Dis Sci* 1997; **42**: 1549-1556 [PMID: 9246062 DOI: 10.1023/A:1018843516651]
37 **Subramanian V**, Banerjee A, Beharry N, Farthing MJ, Pollok RC. Determining the proximal extent of ulcerative colitis: white cell scan correlates well with histological assessment. *Aliment Pharmacol Ther* 2007; **25**: 441-446 [PMID: 17269999 DOI: 10.1111/j.1365-2036.2006.03222.x]
38 **Treglia G**, Quartuccio N, Sadeghi R, Farchione A, Caldarella C, Bertagna F, Fania P, Cistaro A. Diagnostic performance of Fluorine-18-Fluorodeoxyglucose positron emission tomography in patients with chronic inflammatory bowel disease: a systematic review and a meta-analysis. *J Crohns Colitis* 2013; **7**: 345-354 [PMID: 22960135 DOI: 10.1016/j.crohns.2012.08.005]
39 **Perlman SB**, Hall BS, Reichelderfer M. PET/CT imaging of inflammatory bowel disease. *Semin Nucl Med* 2013; **43**: 420-426 [PMID: 24094709 DOI: 10.1053/j.semnuclmed.2013.06.006]
40 **Horsthuis K**, Bipat S, Bennink RJ, Stoker J. Inflammatory bowel disease diagnosed with US, MR, scintigraphy, and CT: meta-analysis of prospective studies. *Radiology* 2008; **247**: 64-79 [PMID: 18372465 DOI: 10.1148/radiol.2471070611]
41 **Panés J**, Bouzas R, Chaparro M, García-Sánchez V, Gisbert JP, Martínez de Guereñu B, Mendoza JL, Paredes JM, Quiroga S, Ripollés T, Rimola J. Systematic review: the use of ultrasonography, computed tomography and magnetic resonance imaging for the diagnosis, assessment of activity and abdominal complications of Crohn's disease. *Aliment Pharmacol Ther* 2011; **34**: 125-145 [PMID: 21615440 DOI: 10.1111/j.1365-2036.2011.04710.x]
42 **Amitai MM**, Ben-Horin S, Eliakim R, Kopylov U. Magnetic resonance enterography in Crohn's disease: a guide to common imaging manifestations for the IBD physician. *J Crohns Colitis* 2013; **7**: 603-615 [PMID: 23122965 DOI: 10.1016/j.crohns.2012.10.005]
43 **Fiorino G**, Bonifacio C, Peyrin-Biroulet L, Minuti F, Repici A, Spinelli A, Fries W, Balzarini L, Montorsi M, Malesci A, Danese S. Prospective comparison of computed tomography enterography and magnetic resonance enterography for assessment of disease activity and complications in ileocolonic Crohn's disease. *Inflamm Bowel Dis* 2011; **17**: 1073-1080 [PMID: 21484958 DOI: 10.1002/ibd.21533]
44 **Qiu Y**, Mao R, Chen BL, Li XH, He Y, Zeng ZR, Li ZP, Chen MH. Systematic review with meta-analysis: magnetic resonance enterography vs. computed tomography enterography for evaluating disease activity in small bowel Crohn's disease. *Aliment Pharmacol Ther* 2014; **40**: 134-146 [PMID: 24912799 DOI: 10.1111/apt.12815]
45 **Panes J**, Bouhnik Y, Reinisch W, Stoker J, Taylor SA, Baumgart DC, Danese S, Halligan S, Marincek B, Matos C, Peyrin-Biroulet L, Rimola J, Rogler G, van Assche G, Ardizzone S, Ba-Ssalamah A, Bali MA, Bellini D, Biancone L, Castiglione F, Ehehalt R, Grassi R, Kucharzik T, Maccioni F, Maconi G, Magro F, Martín-Comín J, Morana G, Pendsé D, Sebastian S, Signore A, Tolan D, Tielbeek JA, Weishaupt D, Wiarda B, Laghi A. Imaging techniques for assessment of inflammatory bowel disease: joint ECCO and ESGAR evidence-based consensus guidelines. *J Crohns Colitis* 2013; **7**: 556-585 [PMID: 23583097 DOI: 10.1016/j.crohns.2013.02.020]
46 **Schreyer AG**, Rath HC, Kikinis R, Völk M, Schölmerich J, Feuerbach S, Rogler G, Seitz J, Herfarth H. Comparison of magnetic resonance imaging colonography with conventional colonoscopy for the assessment of intestinal inflammation in patients with inflammatory bowel disease: a feasibility study. *Gut* 2005; **54**: 250-256 [PMID: 15647190 DOI: 10.1136/gut.2003.037390]
47 **Ajaj WM**, Lauenstein TC, Pelster G, Gerken G, Ruehm SG, Debatin JF, Goehde SC. Magnetic resonance colonography for the detection of inflammatory diseases of the large bowel: quantifying the inflammatory activity. *Gut* 2005; **54**: 257-263 [PMID: 15647191 DOI: 10.1136/gut.2003.037085]
48 **Oussalah A**, Laurent V, Bruot O, Bressenot A, Bigard MA, Régent D, Peyrin-Biroulet L. Diffusion-weighted magnetic resonance without bowel preparation for detecting colonic inflammation in inflammatory bowel disease. *Gut* 2010; **59**: 1056-1065 [PMID: 20525970 DOI: 10.1136/gut.2009.197665]
49 **Parente F**, Greco S, Molteni M, Anderloni A, Sampietro GM, Danelli PG, Bianco R, Gallus S, Bianchi Porro G. Oral contrast enhanced bowel ultrasonography in the assessment of small intestine Crohn's disease. A prospective comparison with conventional ultrasound, x ray studies, and ileocolonoscopy. *Gut* 2004; **53**: 1652-1657 [PMID: 15479688 DOI: 10.1136/gut.2004.041038]
50 **Chatu S**, Pilcher J, Saxena SK, Fry DH, Pollok RC. Diagnostic accuracy of small intestine ultrasonography using an oral contrast agent in Crohn's disease: comparative study from the UK. *Clin Radiol* 2012; **67**: 553-559 [PMID: 22212635 DOI: 10.1016/j.crad.2011.11.005]
51 **Pallotta N**, Vincoli G, Montesani C, Chirletti P, Pronio A, Caronna R, Ciccantelli B, Romeo E, Marcheggiano A, Corazziari E. Small intestine contrast ultrasonography (SICUS) for the detection of small bowel complications in crohn's disease: a prospective comparative study versus intraoperative findings. *Inflamm Bowel Dis* 2012; **18**: 74-84 [PMID: 21438095 DOI: 10.1002/ibd.21678]
52 **Kumar S**, Hakim A, Alexakis C, Chhaya V, Tzias D, Pilcher J, Vlahos J, Pollok R. Small intestinal contrast ultrasonography for the detection of small bowel complications in Crohn's disease: correlation with intraoperative findings and magnetic resonance enterography. *J Gastroenterol Hepatol* 2015; **30**: 86-91 [PMID: 25168482 DOI: 10.1111/jgh.12724]
53 **Aloi M**, Di Nardo G, Romano G, Casciani E, Civitelli F, Oliva S, Viola F, Maccioni F, Gualdi G, Cucchiara S. Magnetic resonance

enterography, small-intestine contrast US, and capsule endoscopy to evaluate the small bowel in pediatric Crohn's disease: a prospective, blinded, comparison study. *Gastrointest Endosc* 2015; **81**: 420-427 [PMID: 25115363 DOI: 10.1016/j.gie.2014.07.009]

54 **Drews BH**, Barth TF, Hänle MM, Akinli AS, Mason RA, Muche R, Thiel R, Pauls S, Klaus J, von Boyen G, Kratzer W. Comparison of sonographically measured bowel wall vascularity, histology, and disease activity in Crohn's disease. *Eur Radiol* 2009; **19**: 1379-1386 [PMID: 19184036 DOI: 10.1007/s00330-008-1290-5]

55 **Calabrese E**, La Seta F, Buccellato A, Virdone R, Pallotta N, Corazziari E, Cottone M. Crohn's disease: a comparative prospective study of transabdominal ultrasonography, small intestine contrast ultrasonography, and small bowel enema. *Inflamm Bowel Dis* 2005; **11**: 139-145 [PMID: 15677907 DOI: 10.1097/00054725-200502000-00007]

56 **Taylor S**, Mallett S, Bhatnagar G, Bloom S, Gupta A, Halligan S, Hamlin J, Hart A, Higginson A, Jacobs I, McCartney S, Morris S, Muirhead N, Murray C, Punwani S, Rodriguez-Justo M, Slater A, Travis S, Tolan D, Windsor A, Wylie P, Zealley I. METRIC (MREnterography or ulTRasound in Crohn's disease): a study protocol for a multicentre, non-randomised, single-arm, prospective comparison study of magnetic resonance enterography and small bowel ultrasound compared to a reference standard in those aged 16 and over. *BMC Gastroenterol* 2014; **14**: 142 [PMID: 25110044 DOI: 10.1186/1471-230X-14-142]

57 **Ripollés T**, Martínez-Pérez MJ, Blanc E, Delgado F, Vizuete J, Paredes JM, Vilar J. Contrast-enhanced ultrasound (CEUS) in Crohn's disease: technique, image interpretation and clinical applications. *Insights Imaging* 2011; **2**: 639-652 [PMID: 22347983 DOI: 10.1007/s13244-011-0124-1]

58 **Quaia E**. Contrast-enhanced ultrasound of the small bowel in Crohn's disease. *Abdom Imaging* 2013; **38**: 1005-1013 [PMID: 23728306 DOI: 10.1007/s00261-013-0014-8]

59 **Newnham E**, Hawkes E, Surender A, James SL, Gearry R, Gibson PR. Quantifying exposure to diagnostic medical radiation in patients with inflammatory bowel disease: are we contributing to malignancy? *Aliment Pharmacol Ther* 2007; **26**: 1019-1024 [PMID: 17877508 DOI: 10.1111/j.1365-2036.2007.03449.x]

60 **Levi Z**, Fraser E, Krongrad R, Hazazi R, benjaminov O, meyerovitch J, Tal OB, Choen A, Niv Y, Fraser G. Factors associated with radiation exposure in patients with inflammatory bowel disease. *Aliment Pharmacol Ther* 2009; **30**: 1128-1136 [PMID: 19899197]

61 **Palmer L**, Herfarth H, Porter CQ, Fordham LA, Sandler RS, Kappelman MD. Diagnostic ionizing radiation exposure in a population-based sample of children with inflammatory bowel diseases. *Am J Gastroenterol* 2009; **104**: 2816-2823 [PMID: 19690524 DOI: 10.1038/ajg.2009.480]

62 **Kroeker KI**, Lam S, Birchall I, Fedorak RN. Patients with IBD are exposed to high levels of ionizing radiation through CT scan diagnostic imaging: a five-year study. *J Clin Gastroenterol* 2011; **45**: 34-39 [PMID: 20679907 DOI: 10.1097/MCG.0b013e3181e5d1c5]

63 **Fuchs Y**, Markowitz J, Weinstein T, Kohn N, Choi-Rosen J, Levine J. Pediatric inflammatory bowel disease and imaging-related radiation: are we increasing the likelihood of malignancy? *J Pediatr Gastroenterol Nutr* 2011; **52**: 280-285 [PMID: 21297507 DOI: 10.1097/MPG.0b013e3181f57177]

64 **Sauer CG**, Kugathasan S, Martin DR, Applegate KE. Medical radiation exposure in children with inflammatory bowel disease estimates high cumulative doses. *Inflamm Bowel Dis* 2011; **17**: 2326-2332 [PMID: 21987300 DOI: 10.1002/ibd.21626]

65 **Huang JS**, Tobin A, Harvey L, Nelson TR. Diagnostic medical radiation in pediatric patients with inflammatory bowel disease. *J Pediatr Gastroenterol Nutr* 2011; **53**: 502-506 [PMID: 22020539 DOI: 10.1097/MPG.0b013e31820d5d84]

66 **Low RN**, Francis IR, Politoske D, Bennett M. Crohn's disease evaluation: comparison of contrast-enhanced MR imaging and single-phase helical CT scanning. *J Magn Reson Imaging* 2000; **11**: 127-135 [PMID: 10713944]

67 **Maconi G**, Sampietro GM, Parente F, Pompili G, Russo A, Cristaldi M, Arborio G, Ardizzone S, Matacena G, Taschieri AM, Bianchi Porro G. Contrast radiology, computed tomography and ultrasonography in detecting internal fistulas and intra-abdominal abscesses in Crohn's disease: a prospective comparative study. *Am J Gastroenterol* 2003; **98**: 1545-1555 [PMID: 12873576]

68 **Siddiki HA**, Fidler JL, Fletcher JG, Burton SS, Huprich JE, Hough DM, Johnson CD, Bruining DH, Loftus EV, Sandborn WJ, Pardi DS, Mandrekar JN. Prospective comparison of state-of-the-art MR enterography and CT enterography in small-bowel Crohn's disease. *AJR Am J Roentgenol* 2009; **193**: 113-121 [PMID: 19542402 DOI: 10.2214/AJR.08.2027]

69 **Ippolito D**, Invernizzi F, Galimberti S, Panelli MR, Sironi S. MR enterography with polyethylene glycol as oral contrast medium in the follow-up of patients with Crohn disease: comparison with CT enterography. *Abdom Imaging* 2010; **35**: 563-570 [PMID: 19582502 DOI: 10.1007/s00261-009-9557-0]

70 **Schreyer AG**, Hoffstetter P, Daneschnejad M, Jung EM, Pawlik M, Friedrich C, Fellner C, Strauch U, Klebl F, Herfarth H, Zorger N. Comparison of conventional abdominal CT with MR-enterography in patients with active Crohn's disease and acute abdominal pain. *Acad Radiol* 2010; **17**: 352-357 [PMID: 20152727 DOI: 10.1016/j.acra.2009.10.023]

71 **Jensen MD**, Kjeldsen J, Rafaelsen SR, Nathan T. Diagnostic accuracies of MR enterography and CT enterography in symptomatic Crohn's disease. *Scand J Gastroenterol* 2011; **46**: 1449-1457 [PMID: 21905974 DOI: 10.3109/00365521.2011.613947]

P- Reviewer: Ierardi E, Tandon R **S- Editor**: Gong ZM **L- Editor**: A **E- Editor**: Liu XM

World Journal of Gastroenterology

Submit a Manuscript: http://www.wjgnet.com/esps/
Help Desk: http://www.wjgnet.com/esps/helpdesk.aspx
DOI: 10.3748/wjg.v22.i7.2179

World J Gastroenterol 2016 February 21; 22(7): 2179-2194
ISSN 1007-9327 (print) ISSN 2219-2840 (online)

TOPIC HIGHLIGHT

2016 Inflammatory Bowel Disease: Global view

Diet therapy for inflammatory bowel diseases: The established and the new

Franziska Durchschein, Wolfgang Petritsch, Heinz F Hammer

Franziska Durchschein, Wolfgang Petritsch, Heinz F Hammer, Department of Internal Medicine, Division of Gastroenterology and Hepatology, Medical University of Graz, 8036 Graz, Austria

Author contributions: Durchschein F searched literature, drafted the manuscript, incorporated corrections by coauthors into the final manuscript and organized details for submission of manuscript; Petritsch W reviewed the manuscript and approved the final manuscript; Hammer HF contributed to writing the manuscript, reviews and corrections, final approval and submission.

Conflict-of-interest statement: The authors declare no conflict of interest related to this publication.

Correspondence to: Heinz F Hammer, MD, Associate Professor of Internal Medicine and Gastroenterology, Division of Gastroenterology and Hepatology, Medical University of Graz, Auenbruggerplatz 15, 8036 Graz, Austria. heinz.hammer@medunigraz.at
Telephone: +43-316-38580269
Fax: +43-316-38512648

Received: June 25, 2015
Peer-review started: June 27, 2015
First decision: September 29, 2015
Revised: November 10, 2015
Accepted: December 30, 2015
Article in press: December 30, 2015
Published online: February 21, 2016

Abstract

Although patients with inflammatory bowel diseases (IBD) have a strong interest in dietary modifications as part of their therapeutic management, dietary advice plays only a minor part in published guidelines. The scientific literature shows that dietary factors might influence the risk of developing IBD, that dysbiosis induced by nutrition contributes to the pathogenesis of IBD, and that diet may serve as a symptomatic treatment for irritable bowel syndrome-like symptoms in IBD. The role of nutrition in IBD is underscored by the effect of various dietary therapies. In paediatric patients with Crohn's disease (CD) enteral nutrition (EN) reaches remission rates similar to steroids. In adult patients, however, EN is inferior to corticosteroids. EN is not effective in ulcerative colitis (UC). Total parenteral nutrition in IBD is not superior to steroids or EN. The use of specific probiotics in patients with IBD can be recommended only in special clinical situations. There is no evidence for efficacy of probiotics in CD. By contrast, studies in UC have shown a beneficial effect in selected patients. For patients with pouchitis, antibiotic treatment followed by probiotics, like VSL#3 or Lactobacillus GG, is effective. When probiotics are used, the risk of bacterial translocation and subsequent bacteremia has to be considered. More understanding of the normal intestinal microflora, and better characterization of probiotic strains at the phenotypic and genomic levels is needed as well as clarification of the mechanisms of action in different clinical settings. A FODMAP reduced diet may improve symptoms in IBD.

Key words: Enteral nutrition; Parenteral nutrition; Probiotics; Fermentable oligo-, di-, and monosaccharides and polyols; Crohn's disease; Ulcerative colitis

Core tip: Over the last decades various dietary components like milk, fructose, salty foods and sweetened beverages have been implicated to play a role in the pathogenesis of inflammatory bowel disease (IBD), possibly by interacting with gut microbiota and the mucosal immune system. The role of nutrition in IBD is underscored by the effect of various dietary therapies. In paediatric patients with Crohn's disease enteral nutrition reaches remission rates similar to steroids. The use of specific probiotics in patients with IBD can be recommended only in special clinical situations. A FODMAP reduced diet may improve symptoms in IBD.

Durchschein F, Petritsch W, Hammer HF. Diet therapy for inflammatory bowel diseases: The established and the new. *World J Gastroenterol* 2016; 22(7): 2179-2194 Available from: URL: http://www.wjgnet.com/1007-9327/full/v22/i7/2179.htm DOI: http://dx.doi.org/10.3748/wjg.v22.i7.2179

INTRODUCTION

Approximately 2 million people worldwide suffer from inflammatory bowel disease (IBD), comprising Crohn's disease (CD), ulcerative colitis (UC) and pouchitis[1].

The exact pathomechanism of IBD is remains unexplained[1]. According to the literature, these diseases may result in part from the mucosal immune response to altered gastrointestinal microbiota in genetically susceptible individuals[1,2]. An abnormal mucosal barrier function in IBD may allow bacterial access to the lamina propria, triggering an inflammatory response[1], though additional environmental factors must be presumed to be involved in the aetiology of IBD[3].

IBD was first recognized as a major health issue in developed countries[4]. Many studies on children and adults in Western Europe and North America over the past 20 years have indicated that the incidence in IBD has increased to the extent that it is no longer a rare condition but affects up to 0.5% of the population[5-7] The incidence is also increasing in Japan or Eastern Europe, where it used to be uncommon[3,8]. Migrants from low prevalence countries take on the prevalence of their adopted high prevalence countries[9]. The incidence of CD appears to increase faster than UC[10]. This increased incidence is due in part to higher awareness and more reliable diagnosis of IBD, but the change to a Western lifestyle also suggests that environmental factors play a role in the development and progression of IBD[3,11].

Environmental factors that may be linked to the Western lifestyle have been implicated as predisposing to IBD[9]: these include smoking, appendectomy, better hygiene and use of oral contraceptives IBD[12,13]. One aspect of Western life style that has changed considerably in parallel with the emergence of IBD is diet[9,14,15]. The early increase in incidence up to the 1960s has been attributed to increased milk consumption[16] and more recently, other dietary components have been implicated. Over the last 20 years fructose intake has increased by more than 20% and intake of salty snacks, pizza, cereals and sweetened beverages has increased by nearly 50%[9]. As dietary antigens along with bacterial antigens are the most common types of luminal antigen, it is reasonable to suppose that dietary factors may play an important role in the pathogenesis of IBD[12], possibly by interacting with gut microbiota and the mucosal immune system.

The aim of therapeutic management is to achieve and maintain remission and prevent disease progression[1]. Pharmacological agents are the main pillar of therapy[17], but have side effects and some patients become refractory to them, necessitating surgery[1]. Nutrition plays a pivotal role in the clinical care of all patients with inflammatory bowel disease[11,18], and the efficacy of diet therapy in IBD was first investigated over 30 years ago[1,19]. In 1984, O'Moráin *et al*[20] reported that patients with acute Crohn's ileitis treatment with an elemental diet achieved remission rates comparable to those treated with corticosteroids, paving the way for an alternative to conventional therapy[18], though the mechanisms responsible are still not well understood[21]. Theories include improved nutritional status, reduced allergenicity of gut contents, avoidance of food additives as well as changes in the nature or quantity of gut bacteria[21]. Intestinal inflammation might be initiated by an aberrant response to the gastrointestinal microbiota, meaning that dietary substances and their metabolites might modify mucosal barrier function[1,22].

Nutrition in IBD as compared to controls

In recent decades a wide range of nutrients and their roles in the etiology of IBD have been investigated[11]. Persson *et al*[23] found an increased relative risk of IBD with consumption of fast food at least twice a week. Epidemiological studies suggest an increased risk of IBD associated with a high intake of the so-called "Western diet", which includes refined sugar and meat and animal fat, along with low fiber intake[14,21]. In contrast, a diet emphasizing vegetables, fruits, olive oil, fish, grains and nuts decreased the risk of pediatric IBD, especially CD[24].

As association of dietary factors and CD has been documented. These factors include the quantity and quality of fat intake, fast food ingestion, total protein and energy intake. Patients with CD consume more sugar or cereals than controls[9,25-28]. Geerling *et al*[29] found that CD patients consumed more carbohydrates than controls, but it was unclear whether this was

actually due to avoidance of other fat or protein sources. They also found that CD patients with a high Crohn's disease activity index (CDAI > 150) had a significantly higher carbohydrate intake than those in remission[29]. The literature is ambiguous on nutrients, as some studies did not confirm a significant association between high sugar intake and the incidence of CD[3,30].

A higher intake of linoleic acid, an n-6 polyunsaturated essential fatty acid found in red meat, various cooking oils and certain margarines, was associated with an increased risk of UC[4,31,32]. Linoleic acid is metabolized to arachidonic acid, which has pro-inflammatory properties and is increased in the mucosa of patients with UC[31].

Possible mechanisms for the association between IBD and nutrition

Possible mechanisms by which diet may cause IBD include a direct effect of dietary antigens, diet-induced alteration of gene expression, alteration of the composition of the enteric flora and an effect on gastrointestinal permeability or the immune system[11].

One hypothetical pathomechanism of CD is increased intestinal permeability, which might in turn increase exposure of the subepithelium to luminal pro-inflammatory molecules and microorganisms[9]. High luminal concentrations of short-chain fatty acids, due to bacterial metabolism of incompletely absorbed carbohydrates[33], can reversibly impair barrier function by inducing apoptosis of epithelial cells[9]. FODMAPs (fermentable oligo-di-monosaccharides and polyols) are a potential source of poorly absorbable carbohydrates[9], but a causal relationship between these foods and IBD remains unclear, as well as the potential confounding factor of socioeconomic status, which is related to food intake. In addition, the role of processing and cooking should be taken into account[34].

Kiss *et al*[35] have shown that some dietary components derived from vegetables interact with intestinal immune receptors influencing intestinal immunity. Vegetables of the Brassicaceae family (*e.g.*, broccoli, cabbage or Brussels sprouts) can activate the aryl hydrocarbon receptor (AhR), which is expressed ubiquitously in vertebrate cells[36]. AhR is highly expressed by intestinal intraepithelial lymphocytes and is involved in the defense against luminal attacks[37]. This receptor is down-regulated in the intestinal inflamed tissue of patients with IBD and activation of AhR can inhibit inflammation and colitis in the gut of mice[38]. The AhR system seems to be a link between external environmental stimuli and the immune system[39]. Dietary factors might interact with the AhR, which affects cytokine expression, synthesis of defensins, antimicrobial peptides and consequently also the microbial composition[36]. Activation of AhR by nutrients might have a beneficial effect in IBD. Clinical trials evaluating the stimulating effect of nutrition on the AhR are still missing.

ROLE OF GUT MICROBIOTA

The colonic microbiota are estimated to comprise 10^{14}[40,41]. Humans harbour 500 to 1000 different bacterial species in the gastrointestinal tract[42], with more than 90% representing *Firmicutes* and *Bacteroidetes*[42], with *Actinobacteria*, *Proteobacteria*, *Fusobacteria*, *Spirochaetae* and *Verrucomicrobia* making up the rest[42]. At birth, the human gut is sterile and colonization by bacteria starts within the first hours of life[40]. The composition of the gut microbiome in infants varies greatly, depending on mode of delivery and infant feeding[43]. During childhood, a more stable, highly individual adult gut microbiome develops out of this diversity[40,44,45], with a symbiotic relationship forming between human host and his/her gut microbes[40]. This complex ecosystem protects against invasion by pathogens by successfully competing with them for nutrients and epithelial binding sites[46]. The human gut provides an ideal environment for the microbiota, which benefit the human host by fermenting indigestible food substances[40]. A balanced microbiota is important for maintaining the health of the host[40], but this balance may be upset by factors like host genetics, antibiotic treatment, intestinal inflammation or diet.

Along with food, microbiota provide the most common luminal antigens in the bowel, and these could influence intestinal inflammation[47]. Different dietary regimens might alter the composition of the gut microbiota and consequently affect the risk of IBD[34], but there are few data to evaluate this issue. In animal models, changes in fat and carbohydrate content in nutrition significantly affect gut microbiota[48]. When Turnbaugh *et al*[49] transfected germ-free C57BL/6J mice with human microbial communities and changed their diet from low-fat, high plant polysaccharide to high-fat, high-sugar "Western-style", their microbiota shifted within a single day. A study in interleukin-10 knockout mice has further shown that a mouse diet high in saturated fat increased the spontaneous rate of colitis as compared to a normal mouse diet[21]. A study in Japan noticed that people living in rural areas, eating typical Japanese food, have different faecal microflora than people living in urban areas, especially as to the number of Bifidobacteria[50]. These data suggest that some kinds of food might alter the intestinal microbiota population[21].

The role of the gut microbiota in inflammatory bowel disease has raised the interest in exchanging presumably abnormal microbiota in patients with IBD with fecal microbiota from healthy persons. However, the available evidence for this is still very weak. A recently published systematic literature review on the use of fecal microbiota transplantation (FMT) in IBD summarized 31 publications with 133 patients,

43% of whom had a Clostridium difficile infection. Improvement of symptoms was reported in 71% of patients with IBD. FMT may have the potential to be helpful in managing patients with IBD, but considerable further efforts are necessary to make this procedure a valid option for these subjects[51].

Microbiota, immune function and IBD

The human colonic microbiota plays a central role in inducing disorders of immune function and inflammation[52,53] and studies in recent decades have shown that bacteria are involved in the pathogenesis of IBD[53]. The association between *NOD 2/CARD15* gene polymorphisms and CD supports the link between IBD and gut microbiota. This gene has a role in bacterial peptidoglycan recognition and mice deficient in NOD2 show an increased susceptibility to bacterial infection through the luminal route[54-56]. Abnormalities of NOD2 in IBD patients might decrease tolerance to enteric bacteria with secondary inflammation of the gut[54]. In addition, animal models have shown that intestinal inflammation fails to develop when animals are kept in germ-free environment, supporting the role of the microbiota in the pathogenesis of IBD[57]. An imbalance in bacterial function so might play a role in the initiation of IBD[34]. Further, genetic studies have determined that many of the genetic risk alleles for IBD are involved in protecting the host from bacterial invasion of the gut[40]. These risk loci contain genes regulating the epithelial barrier or the innate immune response.

Alterations in the gut microbiome have been associated with IBD[40,58]. Ewaschuk *et al*[59] found that *Bacteroides* spp., *Enterococcis faecalis*, *Enterobacter cloacae*, intestinal *Heliobacter* spp., *Fusobacterium* spp., adherent/invasive *Escherichia coli* strains, *Eubacterium* and *Peptostreptococcus* spp. seem to be harmful intestinal microbes. In contrast, *Lactobacillus* spp., *Bifidobacterium* spp., *Streptococcus salivarius*, *Saccharomyces boulardii* (*S. boulardii*), *Clostridium butyricum*, *Ruminococci* and *Escherichia coli* (*E. coli*) Nissle 1917 seem to be beneficial[59]. Most individuals with IBD, especially CD, are characterized by dysbiosis, in which one or a few potentially harmful microorganisms are dominant[53,60]. In patients with IBD, decreased *Firmicutes*, increased *Proteobacteria* as well as changes in *Bacteroides* compared to healthy controls have been detected[34,61-65]. It has been demonstrated that recurrence of inflammation after ileal resection depends on the exposure of the neoterminal ileum to faecal contents[66,67]. However it is not known which component of faeces triggers this inflammation[40].

NUTRITION AS A THERAPEUTIC OPTION

Although the development of highly active drugs like anti-TNF alpha antibodies has changed the short-term prognosis of severe IBD, there is still a need for low-risk alternative approaches or adjuvant therapies[68]. A number of trials have investigated the efficacy and mechanisms of action of diet in IBD. Historically, nutrition has been seen as an adjunctive therapeutic option and not as a source of therapeutic strategies on its own right[68]. Because of the delivery of high loads of specific nutritional compounds that can affect different targets, nutrition is now not only used as a supportive measure but has also been suggested as primary treatment[18] to induce or maintain remission.

Many studies have shown that clinical remission and mucosal healing in IBD can be achieved with different nutritional regimes. Studies evaluating the effect of enteral nutrition (EN), total parenteral nutrition (TPN), probiotics or FODMAP reduced diet in IBD have been published, but due to the heterogeneity of study protocols, there are as yet no recommendations for routine clinical practice[1]. This review examines concepts of diet therapy in IBD concerning EN, TPN, probiotics and FODMAPs.

Enteral nutrition

Enteral nutrition in CD: The literature includes numerous studies analysing the effect of EN on IBD. EN can be given via the nasogastric tube or by mouth. Generally it is offered in two forms: first, as an elemental diet, containing nutrients in simple forms such as amino acids, mono- or oligosaccharides and medium-chain triglycerides that require little or no digestion prior to absorption[69]; second, as polymeric diets, containing whole proteins and carbohydrates as hydrolysates of starch, which are mostly more palatable[69].

In 2006, the European Society for Parenteral and Enteral Nutrition published guidelines on the role of EN in IBD[70]. In general, EN is indicated in undernourished patients with CD or UC to satisfy nutritional needs[4]. Additionally, in children with active CD, EN is the first line therapy to achieve remission. In adults, however, EN might be a therapeutic option only if treatment with corticosteroids is not tolerated[4]. According to the guidelines of the European Crohn' s and Colitis Organisation ECCO, EN may be an option together with other medications to maintain remission in selected patients[71].

There are meta-analyses and a Cochrane review of randomized controlled trials investigating the effect of EN in CD[72-75]. These studies have mostly shown that EN as sole nutrition can induce clinical remission and mucosal healing in CD[21]. Many trials have evaluated the effect of EN in paediatric CD with the aim of avoiding corticosteroids with their risk of growth suppression[69].

Induction of remission: Paediatric studies give strong support to the role of EN, showing efficacy similar to corticosteroids and better improvements in

growth and mucosal healing[76-81]. In a meta-analysis of paediatric trials comparing the outcome of EN *vs* corticosteroids, there was no significant difference between the two groups[82]. Remission rates were higher with total EN than with partial EN (10/24 *vs* 4/26, RR = 2.7, 95%CI: 1-7.4)[4,82]. Day *et al*[78] evaluated the effect of EN in 27 children with active CD who received polymeric feed for 6-8 wk and no other medication. At the end of the study 80% of the newly diagnosed patients and 58% of the known CD patients were in remission[78].

In most paediatric IBD centres EN is given exclusively for 6 to 8 wk, mostly (90%) as polymeric formulas[21,83]. The mode of reintroduction of food after exclusive EN varies widely, but usually involves an initial low-fibre diet (26%) or gradual re-introduction of normal food, as the formula volume is decreased (56%)[21] .

In adult patients, a Cochrane meta-analysis of six RCTs including 192 adult patients treated with EN and 160 with corticosteroids indicated that EN is less effective than corticosteroids in inducing remission of active CD[75], but this conclusion was based on an intention-to-treat analysis, and patients who successfully completed EN achieved remission rates comparable to those receiving corticosteroids[4,18]. Compared to placebo treated patients with response rates of 20%-30%, patients with EN reached remission rates up to 60%[11,75,84,85]. Lochs *et al*[86] compared the effect of EN as sole therapy to a treatment with steroids and sulfasalazine in patients with active CD (CDAI > 200). After 6 wk, 53% in the EN group and 79% in the drug-treatment group achieved remission (CDAI decreased by 40% or at least 100 points). In this study EN was less effective than a combination of steroids and sulfasalazine for active CD.

Maintenance of remission: EN might be used not only to achieve but also to maintain remission[87,88]. Several studies in adults and children have assessed the efficacy of EN in maintaining medically or surgically induced remission[89-92]. These studies have shown significantly lower recurrence rates in patients treated with EN than in those on a normal diet[4]. Mucosal cytokines like interleukin-1 beta, interleukin-6 and tumour necrosis factor alpha were significantly lower in patients receiving EN than in those on a normal diet[93], suggesting that EN might alleviate mucosal inflammation and so promote remission[4]. Takagi *et al*[91] randomized 51 CD patients who had recently achieved remission, 26 to receive half their calorie intake as EN and 25 to have a free diet. Over a mean follow-up of 11.6 mo, the relapse rate was 34.6% in the "half enteral" group and 64% in the free diet group (relapse was defined as either a CDAI score of more than 200, or the need for therapy to re-induce remission). This study concluded that EN given as 50% of calories seems to be effective in maintaining remission[21]. Hanai *et al*[94] compared the effect of 6-mercaptopurine (6-MP), an elemental diet and no therapy in patients on CD maintenance. After 24 mo, the clinical remission rates were 60, 47 and 27% for 6-MP, elemental diet and the control group, respectively. The remission rates in the 6-MP and elemental diet groups were significantly higher than in the control group. There was no significant difference between the 6-MP and the elemental diet group[94].

In another prospective study, EN significantly reduced clinical as well as endoscopic recurrence within 1 year in CD patients as compared to patients without any nutritional therapy[93]. This study included 40 adult patients with CD who achieved clinical remission (CDAI < 150). Of them, 20 received continuous elemental diet infusion during the night and a low-fat diet during the day, while the other 20 received neither nutritional therapy nor food restriction[93]. Twenty-five percent in the EN group and 65% in the non-EN group had a clinical relapse during the 1-year observation period, with clinical relapse defined as CDAI > 150.

Yamamoto *et al*[88] evaluated the effect of enteral nutrition on maintenance of clinical remission in patients with CD receiving infliximab (IFX) maintenance therapy. This study showed that concomitant enteral nutrition during IFX maintenance therapy does not significantly increase the maintenance rate of clinical remission in CD patients[88].

Mucosal healing: EN may have a positive effect on mucosal healing[76]. Yamamoto *et al*[95] have shown reduced mucosal cytokine production in adults with CD treated with elemental diet. Besides, some paediatric studies have shown that EN is more effective than corticosteroids in inducing mucosal healing[96,97]. Since along with symptomatic improvement, the main target in the treatment of CD is mucosal healing, this advantage of EN over corticosteroids might be considered in therapeutic decision-making[4,98].

Comparison of different EN formulas: Several studies have compared the effect of different types of enteral formulas in the management of CD: elemental, semi-elemental or polymeric diet[4]. A Cochrane meta-analysis of 10 trials did not show any difference between elemental diet and non-elemental diet[75]. There is no systematic review that shows that one type of enteral formula is better than others[4,18]. This might imply that the therapeutic effect of EN is independent of the type of nitrogen source[18]. There was also no difference in efficacy when EN was compared with low fat or high fat diet, and when foods with high-omega-3 *vs* high-omega-6 fatty acid content were compared[21,75,99]. Whole protein (polymeric) food works comparably well to amino-acid-based food and is generally less hyperosmolar[21]. In summary, the quantity or type of fat and protein does not affect the therapeutic potential of enteral nutrition[75,100-103]. There is no association between the efficacy of EN and locations of CD[21], but the validity of a meta-analysis

covering different feeds would be uncertain because of their variety composition[21].

Potential mechanisms: The mechanism by which EN improves CD is unclear. Hypotheses include altered or reduced gut microbiota, avoidance of long-chain fat, which impairs macrophage function, and avoidance of other harmful components of normal food, like emulsifiers or nano-particles as additives[21]. Malnutrition, which is often a problem in IBD patients, can affect immune function and wound healing. When correction of nutritional status improves wound healing, reduced gut permeability could enhance mucosal healing as well[69].

Gut permeability is thought to play an important role in CD. Abnormalities in tight junctions between enterocytes increase luminal antigen uptake, which might contribute to inflammatory activity[57]. Therapy with an elemental diet was shown to reduce intestinal permeability[104], and the literature also suggests that there is a change in the faecal microbiome following exclusive EN[105,106].

A study with paediatric CD patients looked at the impact of exclusive EN on gut microbiota, which showed reduced diversity and an increase in *Protobacteria*[21,105,107]. Leach *et al*[105] compared the bacteria in the stool in patients with CD under exclusive enteral nutrition to a group of healthy controls under a regular diet. At the start of the study, the diversity of bacteria in the two groups was similar but after 8 wk, the patients treated with exclusive EN had significantly less bacterial diversity than the control group.

Long-term perspective of enteral nutrition: Compared to corticosteroids, EN has no long-term adverse effects[18], though there are many other factors that can potentially influence its efficacy[4]. The palatability of feeds and the length of time without solid food, as well as the social inconvenience, contribute to high dropout rates and reduced patient compliance[108]. Additionally, the high cost of enteral formulae has to be considered. A major problem of EN as primary therapy for CD is the high relapse rate, approximately 50% within 6 mo, when patients return to normal diet[21,103]. There is evidence to advocate an exclusion and re-introduction diet following successful induction of remission with EN, rather than an immediate return to a normal diet[11,18]. At 2 years, the remission rate was 59%[18,109] when patients were weaned off EN for 2-4 wk, and, before normal diet was re-introduced, given a limited range of foods generally tolerated by CD patients. After achieving clinical remission, patients with good compliance might receive a half elemental diet with approximately half of their calories derived from an elemental diet[18]. A return to normal feeding nonetheless often leads to relapse[110] and a lower efficacy of dietary therapy in distal disease (colonic/perianal) has been described[111].

Enteral nutrition in UC

There is no evidence that EN is an effective therapy for active UC[21]. One prospective randomized trial compared the effect of TPN and total EN as an adjunct therapy in patients with acute UC on intensive steroid therapy[112]. Remission rates as well as need for colectomy were similar in these two groups.

TOTAL PARENTERAL NUTRITION

Since dietary antigens may be important stimulants for the mucosal immune system, bowel rest with total parental nutrition (TPN) has been considered as a therapeutic option in IBD. The aim of TPN as primary therapy for IBD is to achieve bowel rest, to correct nutritional deficits[11,18,113] and to remove antigenic mucosal stimuli[110]. Various studies have analysed effect of TPN and in the 1980´s especially, TPN was used to treat patients with moderate to severe CD[40].

Müller *et al*[114] prospectively evaluated the effect of TPN in 30 patients with CD, whereby 83% achieved remission, but relapse was common. Surgery could be avoided in 25 of 30 complicated CD patients on 3 wk of inpatient TPN followed by 9 more weeks at home[114]. Greenberg *et al*[115] compared the effect of TPN, partial parenteral nutrition (PPN) with supplementary nutrition with a defined formula *via* NG tube, or PPN with supplementary normal diet. There were no significant differences in the remission rates of 71% in the TPN group, 58% in the PPN with defined formula diet group and 60% in the group with PPN and normal diet[115]. Ostro *et al*[116] evaluated the effect of TPN in 100 patients with CD refractory to conventional medical management. In their study, 90 patients received complete nutrient replacement and 10 received protein-sparing therapy; Seventy-seven patients achieved clinical remission. The remission rate was not influenced by the location of the intestinal involvement. Additionally, TPN was shown to play a role in the healing of post-operative enterocutaneous fistulas arising from surgical anastomosis or complicated fistulas in CD[18,113,117]. When TPN and EN are compared, TPN is associated with higher costs and significant risks including line sepsis and should be restricted to patients who cannot take adequate nutrition enterally[21].

TPN had no effect on severe acute UC in two short-term studies of patients with severe disease[118,119].

PROBIOTICS

There is growing evidence for an association between IBD and an alteration in the gut microbiota but due to the complexity of the gut microbiota, research on this is still in its early stages. Studies have shown a disbalance in the gut between protective *vs* harmful intestinal bacteria[120] with, *e.g.*, an increase in mucosa-associated Escherichia coli and a reduction

in bifidobacterium and lactobacillus species[21,120]. Strategies modulating this dysbiosis might be a therapeutic option in IBD[33]. Antibacterial treatment has been used, but with limited effect[120]. Probiotics may improve intestinal microbial balance, enhancing gut barrier function and improving local immune response[59]. Probiotics are live microorganisms, which when administered in adequate amounts, confer a health benefit on the host[121]. Their effects are strain specific, so that comparisons and meta-analyses of studies using different probiotics are problematic.

Bacteria associated with probiotic activity like lactobacilli or bifidobacteria have been used as well as non-bacterial organisms such as *S. boulardii*[122], but it is a challenge to manipulate the highly individual gut microbiota. Potential mechanisms of probiotics are competitive interactions with the gut microbiota, production of antimicrobial metabolites, and interaction with the epithelium or immune modulation[122,123]. Cells involved in both the innate and adaptive immune responses, like B cells, T cells and dendritic cells as well as macrophages, might be affected[120,124,125]. Probiotic bacteria are able to antagonize pathogenic bacteria by reducing luminal pH[126,127] and inhibiting bacterial adherence and translocation[123]; they can also produce antibacterial substances and defensins[120,128]. For example, invasion of an epithelial cell line by invasive *E. coli* isolated from patients with CD was prevented by pre- or co-incubation with *E. coli* Nissle 1917[129]. Pre-treatment of IL-10 deficient mice with *Lactobacillus reuteri* and *L. casei* can reduce Heliobacter hepaticus-induced colitis[130]. A decrease in mucosal secretion of inflammatory cytokines was shown to be induced by *E. coli* (Nissle 1917) in models of experimental colitis[131]. Probiotics also influence cell-cell interactions and stability through modulation of intestinal barrier function[120]. Alterations in mucus, chloride secretion or changes in tight junction protein expression by epithelial cells might be mechanisms for improved gut mucosal barrier function[120,132].

There are no human data showing any effect of probiotics on dysplasia or colon cancer; however, in animal studies probiotics also seem to reduce the progression from inflammation to dysplasia and finally to colon cancer[130]. Oral administration of Lactobacillus salivarius UCC118 was shown to reduce the incidence of colon cancer as well as the severity of mucosal inflammation in IL-$10^{-/-}$ mice *vs* placebo[130]. Oral administration may not be required for certain probiotic effects: Il-$10^{-/-}$ mice had fewer proinflammatory cytokines after subcutaneous injection of *L. salivarius* UCC18[133].

Consequently, probiotics might improve IBD by regulating the inflammatory response or modulating gut microbiota composition. Many studies have tried to determine the effect of various probiotics in IBD and there will surely be more to come.

Probiotics in CD

There is no strong scientific evidence to justify the use of any of the probiotic strains that have been tested in the past in the management of CD[134,135]. The ECCO guidelines do not recommend probiotics to maintain remission in adult or paediatric CD patients[71]. The use of probiotics in patients with CD has produced ambiguous results and the available trials are small, with very few double blind, randomized, controlled trials[54].

The only positive study, by Guslandi *et al*[136], found that the yeast *S. boulardii* had an effect in CD. Thirty-two patients with CD in remission were treated with either mesalazin 3 g per day alone or mesalazin 2 g per day with *S. boulardii*. In the group treated with S. boulardii, significantly fewer patients relapsed than in the mesalazin only group (6.25% *vs* 37.5%, $P < 0.05$).

Fujimori *et al*[137] treated 10 patients with active CD unresponsive to 5-ASA or steroids with a therapy consisting of Bifidobacterium and Lactobacillus and the prebiotic psyllium for longer than 12 mo. Six patients achieved remission, 1 showed partial remission and there were 3 nonresponders. There were no significant differences when C-reactive protein and erythrocyte sedimentation values were compared before and after therapy. Malchow *et al*[129] treated 28 patients with active CD with prednisone and either E. coli Nissle or placebo. *E. coli* Nissle 1917 is a non-pathogenic *E. coli* that colonizes the intestine and inhibits the growth of enteropathogenic and other enteric bacteria[54]. This probiotic bacterium develops antagonistic activity against enterobacteria such as *Salmonella enteritidis*, *Shigella dysenteriae*, *Yersinia enterocolitica* and *Vibrio cholera*[138,139]. In this study, *E. Coli* Nissle was given in an increasing dosage over 24 d to a final dose of 5×10^{10} bacteria per day for one year. There was no statistically significant difference between the two groups in the time needed to induce remission[129]. In a placebo-controlled randomized study in children with CD treated with *Lactobacillus GG vs* placebo, there was also no significant difference in remission maintenance[140]. Seventy-five children were randomized to receive either *Lactobacillus GG* or placebo for 2 years, and the study concluded that *Lactobacillus GG* does not prolong time to relapse in children with CD when given as an adjunct to standard therapy. Schulze *et al*[138] determined the effect of *Lactobacillus GG vs* placebo in a controlled trial including 11 patients with mild to moderate CD. These patients received antibiotics (ciprofloxacin, metronidazole) for 2 wk, a tapering steroid regime over 12 wk and after 1 wk of antibiotic therapy they were randomized to receive either *Lactobacillus GG* or placebo for 6 mo[141]. The two groups did not differ as to relapse during the study period and mean time to relapse.

Recurrence of CD after surgical resection: For 1 year, Prantera *et al*[142] treated 45 patients who had undergone a curative ileocecal resection with either *Lactobacillus GG* or placebo but saw no benefit from the probiotic therapy. Marteau *et al*[143] studied the effect of *Lactobacillus johnsonii* (*L. Johnsonii*) in 98 patients with CD who had undergone a resection of less than 1 m of small bowel within 21 d prior to study enrolment. Patients were randomized to receive either *L. Johnsonii* or placebo for 6 mo, with no difference between the two groups. Van Gossum *et al*[144] also studied the effect of *L. Johnsonii vs* placebo in a 3-mo trial and again with the same result of no difference between the two groups.

Probiotics in UC

There are data that suggest that certain strains of probiotics are effective in the management of UC[145,146]. Tursi *et al*[147] studied the effect of the probiotic mixture VSL#3™. This contains 450 billion colony forming units of 8 lactic acid bacteria (*B. breve*, *B. longum*, *B. infantis*, *L. acidophilus*, *L. casei*, *L. delbrueckii*, *L. plantarum* and *Streptococcus salivarius subsp. thermophilus*). Seventy-one patients were treated with this probiotic for 8 wk and compared to an untreated control group of 73 patients[147]. VSL#3 ™ was significantly superior to placebo in reducing the activity of mild-to-moderate UC. Other factors like the reduction in rectal bleeding as well as the reintroduction of remission in relapsing UC patients after 8 wk of treatment did not reach statistical significance[147]. Bibiloni *et al*[148] treated 34 patients with active UC unresponsive to conventional therapy with VSL#3™ daily for 6 wk and achieved a response rate up to 77%.

Twenty-four patients with mild to moderate UC flares were treated with *S. boulardii* for 4 wk and showed a response rate of 68%[149]. Zocco *et al*[150] evaluated the effect of *Lactobacillus GG* in a randomized study of 187 patients with quiescent colitis. For 12 mo they received either *Lactobacillus GG* alone, *Lactobacillus GG* and mesalazine 2400 mg/d or mesalazine 2400 mg/d alone. They concluded that Lactobacillus GG has efficacy similar to mesalazine in maintaining remission in UC. After 12 mo of treatment, remission was maintained of 85% in the Lactobacillus GG group, 80% in the mesalazine group and 84% in the combined treatment group.

Ishikawa *et al*[151] investigated the effect of daily Bifidobacteria supplemented fermented milk, (containing *Bifidobacterium bifidum*, *Bifidobacterium breve* and *Lactobacillus acidophilus*), *vs* standard therapy with 5-ASA and steroids in 20 patients for 12 mo. The probiotic group had significantly fewer disease exacerbations than did the placebo treated control group.

Kruis *et al*[152] evaluated the effect of *E. coli* Nissle 1917 *vs* mesalazine 1500 mg per day in a 12-wk randomized trial with 103 patients with UC in remission. Relapse rates were similar in both groups, supporting the use of E. coli Nissle 1917 as a non-toxic treatment for ulcerative colitis. This result was confirmed by a larger study of the same group[139]. Rembacken *et al*[153] evaluated the effect of *E. coli* Nissle in maintaining remission in 83 patients with active UC at the start of the trial. At the beginning of the study patients received standard therapy to induce remission and were then randomized to either *E. coli* Nissle 1917 or mesalazine. There was no difference concerning relapse rates between the two groups.

Unlike other probiotics, the ECCO guidelines recommend *E. coli* Nissle as an effective alternative to 5-ASA for maintaining remission in UC[154].

Pouchitis

The most convincing data so far on the effect of probiotics in IBD have been found in the treatment of pouchitis[131]. The ECCO guidelines recommend probiotics as a therapeutic option for maintaining antibiotic-induced remission in recurrent pouchitis in pediatric UC[155]. Several probiotic strains are beneficial in preventing and treating pouchitis after surgery for UC[59].

Pouchitis is an idiopathic inflammatory disease of the ileal pouch that occurs in 15%-53% of UC patients following total abdominal colectomy with ileal pouch-anal anastomosis[54,156]. As faecal stasis with immunologic reactivity seems to be important in the pathogenesis of pouchitis, several studies evaluated the effect of probiotics in this disease. In a study with 40 patients with chronic relapsing pouchitis, Gionchetti *et al*[157] compared the effect of VSL#3 and placebo for 9 mo following one month's antibiotic therapy with rifaximin and ciprofloxacin. Eighty-five percent in the probiotic group stayed in remission *vs* 0% in the placebo group, as was confirmed by an international multicentre study[158]. In a different group of 31 patients with antibiotic dependent pouchitis, Shen *et al*[159] studied the effect of VSL#3. After 8 mo, 25 patients (71%) stopped therapy because of recurrence of symptoms or side effects.

Gionchetti *et al*[160] evaluated the effect of prophylactic probiotic therapy to prevent pouchitis. When 40 patients were randomized within a week after surgery to receive either VSL#3 or placebo for 12 mo[160], 10% in the probiotic group developed acute pouchitis compared to 40% in the placebo group. The VSL#3 treated group also showed a significantly lower stool frequency than the placebo group.

Similar results were shown in a study by Gosselink *et al*[161] with *Lactobacillus GG* in which 39 patients treated with Lactobacillus GG were compared to a placebo group for 3 years. In the probiotic therapy group significantly fewer patients developed pouchitis within those 3 years than in placebo group; however there is no current evidence that early intake of

prebiotics or probiotics can protect against the development of pouchitis, or even of IBD. Kuisma *et al*[162] evaluated the effect of Lactobacillus GG *vs* placebo in 20 patients in the treatment of active pouchitis for 3 mo and found no improvement in the probiotic group as compared to the control group.

Safety aspects

Although probiotics are considered safe, there have been case reports of bacteraemia and endocarditis associated with probiotic therapy[163]. In addition, the antibiotic resistance transferred from the probiotic bacteria to other bacteria in the gastrointestinal tract might also be of clinical relevance, and the risk of translocation of probiotics across the inflamed colonic mucosa in severely ill IBD patients has to be considered[54]. As mentioned above, the manipulation of the gut microbiota presents a challenge and the probiotic strain, dose, and frequency as well as the duration of the probiotic therapy have to be defined[120], taking into account that the highly individual variety of bacteria in the gut might cause bacteria-host interactions[120]. Further studies have evaluated the effect of nonviable bacteria. Since some of the beneficial effects of probiotics might be mediated by their DNA, live bacteria might not be needed at all[131].

FODMAP

Along with increased fast food and total protein and energy intake fructose consumption has also increased dramatically. Since the incidence of IBD has also increased in recent decades, an association between ingestion of incompletely absorbed fermentable carbohydrates (FODMAPs) and IBD has been postulated[9]. In the 1980s and 1990s, evidence was building for the role of poorly absorbed short-chain carbohydrates in the induction of gastrointestinal symptoms. These incompletely absorbed carbohydrates and polyols are summarized in the acronym FODMAPs. They include fructo-oligosaccharides (found in wheat, onions, legumes), lactose (found in milk and milk products), fructose (found in apples and many other fruits and vegetables, or honey), galactans (found in legumes) and sorbitol (found in stone fruits, artificial sweetener)[164]. Ingested FODMAPs are poorly absorbed in the small intestine. Due to their molecular size and osmotic effect, they draw fluid into the small and large bowel lumina[33,165]. FODMAPs can also induce gastrointestinal symptoms when they are fermented by intestinal bacteria and produce large amounts of gas[33,164,166].

Several trials have demonstrated the effect of a FODMAP-reduced diet in the treatment of irritable bowel syndrome (IBS). This diet restricts FODMAPs, as in wheat, onions, beans, many fruits and vegetables, and sorbitol and other sweeteners[21,167]. Dietary studies have demonstrated that reduction of FODMAPs reduces symptoms in up to 50% of patients[164]. In one case, the effect of a FODMAP reduced diet was determined in a placebo-controlled, cross-over rechallenge in patients with IBS[168]. Patients had fewer symptoms on the FODMAP reduced diet and symptoms recurred in 70%-80% of them when FODMAPs were reintroduced.

As 57% of patients with CD and 33% of patients with UC experience IBS-like symptoms[169,170], a FODMAP reduced diet might also be a therapeutic option in IBD[9,164]. In addition to relief from IBS-like symptoms in IBD, there are three observations that support the hypothesis that FODMAPs may also be involved in the pathogenesis of IBD[9]. First, the intake of FODMAPs in general and fructose specifically have increased in Western societies in recent decades. Second, there is an association between increased intake of sugars and the development of CD[9]. Third, excessive intake of FODMAPs creates conditions in the bowel like increased intestinal permeability that may predispose to CD[9]. To follow this up, studies have investigated the effect of a FODMAP reduced diet in IBD[164]. Barrett *et al*[165] treated 12 patients with ileostomy with either a low or high FODMAP diet for 4 d. Due to the osmotic effect[33] of FODMAPs, there was a 20% increase in ileal effluent on the high FODMAP diet as compared to the low FODMAP diet. It has been suggested that an increased inflow of FODMAPs into the distal small intestinal and proximal colonic lumen might underlie susceptibility to Crohn's disease. The passage of FODMAPs and their subsequent rapid fermentation might lead to expansion of bacterial populations with a secondary increase in intestinal permeability. Croagh *et al*[171] retrospectively determined the effect of a FODMAP reduced diet in patients with IBD. Seventy percent of patients who received instruction on a FODMAP reduced diet remained adherent to diet after 3 mo and reported a significant improvement of symptoms like pain, bloating, and diarrhea[171].

The role of bacteria in mediating the effects of FODMAP on intestinal inflammation was investigated by Zhou *et al*[172] in mice treated with low or high FODMAP diet or regular chow for 2 wk. Mice receiving the high FODMAP diet developed dysbiosis in the gut as well as mucosal inflammation and impaired intestinal permeability[172]. Pedersen *et al*[173] investigated the effect of a FODMAP-reduced diet in 89 patients with IBD (CD: 28 and UC: 61) suffering from IBS symptoms. They found a significant reduction in IBS-like symptoms in patients with IBD and a further reduction in disease activity for UC. In this study 70% of IBD patients with IBS symptoms were dysbiotic at the start of the diet and 50% after 6 wk on the diet. There were no significant changes in the microbiota in these patients after the 6 wk of reduced FODMAP diet[174].

It must, however, be borne in mind that most of the studies on the effect of a low FODMAP diet in IBD

Table 1 Summary of effects of nutritional interventions in inflammatory bowel disease

	Crohn's disease			Ulcerative colitis			
	Induce remission	Maintain remission	Postop.	Induce remission	Maintain remission	Postop.	Pouchitis
Enteral nutrition	Children: ++ Adults: +	++	+	No effect	No effect	No effect	Not tested
Total parenteral nutrition	+	No effect	Not tested	No effect	No effect	No effect	Not tested
Probiotics	No effect	No effect	No effect	+	+	Not tested	++
Low-FODMAP- diet	Not tested	Not tested	Not tested	Not tested	Not tested	Not tested	Not tested

are limited due to their retrospective and uncontrolled nature and lack of objective data on inflammatory changes associated with dietary intervention[14]. The FODMAP diet also greatly restricts consumption of many fruits and vegetables[175] and recurrence of symptoms after reintroduction of FODMAPs has to be expected.

CONCLUSION

Pharmacological therapy remains the mainstay of treatment of IBD. However, patients with IBD have a strong interest in dietary modifications as part of their therapeutic management. Unfortunately, dietary advice plays only a minor part in published guidelines for the management in IBD. The scientific literature shows that dietary factors might influence the risk of developing not only IBD but also intestinal mucosal inflammation. In addition, diet may serve as a symptomatic treatment for IBS-like symptoms in IBD. A "Westernized diet" rich in animal fat and protein and low in fiber may increase the risk of IBD. Dysbiosis induced by nutrition contributes to the pathogenesis of IBD.

Table 1 shows a summary of the effects of nutritional interventions in IBD. Due to the lack of large prospective controlled studies, no strong recommendations can be made at this point. The different protocols of many studies evaluating the effect of nutritional interventions in IBD, like EN, TPN, probiotics or a FODMAP reduced diet, are not comparable. Still, the role of nutrition in IBD is underscored by the effect of various dietary therapies, especially in paediatrics. In paediatric patients with CD, EN is an accepted therapeutic option. In this group EN has been shown to reach remission rates similar to steroids. Although some studies have shown similar benefits in adult patients with CD treated with EN compared to corticosteroids, a number of meta-analysis have shown that in adult patients, EN is inferior to corticosteroids. The protein or fat content of enteral formulae does not seem to affect clinical outcome. EN is not a successful therapeutic option in UC.

The efficacy of TPN in IBD is not greater than that achieved in other trials with steroids or EN.

The use of specific probiotics in patients with IBD can be recommended only in special clinical situations. There is no sound evidence to justify the use of probiotics in the management of CD. By contrast, studies on UC have shown a beneficial effect in selected patients. For patients with pouchitis, antibiotic treatment followed by probiotics, like VSL#3 or Lactobacillus GG, is effective in maintaining remission, though when probiotics are used, the risk of bacterial translocation and subsequent bacteremia has to be considered. Fulfillment of the therapeutic potential of probiotics requires more understanding of the normal intestinal microflora, and better characterization of probiotic strains at the phenotypic and genomic levels is needed as well as clarification of the mechanisms of action in different clinical settings. A FODMAP reduced diet may improve symptoms in IBD. More randomized controlled trails are necessary to evaluate the efficacy of these diet forms in IBD.

ACKNOWLEDGMENTS

The authors thank Eugenia Lamont for her assistance with English language editing.

REFERENCES

1 **Wedlake L**, Slack N, Andreyev HJ, Whelan K. Fiber in the treatment and maintenance of inflammatory bowel disease: a systematic review of randomized controlled trials. *Inflamm Bowel Dis* 2014; **20**: 576-586 [PMID: 24445775 DOI: 10.1097/01.MIB.0000437984.92565.31]

2 **Abraham C**, Medzhitov R. Interactions between the host innate immune system and microbes in inflammatory bowel disease. *Gastroenterology* 2011; **140**: 1729-1737 [PMID: 21530739 DOI: 10.1053/j.gastro.2011.02.012]

3 **Spooren CE**, Pierik MJ, Zeegers MP, Feskens EJ, Masclee AA, Jonkers DM. Review article: the association of diet with onset and relapse in patients with inflammatory bowel disease. *Aliment Pharmacol Ther* 2013; **38**: 1172-1187 [PMID: 24118051 DOI: 10.1111/apt.12501]

4 **Yamamoto T**, Nakahigashi M, Saniabadi AR. Review article: diet and inflammatory bowel disease--epidemiology and treatment. *Aliment Pharmacol Ther* 2009; **30**: 99-112 [PMID: 19438426 DOI: 10.1111/j.1365-2036.2009.04035.x]

5 **Montgomery SM**, Morris DL, Thompson NP, Subhani J, Pounder RE, Wakefield AJ. Prevalence of inflammatory bowel disease in British 26 year olds: national longitudinal birth cohort. *BMJ* 1998; **316**: 1058-1059 [PMID: 9552907]

6 **Petritsch W**, Fuchs S, Berghold A, Bachmaier G, Högenauer C, Hauer AC, Weiglhofer U, Wenzl HH. Incidence of inflammatory bowel disease in the province of Styria, Austria, from 1997 to 2007: a population-based study. *J Crohns Colitis* 2013; **7**: 58-69 [PMID: 22542057 DOI: 10.1016/j.crohns.2012.03.012]

7 **Molodecky NA**, Soon IS, Rabi DM, Ghali WA, Ferris M, Chernoff G, Benchimol EI, Panaccione R, Ghosh S, Barkema HW, Kaplan GG. Increasing incidence and prevalence of the inflammatory bowel diseases with time, based on systematic review. *Gastroenterology* 2012; **142**: 46-54.e42; quiz e30 [PMID: 22001864 DOI: 10.1053/j.gastro.2011.10.001]

8 **Jayanthi V**, Probert CS, Pinder D, Wicks AC, Mayberry JF. Epidemiology of Crohn's disease in Indian migrants and the indigenous population in Leicestershire. *Q J Med* 1992; **82**: 125-138 [PMID: 1620813]

9 **Gibson PR**, Shepherd SJ. Personal view: food for thought--western lifestyle and susceptibility to Crohn's disease. The FODMAP hypothesis. *Aliment Pharmacol Ther* 2005; **21**: 1399-1409 [PMID: 15948806 DOI: 10.1111/j.1365-2036.2005.02506.x]

10 **Kugathasan S**, Judd RH, Hoffmann RG, Heikenen J, Telega G, Khan F, Weisdorf-Schindele S, San Pablo W, Perrault J, Park R, Yaffe M, Brown C, Rivera-Bennett MT, Halabi I, Martinez A, Blank E, Werlin SL, Rudolph CD, Binion DG. Epidemiologic and clinical characteristics of children with newly diagnosed inflammatory bowel disease in Wisconsin: a statewide population-based study. *J Pediatr* 2003; **143**: 525-531 [PMID: 14571234]

11 **Goh K**, Xiao SD. Inflammatory bowel disease: a survey of the epidemiology in Asia. *J Dig Dis* 2009; **10**: 1-6 [PMID: 19236540 DOI: 10.1111/j.1751-2980.2008.00355.x]

12 **Chapman-Kiddell CA**, Davies PS, Gillen L, Radford-Smith GL. Role of diet in the development of inflammatory bowel disease. *Inflamm Bowel Dis* 2010; **16**: 137-151 [PMID: 19462428 DOI: 10.1002/ibd.20968]

13 **Montgomery SM**, Ekbom A. Epidemiology of inflammatory bowel disease. *Curr Opin Gastroenterol* 2002; **18**: 416-420 [PMID: 17033315]

14 **Hou JK**, Abraham B, El-Serag H. Dietary intake and risk of developing inflammatory bowel disease: a systematic review of the literature. *Am J Gastroenterol* 2011; **106**: 563-573 [PMID: 21468064 DOI: 10.1038/ajg.2011.44]

15 **Andersen V**, Olsen A, Carbonnel F, Tjønneland A, Vogel U. Diet and risk of inflammatory bowel disease. *Dig Liver Dis* 2012; **44**: 185-194 [PMID: 22055893 DOI: 10.1016/j.dld.2011.10.001]

16 **Warthin TA**. Some epidemiological observations on the etiology of regional enteritis. *Trans Am Clin Climatol Assoc* 1969; **80**: 116-124 [PMID: 4389923]

17 **Talley NJ**, Abreu MT, Achkar JP, Bernstein CN, Dubinsky MC, Hanauer SB, Kane SV, Sandborn WJ, Ullman TA, Moayyedi P; American College of Gastroenterology IBD Task Force. An evidence-based systematic review on medical therapies for inflammatory bowel disease. *Am J Gastroenterol* 2011; **106** Suppl 1: S2-S25; quiz S26 [PMID: 21472012 DOI: 10.1038/ajg.2011.58]

18 **Goh J**, O'Morain CA. Review article: nutrition and adult inflammatory bowel disease. *Aliment Pharmacol Ther* 2003; **17**: 307-320 [PMID: 12562443]

19 **Davies PS**, Rhodes J. Maintenance of remission in ulcerative colitis with sulphasalazine or a high-fibre diet: a clinical trial. *Br Med J* 1978; **1**: 1524-1525 [PMID: 26448]

20 **O'Moráin C**, Segal AW, Levi AJ. Elemental diet as primary treatment of acute Crohn's disease: a controlled trial. *Br Med J* (Clin Res Ed) 1984; **288**: 1859-1862 [PMID: 6428577]

21 **Richman E**, Rhodes JM. Review article: evidence-based dietary advice for patients with inflammatory bowel disease. *Aliment Pharmacol Ther* 2013; **38**: 1156-1171 [PMID: 24102340 DOI: 10.1111/apt.12500]

22 **Gassull MA**. Review article: the intestinal lumen as a therapeutic target in inflammatory bowel disease. *Aliment Pharmacol Ther* 2006; **24** Suppl 3: 90-95 [PMID: 16961752 DOI: 10.1111/j.1365-2036.2006.03067.x]

23 **Persson PG**, Ahlbom A, Hellers G. Diet and inflammatory bowel disease: a case-control study. *Epidemiology* 1992; **3**: 47-52 [PMID: 1313310]

24 **D'Souza S**, Levy E, Mack D, Israel D, Lambrette P, Ghadirian P, Deslandres C, Morgan K, Seidman EG, Amre DK. Dietary patterns and risk for Crohn's disease in children. *Inflamm Bowel Dis* 2008; **14**: 367-373 [PMID: 18092347 DOI: 10.1002/ibd.20333]

25 **James AH**. Breakfast and Crohn's disease. *Br Med J* 1977; **1**: 943-945 [PMID: 856393]

26 **Bianchi Porro G**, Panza E. Smoking, sugar, and inflammatory bowel disease. *Br Med J* (Clin Res Ed) 1985; **291**: 971-972 [PMID: 3929989]

27 **Martini GA**, Brandes JW. Increased consumption of refined carbohydrates in patients with Crohn's disease. *Klin Wochenschr* 1976; **54**: 367-371 [PMID: 1271690]

28 **Russel MG**, Engels LG, Muris JW, Limonard CB, Volovics A, Brummer RJ, Stockbrügger RW. Modern life' in the epidemiology of inflammatory bowel disease: a case-control study with special emphasis on nutritional factors. *Eur J Gastroenterol Hepatol* 1998; **10**: 243-249 [PMID: 9585029]

29 **Geerling BJ**, Badart-Smook A, Stockbrügger RW, Brummer RJ. Comprehensive nutritional status in recently diagnosed patients with inflammatory bowel disease compared with population controls. *Eur J Clin Nutr* 2000; **54**: 514-521 [PMID: 10878655]

30 **Jakobsen C**, Paerregaard A, Munkholm P, Wewer V. Environmental factors and risk of developing paediatric inflammatory bowel disease -- a population based study 2007-2009. *J Crohns Colitis* 2013; **7**: 79-88 [PMID: 22748696 DOI: 10.1016/j.crohns.2012.05.024]

31 **Tjonneland A**, Overvad K, Bergmann MM, Nagel G, Linseisen J, Hallmans G, Palmqvist R, Sjodin H, Hagglund G, Berglund G, Lindgren S, Grip O, Palli D, Day NE, Khaw KT, Bingham S, Riboli E, Kennedy H, Hart A. Linoleic acid, a dietary n-6 polyunsaturated fatty acid, and the aetiology of ulcerative colitis: a nested case-control study within a European prospective cohort study. *Gut* 2009; **58**: 1606-1611 [PMID: 19628674 DOI: 10.1136/gut.2008.169078]

32 **Ananthakrishnan AN**, Khalili H, Konijeti GG, Higuchi LM, de Silva P, Fuchs CS, Willett WC, Richter JM, Chan AT. Long-term intake of dietary fat and risk of ulcerative colitis and Crohn's disease. *Gut* 2014; **63**: 776-784 [PMID: 23828881 DOI: 10.1136/gutjnl-2013-305304]

33 **Hammer HF**. Gut microbiota and inflammatory bowel disease. *Dig Dis* 2011; **29**: 550-553 [PMID: 22179210 DOI: 10.1159/000332981]

34 **Gentschew L**, Ferguson LR. Role of nutrition and microbiota in susceptibility to inflammatory bowel diseases. *Mol Nutr Food Res* 2012; **56**: 524-535 [PMID: 22495981 DOI: 10.1002/mnfr.201100630]

35 **Kiss EA**, Vonarbourg C, Kopfmann S, Hobeika E, Finke D, Esser C, Diefenbach A. Natural aryl hydrocarbon receptor ligands control organogenesis of intestinal lymphoid follicles. *Science* 2011; **334**: 1561-1565 [PMID: 22033518 DOI: 10.1126/science.1214914]

36 **Tilg H**. Diet and intestinal immunity. *N Engl J Med* 2012; **366**: 181-183 [PMID: 22236230 DOI: 10.1056/NEJMcibr1113158]

37 **Monteleone I**, Pallone F, Monteleone G. Aryl hydrocarbon receptor and colitis. *Semin Immunopathol* 2013; **35**: 671-675 [PMID: 23928874 DOI: 10.1007/s00281-013-0396-2]

38 **Monteleone I**, Rizzo A, Sarra M, Sica G, Sileri P, Biancone L, MacDonald TT, Pallone F, Monteleone G. Aryl hydrocarbon receptor-induced signals up-regulate IL-22 production and inhibit inflammation in the gastrointestinal tract. *Gastroenterology* 2011; **141**: 237-248, 248.e1 [PMID: 21600206 DOI: 10.1053/j.gastro.2011.04.007]

39 **Li Y**, Innocentin S, Withers DR, Roberts NA, Gallagher AR, Grigorieva EF, Wilhelm C, Veldhoen M. Exogenous stimuli maintain intraepithelial lymphocytes via aryl hydrocarbon receptor activation. *Cell* 2011; **147**: 629-640 [PMID: 21999944 DOI: 10.1016/j.cell.2011.09.025]

40 **Albenberg LG**, Lewis JD, Wu GD. Food and the gut microbiota in inflammatory bowel diseases: a critical connection. *Curr Opin Gastroenterol* 2012; **28**: 314-320 [PMID: 22573192 DOI: 10.1097/MOG.0b013e328354586f]

41 **Major G**, Spiller R. Irritable bowel syndrome, inflammatory bowel disease and the microbiome. *Curr Opin Endocrinol Diabetes Obes* 2014; **21**: 15-21 [PMID: 24296462 DOI: 10.1097/MED.0000000000000032]

42 **Chan YK**, Estaki M, Gibson DL. Clinical consequences of diet-induced dysbiosis. *Ann Nutr Metab* 2013; **63** Suppl 2: 28-40 [PMID:

24217034 DOI: 10.1159/000354902]
43 **Penders J**, Thijs C, Vink C, Stelma FF, Snijders B, Kummeling I, van den Brandt PA, Stobberingh EE. Factors influencing the composition of the intestinal microbiota in early infancy. *Pediatrics* 2006; **118**: 511-521 [PMID: 16882802 DOI: 10.1542/peds.2005-2824]
44 **Dominguez-Bello MG**, Blaser MJ, Ley RE, Knight R. Development of the human gastrointestinal microbiota and insights from high-throughput sequencing. *Gastroenterology* 2011; **140**: 1713-1719 [PMID: 21530737 DOI: 10.1053/j.gastro.2011.02.011]
45 **Costello EK**, Lauber CL, Hamady M, Fierer N, Gordon JI, Knight R. Bacterial community variation in human body habitats across space and time. *Science* 2009; **326**: 1694-1697 [PMID: 19892944 DOI: 10.1126/science.1177486]
46 **Sheil B**, Shanahan F, O'Mahony L. Probiotic effects on inflammatory bowel disease. *J Nutr* 2007; **137**: 819S-824S [PMID: 17311981]
47 **Cabré E**, Domènech E. Impact of environmental and dietary factors on the course of inflammatory bowel disease. *World J Gastroenterol* 2012; **18**: 3814-3822 [PMID: 22876032 DOI: 10.3748/wjg.v18.i29.3814]
48 **Hildebrandt MA**, Hoffmann C, Sherrill-Mix SA, Keilbaugh SA, Hamady M, Chen YY, Knight R, Ahima RS, Bushman F, Wu GD. High-fat diet determines the composition of the murine gut microbiome independently of obesity. *Gastroenterology* 2009; **137**: 1716-1724.e1-e2 [PMID: 19706296 DOI: 10.1053/j.gastro.2009.08.042]
49 **Turnbaugh PJ**, Ridaura VK, Faith JJ, Rey FE, Knight R, Gordon JI. The effect of diet on the human gut microbiome: a metagenomic analysis in humanized gnotobiotic mice. *Sci Transl Med* 2009; **1**: 6ra14 [PMID: 20368178 DOI: 10.1126/scitranslmed.3000322]
50 **Benno Y**, Suzuki K, Suzuki K, Narisawa K, Bruce WR, Mitsuoka T. Comparison of the fecal microflora in rural Japanese and urban Canadians. *Microbiol Immunol* 1986; **30**: 521-532 [PMID: 3747865]
51 **Cammarota G**, Ianiro G, Gasbarrini A. Fecal microbiota transplantation for the treatment of Clostridium difficile infection: a systematic review. *J Clin Gastroenterol* 2014; **48**: 693-702 [PMID: 24440934 DOI: 10.1097/MCG.0000000000000046]
52 **Haller D**. Nutrigenomics and IBD: the intestinal microbiota at the cross-road between inflammation and metabolism. *J Clin Gastroenterol* 2010; **44** Suppl 1: S6-S9 [PMID: 20535026 DOI: 10.1097/MCG.0b013e3181dd8b76]
53 **Baker PI**, Love DR, Ferguson LR. Role of gut microbiota in Crohn's disease. *Expert Rev Gastroenterol Hepatol* 2009; **3**: 535-546 [PMID: 19817674 DOI: 10.1586/egh.09.47]
54 **Isaacs K**, Herfarth H. Role of probiotic therapy in IBD. *Inflamm Bowel Dis* 2008; **14**: 1597-1605 [PMID: 18421762 DOI: 10.1002/ibd.20465]
55 **Kobayashi KS**, Chamaillard M, Ogura Y, Henegariu O, Inohara N, Nuñez G, Flavell RA. Nod2-dependent regulation of innate and adaptive immunity in the intestinal tract. *Science* 2005; **307**: 731-734 [PMID: 15692051 DOI: 10.1126/science.1104911]
56 **Inohara N**, Ogura Y, Nuñez G. Nods: a family of cytosolic proteins that regulate the host response to pathogens. *Curr Opin Microbiol* 2002; **5**: 76-80 [PMID: 11834373]
57 **Sartor RB**. The influence of normal microbial flora on the development of chronic mucosal inflammation. *Res Immunol* 1997; **148**: 567-576 [PMID: 9588836]
58 **Frank DN**, St Amand AL, Feldman RA, Boedeker EC, Harpaz N, Pace NR. Molecular-phylogenetic characterization of microbial community imbalances in human inflammatory bowel diseases. *Proc Natl Acad Sci USA* 2007; **104**: 13780-13785 [PMID: 17699621 DOI: 10.1073/pnas.0706625104]
59 **Ewaschuk JB**, Dieleman LA. Probiotics and prebiotics in chronic inflammatory bowel diseases. *World J Gastroenterol* 2006; **12**: 5941-5950 [PMID: 17009391 DOI: 10.3748/wjg.v12.i37.5941]
60 **Garrett WS**, Gordon JI, Glimcher LH. Homeostasis and inflammation in the intestine. *Cell* 2010; **140**: 859-870 [PMID: 20303876 DOI: 10.1016/j.cell.2010.01.023]
61 **Sartor RB**. Genetics and environmental interactions shape the intestinal microbiome to promote inflammatory bowel disease versus mucosal homeostasis. *Gastroenterology* 2010; **139**: 1816-1819 [PMID: 21029802 DOI: 10.1053/j.gastro.2010.10.036]
62 **Swidsinski A**, Weber J, Loening-Baucke V, Hale LP, Lochs H. Spatial organization and composition of the mucosal flora in patients with inflammatory bowel disease. *J Clin Microbiol* 2005; **43**: 3380-3389 [PMID: 16000463 DOI: 10.1128/JCM.43.7.3380-3389.2005]
63 **Andoh A**, Tsujikawa T, Sasaki M, Mitsuyama K, Suzuki Y, Matsui T, Matsumoto T, Benno Y, Fujiyama Y. Faecal microbiota profile of Crohn's disease determined by terminal restriction fragment length polymorphism analysis. *Aliment Pharmacol Ther* 2009; **29**: 75-82 [PMID: 18945264 DOI: 10.1111/j.1365-2036.2008.03860.x]
64 **Seksik P**, Rigottier-Gois L, Gramet G, Sutren M, Pochart P, Marteau P, Jian R, Doré J. Alterations of the dominant faecal bacterial groups in patients with Crohn's disease of the colon. *Gut* 2003; **52**: 237-242 [PMID: 12524406]
65 **Sokol H**, Seksik P, Furet JP, Firmesse O, Nion-Larmurier I, Beaugerie L, Cosnes J, Corthier G, Marteau P, Doré J. Low counts of Faecalibacterium prausnitzii in colitis microbiota. *Inflamm Bowel Dis* 2009; **15**: 1183-1189 [PMID: 19235886 DOI: 10.1002/ibd.20903]
66 **Rutgeerts P**. Recurrence of Crohn's disease in the neoterminal ileum after ileal resection: is prevention therapy possible? *Neth J Med* 1994; **45**: 60-64 [PMID: 7936007]
67 **D'Haens GR**, Geboes K, Peeters M, Baert F, Penninckx F, Rutgeerts P. Early lesions of recurrent Crohn's disease caused by infusion of intestinal contents in excluded ileum. *Gastroenterology* 1998; **114**: 262-267 [PMID: 9453485]
68 **Coëffier M**, Marion-Letellier R, Déchelotte P. Potential for amino acids supplementation during inflammatory bowel diseases. *Inflamm Bowel Dis* 2010; **16**: 518-524 [PMID: 19572337 DOI: 10.1002/ibd.21017]
69 **Smith PA**. Nutritional therapy for active Crohn's disease. *World J Gastroenterol* 2008; **14**: 4420-4423 [PMID: 18666339 DOI: 10.3748/wjg.14.4420]
70 **Lochs H**, Allison SP, Meier R, Pirlich M, Kondrup J, Schneider S, van den Berghe G, Pichard C. Introductory to the ESPEN Guidelines on Enteral Nutrition: Terminology, definitions and general topics. *Clin Nutr* 2006; **25**: 180-186 [PMID: 16697086 DOI: 10.1016/j.clnu.2006.02.007]
71 **Ruemmele FM**, Veres G, Kolho KL, Griffiths A, Levine A, Escher JC, Amil Dias J, Barabino A, Braegger CP, Bronsky J, Buderus S, Martín-de-Carpi J, De Ridder L, Fagerberg UL, Hugot JP, Kierkus J, Kolacek S, Koletzko S, Lionetti P, Miele E, Navas López VM, Paerregaard A, Russell RK, Serban DE, Shaoul R, Van Rheenen P, Veereman G, Weiss B, Wilson D, Dignass A, Eliakim A, Winter H, Turner D. Consensus guidelines of ECCO/ESPGHAN on the medical management of pediatric Crohn's disease. *J Crohns Colitis* 2014; **8**: 1179-1207 [PMID: 24909831 DOI: 10.1016/j.crohns.2014.04.005]
72 **Fernández-Banares F**, Cabré E, Esteve-Comas M, Gassull MA. How effective is enteral nutrition in inducing clinical remission in active Crohn's disease? A meta-analysis of the randomized clinical trials. *JPEN J Parenter Enteral Nutr* 1995; **19**: 356-364 [PMID: 8577011]
73 **Griffiths AM**, Ohlsson A, Sherman PM, Sutherland LR. Meta-analysis of enteral nutrition as a primary treatment of active Crohn's disease. *Gastroenterology* 1995; **108**: 1056-1067 [PMID: 7698572]
74 **Messori A**, Trallori G, D'Albasio G, Milla M, Vannozzi G, Pacini F. Defined-formula diets versus steroids in the treatment of active Crohn's disease: a meta-analysis. *Scand J Gastroenterol* 1996; **31**: 267-272 [PMID: 8833357]
75 **Zachos M**, Tondeur M, Griffiths AM. Enteral nutritional therapy for induction of remission in Crohn's disease. *Cochrane Database Syst Rev* 2007; (**1**): CD000542 [PMID: 17253452 DOI: 10.1002/14651858.CD000542.pub2]
76 **Fell JM**, Paintin M, Arnaud-Battandier F, Beattie RM, Hollis A, Kitching P, Donnet-Hughes A, MacDonald TT, Walker-Smith JA.

Mucosal healing and a fall in mucosal pro-inflammatory cytokine mRNA induced by a specific oral polymeric diet in paediatric Crohn's disease. *Aliment Pharmacol Ther* 2000; **14**: 281-289 [PMID: 10735920]
77 **Newby EA**, Sawczenko A, Thomas AG, Wilson D. Interventions for growth failure in childhood Crohn's disease. *Cochrane Database Syst Rev* 2005; (**3**): CD003873 [PMID: 16034910 DOI: 10.1002/14651858.CD003873.pub2]
78 **Day AS**, Whitten KE, Sidler M, Lemberg DA. Systematic review: nutritional therapy in paediatric Crohn's disease. *Aliment Pharmacol Ther* 2008; **27**: 293-307 [PMID: 18045244 DOI: 10.1111/j.1365-2036.2007.03578.x]
79 **Gerasimidis K**, Talwar D, Duncan A, Moyes P, Buchanan E, Hassan K, O'Reilly D, McGrogan P, Edwards CA. Impact of exclusive enteral nutrition on body composition and circulating micronutrients in plasma and erythrocytes of children with active Crohn's disease. *Inflamm Bowel Dis* 2012; **18**: 1672-1681 [PMID: 22069243 DOI: 10.1002/ibd.21916]
80 **Cameron FL**, Gerasimidis K, Papangelou A, Missiou D, Garrick V, Cardigan T, Buchanan E, Barclay AR, McGrogan P, Russell RK. Clinical progress in the two years following a course of exclusive enteral nutrition in 109 paediatric patients with Crohn's disease. *Aliment Pharmacol Ther* 2013; **37**: 622-629 [PMID: 23360085 DOI: 10.1111/apt.12230]
81 **Grover Z**, Muir R, Lewindon P. Exclusive enteral nutrition induces early clinical, mucosal and transmural remission in paediatric Crohn's disease. *J Gastroenterol* 2014; **49**: 638-645 [PMID: 23636735 DOI: 10.1007/s00535-013-0815-0]
82 **Dziechciarz P**, Horvath A, Shamir R, Szajewska H. Meta-analysis: enteral nutrition in active Crohn's disease in children. *Aliment Pharmacol Ther* 2007; **26**: 795-806 [PMID: 17767463 DOI: 10.1111/j.1365-2036.2007.03431.x]
83 **Whitten KE**, Rogers P, Ooi CY, Day AS. International survey of enteral nutrition protocols used in children with Crohn's disease. *J Dig Dis* 2012; **13**: 107-112 [PMID: 22257479 DOI: 10.1111/j.1751-2980.2011.00558.x]
84 **Cabré E**, Gassull MA. Nutrition in inflammatory bowel disease: impact on disease and therapy. *Curr Opin Gastroenterol* 2001; **17**: 342-349 [PMID: 17031181]
85 **Sandborn WJ**, Feagan BG, Hanauer SB, Lochs H, Löfberg R, Modigliani R, Present DH, Rutgeerts P, Schölmerich J, Stange EF, Sutherland LR. A review of activity indices and efficacy endpoints for clinical trials of medical therapy in adults with Crohn's disease. *Gastroenterology* 2002; **122**: 512-530 [PMID: 11832465]
86 **Lochs H**, Steinhardt HJ, Klaus-Wentz B, Zeitz M, Vogelsang H, Sommer H, Fleig WE, Bauer P, Schirrmeister J, Malchow H. Comparison of enteral nutrition and drug treatment in active Crohn's disease. Results of the European Cooperative Crohn's Disease Study. IV. *Gastroenterology* 1991; **101**: 881-888 [PMID: 1679736]
87 **Akobeng AK**, Thomas AG. Enteral nutrition for maintenance of remission in Crohn's disease. *Cochrane Database Syst Rev* 2007; (**3**): CD005984 [PMID: 17636816 DOI: 10.1002/14651858.CD005984.pub2]
88 **Yamamoto T**, Nakahigashi M, Umegae S, Matsumoto K. Prospective clinical trial: enteral nutrition during maintenance infliximab in Crohn's disease. *J Gastroenterol* 2010; **45**: 24-29 [PMID: 19798465 DOI: 10.1007/s00535-009-0136-5]
89 **Hirakawa H**, Fukuda Y, Tanida N, Hosomi M, Shimoyama T. Home elemental enteral hyperalimentation (HEEH) for the maintenance of remission in patients with Crohn's disease. *Gastroenterol Jpn* 1993; **28**: 379-384 [PMID: 8102107]
90 **Koga H**, Iida M, Aoyagi K, Matsui T, Fujishima M. [Long-term efficacy of low residue diet for the maintenance of remission in patients with Crohn's disease]. *Nihon Shokakibyo Gakkai Zasshi* 1993; **90**: 2882-2888 [PMID: 8271460]
91 **Takagi S**, Utsunomiya K, Kuriyama S, Yokoyama H, Takahashi S, Iwabuchi M, Takahashi H, Takahashi S, Kinouchi Y, Hiwatashi N, Funayama Y, Sasaki I, Tsuji I, Shimosegawa T. Effectiveness of an 'half elemental diet' as maintenance therapy for Crohn's disease: A randomized-controlled trial. *Aliment Pharmacol Ther* 2006; **24**: 1333-1340 [PMID: 17059514 DOI: 10.1111/j.1365-2036.2006.03120.x]
92 **Wilschanski M**, Sherman P, Pencharz P, Davis L, Corey M, Griffiths A. Supplementary enteral nutrition maintains remission in paediatric Crohn's disease. *Gut* 1996; **38**: 543-548 [PMID: 8707085]
93 **Yamamoto T**, Nakahigashi M, Saniabadi AR, Iwata T, Maruyama Y, Umegae S, Matsumoto K. Impacts of long-term enteral nutrition on clinical and endoscopic disease activities and mucosal cytokines during remission in patients with Crohn's disease: a prospective study. *Inflamm Bowel Dis* 2007; **13**: 1493-1501 [PMID: 17879280 DOI: 10.1002/ibd.20238]
94 **Hanai H**, Iida T, Takeuchi K, Arai H, Arai O, Abe J, Tanaka T, Maruyama Y, Ikeya K, Sugimoto K, Nakamura T, Nakamura K, Watanabe F. Nutritional therapy versus 6-mercaptopurine as maintenance therapy in patients with Crohn's disease. *Dig Liver Dis* 2012; **44**: 649-654 [PMID: 22542605 DOI: 10.1016/j.dld.2012.03.007]
95 **Yamamoto T**, Nakahigashi M, Umegae S, Kitagawa T, Matsumoto K. Impact of elemental diet on mucosal inflammation in patients with active Crohn's disease: cytokine production and endoscopic and histological findings. *Inflamm Bowel Dis* 2005; **11**: 580-588 [PMID: 15905706]
96 **Berni Canani R**, Terrin G, Borrelli O, Romano MT, Manguso F, Coruzzo A, D'Armiento F, Romeo EF, Cucchiara S. Short- and long-term therapeutic efficacy of nutritional therapy and corticosteroids in paediatric Crohn's disease. *Dig Liver Dis* 2006; **38**: 381-387 [PMID: 16301010 DOI: 10.1016/j.dld.2005.10.005]
97 **Borrelli O**, Cordischi L, Cirulli M, Paganelli M, Labalestra V, Uccini S, Russo PM, Cucchiara S. Polymeric diet alone versus corticosteroids in the treatment of active pediatric Crohn's disease: a randomized controlled open-label trial. *Clin Gastroenterol Hepatol* 2006; **4**: 744-753 [PMID: 16682258 DOI: 10.1016/j.cgh.2006.03.010]
98 **Rutgeerts P**, Vermeire S, Van Assche G. Mucosal healing in inflammatory bowel disease: impossible ideal or therapeutic target? *Gut* 2007; **56**: 453-455 [PMID: 17369375 DOI: 10.1136/gut.2005.088732]
99 **Sakurai T**, Matsui T, Yao T, Takagi Y, Hirai F, Aoyagi K, Okada M. Short-term efficacy of enteral nutrition in the treatment of active Crohn's disease: a randomized, controlled trial comparing nutrient formulas. *JPEN J Parenter Enteral Nutr* 2002; **26**: 98-103 [PMID: 11871742]
100 **Giaffer MH**, North G, Holdsworth CD. Controlled trial of polymeric versus elemental diet in treatment of active Crohn's disease. *Lancet* 1990; **335**: 816-819 [PMID: 1969560]
101 **Kobayashi K**, Katsumata T, Yokoyama K, Takahashi H, Igarashi M, Saigenji K. [A randomized controlled study of total parenteral nutrition and enteral nutrition by elemental and polymeric diet as primary therapy in active phase of Crohn's disease]. *Nihon Shokakibyo Gakkai Zasshi* 1998; **95**: 1212-1221 [PMID: 9852724]
102 **Middleton SJ**, Rucker JT, Kirby GA, Riordan AM, Hunter JO. Long-chain triglycerides reduce the efficacy of enteral feeds in patients with active Crohn's disease. *Clin Nutr* 1995; **14**: 229-236 [PMID: 16843936]
103 **Raouf AH**, Hildrey V, Daniel J, Walker RJ, Krasner N, Elias E, Rhodes JM. Enteral feeding as sole treatment for Crohn's disease: controlled trial of whole protein v amino acid based feed and a case study of dietary challenge. *Gut* 1991; **32**: 702-707 [PMID: 1905672]
104 **Wakefield AJ**, Ekbom A, Dhillon AP, Pittilo RM, Pounder RE. Crohn's disease: pathogenesis and persistent measles virus infection. *Gastroenterology* 1995; **108**: 911-916 [PMID: 7875495]
105 **Leach ST**, Mitchell HM, Eng WR, Zhang L, Day AS. Sustained modulation of intestinal bacteria by exclusive enteral nutrition used to treat children with Crohn's disease. *Aliment Pharmacol Ther* 2008; **28**: 724-733 [PMID: 19145728]
106 **Lionetti P**, Callegari ML, Ferrari S, Cavicchi MC, Pozzi E, de Martino M, Morelli L. Enteral nutrition and microflora in pediatric Crohn's disease. *JPEN J Parenter Enteral Nutr* 2005; **29**:

S173-S15; S173-S175; discussion S175-S178, S184-S188 [PMID: 15980280]
107 **Flanagan P**, Campbell BJ, Rhodes JM. Bacteria in the pathogenesis of inflammatory bowel disease. *Biochem Soc Trans* 2011; **39**: 1067-1072 [PMID: 21787349 DOI: 10.1042/BST0391067]
108 **Takahashi H**, Ando T, Watanabe O, Maeda O, Ishiguro K, Ohmiya N, Niwa Y, Goto H. Usefulness of an elemental diet in Crohn's disease. *Inflammopharmacology* 2007; **15**: 15-17 [PMID: 17323189 DOI: 10.1007/s10787-006-1570-0]
109 **Woolner J**, Parker T, Kirby G, Hunter J. The development and evaluation of a diet for maintaining remission in Crohn's disease. *J Hum Nutr Diet* 1998; **11**: 1-11 [DOI: 10.1046/j.1365-277X.1998.00075.x]
110 **Rajendran N**, Kumar D. Role of diet in the management of inflammatory bowel disease. *World J Gastroenterol* 2010; **16**: 1442-1448 [PMID: 20333783 DOI: 10.3748/wjg.v16.i12.1442]
111 **Teahon K**, Bjarnason I, Pearson M, Levi AJ. Ten years' experience with an elemental diet in the management of Crohn's disease. *Gut* 1990; **31**: 1133-1137 [PMID: 2083858]
112 **González-Huix F**, Fernández-Bañares F, Esteve-Comas M, Abad-Lacruz A, Cabré E, Acero D, Figa M, Guilera M, Humbert P, de León R. Enteral versus parenteral nutrition as adjunct therapy in acute ulcerative colitis. *Am J Gastroenterol* 1993; **88**: 227-232 [PMID: 8424426]
113 **Scolapio JS**. The role of total parenteral nutrition in the management of patients with acute attacks of inflammatory bowel disease. *J Clin Gastroenterol* 1999; **29**: 223-224 [PMID: 10509948]
114 **Müller JM**, Keller HW, Erasmi H, Pichlmaier H. Total parenteral nutrition as the sole therapy in Crohn's disease--a prospective study. *Br J Surg* 1983; **70**: 40-43 [PMID: 6402050]
115 **Greenberg GR**, Fleming CR, Jeejeebhoy KN, Rosenberg IH, Sales D, Tremaine WJ. Controlled trial of bowel rest and nutritional support in the management of Crohn's disease. *Gut* 1988; **29**: 1309-1315 [PMID: 3143625]
116 **Ostro MJ**, Greenberg GR, Jeejeebhoy KN. Total parenteral nutrition and complete bowel rest in the management of Crohn's disease. *JPEN J Parenter Enteral Nutr* 1985; **9**: 280-287 [PMID: 3925172]
117 **Duerksen DR**, Nehra V, Bistrian BR, Blackburn GL. Appropriate nutritional support in acute and complicated Crohn's disease. *Nutrition* 1998; **14**: 462-465 [PMID: 9614313]
118 **Dickinson RJ**, Ashton MG, Axon AT, Smith RC, Yeung CK, Hill GL. Controlled trial of intravenous hyperalimentation and total bowel rest as an adjunct to the routine therapy of acute colitis. *Gastroenterology* 1980; **79**: 1199-1204 [PMID: 6777233]
119 **McIntyre PB**, Powell-Tuck J, Wood SR, Lennard-Jones JE, Lerebours E, Hecketsweiler P, Galmiche JP, Colin R. Controlled trial of bowel rest in the treatment of severe acute colitis. *Gut* 1986; **27**: 481-485 [PMID: 3084344]
120 **Ng SC**, Hart AL, Kamm MA, Stagg AJ, Knight SC. Mechanisms of action of probiotics: recent advances. *Inflamm Bowel Dis* 2009; **15**: 300-310 [PMID: 18626975 DOI: 10.1002/ibd.20602]
121 FAO/WHO. Report on Joint FAO/WHO Expert Consultation on Evaluation of Health and Nutritional Properties of Probiotics in Food Including Powder Milk with Live Lactic Acid Bacteria, 2001
122 **Shanahan F**. Probiotics in inflamatory bowel disease. *Gut* 2001; **48**: 609 [PMID: 11302956]
123 **Shanahan F**. Probiotics and inflammatory bowel disease: is there a scientific rationale? *Inflamm Bowel Dis* 2000; **6**: 107-115 [PMID: 10833070]
124 **Zhang Z**, Hinrichs DJ, Lu H, Chen H, Zhong W, Kolls JK. After interleukin-12p40, are interleukin-23 and interleukin-17 the next therapeutic targets for inflammatory bowel disease? *Int Immunopharmacol* 2007; **7**: 409-416 [PMID: 17321463 DOI: 10.1016/j.intimp.2006.09.024]
125 **Neurath MF**. IL-23: a master regulator in Crohn disease. *Nat Med* 2007; **13**: 26-28 [PMID: 17206128 DOI: 10.1038/nm0107-26]
126 **Asahara T**, Shimizu K, Nomoto K, Hamabata T, Ozawa A, Takeda Y. Probiotic bifidobacteria protect mice from lethal infection with Shiga toxin-producing Escherichia coli O157: H7. *Infect Immun* 2004; **72**: 2240-2247 [PMID: 15039348]
127 **Venturi A**, Gionchetti P, Rizzello F, Johansson R, Zucconi E, Brigidi P, Matteuzzi D, Campieri M. Impact on the composition of the faecal flora by a new probiotic preparation: preliminary data on maintenance treatment of patients with ulcerative colitis. *Aliment Pharmacol Ther* 1999; **13**: 1103-1108 [PMID: 10468688]
128 **Schlee M**, Wehkamp J, Altenhoefer A, Oelschlaeger TA, Stange EF, Fellermann K. Induction of human beta-defensin 2 by the probiotic Escherichia coli Nissle 1917 is mediated through flagellin. *Infect Immun* 2007; **75**: 2399-2407 [PMID: 17283097 DOI: 10.1128/IAI.01563-06]
129 **Malchow HA**. Crohn's disease and Escherichia coli. A new approach in therapy to maintain remission of colonic Crohn's disease? *J Clin Gastroenterol* 1997; **25**: 653-658 [PMID: 9451682]
130 **O'Mahony L**, Feeney M, O'Halloran S, Murphy L, Kiely B, Fitzgibbon J, Lee G, O'Sullivan G, Shanahan F, Collins JK. Probiotic impact on microbial flora, inflammation and tumour development in IL-10 knockout mice. *Aliment Pharmacol Ther* 2001; **15**: 1219-1225 [PMID: 11472326]
131 **Dotan I**, Rachmilewitz D. Probiotics in inflammatory bowel disease: possible mechanisms of action. *Curr Opin Gastroenterol* 2005; **21**: 426-430 [PMID: 15930982]
132 **Otte JM**, Podolsky DK. Functional modulation of enterocytes by gram-positive and gram-negative microorganisms. *Am J Physiol Gastrointest Liver Physiol* 2004; **286**: G613-G626 [PMID: 15010363 DOI: 10.1152/ajpgi.00341.2003]
133 **Sheil B**, McCarthy J, O'Mahony L, Bennett MW, Ryan P, Fitzgibbon JJ, Kiely B, Collins JK, Shanahan F. Is the mucosal route of administration essential for probiotic function? Subcutaneous administration is associated with attenuation of murine colitis and arthritis. *Gut* 2004; **53**: 694-700 [PMID: 15082588]
134 **Butterworth AD**, Thomas AG, Akobeng AK. Probiotics for induction of remission in Crohn's disease. *Cochrane Database Syst Rev* 2008; (**3**): CD006634 [PMID: 18646162 DOI: 10.1002/14651858.CD006634.pub2]
135 **Rolfe VE**, Fortun PJ, Hawkey CJ, Bath-Hextall F. Probiotics for maintenance of remission in Crohn's disease. *Cochrane Database Syst Rev* 2006; (**4**): CD004826 [PMID: 17054217 DOI: 10.1002/14651858.CD004826.pub2]
136 **Guslandi M**, Mezzi G, Sorghi M, Testoni PA. Saccharomyces boulardii in maintenance treatment of Crohn's disease. *Dig Dis Sci* 2000; **45**: 1462-1464 [PMID: 10961730]
137 **Fujimori S**, Tatsuguchi A, Gudis K, Kishida T, Mitsui K, Ehara A, Kobayashi T, Sekita Y, Seo T, Sakamoto C. High dose probiotic and prebiotic cotherapy for remission induction of active Crohn' s disease. *J Gastroenterol Hepatol* 2007; **22**: 1199-1204 [PMID: 17688660 DOI: 10.1111/j.1440-1746.2006.04535.x]
138 **Schulze J**, Sonnenborn U. Re.: Oral administration of a certain strain of live Escherichia coli for intestinal disorders? (Infection 23 [1995] 51-54). *Infection* 1995; **23**: 184-188 [PMID: 7499010]
139 **Kruis W**, Fric P, Pokrotnieks J, Lukás M, Fixa B, Kascák M, Kamm MA, Weismueller J, Beglinger C, Stolte M, Wolff C, Schulze J. Maintaining remission of ulcerative colitis with the probiotic Escherichia coli Nissle 1917 is as effective as with standard mesalazine. *Gut* 2004; **53**: 1617-1623 [PMID: 15479682 DOI: 10.1136/gut.2003.037747]
140 **Bousvaros A**, Guandalini S, Baldassano RN, Botelho C, Evans J, Ferry GD, Goldin B, Hartigan L, Kugathasan S, Levy J, Murray KF, Oliva-Hemker M, Rosh JR, Tolia V, Zholudev A, Vanderhoof JA, Hibberd PL. A randomized, double-blind trial of Lactobacillus GG versus placebo in addition to standard maintenance therapy for children with Crohn's disease. *Inflamm Bowel Dis* 2005; **11**: 833-839 [PMID: 16116318]
141 **Schultz M**, Timmer A, Herfarth HH, Sartor RB, Vanderhoof JA, Rath HC. Lactobacillus GG in inducing and maintaining remission of Crohn's disease. *BMC Gastroenterol* 2004; **4**: 5 [PMID: 15113451 DOI: 10.1186/1471-230X-4-5]
142 **Prantera C**, Scribano ML, Falasco G, Andreoli A, Luzi C.

Ineffectiveness of probiotics in preventing recurrence after curative resection for Crohn's disease: a randomised controlled trial with Lactobacillus GG. *Gut* 2002; **51**: 405-409 [PMID: 12171964]

143 **Marteau P**, Lémann M, Seksik P, Laharie D, Colombel JF, Bouhnik Y, Cadiot G, Soulé JC, Bourreille A, Metman E, Lerebours E, Carbonnel F, Dupas JL, Veyrac M, Coffin B, Moreau J, Abitbol V, Blum-Sperisen S, Mary JY. Ineffectiveness of Lactobacillus johnsonii LA1 for prophylaxis of postoperative recurrence in Crohn's disease: a randomised, double blind, placebo controlled GETAID trial. *Gut* 2006; **55**: 842-847 [PMID: 16377775 DOI: 10.1136/gut.2005.076604]

144 **Van Gossum A**, Dewit O, Louis E, de Hertogh G, Baert F, Fontaine F, DeVos M, Enslen M, Paintin M, Franchimont D. Multicenter randomized-controlled clinical trial of probiotics (Lactobacillus johnsonii, LA1) on early endoscopic recurrence of Crohn's disease after lleo-caecal resection. *Inflamm Bowel Dis* 2007; **13**: 135-142 [PMID: 17206696 DOI: 10.1002/ibd.20063]

145 **Veerappan GR**, Betteridge J, Young PE. Probiotics for the treatment of inflammatory bowel disease. *Curr Gastroenterol Rep* 2012; **14**: 324-333 [PMID: 22581276 DOI: 10.1007/s11894-012-0265-5]

146 **Naidoo K**, Gordon M, Fagbemi AO, Thomas AG, Akobeng AK. Probiotics for maintenance of remission in ulcerative colitis. *Cochrane Database Syst Rev* 2011; (**12**): CD007443 [PMID: 22161412 DOI: 10.1002/14651858.CD007443.pub2]

147 **Tursi A**, Brandimarte G, Papa A, Giglio A, Elisei W, Giorgetti GM, Forti G, Morini S, Hassan C, Pistoia MA, Modeo ME, Rodino' S, D'Amico T, Sebkova L, Sacca' N, Di Giulio E, Luzza F, Imeneo M, Larussa T, Di Rosa S, Annese V, Danese S, Gasbarrini A. Treatment of relapsing mild-to-moderate ulcerative colitis with the probiotic VSL#3 as adjunctive to a standard pharmaceutical treatment: a double-blind, randomized, placebo-controlled study. *Am J Gastroenterol* 2010; **105**: 2218-2227 [PMID: 20517305 DOI: 10.1038/ajg.2010.218]

148 **Bibiloni R**, Fedorak RN, Tannock GW, Madsen KL, Gionchetti P, Campieri M, De Simone C, Sartor RB. VSL#3 probiotic-mixture induces remission in patients with active ulcerative colitis. *Am J Gastroenterol* 2005; **100**: 1539-1546 [PMID: 15984978 DOI: 10.1111/j.1572-0241.2005.41794.x]

149 **Suzuki A**, Mitsuyama K, Koga H, Tomiyasu N, Masuda J, Takaki K, Tsuruta O, Toyonaga A, Sata M. Bifidogenic growth stimulator for the treatment of active ulcerative colitis: a pilot study. *Nutrition* 2006; **22**: 76-81 [PMID: 16226014 DOI: 10.1016/j.nut.2005.04.013]

150 **Zocco MA**, dal Verme LZ, Cremonini F, Piscaglia AC, Nista EC, Candelli M, Novi M, Rigante D, Cazzato IA, Ojetti V, Armuzzi A, Gasbarrini G, Gasbarrini A. Efficacy of Lactobacillus GG in maintaining remission of ulcerative colitis. *Aliment Pharmacol Ther* 2006; **23**: 1567-1574 [PMID: 16696804 DOI: 10.1111/j.1365-2036.2006.02927.x]

151 **Ishikawa H**, Akedo I, Umesaki Y, Tanaka R, Imaoka A, Otani T. Randomized controlled trial of the effect of bifidobacteria-fermented milk on ulcerative colitis. *J Am Coll Nutr* 2003; **22**: 56-63 [PMID: 12569115 DOI: 10.1080/07315724.2003.10719276]

152 **Kruis W**, Schütz E, Fric P, Fixa B, Judmaier G, Stolte M. Double-blind comparison of an oral Escherichia coli preparation and mesalazine in maintaining remission of ulcerative colitis. *Aliment Pharmacol Ther* 1997; **11**: 853-858 [PMID: 9354192 DOI: 10.1046/j.1365-2036.1997.00225.x]

153 **Rembacken BJ**, Snelling AM, Hawkey PM, Chalmers DM, Axon AT. Non-pathogenic Escherichia coli versus mesalazine for the treatment of ulcerative colitis: a randomised trial. *Lancet* 1999; **354**: 635-639 [PMID: 10466665]

154 **Dignass A**, Lindsay JO, Sturm A, Windsor A, Colombel JF, Allez M, D'Haens G, D'Hoore A, Mantzaris G, Novacek G, Oresland T, Reinisch W, Sans M, Stange E, Vermeire S, Travis S, Van Assche G. Second European evidence-based consensus on the diagnosis and management of ulcerative colitis part 2: current management. *J Crohns Colitis* 2012; **6**: 991-1030 [PMID: 23040451 DOI: 10.1016/j.crohns.2012.09.002]

155 **Turner D**, Levine A, Escher JC, Griffiths AM, Russell RK, Dignass A, Dias JA, Bronsky J, Braegger CP, Cucchiara S, de Ridder L, Fagerberg UL, Hussey S, Hugot JP, Kolacek S, Kolho KL, Lionetti P, Paerregaard A, Potapov A, Rintala R, Serban DE, Staiano A, Sweeny B, Veerman G, Veres G, Wilson DC, Ruemmele FM. Management of pediatric ulcerative colitis: joint ECCO and ESPGHAN evidence-based consensus guidelines. *J Pediatr Gastroenterol Nutr* 2012; **55**: 340-361 [PMID: 22773060 DOI: 10.1097/MPG.0b013e3182662233]

156 **Simchuk EJ**, Thirlby RC. Risk factors and true incidence of pouchitis in patients after ileal pouch-anal anastomoses. *World J Surg* 2000; **24**: 851-856 [PMID: 10833254 DOI: 10.1007/s002680010136]

157 **Gionchetti P**, Rizzello F, Venturi A, Brigidi P, Matteuzzi D, Bazzocchi G, Poggioli G, Miglioli M, Campieri M. Oral bacteriotherapy as maintenance treatment in patients with chronic pouchitis: a double-blind, placebo-controlled trial. *Gastroenterology* 2000; **119**: 305-309 [PMID: 10930365]

158 **Mimura T**, Rizzello F, Helwig U, Poggioli G, Schreiber S, Talbot IC, Nicholls RJ, Gionchetti P, Campieri M, Kamm MA. Once daily high dose probiotic therapy (VSL#3) for maintaining remission in recurrent or refractory pouchitis. *Gut* 2004; **53**: 108-114 [PMID: 14684584]

159 **Shen B**, Brzezinski A, Fazio VW, Remzi FH, Achkar JP, Bennett AE, Sherman K, Lashner BA. Maintenance therapy with a probiotic in antibiotic-dependent pouchitis: experience in clinical practice. *Aliment Pharmacol Ther* 2005; **22**: 721-728 [PMID: 16197493 DOI: 10.1111/j.1365-2036.2005.02642.x]

160 **Gionchetti P**, Rizzello F, Helwig U, Venturi A, Lammers KM, Brigidi P, Vitali B, Poggioli G, Miglioli M, Campieri M. Prophylaxis of pouchitis onset with probiotic therapy: a double-blind, placebo-controlled trial. *Gastroenterology* 2003; **124**: 1202-1209 [PMID: 12730861]

161 **Gosselink MP**, Schouten WR, van Lieshout LM, Hop WC, Laman JD, Ruseler-van Embden JG. Delay of the first onset of pouchitis by oral intake of the probiotic strain Lactobacillus rhamnosus GG. *Dis Colon Rectum* 2004; **47**: 876-884 [PMID: 15108026 DOI: 10.1007/s10350-004-0525-z]

162 **Kuisma J**, Mentula S, Jarvinen H, Kahri A, Saxelin M, Farkkila M. Effect of Lactobacillus rhamnosus GG on ileal pouch inflammation and microbial flora. *Aliment Pharmacol Ther* 2003; **17**: 509-515 [PMID: 12622759]

163 **Cannon JP**, Lee TA, Bolanos JT, Danziger LH. Pathogenic relevance of Lactobacillus: a retrospective review of over 200 cases. *Eur J Clin Microbiol Infect Dis* 2005; **24**: 31-40 [PMID: 15599646 DOI: 10.1007/s10096-004-1253-y]

164 **Gearry RB**, Irving PM, Barrett JS, Nathan DM, Shepherd SJ, Gibson PR. Reduction of dietary poorly absorbed short-chain carbohydrates (FODMAPs) improves abdominal symptoms in patients with inflammatory bowel disease-a pilot study. *J Crohns Colitis* 2009; **3**: 8-14 [PMID: 21172242 DOI: 10.1016/j.crohns.2008.09.004]

165 **Barrett JS**, Gearry RB, Muir JG, Irving PM, Rose R, Rosella O, Haines ML, Shepherd SJ, Gibson PR. Dietary poorly absorbed, short-chain carbohydrates increase delivery of water and fermentable substrates to the proximal colon. *Aliment Pharmacol Ther* 2010; **31**: 874-882 [PMID: 20102355 DOI: 10.1111/j.1365-2036.2010.04237.x]

166 **Hammer HF**, Hammer J. Diarrhea caused by carbohydrate malabsorption. *Gastroenterol Clin North Am* 2012; **41**: 611-627 [PMID: 22917167 DOI: 10.1016/j.gtc.2012.06.003]

167 **Gibson PR**, Shepherd SJ. Evidence-based dietary management of functional gastrointestinal symptoms: The FODMAP approach. *J Gastroenterol Hepatol* 2010; **25**: 252-258 [PMID: 20136989 DOI: 10.1111/j.1440-1746.2009.06149.x]

168 **Shepherd SJ**, Parker FC, Muir JG, Gibson PR. Dietary triggers of abdominal symptoms in patients with irritable bowel syndrome: randomized placebo-controlled evidence. *Clin Gastroenterol Hepatol* 2008; **6**: 765-771 [PMID: 18456565 DOI: 10.1016/j.cgh.2008.02.058]

169 **Appleyard CB**, Hernández G, Rios-Bedoya CF. Basic

epidemiology of inflammatory bowel disease in Puerto Rico. *Inflamm Bowel Dis* 2004; **10**: 106-111 [PMID: 15168809]

170 **Soares RL**. Irritable bowel syndrome: a clinical review. *World J Gastroenterol* 2014; **20**: 12144-12160 [PMID: 25232249 DOI: 10.3748/wjg.v20.i34.12144]

171 **Croagh C**, Shepherd SJ, Berryman M, Muir JG, Gibson PR. Pilot study on the effect of reducing dietary FODMAP intake on bowel function in patients without a colon. *Inflamm Bowel Dis* 2007; **13**: 1522-1528 [PMID: 17828776 DOI: 10.1002/ibd.20249]

172 **Zhou SY**, Leelasinjaroen P, Wu XY, Zhou H, Lu YX, Song I, Owyang C. FODMAP Diet modulates visceral nociception by changing gut microbiota and internal inflammation. Abstract Nr: 2235, DDW 2013

173 **Pedersen N**, Ankersen D, Felding M, Végh Z, Burisch J, Munkholm P. Low FODMAP diet reduced irritable bowel syndroms and improves quality of life in patients with inflammatory bowel disease in a randomized controlled trail. Abstract Nr: DOP067 ECCO, 2014

174 **Pedersen N**, Kofod Vinding K, Vegh Z, Casen C, Andersen N, Ankersen D, Carlsen K, Munk Petersen A, Burisch J, Munkholm P. Gut Microbiota in IBD patients with IBS before and after 6 weeks of low FODMAP diet. Abstract Nr: P474 ECCO, 2014

175 **Hou JK**, Lee D, Lewis J. Diet and inflammatory bowel disease: review of patient-targeted recommendations. *Clin Gastroenterol Hepatol* 2014; **12**: 1592-1600 [PMID: 24107394 DOI: 10.1016/j.cgh.2013.09.063]

P- Reviewer: Ierardi E, Soares RL **S- Editor**: Gong ZM
L- Editor: A **E- Editor**: Liu XM

World Journal of Gastroenterology

Submit a Manuscript: http://www.wjgnet.com/esps/
Help Desk: http://www.wjgnet.com/esps/helpdesk.aspx
DOI: 10.3748/wjg.v22.i7.2195

World J Gastroenterol 2016 February 21; 22(7): 2195-2205
ISSN 1007-9327 (print) ISSN 2219-2840 (online)

TOPIC HIGHLIGHT

2016 Inflammatory Bowel Disease: Global view

Role of regulatory T cell in the pathogenesis of inflammatory bowel disease

Akiko Yamada, Rieko Arakaki, Masako Saito, Takaaki Tsunematsu, Yasusei Kudo, Naozumi Ishimaru

Akiko Yamada, Rieko Arakaki, Masako Saito, Takaaki Tsunematsu, Yasusei Kudo, Naozumi Ishimaru, Department of Oral Molecular Pathology, Tokushima University Graduate School, Tokushima 770-8504, Japan

Author contributions: Yamada A, Arakaki R, Saito M, Tsunematsu T, Kudo Y and Ishimaru N analyzed the literature and wrote a paper.

Supported by Scientific Research No. 24659839 and No. 24689068 from the Ministry of Education, Science, Sport, and Culture of Japan.

Conflict-of-interest statement: The authors have no conflict of interest to report.

Correspondence to: Naozumi Ishimaru, DDS, PhD, Professor, Department of Oral Molecular Pathology, Tokushima University Graduate School, 3-18-15 Kuramoto, Tokushima 770-8504, Japan. ishimaru.n@tokushima-u.ac.jp
Telephone: +81-88-6337464
Fax: +81-88-6337464

Received: April 28, 2015
Peer-review started: May 5, 2015
First decision: October 14, 2015
Revised: November 11, 2015
Accepted: December 8, 2015
Article in press: December 8, 2015
Published online: February 21, 2016

Abstract

Regulatory T (T_{reg}) cells play key roles in various immune responses. For example, T_{reg} cells contribute to the complex pathogenesis of inflammatory bowel disease (IBD), which includes Crohn's disease and ulcerative colitis during onset or development of that disease. Many animal models of IBD have been used to investigate factors such as pathogenic cytokines, pathogenic bacteria, and T-cell functions, including those of T_{reg} cells. In addition, analyses of patients with IBD facilitate our understanding of the precise mechanism of IBD. This review article focuses on the role of T_{reg} cells and outlines the pathogenesis and therapeutic strategies of IBD based on previous reports.

Key words: Inflammatory bowel disease; Regulatory T cell; Animal model; Therapy

Core tip: We review the types and functions of regulatory $CD4^+$ T cells (T_{reg} cells) and describe their roles in the pathologies of the inflammatory bowel diseases, *i.e.*, Crohn's disease and ulcerative colitis. We have paid particular attention to the use of animal models and human studies to elucidate the mechanisms by which T_{reg} cells influence these diseases and have provided an overview of the potential uses of these cells in therapeutic strategies.

Yamada A, Arakaki R, Saito M, Tsunematsu T, Kudo Y, Ishimaru N. Role of regulatory T cell in the pathogenesis of inflammatory bowel disease. *World J Gastroenterol* 2016; 22(7): 2195-2205

Available from: URL: http://www.wjgnet.com/1007-9327/full/v22/i7/2195.htm DOI: http://dx.doi.org/10.3748/wjg.v22.i7.2195

INTRODUCTION

Inflammatory bowel disease (IBD) is a term that encompasses two major forms of chronic inflammatory intestinal disorders: Crohn's disease (CD) and ulcerative colitis (UC)[1-3]. Both of these chronic inflammatory diseases feature a typical time of onset during young adulthood and a lifelong course characterized by periods of remission and relapse[4,5]. The pathogenesis of IBD is well known to be complex because of various immunological, environmental, host genetic, and bacterial factors, and the complicated regulatory mechanisms associated with mucosal immunity can also influence the onset or development of IBD[6-8]. Many reports of various animal models of IBD have revealed cellular or molecular mechanisms of IBD and the recent use of anticytokine agents, such as antitumor necrosis factor-α (TNF-α), interleukin (IL)-6R, or IL-13 antibodies, has achieved progress in healing mucosal damage associated with IBD[9,10].

Regulatory T (T_{reg}) cells are known to plays a key role in the pathogenesis of IBD, as well as in other autoimmune disorders or allergies[11-14]. Considerable evidence supports the notion that an altered balance between $Foxp3^+CD4^+$ T_{reg} cells and T effector cells in the intestinal microenvironment might contribute to the pathogenesis of IBD[12,15]. The ability to control inflammatory lesions with transferred T_{reg} cells has been demonstrated in several IBD models[16,17]. On the other hand, patients with IBD have been found to harbor significantly reduced numbers of peripheral T_{reg} cells or increased serum level of soluble IL-2Rα[18,19]. Therefore, it is possible that a novel therapy involving T_{reg} cells might effectively treat IBD.

This review will focus on the functions of T_{reg} cells in controlling peripheral immune tolerance within the context of mucosal immunity and will explain the molecular pathogenesis of IBD and possible therapeutic strategies involving T_{reg} cells.

PATHOGENESIS OF IBD

The functions of mucosal immune system depend on the presence of intestinal flora[20]. In the intestinal epithelium, four cell types are found, including columnar cells, goblet cells, endocrine cells, and leukocytes to rest on a continuous basement lamina[21]. In addition, the immune cells in the lamina propria (LP), the leukocytes also involve various immune cells, such as the unique immune cell types that exist in gut- or mucosa-associated lymphoid tissues such as Peyer's patches, mesenteric lymph nodes, and isolated lymphoid follicles. Balanced mucosal immunity in the gut is important for both immune homeostasis and defense[22-24]. Intestinal immunity is maintained by the proportions of immune cells such as dendritic cells (DCs), macrophages, effector $CD4^+$ or $CD8^+$ T cells, and T_{reg} cells.

Previously reported genome-wide association studies have identified more than 100 distinct loci that confer risk or protection from IBD development although a substantial proportion of these loci are common to both diseases[6]. Many IBD-associated pathways are known to exert heterogeneous effects upon activation in different cell types, and the combination of these cellular outcomes might affect disease manifestation[8,25]. IBD-associated loci can be broadly categorized into several critical pathways such as the innate immune response, intestinal barrier, microbial defense, reactive oxygen, and antimicrobial activity[26]. For example, in humans, nucleotide-binding oligomerization domain-containing protein 2 (NOD2), which is encoded by the *NOD2* gene on chromosome 16 plays an important role in the intestinal immune system where it recognizes bacterial peptides and stimulates immune reactions[27]. Mutations in *NOD2* gene have been associated with CD[27]. Furthermore, $NOD2^{-/-}$ mice are susceptible to and demonstrate excessive intestinal inflammation when compared with control mice[28]. Treatment with NOD2 ligands, including peptide or muramyl dipeptide has been shown to ameliorate 2,4,6-trinitrobenzenesulfonic acid (TNBS)- or dextran sulfate sodium (DSS)-driven colitis in normal mice[29,30]. Treatment with *Lactobacillus* peptidoglycan was shown to increase the number of $CD103^+$DCs and $Foxp3^+$ T_{reg} cell in mesenteric lymph nodes and IL-10 expression in the colonic mucosa in a TNBS-driven model of colitis, suggesting that NOD2 activity in the intestinal mucosa potentiates a tolerogenic environment[30].

Homing or migration-associated receptors such as CD62L, C-C chemokine receptor (CCR)7, αEβ7 integrin, α4β7 integrin, CCR4, CCR5, and CCR9 also contribute to the pathogenesis of IBD[31-37]. The expression of these receptors on T_{reg} cells plays a key role in the intestinal immunological homeostasis and defective expression of these receptors has been shown to induce IBD as a result of the deficient migration of T_{reg} cells into the intestine. For example, a loss of CCR7 was found to block T_{reg} cell function in an experimental model of colitis[32].

ANIMAL MODELS OF IBD AND T_{reg} CELLS

Many animal models of IBD have been developed based on the various aspects in the pathogenesis or mechanisms of IBD[16,38]. Mice have been widely used to examine the contribution of bacteria and specific bacterial factors to the pathogenesis of IBD[9]. Studies conducted in germ-free, specific pathogen-free, and gnotobiotic mice have suggested that defined or specific microbial flora plays a fundamental role in

the initiation and development of IBD[39-41]. Additional experimental colitis mouse models have been induced using chemical drugs such as DSS, TNBS, oxazolone, or acetic acid[9,42-46]. In addition, adoptive transfer models in which a T-cell deficient mouse strain is reconstituted with T_{reg} cell-depleted naïve T cells from a congenic donor mouse have been widely used[16,38,47]. Additional genetic models, including gene knockout, transgenic, or mutant animals, have been utilized to understand the genetic and molecular pathogenesis of IBD[9,16,38]. As spontaneous models of IBD, several animal models mice and rats are known to understand the pathogenesis of IBD or investigate new therapeutic strategy for IBD[9,38].

Bacteria-infected models

Studies conducted in mouse models of IBD have indicated that the T_{reg} cell compartment is particularly sensitive to microbiotal changes[48]. T_{reg} cells from germ-free mice are generally less suppressive and express lower level of Foxp3 than do T_{reg} cells from normal mice[49-51]. The colons of germ-free mice harbor reduced number of T_{reg} cells, although this population was shown to increase in response to a decrease in bacterial load following vancomycin treatment[52,53]. *Citrobactor rodentium*-infected mouse models have been the preferred infection models in acute intestinal inflammation[54]. Helicobacter-infected mice have been also used to be a bacterial infection model in combination with the other model[47]. In addition, toll-like receptor 9 (TLR9)-deficient mice harbor increased numbers of T_{reg} cells in the small intestine, suggesting that inflammatory signals from bacterial DNA play a role in inhibiting induced T_{reg} cell differentiation or T_{reg} cell proliferation[12,55].

Gene-manipulated models

IL-2$^{-/-}$, *IL-2R*$^{-/-}$, and *IL-10*$^{-/-}$ mice are known IBD models in which reduced T_{reg} cell number or dysfunction of T_{reg} cells are observed[41,19,56-60]. In addition, innate or mucosal immunity-related gene-deficient mice, such as *NOD2*$^{-/-}$, myeloid differentiation primary response 88 (*MYD88*)$^{-/-}$, nuclear factor-κB (*NF-κB*)$^{-/-}$, cytokine-deficiency induced colitis susceptibility 1 (*CDCS1*)$^{-/-}$, multidrug resistance gene 1a (*MDR1a*)$^{-/-}$, and *TLR5*$^{-/-}$ mice, also reveal inflammatory lesions in the colon[27,61-70]. T-cell receptor (*TCR*)$^{-/-}$ mice are also known to be one of IBD models[60]. Overexpression of *TNF-α* and signal transducer and activator of transcription4 (*STAT4)* gene in mice results in the development of IBD-like lesions[16,71]. Moreover, there are various gene-manipulated models, in which epithelial barrier- and immune regulation-associated genes are manipulated by knockdown, knockin, conditional knockout, or transgenic mice (Table 1)[9,16,38,39,72-82]. Among them, a reduction of T_{reg} cell number or impaired T_{reg} cell function is observed in several models (Table 1)[19,59,60,68,72,77,78].

Spontaneous models

As one of spontaneous IBD models based on the pathogenic factor by T_{reg} cells, senescence-accelerated mouse protein (SAMP)1/YitFc (SAMP) mice are well known[83]. A functional abnormality in T_{reg} cells in SAMP mice is observed[83]. C3H/HeJBir mice with high susceptibility to bacteria have been also used to be a model of IBD[84]. In addition, a monkey model, cotton-top tamarin, infected with *Campylobacter Jejuni* is known to be a spontaneous model of IBD[85]. Moreover, long-evans cinnamon (LEC) rat is a spontaneous IBD model based on T_{reg} cell-associated pathogenicity[86]. The LEC rat was first described as a naturally occurring mutant with a defect in thymocyte development: specifically, T-cell differentiation is arrested at the transition from $CD4^+CD8^+$ double positive to $CD4^+CD8^-$ single positive (SP), but not to $CD4^-CD8^+$ SP, thymocytes[87]. Accordingly, in LEC rats, peripheral $CD4^+$ T cells did not function as Th cells in terms of antibody production against T cell-dependent antigens, as well as in IL-2 production[87]. In addition, significantly reduced numbers of thymic and peripheral $Foxp3^+T_{reg}$ cell and a defect in the suppressive activity of T_{reg} cells were observed in these rats[86]. Interestingly, the proportion of T_{reg} cells in the LP is significantly decreased in LEC rats when compared with control rats[86]. These findings suggest that the dysfunction in the T_{reg} cell-controlled regulatory system may play a crucial role in the development of IBD.

REGULATORY T CELL

Differentiation of T_{reg} cells

Forkhead box P3 (Foxp3)-expressing T_{reg} cells are a suppressive subset of $CD4^+$ T cells that control autoimmunity, allergy, infection, and tumors[11,88]. Natural T_{reg} (nT_{reg}) cells arise as a discrete and largely stable lineage in the thymus[89,90]. The nT_{reg} subset exhibits a TCR repertoire that is distinct from those of $Foxp3^-$conventional T cells and induced (iT_{reg}) cells[91-94].

nT_{reg} cells require IL-2 for the development and maintenance and were initially identified by their elevated expression of the high-affinity IL-2 receptor (CD25)[11]. Mice that lack the ability to conduct IL-2-mediated signaling following the injection of anti-IL-2 mAb or as a result of *IL-2* or *IL-2R* gene knockout exhibit defects in the number and function of nT_{reg} cells[95-98]. The most important finding in mice with deficient IL-2 signaling is the development of spontaneous autoimmune lesions, including IBD[96-98].

nT_{reg} cells share phenotypic features with naïve and memory conventional T cells[89]. Most T_{reg} cells in circulation and the lymphoid organs express CCR7 and the adhesion receptor CD62L, which direct their recirculation through lymphoid tissues; effector or activated T_{reg} cells comprise a minor fraction of these[88,99]. Similar to activated conventional T cells, this T_{reg} cell population exhibits phenotypes

Table 1 Animal models of inflammatory bowel disease

Group	Model	Association	Ref.
Chemical drug-induced model	DSS	TNF-α, IL-17, reduced T_{reg} cells	[43]
	TNBS	IL-12, IL-17, reduced T_{reg} cells	[44]
	Oxazolone	IL-4	[45]
	Acetic acid (rat)	Myeloperoxidase	[46]
Adoptive transfer model	Naïve T cell→*Rag*$^{-/-}$/SCID	Recovery by T_{reg} cell transfer	[16]
Bacteria-infected model	*C. rodentium*	Acute infection, IL-17	[54]
	Helicobacter, *etc.*	Combined with the other models	[47]
Spontaneous model	SAMP/Yit/Fc	Dysfunction of T_{reg} cell	[83]
	C3H/HeJBir	Increased susceptibility to bacteria	[84]
	Cotton-top Tamarin (monkey)	*C.Jejuni* infection	[85]
	LEC (rat)	Reduced T_{reg} cells	[86]
Gene-manipulated model	*IL-2*$^{-/-}$	Reduced T_{reg} cells	[59]
	IL-2R$^{-/-}$	Reduced T_{reg} cells	[19]
	IL-10$^{-/-}$	Reduced T_{reg} cells	[60]
	NOD2$^{-/-}$	Impaired innate immunity	[61]
	Myd88$^{-/-}$	Impaired TLR signal	[65]
	NF-κB$^{-/-}$	Impaired pro-inflammatory signal	[62]
	Cdcs1$^{-/-}$	Impaired pro-inflammatory signal	[67]
	Mdr1a$^{-/-}$	Reduced iT_{reg} cell differentiation	[68]
	TCR$^{-/-}$	Defective adaptive immunity	[60]
	TGFβ$^{-/-}$	Reduced T_{reg} cell	[72]
	JAK3$^{-/-}$	Balance of Th1 and Th2	[73]
	Muc2$^{-/-}$	ER stress	[74]
	A20$^{-/-}$	Impaired Myd88 signal	[75]
	TCR$^{-/-}$*SOCS1*$^{-/-}$	Increased IFN-γ and IL-4	[76]
	CD4/*TGFβ*$^{-/-}$	Impaired T_{reg} cell function	[77]
	CD4/*PDK1*$^{-/-}$	Reduced T_{reg} cell	[78]
	CD4/*Blimp1*$^{-/-}$	Increased IL-17	[79]
	TNF$^{\Delta ARE}$TG	Increased CD8 function	[71]
	*STAT4*TG	Increased TNF-α	[80]
	T/*CD40L*TG	Thymic dysfunction	[81]
	B/*CD40L*TG	Increased IFN-γ	[82]

such as CD62L^{lo}CCR7^{lo}CD44^{hi} killer cell lectin-like receptor subfamily G member 1 (KLRG1)$^{+}$CD103^{+} or CD45RA^{lo}CD25^{hi} is thought to have encountered antigens[33,100-102]. These cells exhibit enhanced migration through nonlymphoid tissues.

Tissue-resident T_{reg} cells can be found in non-lymphoid tissues, even under noninflammatory conditions[89,103]. Various tissues such as the skin, lungs, liver, salivary gland, lacrimal gland, intestinal mucosa, adipose tissue, and placenta are known to harbor substantial numbers of T_{reg} cells in both humans and mice[14,104]. For example, CCR7^{+}Foxp3^{+} T_{reg} cells were found to reside in the salivary glands of healthy humans and mice whereas the number of CCR7^{+}Foxp3^{+} T_{reg} cells was extremely decreased in the tissues from patients and model mice with Sjögren's syndrome, an autoimmune disease that affects the exocrine glands such as the salivary and lacrimal glands[104,105].

Peripheral T_{reg} cells

iT_{reg} cells are generated from peripheral naïve conventional CD4^{+} T cells during the course of an immune response[12]. In healthy mice, most peripheral T_{reg} cells in the spleen and lymph nodes are thymus-derived nT_{reg} cells. By contrast, the iT_{reg} population resides in the intestinal LP and gut-associated lymphoid tissue (GALT)[48,106]. iT_{reg} cell generation involves naïve T-cell activation in the presence of transforming growth factor-β (TGF-β): in this setting, antigen exposure induces iT_{reg} cell differentiation[107]. iT_{reg} cells are particularly prevalent at mucosal surfaces where tolerance is induced against various antigens within the colonizing microbiota[52,108]. In addition, ingested food contains a plethora of antigens: in particular, food antigen feeding experiments identified a TGF-β1-producing CD4^{+} T cell population in the LP and GALT[109]. Immune responses to these dietary molecules can be actively suppressed by inducing oral tolerance[110]. Experiments with germ-free mice have suggested that bacterial commensals are essential for the development of normal numbers of colonic T_{reg} cells[109]. In the human microbiota, 17 clostridial strains that induce T_{reg} cell gut-homing and expansion by producing large amounts of short-chain fatty acids (SCFAs), which are bacterial breakdown products of plant-derived fibers were identified[111,112]. In particular, the SCFAs propionate, butyrate, and acetate can restore clonal T_{reg} cell numbers in germ-free or antibiotic-treated mice[112].

Although the gastrointestinal tract harbors the largest reservoir of tissue-resident T_{reg} cells in the

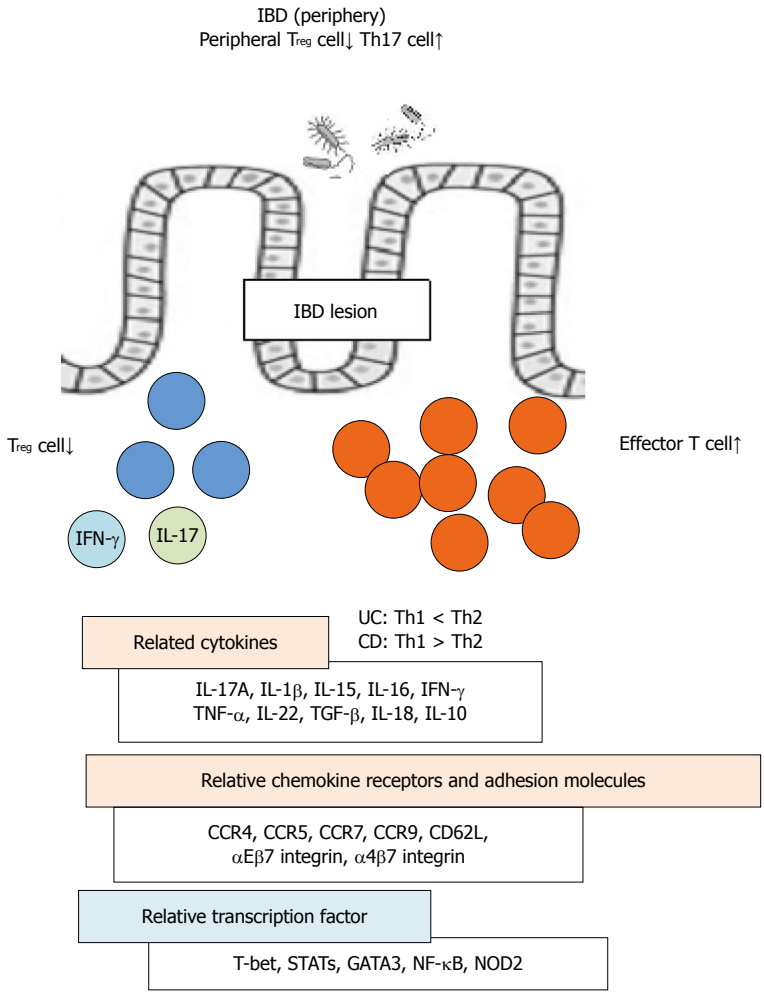


Figure 1 Molecular contribution to the pathogenesis of inflammatory bowel disease. In the lesions of inflammatory bowel disease (IBD), a various immune cells and epithelial cells contribute to the onset or development of the disease. Imbalance between cytokines or abnormal expression of chemokine receptors and adhesion molecules through several transcription factors in immune cells including effector T cell influences the pathogenesis of IBD. Decreased number of T_{reg} cells and abnormal differentiation of T_{reg} cells into effector-like phenotype are observed in the IBD lesions.

body, recent studies have demonstrated that T_{reg} cells are also highly enriched in the visceral adipose tissue (VAT)[113]. Interestingly, more than 50% T_{reg} cells of $CD4^+$ T cells in the VAT of 20-week-old mice are found[113]. Differences in the expressions of IL-10, CCR1, CCR2, CCR4, GATA binding protein 3 (GATA3), and peroxisome proliferator-activated receptor γ (PPARγ) have been observed between VAT T_{reg} cells and effector T_{reg} cells in lymphoid tissues[113,114]. Moreover, mice with a T_{reg} cell-specific *PPARγ* deletion that were fed a high-fat diet exhibited impaired restoration of insulin sensitivity and glucose tolerance following pioglitazone treatment[113,114]. These findings suggest that VAT T_{reg} cells might be critical mediators of the effects of treatment for lipid metabolism disorders.

REGULATOY T CELL IN IBD

Phenotypes of T_{reg} cells in IBD

The phenotype and function of T_{reg} cells in the inflamed mucosa or periphery of patients with IBD or animal models have been described as considerably different from those in peripheral lymphoid organs of healthy controls[12,115] (Figure 1). For example, patients with IBD exhibit reduced numbers of peripheral T_{reg} cells and increased numbers peripheral Th17 cells[116]. By contrast, the mRNA expression levels of Foxp3 are elevated in the mucosa of patients with IBD along with elevated levels of IL-17A, IL-1β, and IL-6 mRNA[116]. In IBD models, dysfunctional suppressive T_{reg} cell function plays a crucial role in the development of IBD lesions *via* the upregulation of T-cell specific T-box transcription factor (T-bet), STAT-1, and nuclear factor-κB (NF-κB)-mediated peripheral T_{reg} cell activation[86]. Intestinal immune system activation in response to bacterial antigens and pathologic cytokine production by intestinal T cells is induced through various transcription factors or signal molecules, including T-bet, GATA-3, and STATs and plays a critical role in the development of IBD[72,117-119]. CD is associated with the production of Th1 cytokines such as IFN-γ and TNF-α and in an IBD model naïve T cells transferred into T cell-deficient mice can be controlled by a coinjection of T_{reg} cells which suppress Th1 effector cell

functions such as IFN-γ production[120,121]. Moreover, UC development in humans is associated with Th2 cytokines such as IL-5[122].

Recent studies have demonstrated that $Foxp3^+$ T_{reg} cells express retinoic acid receptor-related orphan receptor gamma t and are thus able to differentiate into Th17 cells, a process that is associated with a decreased suppressive T_{reg} cell function in patients with IBD. T_{reg} cells were found to suppress colonic inflammation by downregulating Th17 responsiveness *via* TGF-β in an adoptive transfer mouse model of colitis[123,124]. Additionally, CCR7 was shown to regulate the intestinal Th1/Th17/T_{reg} cell balance during CD-like murine ileitis[125]. Furthermore, IFN-γ^+IL-17^+ coproducing $CD4^+$ T cells which express high levels of T-bet, CD26, and IL-22 resemble the pathogenic Th17 cells that contribute to intestinal inflammation in IBD[126]. Epithelial-derived IL-18 also regulates both colonic Th17 cell differentiation and T_{reg} cell function in the context of IBD-associated intestinal inflammation[124].

A recent study described *Clostridium* bacteria as potent inducers of $Foxp3^+$ T_{reg} cells in the colonic mucosa[111]. Additionally, $CD4^+CD8^+\alpha\alpha$ colonic T_{reg} cells were reported to produce IL-10 in response to *Faecalibacterium prausnitzii* and the frequencies of $CD4^+CD8^+\alpha\alpha$ lymphocytes in the LP lymphocytes and peripheral blood were found to be significantly lower in patients with IBD than in healthy controls[127]. These findings suggest that colonic bacteria-induced $CD4^+CD8^+\alpha\alpha$ T_{reg} cells may control or prevent IBD.

Therapeutic Treg cell-based strategies for IBD

New and effective therapies involving anti-TNF antibodies have yielded remarkable progress in the field of IBD therapy[10]. In addition, clinical trial applications are underway for target molecules such as IL-6/IL-6R, IL-12/23, IL-17A/F, IL-13, interferon-gamma-inducible protein 10 (IP10), CCR9, Janus kinase 3 (JAK3), similar to mothers against decapentaplegic (Smad)7/TGF, α4β7/β7, and mucosal vascular addressin cell adhesion molecule (MAdCAM)[4,5]. Target molecules such as IL-17A/F, IL-13, IP10, JAK3, α4β7/β7, or MAdCAM also represent promising therapeutic strategies for UC[4,5,15,22,24].

The $Foxp3^+T_{reg}$ cell frequency was found to be significantly lower in active patients with IBD than in healthy controls[18,116]. On day 14 after an initial dose of anti-TNFα infusion therapy, patients with IBD exhibited a significant increase in the frequency of circulating T_{reg} cells along with two- to three-fold increase in Foxp3 expression, which paralleled a reduction of IBD[128]. Furthermore, another report demonstrated that anti-TNFα mAb [infliximab (IFX)] therapy yielded a significant and sustained relative increase in peripheral blood T_{reg} cells; a change in C-reactive protein levels and durable clinical response was associated with this sustained increase in circulating $Foxp3^+T_{reg}$ cells[129]. IFX therapy was also shown to downregulate the mucosal expression of Foxp3 mRNA and protein in patients with UC and CD[129].

In patients with active IBD, anti-TNF-α treatment rapidly enhances the frequency of functional $Foxp3^+T_{reg}$ cells in the blood and potentiates their suppressive function[128]. In addition, in these patients increased apoptosis of local $Foxp3^+T_{reg}$ cells is observed in the inflamed mucosa when compared with noninflamed control colon tissues, along with a reduced frequency and increased apoptosis of peripheral blood T_{reg} cells and elevated caspase activity in the serum[130]. During anti-TNF-α antibody treatment, a decrease in the apoptosis of T_{reg} cells was found to correlate closely with an increase in peripheral T_{reg} cell numbers and a decrease of caspase and disease activity[130].

$CD4^+CD25^+CD127^{lo}CD45RA^+$ T_{reg} cells appear to be a promising population from which to expand T_{reg} cells for autologous T_{reg} cell transfer therapy in patients with CD[131]. Expanded $CD45RA^+$ T_{reg} cells carry an epigenetically stable *FOXP3* locus and do not convert to a Th17 phenotype in *in vitro* culture and $CD45RA^+$ T_{reg} cells from patients with CD were found to home to the human small intestine in a C.B-17 severe combined immune deficiency xenotransplant model[131]. There remains an unmet need for the development of novel therapies for IBD, as current drug therapies frequently fail to maintain long-term remission and may be complicated by significant side effects. Although cellular therapies are emerging as a potentially attractive many hindrances to successful clinical therapy remain in terms of sufficient cell numbers, cell maintenance, and cell sources.

CONCLUSION

Although the precise molecular pathogenesis of IBD remains unclear, recent therapeutic strategies involving antibodies against pathogenic cytokines or chemokines have provided treatment opportunities for many more patients suffering from IBD. Additionally, T_{reg} cells may provide a more effective therapy for IBD; therefore the unknown mechanisms with respect to T_{reg} cell differentiation, function, and maintenance should be clarified.

REFERENCES

1 **Blumberg RS**, Saubermann LJ, Strober W. Animal models of mucosal inflammation and their relation to human inflammatory bowel disease. *Curr Opin Immunol* 1999; **11**: 648-656 [PMID: 10631550 DOI: 10.1016/S0952-7915(99)00032-1]

2 **Fiocchi C**. Inflammatory bowel disease: etiology and pathogenesis. *Gastroenterology* 1998; **115**: 182-205 [PMID: 9649475 DOI: 10.1016/S0016-5085(98)70381-6]

3 **Fiocchi C**. Inflammatory bowel disease pathogenesis: therapeutic implications. *Chin J Dig Dis* 2005; **6**: 6-9 [PMID: 15667551 DOI: 10.1111/j.1443-9573.2005.00191.x]

4 **Danese S**, Fiocchi C. Ulcerative colitis. *N Engl J Med* 2011; **365**: 1713-1725 [PMID: 22047562 DOI: 10.1056/NEJMra1102942]

5 **Baumgart DC**, Sandborn WJ. Crohn's disease. *Lancet* 2012; **380**: 1590-1605 [PMID: 22914295 DOI: 10.1016/S0140-6736(12)60026-9]

6 **Jostins L**, Ripke S, Weersma RK, Duerr RH, McGovern DP, Hui KY, Lee JC, Schumm LP, Sharma Y, Anderson CA, Essers J, Mitrovic M, Ning K, Cleynen I, Theatre E, Spain SL, Raychaudhuri S, Goyette P, Wei Z, Abraham C, Achkar JP, Ahmad T, Amininejad L, Ananthakrishnan AN, Andersen V, Andrews JM, Baidoo L, Balschun T, Bampton PA, Bitton A, Boucher G, Brand S, Buning C, Cohain A, Cichon S, D'Amato M, De Jong D, Devaney KL, Dubinsky M, Edwards C, Ellinghaus D, Ferguson LR, Franchimont D, Fransen K, Gearry R, Georges M, Gieger C, Glas J, Haritunians T, Hart A, Hawkey C, Hedl M, Hu X, Karlsen TH, Kupcinskas L, Kugathasan S, Latiano A, Laukens D, Lawrance IC, Lees CW, Louis E, Mahy G, Mansfield J, Morgan AR, Mowat C, Newman W, Palmieri O, Ponsioen CY, Potocnik U, Prescott NJ, Regueiro M, Rotter JI, Russell RK, Sanderson JD, Sans M, Satsangi J, Schreiber S, Simms LA, Sventoraityte J, Targan SR, Taylor KD, Tremelling M, Verspaget HW, De Vos M, Wijmenga C, Wilson DC, Winkelmann J, Xavier RJ, Zeissig S, Zhang B, Zhang CK, Zhao H, International IBDGC, Silverberg MS, Annese V, Hakonarson H, Brant SR, Radford-Smith G, Mathew CG, Rioux JD, Schadt EE, Daly MJ, Franke A, Parkes M, Vermeire S, Barrett JC, Cho JH. Host-microbe interactions have shaped the genetic architecture of inflammatory bowel disease. *Nature* 2012; **491**: 119-124 [PMID: 23128233 DOI: 10.1038/nature11582]

7 **Knights D**, Lassen KG, Xavier RJ. Advances in inflammatory bowel disease pathogenesis: linking host genetics and the microbiome. *Gut* 2013; **62**: 1505-1510 [PMID: 24037875 DOI: 10.1136/gutjnl-2012-303954]

8 **Huttenhower C**, Kostic AD, Xavier RJ. Inflammatory bowel disease as a model for translating the microbiome. *Immunity* 2014; **40**: 843-854 [PMID: 24950204 DOI: 10.1016/j.immuni.2014.05.013]

9 **Nell S**, Suerbaum S, Josenhans C. The impact of the microbiota on the pathogenesis of IBD: lessons from mouse infection models. *Nat Rev Microbiol* 2010; **8**: 564-577 [PMID: 20622892 DOI: 10.1038/nrmicro2403]

10 **Neurath MF**. New targets for mucosal healing and therapy in inflammatory bowel diseases. *Mucosal Immunol* 2014; **7**: 6-19 [PMID: 24084775 DOI: 10.1038/mi.2013.73]

11 **Sakaguchi S**. Naturally arising Foxp3-expressing CD25+CD4+ regulatory T cells in immunological tolerance to self and non-self. *Nat Immunol* 2005; **6**: 345-352 [PMID: 15785760 DOI: 10.1038/ni1178]

12 **Mayne CG**, Williams CB. Induced and natural regulatory T cells in the development of inflammatory bowel disease. *Inflamm Bowel Dis* 2013; **19**: 1772-1788 [PMID: 23656897 DOI: 10.1097/mib.0b013e318281f5a3]

13 **Maul J**, Loddenkemper C, Mundt P, Berg E, Giese T, Stallmach A, Zeitz M, Duchmann R. Peripheral and intestinal regulatory CD4+ CD25(high) T cells in inflammatory bowel disease. *Gastroenterology* 2005; **128**: 1868-1878 [PMID: 15940622 DOI: 10.1053/j.gastro.2005.03.043]

14 **Burzyn D**, Benoist C, Mathis D. Regulatory T cells in nonlymphoid tissues. *Nat Immunol* 2013; **14**: 1007-1013 [PMID: 24048122 DOI: 10.1038/ni.2683]

15 **Hovhannisyan Z**, Treatman J, Littman DR, Mayer L. Characterization of interleukin-17-producing regulatory T cells in inflamed intestinal mucosa from patients with inflammatory bowel diseases. *Gastroenterology* 2011; **140**: 957-965 [PMID: 21147109 DOI: 10.1053/j.gastro.2010.12.002]

16 **Mizoguchi A**. Animal models of inflammatory bowel disease. *Prog Mol Biol Transl Sci* 2012; **105**: 263-320 [PMID: 22137435 DOI: 10.1016/B978-0-12-394596-9.00009-3]

17 **Martin B**, Banz A, Bienvenu B, Cordier C, Dautigny N, Bécourt C, Lucas B. Suppression of CD4+ T lymphocyte effector functions by CD4+CD25+ cells in vivo. *J Immunol* 2004; **172**: 3391-3398 [PMID: 15004137 DOI: 10.4049/jimmunol.172.6.3391]

18 **Niederau C**, Backmerhoff F, Schumacher B, Niederau C. Inflammatory mediators and acute phase proteins in patients with Crohn's disease and ulcerative colitis. *Hepatogastroenterology* 1997; **44**: 90-107 [PMID: 9058126]

19 **Nielsen OH**, Ciardelli T, Wu Z, Langholz E, Kirman I. Circulating soluble interleukin-2 receptor alpha and beta chain in inflammatory bowel disease. *Am J Gastroenterol* 1995; **90**: 1301-1306 [PMID: 7639234]

20 **Colombo BM**, Scalvenzi T, Benlamara S, Pollet N. Microbiota and mucosal immunity in amphibians. *Front Immunol* 2015; **6**: 111 [PMID: 25821449 DOI: 10.3389/fimmu.2015.00111]

21 **McAvoy JW**, Dixon KE. Cell specialization in the small intestinal epithelium of adult Xenopus laevis: structural aspects. *J Anat* 1978; **125**: 155-169 [PMID: 632211]

22 **Krishnan K**, Arnone B, Buchman A. Intestinal growth factors: potential use in the treatment of inflammatory bowel disease and their role in mucosal healing. *Inflamm Bowel Dis* 2011; **17**: 410-422 [PMID: 20848489 DOI: 10.1002/ibd.21316]

23 **Paclik D**, Lohse K, Wiedenmann B, Dignass AU, Sturm A. Galectin-2 and -4, but not galectin-1, promote intestinal epithelial wound healing in vitro through a TGF-beta-independent mechanism. *Inflamm Bowel Dis* 2008; **14**: 1366-1372 [PMID: 18484670 DOI: 10.1002/ibd.20499]

24 **Sturm A**, Dignass AU. Epithelial restitution and wound healing in inflammatory bowel disease. *World J Gastroenterol* 2008; **14**: 348-353 [PMID: 18200658 DOI: 10.3748/wjg.14.348]

25 **Lassen KG**, Kuballa P, Conway KL, Patel KK, Becker CE, Peloquin JM, Villablanca EJ, Norman JM, Liu TC, Heath RJ, Becker ML, Fagbami L, Horn H, Mercer J, Yilmaz OH, Jaffe JD, Shamji AF, Bhan AK, Carr SA, Daly MJ, Virgin HW, Schreiber SL, Stappenbeck TS, Xavier RJ. Atg16L1 T300A variant decreases selective autophagy resulting in altered cytokine signaling and decreased antibacterial defense. *Proc Natl Acad Sci USA* 2014; **111**: 7741-7746 [PMID: 24821797 DOI: 10.1073/pnas.1407001111]

26 **Khor B**, Gardet A, Xavier RJ. Genetics and pathogenesis of inflammatory bowel disease. *Nature* 2011; **474**: 307-317 [PMID: 21677747 DOI: 10.1038/nature10209]

27 **Rubino SJ**, Selvanantham T, Girardin SE, Philpott DJ. Nod-like receptors in the control of intestinal inflammation. *Curr Opin Immunol* 2012; **24**: 398-404 [PMID: 22677577 DOI: 10.1016/j.coi.2012.04.010]

28 **Barreau F**, Meinzer U, Chareyre F, Berrebi D, Niwa-Kawakita M, Dussaillant M, Foligne B, Ollendorff V, Heyman M, Bonacorsi S, Lesuffleur T, Sterkers G, Giovannini M, Hugot JP. CARD15/NOD2 is required for Peyer's patches homeostasis in mice. *PLoS One* 2007; **2**: e523 [PMID: 17565376 DOI: 10.1371/journal.pone.0000523]

29 **Watanabe T**, Asano N, Murray PJ, Ozato K, Tailor P, Fuss IJ, Kitani A, Strober W. Muramyl dipeptide activation of nucleotide-binding oligomerization domain 2 protects mice from experimental colitis. *J Clin Invest* 2008; **118**: 545-559 [PMID: 18188453]

30 **Macho Fernandez E**, Valenti V, Rockel C, Hermann C, Pot B, Boneca IG, Grangette C. Anti-inflammatory capacity of selected lactobacilli in experimental colitis is driven by NOD2-mediated recognition of a specific peptidoglycan-derived muropeptide. *Gut* 2011; **60**: 1050-1059 [PMID: 21471573 DOI: 10.1136/gut.2010.232918]

31 **Venturi GM**, Conway RM, Steeber DA, Tedder TF. CD25+CD4+ regulatory T cell migration requires L-selectin expression: L-selectin transcriptional regulation balances constitutive receptor turnover. *J Immunol* 2007; **178**: 291-300 [PMID: 17182566 DOI: 10.4049/jimmunol.178.1.291]

32 **Schneider MA**, Meingassner JG, Lipp M, Moore HD, Rot A. CCR7 is required for the in vivo function of CD4+ CD25+ regulatory T cells. *J Exp Med* 2007; **204**: 735-745 [PMID: 17371928 DOI: 10.1084/jem.20061405]

33 **Suffia I**, Reckling SK, Salay G, Belkaid Y. A role for CD103 in the retention of CD4+CD25+ Treg and control of Leishmania major infection. *J Immunol* 2005; **174**: 5444-5455 [PMID: 15845457 DOI: 10.4049/jimmunol.174.9.5444]

34 **Denning TL**, Kim G, Kronenberg M. Cutting edge: CD4+CD25+ regulatory T cells impaired for intestinal homing can prevent colitis. *J Immunol* 2005; **174**: 7487-7491 [PMID: 15944246 DOI: 10.4049/jimmunol.174.12.7487]

35 **Yuan Q**, Bromley SK, Means TK, Jones KJ, Hayashi F, Bhan

AK, Luster AD. CCR4-dependent regulatory T cell function in inflammatory bowel disease. *J Exp Med* 2007; **204**: 1327-1334 [PMID: 17548518 DOI: 10.1084/jem.20062076]
36 **Kang SG**, Piniecki RJ, Hogenesch H, Lim HW, Wiebke E, Braun SE, Matsumoto S, Kim CH. Identification of a chemokine network that recruits FoxP3(+) regulatory T cells into chronically inflamed intestine. *Gastroenterology* 2007; **132**: 966-981 [PMID: 17324406 DOI: 10.1053/j.gastro.2007.01.008]
37 **Guo Z**, Jang MH, Otani K, Bai Z, Umemoto E, Matsumoto M, Nishiyama M, Yamasaki M, Ueha S, Matsushima K, Hirata T, Miyasaka M. CD4+CD25+ regulatory T cells in the small intestinal lamina propria show an effector/memory phenotype. *Int Immunol* 2008; **20**: 307-315 [PMID: 18184698 DOI: 10.1093/intimm/dxm143]
38 **Corridoni D**, Arseneau KO, Cominelli F. Inflammatory bowel disease. *Immunol Lett* 2014; **161**: 231-235 [PMID: 24938525 DOI: 10.1016/j.imlet.2014.04.004]
39 **Eckmann L**. Animal models of inflammatory bowel disease: lessons from enteric infections. *Ann N Y Acad Sci* 2006; **1072**: 28-38 [PMID: 17057188 DOI: 10.1196/annals.1326.008]
40 **Uhlig HH**, Powrie F. Mouse models of intestinal inflammation as tools to understand the pathogenesis of inflammatory bowel disease. *Eur J Immunol* 2009; **39**: 2021-2026 [PMID: 19672896 DOI: 10.1002/eji.200939602]
41 **Elson CO**, Cong Y, McCracken VJ, Dimmitt RA, Lorenz RG, Weaver CT. Experimental models of inflammatory bowel disease reveal innate, adaptive, and regulatory mechanisms of host dialogue with the microbiota. *Immunol Rev* 2005; **206**: 260-276 [PMID: 16048554 DOI: 10.1111/j.0105-2896.2005.00291.x]
42 **Lupp C**, Robertson ML, Wickham ME, Sekirov I, Champion OL, Gaynor EC, Finlay BB. Host-mediated inflammation disrupts the intestinal microbiota and promotes the overgrowth of Enterobacteriaceae. *Cell Host Microbe* 2007; **2**: 204 [PMID: 18030708 DOI: 10.1016/j.chom.2007.08.002]
43 **Boehm F**, Martin M, Kesselring R, Schiechl G, Geissler EK, Schlitt HJ, Fichtner-Feigl S. Deletion of Foxp3+ regulatory T cells in genetically targeted mice supports development of intestinal inflammation. *BMC Gastroenterol* 2012; **12**: 97 [PMID: 22849659 DOI: 10.1186/1471-230X-12-97]
44 **Reardon C**, Wang A, McKay DM. Transient local depletion of Foxp3+ regulatory T cells during recovery from colitis via Fas/Fas ligand-induced death. *J Immunol* 2008; **180**: 8316-8326 [PMID: 18523298 DOI: 10.4049/jimmunol.180.12.8316]
45 **Boirivant M**, Fuss IJ, Chu A, Strober W. Oxazolone colitis: A murine model of T helper cell type 2 colitis treatable with antibodies to interleukin 4. *J Exp Med* 1998; **188**: 1929-1939 [PMID: 9815270 DOI: 10.1084/jem.188.10.1929]
46 **Singh VP**, Patil CS, Jain NK, Singh A, Kulkarni SK. Effect of nimesulide on acetic acid- and leukotriene-induced inflammatory bowel disease in rats. *Prostaglandins Other Lipid Mediat* 2003; **71**: 163-175 [PMID: 14518559 DOI: 10.1016/S1098-8823(03)00038-8]
47 **Cahill RJ**, Foltz CJ, Fox JG, Dangler CA, Powrie F, Schauer DB. Inflammatory bowel disease: an immunity-mediated condition triggered by bacterial infection with Helicobacter hepaticus. *Infect Immun* 1997; **65**: 3126-3131 [PMID: 9234764]
48 **Barnes MJ**, Powrie F. Regulatory T cells reinforce intestinal homeostasis. *Immunity* 2009; **31**: 401-411 [PMID: 19766083 DOI: 10.1016/j.immuni.2009.08.011]
49 **Ostman S**, Rask C, Wold AE, Hultkrantz S, Telemo E. Impaired regulatory T cell function in germ-free mice. *Eur J Immunol* 2006; **36**: 2336-2346 [PMID: 16897813 DOI: 10.1002/eji.200535244]
50 **Singh B**, Read S, Asseman C, Malmström V, Mottet C, Stephens LA, Stepankova R, Tlaskalova H, Powrie F. Control of intestinal inflammation by regulatory T cells. *Immunol Rev* 2001; **182**: 190-200 [PMID: 11722634 DOI: 10.1034/j.1600-065X.2001.1820115.x]
51 **Strauch UG**, Obermeier F, Grunwald N, Gürster S, Dunger N, Schultz M, Griese DP, Mähler M, Schölmerich J, Rath HC. Influence of intestinal bacteria on induction of regulatory T cells: lessons from a transfer model of colitis. *Gut* 2005; **54**: 1546-1552 [PMID: 15987795 DOI: 10.1136/gut.2004.059451]
52 **Tanoue T**, Honda K. Induction of Treg cells in the mouse colonic mucosa: a central mechanism to maintain host-microbiota homeostasis. *Semin Immunol* 2012; **24**: 50-57 [PMID: 22172550 DOI: 10.1016/j.smim.2011.11.009]
53 **Ivanov II**, Frutos Rde L, Manel N, Yoshinaga K, Rifkin DB, Sartor RB, Finlay BB, Littman DR. Specific microbiota direct the differentiation of IL-17-producing T-helper cells in the mucosa of the small intestine. *Cell Host Microbe* 2008; **4**: 337-349 [PMID: 18854238 DOI: 10.1016/j.chom.2008.09.009]
54 **Spahn TW**, Ross M, von Eiff C, Maaser C, Spieker T, Kannengiesser K, Domschke W, Kucharzik T. CD4+ T cells transfer resistance against Citrobacter rodentium-induced infectious colitis by induction of Th 1 immunity. *Scand J Immunol* 2008; **67**: 238-244 [PMID: 18261038 DOI: 10.1111/j.1365-3083.2007.02063.x]
55 **Hall JA**, Bouladoux N, Sun CM, Wohlfert EA, Blank RB, Zhu Q, Grigg ME, Berzofsky JA, Belkaid Y. Commensal DNA limits regulatory T cell conversion and is a natural adjuvant of intestinal immune responses. *Immunity* 2008; **29**: 637-649 [PMID: 18835196 DOI: 10.1016/j.immuni.2008.08.009]
56 **Poussier P**, Ning T, Chen J, Banerjee D, Julius M. Intestinal inflammation observed in IL-2R/IL-2 mutant mice is associated with impaired intestinal T lymphopoiesis. *Gastroenterology* 2000; **118**: 880-891 [PMID: 10784587 DOI: 10.1016/S0016-5085(00)70174-0]
57 **Sohn KJ**, Shah SA, Reid S, Choi M, Carrier J, Comiskey M, Terhorst C, Kim YI. Molecular genetics of ulcerative colitis-associated colon cancer in the interleukin 2- and beta(2)-microglobulin-deficient mouse. *Cancer Res* 2001; **61**: 6912-6917 [PMID: 11559569]
58 **Davidson NJ**, Leach MW, Fort MM, Thompson-Snipes L, Kuhn R, Muller W, Berg DJ, Rennick DM. T helper cell 1-type CD4 T cells, but not B cells, mediate colitis in interleukin 10-deficient mice. *J Exp Med* 1996; **184**: 241-251 [DOI: 10.1084/jem.184.1.241]
59 **Waidmann M**, Bechtold O, Frick JS, Lehr HA, Schubert S, Dobrindt U, Loeffler J, Bohn E, Autenrieth IB. Bacteroides vulgatus protects against Escherichia coli-induced colitis in gnotobiotic interleukin-2-deficient mice. *Gastroenterology* 2003; **125**: 162-177 [PMID: 12851881 DOI: 10.1016/S0016-5085(03)00672-3]
60 **Burich A**, Hershberg R, Waggie K, Zeng W, Brabb T, Westrich G, Viney JL, Maggio-Price L. Helicobacter-induced inflammatory bowel disease in IL-10- and T cell-deficient mice. *Am J Physiol Gastrointest Liver Physiol* 2001; **281**: G764-G778 [PMID: 11518689]
61 **Watanabe T**, Kitani A, Murray PJ, Wakatsuki Y, Fuss IJ, Strober W. Nucleotide binding oligomerization domain 2 deficiency leads to dysregulated TLR2 signaling and induction of antigen-specific colitis. *Immunity* 2006; **25**: 473-485 [PMID: 16949315 DOI: 10.1016/j.immuni.2006.06.018]
62 **Fox JG**, Rogers AB, Whary MT, Ge Z, Taylor NS, Xu S, Horwitz BH, Erdman SE. Gastroenteritis in NF-kappaB-deficient mice is produced with wild-type Camplyobacter jejuni but not with C. jejuni lacking cytolethal distending toxin despite persistent colonization with both strains. *Infect Immun* 2004; **72**: 1116-1125 [DOI: 10.1128/IAI.72.2.1116-1125.2004]
63 **Dennis A**, Kudo T, Kruidenier L, Girard F, Crepin VF, MacDonald TT, Frankel G, Wiles S. The p50 subunit of NF-kappaB is critical for in vivo clearance of the noninvasive enteric pathogen Citrobacter rodentium. *Infect Immun* 2008; **76**: 4978-4988 [PMID: 18694964 DOI: 10.1128/IAI.00736-08]
64 **Gibson DL**, Ma C, Bergstrom KS, Huang JT, Man C, Vallance BA. MyD88 signalling plays a critical role in host defence by controlling pathogen burden and promoting epithelial cell homeostasis during Citrobacter rodentium-induced colitis. *Cell Microbiol* 2008; **10**: 618-631 [PMID: 17979981 DOI: 10.1111/j.1462-5822.2007.01071.x]
65 **Hapfelmeier S**, Stecher B, Barthel M, Kremer M, Müller AJ, Heikenwalder M, Stallmach T, Hensel M, Pfeffer K, Akira S, Hardt WD. The Salmonella pathogenicity island (SPI)-2 and SPI-1 type III secretion systems allow Salmonella serovar typhimurium to trigger colitis via MyD88-dependent and MyD88-independent mechanisms. *J Immunol* 2005; **174**: 1675-1685 [PMID: 15661931

DOI: 10.4049/jimmunol.174.3.1675]
66 **Maggio-Price L**, Shows D, Waggie K, Burich A, Zeng W, Escobar S, Morrissey P, Viney JL. Helicobacter bilis infection accelerates and H. hepaticus infection delays the development of colitis in multiple drug resistance-deficient (mdr1a-/-) mice. *Am J Pathol* 2002; **160**: 739-751 [PMID: 11839595 DOI: 10.1016/S0002-9440(10)64894-8]
67 **Beckwith J**, Cong Y, Sundberg JP, Elson CO, Leiter EH. Cdcs1, a major colitogenic locus in mice, regulates innate and adaptive immune response to enteric bacterial antigens. *Gastroenterology* 2005; **129**: 1473-1484 [PMID: 16285949 DOI: 10.1053/j.gastro.2005.07.057]
68 **Tanner SM**, Staley EM, Lorenz RG. Altered generation of induced regulatory T cells in the FVB.mdr1a-/- mouse model of colitis. *Mucosal Immunol* 2013; **6**: 309-323 [PMID: 22874899 DOI: 10.1038/mi.2012.73]
69 **Maggio-Price L**, Bielefeldt-Ohmann H, Treuting P, Iritani BM, Zeng W, Nicks A, Tsang M, Shows D, Morrissey P, Viney JL. Dual infection with Helicobacter bilis and Helicobacter hepaticus in p-glycoprotein-deficient mdr1a-/- mice results in colitis that progresses to dysplasia. *Am J Pathol* 2005; **166**: 1793-1806 [PMID: 15920164 DOI: 10.1016/S0002-9440(10)62489-3]
70 **Uematsu S**, Jang MH, Chevrier N, Guo Z, Kumagai Y, Yamamoto M, Kato H, Sougawa N, Matsui H, Kuwata H, Hemmi H, Coban C, Kawai T, Ishii KJ, Takeuchi O, Miyasaka M, Takeda K, Akira S. Detection of pathogenic intestinal bacteria by Toll-like receptor 5 on intestinal CD11c+ lamina propria cells. *Nat Immunol* 2006; **7**: 868-874 [PMID: 16829963 DOI: 10.1038/ni1362]
71 **Kontoyiannis D**, Pasparakis M, Pizarro TT, Cominelli F, Kollias G. Impaired on/off regulation of TNF biosynthesis in mice lacking TNF AU-rich elements: implications for joint and gut-associated immunopathologies. *Immunity* 1999; **10**: 387-398 [PMID: 10204494 DOI: 10.1016/S1074-7613(00)80038-2]
72 **Neurath MF**, Weigmann B, Finotto S, Glickman J, Nieuwenhuis E, Iijima H, Mizoguchi A, Mizoguchi E, Mudter J, Galle PR, Bhan A, Autschbach F, Sullivan BM, Szabo SJ, Glimcher LH, Blumberg RS. The transcription factor T-bet regulates mucosal T cell activation in experimental colitis and Crohn's disease. *J Exp Med* 2002; **195**: 1129-1143 [DOI: 10.1084/jem.20011956]
73 **Murata Y**, Yamashita A, Saito T, Sugamura K, Hamuro J. The conversion of redox status of peritoneal macrophages during pathological progression of spontaneous inflammatory bowel disease in Janus family tyrosine kinase 3(-/-) and IL-2 receptor gamma(-/-) mice. *Int Immunol* 2002; **14**: 627-636 [PMID: 12039914 DOI: 10.1093/intimm/dxf031]
74 **Heazlewood CK**, Cook MC, Eri R, Price GR, Tauro SB, Taupin D, Thornton DJ, Png CW, Crockford TL, Cornall RJ, Adams R, Kato M, Nelms KA, Hong NA, Florin TH, Goodnow CC, McGuckin MA. Aberrant mucin assembly in mice causes endoplasmic reticulum stress and spontaneous inflammation resembling ulcerative colitis. *PLoS Med* 2008; **5**: e54 [PMID: 18318598 DOI: 10.1371/journal.pmed.0050054]
75 **Hammer GE**, Turer EE, Taylor KE, Fang CJ, Advincula R, Oshima S, Barrera J, Huang EJ, Hou B, Malynn BA, Reizis B, DeFranco A, Criswell LA, Nakamura MC, Ma A. Expression of A20 by dendritic cells preserves immune homeostasis and prevents colitis and spondyloarthritis. *Nat Immunol* 2011; **12**: 1184-1193 [PMID: 22019834 DOI: 10.1038/ni.2135]
76 **Chinen T**, Kobayashi T, Ogata H, Takaesu G, Takaki H, Hashimoto M, Yagita H, Nawata H, Yoshimura A. Suppressor of cytokine signaling-1 regulates inflammatory bowel disease in which both IFNgamma and IL-4 are involved. *Gastroenterology* 2006; **130**: 373-388 [PMID: 16472593 DOI: 10.1053/j.gastro.2005.10.051]
77 **Sledzińska A**, Hemmers S, Mair F, Gorka O, Ruland J, Fairbairn L, Nissler A, Müller W, Waisman A, Becher B, Buch T. TGF-β signalling is required for $CD4^+$ T cell homeostasis but dispensable for regulatory T cell function. *PLoS Biol* 2013; **11**: e1001674 [PMID: 24115907 DOI: 10.1371/journal.pbio.1001674]
78 **Park SG**, Mathur R, Long M, Hosh N, Hao L, Hayden MS, Ghosh S. T regulatory cells maintain intestinal homeostasis by suppressing γδ T cells. *Immunity* 2010; **33**: 791-803 [PMID: 21074460 DOI: 10.1016/j.immuni.2010.10.014]
79 **Salehi S**, Bankoti R, Benevides L, Willen J, Couse M, Silva JS, Dhall D, Meffre E, Targan S, Martins GA. B lymphocyte-induced maturation protein-1 contributes to intestinal mucosa homeostasis by limiting the number of IL-17-producing CD4+ T cells. *J Immunol* 2012; **189**: 5682-5693 [PMID: 23162130 DOI: 10.4049/jimmunol.1201966]
80 **O'Malley JT**, Eri RD, Stritesky GL, Mathur AN, Chang HC, Hogenesch H, Srinivasan M, Kaplan MH. STAT4 isoforms differentially regulate Th1 cytokine production and the severity of inflammatory bowel disease. *J Immunol* 2008; **181**: 5062-5070 [PMID: 18802110 DOI: 10.4049/jimmunol.181.7.5062]
81 **Clegg CH**, Rulffes JT, Haugen HS, Hoggatt IH, Aruffo A, Durham SK, Farr AG, Hollenbaugh D. Thymus dysfunction and chronic inflammatory disease in gp39 transgenic mice. *Int Immunol* 1997; **9**: 1111-1122 [PMID: 9263008 DOI: 10.1093/intimm/9.8.1111]
82 **Kawamura T**, Kanai T, Dohi T, Uraushihara K, Totsuka T, Iiyama R, Taneda C, Yamazaki M, Nakamura T, Higuchi T, Aiba Y, Tsubata T, Watanabe M. Ectopic CD40 ligand expression on B cells triggers intestinal inflammation. *J Immunol* 2004; **172**: 6388-6397 [PMID: 15128830 DOI: 10.4049/jimmunol.172.10.6388]
83 **Ishikawa D**, Okazawa A, Corridoni D, Jia LG, Wang XM, Guanzon M, Xin W, Arseneau KO, Pizarro TT, Cominelli F. Tregs are dysfunctional in vivo in a spontaneous murine model of Crohn's disease. *Mucosal Immunol* 2013; **6**: 267-275 [PMID: 22785225 DOI: 10.1038/mi.2012.67]
84 **Elson CO**, Cong Y, Sundberg J. The C3H/HeJBir mouse model: a high susceptibility phenotype for colitis. *Int Rev Immunol* 2000; **19**: 63-75 [PMID: 10723678 DOI: 10.3109/08830180009048390]
85 **Johnson LD**, Ausman LM, Rolland RM, Chalifoux LV, Russell RG. Campylobacter-induced enteritis and diarrhea in captive cotton-top tamarins (Saguinus oedipus) during the first year of life. *Comp Med* 2001; **51**: 257-261 [PMID: 11924782]
86 **Ishimaru N**, Yamada A, Kohashi M, Arakaki R, Takahashi T, Izumi K, Hayashi Y. Development of inflammatory bowel disease in Long-Evans Cinnamon rats based on CD4+CD25+Foxp3+ regulatory T cell dysfunction. *J Immunol* 2008; **180**: 6997-7008 [PMID: 18453622 DOI: 10.4049/jimmunol.180.10.6997]
87 **Agui T**, Oka M, Yamada T, Sakai T, Izumi K, Ishida Y, Himeno K, Matsumoto K. Maturational arrest from CD4+8+ to CD4+8- thymocytes in a mutant strain (LEC) of rat. *J Exp Med* 1990; **172**: 1615-1624 [PMID: 2147947 DOI: 10.1084/jem.172.6.1615]
88 **Campbell DJ**, Koch MA. Phenotypical and functional specialization of FOXP3+ regulatory T cells. *Nat Rev Immunol* 2011; **11**: 119-130 [PMID: 21267013 DOI: 10.1038/nri2916]
89 **Liston A**, Gray DH. Homeostatic control of regulatory T cell diversity. *Nat Rev Immunol* 2014; **14**: 154-165 [PMID: 24481337 DOI: 10.1038/nri3605]
90 **Fontenot JD**, Gavin MA, Rudensky AY. Foxp3 programs the development and function of CD4+CD25+ regulatory T cells. *Nat Immunol* 2003; **4**: 330-336 [PMID: 12612578 DOI: 10.1038/ni904]
91 **Feuerer M**, Hill JA, Kretschmer K, von Boehmer H, Mathis D, Benoist C. Genomic definition of multiple ex vivo regulatory T cell subphenotypes. *Proc Natl Acad Sci USA* 2010; **107**: 5919-5924 [PMID: 20231436 DOI: 10.1073/pnas.1002006107]
92 **Haribhai D**, Williams JB, Jia S, Nickerson D, Schmitt EG, Edwards B, Ziegelbauer J, Yassai M, Li SH, Relland LM, Wise PM, Chen A, Zheng YQ, Simpson PM, Gorski J, Salzman NH, Hessner MJ, Chatila TA, Williams CB. A requisite role for induced regulatory T cells in tolerance based on expanding antigen receptor diversity. *Immunity* 2011; **35**: 109-122 [PMID: 21723159 DOI: 10.1016/j.immuni.2011.03.029]
93 **Josefowicz SZ**, Rudensky A. Control of regulatory T cell lineage commitment and maintenance. *Immunity* 2009; **30**: 616-625 [PMID: 19464984 DOI: 10.1016/j.immuni.2009.04.009]
94 **Relland LM**, Williams JB, Relland GN, Haribhai D, Ziegelbauer J, Yassai M, Gorski J, Williams CB. The TCR repertoires of regulatory and conventional T cells specific for the same foreign antigen are distinct. *J Immunol* 2012; **189**: 3566-3574 [PMID: 22933635 DOI: 10.4049/jimmunol.1102646]

95 **Almeida AR**, Legrand N, Papiernik M, Freitas AA. Homeostasis of peripheral CD4+ T cells: IL-2R alpha and IL-2 shape a population of regulatory cells that controls CD4+ T cell numbers. *J Immunol* 2002; **169**: 4850-4860 [PMID: 12391195 DOI: 10.4049/jimmunol.169.9.4850]

96 **Malek TR**, Yu A, Vincek V, Scibelli P, Kong L. CD4 regulatory T cells prevent lethal autoimmunity in IL-2Rbeta-deficient mice. Implications for the nonredundant function of IL-2. *Immunity* 2002; **17**: 167-178 [PMID: 12196288 DOI: 10.1016/S1074-7613(02)00367-9]

97 **Papiernik M**, de Moraes ML, Pontoux C, Vasseur F, Pénit C. Regulatory CD4 T cells: expression of IL-2R alpha chain, resistance to clonal deletion and IL-2 dependency. *Int Immunol* 1998; **10**: 371-378 [PMID: 9620592 DOI: 10.1093/intimm/10.4.371]

98 **Setoguchi R**, Hori S, Takahashi T, Sakaguchi S. Homeostatic maintenance of natural Foxp3(+) CD25(+) CD4(+) regulatory T cells by interleukin (IL)-2 and induction of autoimmune disease by IL-2 neutralization. *J Exp Med* 2005; **201**: 723-735 [PMID: 15753206 DOI: 10.1084/jem.20041982]

99 **Lee JH**, Kang SG, Kim CH. FoxP3+ T cells undergo conventional first switch to lymphoid tissue homing receptors in thymus but accelerated second switch to nonlymphoid tissue homing receptors in secondary lymphoid tissues. *J Immunol* 2007; **178**: 301-311 [PMID: 17182567 DOI: 10.4049/jimmunol.178.1.301]

100 **Kleinewietfeld M**, Puentes F, Borsellino G, Battistini L, Rötzschke O, Falk K. CCR6 expression defines regulatory effector/memory-like cells within the CD25(+)CD4+ T-cell subset. *Blood* 2005; **105**: 2877-2886 [PMID: 15613550 DOI: 10.1182/blood-2004-07-2505]

101 **Huehn J**, Siegmund K, Lehmann JC, Siewert C, Haubold U, Feuerer M, Debes GF, Lauber J, Frey O, Przybylski GK, Niesner U, de la Rosa M, Schmidt CA, Bräuer R, Buer J, Scheffold A, Hamann A. Developmental stage, phenotype, and migration distinguish naive- and effector/memory-like CD4+ regulatory T cells. *J Exp Med* 2004; **199**: 303-313 [PMID: 14757740 DOI: 10.1084/jem.20031562]

102 **Stephens GL**, Andersson J, Shevach EM. Distinct subsets of FoxP3+ regulatory T cells participate in the control of immune responses. *J Immunol* 2007; **178**: 6901-6911 [PMID: 17513739 DOI: 10.4049/jimmunol.178.11.6901]

103 **Sather BD**, Treuting P, Perdue N, Miazgowicz M, Fontenot JD, Rudensky AY, Campbell DJ. Altering the distribution of Foxp3(+) regulatory T cells results in tissue-specific inflammatory disease. *J Exp Med* 2007; **204**: 1335-1347 [PMID: 17548521 DOI: 10.1084/jem.20070081]

104 **Ishimaru N**, Nitta T, Arakaki R, Yamada A, Lipp M, Takahama Y, Hayashi Y. In situ patrolling of regulatory T cells is essential for protecting autoimmune exocrinopathy. *PLoS One* 2010; **5**: e8588 [PMID: 20052419 DOI: 10.1371/journal.pone.0008588]

105 **Ishimaru N**, Yamada A, Nitta T, Arakaki R, Lipp M, Takahama Y, Hayashi Y. CCR7 with S1P1 signaling through AP-1 for migration of Foxp3+ regulatory T-cells controls autoimmune exocrinopathy. *Am J Pathol* 2012; **180**: 199-208 [PMID: 22067914 DOI: 10.1016/j.ajpath.2011.09.027]

106 **Bilate AB**, Lafaille JJ. It takes two to tango. *Immunity* 2011; **35**: 6-8 [PMID: 21777793 DOI: 10.1016/j.immuni.2011.07.003]

107 **Chen W**, Jin W, Hardegen N, Lei KJ, Li L, Marinos N, McGrady G, Wahl SM. Conversion of peripheral CD4+CD25- naive T cells to CD4+CD25+ regulatory T cells by TGF-beta induction of transcription factor Foxp3. *J Exp Med* 2003; **198**: 1875-1886 [PMID: 14676299 DOI: 10.1084/jem.20030152]

108 **Atarashi K**, Umesaki Y, Honda K. Microbiotal influence on T cell subset development. *Semin Immunol* 2011; **23**: 146-153 [PMID: 21292500 DOI: 10.1016/j.smim.2011.01.010]

109 **Weiner HL**. Induction and mechanism of action of transforming growth factor-beta-secreting Th3 regulatory cells. *Immunol Rev* 2001; **182**: 207-214 [PMID: 11722636 DOI: 10.1034/j.1600-065X.2001.1820117.x]

110 **Weiner HL**, da Cunha AP, Quintana F, Wu H. Oral tolerance. *Immunol Rev* 2011; **241**: 241-259 [PMID: 21488901 DOI: 10.1111/j.1600-065X.2011.01017.x]

111 **Atarashi K**, Tanoue T, Shima T, Imaoka A, Kuwahara T, Momose Y, Cheng G, Yamasaki S, Saito T, Ohba Y, Taniguchi T, Takeda K, Hori S, Ivanov II, Umesaki Y, Itoh K, Honda K. Induction of colonic regulatory T cells by indigenous Clostridium species. *Science* 2011; **331**: 337-341 [PMID: 21205640 DOI: 10.1126/science.1198469]

112 **Smith PM**, Howitt MR, Panikov N, Michaud M, Gallini CA, Bohlooly-Y M, Glickman JN, Garrett WS. The microbial metabolites, short-chain fatty acids, regulate colonic Treg cell homeostasis. *Science* 2013; **341**: 569-573 [PMID: 23828891 DOI: 10.1126/science.1241165]

113 **Feuerer M**, Herrero L, Cipolletta D, Naaz A, Wong J, Nayer A, Lee J, Goldfine AB, Benoist C, Shoelson S, Mathis D. Lean, but not obese, fat is enriched for a unique population of regulatory T cells that affect metabolic parameters. *Nat Med* 2009; **15**: 930-939 [PMID: 19633656 DOI: 10.1038/nm.2002]

114 **Cipolletta D**, Feuerer M, Li A, Kamei N, Lee J, Shoelson SE, Benoist C, Mathis D. PPAR-γ is a major driver of the accumulation and phenotype of adipose tissue Treg cells. *Nature* 2012; **486**: 549-553 [PMID: 22722857]

115 **Kullberg MC**, Hay V, Cheever AW, Mamura M, Sher A, Letterio JJ, Shevach EM, Piccirillo CA. TGF-beta1 production by CD4+ CD25+ regulatory T cells is not essential for suppression of intestinal inflammation. *Eur J Immunol* 2005; **35**: 2886-2895 [PMID: 16180248 DOI: 10.1002/eji.200526106]

116 **Eastaff-Leung N**, Mabarrack N, Barbour A, Cummins A, Barry S. Foxp3+ regulatory T cells, Th17 effector cells, and cytokine environment in inflammatory bowel disease. *J Clin Immunol* 2010; **30**: 80-89 [PMID: 19936899 DOI: 10.1007/s10875-009-9345-1]

117 **Rengarajan J**, Szabo SJ, Glimcher LH. Transcriptional regulation of Th1/Th2 polarization. *Immunol Today* 2000; **21**: 479-483 [PMID: 11071525 DOI: 10.1016/S0167-5699(00)01712-6]

118 **Zheng W**, Flavell RA. The transcription factor GATA-3 is necessary and sufficient for Th2 cytokine gene expression in CD4 T cells. *Cell* 1997; **89**: 587-596 [PMID: 9160750 DOI: 10.1016/S0092-8674(00)80240-8]

119 **Asnagli H**, Murphy KM. Stability and commitment in T helper cell development. *Curr Opin Immunol* 2001; **13**: 242-247 [PMID: 11228419 DOI: 10.1016/S0952-7915(00)00210-7]

120 **Plevy SE**, Landers CJ, Prehn J, Carramanzana NM, Deem RL, Shealy D, Targan SR. A role for TNF-alpha and mucosal T helper-1 cytokines in the pathogenesis of Crohn's disease. *J Immunol* 1997; **159**: 6276-6282 [PMID: 9550432]

121 **Iijima H**, Neurath MF, Nagaishi T, Glickman JN, Nieuwenhuis EE, Nakajima A, Chen D, Fuss IJ, Utku N, Lewicki DN, Becker C, Gallagher TM, Holmes KV, Blumberg RS. Specific regulation of T helper cell 1-mediated murine colitis by CEACAM1. *J Exp Med* 2004; **199**: 471-482 [PMID: 14970176 DOI: 10.1084/jem.20030437]

122 **Fuss IJ**, Neurath M, Boirivant M, Klein JS, de la Motte C, Strong SA, Fiocchi C, Strober W. Disparate CD4+ lamina propria (LP) lymphokine secretion profiles in inflammatory bowel disease. Crohn's disease LP cells manifest increased secretion of IFN-gamma, whereas ulcerative colitis LP cells manifest increased secretion of IL-5. *J Immunol* 1996; **157**: 1261-1270 [PMID: 8757634]

123 **Ueno A**, Jijon H, Chan R, Ford K, Hirota C, Kaplan GG, Beck PL, Iacucci M, Fort Gasia M, Barkema HW, Panaccione R, Ghosh S. Increased prevalence of circulating novel IL-17 secreting Foxp3 expressing CD4+ T cells and defective suppressive function of circulating Foxp3+ regulatory cells support plasticity between Th17 and regulatory T cells in inflammatory bowel disease patients. *Inflamm Bowel Dis* 2013; **19**: 2522-2534 [PMID: 24097227 DOI: 10.1097/MIB.0b013e3182a85709]

124 **Harrison OJ**, Srinivasan N, Pott J, Schiering C, Krausgruber T, Ilott NE, Maloy KJ. Epithelial-derived IL-18 regulates Th17 cell differentiation and Foxp3$^+$ Treg cell function in the intestine. *Mucosal Immunol* 2015; **8**: 1226-1236 [PMID: 25736457 DOI: 10.1038/mi.2015.13]

125 **McNamee EN**, Masterson JC, Veny M, Collins CB, Jedlicka P,

Byrne FR, Ng GY, Rivera-Nieves J. Chemokine receptor CCR7 regulates the intestinal TH1/TH17/Treg balance during Crohn's-like murine ileitis. *J Leukoc Biol* 2015; **97**: 1011-1022 [PMID: 25637591 DOI: 10.1189/jlb.3HI0614-303R]

126 **Globig AM**, Hennecke N, Martin B, Seidl M, Ruf G, Hasselblatt P, Thimme R, Bengsch B. Comprehensive intestinal T helper cell profiling reveals specific accumulation of IFN-γ+IL-17+coproducing CD4+ T cells in active inflammatory bowel disease. *Inflamm Bowel Dis* 2014; **20**: 2321-2329 [PMID: 25248005 DOI: 10.1097/MIB.0000000000000210]

127 **Sarrabayrouse G**, Bossard C, Chauvin JM, Jarry A, Meurette G, Quévrain E, Bridonneau C, Preisser L, Asehnoune K, Labarrière N, Altare F, Sokol H, Jotereau F. CD4CD8αα lymphocytes, a novel human regulatory T cell subset induced by colonic bacteria and deficient in patients with inflammatory bowel disease. *PLoS Biol* 2014; **12**: e1001833 [PMID: 24714093 DOI: 10.1371/journal.pbio.1001833]

128 **Boschetti G**, Nancey S, Sardi F, Roblin X, Flourié B, Kaiserlian D. Therapy with anti-TNFα antibody enhances number and function of Foxp3(+) regulatory T cells in inflammatory bowel diseases. *Inflamm Bowel Dis* 2011; **17**: 160-170 [PMID: 20848510 DOI: 10.1002/ibd.21308]

129 **Li Z**, Arijs I, De Hertogh G, Vermeire S, Noman M, Bullens D, Coorevits L, Sagaert X, Schuit F, Rutgeerts P, Ceuppens JL, Van Assche G. Reciprocal changes of Foxp3 expression in blood and intestinal mucosa in IBD patients responding to infliximab. *Inflamm Bowel Dis* 2010; **16**: 1299-1310 [PMID: 20196149 DOI: 10.1002/ibd.21229]

130 **Veltkamp C**, Anstaett M, Wahl K, Möller S, Gangl S, Bachmann O, Hardtke-Wolenski M, Länger F, Stremmel W, Manns MP, Schulze-Osthoff K, Bantel H. Apoptosis of regulatory T lymphocytes is increased in chronic inflammatory bowel disease and reversed by anti-TNFα treatment. *Gut* 2011; **60**: 1345-1353 [PMID: 21459928 DOI: 10.1136/gut.2010.217117]

131 **Canavan JB**, Scottà C, Vossenkämper A, Goldberg R, Elder MJ, Shoval I, Marks E, Stolarczyk E, Lo JW, Powell N, Fazekasova H, Irving PM, Sanderson JD, Howard JK, Yagel S, Afzali B, MacDonald TT, Hernandez-Fuentes MP, Shpigel NY, Lombardi G, Lord GM. Developing in vitro expanded CD45RA+ regulatory T cells as an adoptive cell therapy for Crohn's disease. *Gut* 2015; Epub ahead of print [PMID: 25715355 DOI: 10.1136/gutjnl-2014-306919]

P- Reviewer: Lakatos PL, Schicho R, Wlodarczyk M **S- Editor**: Qi Y
L- Editor: A **E- Editor**: Liu XM

World Journal of Gastroenterology

Submit a Manuscript: http://www.wjgnet.com/esps/
Help Desk: http://www.wjgnet.com/esps/helpdesk.aspx
DOI: 10.3748/wjg.v22.i7.2206

World J Gastroenterol 2016 February 21; 22(7): 2206-2218
ISSN 1007-9327 (print) ISSN 2219-2840 (online)

TOPIC HIGHLIGHT

2016 Inflammatory Bowel Disease: Global view

miRNAs as new molecular insights into inflammatory bowel disease: Crucial regulators in autoimmunity and inflammation

Xiao-Min Xu, Hong-Jie Zhang

Xiao-Min Xu, Hong-Jie Zhang, Department of Gastroenterology, the First Affiliated Hospital of Nanjing Medical University, Nanjing 210029, Jiangsu Province, China

Author contributions: Zhang HJ conceived of the study; Xu XM and Zhang HJ analyzed the literature and wrote the manuscript.

Supported by the National Natural Science Foundation of China, No. 81270469.

Conflict-of-interest statement: The authors declare that there are no conflicts of interest related to this work.

Correspondence to: Hong-Jie Zhang, MD, PhD, Professor, Department of Gastroenterology, the First Affiliated Hospital of Nanjing Medical University, 300 Guangzhou Road, Nanjing 210029, Jiangsu Province, China. hjzhang06@163.com
Telephone: +86-25-83718836-6920
Fax: +86-25-83674636

Received: April 27, 2015
Peer-review started: May 4, 2015
First decision: August 26, 2015
Revised: September 28, 2015
Accepted: November 13, 2015
Article in press: November 13, 2015
Published online: February 21, 2016

Abstract

Inflammatory bowel disease (IBD) is characterized by chronic relapsing inflammatory disorders of the gastrointestinal tract, and includes two major phenotypes: ulcerative colitis and Crohn's disease. The pathogenesis of IBD is not fully understood as of yet. It is believed that IBD results from complicated interactions between environmental factors, genetic predisposition, and immune disorders. miRNAs are a class of small non-coding RNAs that can regulate gene expression by targeting the 3'-untranslated region of specific mRNAs for degradation or translational inhibition. miRNAs are considered to play crucial regulatory roles in many biologic processes, such as immune cellular differentiation, proliferation, and apoptosis, and maintenance of immune homeostasis. Recently, aberrant expression of miRNAs was revealed to play an important role in autoimmune diseases, including IBD. In this review, we discuss the current understanding of how miRNAs regulate autoimmunity and inflammation by affecting the differentiation, maturation, and function of various immune cells. In particular, we focus on describing specific miRNA expression profiles in tissues and peripheral blood that may be associated with the pathogenesis of IBD. In addition, we summarize the opportunities for utilizing miRNAs as new biomarkers and as potential therapeutic targets in IBD.

Key words: Autoimmunity; Immune system; Inflammation; Inflammatory bowel disease; miRNA

Core tip: Inflammatory bowel disease (IBD) is characterized by chronic relapsing inflammation in the gastrointestinal tract, but its pathogenesis remains unclear. Further understanding of the molecular mechanisms of IBD is helpful to find new therapeutic strategies. miRNAs play crucial regulatory roles in immune cellular differentiation and maturation, and maintaining immune homeostasis. Aberrant expression of miRNAs is present in IBD. Here, we summarize how miRNAs regulate autoimmunity and inflammation, and describe specific miRNA expression profiles in IBD. We also discuss the opportunities in utilizing miRNAs as new biomarkers and potential therapeutic targets in IBD.

Xu XM, Zhang HJ. miRNAs as new molecular insights into inflammatory bowel disease: Crucial regulators in autoimmunity and inflammation. *World J Gastroenterol* 2016; 22(7): 2206-2218 Available from: URL: http://www.wjgnet.com/1007-9327/full/v22/i7/2206.htm DOI: http://dx.doi.org/10.3748/wjg.v22.i7.2206

INTRODUCTION

Inflammatory bowel disease (IBD) comprises ulcerative colitis (UC) and Crohn's disease (CD). IBD is characterized by chronic relapsing inflammation in the gastrointestinal tract, and its incidence and prevalence are increasing[1]. The precise pathogenic mechanism of IBD remains unknown. Accumulated evidence suggests that IBD results from complicated interactions between environmental factors, genetic predisposition, and immune dysregulation. Of these, immune dysregulation is believed to play an important role in the pathogenesis of IBD[2]. Consequently, it is important to uncover the molecular mechanisms that regulate the immune responses in IBD.

miRNAs are a new class of small non-coding RNAs that regulate immune responses in physiologic and pathologic conditions[3]. miRNAs are considered to play significant roles in many biologic processes, including cellular proliferation, differentiation, maturation, and apoptosis[4]. In addition, miRNAs have been implicated in the pathogenesis of common human diseases, such as cardiovascular[5], neurologic[6], and hematologic diseases, cancer[7], and inflammatory and autoimmune diseases[8]. These research findings have led to new insights into IBD pathogenesis.

In this review, we summarize recent findings that miRNAs regulate autoimmunity and inflammation by affecting the differentiation, maturation, and function of various immune cells. We particularly focus on providing evidence of specific miRNA expression profiles in IBD pathogenesis. In addition, we also discuss the possibility for miRNAs as new biomarkers and potential therapeutic targets in IBD.

GENERAL OVERVIEW OF MIRNA

miRNAs are a new class of small (about 22 nucleotides), endogenous, non-coding single-stranded RNA molecules that can negatively regulate target gene expression at the post-transcriptional level[9]. The first miRNA, *lin-4*, was identified in 1993 in *Caenorhabditis elegans*[10]. The miRNA sequence database, miRBase, contains 35,828 mature miRNAs in 223 species at time of publication (http://www.mirbase.org/, Release 21, June 2014)[11].

miRNA genes are located either within intronic sequences of protein-coding genes, within intronic or exonic regions of non-coding RNAs, or within intergenic regions[12]. The biogenesis of miRNAs includes two parts: one is transcription in the nucleus, and the other is generation of mature miRNAs in the cytoplasm. First, miRNA is transcribed from the genome by RNA polymerase Ⅱ or Ⅲ to generate primary miRNA[13,14]. The primary miRNA is then cleaved by RNase Ⅲ-type enzyme Drosha to produce a pre-miRNA of approximately 70 nucleotides with a stem-loop structure in the nucleus[15]. Next, the pre-miRNA is exported to the cytoplasm by Exportin 5[16]. Once in the cytoplasm, the pre-miRNA is cleaved by Dicer in cooperation with protein partners, into an approximately 22-nucleotide miRNA duplex[17]. Then, one strand is selected as a functional miRNA, while the passenger strand is degraded. The functional miRNA is loaded into the RNA-induced silencing complex and acts as a guide strand that recognizes the target mRNA by complementary sequences[18]. Full complementarity occurs in plants, resulting in target mRNA degradation. However, incomplete complementary binding occurs in humans, and this leads to mRNA destabilization and translational inhibition[12].

MIRNAS AND THE INNATE IMMUNE SYSTEM

The innate immune system forms the first line of host defense, which is non-specific, and responds to pathogens in a generic way. It is comprised of tissue barriers, immune cells, and immune molecules. The tissue barriers include mechanical (epithelial) barriers, chemical barriers such as antimicrobial peptides, and biologic barriers (commensal flora). The innate immune cells include monocytes/macrophages, dendritic cells (DCs), neutrophils, natural killer (NK) cells, NK T cells, mast cells, eosinophils, and basophils. These cells perform phagocytosis, antigen presentation, and activation of the adaptive immune responses[19]. miRNAs regulate autoimmunity and inflammation by affecting the differentiation, maturation, and function

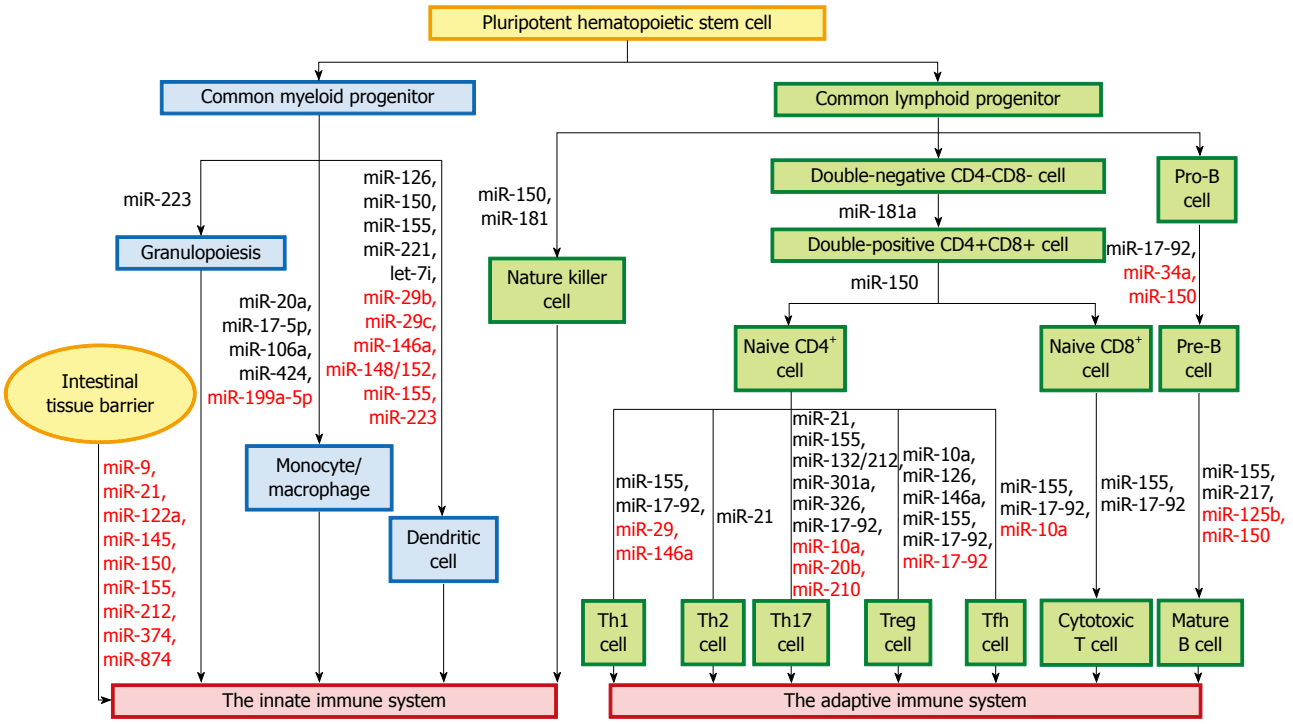


Figure 1 miRNAs and the immune system. miRNAs regulate autoimmunity and inflammation by affecting the differentiation, maturation, and function of various immune cells. The miRNAs in black letters are positive regulators in maintaining the differentiation and function of immune cells, while those in red letters act as negative regulators of these processes.

of various immune cells (Figure 1).

miRNAs and intestinal tissue barriers

The intestinal mucosa forms a barrier that separates luminal contents from the interstitium. Tissue barriers include tight junctions (TJs), adherens junctions, and desmosomes, which regulate the paracellular permeability of epithelial layers across the apical/basolateral axis[20]. The main protein complexes of TJs are composed of transmembrane proteins such as claudins, occludin and junctional adhesion molecules[21]. Disruption of the intestinal barrier has been shown to be an important pathogenic mechanism contributing to the development of intestinal inflammation[22,23]. McKenna *et al*[24] reported that miRNAs are important for maintaining the function of intestinal barriers.

miR-21, which is overexpressed in chronic UC, induces the degradation of Ras homolog gene family member (Rho)B mRNA and leads to an increase in intestinal epithelial permeability due to the loss of TJ proteins and ultrastructural changes[25]. miR-150 is significantly elevated in colon tissue in dextran-sulfate-sodium-induced murine experimental colitis and active UC patients. Overexpression of miR-150 results in intestinal epithelial disruption through targeting of c-Myb[26]. Both occludin and claudin-1 have been demonstrated to be involved in miR-874-induced intestinal barrier dysfunction by targeting the 3′-untranslated region of aquaporin 3[27]. miR-9 and miR-374 directly target the 3′-untranslated region of claudin-14 mRNA, leading to claudin-14 mRNA translational repression and decay, in a cooperative manner[28]. miR-145 impairs TJ function by repressing junctional adhesion molecule-1 expression[29]. miR-212 impairs the intestinal epithelial barrier by downregulating zonula occludens-1 protein expression, which is another major component of TJs[30].

Tumor necrosis factor (TNF)-α is an essential mediator of inflammation in the gut. Anti-TNF-α therapy induces remission in patients with severe active CD[31], UC[32], and refractory celiac disease[33]. TNF-α-induced upregulation of miR-122a mediates the degradation of occludin mRNA in enterocytes and influences their permeability[34]. TNF-α-induced miR-155 overexpression inhibits synthesis of zonula occludens-1 by downregulating RhoA expression[35].

miRNAs and monocytes/macrophages

Monocyte/macrophage differentiation is an essential branch of hematopoiesis, which is under the control of a complex network of regulatory factors[36]. During monocytopoiesis, the transcription factor acute myeloid leukemia (AML)1 is upregulated, while miRNAs-17-5p/20a/106a are downregulated. Monocytopoiesis is regulated by a circuitry comprising sequential miRNAs-17-5p/20a/106a, AML1, and monocyte colony-stimulating factor receptor, whereby miRNAs-17-5p/20a/106a act as a master gene complex that negatively regulates AML1 expression[37]. The transcription factor PU.1 upregulates miR-424 expression, and this induces monocyte differentiation *via* miR-424-dependent translational inhibition of nuclear factor (NF)I-A. This result indicates an important role of miR-424 and its target NFI-A in

controlling monocyte/macrophage differentiation[38]. miR-199a-5p targets the activin A receptor type 1B gene, leading to decreased expression of CCAAT/enhancer binding protein α, and eventually, inhibits monocyte/macrophage differentiation[36].

miRNAs and DCs

DCs serve as the most potent antigen-presenting cells, responsible for primary immune responses. Accumulating evidence highlights the importance of specific miRNAs in DC development, antigen-presentation capacity, and cytokine release[39]. miR-146a[40], miR-155[41], and let-7i[42] are involved in the maturation and functional state of DCs, while miR-148/152[43] and miR-223[44] are involved in their antigen-presentation capacity. miR-150 is required for the cross-presentation capacity of Langerhans cells (skin-resident DCs)[45]. In addition, miR-29b, miR-29c[46], miR-126[47], miR-146a[40,48], miR-155, and miR-221[49] have been shown to regulate DC apoptosis and cytokine production.

miRNAs and NK cells

NK cells are cytotoxic lymphocytes that play a vital role in host defense against infection, and they mediate antitumor responses. Recent advances have demonstrated that miRNAs are crucial in NK cell biology[50]. For instance, miR-150 and miR-181 regulate NK cell development[51,52]. Mice lacking miR-150 are defective in generating mature NK cells. On the contrary, transgenic mice with a gain-of-function miR-150 have enhanced NK cell development[51]. miR-181 promotes NK cell development by targeting Nemo-like kinase, which is a inhibitor of Notch signaling[52].

miRNAs and other kind of innate immune cells

Invariant NK T cells are a separate subset of T lymphocytes with innate effector functions. A Dicer-dependent miRNA pathway is important in the regulation of invariant NK T cell differentiation, function, and homeostasis[53]. The normal granulocytic differentiation requires the zinc finger protein growth factor independent-1, which is a transcription inhibitor that regulates the expression of miR-21 and miR-196b during myelopoiesis[54]. In addition, miR-223 plays a crucial role in the regulation of granulocyte differentiation and function, and mediates inflammatory responses[55,56].

miRNAs and activation of the innate immune system

Pattern recognition receptors are critical for the recognition of microorganisms and the induction of immune and inflammatory responses[57]. The families of these proteins include the membrane-bound Toll-like receptors (TLRs), nucleotide-binding oligomerization domain (NOD)-like receptors, and retinoic acid-inducible gene-I-like receptors[58]. Pattern recognition receptors promote downstream signaling cascades. Emerging evidence indicates that miRNAs regulate these processes.

TLRs: miR-146a expression can be induced through exposure to TLR ligands, such as lipopolysaccharide, peptidoglycan, and flagellin, and this induction is controlled by NF-κB. Mice lacking miR-146a are more likely to develop autoimmune diseases, tumorigenesis, and myeloid cell proliferation. miR-146 targets TNF-receptor-associated factor 6 and interleukin (IL)-1-receptor-associated kinase 1, which are key elements of the myeloid differentiation factor 88 pathway, and form a negative feedback mechanism in TLR signaling[59-61]. miR-155 expression is also induced by TLR signaling[61,62]. Unlike miR-146a, miR-155 promotes the immune response. Mice deficient in miR-155 are highly resistant to experimental autoimmune encephalomyelitis[63].

NOD-like receptors: Of this family of proteins, NOD2 functions as an intracellular sensor that contributes to inflammation and immune defense. It has been identified as the strongest single genetic locus in determining susceptibility in CD[64]. A miRs-NOD interaction has been implicated in IBD. These miRNAs include miR-29[65], miR-122[66], miR-146a[67], and miR-192[68]. For example, polymorphisms in NOD2 impair miR-29 expression in DCs, and this results in exaggerated IL-23-induced inflammation[65]. miR-122 targeting of NOD2 has a crucial role in the damage of intestinal epithelial cells induced by lipopolysaccharide[66].

MIRNAS AND THE ADAPTIVE IMMUNE SYSTEM

The adaptive immune system mainly consists of two different lymphocytes (T and B cells), and is highly pathogen specific. The appropriate development and function of these two immune cells are essential when distinguishing foreign from resident antigens. Current studies have indicated that miRNAs play important roles in maintaining the differentiation and function of T and B cells[69].

miRNAs and T-cell regulation

Increasing evidence shows that some specific miRNAs participate in the regulation of crucial immune functions. These immuno-miRs play significant roles in T-cell development, maturation, activation, differentiation, and aging[70]. For example, miR-150[71] and miR-181a[72] are involved in T-cell development, while miR-21[73] and miR-17-92 cluster[74,75] participate in T-cell activation.

miRNAs and T-helper 1/2 cell differentiation

miRNAs have significant effects on T helper (Th) cell

differentiation. Naïve T cells can differentiate into Th1, Th2, or Th17 cells after activation[76]. Th1 cells have been associated with the pathogenesis of CD, while Th2 cells have been implicated in UC[19]. miR-155 promotes Th1 differentiation by targeting interferon (IFN)-γ receptor α chain[77]. In contrast, $CD4^+$ T cells deficient in miR-155 display a bias towards Th2 differentiation, which is partly due to increased expression of the Th2-associated transcription factor c-Maf[41,78]. miR-17-92 cluster promotes Th1 differentiation. The function of miR-19b is mediated through phosphatase and tensin homolog, while miR-17 targets transforming growth factor (TGF)-β receptor Ⅱ and cAMP-responsive element-binding protein 1[79]. miR-29 regulates Th cell differentiation by directly targeting T-box transcription factor T-bet and eomesodermin to suppress IFN-γ production[80]. miR-146a may be a potent inhibitor of Th1 differentiation by targeting protein kinase Cε[81]. miR-21 promotes Th2 differentiation[82].

miRNAs and Th17 cell differentiation

Th17 cells, a new subset of Th cells capable of producing IL-17, play a vital role in the formation of several autoimmune-mediated inflammatory diseases, including IBD[83,84]. Current studies demonstrate that miR-21[85], miR-155[63], miR-301a[86], miR-326[87], miR-17-92 cluster[88], and miR-132/212 cluster[89] act as positive regulators of Th17 differentiation. For example, miR-155 enhances the development of inflammatory T cells (Th1 and Th17 cells), and facilitates Th17 cell formation through cytokines produced by DCs[63]. miR-10a[90], miR-20b[91], and miR-210[92] act as negative regulators of Th17 differentiation. Deletion of miR-210 promotes Th17 differentiation under hypoxic conditions[92].

miRNAs and regulatory T cells

Regulatory T (Treg) cells are another subset of $CD4^+$ T cells that can suppress activity of effector T cells and maintain self-tolerance[76,90]. Treg cells can be classified into two populations, naturally-occurring Treg (nTreg) cells that are generated in the thymus, and inducible Treg (iTreg) cells that arise from naïve $CD4^+$ precursors in the periphery[90]. miRNAs play pivotal roles in the regulation of both Treg cell development and function[93,94]. miR-10a is highly expressed in nTreg cells and can be induced by retinoic acid and TGF-β in iTreg cells[90]. Repression of miR-10a *in vitro* results in reduced forkhead box (Fox)p3 expression levels, while ablation of miR-10a does not affect the phenotype or number of nTreg cells[93]. miR-155-deficient mice display a marked reduction in the number of Treg cells. Additionally, miR-155 maintains homeostasis of Treg cells by targeting suppressor of cytokine signaling 1 *via* the IL-2 signaling pathway[95]. miR-146a is important for maintaining suppressive function of Treg cells. Treg cells deficient in miR-146a lead to immunologic intolerance by targeting signal transducer and activator of transcription-1[96]. Silencing of miR-126 can influence the expression of Foxp3 on Treg cells and impair their suppressive function *via* the PI3K/Akt pathway[97]. miR-17-92 cluster is also involved in Treg cell function. Mice with Treg-specific loss of miR-17-92 cluster develop an exacerbated form of experimental autoimmune encephalomyelitis and fail to achieve clinical remission[74]. However, there are conflicting results. For instance, the study from Jiang *et al*[79] showed that miR-17-92 cluster prevents Treg cell differentiation and promotes Th1 responses.

miRNAs and follicular helper T cells

Follicular helper T (Tfh) cells are a novel subset of $CD4^+$ T cells that can provide help to B cells, and they are important for germinal center formation[98]. Several studies have demonstrated that miRNAs are crucial for Tfh cell differentiation and function[99,100]. Mice with T-cell-specific loss of miR-17-92 cluster exhibit severely compromised Tfh cell differentiation, germinal center formation, and antibody responses. On the contrary, T-cell-specific miR-17-92 cluster transgenic mice spontaneously accumulate Tfh cells[99]. miR-10a attenuates phenotypic conversion of iTreg cells to Tfh cells by simultaneously targeting Bcl-6, a transcription factor critical for Tfh cell differentiation[101], along with the corepressor Ncor2[90]. Moreover, miR-155 has been reported to promote Tfh cell development[102].

miRNAs and $CD8^+$ T cells

$CD8^+$ T cells or cytotoxic T lymphocytes can devastate various intracellular pathogens and malignancies[103]. Dicer is required for $CD8^+$ T-cell survival and accumulation, but not required for the early steps in $CD8^+$ T-cell activation[104,105]. Dicer and miRNAs such as miR-139 and miR-150 also participate in controlling the cytolytic program, as well as other programs of effector cytotoxic T lymphocyte differentiation[106]. miR-155 is demanded for effector $CD8^+$ T-cell responses to viral and intracellular bacterial infection and cancer. miR-155 has the potential to be a target for immunotherapy for infectious diseases and cancer[103,107,108]. miR-17-92 cluster has dynamic regulation of $CD8^+$ T cells differentiating from naïve to effector and memory states[75,109].

miRNAs and B cells

Ablation of Dicer in early B-cell progenitors leads to a formative block from the pro-B to pre-B transition[110]. miRNAs are also involved in B-cell development and function[110,111], including miR-34a[112], miR-150[113,114], and miR-17-92 cluster[115]. miR-125b inhibits B-cell differentiation in germinal centers[116]. In addition to regulating B-cell differentiation, miR-150[113], miR-155[78], and miR-217[111] regulate B-cell function, including the establishment of B-cell tolerance, as well as antigen-dependent and -independent antibody repertoire diversification.

Table 1 Aberrantly expressed miRNAs in inflammatory bowel disease

Sample type	Expression	miRNAs	Ref.
Ulcerative colitis *vs* healthy controls			
Mucosal tissues	Upregulated	miR-7, miR-16, miR-20b, miR-21, miR-23a, miR-24, miR-29a, miR-29b, miR-31, miR-125b-1*, miR-126, miR-126*, miR-127-3p, miR-135b, miR-146a, miR-150, miR-155, miR-195, miR-206, miR-223, miR-324-3p, miR-424, and let-7f	[25,26,117-122]
	Downregulated	miR-188-5p, miR-192, miR-200b, miR-215, miR-320a, miR-346, miR-375, and miR-422b; miR-124 (pediatric cases)	[117,119,123,124]
Peripheral blood	Upregulated	miR-16, miR-21, miR-28-5p, miR-103-2*, miR-151-5p, miR-155, miR-188-5p, miR-199a-5p, miR-340*, miR-362-3p, miR-378, miR-422a, miR-500, miR-501-5p, miR-532-3p, miR-769-5p, miR-874, and miRplus-E1271	[125-127]
	Downregulated	miR-505*	[126]
Crohn's disease *vs* healthy controls			
Mucosal tissues	Upregulated	miR-9, miR-21, miR-22, miR-26a, miR-29b, miR-29c, miR-30b, miR-31, miR-34c-5p, miR-106a, miR-106b, miR-126, miR-126*, miR-127-3p, miR-130a, miR-133b, miR-146a, miR-146b-5p, miR-150, miR-155, miR-181c, miR-196a, miR-196, miR-206, miR-324-3p, miR-375, and miR-424	[119,121,130,131]
	Downregulated	miR-7 and miR-141	[128,129]
Peripheral blood	Upregulated	miR-16, miR-23a, miR-29a, miR-106a, miR-107, miR-126, miR-191, miR-199a-5p, miR-200c, miR-362-3p and miR-532-3p; miR-16, miR-20a, miR-21, miR-30e, miR-93, miR-106a, miR-140, miR-192, miR-195, miR-484, and let-7b (pediatric cases)	[125,133]

MIRNAS AND IBD

Abnormal miRNA expressions exist in some diseases, including IBD (Table 1). This offers a new way to improve our comprehension of the mechanism of this disease. Moreover, some specific miRNAs in IBD may serve as potential biomarkers for diagnosis, evaluation indicators of disease activity, or targets for treatment.

miRNAs in UC

miRNAs in mucosal tissues: In 2008, the first profiling study of altered expression of miRNAs in IBD patients was published[117]. Wu and colleagues[117] found a specific miRNA expression pattern: three miRNAs (miR-192, miR-375, and miR-422b) were markedly downregulated, whereas eight miRNAs (miR-16, miR-21, miR-23a, miR-24, miR-29a, miR-126, miR-195, and let-7f) were observably upregulated in active UC tissues. Furthermore, they found that miR-192 participated in the regulation of chemokine production in colonic epithelial cells. Since 2008, some new research in active UC and healthy controls has confirmed the upregulation of miR-21[25,118], miR-29a[119], and miR-126[120], and identified additional upregulated miRNAs, including miR-7, miR-29b, miR-126*, miR-127-3p, miR-135b, miR-223 and miR-324-3p[119], miR-31[119,121], miR-150[26], miR-155[118], miR-146a, miR-206, and miR-424[121], and miR-20b and miR-125b-1*[122]. In contrast, miR-188-5p, miR-215, miR-320a, miR-346[119], and miR-200b[123] were downregulated in colon tissues from active UC patients compared with healthy controls. miR-124 was markedly decreased in pediatric but not in adult UC tissues. Reduced levels of miR-124 in colon tissues appear to increase the expression and activity of signal transducer and activator of transcription-3, and this mediates the pathogenesis of UC in children[124].

miRNAs in peripheral blood: Paraskevi and colleagues[125] found that six miRNAs (miR-16, miR-21, miR-28-5p, miR-151-5p, miR-155, and miR-199a-5p) were remarkably upregulated in blood from UC patients compared with healthy controls. miR-155 had the highest expression level of these six UC-associated miRNAs in peripheral blood. Wu and colleagues[126] found that compared with healthy controls, 12 miRNAs were significantly upregulated, and miRNA-505* was downregulated in blood from active UC patients. Peripheral blood miRNAs may distinguish active UC patients from healthy controls. As compared to active CD patients, ten miRNAs were markedly upregulated, and one miRNA was downregulated in blood from active UC patients[126]. Duttagupta *et al*[127] completed analyses of miRNA expressions from different hematologic fractions as noninvasive predictors for incidence of UC. They found that seven miRNAs derived from platelets (miR-188-5p, miR-378, miR-422a, miR-500, miR-501-5p, miR-769-5p, and miR-874) were upregulated. This study provides new platelet-derived miRNA biomarkers for clinical application and perception of the potential roles of these miRNAs in the pathogenesis of UC.

miRNAs in CD

miRNAs in mucosal tissues: Most studies of miRNA expression profiles in CD have concentrated on Crohn's colitis. Fasseu *et al*[119] found that 23 miRNAs (miR-9, miR-21, miR-22, miR-26a, miR-29b, miR-29c, miR-30b, miR-31, miR-34c-5p, miR-106a, miR-126, miR-126*, miR-127-3p, miR-130a, miR-133b, miR-146a, miR-146b-5p, miR-150, miR-155, miR-181c, miR-196a, miR-324-3p, and miR-375) were remarkably upregulated in colonic tissues from CD patients compared with healthy controls. Five of these miRNAs were specific for patients in

an active stage of CD (miR-9, miR-126, miR-130a, miR-181c, and miR-375), whereas the remaining 18 were also upregulated in colonic tissues from inactive CD patients. Huang and colleagues[128] identified that miR-141 was downregulated in inflamed colon tissues from active CD patients. miR-141 inhibited colonic chemokine CXC ligand 12β expression by directly targeting it and blocked colonic immune cell recruitment. Nguyen and colleagues[129] found that only miR-7 was downregulated in eight active colonic CD patients compared to six healthy controls. In addition, miR-206, miR-424[121], miR-106b[130] and miR-196[131] are also upregulated in active colonic CD.

However, is there any tissue-specific miRNA expression profile in the gastrointestinal tract? Wu and colleagues[132] examined miRNA expression patterns in tissues from different intestinal segments in active CD patients. Ten intestine-specific miRNAs (miR-19b, miR-22, miR-23a, miR-26a, miR-31, miR-126, miR-215, miR-320, miR-422b, and let-7d) were identified. Specifically, three of these (miR-22, miR-31, and miR-215) were markedly upregulated in the terminal ileum compared with colon tissue, while miR-19b was downregulated in the terminal ileum. Moreover, miR-23a, miR-26a, miR-126, miR-320, miR-422b, and let-7d showed colon-specific expression. In active colonic CD patients, three miRNAs (miR-23b, miR-106, and miR-191) were upregulated and two (miR-19b and miR-629) were downregulated compared to healthy controls. In active terminal ileal CD patients, four miRNAs (miR-16, miR-21, miR-223, and miR-594) were upregulated in terminal ileal tissues.

miRNAs in peripheral blood: Apart from assessing miRNA expressions in peripheral blood in UC, Paraskevi *et al*[125] examined miRNA expression patterns in peripheral blood samples from 128 patients with active CD and 162 healthy individuals. Eleven miRNAs (miR-16, miR-23a, miR-29a, miR-106a, miR-107, miR-126, miR-191, miR-199a-5p, miR-200c, miR-362-3p, and miR-532-3p) were markedly upregulated in peripheral blood from CD patients as compared with healthy individuals. There were no significant differences in miRNA expressions in accordance with disease location and phenotype.

Zahm *et al*[133] examined serum samples from 46 pediatric CD patients and 32 healthy controls by means of a low-density microarray and quantitative reverse transcriptase (qRT) PCR. They found 11 miRNAs (miR-16, miR-20a, miR-21, miR-30e, miR-93, miR-106a, miR-140, miR-192, miR-195, miR-484, and let-7b) that were CD-associated circulating miRNAs. Receiver operating characteristic analyses indicated that these CD-associated miRNAs had promising diagnostic value, with sensitivities of 70%-83% and specificities of 75%-100%. These results demonstrate that circulating miRNAs may be used as novel noninvasive biomarkers in CD.

miRNAs in IBD at different stages

Iborra and colleagues[134] assessed miRNA expression patterns in serum and tissue samples from nine patients with active UC, nine with inactive UC, nine with active CD, and nine with inactive CD, and serum from 33 healthy subjects. They found that two miRNAs (miR-548a-3p and miR-650) were higher, and three (miR-196b, miR-489, and miR-630) were lower in the mucosa of active UC patients compared with inactive UC patients. There were no differences in serum miRNA expression profiles in patients with active UC compared with inactive UC. However, there were differences in serum miRNA expressions between active and inactive CD patients; two serum miRNAs (miR-188-5p and miR-877) were increased, and four serum miRNAs (miR-18a, miR-128, miR-140-5p, and miR-145) were decreased in patients with active CD. Furthermore, four miRNAs (miR-18a*, miR-140-3p, miR-629*, and let-7b) were higher, and three miRNAs (miR-328, miR-422a, and miR-855-5p) were lower in the mucosa of active CD patients compared with inactive CD patients. These results indicate that there are specific miRNA expression patterns associated with different stages of IBD. Further prospective cohort studies in large samples are necessary to validate these findings.

miRNAs as therapy in IBD

miRNA-related therapeutic applications may represent a new and fascinating field in IBD treatment. miRNA-related therapy is based on antisense technology and gene therapy; thus, it involves either miRNA antagonists or miRNA mimics.

miRNA antagonists: miRNA antagonists include anti-miRNA oligonucleotides (AMOs), miRNA sponges, and miRNA masks.

AMOs: AMOs are synthetic anti-miRNA oligonucleotides with reverse complementary sequences to their target miRNAs, which suppress miRNA functions. It is believed that AMOs have a promising future in therapeutic applications. Chemical modifications of AMOs can improve their stability and binding affinity. Common modifications include addition of different 2′-ribose modifications to AMOs (2′-O-methyl and 2′-O-methoxyethyl) and 2′,4′-methylene bridge-locked nucleic acid (LNA). LNA-modified AMOs create high-affinity binding to target mRNAs[135,136]. A study by Janssen *et al*[137] demonstrated that miravirsen, an LNA-anti-miR-122, is designed to target and inhibit miR-122, and this can reduce viral RNA levels in patients with chronic hepatitis C virus infection. This result proves the possibility of miRNA agents in clinical practice.

miRNA sponges: miRNA sponge technology utilizes plasmid or viral vectors to achieve loss-of-function of miRNAs. The strong promoters can be applied in miRNA sponge vectors for generating high-level expression of the competitive inhibitor transcripts for either transient or long-term inhibition of miRNA function. Considering the merit of sharing a common seed sequence by members of a miRNA family, this technology provides a strong approach for coinstantaneous inhibition of multiple miRNAs of interest with a single inhibitor[138].

miRNA mimicry/replacement therapy: In order to restore miRNA activity, miRNA mimics (synthetic oligonucleotides) and miRNA expression gene vectors are used. MRX34 is a double-stranded miRNA mimic of the naturally occurring miR-34a loaded in liposomal nanoparticles to reestablish its tumor suppressor function. MRX34 was the first miRNA mimic introduced into clinical study for primary as well as metastatic liver cancer in 2013[139,140]. Many miRNAs are down-regulated in UC and CD. For example, miR-192, miR-375, miR-422b[117], miR-188-5p, miR-215, miR-320a, miR-346[119], and miR-200b[123] are decreased in UC, and miR-19b and miR-629[132] are decreased in Crohn's colitis tissues. Theoretically, replenishing these decreased miRNAs by miRNA mimics may provide therapeutic restoration of physiologic functions lost in IBD.

CONCLUSION

In this review, we described the roles of miRNAs as crucial regulators of inflammatory responses and autoimmune disorders, particularly focusing on miRNAs affecting the differentiation, maturation, and function of various immune cells. We also summarized some studies on the current understanding of the connection between miRNAs and IBD. Accumulating evidence suggests that specific miRNA expression profiles exist in IBD, and these miRNAs contribute to the development of inflammation. The definite functions of most miRNAs in IBD have not yet been clarified. Further studies are necessary to validate whether miRNAs could be used to diagnose IBD, distinguish IBD subtypes, and determine the disease activity or location.

REFERENCES

1 **Molodecky NA**, Soon IS, Rabi DM, Ghali WA, Ferris M, Chernoff G, Benchimol EI, Panaccione R, Ghosh S, Barkema HW, Kaplan GG. Increasing incidence and prevalence of the inflammatory bowel diseases with time, based on systematic review. *Gastroenterology* 2012; **142**: 46-54.e42; quiz e30 [PMID: 22001864 DOI: 10.1053/j.gastro.2011.10.001]

2 **Kaser A**, Zeissig S, Blumberg RS. Inflammatory bowel disease. *Annu Rev Immunol* 2010; **28**: 573-621 [PMID: 20192811 DOI: 10.1146/annurev-immunol-030409-101225]

3 **O'Connell RM**, Rao DS, Chaudhuri AA, Baltimore D. Physiological and pathological roles for microRNAs in the immune system. *Nat Rev Immunol* 2010; **10**: 111-122 [PMID: 20098459 DOI: 10.1038/nri2708]

4 **Miska EA**. How microRNAs control cell division, differentiation and death. *Curr Opin Genet Dev* 2005; **15**: 563-568 [PMID: 16099643 DOI: 10.1016/j.gde.2005.08.005]

5 **Wang F**, Chen C, Wang D. Circulating microRNAs in cardiovascular diseases: from biomarkers to therapeutic targets. *Front Med* 2014; **8**: 404-418 [PMID: 25445171 DOI: 10.1007/s11684-014-0379-2]

6 **Wang C**, Ji B, Cheng B, Chen J, Bai B. Neuroprotection of microRNA in neurological disorders (Review). *Biomed Rep* 2014; **2**: 611-619 [PMID: 25053999 DOI: 10.3892/br.2014.297]

7 **Lawrie CH**. MicroRNAs in hematological malignancies. *Blood Rev* 2013; **27**: 143-154 [PMID: 23623930 DOI: 10.1016/j.blre.2013.04.002]

8 **Iborra M**, Bernuzzi F, Invernizzi P, Danese S. MicroRNAs in autoimmunity and inflammatory bowel disease: crucial regulators in immune response. *Autoimmun Rev* 2012; **11**: 305-314 [PMID: 20627134 DOI: 10.1016/j.autrev.2010.07.002]

9 **Bartel DP**. MicroRNAs: genomics, biogenesis, mechanism, and function. *Cell* 2004; **116**: 281-297 [PMID: 14744438]

10 **Lee RC**, Feinbaum RL, Ambros V. The C. elegans heterochronic gene lin-4 encodes small RNAs with antisense complementarity to lin-14. *Cell* 1993; **75**: 843-854 [PMID: 8252621]

11 **Van Peer G**, Lefever S, Anckaert J, Beckers A, Rihani A, Van Goethem A, Volders PJ, Zeka F, Ongenaert M, Mestdagh P, Vandesompele J. miRBase Tracker: keeping track of microRNA annotation changes. *Database* (Oxford) 2014; **2014**: [PMID: 25157074 DOI: 10.1093/database/bau080]

12 **Kalla R**, Ventham NT, Kennedy NA, Quintana JF, Nimmo ER, Buck AH, Satsangi J. MicroRNAs: new players in IBD. *Gut* 2015; **64**: 504-517 [PMID: 25475103 DOI: 10.1136/gutjnl-2014-307891]

13 **Lee Y**, Kim M, Han J, Yeom KH, Lee S, Baek SH, Kim VN. MicroRNA genes are transcribed by RNA polymerase II. *EMBO J* 2004; **23**: 4051-4060 [PMID: 15372072 DOI: 10.1038/sj.emboj.7600385]

14 **Borchert GM**, Lanier W, Davidson BL. RNA polymerase III transcribes human microRNAs. *Nat Struct Mol Biol* 2006; **13**: 1097-1101 [PMID: 17099701 DOI: 10.1038/nsmb1167]

15 **Lee Y**, Ahn C, Han J, Choi H, Kim J, Yim J, Lee J, Provost P, Rådmark O, Kim S, Kim VN. The nuclear RNase III Drosha initiates microRNA processing. *Nature* 2003; **425**: 415-419 [PMID: 14508493 DOI: 10.1038/nature01957]

16 **Lund E**, Güttinger S, Calado A, Dahlberg JE, Kutay U. Nuclear export of microRNA precursors. *Science* 2004; **303**: 95-98 [PMID: 14631048 DOI: 10.1126/science.1090599]

17 **Koscianska E**, Starega-Roslan J, Krzyzosiak WJ. The role of Dicer protein partners in the processing of microRNA precursors. *PLoS One* 2011; **6**: e28548 [PMID: 22163034 DOI: 10.1371/journal.pone.0028548]

18 **Gurtan AM**, Sharp PA. The role of miRNAs in regulating gene expression networks. *J Mol Biol* 2013; **425**: 3582-3600 [PMID: 23500488 DOI: 10.1016/j.jmb.2013.03.007]

19 **Wallace KL**, Zheng LB, Kanazawa Y, Shih DQ. Immunopathology of inflammatory bowel disease. *World J Gastroenterol* 2014; **20**: 6-21 [PMID: 24415853 DOI: 10.3748/wjg.v20.i1.6]

20 **Cichon C**, Sabharwal H, Rüter C, Schmidt MA. MicroRNAs regulate tight junction proteins and modulate epithelial/endothelial barrier functions. *Tissue Barriers* 2014; **2**: e944446 [PMID: 25610754 DOI: 10.4161/21688362.2014.944446]

21 **Anderson JM**, Van Itallie CM. Physiology and function of the tight junction. *Cold Spring Harb Perspect Biol* 2009; **1**: a002584 [PMID: 20066090 DOI: 10.1101/cshperspect.a002584]

22 **Turner JR**. Intestinal mucosal barrier function in health and disease. *Nat Rev Immunol* 2009; **9**: 799-809 [PMID: 19855405 DOI: 10.1038/nri2653]

23 **Shen L**, Su L, Turner JR. Mechanisms and functional implications of intestinal barrier defects. *Dig Dis* 2009; **27**: 443-449 [PMID:

19897958 DOI: 10.1159/000233282]
24 **McKenna LB**, Schug J, Vourekas A, McKenna JB, Bramswig NC, Friedman JR, Kaestner KH. MicroRNAs control intestinal epithelial differentiation, architecture, and barrier function. *Gastroenterology* 2010; **139**: 1654-1664, 1664.e1 [PMID: 20659473 DOI: 10.1053/j.gastro.2010.07.040]
25 **Yang Y**, Ma Y, Shi C, Chen H, Zhang H, Chen N, Zhang P, Wang F, Yang J, Yang J, Zhu Q, Liang Y, Wu W, Gao R, Yang Z, Zou Y, Qin H. Overexpression of miR-21 in patients with ulcerative colitis impairs intestinal epithelial barrier function through targeting the Rho GTPase RhoB. *Biochem Biophys Res Commun* 2013; **434**: 746-752 [PMID: 23583411 DOI: 10.1016/j.bbrc.2013.03.122]
26 **Bian Z**, Li L, Cui J, Zhang H, Liu Y, Zhang CY, Zen K. Role of miR-150-targeting c-Myb in colonic epithelial disruption during dextran sulphate sodium-induced murine experimental colitis and human ulcerative colitis. *J Pathol* 2011; **225**: 544-553 [PMID: 21590770 DOI: 10.1002/path.2907]
27 **Zhi X**, Tao J, Li Z, Jiang B, Feng J, Yang L, Xu H, Xu Z. MiR-874 promotes intestinal barrier dysfunction through targeting AQP3 following intestinal ischemic injury. *FEBS Lett* 2014; **588**: 757-763 [PMID: 24462679 DOI: 10.1016/j.febslet.2014.01.022]
28 **Gong Y**, Renigunta V, Himmerkus N, Zhang J, Renigunta A, Bleich M, Hou J. Claudin-14 regulates renal Ca^{++} transport in response to CaSR signalling via a novel microRNA pathway. *EMBO J* 2012; **31**: 1999-2012 [PMID: 22373575 DOI: 10.1038/emboj.2012.49]
29 **Adammek M**, Greve B, Kässens N, Schneider C, Brüggemann K, Schüring AN, Starzinski-Powitz A, Kiesel L, Götte M. MicroRNA miR-145 inhibits proliferation, invasiveness, and stem cell phenotype of an in vitro endometriosis model by targeting multiple cytoskeletal elements and pluripotency factors. *Fertil Steril* 2013; **99**: 1346-1355.e5 [PMID: 23312222 DOI: 10.1016/j.fertnstert.2012.11.055]
30 **Tang Y**, Banan A, Forsyth CB, Fields JZ, Lau CK, Zhang LJ, Keshavarzian A. Effect of alcohol on miR-212 expression in intestinal epithelial cells and its potential role in alcoholic liver disease. *Alcohol Clin Exp Res* 2008; **32**: 355-364 [PMID: 18162065 DOI: 10.1111/j.1530-0277.2007.00584.x]
31 **Akobeng AK**. Crohn's disease: current treatment options. *Arch Dis Child* 2008; **93**: 787-792 [PMID: 18456695 DOI: 10.1136/adc.2007.128751]
32 **Thukral C**, Cheifetz A, Peppercorn MA. Anti-tumour necrosis factor therapy for ulcerative colitis: evidence to date. *Drugs* 2006; **66**: 2059-2065 [PMID: 17112300]
33 **Gillett HR**, Arnott ID, McIntyre M, Campbell S, Dahele A, Priest M, Jackson R, Ghosh S. Successful infliximab treatment for steroid-refractory celiac disease: a case report. *Gastroenterology* 2002; **122**: 800-805 [PMID: 11875014]
34 **Ye D**, Guo S, Al-Sadi R, Ma TY. MicroRNA regulation of intestinal epithelial tight junction permeability. *Gastroenterology* 2011; **141**: 1323-1333 [PMID: 21763238 DOI: 10.1053/j.gastro.2011.07.005]
35 **Tian R**, Wang RL, Xie H, Jin W, Yu KL. Overexpressed miRNA-155 dysregulates intestinal epithelial apical junctional complex in severe acute pancreatitis. *World J Gastroenterol* 2013; **19**: 8282-8291 [PMID: 24363519 DOI: 10.3748/wjg.v19.i45.8282]
36 **Lin HS**, Gong JN, Su R, Chen MT, Song L, Shen C, Wang F, Ma YN, Zhao HL, Yu J, Li WW, Huang LX, Xu XH, Zhang JW. miR-199a-5p inhibits monocyte/macrophage differentiation by targeting the activin A type 1B receptor gene and finally reducing C/EBPα expression. *J Leukoc Biol* 2014; **96**: 1023-1035 [PMID: 25258381 DOI: 10.1189/jlb.1A0514-240R]
37 **Fontana L**, Pelosi E, Greco P, Racanicchi S, Testa U, Liuzzi F, Croce CM, Brunetti E, Grignani F, Peschle C. MicroRNAs 17-5p-20a-106a control monocytopoiesis through AML1 targeting and M-CSF receptor upregulation. *Nat Cell Biol* 2007; **9**: 775-787 [PMID: 17589498 DOI: 10.1038/ncb1613]
38 **Rosa A**, Ballarino M, Sorrentino A, Sthandier O, De Angelis FG, Marchioni M, Masella B, Guarini A, Fatica A, Peschle C, Bozzoni I. The interplay between the master transcription factor PU.1 and miR-424 regulates human monocyte/macrophage differentiation. *Proc Natl Acad Sci USA* 2007; **104**: 19849-19854 [PMID: 18056638 DOI: 10.1073/pnas.0706963104]
39 **Smyth LA**, Boardman DA, Tung SL, Lechler R, Lombardi G. MicroRNAs affect dendritic cell function and phenotype. *Immunology* 2015; **144**: 197-205 [PMID: 25244106 DOI: 10.1111/imm.12390]
40 **Karrich JJ**, Jachimowski LC, Libouban M, Iyer A, Brandwijk K, Taanman-Kueter EW, Nagasawa M, de Jong EC, Uittenbogaart CH, Blom B. MicroRNA-146a regulates survival and maturation of human plasmacytoid dendritic cells. *Blood* 2013; **122**: 3001-3009 [PMID: 24014244 DOI: 10.1182/blood-2012-12-475087]
41 **Rodriguez A**, Vigorito E, Clare S, Warren MV, Couttet P, Soond DR, van Dongen S, Grocock RJ, Das PP, Miska EA, Vetrie D, Okkenhaug K, Enright AJ, Dougan G, Turner M, Bradley A. Requirement of bic/microRNA-155 for normal immune function. *Science* 2007; **316**: 608-611 [PMID: 17463290 DOI: 10.1126/science.1139253]
42 **Zhang M**, Liu F, Jia H, Zhang Q, Yin L, Liu W, Li H, Yu B, Wu J. Inhibition of microRNA let-7i depresses maturation and functional state of dendritic cells in response to lipopolysaccharide stimulation via targeting suppressor of cytokine signaling 1. *J Immunol* 2011; **187**: 1674-1683 [PMID: 21742974 DOI: 10.4049/jimmunol.1001937]
43 **Liu X**, Zhan Z, Xu L, Ma F, Li D, Guo Z, Li N, Cao X. MicroRNA-148/152 impair innate response and antigen presentation of TLR-triggered dendritic cells by targeting CaMKIIα. *J Immunol* 2010; **185**: 7244-7251 [PMID: 21068402 DOI: 10.4049/jimmunol.1001573]
44 **Mi QS**, Xu YP, Wang H, Qi RQ, Dong Z, Zhou L. Deletion of microRNA miR-223 increases Langerhans cell cross-presentation. *Int J Biochem Cell Biol* 2013; **45**: 395-400 [PMID: 23153510 DOI: 10.1016/j.biocel.2012.11.004]
45 **Mi QS**, Xu YP, Qi RQ, Shi YL, Zhou L. Lack of microRNA miR-150 reduces the capacity of epidermal Langerhans cell cross-presentation. *Exp Dermatol* 2012; **21**: 876-877 [PMID: 23163655 DOI: 10.1111/exd.12008]
46 **Hong Y**, Wu J, Zhao J, Wang H, Liu Y, Chen T, Kan X, Tao Q, Shen X, Yan K, Zhai Z. miR-29b and miR-29c are involved in Toll-like receptor control of glucocorticoid-induced apoptosis in human plasmacytoid dendritic cells. *PLoS One* 2013; **8**: e69926 [PMID: 23894561 DOI: 10.1371/journal.pone.0069926]
47 **Agudo J**, Ruzo A, Tung N, Salmon H, Leboeuf M, Hashimoto D, Becker C, Garrett-Sinha LA, Baccarini A, Merad M, Brown BD. The miR-126-VEGFR2 axis controls the innate response to pathogen-associated nucleic acids. *Nat Immunol* 2014; **15**: 54-62 [PMID: 24270517 DOI: 10.1038/ni.2767]
48 **Park H**, Huang X, Lu C, Cairo MS, Zhou X. MicroRNA-146a and microRNA-146b regulate human dendritic cell apoptosis and cytokine production by targeting TRAF6 and IRAK1 proteins. *J Biol Chem* 2015; **290**: 2831-2841 [PMID: 25505246 DOI: 10.1074/jbc.M114.591420]
49 **Lu C**, Huang X, Zhang X, Roensch K, Cao Q, Nakayama KI, Blazar BR, Zeng Y, Zhou X. miR-221 and miR-155 regulate human dendritic cell development, apoptosis, and IL-12 production through targeting of p27kip1, KPC1, and SOCS-1. *Blood* 2011; **117**: 4293-4303 [PMID: 21355095 DOI: 10.1182/blood-2010-12-322503]
50 **Leong JW**, Sullivan RP, Fehniger TA. microRNA management of NK-cell developmental and functional programs. *Eur J Immunol* 2014; **44**: 2862-2868 [PMID: 25142111 DOI: 10.1002/eji.201444798]
51 **Bezman NA**, Chakraborty T, Bender T, Lanier LL. miR-150 regulates the development of NK and iNKT cells. *J Exp Med* 2011; **208**: 2717-2731 [PMID: 22124110 DOI: 10.1084/jem.20111386]
52 **Cichocki F**, Felices M, McCullar V, Presnell SR, Al-Attar A, Lutz CT, Miller JS. Cutting edge: microRNA-181 promotes human NK cell development by regulating Notch signaling. *J*

Immunol 2011; **187**: 6171-6175 [PMID: 22084432 DOI: 10.4049/jimmunol.1100835]
53 **Fedeli M**, Napolitano A, Wong MP, Marcais A, de Lalla C, Colucci F, Merkenschlager M, Dellabona P, Casorati G. Dicer-dependent microRNA pathway controls invariant NKT cell development. *J Immunol* 2009; **183**: 2506-2512 [PMID: 19625646 DOI: 10.4049/jimmunol.0901361]
54 **Velu CS**, Baktula AM, Grimes HL. Gfi1 regulates miR-21 and miR-196b to control myelopoiesis. *Blood* 2009; **113**: 4720-4728 [PMID: 19278956 DOI: 10.1182/blood-2008-11-190215]
55 **Fazi F**, Rosa A, Fatica A, Gelmetti V, De Marchis ML, Nervi C, Bozzoni I. A minicircuitry comprised of microRNA-223 and transcription factors NFI-A and C/EBPalpha regulates human granulopoiesis. *Cell* 2005; **123**: 819-831 [PMID: 16325577 DOI: 10.1016/j.cell.2005.09.023]
56 **Johnnidis JB**, Harris MH, Wheeler RT, Stehling-Sun S, Lam MH, Kirak O, Brummelkamp TR, Fleming MD, Camargo FD. Regulation of progenitor cell proliferation and granulocyte function by microRNA-223. *Nature* 2008; **451**: 1125-1129 [PMID: 18278031 DOI: 10.1038/nature06607]
57 **Gourbeyre P**, Berri M, Lippi Y, Meurens F, Vincent-Naulleau S, Laffitte J, Rogel-Gaillard C, Pinton P, Oswald IP. Pattern recognition receptors in the gut: analysis of their expression along the intestinal tract and the crypt/villus axis. *Physiol Rep* 2015; **3**: [PMID: 25677543 DOI: 10.14814/phy2.12225]
58 **Elia PP**, Tolentino YF, Bernardazzi C, de Souza HS. The role of innate immunity receptors in the pathogenesis of inflammatory bowel disease. *Mediators Inflamm* 2015; **2015**: 936193 [PMID: 25821356]
59 **Taganov KD**, Boldin MP, Chang KJ, Baltimore D. NF-kappaB-dependent induction of microRNA miR-146, an inhibitor targeted to signaling proteins of innate immune responses. *Proc Natl Acad Sci USA* 2006; **103**: 12481-12486 [PMID: 16885212 DOI: 10.1073/pnas.0605298103]
60 **Saba R**, Sorensen DL, Booth SA. MicroRNA-146a: A Dominant, Negative Regulator of the Innate Immune Response. *Front Immunol* 2014; **5**: 578 [PMID: 25484882 DOI: 10.3389/fimmu.2014.00578]
61 **Nahid MA**, Satoh M, Chan EK. MicroRNA in TLR signaling and endotoxin tolerance. *Cell Mol Immunol* 2011; **8**: 388-403 [PMID: 21822296 DOI: 10.1038/cmi.2011.26]
62 **O'Connell RM**, Taganov KD, Boldin MP, Cheng G, Baltimore D. MicroRNA-155 is induced during the macrophage inflammatory response. *Proc Natl Acad Sci USA* 2007; **104**: 1604-1609 [PMID: 17242365 DOI: 10.1073/pnas.0610731104]
63 **O'Connell RM**, Kahn D, Gibson WS, Round JL, Scholz RL, Chaudhuri AA, Kahn ME, Rao DS, Baltimore D. MicroRNA-155 promotes autoimmune inflammation by enhancing inflammatory T cell development. *Immunity* 2010; **33**: 607-619 [PMID: 20888269 DOI: 10.1016/j.immuni.2010.09.009]
64 **Cuthbert AP**, Fisher SA, Mirza MM, King K, Hampe J, Croucher PJ, Mascheretti S, Sanderson J, Forbes A, Mansfield J, Schreiber S, Lewis CM, Mathew CG. The contribution of NOD2 gene mutations to the risk and site of disease in inflammatory bowel disease. *Gastroenterology* 2002; **122**: 867-874 [PMID: 11910337]
65 **Brain O**, Owens BM, Pichulik T, Allan P, Khatamzas E, Leslie A, Steevels T, Sharma S, Mayer A, Catuneanu AM, Morton V, Sun MY, Jewell D, Coccia M, Harrison O, Maloy K, Schönefeldt S, Bornschein S, Liston A, Simmons A. The intracellular sensor NOD2 induces microRNA-29 expression in human dendritic cells to limit IL-23 release. *Immunity* 2013; **39**: 521-536 [PMID: 24054330 DOI: 10.1016/j.immuni.2013.08.035]
66 **Chen Y**, Wang C, Liu Y, Tang L, Zheng M, Xu C, Song J, Meng X. miR-122 targets NOD2 to decrease intestinal epithelial cell injury in Crohn's disease. *Biochem Biophys Res Commun* 2013; **438**: 133-139 [PMID: 23872065 DOI: 10.1016/j.bbrc.2013.07.040]
67 **Ghorpade DS**, Sinha AY, Holla S, Singh V, Balaji KN. NOD2-nitric oxide-responsive microRNA-146a activates Sonic hedgehog signaling to orchestrate inflammatory responses in murine model of inflammatory bowel disease. *J Biol Chem* 2013; **288**: 33037-33048 [PMID: 24092752 DOI: 10.1074/jbc.M113.492496]
68 **Chuang AY**, Chuang JC, Zhai Z, Wu F, Kwon JH. NOD2 expression is regulated by microRNAs in colonic epithelial HCT116 cells. *Inflamm Bowel Dis* 2014; **20**: 126-135 [PMID: 24297055 DOI: 10.1097/01.MIB.0000436954.70596.9b]
69 **Chen CZ**, Li L, Lodish HF, Bartel DP. MicroRNAs modulate hematopoietic lineage differentiation. *Science* 2004; **303**: 83-86 [PMID: 14657504 DOI: 10.1126/science.1091903]
70 **Kroesen BJ**, Teteloshvili N, Smigielska-Czepiel K, Brouwer E, Boots AM, van den Berg A, Kluiver J. Immuno-miRs: critical regulators of T-cell development, function and ageing. *Immunology* 2015; **144**: 1-10 [PMID: 25093579 DOI: 10.1111/imm.12367]
71 **Ghisi M**, Corradin A, Basso K, Frasson C, Serafin V, Mukherjee S, Mussolin L, Ruggero K, Bonanno L, Guffanti A, De Bellis G, Gerosa G, Stellin G, D'Agostino DM, Basso G, Bronte V, Indraccolo S, Amadori A, Zanovello P. Modulation of microRNA expression in human T-cell development: targeting of NOTCH3 by miR-150. *Blood* 2011; **117**: 7053-7062 [PMID: 21551231 DOI: 10.1182/blood-2010-12-326629]
72 **Li QJ**, Chau J, Ebert PJ, Sylvester G, Min H, Liu G, Braich R, Manoharan M, Soutschek J, Skare P, Klein LO, Davis MM, Chen CZ. miR-181a is an intrinsic modulator of T cell sensitivity and selection. *Cell* 2007; **129**: 147-161 [PMID: 17382377 DOI: 10.1016/j.cell.2007.03.008]
73 **Smigielska-Czepiel K**, van den Berg A, Jellema P, Slezak-Prochazka I, Maat H, van den Bos H, van der Lei RJ, Kluiver J, Brouwer E, Boots AM, Kroesen BJ. Dual role of miR-21 in CD4+ T-cells: activation-induced miR-21 supports survival of memory T-cells and regulates CCR7 expression in naive T-cells. *PLoS One* 2013; **8**: e76217 [PMID: 24098447 DOI: 10.1371/journal.pone.0076217]
74 **de Kouchkovsky D**, Esensten JH, Rosenthal WL, Morar MM, Bluestone JA, Jeker LT. microRNA-17-92 regulates IL-10 production by regulatory T cells and control of experimental autoimmune encephalomyelitis. *J Immunol* 2013; **191**: 1594-1605 [PMID: 23858035 DOI: 10.4049/jimmunol.1203567]
75 **Wu T**, Wieland A, Araki K, Davis CW, Ye L, Hale JS, Ahmed R. Temporal expression of microRNA cluster miR-17-92 regulates effector and memory CD8+ T-cell differentiation. *Proc Natl Acad Sci USA* 2012; **109**: 9965-9970 [PMID: 22665768 DOI: 10.1073/pnas.1207327109]
76 **Geginat J**, Paroni M, Maglie S, Alfen JS, Kastirr I, Gruarin P, De Simone M, Pagani M, Abrignani S. Plasticity of human CD4 T cell subsets. *Front Immunol* 2014; **5**: 630 [PMID: 25566245 DOI: 10.3389/fimmu.2014.00630]
77 **Banerjee A**, Schambach F, DeJong CS, Hammond SM, Reiner SL. Micro-RNA-155 inhibits IFN-gamma signaling in CD4+ T cells. *Eur J Immunol* 2010; **40**: 225-231 [PMID: 19877012 DOI: 10.1002/eji.200939381]
78 **Thai TH**, Calado DP, Casola S, Ansel KM, Xiao C, Xue Y, Murphy A, Frendewey D, Valenzuela D, Kutok JL, Schmidt-Supprian M, Rajewsky N, Yancopoulos G, Rao A, Rajewsky K. Regulation of the germinal center response by microRNA-155. *Science* 2007; **316**: 604-608 [PMID: 17463289 DOI: 10.1126/science.1141229]
79 **Jiang S**, Li C, Olive V, Lykken E, Feng F, Sevilla J, Wan Y, He L, Li QJ. Molecular dissection of the miR-17-92 cluster's critical dual roles in promoting Th1 responses and preventing inducible Treg differentiation. *Blood* 2011; **118**: 5487-5497 [PMID: 21972292 DOI: 10.1182/blood-2011-05-355644]
80 **Steiner DF**, Thomas MF, Hu JK, Yang Z, Babiarz JE, Allen CD, Matloubian M, Blelloch R, Ansel KM. MicroRNA-29 regulates T-box transcription factors and interferon-γ production in helper T cells. *Immunity* 2011; **35**: 169-181 [PMID: 21820330 DOI: 10.1016/j.immuni.2011.07.009]
81 **Möhnle P**, Schütz SV, van der Heide V, Hübner M, Luchting B, Sedlbauer J, Limbeck E, Hinske LC, Briegel J, Kreth S. MicroRNA-146a controls Th1-cell differentiation of human CD4+

T lymphocytes by targeting PRKCε. *Eur J Immunol* 2015; **45**: 260-272 [PMID: 25308712 DOI: 10.1002/eji.201444667]
82 **Sawant DV**, Wu H, Kaplan MH, Dent AL. The Bcl6 target gene microRNA-21 promotes Th2 differentiation by a T cell intrinsic pathway. *Mol Immunol* 2013; **54**: 435-442 [PMID: 23416424 DOI: 10.1016/j.molimm.2013.01.006]
83 **Gálvez J**. Role of Th17 Cells in the Pathogenesis of Human IBD. *ISRN Inflamm* 2014; **2014**: 928461 [PMID: 25101191 DOI: 10.1155/2014/928461]
84 **Han L**, Yang J, Wang X, Li D, Lv L, Li B. Th17 cells in autoimmune diseases. *Front Med* 2015; **9**: 10-19 [PMID: 25652649 DOI: 10.1007/s11684-015-0388-9]
85 **Murugaiyan G**, da Cunha AP, Ajay AK, Joller N, Garo LP, Kumaradevan S, Yosef N, Vaidya VS, Weiner HL. MicroRNA-21 promotes Th17 differentiation and mediates experimental autoimmune encephalomyelitis. *J Clin Invest* 2015; **125**: 1069-1080 [PMID: 25642768 DOI: 10.1172/jci74347]
86 **Mycko MP**, Cichalewska M, Machlanska A, Cwiklinska H, Mariasiewicz M, Selmaj KW. MicroRNA-301a regulation of a T-helper 17 immune response controls autoimmune demyelination. *Proc Natl Acad Sci USA* 2012; **109**: E1248-E1257 [PMID: 22517757 DOI: 10.1073/pnas.1114325109]
87 **Du C**, Liu C, Kang J, Zhao G, Ye Z, Huang S, Li Z, Wu Z, Pei G. MicroRNA miR-326 regulates TH-17 differentiation and is associated with the pathogenesis of multiple sclerosis. *Nat Immunol* 2009; **10**: 1252-1259 [PMID: 19838199 DOI: 10.1038/ni.1798]
88 **Liu SQ**, Jiang S, Li C, Zhang B, Li QJ. miR-17-92 cluster targets phosphatase and tensin homology and Ikaros Family Zinc Finger 4 to promote TH17-mediated inflammation. *J Biol Chem* 2014; **289**: 12446-12456 [PMID: 24644282 DOI: 10.1074/jbc.M114.550723]
89 **Nakahama T**, Hanieh H, Nguyen NT, Chinen I, Ripley B, Millrine D, Lee S, Nyati KK, Dubey PK, Chowdhury K, Kawahara Y, Kishimoto T. Aryl hydrocarbon receptor-mediated induction of the microRNA-132/212 cluster promotes interleukin-17-producing T-helper cell differentiation. *Proc Natl Acad Sci USA* 2013; **110**: 11964-11969 [PMID: 23818645 DOI: 10.1073/pnas.1311087110]
90 **Takahashi H**, Kanno T, Nakayamada S, Hirahara K, Sciumè G, Muljo SA, Kuchen S, Casellas R, Wei L, Kanno Y, O'Shea JJ. TGF-β and retinoic acid induce the microRNA miR-10a, which targets Bcl-6 and constrains the plasticity of helper T cells. *Nat Immunol* 2012; **13**: 587-595 [PMID: 22544395 DOI: 10.1038/ni.2286]
91 **Zhu E**, Wang X, Zheng B, Wang Q, Hao J, Chen S, Zhao Q, Zhao L, Wu Z, Yin Z. miR-20b suppresses Th17 differentiation and the pathogenesis of experimental autoimmune encephalomyelitis by targeting RORγt and STAT3. *J Immunol* 2014; **192**: 5599-5609 [PMID: 24842756 DOI: 10.4049/jimmunol.1303488]
92 **Wang H**, Flach H, Onizawa M, Wei L, McManus MT, Weiss A. Negative regulation of Hif1a expression and TH17 differentiation by the hypoxia-regulated microRNA miR-210. *Nat Immunol* 2014; **15**: 393-401 [PMID: 24608041 DOI: 10.1038/ni.2846]
93 **Jeker LT**, Zhou X, Gershberg K, de Kouchkovsky D, Morar MM, Stadthagen G, Lund AH, Bluestone JA. MicroRNA 10a marks regulatory T cells. *PLoS One* 2012; **7**: e36684 [PMID: 22629323 DOI: 10.1371/journal.pone.0036684]
94 **Kelada S**, Sethupathy P, Okoye IS, Kistasis E, Czieso S, White SD, Chou D, Martens C, Ricklefs SM, Virtaneva K, Sturdevant DE, Porcella SF, Belkaid Y, Wynn TA, Wilson MS. miR-182 and miR-10a are key regulators of Treg specialisation and stability during Schistosome and Leishmania-associated inflammation. *PLoS Pathog* 2013; **9**: e1003451 [PMID: 23825948 DOI: 10.1371/journal.ppat.1003451]
95 **Lu LF**, Thai TH, Calado DP, Chaudhry A, Kubo M, Tanaka K, Loeb GB, Lee H, Yoshimura A, Rajewsky K, Rudensky AY. Foxp3-dependent microRNA155 confers competitive fitness to regulatory T cells by targeting SOCS1 protein. *Immunity* 2009; **30**: 80-91 [PMID: 19144316 DOI: 10.1016/j.immuni.2008.11.010]
96 **Lu LF**, Boldin MP, Chaudhry A, Lin LL, Taganov KD, Hanada T, Yoshimura A, Baltimore D, Rudensky AY. Function of miR-146a in controlling Treg cell-mediated regulation of Th1 responses. *Cell* 2010; **142**: 914-929 [PMID: 20850013 DOI: 10.1016/j.cell.2010.08.012]
97 **Qin A**, Wen Z, Zhou Y, Li Y, Li Y, Luo J, Ren T, Xu L. MicroRNA-126 regulates the induction and function of CD4(+) Foxp3(+) regulatory T cells through PI3K/AKT pathway. *J Cell Mol Med* 2013; **17**: 252-264 [PMID: 23301798 DOI: 10.1111/jcmm.12003]
98 **Crotty S**. Follicular helper CD4 T cells (TFH). *Annu Rev Immunol* 2011; **29**: 621-663 [PMID: 21314428 DOI: 10.1146/annurev-immunol-031210-101400]
99 **Kang SG**, Liu WH, Lu P, Jin HY, Lim HW, Shepherd J, Fremgen D, Verdin E, Oldstone MB, Qi H, Teijaro JR, Xiao C. MicroRNAs of the miR-17~92 family are critical regulators of T(FH) differentiation. *Nat Immunol* 2013; **14**: 849-857 [PMID: 23812097 DOI: 10.1038/ni.2648]
100 **Baumjohann D**, Kageyama R, Clingan JM, Morar MM, Patel S, de Kouchkovsky D, Bannard O, Bluestone JA, Matloubian M, Ansel KM, Jeker LT. The microRNA cluster miR-17~92 promotes TFH cell differentiation and represses subset-inappropriate gene expression. *Nat Immunol* 2013; **14**: 840-848 [PMID: 23812098 DOI: 10.1038/ni.2642]
101 **Johnston RJ**, Poholek AC, DiToro D, Yusuf I, Eto D, Barnett B, Dent AL, Craft J, Crotty S. Bcl6 and Blimp-1 are reciprocal and antagonistic regulators of T follicular helper cell differentiation. *Science* 2009; **325**: 1006-1010 [PMID: 19608860 DOI: 10.1126/science.1175870]
102 **Hu R**, Kagele DA, Huffaker TB, Runtsch MC, Alexander M, Liu J, Bake E, Su W, Williams MA, Rao DS, Möller T, Garden GA, Round JL, O'Connell RM. miR-155 promotes T follicular helper cell accumulation during chronic, low-grade inflammation. *Immunity* 2014; **41**: 605-619 [PMID: 25367574 DOI: 10.1016/j.immuni.2014.09.015]
103 **Gracias DT**, Stelekati E, Hope JL, Boesteanu AC, Doering TA, Norton J, Mueller YM, Fraietta JA, Wherry EJ, Turner M, Katsikis PD. The microRNA miR-155 controls CD8(+) T cell responses by regulating interferon signaling. *Nat Immunol* 2013; **14**: 593-602 [PMID: 23603793 DOI: 10.1038/ni.2576]
104 **Zhang N**, Bevan MJ. Dicer controls CD8+ T-cell activation, migration, and survival. *Proc Natl Acad Sci USA* 2010; **107**: 21629-21634 [PMID: 21098294 DOI: 10.1073/pnas.1016299107]
105 **Muljo SA**, Ansel KM, Kanellopoulou C, Livingston DM, Rao A, Rajewsky K. Aberrant T cell differentiation in the absence of Dicer. *J Exp Med* 2005; **202**: 261-269 [PMID: 16009718 DOI: 10.1084/jem.20050678]
106 **Trifari S**, Pipkin ME, Bandukwala HS, Äijö T, Bassein J, Chen R, Martinez GJ, Rao A. MicroRNA-directed program of cytotoxic CD8+ T-cell differentiation. *Proc Natl Acad Sci USA* 2013; **110**: 18608-18613 [PMID: 24163352 DOI: 10.1073/pnas.1317191110]
107 **Dudda JC**, Salaun B, Ji Y, Palmer DC, Monnot GC, Merck E, Boudousquie C, Utzschneider DT, Escobar TM, Perret R, Muljo SA, Hebeisen M, Rufer N, Zehn D, Donda A, Restifo NP, Held W, Gattinoni L, Romero P. MicroRNA-155 is required for effector CD8+ T cell responses to virus infection and cancer. *Immunity* 2013; **38**: 742-753 [PMID: 23601686 DOI: 10.1016/j.immuni.2012.12.006]
108 **Lind EF**, Elford AR, Ohashi PS. Micro-RNA 155 is required for optimal CD8+ T cell responses to acute viral and intracellular bacterial challenges. *J Immunol* 2013; **190**: 1210-1216 [PMID: 23275599 DOI: 10.4049/jimmunol.1202700]
109 **Khan AA**, Penny LA, Yuzefpolskiy Y, Sarkar S, Kalia V. MicroRNA-17~92 regulates effector and memory CD8 T-cell fates by modulating proliferation in response to infections. *Blood* 2013; **121**: 4473-4483 [PMID: 23596046 DOI: 10.1182/blood-2012-06-435412]
110 **Koralov SB**, Muljo SA, Galler GR, Krek A, Chakraborty T, Kanellopoulou C, Jensen K, Cobb BS, Merkenschlager M, Rajewsky N, Rajewsky K. Dicer ablation affects antibody diversity

and cell survival in the B lymphocyte lineage. *Cell* 2008; **132**: 860-874 [PMID: 18329371 DOI: 10.1016/j.cell.2008.02.020]

111 **de Yébenes VG**, Bartolomé-Izquierdo N, Ramiro AR. Regulation of B-cell development and function by microRNAs. *Immunol Rev* 2013; **253**: 25-39 [PMID: 23550636 DOI: 10.1111/imr.12046]

112 **Rao DS**, O'Connell RM, Chaudhuri AA, Garcia-Flores Y, Geiger TL, Baltimore D. MicroRNA-34a perturbs B lymphocyte development by repressing the forkhead box transcription factor Foxp1. *Immunity* 2010; **33**: 48-59 [PMID: 20598588 DOI: 10.1016/j.immuni.2010.06.013]

113 **Xiao C**, Calado DP, Galler G, Thai TH, Patterson HC, Wang J, Rajewsky N, Bender TP, Rajewsky K. MiR-150 controls B cell differentiation by targeting the transcription factor c-Myb. *Cell* 2007; **131**: 146-159 [PMID: 17923094 DOI: 10.1016/j.cell.2007.07.021]

114 **Zhou B**, Wang S, Mayr C, Bartel DP, Lodish HF. miR-150, a microRNA expressed in mature B and T cells, blocks early B cell development when expressed prematurely. *Proc Natl Acad Sci USA* 2007; **104**: 7080-7085 [PMID: 17438277 DOI: 10.1073/pnas.0702409104]

115 **Ventura A**, Young AG, Winslow MM, Lintault L, Meissner A, Erkeland SJ, Newman J, Bronson RT, Crowley D, Stone JR, Jaenisch R, Sharp PA, Jacks T. Targeted deletion reveals essential and overlapping functions of the miR-17 through 92 family of miRNA clusters. *Cell* 2008; **132**: 875-886 [PMID: 18329372 DOI: 10.1016/j.cell.2008.02.019]

116 **Gururajan M**, Haga CL, Das S, Leu CM, Hodson D, Josson S, Turner M, Cooper MD. MicroRNA 125b inhibition of B cell differentiation in germinal centers. *Int Immunol* 2010; **22**: 583-592 [PMID: 20497960 DOI: 10.1093/intimm/dxq042]

117 **Wu F**, Zikusoka M, Trindade A, Dassopoulos T, Harris ML, Bayless TM, Brant SR, Chakravarti S, Kwon JH. MicroRNAs are differentially expressed in ulcerative colitis and alter expression of macrophage inflammatory peptide-2 alpha. *Gastroenterology* 2008; **135**: 1624-1635.e24 [PMID: 18835392 DOI: 10.1053/j.gastro.2008.07.068]

118 **Takagi T**, Naito Y, Mizushima K, Hirata I, Yagi N, Tomatsuri N, Ando T, Oyamada Y, Isozaki Y, Hongo H, Uchiyama K, Handa O, Kokura S, Ichikawa H, Yoshikawa T. Increased expression of microRNA in the inflamed colonic mucosa of patients with active ulcerative colitis. *J Gastroenterol Hepatol* 2010; **25** Suppl 1: S129-S133 [PMID: 20586854 DOI: 10.1111/j.1440-1746.2009.06216.x]

119 **Fasseu M**, Tréton X, Guichard C, Pedruzzi E, Cazals-Hatem D, Richard C, Aparicio T, Daniel F, Soulé JC, Moreau R, Bouhnik Y, Laburthe M, Groyer A, Ogier-Denis E. Identification of restricted subsets of mature microRNA abnormally expressed in inactive colonic mucosa of patients with inflammatory bowel disease. *PLoS One* 2010; **5**: e13160 [PMID: 20957151 DOI: 10.1371/journal.pone.0013160]

120 **Feng X**, Wang H, Ye S, Guan J, Tan W, Cheng S, Wei G, Wu W, Wu F, Zhou Y. Up-regulation of microRNA-126 may contribute to pathogenesis of ulcerative colitis via regulating NF-kappaB inhibitor IκBα. *PLoS One* 2012; **7**: e52782 [PMID: 23285182 DOI: 10.1371/journal.pone.0052782]

121 **Lin J**, Welker NC, Zhao Z, Li Y, Zhang J, Reuss SA, Zhang X, Lee H, Liu Y, Bronner MP. Novel specific microRNA biomarkers in idiopathic inflammatory bowel disease unrelated to disease activity. *Mod Pathol* 2014; **27**: 602-608 [PMID: 24051693 DOI: 10.1038/modpathol.2013.152]

122 **Coskun M**, Bjerrum JT, Seidelin JB, Troelsen JT, Olsen J, Nielsen OH. miR-20b, miR-98, miR-125b-1*, and let-7e* as new potential diagnostic biomarkers in ulcerative colitis. *World J Gastroenterol* 2013; **19**: 4289-4299 [PMID: 23885139 DOI: 10.3748/wjg.v19.i27.4289]

123 **Chen Y**, Xiao Y, Ge W, Zhou K, Wen J, Yan W, Wang Y, Wang B, Qu C, Wu J, Xu L, Cai W. miR-200b inhibits TGF-β1-induced epithelial-mesenchymal transition and promotes growth of intestinal epithelial cells. *Cell Death Dis* 2013; **4**: e541 [PMID: 23492772 DOI: 10.1038/cddis.2013.22]

124 **Koukos G**, Polytarchou C, Kaplan JL, Morley-Fletcher A, Gras-Miralles B, Kokkotou E, Baril-Dore M, Pothoulakis C, Winter HS, Iliopoulos D. MicroRNA-124 regulates STAT3 expression and is down-regulated in colon tissues of pediatric patients with ulcerative colitis. *Gastroenterology* 2013; **145**: 842-852.e2 [PMID: 23856509 DOI: 10.1053/j.gastro.2013.07.001]

125 **Paraskevi A**, Theodoropoulos G, Papaconstantinou I, Mantzaris G, Nikiteas N, Gazouli M. Circulating MicroRNA in inflammatory bowel disease. *J Crohns Colitis* 2012; **6**: 900-904 [PMID: 22386737 DOI: 10.1016/j.crohns.2012.02.006]

126 **Wu F**, Guo NJ, Tian H, Marohn M, Gearhart S, Bayless TM, Brant SR, Kwon JH. Peripheral blood microRNAs distinguish active ulcerative colitis and Crohn's disease. *Inflamm Bowel Dis* 2011; **17**: 241-250 [PMID: 20812331 DOI: 10.1002/ibd.21450]

127 **Duttagupta R**, DiRienzo S, Jiang R, Bowers J, Gollub J, Kao J, Kearney K, Rudolph D, Dawany NB, Showe MK, Stamato T, Getts RC, Jones KW. Genome-wide maps of circulating miRNA biomarkers for ulcerative colitis. *PLoS One* 2012; **7**: e31241 [PMID: 22359580 DOI: 10.1371/journal.pone.0031241]

128 **Huang Z**, Shi T, Zhou Q, Shi S, Zhao R, Shi H, Dong L, Zhang C, Zeng K, Chen J, Zhang J. miR-141 Regulates colonic leukocytic trafficking by targeting CXCL12β during murine colitis and human Crohn's disease. *Gut* 2014; **63**: 1247-1257 [PMID: 24000293 DOI: 10.1136/gutjnl-2012-304213]

129 **Nguyen HT**, Dalmasso G, Yan Y, Laroui H, Dahan S, Mayer L, Sitaraman SV, Merlin D. MicroRNA-7 modulates CD98 expression during intestinal epithelial cell differentiation. *J Biol Chem* 2010; **285**: 1479-1489 [PMID: 19892711 DOI: 10.1074/jbc.M109.057141]

130 **Lu C**, Chen J, Xu HG, Zhou X, He Q, Li YL, Jiang G, Shan Y, Xue B, Zhao RX, Wang Y, Werle KD, Cui R, Liang J, Xu ZX. MIR106B and MIR93 prevent removal of bacteria from epithelial cells by disrupting ATG16L1-mediated autophagy. *Gastroenterology* 2014; **146**: 188-199 [PMID: 24036151 DOI: 10.1053/j.gastro.2013.09.006]

131 **Brest P**, Lapaquette P, Souidi M, Lebrigand K, Cesaro A, Vouret-Craviari V, Mari B, Barbry P, Mosnier JF, Hébuterne X, Harel-Bellan A, Mograbi B, Darfeuille-Michaud A, Hofman P. A synonymous variant in IRGM alters a binding site for miR-196 and causes deregulation of IRGM-dependent xenophagy in Crohn's disease. *Nat Genet* 2011; **43**: 242-245 [PMID: 21278745 DOI: 10.1038/ng.762]

132 **Wu F**, Zhang S, Dassopoulos T, Harris ML, Bayless TM, Meltzer SJ, Brant SR, Kwon JH. Identification of microRNAs associated with ileal and colonic Crohn's disease. *Inflamm Bowel Dis* 2010; **16**: 1729-1738 [PMID: 20848482 DOI: 10.1002/ibd.21267]

133 **Zahm AM**, Thayu M, Hand NJ, Horner A, Leonard MB, Friedman JR. Circulating microRNA is a biomarker of pediatric Crohn disease. *J Pediatr Gastroenterol Nutr* 2011; **53**: 26-33 [PMID: 21546856 DOI: 10.1097/MPG.0b013e31822200cc]

134 **Iborra M**, Bernuzzi F, Correale C, Vetrano S, Fiorino G, Beltrán B, Marabita F, Locati M, Spinelli A, Nos P, Invernizzi P, Danese S. Identification of serum and tissue micro-RNA expression profiles in different stages of inflammatory bowel disease. *Clin Exp Immunol* 2013; **173**: 250-258 [PMID: 23607522 DOI: 10.1111/cei.12104]

135 **Lennox KA**, Behlke MA. Chemical modification and design of anti-miRNA oligonucleotides. *Gene Ther* 2011; **18**: 1111-1120 [PMID: 21753793 DOI: 10.1038/gt.2011.100]

136 **Weiler J**, Hunziker J, Hall J. Anti-miRNA oligonucleotides (AMOs): ammunition to target miRNAs implicated in human disease? *Gene Ther* 2006; **13**: 496-502 [PMID: 16195701 DOI: 10.1038/sj.gt.3302654]

137 **Janssen HL**, Reesink HW, Lawitz EJ, Zeuzem S, Rodriguez-Torres M, Patel K, van der Meer AJ, Patick AK, Chen A, Zhou Y, Persson R, King BD, Kauppinen S, Levin AA, Hodges MR. Treatment of HCV infection by targeting microRNA. *N Engl J Med* 2013; **368**: 1685-1694 [PMID: 23534542 DOI: 10.1056/NEJMoa1209026]

138 **Tay FC**, Lim JK, Zhu H, Hin LC, Wang S. Using artificial

microRNA sponges to achieve microRNA loss-of-function in cancer cells. *Adv Drug Deliv Rev* 2015; **81**: 117-127 [PMID: 24859534 DOI: 10.1016/j.addr.2014.05.010]

139 **Hayes J**, Peruzzi PP, Lawler S. MicroRNAs in cancer: biomarkers, functions and therapy. *Trends Mol Med* 2014; **20**: 460-469 [PMID: 25027972 DOI: 10.1016/j.molmed.2014.06.005]

140 **Chapman CG**, Pekow J. The emerging role of miRNAs in inflammatory bowel disease: a review. *Therap Adv Gastroenterol* 2015; **8**: 4-22 [PMID: 25553076 DOI: 10.1177/1756283x14547360]

P- Reviewer: Lakatos PL **S- Editor**: Ma YJ
L- Editor: Filipodia **E- Editor**: Liu XM

World Journal of Gastroenterology

Submit a Manuscript: http://www.wjgnet.com/esps/
Help Desk: http://www.wjgnet.com/esps/helpdesk.aspx
DOI: 10.3748/wjg.v22.i7.2219

World J Gastroenterol 2016 February 21; 22(7): 2219-2241
ISSN 1007-9327 (print) ISSN 2219-2840 (online)

TOPIC HIGHLIGHT

2016 Irritable Bowel Syndrome: Global view

Gut microbiota role in irritable bowel syndrome: New therapeutic strategies

Eleonora Distrutti, Lorenzo Monaldi, Patrizia Ricci, Stefano Fiorucci

Eleonora Distrutti, Lorenzo Monaldi, S.C. di Gastroenterologia ed Epatologia, Azienda Ospedaliera di Perugia, 06100 Perugia, Italy

Patrizia Ricci, Stefano Fiorucci, Dipartimento di Scienze Chirurgiche e Biomediche, Università degli Studi di Perugia, 06100 Perugia, Italy

Author contributions: Distrutti E, Monaldi L, Ricci P and Fiorucci S conceived and wrote the manuscript.

Conflict-of-interest statement: The Authors declare no conflict of interest

Correspondence to: Eleonora Distrutti, MD, S.C. di Gastroenterologia ed Epatologia, Azienda Ospedaliera di Perugia, 06100 Perugia, Italy. eleonoradistrutti@katamail.com
Telephone: +39-75-5784357
Fax: +39-75-5858120

Received: May 28, 2015
Peer-review started: June 1, 2015
First decision: October 14, 2015
Revised: December 5, 2015
Accepted: December 30, 2015
Article in press: December 30, 2015
Published online: February 21, 2016

Abstract

In the last decade the impressive expansion of our knowledge of the vast microbial community that resides in the human intestine, the gut microbiota, has provided support to the concept that a disturbed intestinal ecology might promote development and maintenance of symptoms in irritable bowel syndrome (IBS). As a correlate, manipulation of gut microbiota represents a new strategy for the treatment of this multifactorial disease. A number of attempts have been made to modulate the gut bacterial composition, following the idea that expansion of bacterial species considered as beneficial (*Lactobacilli* and *Bifidobacteria*) associated with the reduction of those considered harmful (*Clostridium*, *Escherichia coli*, *Salmonella*, *Shigella* and *Pseudomonas*) should attenuate IBS symptoms. In this conceptual framework, probiotics appear an attractive option in terms of both efficacy and safety, while prebiotics, synbiotics and antibiotics still need confirmation. Fecal transplant is an old treatment translated from the cure of intestinal infective pathologies that has recently gained a new life as therapeutic option for those patients with a disturbed gut ecosystem, but data on IBS are scanty and randomized, placebo-controlled studies are required.

Key words: Irritable bowel syndrome; Gut microbiota; Probiotics; Prebiotics; Synbiotics; Antibiotics; Fecal transplantation

Core tip: In the last decade, the gut microbiota has provided support to the concept that a disturbed intestinal ecology could promote development and maintenance of symptoms in irritable bowel syndrome (IBS). As a correlate, manipulation of gut microbiota represents a new strategy for the treatment of this multifactorial disease. Probiotics appear an attractive option in terms of both efficacy and safety, while prebiotics, synbiotics and antibiotics still need for-

mation. Fecal transplant has recently gained a new life as therapeutic option for those patients with an altered gut ecosystem, but data on IBS are scanty and randomized, placebo-controlled studies are required.

Distrutti E, Monaldi L, Ricci P, Fiorucci S. Gut microbiota role in irritable bowel syndrome: New therapeutic strategies. *World J Gastroenterol* 2016; 22(7): 2219-2241 Available from: URL: http://www.wjgnet.com/1007-9327/full/v22/i7/2219.htm DOI: http://dx.doi.org/10.3748/wjg.v22.i7.2219

INTRODUCTION

Irritable bowel syndrome (IBS) is a disorder characterized by chronic abdominal pain and discomfort associated with alterations of bowel habits in the absence of a demonstrable pathology[1,2]. Other common symptoms are abdominal distension, bloating and flatulence, straining and urgency. IBS is a common gastrointestinal (GI) disorders in the industrialized world with a 10%-15% prevalence in the general population[3]. This high prevalence together with the associated co-morbidities has a significant impact on both patients and society, especially in terms of quality of life and medical costs[4].

IBS is a heterogeneous functional disorder that, depending on the prevailing bowel habit, has been subtyped into IBS with constipation (C-IBS), IBS with diarrhea (D-IBS), mixed, alternate IBS (A-IBS) with both constipation and diarrhea plus unsubtyped IBS with neither constipation nor diarrhea[1,2]. Alterations of bowel habits are likely related to dysregulation of the autonomic system in the gut, whereas symptoms of abdominal pain and discomfort are thought to involve additional changes in the bidirectional communication between the gut and the brain, known as "gut-brain axis", that cause a modified perception of visceral events in the form of hyperalgesia or allodynia[5,6]. The etiology of IBS is incompletely understood and evidence is growing that IBS might be a post-inflammatory and stress-correlated condition[7,8]. Both host and environmental factors, including diet, play a key role in triggering symptoms. Among the host factors, central alterations (*i.e.*, aberrant stress responses, psychiatric co-morbidity and cognitive dysfunctions) and peripheral alterations (*i.e.*, intestinal dysmotility, visceral hypersensitivity, low-grade immune activation and altered intestinal barrier function) are both involved[9]. Despite considerable research efforts, the treatment of IBS remains a significant challenge mainly due to its poorly defined pathophysiology.

HUMAN MICROBIOTA

Human microbiota is a complex living ecosystem consisting of unicellular microbes, mainly bacterial, but also metagenomic archaeal (*i.e.*, *Methanobrevibacter*), viral (*i.e.*, bacteriophages) and eukaryotic (*i.e.*, yeast), that occupies almost every mucosal and cutaneous surfaces of our body. It has been estimated that microbes that stably live in human body amount to 100 trillion cells, ten-fold the number of human cells[10] and the majority inhabits the gut where the intestinal microbiota is widely regarded as a virtual organ that actively influences and mediates several physiological functions. These living microorganisms encode for over three millions of genes, the so-called "microbiome"[11], outfitting the human genoma by approximately 100-fold[12]. The intestinal microbiota is composed by 17 families, 50 genera and more than 1000 species of bacteria: its composition varies among individuals, changes during life and depends on environmental factors, mainly lifestyle, diet, drugs, stress and invasive medical procedures. The intestinal microbiota is dominated by four main phyla: *Firmicutes, Bacteroidetes, Actinobacteria*, and *Proteobacteria*. In the adult life *Bacteroidetes* and *Firmicutes* are usually prevalent, whereas *Actinobacteria* and *Proteobacteria* are less represented. In the healthy status, the gut microbiota interacts with the human host in a mutualistic relationship, the host intestine provides the bacteria with an environment to grow and the bacterial ecosystem contributes to maintain homeostasis within the host by modulating several physiological functions such as gut development[13], nutrient processing and digestion[14,15], immune cell development and immune responses[16-18], resistance to pathogens[19,20], control of host energy and lipid metabolism[14,15] and brain development and function. Changes in bacterial number and composition, the so-called dysbiosis, may induce a dysregulation of this deep relationship and cause the appearance of a spectrum of diseases including metabolic syndrome, diabetes, cancer, inflammatory conditions, neurological pathologies and psychiatric disorders.

Throughout its communication with gastrointestinal epithelial, immune and nerve cells, the gut microbiota generates and releases molecules that can signal to distant organs. It is now recognized that a significant portion of the metabolites circulating in mammalian blood derives from the intestinal microbial community[21-25] and the presence or absence of the gut microbiota influences the metabolic profile in regions distant from the gut such as the brain[26]. Moreover, it releases factors that target specific neuronal systems involved in the gut-brain axis, generating neurotransmitters and neuromodulators as dopamine, noradrenaline, acetylcholine and gamma-aminobutyric acid (GABA)[27-31]. Direct contact of certain probiotics (*i.e.*, *Lactobacillus acidophilus*) with epithelial cells induce the expression of opioid and cannabinoid receptors in the gut and contribute to the modulation and restoration of the normal perception of visceral pain[32]. Finally, as the result

of intestinal microbial colonization, metabolism, and subsequent fermentation, the human microbiota produces a significant proportion of the gases present in the gut, including carbon dioxide (CO_2), hydrogen (H_2), methane (CH_4), and hydrogen sulfide (H_2S). Since H_2S has been recently recognized as a gaseous neuromodulator/neurotransmitter capable of modulating intestinal inflammation and sensitivity[33-37], it may be hypothesized that the intestinal microbiota plays a significant role in modulating visceral pain also by producing this gaseous mediator. The term microbiota-gut-brain axis is now currently used to indicate the deep correlation among these three functional "organs".

MICROBIOTA AND IBS

IBS can be considered a multifactorial syndrome in which several pathogenic mechanisms are involved. Gut microbiota interferes with normal intestinal functions at diverse levels, acting as both cause and target of abnormalities of intestinal motility, sensitivity and neuroimmune signaling, including alterations of mucosal barrier and pattern recognition receptors expression, as well as dysfunctions of hypothalamus-pituitary-adrenal (HPA) axis.

Perturbation in microbiota composition

In recent years, perturbations in the intestinal microbiota have being linked to the pathophysiology of IBS (Figure 1), thought that studies investigating the composition of intestinal microbiota in IBS have produced non univocal results[38]. Nevertheless the majority of data support the notion that the composition of luminal and mucosal microbiota differs among specific subgroups of IBS patients and healthy individuals[39-63] (Table 1). Using culture-based techniques and a 16S rRNA gene-based phylogenetic microarray analysis, it has been demonstrated that the diversity of microbial population is reduced, the proportion of specific bacterial groups is altered and the degree of variability in the microbiota composition is different in IBS patients when compared with healthy subjects. Furthermore, a higher degree of temporal instability of the microbiota among IBS patients has been detected. Examples of these modifications are a decreased amount of *Lactobacilli* and *Bifidobacteria* along with an increased amount of aerobes relatively to anaerobes in IBS patients. Finally mucosal bacteria have also been found to be more abundant in IBS patients than in healthy controls (Table 1). Consistent with this view, the clinical guidance regarding the modulation of intestinal microbiota in IBS provided by the Rome Team Working Group has recently concluded that there is good evidence supporting the concept that the intestinal microbiota is perturbed in patients with IBS[64].

A part of the abnormal composition of gut microbiota in IBS, others factors support the notion that intestinal flora plays a key role in determining IBS. First, there is increasing evidence of an activation of the intestinal immune system in IBS leading in a micro-inflammation, with studies demonstrating increased concentrations of mucosal intraepithelial lymphocytes[65,66], mast cells[66-69] and 5-hydroxytryptamine-secreting enterochromaffin cells[65]. Gut microbiota influences mucosal inflammation in inflammatory bowel disease (IBD) patients, *i.e.*, ulcerative colitis (UC) and Crohn's disease. Animal-based studies emphasize the critical role of gut microbiota in the balance between immunosuppression and inflammation in the GI tract, involving Toll-Like Receptor (TLRs) signaling pathways[70]. Indeed, helmintic based treatment with *Heligmosomoides polygyrus* could ameliorate colonic inflammation in murine model of IBDs, shifting the composition of intestinal bacteria[71]. Furthermore, Kuehbacher *et al*[72] analyzed the gut microbiota of 73 patients with IBD demonstrating that alteration of TM7 bacteria and the genetically determined antibiotic resistance of TM7 species in these patients, could be a relevant part of a more general alteration of bacterial microbiota in IBD patients, *i.e.*, as a promoter of inflammation at early stages[72]. Recent studies demonstrate that reductions in protective bacteria and increases in inflammatory bacteria are associated with pouch inflammation in patients with UC who underwent pouch surgery[73]. Moreover, the presence of *Ruminococcus gnavus*, *Bacteroides vulgatus* and *Clostridium perfringens* and the absence of *Blautia* and *Roseburia* in faecal samples of patients with UC before surgery is associated with a higher risk of pouchitis after ileal pouch-anal anastomosis[74]. Given the evidence for the role of intestinal microbiota in the profound inflammatory state in IBD, it might be speculated that luminal antigens should play a similar role in development of subclinical inflammation in IBS. Second, it has been reported that approximately 10% of IBS patients refer that their symptoms began following an episode of infectious diarrhea[75-77], the so-called post infectious IBS (PI-IBS), a condition with a clear infective trigger that may alter the normal intestinal microbiota. Third, there is a strong association between IBS and prior use of antibiotics[78]. Fourth, the intestinal microbiota strongly interacts with exogenous factors, in particular diet, which may directly or indirectly cause IBS symptoms[79]. Fifth, it is well known that alteration of gut microbiota could interfere with behavior and mood in humans[80,81]; on the other hand, psychiatric disorders such as anxiety and depression are highly present as co-morbidities in individuals with IBS[82]. An high *Firmicutes*: *Bacteroides* ratio is found in some IBS patients and appears to correlate with depression and anxiety[60], while in another study it has been reported that in IBS patients with clinically significant anxiety, daily treatment with a prebiotic galactooligosaccharide

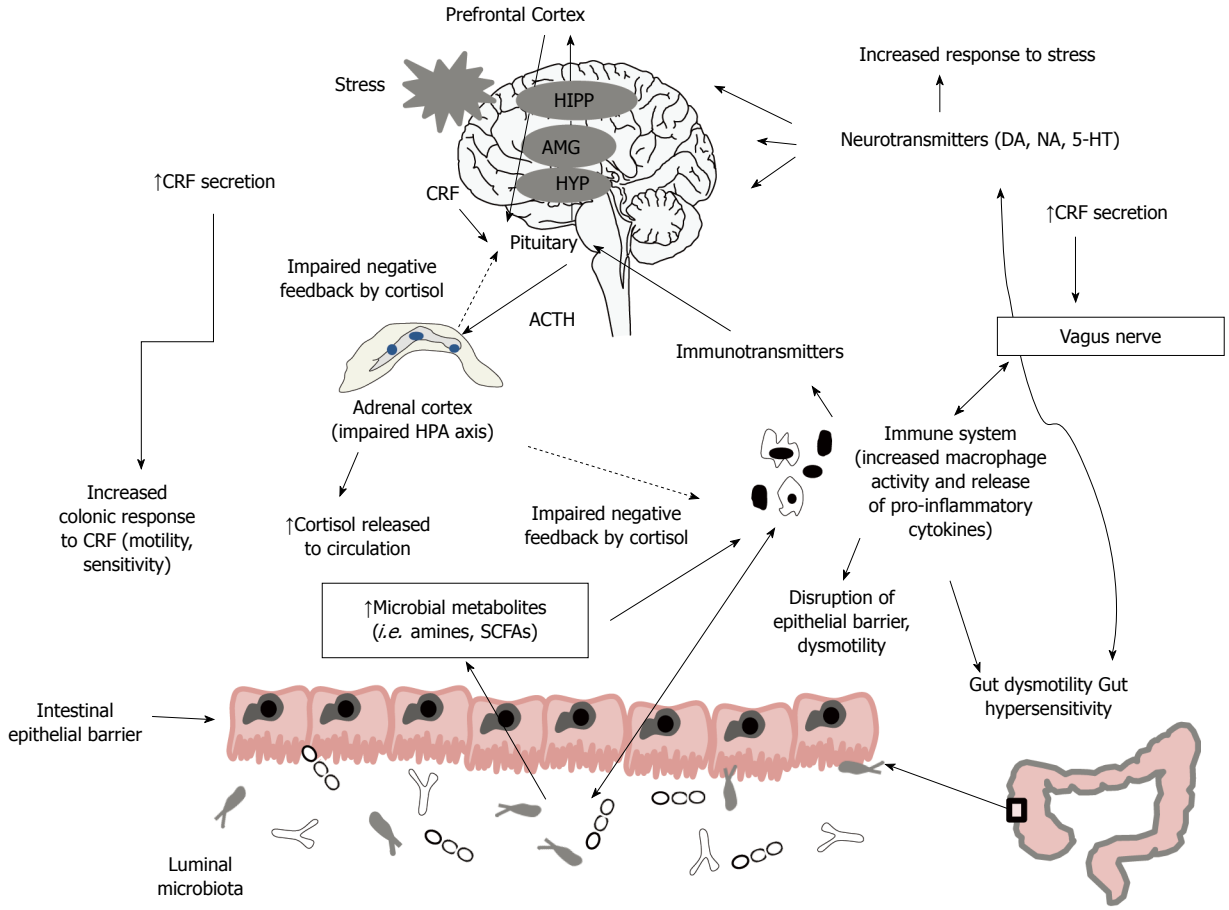


Figure 1 Gut microbiota influences the bidirectional communication between the enteric nervous system and the central nervous system, modulating gut development and several physiological functions, including intestinal motility, sensitivity, secretion and immunity. In irritable bowel syndrome (IBS), the altered composition and/or activity of microbiota may induce a disruption of this communication leading to activation of immune system and production of pro-inflammatory cytokines, production of microbial metabolites as short-chain fatty acids (SCFAs) that are toxic at high concentration, activation of hypothalamic-pituitary-adrenal (HPA) axis with increase of cortisol that feeds back to the pituitary, hypothalamus (HYP), amygdala (AMG), hippocampus (HIPP) and prefrontal cortex to shut off the HPA axis and increase of corticotropin releasing factor (CRF). These effects lead to alterations of intestinal motility and sensation, disruption of epithelial barrier and impaired production of neurotransmitters with an increased response to stressful events. On turn, stress may provoke systemic pro-inflammatory cytokines production that activates the HPA axis that signals to both enteric nervous system and the central nervous system and may alter microbiota composition.

mixture for 4 wk reduced anxiety scores and had a significant positive impact on quality of life[83]. Taken together, these factors support the notion that an imbalance in the intestinal microbiota composition may directly or indirectly interfere with the normal function of the microbiota-gut-brain axis, leading to the development of central and peripheral abnormalities of either intestinal motility and viscero-sensory network.

Microbiota and colo-intestinal motility

Although in the past decades the alterations of intestinal and colonic motility have been considered to play a major role in the development of symptoms in IBS patients[84-86], their influence has been reduced over time as intestinal manometry failed to identify any diagnostic abnormality in IBS patients[87,88]. The abnormal manometric findings found in IBS patients are heterogeneous and range from minimal changes to severe qualitative abnormalities. For example, the incidence of "clustered" contractions is similar in healthy subjects and IBS patients and greatly varies overtime[89,90], acute psychologic stress alters duodeno-jejunal motility in both healthy subjects and IBS patients[91] and more than half of IBS patients has an entirely normal 24-h manometry[92]. Nonetheless gut microbiota modulates gut motor function, which in turn can alter the intestinal microbiota composition. Indeed, not only germ-free animals show profound altered motility patterns that is reversed upon reconstitution with normal flora[93,94], but the influence of the intestinal microbiota on small intestinal myoelectric activity is species-dependent[95,96]. The modulatory effects of microbiota on colo-intestinal motility may be dependent on interaction of bacteria with the gastrointestinal tract through receptors on the epithelial cell such as TLRs and nucleotide oligomerization domain (NOD) receptors and, although bacterial translocation, defined as passage of viable bacteria to mesenteric lymph nodes or other organs, is minimal[97], secreted products of bacteria normally gain access to the submucosa to stimulate the mucosal immune system and to induce changes in intestinal

Table 1 Perturbations in the intestinal microbiotain irritable bowel syndrome patients

Ref.	Methods	N° of Pts.	Diagnostic criteria	Results in IBS in comparison with healthy subjects
Dlugosz *et al*[38]	qPCR (small bowel)	35	Rome Ⅱ	No differences
Balsari *et al*[39]				↓*Coliforms*
				↓*Lactobacilli*
				↓ *Bifidobacteria*
Si *et al*[40]	Culture	25	Rome Ⅱ	↓*Bifidobacteria*
				↑*Enterobacteriaceae*
Malinen *et al*[41]	qPCR	27	Rome Ⅱ	↑ *Veillonellain* C-IBS
				↓*Lactobacillus* in D-IBS
Mättö *et al*[42]	Culture/DGGE	26	Rome Ⅱ	↑ Aerobes
				Temporal instability
Swidsinski *et al*[43]	FISH	20	A-IBS	↑ Mucosal bacteria
			C-IBS	↑*Eubacteriumrectale*
			D-IBS	↑*Clostridium coccoides*
Maukonen *et al*[44]	PCR-DGGE	16	A-IBS	Higher instability of the bacterial population
			C-IBS	↑Clostridial groups
			D-IBS	
Kassinen *et al*[45]	16S ribosomal RNA gene cloning	24	Rome Ⅱ	Significant differences in several bacterial genera belonging to the genera *Coprococcus*, *Collinsella* and *Coprobacillus*
Lyra *et al*[46]	16S ribosomal RNA gene cloning	20	A-IBS	↑*Clostridium thermosuccinogenes* in D-IBS
			C-IBS	↑*Ruminococcus torques* in D-IBS
			D-IBS	↑*Ruminococcus bromii*-like in C-IBS
Krogius-Kurikka *et al*[47]	16S ribosomal RNA gene cloning	10	Rome Ⅱ	↑*Proteobacteria* and *Firmicutes* in D-IBS
				↓*Actinobacteria* and *Bacteroidetes* in D-IBS
Kerckhoffs *et al*[48]	FISH, PCR	41	A-IBS	↓*Bifidobacteria*
			C-IBS	
			D-IBS	
Carroll *et al*[49]	16S ribosomal RNA gene cloning	2	Rome Ⅲ	↑*Bacteroidetes*
				↑*Proteobacteria*
Salonen *et al*[50]				
Review				
Tana *et al*[51]	Culture	26	Rome Ⅱ	↑*Lactobacillus*
	qPCR			↑ *Veillonella*
Carroll *et al*[52]	qPCR	10	Rome Ⅲ	↓Aerobicbacteria
			D-IBS	↑*Lactobacillus*
Codling *et al*[53]	16S rRNA-DGGE	47	Rome Ⅱ	↓Bacterial richness
Ponnusamy *et al*[54]	rRNA-specific 16S rRNA-DGGE	54	Rome Ⅱ	Same total bacterial quantity
				Higher diversity of *Bacteroidetes* and *Lactobacilli*
	PCR			Lower diversity of *Bifidobacter* and *Clostridium coccoides*
Kerckhoffs *et al*[55]	16S rRNA-DGGE	37	Rome Ⅱ	↑*Pseudomonas aeruginosa*
	qPCR			
Rajilić-Stojanović *et al*[56]	16S rRNA	62	Rome Ⅱ	↑Ratio of the *Firmicutes* to *Bacteroidetes*
	qPCR			↑*Dorea*, *Ruminococcus*, *Clostridium spp*
				↓*Bacteroidetes*, *Bifidobacterium*, *Faecalibacterium spp*
Carroll *et al*[57]	16S rRNA	16	Rome Ⅲ D-IBS	Lower biodiversity of microbes
Carroll *et al*[58]	16S rRNA	23	D-IBS	↓Bacterial richness
				↑*Enterobacteriaceae*
				↑*Proteobacteria*
				↓*Faecalibacterium*
Parkes *et al*[59]	FISH	47	Rome Ⅲ	More total bacteria numbers
				↑*Bacteroides*, *Clostridia coccoides-Eubacteriumrectale*
Jeffery *et al*[60]	16S rRNA	37	Rome Ⅱ	A sub-group of IBS showed normal-like microbiota
				A sub-group of IBS showed large microbiota-wide changes with ↑*Firmicutes* and ↓*Bacteroidetes*
Chassard *et al*[61]	FISH/16S rDNA	14	Rome Ⅱ	↑*Enterobacteriaceae*
	Functional approaches		Rome Ⅲ	↑Suphate-reducing bacteria
			C-IBS	↓Lactic acid bacteria population (*bifidobacteria* and to a lesser extent, *lactobacilli*)
König *et al*[62]				
Review				
Sundin *et al*[63]	16s rRNA	19	Rome Ⅲ	↑*Bacteroidetes* in the PI-IBS group (13 patients)
				↑*Firmicutes* (more specifically *Clostridium* in IBS)

IBS: Irritable bowel syndrome; IBS-D: Diarrhea predominant IBS; IBS-C: Constipation predominant IBS; A-IBS: Alternate IBS; PI-IBS: Post-infectious-IBS; DGGE: Denaturing gradient gel electrophoresis; PCR: Polymerase chain reaction; FISH: Fluorescence in situ hybridization.

immunity and physiology. In this view, specific bacteria have been reported to induce significant changes in colo-intestinal motility. *Bacteroides thetaiotaomicron*, a common gut commensal in mice and humans, was found to alter expression of genes involved in smooth-muscle function and neurotransmission[98], soluble factors from the probiotic *Escherichia coli* Nissle 1917 enhance colonic contractility by direct stimulation of smooth muscle cells[99] and lipopolysaccharide (LPS) from a pathogenic strain of *Escherichia coli* impairs colonic muscle cell contractility[100]. Finally, exposure of human colonic muscle cells to *Lactobacillus rhamnosus GG* resulted in a significant dose- and time-dependent impairment of acetylcholine-stimulated contraction[101] and in the restoration of the intrinsic myogenic response in a model of LPS-induced alterations of muscle cells[102].

Microbiota and visceral sensitivity

The connections among gut and brain involve several integrated structures that transport the sensorial information from peripheral (gut) to the central (CNS) stations. Each stimulus from splanchnic visceral afferences (*i.e.*, distensive, chemical, thermal, osmotic) pass throughout the gut intrinsic innervation enteric nervous system (ENS), is received in the spinal dorsal horn and is transmitted to supraspinal sites, the final integration of the painful perception occurring in the cortex[103]. These complex communications connect to the extrinsic innervation [the autonomic nervous system (ANS)] which interacts with the HPA axis affecting the visceral sensory motor functions[104]. Vagal afferences activation plays a modulatory role on the spinal visceral pain pathway[105]. Visceral hypersensitivity may develop at several levels of the brain-gut axis, *i.e.*, ENS, spinal cord and supraspinal sites[106] and plays a key role in the pathogenesis of IBS, the main physiopathological alteration being represented by a reduced pain threshold to rectal distension[6,107,108]. Moreover, an altered rectal compliance[109,110] and/or an increased sensorial colonic response to intestinal lipid perfusion may be present[110-112]. An abnormal central processing of intestinal stimuli could be the cause of visceral hypersensitivity, as indicated by brain imaging studies that have shown an altered vascularization of certain areas of the CNS in response to intestinal distension in IBS patients, such as the anterior cingulated cortex, the amygdale and the dorso-medial frontal cortex[113]. At supraspinal sites, interactions with emotional or stressful stimuli can modulate the visceral sensitivity resulting to increased pain perception[114]. Recent data have shown that gut microbiota may directly modulate several systems involved in visceral hypersensitivity. Indeed, antibiotics-induced intestinal dysbiosis modified colonic pain-related and motor responses by upregulation of TLR4 and TLR7 and downregulation of the antinociceptive cannabinoid 1 and mu-opioid receptor in mice[115]. Moreover, manipulations of the commensal microbiota by stressful events was able to enhance the local expression of visceral sensory-related systems within the colon, as cannabinoid receptor type 2 and tryptophan hydroxylase isoform 1 (TPH1), leading to an excitatory modulation of visceral sensitivity[116]. Functional dysbiosis caused visceral hypersensitivity in patients affected by IBS (including PI-IBS), SIBO and chronic constipation by acting on local or systemic immune activation and altered intestinal fermentation[117], and gut commensals modulate the activations of intestinal sensory endings[118]. Probiotic strains directly modulate visceral perception of nociceptive stimuli. For example, *Lactobacillus reuteri* inhibited the autonomic response to colorectal distension in rats through effects on enteric nerves[119], modulated vagal afferents[120] and decreased the *in vitro* and *in vivo* activation of the transient receptor potential vanilloid 1 (TRPV1) channel which activity may mediate nociceptive signals[121].

Microbiota and autonomic nervous system, hypothalamic-pituitary-adrenal axis, enteric nervous system, mucosal barrier and neuro-immune signalling

The bidirectional communication network among central and peripheral regions includes the CNS, the spinal cord, the ANS, the ENS and the HPA axis. The autonomic system, *via* the sympathetic and parasympathetic branches, drives both afferent and efferent signals, while the HPA axis modulates the adaptive responses of the organism to stressors of any kind[122,123]. Stressful events, as well as elevated systemic pro-inflammatory cytokines, activate this system that, through secretion of the corticotropin-releasing factor (CRF) from the hypothalamus, stimulates adrenocorticotropic hormone secretion from pituitary gland that, in turn, leads to cortisol (an hormone that has a predominantly anti-inflammatory role on the systemic and GI immune system) release from the adrenal glands. Both neural and hormonal responses induce activation of several effector cells including immune cells, epithelial cells, enteric neurons, smooth muscle cells, interstitial cells of Cajal and enterochromaffin cells. Once activated, these systems exert a profound influence on gut microbiota composition both indirectly by modulating several GI functions (including motility, secretions, maintenance of intestinal permeability and integrity of immune response) and directly *via* signaling molecules[124]. On the other hand, these systems are under the influence of the gut microbiota composition that interacts not only locally with intestinal cells and ENS, but also directly with CNS through neuroendocrine and metabolic pathways[125-130].

Microbiota and pattern recognition receptors

The balance of innate signaling in the intestine is crucial to homeostasis and microbiota integrity is

essential in maintaining the neuro-immune function in the GI tract. The detection of pathogens by the host is obtained through the families of pattern recognition receptors (PRRs) that recognize conserved molecular structures known as pathogen-associated molecular patterns and induce production of innate effector molecules. These signaling receptors can be divided into three families: TLRs, retinoic acid inducible gene I-like receptors, and NOD-like receptors. The TLR family is the best characterized, and 13 receptors have been reported in mice and humans[131]. These PRRs play a key role in detecting pathogens and inducing the innate response. In particular, TLRs respond to specific microbial ligands and to harmful signals produced by the host during infection, initiating a downstream cascade that activates both innate and adaptive immunity. This cascade includes epithelial cell proliferation, secretion of IgA into the gut lumen and production of α-defensins, β-defensins and other bactericidal substances termed antimicrobial peptides (AMPs)[132-134]. Gut microbiota, through PRRs, can modulate the expression of genes involved in inflammatory and pain responses and the production of AMPs. In turn, the expression of PRRs affects the structure of gut microbiota in both health and disease. For example, alterations in the composition of the commensal microbiota as seen in dysbiosis may induce profound change in TLR4 and TLR7 expression, leading in alteration of colonic motility and sensitivity[115], while microbiota protects against ischemia/reperfusion-induced intestinal injury through NOD2 signaling[135]. In turn, TLR signaling maintains segregation between bacteria and the epithelium through production of AMPs[136-138], but deficiency in PRRs such as NOD2 and TLR5 can alter the gut microbiota composition in mice[139].

MODULATION OF THE INTESTINAL MICROBIOTA IN IBS

Probiotics

The term "probiotic" as originally defined by FAO/WHO refers to "live microorganisms that, when administered in adequate amounts, confer a health benefit on the host"[140]. However, in order to be beneficial, probiotic bacteria must be able to survive along the gastrointestinal tract, to resist to gastric acid, bile and pancreatic juice action and to demonstrate functional efficacy[141]. Several clinical trials that have investigated the therapeutic benefits of probiotics on either overall or specific IBS symptoms, but these studies are highly heterogeneous. Thus, although a number of meta-analysis or systemic reviews indicate that probiotics may be helpful in the treatment of IBS symptoms, their conclusions vary because of inadequate sample size, poor study design and use of various probiotic strains in the reviewed studies. This review has been focused on a number of meta-analysis and extensive reviews, published in the last 5 years, that have screened randomized and controlled trials (RCTs) conducted on IBS patients by using different probiotic strains.

Moayyedi *et al*[142] have examined 18 RCTs including 1650 patients with IBS and, although there was a significant heterogeneity among studies, a preference toward probiotic treatment was detected. Indeed, probiotic administration was significantly better than placebo at improving overall symptoms. No major difference was apparent between various types of probiotics used, with *Lactobacillus* (three trials, 140 patients)[143-145], *Bifidobacterium* (two trials, 422 patients)[146,147], *Streptococcus* (one trial, 54 patients)[148] and combinations of probiotics (four trials, 319 patients)[149-152], all showing a trend towards benefit, with no side effects reported. Moreover probiotics showed a statistically significant effect in improving individual symptoms such as pain, flatulence and bloating, but not urgency.

Lactic acid bacteria (LAB)[153], the most commonly used bacteria in probiotic preparations that include both typical and atypical species, covering *Lactobacilli, Bifidobacteria, Enterococci* and *Streptococci* have also been widely used in clinical trials. Analysis of 42 RCTs by Clarke *et al*[153] indicates that, despite a significant studies heterogeneity, 34 studies reported beneficial effects on at least one pre-specified endpoints or symptoms. Indeed, 20 of the 34 trials involving LAB reported improvement in abdominal pain/discomfort, 12 of the 24 trials reported improvement on abdominal bloating/distension, and benefits over placebo were reported in 13 of the 24 trials assessed using an index of defecatory function. Both *Bifidobacteria*[147,154-157] and *Lactobacilli*[144,145,154,158-165] were found effective in ameliorating IBS symptoms, while the beneficial effects of the multispecies LAB preparations, including the multistrain preparation VSL#3, were less evident[149,150,152,166-171].

A more strictly selected list of 16 RCTs was evaluated by Brenner *et al*[172]. These Authors found that 11 trials were inadequately blinded, of too short duration, of too small sample size, and/or lacked intention to treat analysis; they concluded that only two of the studies - those using *Bifidobacterium infantis 35624*[147-154] - showed significant improvements in abdominal pain/discomfort, bloating/distension and/or bowel movements, compared to the placebo. However, none of the studies provided quantifiable data about both tolerability and adverse events.

A systematic review by Hungin *et al*[173] has selected 19 studies and included 1807 patients. The majority of these studies tended to include all IBS subtypes, with only two studies focusing on C-IBS[156,157], and three studies focusing on D-IBS[149,174,175]. Although reported trials were extremely different for probiotic strains (above all *Lactobacilli* and *Bifidobacteria,* but also *Streptococcus salivaris*, *Saccharomyces boulardii*

and probiotic mixtures such as VSL#3), study design and definition of treatment response with a responder rates of 18%-80% in IBS group and 5%-50% in healthy controls, this review[149,156,157,173-188] detected several positive effects of probiotics on IBS symptoms and health-related quality of life. Probiotics had a favorable safety profile with no difference in adverse events among the 23 specific probiotic treatments and placebo[173].

Another systematic review with meta-analysis has been recently published by Didari *et al*[189]. They retrieved 11748 publication on probiotics, but only 15 were used for the meta-analysis, 9 of which were reviewed in deep. Again, the majority of the study was excluded for poor clinical design, lack of inclusion criteria, time limitation, and lack of a control group and use of probiotics in combination with herbal medications or prebiotics. The 15 trials used for the meta-analysis included 882 patients with D-IBS, C-IBS and A-IBS according to Rome Ⅱ, Rome Ⅲ, International Classification of Health Problems in Primary Care and World Organization of Family Doctors criteria[145,152,155,166,169,170,174-177,179,190-193]. Although the studies differ in term of bacterial strain used, probiotic dosage, duration of either treatment or follow-up and endpoints/outcome, probiotics were more effective than placebo in reducing abdominal pain after 8 and 10 wk of treatment; the effect was higher at week 8, suggesting a reduced effectiveness with long-term use. Furthermore, probiotics administration improved general IBS symptoms and the severity of symptoms was decreased, although not significantly in comparison with placebo. Few adverse events were reported in both probiotics and placebo groups. The same results have been reached by the extensive review of other 9 studies that, according to Rome Ⅱ or Rome Ⅲ criteria, included 324 patients with C-IBS, D-IBS and A-IBS[156,161,167,182,194-198].

As several trials have demonstrated the superiority of probiotics over placebo in controlling IBS symptoms (above all, *Lactobacilli* and *Bifidobacteria,* but also other species including bacterial mixtures such as VSL#3), there is now a general agreement on their efficacy as a therapy for this elusive syndrome (extensively discussed in Reference 112 and Table 2). However, given the controversies in IBS pathophysiology, patient heterogeneity, or lack of clear and reproducible evidence for gut microbiota abnormalities in patients with IBS, additional RCTs with appropriate end points and design are needed for determining to which extent (and in which IBS subpopulations) probiotics are a useful therapeutic strategy in the management of IBS symptoms.

Putative mechanisms of action of probiotics

As the pathogenesis of IBS is multifactorial, probiotics have been shown effective in modulating several mechanisms that might have a mechanistic role in IBS pathogenesis, including effects on composition of intestinal microbiota, gastrointestinal dysmotility, visceral hypersensitivity, altered gut epithelium and immune function, luminal metabolism, dysfunction of gut-brain axis, psychological distress.

Composition of intestinal microbiota in IBS

Only few trials on IBS patients have examined the composition of intestinal bacteria before and after the supplementation therapy, therefore the effect (if any) of probiotics administration on resident microbiota is not fully understood. However, it has been suggested that probiotics might reshape the intestinal eco-system generating an ecological milieu that is unfavorable for the growth of harmful species by increasing the number of *Lactobacilli* and *Bifidobacteria*[199] that will stabilize the intestinal microbiota[174,179]. As bacteria compete for nutrients and produce substances that directly affect the growth of other bacteria, probiotics can provide a two-fold protection against a broad range of pathogens, including certain forms of *Clostridium, Escherichia coli*, *Salmonella*, *Shigella* and *Pseudomonas*: aside from competing for the nutrients, probiotics also produce metabolites (*i.e.*, lactic acid, short chain fatty acids and hydrogen peroxide) and soluble factors (*i.e.*, bacteriocins as sakacin, lactocin, amylovorin, acidophilin, bifidin, bifidocin) that are inhibitory for some pathogenic bacteria[200,201]. Moreover, probiotics reduce the adherence of pathogenic bacteria by promoting the production of mucins[202-204].

Gastrointestinal dysmotility

From almost 4 decades, the assumption that IBS is characterized by impaired intestinal motor functions[205-207] and by gas retention[208] has driven the treatment of IBS to small bowel and colonic dysmotilities. In this conceptual framework probiotics are thought to directly affect the intestinal motility. Indeed, *Bifidobacterium Lactis* HN019 and *Bifidobacterium lactis* DN-173 010 decreased intestinal transit time in adult constipated patients[209] and a recent meta-analysis of randomized controlled trials have revealed that *Bifidobacterium lactis*, but not for *Lactobacillus casei* Shirota, reduced whole gut transit time and increased stool frequency in constipated patients[210]. Moreover, fermented dairy product containing *Bifidobacterium lactis* DN-173 010 reduced distension in association with acceleration of gastrointestinal transit and improvement of symptoms in IBS with constipation[156], daily *Bifidobacterium lactis* supplementation decreases WGTT and the frequency of functional GI symptoms in a dose-dependent manner in subjects suffering from irregular bowel movements and flatulence[185,211] and a combination of probiotics (*Bacillus subtilis* and *Streptococcus faecium*) was effective for relief of symptoms in patients with non-diarrheal-type IBS[212]. Probiotics are usefull also on D-IBS, as a probiotic mixture containg *Lactobacillus*

Table 2 Efficacy of probiotics in irritable bowel syndrome[112]

Authors' statement	Parameter scored	Conclusion	Grade of evidence for effect	Ref.
1	Global symptom assessment	Specific probiotics help relieve overall symptom burden in some patients with IBS	High	[147,149,150,152,156-157,169, 174,176-178]
2	Global symptom assessment	Specific probiotics help relieve overall symptom burden in some patients with C-IBS	Low	[147,156-157]
3	Global symptom assessment	Specific probiotics help relieve overall symptom burden in some patients with D-IBS	Moderate	[147,149,174-175]
4	Abdominal Pain	Specific probiotics help reduce abdominal pain in some patients with IBS	High	[145,147,149-150,152,155-157, 168-169,174-119]
5	Bloating/ distension	Specific probiotics help reduce bloating/distension in some patients with IBS	Moderate	[147,149-150,155-156,168-170, 174-177,179-183]
6	Flatus	Probiotics tested to date do not help reduce flatus in patients with IBS	Low	[147,149-150,156,168,174-175, 178-179,184]
7	Constipation	Specific probiotics may help reduce constipation in some patients with IBS	Low	[155-156,183,185]
8	Bowel habit	Specific probiotics help improve frequency and/or consistency of bowel movements in some patients with IBS	Moderate	[145,147,149-150,152,155-157, 168-170,174-180,182,185-186,188-189]
9	Diarrhoea	Probiotics tested to date do not reduce diarrhea in patients with IBS	Very low	[174,179,181-183,185,187]
12	Health-related quality of life	With specific probiotics, improvement of symptoms has been shown to lead to improvement in some aspects of health-related quality of life	Moderate	[147,150,152,155,169-170,174,176-177,179-180,183-184,186]

IBS: Irritable bowel syndrome; D-IBS: Diarrhea predominant IBS; C-IBS: Constipation predominant IBS.

acidophilus, *Lactobacillus plantarum*, *Lactobacillus rhamnosus*, *Bifidobacterium breve*, *Bifidobacterium lactis*, *Bifidobacterium longum*, and *Streptococcus thermophilus* has shown to be effective in controlling symptoms[174], but the effect on intestinal motility and transit time in this subtype of patients is less proven[149].

Visceral hypersensitivity

Mechanistic data provided mainly by animal studies highlight that probiotics exert a direct anti-nociceptive action through the modulation of bacterial metabolites production (*i.e.*, neurotransmitters, neuroactive substances including GABA and serotonin) on sensitive nerve endings in the gut mucosa[26-31,130], or by targeting specific central neurosensitive pathways. For instance, various strains of probiotics have been shown effective in reducing visceral nociceptive reflex responses in several experimental models of IBS[213,214] by directly modulating a number of central anti-nociceptive and pro-nociceptive pathways[32,214-216]. However, only few studies have investigated the effects of probiotics on visceral sensitivity in humans. Indeed, in healthy subjects a non-fermented milk product contained *Bifidobacterium animalis subsp Lactis*, *Streptococcus thermophiles*, *Lactobacillus bulgaricus* and *Lactococcus lactis subsp Lactis* was able to affect activity of brain regions that control central processing of emotion and sensation[81]; on the other hand, in IBS patients the multispecies probiotic Winclove 801 containing six bacterial species (*Bifidobacterium lactis* W52, *Lactobacillus casei* W56, *Lactobacillus salivarius* W57, *Lactococcus lactis* W58, *Lactobacillus acidophilus* NCFM and *Lactobacillus rhamnosus* W71) failed to ameliorate visceral hypersensitivity in comparison with placebo[217]. However, this limited information is insufficient to translate the animals findings to "hypersensitive" disease states involving disturbances in the gut/brain axis such as IBS.

Epithelial barrier/intestinal inflammation/immune activation

Despite IBS being considered as a "functional", non-organic disease, it is widely accepted that persistence of IBS-like symptoms occurs in a small percentage of patients after a documented episode of intestinal bacterial or viral infection. The fact that IBS could be a state of "low grade inflammation" is gaining acceptance based on the fact that animal and epidemiological studies indicate that IBS is characterized by an increased intestinal permeability, a biomarker of impaired epithelial barrier function. Further on, an increased activity of innate immune (mainly represented by accumulation of mast cells and antigen-presenting cells such as dendritic cells and macrophages) and an activated adaptive immune response in the intestinal mucosa and in blood, including an increased levels of systemic or mucosal cytokines, such as tumor necrosis factor-α (TNF-α), interleukin (IL)-1β, IL-6, IL-8, IL-12, associated to a decrease of anti-inflammatory cytokines (*i.e.*, IL-10) has been described in IBS[218-220]. Probiotics appear effective in reducing the inflammatory components of IBS. Thus, probiotics administered either as a single strain or in combination, maintain the integrity of intestinal epithelial barrier in inflammatory models[221-225]

and in humans[161,175], modulate both innate and adaptive immunity[226,227], restore the imbalanced ratio between pro-inflammatory and anti-inflammatory cytokines (*i.e.*, IL-10/IL-12)[154] and decrease the levels of pro-inflammatory cytokine as TNF-α and IFN-γ[228-230]. Human studies have demonstrated that a probiotic combination containing *Lactobacillus gasseri* KS-13, *Bifidobacterium bifidum* G9-1 and *Bifidobacterium longum* MM2 175 induced a less inflammatory cytokine profile in older adults[231], *Saccharomyces boulardii* supplementation induced a significant decrease in blood and tissue levels of proinflammatory cytokines IL-8 and TNF-α and an increase in anti-inflammatory IL-10 levels, as well as an increase in the tissue IL-10/IL-12 ratio ameliorating the quality of life of D-IBS[232] and the symptomatic response induced by *Bifidobacterium infantis* 35624 in IBS was associated with normalization of the ratio of an anti-inflammatory to a proinflammatory cytokine[154].

Luminal metabolism

The gut microbiota produces several metabolites including short-chain fatty acids (SCFAs), neurotransmitters, metabolites of bile acids, and cytokines that target enteric cells *via* specific receptors and signal to the brain *via* afferent vagal or endocrine pathways. SCFAs like acetate, propionate and butyrate derive from the fermentation of undigested and unabsorbed carbohydrates, *i.e.*, resistant starches and dietary fibers and are used as a fuel by the colonic microbiota. While propionate is largely taken up by the liver and acetate enters the systemic circulation to be metabolized by the peripheral tissues, butyrate works as major energy source for colonocytes. Butyrate modulates epithelial proliferation, apoptosis and cell differentiation in the large intestine[233], inhibits nuclear factor kappa B activation[234] and stimulates intestinal mucus production[235], thereby supporting the mucosal barrier function. Furthermore, butyrate plays a major role in inflammation-related repairs[236], offers protection against colonic carcinogenesis in rats[237] while in humans improves visceral perception[238], suggesting a possible beneficial effect in "hypersensitive" disorders such as IBS.

In contrast acetic and propionic acid-producing bacteria (*i.e.*, *Veionella* and *Lactobacilli* spp) have been reported in IBS patients[51] leading to enhanced production of SCFAs that are toxic at high concentrations and stimulate 5-HT release from the intestinal nerve endings[239]. As 5-HT initiates high-amplitude colonic contractions, accelerates intestinal transit and increases colonic motility, *i.e.*, all possible features of IBS, it might be speculated that these fermentation products play a role in IBS symptoms. However, fecal concentrations of SCFAs in IBS patients differ only slightly in comparison to healthy subjects[51,240] and IBS symptoms show only a slight correlation with SCFAs fecal concentrations. Moreover, studies that have examined the effect of probiotics supplementation on fecal SCFAs in humans have provided conflicting results. Thus, the probiotic *Lactobacillus paracasei* DG modulated fecal butyrate concentration in healthy subjects[241], while bifidobacteria-fermented milk increased fecal butyrate, propionate and short-chain fatty acid concentrations but ameliorated symptoms in patients affects by UC[242]. Finally, the *Bifidobacterium lactis* Bb12 increased the fecal level of acetate and lactate in preterm infants[243].

However studies demonstrating a strong correlation between the assumption of probiotics and the level of fecal SCFAs in IBS patients are lacking.

Dysfunction of the brain-gut axis and psychological distress

There are evidence that the gut microbiota modulates the CNS *via* the ENS, the ANS, the HPA axis and *vice versa*[124,213]: a deep correlation that influences both brain development and responses, intestinal motility, sensitivity, secretions and immunity. An intestinal dysbiosis may lead to alteration of brain-gut axis and probiotics may restore the normal interaction among all components of this pathway. Several beneficial actions of probiotics on brain-gut axis including the maintenance of intestinal barrier that "protects" the ENS, the effects of certain probiotics and their products on intestinal sensory and motor nerves of ENS, ANS and on several receptors (*i.e.*, opioid and cannabinoid receptors) and the modulation of cytokines profile leading to an anti-inflammatory action have been mentioned earlier in this review. Importantly, the HPA axis is a neuroendocrine system essential for the normal stress response to challenges in vertebrates which integrity is important in the pathogenesis of IBS[244,245]. There is evidence that certain probiotics directly influence the exaggerated HPA axis response observed in several experimental models of IBS. Indeed, *Bifidobacterium animalis subsp lactis* BB-12® and *Propionibacterium jensenii* 702 induced activation of neonatal stress pathways and an imbalance in gut microflora but also improved the immune environment of stressed animals and protected against stress-induced disturbances in adult gut microflora[246], while probiotic preparation containing live *Lactobacillus rhamnosus* strain R0011 and *Lactobacillus helveticus* strain R0052 improved gut dysfunction induced by maternal separation, at least in part by normalisation of HPA axis activity[247]. Moreover, probiotics alleviate anxiety- and depression-related behavior that are a typical feature of IBS, as *Lactobacillus rhamnosus* (JB-1) reduced the stress-induced elevation in corticosterone in stressed animals *via* modulation of GABA receptors implicated in anxiety behavior[216], *Bifidobacterium longum* 1714 had a positive impact on cognition in stressed mice[248] and the probiotic mixture VSL#3 induced an increase in brain-derived

neurotrophic factor (BDNF) expression and reduced age-related alterations in the hippocampus in a murine model of deterioration in cognitive functions[249].

Probiotics and gene expression: a new mechanism of action?

Finally, probiotics administration might result in a central (*i.e.*, CNS) and peripheral (*i.e.*, intestinal) reprogramming of genes. In the maternal separation (MS) rat model of IBS, *Bifidobacterium breve* 6330 influenced hippocampal BDNF gene expression[250], while the probiotic mixture VSL#3 downregulated the colonic expression of several genes (*i.e.*, TPH1, CCL2, CCR2, NOS3, NTRK1, BDKRB1, IL10, TNFRSF1B and TRPV4) encoding for proteins involved in nociception[214]; maternal probiotic intervention also increased the gene expression of ileal mucin-2 (MUC2)[230], indicating that the mechanism of action of probiotics is deeper and more complex than previously thought.

PREBIOTICS

The Food and Agriculture Organization of the United Nations (FAO) defines prebiotic as "a nonviable food component that confers a health benefit on the host associated with modulation of the microbiota" [251]. They represent an alternative strategy for reprogramming the gut microbiota by providing regular doses of a specific substrate engineered to be readily metabolized by specific desirable bacteria, thereby encouraging their growth in contrast to the development of harmful microbial species. Also known as "functional" foods[252], they escape absorption in the small bowel and enter the colon where they provide for nutrients for specific bacteria, mainly *bifidobacteria* and *lactobacilli*. Several prebiotics belong to the group of non-digestible carbohydrates: monosaccharides (*i.e.*, fructose), disaccharides (*i.e.*, lactose), oligosaccharides [(*i.e.*, fructo-oligosaccharides (FOS) and galacto-oligosaccharides (GOS)], and polyols (*e.g.*, sorbitol), the so-called Fermentable Oligo- Di- and Mono-saccharides And Polyols or FODMAPs, the prototype of which is inulin, a non-digestible carbohydrate naturally present in a large variety of plants that, when enzymatically hydrolyzed, produces oligofructose[252]. All of them occur in many fruits, cereals, vegetables and in human milk, which contains more than 1000 oligosaccharides[253]. Furthermore, long-chain polyunsaturated fatty acids have been tested as active prebiotics[254].

Experimental data[255,256] and human studies have shown a beneficial effect of prebiotic supplementation in different pathological conditions, including infections[254], allergies[257,258], pregnancy-related disorders[259-260], metabolic disorders[261,262], hepatic and gastrointestinal diseases including cirrhosis[263], IBD[264] and chronic constipation[265]. However, few studies have evaluated the efficacy of prebiotics in IBS and existing results are conflicting. Two trials, using oligofructose in one case[266] and fructo-oligosaccharides in the other[267], failed to confirm any beneficial effects of prebiotics, while two other studies have demonstrated symptoms improvement, with FOS ameliorating symptoms[268] and GOS lowering flatulence and bloating while also improving the anxiety score[83]. The clinical response may be dependent on the prebiotic type and dose, taking into account that low doses may be ineffective and high doses may stimulate colonic gas production. Indeed, some reports indicate that prebiotics may exacerbate IBS symptoms. Thus, lactulose and bran, that are successfully used for constipation, tend to produce substantial amounts of gas and abdominal pain and may aggravate symptoms of IBS[269-271]. Although fructose and sorbitol mixtures produce a modest increase in stool weight, they often increase flatulence and bloating in both healthy volunteers and IBS patients[272,273]. Ong *et al*[274] have recently shown that a diet rich in FODMAPs increases abdominal pain, bloating and flatulence in IBS patients, focusing the attention on the necessity of restricting fermentable carbohydrates in these patients[275-277]. Finally, fructose, sorbitol and a range of poorly absorbed polyhydric alcohols enter the gut where they retain a substantial amount of water causing unwanted diarrhea. However, low FODMAP diet recommended for reduction of IBS symptoms will have adverse effects on colonic luminal microenvironment and microbiota in healthy populations, reducing the absolute and relative bacterial abundance and diversity[278].

SYNBIOTICS

An important safety feature of probiotics is that they have a short lifespan within the gut and need repeated doses to keep a constant level. Indeed, an alternative strategy to maintain constant levels of beneficial bacteria within the gut is the contemporary administration of probiotic strains and prebiotics, the so-called synbiotic therapy. Few open label trials[64,279] and PCT studies have evaluated the efficacy of synbiotics in both functional pain[280] and IBS, all demonstrating a superiority of the probiotic/prebiotic combinations *vs* placebo[281-283]. Although the concept of combining prebiotic with probiotic is theoretically attractive, the limited experience and the poor quality of published studies do not allow any recommendation on their use in IBS.

ANTIBIOTICS

The alteration in the gut microbiota composition is increasingly considered to be a relevant pathogenetic factor in IBS, leading to the use of antibiotics as a treatment for this multifactorial syndrome. In addition, a SIBO may be relevant to at least a subset of IBS patients, thus justifying an antimicrobial approach.

However, it should be considered that lactose hydrogen breath test, routinely used as a surrogate marker for SIBO, has a low sensitivity and specificity[284-286]. The first antibiotic investigated in a clinical trial was neomycin, which is not adsorbed in the gut. Pimentel *et al*[285] have demonstrated that neomycin caused a 50% improvement in global IBS symptoms compared to placebo-treated patients, but also induced a rapid clinical resistance. Other broad-spectrum antibiotics reducing bacterial overgrowth have been challenged in the treatment of IBS, including tetracycline, amoxicillin clavulanate, metronidazole and fluoroquinolones such as norfloxacin[287,288]; however, these drugs are absorbable causing local and systemic side effects and their use in IBS patients is not recommended. The semisynthetic, antibacterial, rifamycin-derivative rifaximin has virtually no systemic absorption, is effective in improving IBS symptoms with low bacterial resistance profile and has a favorable side-effects profile.Since the first trial published almost a decade ago[289], several trials have shown that rifaximin is an effective treatment for IBS. The strongest evidence comes from two large-scale, multicenter studies: TARGET 1 and TARGET 2[290], which included a total of 1260 patient affected by IBS without constipation. In these phase 3, double-blind, placebo-controlled trials, significantly more patients in the rifaximin group than in the placebo group had adequate relief of global IBS symptoms during the first 4 wk of treatment (40.7% *vs* 31.7% respectively in the two studies combined). In addiction, more patients in the rifaximin group than in the placebo group had adequate relief of bloating, abdominal pain and stool consistency (40.2% *vs* 30.2% respectively in the two studies combined). The incidence of adverse events was similar. In general, available metanalysis tend to show a beneficial profile of rifaximin *vs* placebo on global IBS symptoms and bloating[291]. Furthermore, a pooled analysis by Schoenfeld *et al*[292] has confirmed the safety and tolerability profile of rifaximin in comparison with placebo, with similar incidence of drug-related adverse events. In conclusion, rifaximin is the only antibiotic which can play a role in the treatment of IBS, but limitations should be considered: (1) it is effective in less than 50% of patients; (2) large phase Ⅲ study has included only patients without constipation, indeed studies on C-IBS are needed; (3) its long-term effects have not been investigated; and (4) the effect of rifaximin on gut microbiota composition is essentially unknown.

FECAL TRANSPLANTATION IN IBS: A NEW LIFE FOR AN OLD TREATMENT?

Fecal microbiota transplant (FMT) is an interesting strategy proposed for a large spectrum of diseases[293], including recurrent *Clostridium Difficile* infection (CDI) resistant to conventional antibiotic therapies (that represents the main gastroenterological indication for FMT), chronic constipation, IBD, recurrent metabolic syndrome, multiple sclerosis, autism and chronic fatigue syndrome. A systematic review of 325 cases of FMT for CDI suggested a lower success rate for upper gut administration (76%), as compared with colonoscopy (89%) and enema (95%) administration[294]. Moreover, a large case series of CDI patients has showed rapid response and a cure rate of nearly 90%, without significant adverse event rate[295]. Colonic infusion of donor human intestinal flora can reverse UC in a small series of selected patients, determining endoscopic and histological remission[296]. This report was followed by a number of small studies of FMT in children and adults with UC, CD, and pouchitis with mixed results[297-302]. It has been recently demonstrated that sensitivity to colonic distension of IBS patients can be transferred to rats by the fecal microbiota transplant[303].

From a pure technical point of view, FMT is an easy technique that requires a healthy donor (usually a patient's family member or an anonymous donor), with no risk factors for transmissible diseases or any issues that may alter the cellular composition, particularly prior antibiotic use. The FMT Working Group have recently published guidelines for FMT donor selection criteria and screening tests[304]. The steps for an adequate treatment of the fecal material include dilution in saline solutions, homogenization and filtration, while the route of administration can be naso-duodenal, transcolonoscopic or enema based. Naso-duodenal administration is the method patients favour the lest. Colonoscopy allows direct assessment of the colonic mucosa for the assessment of disease severity and exclusion of coexistent pathology. Enema administration is effective, cheap and safe and carries less procedural or institutional admission costs.

To date, only anecdotal data have been reported about the efficacy of FMT for IBS treatment, results being far conclusive. The first case series on FMT in IBS has been published in 1989 by Borody *et al*[305] demonstrating approximately a 50% of relief in symptoms of IBS after FMT; however, the study also included IBD and CDI patients and did not show any distinction within the results between these different diseases. Since that publication, the lead Author has treated with FMT more than 300 D-IBS patients whose symptoms had failed to respond to conventional therapies[306]. Other preliminary studies indicate a beneficial effect in patients with chronic constipation (*i.e.*, relief in defecation and reduction of bloating)[307], but these data need confirmation in rigorous clinical trials. Pinn *et al*[308] have reported promising results using FMT in IBS patients with refractory disease: 70% of the patients achieving resolution or improvement of the symptoms. Taken together, these data indicate that FMT is a promising treatment option for serious and recurrent CDI[309,310]. However, many questions

should be answered before it may be recommended as routine standard treatment of IBS[311] and randomized, double-blinded, placebo-controlled trials are required.

CONCLUSION

Evidence regarding the manipulation of gut microbiota composition as an effective cure for IBS is increasing and, to date, probiotic supplementation and antimicrobial therapy with not absorbable antibiotics are promising treatment. However, all meta-analysis point out to the weakness of the majority of the studies and recommend additional RCT trials to confirm the positive findings reported by small studies. Specifically, additional information on type of probiotic, doses, side effects and time of administration are required, as well as data on patient subtypes. Prebiotics are often burdened by unwanted side effects and synbiotics lack of sufficient numbers of clinical trials on their efficacy and safeness. FMT might be a reasonable option for treating IBS, as it is an inexpensive and easy treatment, but standardized controlled trials are necessary to ascertain which patients are eligible, the most effective regiment as well as the most acceptable method of administration of the donor's microbiota. For these therapeutic options, a careful selection of patients, a close monitoring of clinical data and side effects and a long-term follow-up are necessary, as well as more information on modification of host microbiota composition.

REFERENCES

1 **Thompson WG**, Longstreth GF, Drossman DA, Heaton KW, Irvine EJ, Müller-Lissner SA. Functional bowel disorders and functional abdominal pain. *Gut* 1999; **45** Suppl 2: II43-II47 [PMID: 10457044]

2 **Longstreth GF**, Thompson WG, Chey WD, Houghton LA, Mearin F, Spiller RC. Functional bowel disorders. *Gastroenterology* 2006; **130**: 1480-1491 [PMID: 16678561 DOI: 10.1136/gut.45.2008.ii43]

3 **Lovell RM**, Ford AC. Global prevalence of and risk factors for irritable bowel syndrome: a meta-analysis. *Clin Gastroenterol Hepatol* 2012; **10**: 712-721.e4 [PMID: 22426087 DOI: 10.1016/j.cgh.2012.02.029]

4 **Simrén M**, Svedlund J, Posserud I, Björnsson ES, Abrahamsson H. Health-related quality of life in patients attending a gastroenterology outpatient clinic: functional disorders versus organic diseases. *Clin Gastroenterol Hepatol* 2006; **4**: 187-195 [PMID: 16469679 DOI: 10.1016/S1542-3565(05)00981-X]

5 **Mayer EA**, Gebhart GF. Basic and clinical aspects of visceral hyperalgesia. *Gastroenterology* 1994; **107**: 271-293 [PMID: 8020671]

6 **Distrutti E**, Salvioli B, Azpiroz F, Malagelada JR. Rectal function and bowel habit in irritable bowel syndrome. *Am J Gastroenterol* 2004; **99**: 131-137 [PMID: 14687154]

7 **De Giorgio R**, Barbara G. Is irritable bowel syndrome an inflammatory disorder? *Curr Gastroenterol Rep* 2008; **10**: 385-390 [PMID: 18627650]

8 **Kiank C**, Taché Y, Larauche M. Stress-related modulation of inflammation in experimental models of bowel disease and post-infectious irritable bowel syndrome: role of corticotropin-releasing factor receptors. *Brain Behav Immun* 2010; **24**: 41-48 [PMID: 19698778 DOI: 10.1016/j.bbi.2009.08.006]

9 **Camilleri M**, Lasch K, Zhou W. Irritable bowel syndrome: methods, mechanisms, and pathophysiology. The confluence of increased permeability, inflammation, and pain in irritable bowel syndrome. *Am J Physiol Gastrointest Liver Physiol* 2012; **303**: G775-G785 [PMID: 22837345 DOI: 10.1152/ajpgi.00155.2012]

10 **Savage DC**. Microbial ecology of the gastrointestinal tract. *Annu Rev Microbiol* 1977; **31**: 107-133 [PMID: 334036]

11 **Qin J**, Li R, Raes J, Arumugam M, Burgdorf KS, Manichanh C, Nielsen T, Pons N, Levenez F, Yamada T, Mende DR, Li J, Xu J, Li S, Li D, Cao J, Wang B, Liang H, Zheng H, Xie Y, Tap J, Lepage P, Bertalan M, Batto JM, Hansen T, Le Paslier D, Linneberg A, Nielsen HB, Pelletier E, Renault P, Sicheritz-Ponten T, Turner K, Zhu H, Yu C, Li S, Jian M, Zhou Y, Li Y, Zhang X, Li S, Qin N, Yang H, Wang J, Brunak S, Doré J, Guarner F, Kristiansen K, Pedersen O, Parkhill J, Weissenbach J, Bork P, Ehrlich SD, Wang J. A human gut microbial gene catalogue established by metagenomic sequencing. *Nature* 2010; **464**: 59-65 [PMID: 20203603 DOI: 10.1038/nature08821]

12 **International Human Genome Sequencing Consortium**. Finishing the euchromatic sequence of the human genome. *Nature* 2004; **431**: 931-945 [PMID: 15496913 DOI: 10.1038/nature03001]

13 **Murgas Torrazza R**, Neu J. The developing intestinal microbiome and its relationship to health and disease in the neonate. *J Perinatol* 2011; **31** Suppl 1: S29-S34 [PMID: 21448201 DOI: 10.1038/jp.2010.172]

14 **Ley RE**, Turnbaugh PJ, Klein S, Gordon JI. Microbial ecology: human gut microbes associated with obesity. *Nature* 2006; **444**: 1022-1023 [PMID: 17183309 DOI: 10.1038/4441022a]

15 **Turnbaugh PJ**, Ley RE, Mahowald MA, Magrini V, Mardis ER, Gordon JI. An obesity-associated gut microbiome with increased capacity for energy harvest. *Nature* 2006; **444**: 1027-1031 [PMID: 17183312 DOI: 10.1038/nature05414]

16 **Round JL**, Lee SM, Li J, Tran G, Jabri B, Chatila TA, Mazmanian SK. The Toll-like receptor 2 pathway establishes colonization by a commensal of the human microbiota. *Science* 2011; **332**: 974-977 [PMID: 21512004 DOI: 10.1126/science.1206095]

17 **Ivanov II**, Atarashi K, Manel N, Brodie EL, Shima T, Karaoz U, Wei D, Goldfarb KC, Santee CA, Lynch SV, Tanoue T, Imaoka A, Itoh K, Takeda K, Umesaki Y, Honda K, Littman DR. Induction of intestinal Th17 cells by segmented filamentous bacteria. *Cell* 2009; **139**: 485-498 [PMID: 19836068 DOI: 10.1016/j.cell.2009.09.033]

18 **Ivanov II**, Frutos Rde L, Manel N, Yoshinaga K, Rifkin DB, Sartor RB, Finlay BB, Littman DR. Specific microbiota direct the differentiation of IL-17-producing T-helper cells in the mucosa of the small intestine. *Cell Host Microbe* 2008; **4**: 337-349 [PMID: 18854238 DOI: 10.1016/j.chom.2008.09.009]

19 **Candela M**, Perna F, Carnevali P, Vitali B, Ciati R, Gionchetti P, Rizzello F, Campieri M, Brigidi P. Interaction of probiotic Lactobacillus and Bifidobacterium strains with human intestinal epithelial cells: adhesion properties, competition against enteropathogens and modulation of IL-8 production. *Int J Food Microbiol* 2008; **125**: 286-292 [PMID: 18524406 DOI: 10.1016/j.ijfoodmicro.2008.04.012]

20 **Fukuda S**, Toh H, Hase K, Oshima K, Nakanishi Y, Yoshimura K, Tobe T, Clarke JM, Topping DL, Suzuki T, Taylor TD, Itoh K, Kikuchi J, Morita H, Hattori M, Ohno H. Bifidobacteria can protect from enteropathogenic infection through production of acetate. *Nature* 2011; **469**: 543-547 [PMID: 21270894 DOI: 10.1038/nature09646]

21 **Wikoff WR**, Anfora AT, Liu J, Schultz PG, Lesley SA, Peters EC, Siuzdak G. Metabolomics analysis reveals large effects of gut microflora on mammalian blood metabolites. *Proc Natl Acad Sci USA* 2009; **106**: 3698-3703 [PMID: 19234110 DOI: 10.1073/pnas.0812874106]

22 **Antunes LC**, Han J, Ferreira RB, Lolić P, Borchers CH, Finlay BB. Effect of antibiotic treatment on the intestinal metabolome. *Antimicrob Agents Chemother* 2011; **55**: 1494-1503 [PMID: 21282433 DOI: 10.1128/AAC.01664-10]

23 **Tremaroli V**, Bäckhed F. Functional interactions between the gut microbiota and host metabolism. *Nature* 2012; **489**: 242-249

[PMID: 22972297 DOI: 10.1002/jbmr.1588]
24 **Nicholson JK**, Holmes E, Kinross J, Burcelin R, Gibson G, Jia W, Pettersson S. Host-gut microbiota metabolic interactions. *Science* 2012; **336**: 1262-1267 [PMID: 22674330 DOI: 10.1126/science.1223813]
25 **Marcobal A**, Kashyap PC, Nelson TA, Aronov PA, Donia MS, Spormann A, Fischbach MA, Sonnenburg JL. A metabolomic view of how the human gut microbiota impacts the host metabolome using humanized and gnotobiotic mice. *ISME J* 2013; **7**: 1933-1943 [PMID: 23739052]
26 **Matsumoto M**, Kibe R, Ooga T, Aiba Y, Sawaki E, Koga Y, Benno Y. Cerebral low-molecular metabolites influenced by intestinal microbiota: a pilot study. *Front Syst Neurosci* 2013; **7**: 9 [PMID: 23630473 DOI: 10.3389/fnsys.2013.00009]
27 **Cryan JF**, Dinan TG. Mind-altering microorganisms: the impact of the gut microbiota on brain and behaviour. *Nat Rev Neurosci* 2012; **13**: 701-712 [PMID: 22968153 DOI: 10.1038/nrn3346]
28 **Lyte M**. Probiotics function mechanistically as delivery vehicles for neuroactive compounds: Microbial endocrinology in the design and use of probiotics. *Bioessays* 2011; **33**: 574-581 [PMID: 21732396 DOI: 10.1002/bies.201100024]
29 **Forsythe P**, Kunze WA. Voices from within: gut microbes and the CNS. *Cell Mol Life Sci* 2013; **70**: 55-69 [PMID: 22638926]
30 **Asano Y**, Hiramoto T, Nishino R, Aiba Y, Kimura T, Yoshihara K, Koga Y, Sudo N. Critical role of gut microbiota in the production of biologically active, free catecholamines in the gut lumen of mice. *Am J Physiol Gastrointest Liver Physiol* 2012; **303**: G1288-G1295 [PMID: 23064760 DOI: 10.1152/ajpgi.00341.2012]
31 **Barrett E**, Ross RP, O'Toole PW, Fitzgerald GF, Stanton C. γ-Aminobutyric acid production by culturable bacteria from the human intestine. *J Appl Microbiol* 2012; **113**: 411-417 [PMID: 22612585 DOI: 10.1111/j.1365-2672.2012.05344.x]
32 **Rousseaux C**, Thuru X, Gelot A, Barnich N, Neut C, Dubuquoy L, Dubuquoy C, Merour E, Geboes K, Chamaillard M, Ouwehand A, Leyer G, Carcano D, Colombel JF, Ardid D, Desreumaux P. Lactobacillus acidophilus modulates intestinal pain and induces opioid and cannabinoid receptors. *Nat Med* 2007; **13**: 35-37 [PMID: 17159985 DOI: 10.1038/nm1521]
33 **Medani M**, Collins D, Docherty NG, Baird AW, O'Connell PR, Winter DC. Emerging role of hydrogen sulfide in colonic physiology and pathophysiology. *Inflamm Bowel Dis* 2011; **17**: 1620-1625 [PMID: 21674719 DOI: 10.1002/ibd.21528]
34 **Schemann M**, Grundy D. Role of hydrogen sulfide in visceral nociception. *Gut* 2009; **58**: 744-747 [PMID: 19433593 DOI: 10.1136/gut.2008.167858]
35 **Distrutti E**. Hydrogen sulphide and pain. *Inflamm Allergy Drug Targets* 2011; **10**: 123-132 [PMID: 21275898 DOI: 10.2174/187152811794776240]
36 **Distrutti E**, Cipriani S, Renga B, Mencarelli A, Migliorati M, Cianetti S, Fiorucci S. Hydrogen sulphide induces micro opioid receptor-dependent analgesia in a rodent model of visceral pain. *Mol Pain* 2010; **6**: 36 [PMID: 20540729 DOI: 10.1186/1744-8069-6-36]
37 **Distrutti E**, Sediari L, Mencarelli A, Renga B, Orlandi S, Antonelli E, Roviezzo F, Morelli A, Cirino G, Wallace JL, Fiorucci S. Evidence that hydrogen sulfide exerts antinociceptive effects in the gastrointestinal tract by activating KATP channels. *J Pharmacol Exp Ther* 2006; **316**: 325-335 [PMID: 16192316 DOI: 10.1124/jpet.105.091595]
38 **Dlugosz A**, Winckler B, Lundin E, Zakikhany K, Sandström G, Ye W, Engstrand L, Lindberg G. No difference in small bowel microbiota between patients with irritable bowel syndrome and healthy controls. *Sci Rep* 2015; **5**: 8508 [PMID: 25687743 DOI: 10.1038/srep08508]
39 **Balsari A**, Ceccarelli A, Dubini F, Fesce E, Poli G. The fecal microbial population in the irritable bowel syndrome. *Microbiologica* 1982; **5**: 185-194 [PMID: 7121297]
40 **Si JM**, Yu YC, Fan YJ, Chen SJ. Intestinal microecology and quality of life in irritable bowel syndrome patients. *World J Gastroenterol* 2004; **10**: 1802-1805 [PMID: 15188510 DOI: 10.3748/wjg.v10.i12.1802]
41 **Malinen E**, Rinttilä T, Kajander K, Mättö J, Kassinen A, Krogius L, Saarela M, Korpela R, Palva A. Analysis of the fecal microbiota of irritable bowel syndrome patients and healthy controls with real-time PCR. *Am J Gastroenterol* 2005; **100**: 373-382 [PMID: 15667495 DOI: 10.1111/j.1572-0241.2005.40312.x]
42 **Mättö J**, Maunuksela L, Kajander K, Palva A, Korpela R, Kassinen A, Saarela M. Composition and temporal stability of gastrointestinal microbiota in irritable bowel syndrome--a longitudinal study in IBS and control subjects. *FEMS Immunol Med Microbiol* 2005; **43**: 213-222 [PMID: 15747442]
43 **Swidsinski A**, Weber J, Loening-Baucke V, Hale LP, Lochs H. Spatial organization and composition of the mucosal flora in patients with inflammatory bowel disease. *J Clin Microbiol* 2005; **43**: 3380-3389 [PMID: 16000463 DOI: 10.1128/JCM.43.7.3380-3389.2005]
44 **Maukonen J**, Satokari R, Mättö J, Söderlund H, Mattila-Sandholm T, Saarela M. Prevalence and temporal stability of selected clostridial groups in irritable bowel syndrome in relation to predominant faecal bacteria. *J Med Microbiol* 2006; **55**: 625-633 [PMID: 16585652 DOI: 10.1099/jmm.0.46134-0]
45 **Kassinen A**, Krogius-Kurikka L, Mäkivuokko H, Rinttilä T, Paulin L, Corander J, Malinen E, Apajalahti J, Palva A. The fecal microbiota of irritable bowel syndrome patients differs significantly from that of healthy subjects. *Gastroenterology* 2007; **133**: 24-33 [PMID: 17631127 DOI: 10.1053/j.gastro.2007.04.005]
46 **Lyra A**, Rinttilä T, Nikkilä J, Krogius-Kurikka L, Kajander K, Malinen E, Mättö J, Mäkelä L, Palva A. Diarrhoea-predominant irritable bowel syndrome distinguishable by 16S rRNA gene phylotype quantification. *World J Gastroenterol* 2009; **15**: 5936-5945 [PMID: 20014457 DOI: 10.3748/wjg.15.5936]
47 **Krogius-Kurikka L**, Lyra A, Malinen E, Aarnikunnas J, Tuimala J, Paulin L, Mäkivuokko H, Kajander K, Palva A. Microbial community analysis reveals high level phylogenetic alterations in the overall gastrointestinal microbiota of diarrhoea-predominant irritable bowel syndrome sufferers. *BMC Gastroenterol* 2009; **9**: 95 [PMID: 20015409 DOI: 10.1186/1471-230X-9-95]
48 **Kerckhoffs AP**, Samsom M, van der Rest ME, de Vogel J, Knol J, Ben-Amor K, Akkermans LM. Lower Bifidobacteria counts in both duodenal mucosa-associated and fecal microbiota in irritable bowel syndrome patients. *World J Gastroenterol* 2009; **15**: 2887-2892 [PMID: 19533811 DOI: 10.3748/wjg.15.2887]
49 **Carroll IM**, Ringel-Kulka T, Siddle JP, Klaenhammer TR, Ringel Y. Characterization of the fecal microbiota using high-throughput sequencing reveals a stable microbial community during storage. *PLoS One* 2012; **7**: e46953 [PMID: 23071673 DOI: 10.1371/journal.pone.0046953]
50 **Salonen A**, de Vos WM, Palva A. Gastrointestinal microbiota in irritable bowel syndrome: present state and perspectives. *Microbiology* 2010; **156**: 3205-3215 [PMID: 20705664 DOI: 10.1099/mic.0.043257-0]
51 **Tana C**, Umesaki Y, Imaoka A, Handa T, Kanazawa M, Fukudo S. Altered profiles of intestinal microbiota and organic acids may be the origin of symptoms in irritable bowel syndrome. *Neurogastroenterol Motil* 2010; **22**: 512-519, e114-e115 [PMID: 19903265 DOI: 10.1111/j.1365-2982.2009.01427.x]
52 **Carroll IM**, Chang YH, Park J, Sartor RB, Ringel Y. Luminal and mucosal-associated intestinal microbiota in patients with diarrhea-predominant irritable bowel syndrome. *Gut Pathog* 2010; **2**: 19 [PMID: 21143915 DOI: 10.1186/1757-4749-2-19]
53 **Codling C**, O'Mahony L, Shanahan F, Quigley EM, Marchesi JR. A molecular analysis of fecal and mucosal bacterial communities in irritable bowel syndrome. *Dig Dis Sci* 2010; **55**: 392-397 [PMID: 19693670 DOI: 10.1007/s10620-009-0934-x]
54 **Ponnusamy K**, Choi JN, Kim J, Lee SY, Lee CH. Microbial community and metabolomic comparison of irritable bowel syndrome faeces. *J Med Microbiol* 2011; **60**: 817-827 [PMID: 21330412 DOI: 10.1099/jmm.0.028126-0]
55 **Kerckhoffs AP**, Ben-Amor K, Samsom M, van der Rest ME, de

Vogel J, Knol J, Akkermans LM. Molecular analysis of faecal and duodenal samples reveals significantly higher prevalence and numbers of Pseudomonas aeruginosa in irritable bowel syndrome. *J Med Microbiol* 2011; **60**: 236-245 [PMID: 20947663 DOI: 10.1099/jmm.0.022848-0]

56 **Rajilić-Stojanović M**, Biagi E, Heilig HG, Kajander K, Kekkonen RA, Tims S, de Vos WM. Global and deep molecular analysis of microbiota signatures in fecal samples from patients with irritable bowel syndrome. *Gastroenterology* 2011; **141**: 1792-1801 [PMID: 21820992 DOI: 10.1053/j.gastro.2011.07.043]

57 **Carroll IM**, Ringel-Kulka T, Keku TO, Chang YH, Packey CD, Sartor RB, Ringel Y. Molecular analysis of the luminal- and mucosal-associated intestinal microbiota in diarrhea-predominant irritable bowel syndrome. *Am J Physiol Gastrointest Liver Physiol* 2011; **301**: G799-G807 [PMID: 21737778 DOI: 10.1152/ajpgi.00154.2011]

58 **Carroll IM**, Ringel-Kulka T, Siddle JP, Ringel Y. Alterations in composition and diversity of the intestinal microbiota in patients with diarrhea-predominant irritable bowel syndrome. *Neurogastroenterol Motil* 2012; **24**: 521-530, e248 [PMID: 22339879 DOI: 10.1111/j.1365-2982.2012.01891.x]

59 **Parkes GC**, Rayment NB, Hudspith BN, Petrovska L, Lomer MC, Brostoff J, Whelan K, Sanderson JD. Distinct microbial populations exist in the mucosa-associated microbiota of sub-groups of irritable bowel syndrome. *Neurogastroenterol Motil* 2012; **24**: 31-39 [PMID: 22070725 DOI: 10.1111/j.1365-2982.2011.01803.x]

60 **Jeffery IB**, O'Toole PW, Öhman L, Claesson MJ, Deane J, Quigley EM, Simrén M. An irritable bowel syndrome subtype defined by species-specific alterations in faecal microbiota. *Gut* 2012; **61**: 997-1006 [PMID: 22180058 DOI: 10.1136/gutjnl-2011-301501]

61 **Chassard C**, Dapoigny M, Scott KP, Crouzet L, Del'homme C, Marquet P, Martin JC, Pickering G, Ardid D, Eschalier A, Dubray C, Flint HJ, Bernalier-Donadille A. Functional dysbiosis within the gut microbiota of patients with constipated-irritable bowel syndrome. *Aliment Pharmacol Ther* 2012; **35**: 828-838 [PMID: 22315951 DOI: 10.1111/j.1365-2036.2012.05007.x]

62 **König J**, Brummer RJ. Alteration of the intestinal microbiota as a cause of and a potential therapeutic option in irritable bowel syndrome. *Benef Microbes* 2014; **5**: 247-261 [PMID: 24583610 DOI: 10.3920/BM2013.0033]

63 **Sundin J**, Rangel I, Fuentes S, Heikamp-de Jong I, Hultgren-Hörnquist E, de Vos WM, Brummer RJ. Altered faecal and mucosal microbial composition in post-infectious irritable bowel syndrome patients correlates with mucosal lymphocyte phenotypes and psychological distress. *Aliment Pharmacol Ther* 2015; **41**: 342-351 [PMID: 25521822 DOI: 10.1111/apt.13055]

64 **Simrén M**, Barbara G, Flint HJ, Spiegel BM, Spiller RC, Vanner S, Verdu EF, Whorwell PJ, Zoetendal EG. Intestinal microbiota in functional bowel disorders: a Rome foundation report. *Gut* 2013; **62**: 159-176 [PMID: 22730468 DOI: 10.1136/gutjnl-2012-302167]

65 **Spiller RC**, Jenkins D, Thornley JP, Hebden JM, Wright T, Skinner M, Neal KR. Increased rectal mucosal enteroendocrine cells, T lymphocytes, and increased gut permeability following acute Campylobacter enteritis and in post-dysenteric irritable bowel syndrome. *Gut* 2000; **47**: 804-811 [PMID: 11076879 DOI: 10.1136/gut.47.6.804]

66 **Chadwick VS**, Chen W, Shu D, Paulus B, Bethwaite P, Tie A, Wilson I. Activation of the mucosal immune system in irritable bowel syndrome. *Gastroenterology* 2002; **122**: 1778-1783 [PMID: 12055584 DOI: 10.1053/gast.2002.33579]

67 **Guilarte M**, Santos J, de Torres I, Alonso C, Vicario M, Ramos L, Martínez C, Casellas F, Saperas E, Malagelada JR. Diarrhoea-predominant IBS patients show mast cell activation and hyperplasia in the jejunum. *Gut* 2007; **56**: 203-209 [PMID: 17005763]

68 **O'Sullivan M**, Clayton N, Breslin NP, Harman I, Bountra C, McLaren A, O'Morain CA. Increased mast cells in the irritable bowel syndrome. *Neurogastroenterol Motil* 2000; **12**: 449-457 [PMID: 11012945 DOI: 10.1046/j.1365-2982.2000.00221.x]

69 **Weston AP**, Biddle WL, Bhatia PS, Miner PB. Terminal ileal mucosal mast cells in irritable bowel syndrome. *Dig Dis Sci* 1993; **38**: 1590-1595 [PMID: 8359068]

70 **He Q**, Wang L, Wang F, Li Q. Role of gut microbiota in a zebrafish model with chemically induced enterocolitis involving toll-like receptor signaling pathways. *Zebrafish* 2014; **11**: 255-264 [PMID: 24758288 DOI: 10.1089/zeb.2013.0917]

71 **Walk ST**, Blum AM, Ewing SA, Weinstock JV, Young VB. Alteration of the murine gut microbiota during infection with the parasitic helminth Heligmosomoides polygyrus. *Inflamm Bowel Dis* 2010; **16**: 1841-1849 [PMID: 20848461 DOI: 10.1002/ibd.21299]

72 **Kuehbacher T**, Rehman A, Lepage P, Hellmig S, Fölsch UR, Schreiber S, Ott SJ. Intestinal TM7 bacterial phylogenies in active inflammatory bowel disease. *J Med Microbiol* 2008; **57**: 1569-1576 [PMID: 19018031 DOI: 10.1099/jmm.0.47719-0]

73 **Reshef L**, Kovacs A, Ofer A, Yahav L, Maharshak N, Keren N, Konikoff FM, Tulchinsky H, Gophna U, Dotan I. Pouch Inflammation Is Associated With a Decrease in Specific Bacterial Taxa. *Gastroenterology* 2015; **149**: 718-727 [PMID: 26026389 DOI: 10.1053/j.gastro.2015.05.041]

74 **Machiels K**, Sabino J, Vandermosten L, Joossens M, Arijs I, de Bruyn M, Eeckhaut V, Van Assche G, Ferrante M, Verhaegen J, Van Steen K, Van Immerseel F, Huys G, Verbeke K, Wolthuis A, de Buck Van Overstraeten A, D'Hoore A, Rutgeerts P, Vermeire S. Specific members of the predominant gut microbiota predict pouchitis following colectomy and IPAA in UC. *Gut* 2015; Epub ahead of print [PMID: 26423113 DOI: 10.1136/gutjnl-2015-309398]

75 **Thabane M**, Kottachchi DT, Marshall JK. Systematic review and meta-analysis: The incidence and prognosis of post-infectious irritable bowel syndrome. *Aliment Pharmacol Ther* 2007; **26**: 535-544 [PMID: 17661757]

76 **Spiller R**, Garsed K. Postinfectious irritable bowel syndrome. *Gastroenterology* 2009; **136**: 1979-1988 [PMID: 19457422]

77 **Jalanka-Tuovinen J**, Salojärvi J, Salonen A, Immonen O, Garsed K, Kelly FM, Zaitoun A, Palva A, Spiller RC, de Vos WM. Faecal microbiota composition and host-microbe cross-talk following gastroenteritis and in postinfectious irritable bowel syndrome. *Gut* 2014; **63**: 1737-1745 [PMID: 24310267]

78 **Villarreal AA**, Aberger FJ, Benrud R, Gundrum JD. Use of broad-spectrum antibiotics and the development of irritable bowel syndrome. *WMJ* 2012; **111**: 17-20 [PMID: 22533211]

79 **Rajilić-Stojanović M**, Jonkers DM, Salonen A, Hanevik K, Raes J, Jalanka J, de Vos WM, Manichanh C, Golic N, Enck P, Philippou E, Iraqi FA, Clarke G, Spiller RC, Penders J. Intestinal microbiota and diet in IBS: causes, consequences, or epiphenomena? *Am J Gastroenterol* 2015; **110**: 278-287 [PMID: 25623659]

80 **Mayer EA**, Knight R, Mazmanian SK, Cryan JF, Tillisch K. Gut microbes and the brain: paradigm shift in neuroscience. *J Neurosci* 2014; **34**: 15490-15496 [PMID: 25392516]

81 **Tillisch K**, Labus J, Kilpatrick L, Jiang Z, Stains J, Ebrat B, Guyonnet D, Legrain-Raspaud S, Trotin B, Naliboff B, Mayer EA. Consumption of fermented milk product with probiotic modulates brain activity. *Gastroenterology* 2013; **144**: 1394-1401, 1401.e1-e4 [PMID: 23474283]

82 **Fond G**, Loundou A, Hamdani N, Boukouaci W, Dargel A, Oliveira J, Roger M, Tamouza R, Leboyer M, Boyer L. Anxiety and depression comorbidities in irritable bowel syndrome (IBS): a systematic review and meta-analysis. *Eur Arch Psychiatry Clin Neurosci* 2014; **264**: 651-660 [PMID: 24705634]

83 **Silk DB**, Davis A, Vulevic J, Tzortzis G, Gibson GR. Clinical trial: the effects of a trans-galactooligosaccharide prebiotic on faecal microbiota and symptoms in irritable bowel syndrome. *Aliment Pharmacol Ther* 2009; **29**: 508-518 [PMID: 19053980]

84 **Kellow JE**, Phillips SF. Altered small bowel motility in irritable bowel syndrome is correlated with symptoms. *Gastroenterology* 1987; **92**: 1885-1893 [PMID: 3569764]

85 **Suttor VP**, Prott GM, Hansen RD, Kellow JE, Malcolm A. Evidence for pelvic floor dyssynergia in patients with irritable

bowel syndrome. *Dis Colon Rectum* 2010; **53**: 156-160 [PMID: 20087090 DOI: 10.1007/DCR.0b013e3181c188e8]
86 **Serra J**, Villoria A, Azpiroz F, Lobo B, Santos J, Accarino A, Malagelada JR. Impaired intestinal gas propulsion in manometrically proven dysmotility and in irritable bowel syndrome. *Neurogastroenterol Motil* 2010; **22**: 401-406, e91-e92 [PMID: 20047636 DOI: 10.1111/j.1365-2982.2009.01447]
87 **Cogliandro RF**, Antonucci A, De Giorgio R, Barbara G, Cremon C, Cogliandro L, Frisoni C, Pezzilli R, Morselli-Labate AM, Corinaldesi R, Stanghellini V. Patient-reported outcomes and gut dysmotility in functional gastrointestinal disorders. *Neurogastroenterol Motil* 2011; **23**: 1084-1091 [PMID: 21917083 DOI: 10.1111/j.1365-2982.2011.01783]
88 **Lindfors P**, Törnblom H, Sadik R, Björnsson ES, Abrahamsson H, Simrén M. Effects on gastrointestinal transit and antro-duodenojejunal manometry after gut-directed hypnotherapy in irritable bowel syndrome (IBS). *Scand J Gastroenterol* 2012; **47**: 1480-1487 [PMID: 23094932 DOI: 10.3109/00365521.2012.733955]
89 **Staumont G**, Delvaux M, Fioramonti J, Berry P, Bueno L, Frexinos J. Differences between jejunal myoelectric activity after a meal and during phase 2 of migrating motor complexes in healthy humans. *Dig Dis Sci* 1992; **37**: 1554-1561 [PMID: 1396003]
90 **Quigley EM**, Donovan JP, Lane MJ, Gallagher TF. Antroduodenal manometry. Usefulness and limitations as an outpatient study. *Dig Dis Sci* 1992; **37**: 20-28 [PMID: 1728526]
91 **Kellow JE**, Langeluddecke PM, Eckersley GM, Jones MP, Tennant CC. Effects of acute psychologic stress on small-intestinal motility in health and the irritable bowel syndrome. *Scand J Gastroenterol* 1992; **27**: 53-58 [PMID: 1736343]
92 **Schmidt T**, Hackelsberger N, Widmer R, Meisel C, Pfeiffer A, Kaess H. Ambulatory 24-hour jejunal motility in diarrhea-predominant irritable bowel syndrome. *Scand J Gastroenterol* 1996; **31**: 581-589 [PMID: 8789897]
93 **Caenepeel P**, Janssens J, Vantrappen G, Eyssen H, Coremans G. Interdigestive myoelectric complex in germ-free rats. *Dig Dis Sci* 1989; **34**: 1180-1184 [PMID: 2752868]
94 **Collins S**, Verdu E, Denou E, Bercik P. The role of pathogenic microbes and commensal bacteria in irritable bowel syndrome. *Dig Dis* 2009; **27** Suppl 1: 85-89 [PMID: 20203502 DOI: 10.1159/000268126]
95 **Husebye E**, Hellström PM, Midtvedt T. Intestinal microflora stimulates myoelectric activity of rat small intestine by promoting cyclic initiation and aboral propagation of migrating myoelectric complex. *Dig Dis Sci* 1994; **39**: 946-956 [PMID: 8174436]
96 **Husebye E**, Hellström PM, Sundler F, Chen J, Midtvedt T. Influence of microbial species on small intestinal myoelectric activity and transit in germ-free rats. *Am J Physiol Gastrointest Liver Physiol* 2001; **280**: G368-G380 [PMID: 11171619]
97 **Berg RD**. Bacterial translocation from the gastrointestinal tract. *Adv Exp Med Biol* 1999; **473**: 11-30 [PMID: 10659341]
98 **Hooper LV**, Wong MH, Thelin A, Hansson L, Falk PG, Gordon JI. Molecular analysis of commensal host-microbial relationships in the intestine. *Science* 2001; **291**: 881-884 [PMID: 11157169 DOI: 10.1126/science.291.5505.881]
99 **Bär F**, Von Koschitzky H, Roblick U, Bruch HP, Schulze L, Sonnenborn U, Böttner M, Wedel T. Cell-free supernatants of Escherichia coli Nissle 1917 modulate human colonic motility: evidence from an in vitro organ bath study. *Neurogastroenterol Motil* 2009; **21**: 559-566, e16-e17 [PMID: 19220758 DOI: 10.1111/j.1365-2982.2008.01258.x]
100 **Guarino MP**, Sessa R, Altomare A, Cocca S, Di Pietro M, Carotti S, Schiavoni G, Alloni R, Emerenziani S, Morini S, Severi C, Cicala M. Human colonic myogenic dysfunction induced by mucosal lipopolysaccharide translocation and oxidative stress. *Dig Liver Dis* 2013; **45**: 1011-1016 [PMID: 23891549 DOI: 10.1016/j.dld.2013.06.001]
101 **Guarino MP**, Altomare A, Stasi E, Marignani M, Severi C, Alloni R, Dicuonzo G, Morelli L, Coppola R, Cicala M. Effect of acute mucosal exposure to Lactobacillus rhamnosus GG on human colonic smooth muscle cells. *J Clin Gastroenterol* 2008; **42** Suppl 3 Pt 2: S185-S190 [PMID: 18685510 DOI: 10.1097/MCG.0b013e31817e1cac]
102 **Ammoscato F**, Scirocco A, Altomare A, Matarrese P, Petitta C, Ascione B, Caronna R, Guarino M, Marignani M, Cicala M, Chirletti P, Malorni W, Severi C. Lactobacillus rhamnosus protects human colonic muscle from pathogen lipopolysaccharide-induced damage. *Neurogastroenterol Motil* 2013; **25**: 984-e777 [PMID: 24118564 DOI: 10.1111/nmo.12232]
103 **Kellow JE**, Azpiroz F, Delvaux M, Gebhart GF, Mertz HR, Quigley EM, Smout AJ. Applied principles of neurogastroenterology: physiology/motility sensation. *Gastroenterology* 2006; **130**: 1412-1420 [PMID: 16678555 DOI: 10.1053/j.gastro.2005.08.061]
104 **Mayer EA**. Emerging disease model for functional gastrointestinal disorders. *Am J Med* 1999; **107**: 12S-19S [PMID: 10588168 DOI: 10.1016/S0002-9343(99)00277-6]
105 **Grundy D**, Al-Chaer ED, Aziz Q, Collins SM, Ke M, Taché Y, Wood JD. Fundamentals of neurogastroenterology: basic science. *Gastroenterology* 2006; **130**: 1391-1411 [PMID: 16678554 DOI: 10.1053/j.gastro.2005.11.060]
106 **Feng B**, La JH, Schwartz ES, Gebhart GF. Irritable bowel syndrome: methods, mechanisms, and pathophysiology. Neural and neuro-immune mechanisms of visceral hypersensitivity in irritable bowel syndrome. *Am J Physiol Gastrointest Liver Physiol* 2012; **302**: G1085-G1098 [PMID: 22403791 DOI: 10.1152/ajpgi.00542.2011]
107 **Ritchie JA**, Ardran GM, Truelove SC. Observations on experimentally induced colonic pain. *Gut* 1972; **13**: 841 [PMID: 5087084]
108 **Mertz H**, Naliboff B, Munakata J, Niazi N, Mayer EA. Altered rectal perception is a biological marker of patients with irritable bowel syndrome. *Gastroenterology* 1995; **109**: 40-52 [PMID: 7797041]
109 **Prior A**, Maxton DG, Whorwell PJ. Anorectal manometry in irritable bowel syndrome: differences between diarrhoea and constipation predominant subjects. *Gut* 1990; **31**: 458-462 [PMID: 2338274]
110 **Zar S**, Benson MJ, Kumar D. Rectal afferent hypersensitivity and compliance in irritable bowel syndrome: differences between diarrhoea-predominant and constipation-predominant subgroups. *Eur J Gastroenterol Hepatol* 2006; **18**: 151-158 [PMID: 16394796]
111 **Distrutti E**, Hauer SK, Fiorucci S, Pensi MO, Morelli A. Intraduodenal lipids increase perception of rectal distension in IBS patients. *Gastroenterology* 2000; **118**: A138 (abs)
112 **Caldarella MP**, Milano A, Laterza F, Sacco F, Balatsinou C, Lapenna D, Pierdomenico SD, Cuccurullo F, Neri M. Visceral sensitivity and symptoms in patients with constipation- or diarrhea-predominant irritable bowel syndrome (IBS): effect of a low-fat intraduodenal infusion. *Am J Gastroenterol* 2005; **100**: 383-389 [PMID: 15667496 DOI: 10.1111/j.1572-0241.2005.40100.x]
113 **Silverman DH**, Munakata JA, Ennes H, Mandelkern MA, Hoh CK, Mayer EA. Regional cerebral activity in normal and pathological perception of visceral pain. *Gastroenterology* 1997; **112**: 64-72 [PMID: 8978344]
114 **Hertig VL**, Cain KC, Jarrett ME, Burr RL, Heitkemper MM. Daily stress and gastrointestinal symptoms in women with irritable bowel syndrome. *Nurs Res* 2007; **56**: 399-406 [PMID: 18004186 DOI: 10.1097/01.NNR.0000299855.60053.88]
115 **Aguilera M**, Cerdà-Cuéllar M, Martínez V. Antibiotic-induced dysbiosis alters host-bacterial interactions and leads to colonic sensory and motor changes in mice. *Gut Microbes* 2015; **6**: 10-23 [PMID: 25531553 DOI: 10.4161/19490976.2014.990790]
116 **Aguilera M**, Vergara P, Martínez V. Stress and antibiotics alter luminal and wall-adhered microbiota and enhance the local expression of visceral sensory-related systems in mice. *Neurogastroenterol Motil* 2013; **25**: e515-e529 [PMID: 23711047 DOI: 10.1111/nmo.12154]
117 **Theodorou V**, Ait Belgnaoui A, Agostini S, Eutamene H. Effect

of commensals and probiotics on visceral sensitivity and pain in irritable bowel syndrome. *Gut Microbes* 2014; **5**: 430-436 [PMID: 25184834 DOI: 10.4161/gmic.29796]

118 **Mao YK**, Kasper DL, Wang B, Forsythe P, Bienenstock J, Kunze WA. Bacteroides fragilis polysaccharide A is necessary and sufficient for acute activation of intestinal sensory neurons. *Nat Commun* 2013; **4**: 1465 [PMID: 23403566 DOI: 10.1038/ncomms2478]

119 **Kamiya T**, Wang L, Forsythe P, Goettsche G, Mao Y, Wang Y, Tougas G, Bienenstock J. Inhibitory effects of Lactobacillus reuteri on visceral pain induced by colorectal distension in Sprague-Dawley rats. *Gut* 2006; **55**: 191-196 [PMID: 16361309 DOI: 10.1136/gut.2005.070987]

120 **Perez-Burgos A**, Wang B, Mao YK, Mistry B, McVey Neufeld KA, Bienenstock J, Kunze W. Psychoactive bacteria Lactobacillus rhamnosus (JB-1) elicits rapid frequency facilitation in vagal afferents. *Am J Physiol Gastrointest Liver Physiol* 2013; **304**: G211-G220 [PMID: 23139216 DOI: 10.1152/ajpgi.00128.2012]

121 **Perez-Burgos A**, Wang L, McVey Neufeld KA, Mao YK, Ahmadzai M, Janssen LJ, Stanisz AM, Bienenstock J, Kunze WA. The TRPV1 channel in rodents is a major target for antinociceptive effect of the probiotic Lactobacillus reuteri DSM 17938. *J Physiol* 2015; **593**: 3943-3957 [PMID: 26084409 DOI: 10.1113/JP270229]

122 **Carabotti M**, Scirocco A, Maselli MA, Severi C. The gut-brain axis: interactions between enteric microbiota, central and enteric nervous systems. *Ann Gastroenterol* 2015; **28**: 203-209 [PMID: 25830558]

123 **Tsigos C**, Chrousos GP. Hypothalamic-pituitary-adrenal axis, neuroendocrine factors and stress. *J Psychosom Res* 2002; **53**: 865-871 [PMID: 12377295]

124 **Rhee SH**, Pothoulakis C, Mayer EA. Principles and clinical implications of the brain-gut-enteric microbiota axis. *Nat Rev Gastroenterol Hepatol* 2009; **6**: 306-314 [PMID: 19404271 DOI: 10.1038/nrgastro.2009.35]

125 **Collins J**, Borojevic R, Verdu EF, Huizinga JD, Ratcliffe EM. Intestinal microbiota influence the early postnatal development of the enteric nervous system. *Neurogastroenterol Motil* 2014; **26**: 98-107 [PMID: 24329946 DOI: 10.1111/nmo.12236]

126 **Sudo N**, Chida Y, Aiba Y, Sonoda J, Oyama N, Yu XN, Kubo C, Koga Y. Postnatal microbial colonization programs the hypothalamic-pituitary-adrenal system for stress response in mice. *J Physiol* 2004; **558**: 263-275 [PMID: 15133062 DOI: 10.1113/jphysiol.2004.063388]

127 **Neufeld KM**, Kang N, Bienenstock J, Foster JA. Reduced anxiety-like behavior and central neurochemical change in germ-free mice. *Neurogastroenterol Motil* 2011; **23**: 255-264, e119 [PMID: 21054680 DOI: 10.1111/j.1365-2982.2010.01620.x]

128 **Messaoudi M**, Lalonde R, Violle N, Javelot H, Desor D, Nejdi A, Bisson JF, Rougeot C, Pichelin M, Cazaubiel M, Cazaubiel JM. Assessment of psychotropic-like properties of a probiotic formulation (Lactobacillus helveticus R0052 and Bifidobacterium longum R0175) in rats and human subjects. *Br J Nutr* 2011; **105**: 755-764 [PMID: 20974015 DOI: 10.1017/S0007114510004319]

129 **Koloski NA**, Jones M, Kalantar J, Weltman M, Zaguirre J, Talley NJ. The brain--gut pathway in functional gastrointestinal disorders is bidirectional: a 12-year prospective population-based study. *Gut* 2012; **61**: 1284-1290 [PMID: 22234979 DOI: 10.1136/gutjnl-2011-300474]

130 **Mayer EA**, Savidge T, Shulman RJ. Brain-gut microbiome interactions and functional bowel disorders. *Gastroenterology* 2014; **146**: 1500-1512 [PMID: 24583088 DOI: 10.1053/j.gastro.2014.02.037]

131 **Wells JM**, Rossi O, Meijerink M, van Baarlen P. Epithelial crosstalk at the microbiota-mucosal interface. *Proc Natl Acad Sci USA* 2011; **108** Suppl 1: 4607-4614 [PMID: 20826446 DOI: 10.1073/pnas.1000092107]

132 **Jenkins DG**, Quigley BM. The y-intercept of the critical power function as a measure of anaerobic work capacity. *Ergonomics* 1991; **34**: 13-22 [PMID: 2009846 DOI: 10.1038/nri2707]

133 **Ostaff MJ**, Stange EF, Wehkamp J. Antimicrobial peptides and gut microbiota in homeostasis and pathology. *EMBO Mol Med* 2013; **5**: 1465-1483 [PMID: 24039130 DOI: 10.1002/emmm.201201773]

134 **McClure R**, Massari P. TLR-Dependent Human Mucosal Epithelial Cell Responses to Microbial Pathogens. *Front Immunol* 2014; **5**: 386 [PMID: 25161655 DOI: 10.3389/fimmu.2014.00386]

135 **Perez-Chanona E**, Mühlbauer M, Jobin C. The microbiota protects against ischemia/reperfusion-induced intestinal injury through nucleotide-binding oligomerization domain-containing protein 2 (NOD2) signaling. *Am J Pathol* 2014; **184**: 2965-2975 [PMID: 25204845 DOI: 10.1016/j.ajpath.2014.07.014]

136 **Davies JM**, Abreu MT. Host-microbe interactions in the small bowel. *Curr Opin Gastroenterol* 2015; **31**: 118-123 [PMID: 25426971 DOI: 10.1097/MOG.0000000000000143]

137 **Murata K**, Tomosada Y, Villena J, Chiba E, Shimazu T, Aso H, Iwabuchi N, Xiao JZ, Saito T, Kitazawa H. Bifidobacterium breve MCC-117 Induces Tolerance in Porcine Intestinal Epithelial Cells: Study of the Mechanisms Involved in the Immunoregulatory Effect. *Biosci Microbiota Food Health* 2014; **33**: 1-10 [PMID: 24936377 DOI: 10.12938/bmfh.33.1]

138 **McDermott AJ**, Huffnagle GB. The microbiome and regulation of mucosal immunity. *Immunology* 2014; **142**: 24-31 [PMID: 24329495 DOI: 10.1111/imm.12231]

139 **Mu C**, Yang Y, Zhu W. Crosstalk Between The Immune Receptors and Gut Microbiota. *Curr Protein Pept Sci* 2015; **16**: 622-631 [PMID: 26122782]

140 **Hill C**, Guarner F, Reid G, Gibson GR, Merenstein DJ, Pot B, Morelli L, Canani RB, Flint HJ, Salminen S, Calder PC, Sanders ME. Expert consensus document. The International Scientific Association for Probiotics and Prebiotics consensus statement on the scope and appropriate use of the term probiotic. *Nat Rev Gastroenterol Hepatol* 2014; **11**: 506-514 [PMID: 24912386 DOI: 10.1038/nrgastro.2014.66]

141 Food and Agriculture Organization/World Health Organization. Evaluation of health and nutritional properties of probiotics in food, including powder milk with the live lactic acid bacteria. Report of a Joint FAO/WHO Expert Consultation on evaluation of health and nutritional properties of probiotics in food including powder milk with live lactic acid bacteria. Available from: URL: http://www.who.int/foodsafety/publications/fs_management/en/probiotics.pdf

142 **Moayyedi P**, Ford AC, Talley NJ, Cremonini F, Foxx-Orenstein AE, Brandt LJ, Quigley EM. The efficacy of probiotics in the treatment of irritable bowel syndrome: a systematic review. *Gut* 2010; **59**: 325-332 [PMID: 19091823 DOI: 10.1136/gut.2008.167270]

143 **Niedzielin K**, Kordecki H, Birkenfeld B. A controlled, double-blind, randomized study on the efficacy of Lactobacillus plantarum 299V in patients with irritable bowel syndrome. *Eur J Gastroenterol Hepatol* 2001; **13**: 1143-1147 [PMID: 11711768]

144 **Nobaek S**, Johansson ML, Molin G, Ahrné S, Jeppsson B. Alteration of intestinal microflora is associated with reduction in abdominal bloating and pain in patients with irritable bowel syndrome. *Am J Gastroenterol* 2000; **95**: 1231-1238 [PMID: 10811333 DOI: 10.1111/j.1572-0241.2000.02015.x]

145 **Sinn DH**, Song JH, Kim HJ, Lee JH, Son HJ, Chang DK, Kim YH, Kim JJ, Rhee JC, Rhee PL. Therapeutic effect of Lactobacillus acidophilus-SDC 2012, 2013 in patients with irritable bowel syndrome. *Dig Dis Sci* 2008; **53**: 2714-2718 [PMID: 18274900 DOI: 10.1007/s10620-007-0196-4]

146 **Long ZR**, Yu CH, Yang Y, Wang HN, Chi XX. [Clinical observation on acupuncture combined with microorganism pharmaceutical preparations for treatment of irritable bowel syndrome of constipation type]. *Zhongguo Zhenjiu* 2006; **26**: 403-405 [PMID: 16813181]

147 **Whorwell PJ**, Altringer L, Morel J, Bond Y, Charbonneau D, O' Mahony L, Kiely B, Shanahan F, Quigley EM. Efficacy of an encapsulated probiotic Bifidobacterium infantis 35624 in women with irritable bowel syndrome. *Am J Gastroenterol* 2006; **101**: 1581-1590 [PMID: 16863564 DOI: 10.1111/j.1572-0241.2006.00734.x]

148 **Gade J**, Thorn P. Paraghurt for patients with irritable bowel syndrome. A controlled clinical investigation from general practice. *Scand J Prim Health Care* 1989; **7**: 23-26 [PMID: 2657953]

149 **Kim HJ**, Camilleri M, McKinzie S, Lempke MB, Burton DD, Thomforde GM, Zinsmeister AR. A randomized controlled trial of a probiotic, VSL#3, on gut transit and symptoms in diarrhoea-predominant irritable bowel syndrome. *Aliment Pharmacol Ther* 2003; **17**: 895-904 [PMID: 12656692 DOI: 10.1046/j.1365-2036.2003.01543.x]

150 **Kajander K**, Hatakka K, Poussa T, Färkkilä M, Korpela R. A probiotic mixture alleviates symptoms in irritable bowel syndrome patients: a controlled 6-month intervention. *Aliment Pharmacol Ther* 2005; **22**: 387-394 [PMID: 16128676 DOI: 10.1111/j.1365-2036.2005.02579.x]

151 **Lorenzo-Zúñiga V**, Llop E, Suárez C, Alvarez B, Abreu L, Espadaler J, Serra J. I.31, a new combination of probiotics, improves irritable bowel syndrome-related quality of life. *World J Gastroenterol* 2014; **20**: 8709-8716 [PMID: 25024629 DOI: 10.3748/wjg.v20.i26.8709]

152 **Drouault-Holowacz S**, Bieuvelet S, Burckel A, Cazaubiel M, Dray X, Marteau P. A double blind randomized controlled trial of a probiotic combination in 100 patients with irritable bowel syndrome. *Gastroenterol Clin Biol* 2008; **32**: 147-152 [PMID: 18387426 DOI: 10.1016/j.gcb.2007.06.001]

153 **Clarke G**, Cryan JF, Dinan TG, Quigley EM. Review article: probiotics for the treatment of irritable bowel syndrome--focus on lactic acid bacteria. *Aliment Pharmacol Ther* 2012; **35**: 403-413 [PMID: 22225517 DOI: 10.1111/j.1365-2036.2011.04965.x]

154 **O'Mahony L**, McCarthy J, Kelly P, Hurley G, Luo F, Chen K, O'Sullivan GC, Kiely B, Collins JK, Shanahan F, Quigley EM. Lactobacillus and bifidobacterium in irritable bowel syndrome: symptom responses and relationship to cytokine profiles. *Gastroenterology* 2005; **128**: 541-551 [PMID: 15765388 DOI: 10.1053/j.gastro.2004.11.050]

155 **Guglielmetti S**, Mora D, Gschwender M, Popp K. Randomised clinical trial: Bifidobacterium bifidum MIMBb75 significantly alleviates irritable bowel syndrome and improves quality of life--a double-blind, placebo-controlled study. *Aliment Pharmacol Ther* 2011; **33**: 1123-1132 [PMID: 21418261 DOI: 10.1111/j.1365-2036.2011.04633.x]

156 **Agrawal A**, Houghton LA, Morris J, Reilly B, Guyonnet D, Goupil Feuillerat N, Schlumberger A, Jakob S, Whorwell PJ. Clinical trial: the effects of a fermented milk product containing Bifidobacterium lactis DN-173 010 on abdominal distension and gastrointestinal transit in irritable bowel syndrome with constipation. *Aliment Pharmacol Ther* 2009; **29**: 104-114 [PMID: 18801055 DOI: 10.1111/j.1365-2036.2008.03853.x]

157 **Guyonnet D**, Chassany O, Ducrotte P, Picard C, Mouret M, Mercier CH, Matuchansky C. Effect of a fermented milk containing Bifidobacterium animalis DN-173 010 on the health-related quality of life and symptoms in irritable bowel syndrome in adults in primary care: a multicentre, randomized, double-blind, controlled trial. *Aliment Pharmacol Ther* 2007; **26**: 475-486 [PMID: 17635382 DOI: 10.1111/j.1365-2036.2007.03362.x]

158 **Andriulli A**, Neri M, Loguercio C, Terreni N, Merla A, Cardarella MP, Federico A, Chilovi F, Milandri GL, De Bona M, Cavenati S, Gullini S, Abbiati R, Garbagna N, Cerutti R, Grossi E. Clinical trial on the efficacy of a new symbiotic formulation, Flortec, in patients with irritable bowel syndrome: a multicenter, randomized study. *J Clin Gastroenterol* 2008; **42** Suppl 3 Pt 2: S218-S223 [PMID: 18685503 DOI: 10.1097/MCG.0b013e31817fadd6]

159 **Lönnermark E**, Friman V, Lappas G, Sandberg T, Berggren A, Adlerberth I. Intake of Lactobacillus plantarum reduces certain gastrointestinal symptoms during treatment with antibiotics. *J Clin Gastroenterol* 2010; **44**: 106-112 [PMID: 19727002 DOI: 10.1097/MCG.0b013e3181b2683f]

160 **Gawrońska A**, Dziechciarz P, Horvath A, Szajewska H. A randomized double-blind placebo-controlled trial of Lactobacillus GG for abdominal pain disorders in children. *Aliment Pharmacol Ther* 2007; **25**: 177-184 [PMID: 17229242 DOI: 10.1111/j.1365-2036.2006.03175.x]

161 **Francavilla R**, Miniello V, Magistà AM, De Canio A, Bucci N, Gagliardi F, Lionetti E, Castellaneta S, Polimeno L, Peccarisi L, Indrio F, Cavallo L. A randomized controlled trial of Lactobacillus GG in children with functional abdominal pain. *Pediatrics* 2010; **126**: e1445-e1452 [PMID: 21078735 DOI: 10.1542/peds.2010-0467]

162 **Bauserman M**, Michail S. The use of Lactobacillus GG in irritable bowel syndrome in children: a double-blind randomized control trial. *J Pediatr* 2005; **147**: 197-201 [PMID: 16126049 DOI: 10.1016/j.jpeds.2005.05.015]

163 **Horvath A**, Dziechciarz P, Szajewska H. Meta-analysis: Lactobacillus rhamnosus GG for abdominal pain-related functional gastrointestinal disorders in childhood. *Aliment Pharmacol Ther* 2011; **33**: 1302-1310 [PMID: 21507030 DOI: 10.1111/j.1365-2036.2011.04665.x]

164 **O'Sullivan MA**, O'Morain CA. Bacterial supplementation in the irritable bowel syndrome. A randomised double-blind placebo-controlled crossover study. *Dig Liver Dis* 2000; **32**: 294-301 [PMID: 11515626]

165 **Stevenson C**, Blaauw R, Fredericks E, Visser J, Roux S. Randomized clinical trial: effect of Lactobacillus plantarum 299 v on symptoms of irritable bowel syndrome. *Nutrition* 2014; **30**: 1151-1157 [PMID: 25194614 DOI: 10.1016/j.nut.2014.02.010]

166 **Enck P**, Zimmermann K, Menke G, Müller-Lissner S, Martens U, Klosterhalfen S. A mixture of Escherichia coli (DSM 17252) and Enterococcus faecalis (DSM 16440) for treatment of the irritable bowel syndrome--a randomized controlled trial with primary care physicians. *Neurogastroenterol Motil* 2008; **20**: 1103-1109 [PMID: 18565142 DOI: 10.1111/j.1365-2982.2008.01156.x]

167 **Guandalini S**, Magazzù G, Chiaro A, La Balestra V, Di Nardo G, Gopalan S, Sibal A, Romano C, Canani RB, Lionetti P, Setty M. VSL#3 improves symptoms in children with irritable bowel syndrome: a multicenter, randomized, placebo-controlled, double-blind, crossover study. *J Pediatr Gastroenterol Nutr* 2010; **51**: 24-30 [PMID: 20453678 DOI: 10.1097/MPG.0b013e3181ca4d95]

168 **Kim HJ**, Vazquez Roque MI, Camilleri M, Stephens D, Burton DD, Baxter K, Thomforde G, Zinsmeister AR. A randomized controlled trial of a probiotic combination VSL# 3 and placebo in irritable bowel syndrome with bloating. *Neurogastroenterol Motil* 2005; **17**: 687-696 [PMID: 16185307 DOI: 10.1111/j.1365-2982.2005.00695.x]

169 **Williams EA**, Stimpson J, Wang D, Plummer S, Garaiova I, Barker ME, Corfe BM. Clinical trial: a multistrain probiotic preparation significantly reduces symptoms of irritable bowel syndrome in a double-blind placebo-controlled study. *Aliment Pharmacol Ther* 2009; **29**: 97-103 [PMID: 18785988 DOI: 10.1111/j.1365-2036.2008.03848.x]

170 **Simrén M**, Ohman L, Olsson J, Svensson U, Ohlson K, Posserud I, Strid H. Clinical trial: the effects of a fermented milk containing three probiotic bacteria in patients with irritable bowel syndrome - a randomized, double-blind, controlled study. *Aliment Pharmacol Ther* 2010; **31**: 218-227 [PMID: 19863495 DOI: 10.1111/j.1365-2036.2009.04183.x]

171 **Lyra A**, Krogius-Kurikka L, Nikkilä J, Malinen E, Kajander K, Kurikka K, Korpela R, Palva A. Effect of a multispecies probiotic supplement on quantity of irritable bowel syndrome-related intestinal microbial phylotypes. *BMC Gastroenterol* 2010; **10**: 110 [PMID: 20849659 DOI: 10.1186/1471-230X-10-110]

172 **Brenner DM**, Moeller MJ, Chey WD, Schoenfeld PS. The utility of probiotics in the treatment of irritable bowel syndrome: a systematic review. *Am J Gastroenterol* 2009; **104**: 1033-1049; quiz 1050 [PMID: 19277023 DOI: 10.1038/ajg.2009.25]

173 **Hungin AP**, Mulligan C, Pot B, Whorwell P, Agréus L, Fracasso P, Lionis C, Mendive J, Philippart de Foy JM, Rubin G, Winchester C, de Wit N. Systematic review: probiotics in the management of lower gastrointestinal symptoms in clinical practice -- an evidence-based international guide. *Aliment Pharmacol Ther* 2013; **38**: 864-886 [PMID: 23981066 DOI: 10.1111/apt.12460]

174 **Ki Cha B**, Mun Jung S, Hwan Choi C, Song ID, Woong Lee H, Joon Kim H, Hyuk J, Kyung Chang S, Kim K, Chung WS, Seo JG. The effect of a multispecies probiotic mixture on the symptoms and fecal microbiota in diarrhea-dominant irritable bowel syndrome: a randomized, double-blind, placebo-controlled trial. *J Clin Gastroenterol* 2012; **46**: 220-227 [PMID: 22157240 DOI: 10.1097/MCG.0b013e31823712b1]

175 **Zeng J**, Li YQ, Zuo XL, Zhen YB, Yang J, Liu CH. Clinical trial: effect of active lactic acid bacteria on mucosal barrier function in patients with diarrhoea-predominant irritable bowel syndrome. *Aliment Pharmacol Ther* 2008; **28**: 994-1002 [PMID: 18671775 DOI: 10.1111/j.1365-2036.2008.03818.x]

176 **Enck P**, Zimmermann K, Menke G, Klosterhalfen S. Randomized controlled treatment trial of irritable bowel syndrome with a probiotic E.-coli preparation (DSM17252) compared to placebo. *Z Gastroenterol* 2009; **47**: 209-214 [PMID: 19197823 DOI: 10.1055/s-2008-1027702]

177 **Søndergaard B**, Olsson J, Ohlson K, Svensson U, Bytzer P, Ekesbo R. Effects of probiotic fermented milk on symptoms and intestinal flora in patients with irritable bowel syndrome: a randomized, placebo-controlled trial. *Scand J Gastroenterol* 2011; **46**: 663-672 [PMID: 21443416 DOI: 10.3109/00365521.2011.565066]

178 **Sen S**, Mullan MM, Parker TJ, Woolner JT, Tarry SA, Hunter JO. Effect of Lactobacillus plantarum 299v on colonic fermentation and symptoms of irritable bowel syndrome. *Dig Dis Sci* 2002; **47**: 2615-2620 [PMID: 12452404]

179 **Kajander K**, Myllyluoma E, Rajilić-Stojanović M, Kyrönpalo S, Rasmussen M, Järvenpää S, Zoetendal EG, de Vos WM, Vapaatalo H, Korpela R. Clinical trial: multispecies probiotic supplementation alleviates the symptoms of irritable bowel syndrome and stabilizes intestinal microbiota. *Aliment Pharmacol Ther* 2008; **27**: 48-57 [PMID: 17919270 DOI: 10.1111/j.1365-2036.2007.03542.x]

180 **Guyonnet D**, Schlumberger A, Mhamdi L, Jakob S, Chassany O. Fermented milk containing Bifidobacterium lactis DN-173 010 improves gastrointestinal well-being and digestive symptoms in women reporting minor digestive symptoms: a randomised, double-blind, parallel, controlled study. *Br J Nutr* 2009; **102**: 1654-1662 [PMID: 19622191 DOI: 10.1017/S0007114509990882]

181 **Ojetti V**, Gigante G, Gabrielli M, Ainora ME, Mannocci A, Lauritano EC, Gasbarrini G, Gasbarrini A. The effect of oral supplementation with Lactobacillus reuteri or tilactase in lactose intolerant patients: randomized trial. *Eur Rev Med Pharmacol Sci* 2010; **14**: 163-170 [PMID: 20391953]

182 **Ligaarden SC**, Axelsson L, Naterstad K, Lydersen S, Farup PG. A candidate probiotic with unfavourable effects in subjects with irritable bowel syndrome: a randomised controlled trial. *BMC Gastroenterol* 2010; **10**: 16 [PMID: 20144246 DOI: 10.1186/1471-230X-10-16]

183 **S Kim L**, Hilli L, Orlowski J, Kupperman JL, Baral M, F Waters R. Efficacy of probiotics and nutrients in functional gastrointestinal disorders: a preliminary clinical trial. *Dig Dis Sci* 2006; **51**: 2134-2144 [PMID: 17078006]

184 **Hong KS**, Kang HW, Im JP, Ji GE, Kim SG, Jung HC, Song IS, Kim JS. Effect of probiotics on symptoms in korean adults with irritable bowel syndrome. *Gut Liver* 2009; **3**: 101-107 [PMID: 20431731 DOI: 10.5009/gnl.2009.3.2.101]

185 **Waller PA**, Gopal PK, Leyer GJ, Ouwehand AC, Reifer C, Stewart ME, Miller LE. Dose-response effect of Bifidobacterium lactis HN019 on whole gut transit time and functional gastrointestinal symptoms in adults. *Scand J Gastroenterol* 2011; **46**: 1057-1064 [PMID: 21663486 DOI: 10.3109/00365521.2011.584895]

186 **Kalman DS**, Schwartz HI, Alvarez P, Feldman S, Pezzullo JC, Krieger DR. A prospective, randomized, double-blind, placebo-controlled parallel-group dual site trial to evaluate the effects of a Bacillus coagulans-based product on functional intestinal gas symptoms. *BMC Gastroenterol* 2009; **9**: 85 [PMID: 19922649 DOI: 10.1186/1471-230X-9-85]

187 **Pitkala KH**, Strandberg TE, Finne Soveri UH, Ouwehand AC, Poussa T, Salminen S. Fermented cereal with specific bifidobacteria normalizes bowel movements in elderly nursing home residents. A randomized, controlled trial. *J Nutr Health Aging* 2007; **11**: 305-311 [PMID: 17653486]

188 **Larsen CN**, Nielsen S, Kaestel P, Brockmann E, Bennedsen M, Christensen HR, Eskesen DC, Jacobsen BL, Michaelsen KF. Dose-response study of probiotic bacteria Bifidobacterium animalis subsp lactis BB-12 and Lactobacillus paracasei subsp paracasei CRL-341 in healthy young adults. *Eur J Clin Nutr* 2006; **60**: 1284-1293 [PMID: 16721394 DOI: 10.1038/sj.ejcn.1602450]

189 **Didari T**, Mozaffari S, Nikfar S, Abdollahi M. Effectiveness of probiotics in irritable bowel syndrome: Updated systematic review with meta-analysis. *World J Gastroenterol* 2015; **21**: 3072-3084 [PMID: 25780308 DOI: 10.3748/wjg.v21.i10.3072]

190 **Kruis W**, Chrubasik S, Boehm S, Stange C, Schulze J. A double-blind placebo-controlled trial to study therapeutic effects of probiotic Escherichia coli Nissle 1917 in subgroups of patients with irritable bowel syndrome. *Int J Colorectal Dis* 2012; **27**: 467-474 [PMID: 22130826 DOI: 10.1007/s00384-011-1363-9]

191 **Ducrotté P**, Sawant P, Jayanthi V. Clinical trial: Lactobacillus plantarum 299v (DSM 9843) improves symptoms of irritable bowel syndrome. *World J Gastroenterol* 2012; **18**: 4012-4018 [PMID: 22912552 DOI: 10.3748/wjg.v18.i30.4012]

192 **Roberts LM**, McCahon D, Holder R, Wilson S, Hobbs FD. A randomised controlled trial of a probiotic 'functional food' in the management of irritable bowel syndrome. *BMC Gastroenterol* 2013; **13**: 45 [PMID: 23496803 DOI: 10.1186/1471-230X-13-45]

193 **Dapoigny M**, Piche T, Ducrotte P, Lunaud B, Cardot JM, Bernalier-Donadille A. Efficacy and safety profile of LCR35 complete freeze-dried culture in irritable bowel syndrome: a randomized, double-blind study. *World J Gastroenterol* 2012; **18**: 2067-2075 [PMID: 22563194 DOI: 10.3748/wjg.v18.i17.2067]

194 **Hun L**. Bacillus coagulans significantly improved abdominal pain and bloating in patients with IBS. *Postgrad Med* 2009; **121**: 119-124 [PMID: 19332970 DOI: 10.3810/pgm.2009.03.1984]

195 **Dolin BJ**. Effects of a proprietary Bacillus coagulans preparation on symptoms of diarrhea-predominant irritable bowel syndrome. *Methods Find Exp Clin Pharmacol* 2009; **31**: 655-659 [PMID: 20140275 DOI: 10.1358/mf.2009.31.10.1441078]

196 **Hong YS**, Hong KS, Park MH, Ahn YT, Lee JH, Huh CS, Lee J, Kim IK, Hwang GS, Kim JS. Metabonomic understanding of probiotic effects in humans with irritable bowel syndrome. *J Clin Gastroenterol* 2011; **45**: 415-425 [PMID: 21494186 DOI: 10.1097/MCG.0b013e318207f76c]

197 **Choi CH**, Jo SY, Park HJ, Chang SK, Byeon JS, Myung SJ. A randomized, double-blind, placebo-controlled multicenter trial of saccharomyces boulardii in irritable bowel syndrome: effect on quality of life. *J Clin Gastroenterol* 2011; **45**: 679-683 [PMID: 21301358 DOI: 10.1097/MCG.0b013e318204593e]

198 **Michail S**, Kenche H. Gut microbiota is not modified by Randomized, Double-blind, Placebo-controlled Trial of VSL#3 in Diarrhea-predominant Irritable Bowel Syndrome. *Probiotics Antimicrob Proteins* 2011; **3**: 1-7 [PMID: 22247743 DOI: 10.1007/s12602-010-9059-y]

199 **Brigidi P**, Vitali B, Swennen E, Bazzocchi G, Matteuzzi D. Effects of probiotic administration upon the composition and enzymatic activity of human fecal microbiota in patients with irritable bowel syndrome or functional diarrhea. *Res Microbiol* 2001; **152**: 735-741 [PMID: 11686387 DOI: 10.1016/S0923-2508(01)01254-2]

200 **Gibson GR**, Wang X. Regulatory effects of bifidobacteria on the growth of other colonic bacteria. *J Appl Bacteriol* 1994; **77**: 412-420 [PMID: 7989269]

201 **Liévin V**, Peiffer I, Hudault S, Rochat F, Brassart D, Neeser JR, Servin AL. Bifidobacterium strains from resident infant human gastrointestinal microflora exert antimicrobial activity. *Gut* 2000; **47**: 646-652 [PMID: 11034580 DOI: 10.1136/gut.47.5.646]

202 **Mattar AF**, Teitelbaum DH, Drongowski RA, Yongyi F, Harmon CM, Coran AG. Probiotics up-regulate MUC-2 mucin gene expression in a Caco-2 cell-culture model. *Pediatr Surg Int* 2002;

18: 586-590 [PMID: 12471471]
203 **Kim Y**, Kim SH, Whang KY, Kim YJ, Oh S. Inhibition of Escherichia coli O157: H7 attachment by interactions between lactic acid bacteria and intestinal epithelial cells. *J Microbiol Biotechnol* 2008; **18**: 1278-1285 [PMID: 18667857]
204 **Da Silva S**, Robbe-Masselot C, Ait-Belgnaoui A, Mancuso A, Mercade-Loubière M, Salvador-Cartier C, Gillet M, Ferrier L, Loubière P, Dague E, Theodorou V, Mercier-Bonin M. Stress disrupts intestinal mucus barrier in rats via mucin O-glycosylation shift: prevention by a probiotic treatment. *Am J Physiol Gastrointest Liver Physiol* 2014; **307**: G420-G429 [PMID: 24970779 DOI: 10.1152/ajpgi.00290.2013]
205 **Snape WJ**, Carlson GM, Cohen S. Colonic myoelectric activity in the irritable bowel syndrome. *Gastroenterology* 1976; **70**: 326-330 [PMID: 765183]
206 **Whitehead WE**, Engel BT, Schuster MM. Irritable bowel syndrome: physiological and psychological differences between diarrhea-predominant and constipation-predominant patients. *Dig Dis Sci* 1980; **25**: 404-413 [PMID: 7379673]
207 **Ansari R**, Sohrabi S, Ghanaie O, Amjadi H, Merat S, Vahedi H, Khatibian M. Comparison of colonic transit time between patients with constipation-predominant irritable bowel syndrome and functional constipation. *Indian J Gastroenterol* 2010; **29**: 66-68 [PMID: 20443103 DOI: 10.1007/s12664-010-0015-2]
208 **Serra J**, Azpiroz F, Malagelada JR. Impaired transit and tolerance of intestinal gas in the irritable bowel syndrome. *Gut* 2001; **48**: 14-19 [PMID: 11115817]
209 **Miller LE**, Ouwehand AC. Probiotic supplementation decreases intestinal transit time: meta-analysis of randomized controlled trials. *World J Gastroenterol* 2013; **19**: 4718-4725 [PMID: 23922468 DOI: 10.3748/wjg.v19.i29.4718]
210 **Dimidi E**, Christodoulides S, Fragkos KC, Scott SM, Whelan K. The effect of probiotics on functional constipation in adults: a systematic review and meta-analysis of randomized controlled trials. *Am J Clin Nutr* 2014; **100**: 1075-1084 [PMID: 25099542 DOI: 10.3945/ajcn.114.089151]
211 **Eskesen D**, Jespersen L, Michelsen B, Whorwell PJ, Müller-Lissner S, Morberg CM. Effect of the probiotic strain Bifidobacterium animalis subsp. lactis, BB-12®, on defecation frequency in healthy subjects with low defecation frequency and abdominal discomfort: a randomised, double-blind, placebo-controlled, parallel-group trial. *Br J Nutr* 2015; **114**: 1638-1646 [PMID: 26382580 DOI: 10.1017/S0007114515003347]
212 **Choi CH**, Kwon JG, Kim SK, Myung SJ, Park KS, Sohn CI, Rhee PL, Lee KJ, Lee OY, Jung HK, Jee SR, Jeen YT, Choi MG, Choi SC, Huh KC, Park H. Efficacy of combination therapy with probiotics and mosapride in patients with IBS without diarrhea: a randomized, double-blind, placebo-controlled, multicenter, phase II trial. *Neurogastroenterol Motil* 2015; **27**: 705-716 [PMID: 25809913 DOI: 10.1111/nmo.12544]
213 **Johnson AC**, Greenwood-Van Meerveld B, McRorie J. Effects of Bifidobacterium infantis 35624 on post-inflammatory visceral hypersensitivity in the rat. *Dig Dis Sci* 2011; **56**: 3179-3186 [PMID: 21562785 DOI: 10.1007/s10620-011-1730-y]
214 **Distrutti E**, Cipriani S, Mencarelli A, Renga B, Fiorucci S. Probiotics VSL#3 protect against development of visceral pain in murine model of irritable bowel syndrome. *PLoS One* 2013; **8**: e63893 [PMID: 23691109 DOI: 10.1371/journal.pone.0063893]
215 **Bercik P**, Denou E, Collins J, Jackson W, Lu J, Jury J, Deng Y, Blennerhassett P, Macri J, McCoy KD, Verdu EF, Collins SM. The intestinal microbiota affect central levels of brain-derived neurotropic factor and behavior in mice. *Gastroenterology* 2011; **141**: 599-609, 609.e1-e3 [PMID: 21683077 DOI: 10.1053/j.gastro.2011.04.052]
216 **Bravo JA**, Forsythe P, Chew MV, Escaravage E, Savignac HM, Dinan TG, Bienenstock J, Cryan JF. Ingestion of Lactobacillus strain regulates emotional behavior and central GABA receptor expression in a mouse via the vagus nerve. *Proc Natl Acad Sci USA* 2011; **108**: 16050-16055 [PMID: 21876150 DOI: 10.1073/pnas.1102999108]
217 **Ludidi S**, Jonkers DM, Koning CJ, Kruimel JW, Mulder L, van der Vaart IB, Conchillo JM, Masclee AA. Randomized clinical trial on the effect of a multispecies probiotic on visceroperception in hypersensitive IBS patients. *Neurogastroenterol Motil* 2014; **26**: 705-714 [PMID: 24588932 DOI: 10.1111/nmo.12320]
218 **Ohman L**, Simrén M. Pathogenesis of IBS: role of inflammation, immunity and neuroimmune interactions. *Nat Rev Gastroenterol Hepatol* 2010; **7**: 163-173 [PMID: 20101257 DOI: 10.1038/nrgastro.2010.4]
219 **Bashashati M**, Rezaei N, Bashashati H, Shafieyoun A, Daryani NE, Sharkey KA, Storr M. Cytokine gene polymorphisms are associated with irritable bowel syndrome: a systematic review and meta-analysis. *Neurogastroenterol Motil* 2012; **24**: 1102-e566 [PMID: 22897390 DOI: 10.1111/j.1365-2982.2012.01990.x]
220 **Hughes PA**, Zola H, Penttila IA, Blackshaw LA, Andrews JM, Krumbiegel D. Immune activation in irritable bowel syndrome: can neuroimmune interactions explain symptoms? *Am J Gastroenterol* 2013; **108**: 1066-1074 [PMID: 23649183 DOI: 10.1038/ajg.2013.120]
221 **Martín R**, Chain F, Miquel S, Natividad JM, Sokol H, Verdu EF, Langella P, Bermúdez-Humarán LG. Effects in the use of a genetically engineered strain of Lactococcus lactis delivering in situ IL-10 as a therapy to treat low-grade colon inflammation. *Hum Vaccin Immunother* 2014; **10**: 1611-1621 [PMID: 24732667 DOI: 10.4161/hv.28549]
222 **Madsen K**, Cornish A, Soper P, McKaigney C, Jijon H, Yachimec C, Doyle J, Jewell L, De Simone C. Probiotic bacteria enhance murine and human intestinal epithelial barrier function. *Gastroenterology* 2001; **121**: 580-591 [PMID: 11522742]
223 **Shi CZ**, Chen HQ, Liang Y, Xia Y, Yang YZ, Yang J, Zhang JD, Wang SH, Liu J, Qin HL. Combined probiotic bacteria promotes intestinal epithelial barrier function in interleukin-10-gene-deficient mice. *World J Gastroenterol* 2014; **20**: 4636-4647 [PMID: 24782616 DOI: 10.3748/wjg.v20.i16.4636]
224 **Nébot-Vivinus M**, Harkat C, Bzioueche H, Cartier C, Plichon-Dainese R, Moussa L, Eutamene H, Pishvaie D, Holowacz S, Seyrig C, Piche T, Theodorou V. Multispecies probiotic protects gut barrier function in experimental models. *World J Gastroenterol* 2014; **20**: 6832-6843 [PMID: 24944474 DOI: 10.3748/wjg.v20.i22.6832]
225 **Laval L**, Martin R, Natividad JN, Chain F, Miquel S, Desclée de Maredsous C, Capronnier S, Sokol H, Verdu EF, van Hylckama Vlieg JE, Bermúdez-Humarán LG, Smokvina T, Langella P. Lactobacillus rhamnosus CNCM I-3690 and the commensal bacterium Faecalibacterium prausnitzii A2-165 exhibit similar protective effects to induced barrier hyper-permeability in mice. *Gut Microbes* 2015; **6**: 1-9 [PMID: 25517879 DOI: 10.4161/19490976.2014.990784]
226 **Pagnini C**, Saeed R, Bamias G, Arseneau KO, Pizarro TT, Cominelli F. Probiotics promote gut health through stimulation of epithelial innate immunity. *Proc Natl Acad Sci USA* 2010; **107**: 454-459 [PMID: 20018654 DOI: 10.1073/pnas.0910307107]
227 **Hart AL**, Lammers K, Brigidi P, Vitali B, Rizzello F, Gionchetti P, Campieri M, Kamm MA, Knight SC, Stagg AJ. Modulation of human dendritic cell phenotype and function by probiotic bacteria. *Gut* 2004; **53**: 1602-1609 [PMID: 15479680 DOI: 10.1136/gut.2003.037325]
228 **Rodes L**, Khan A, Paul A, Coussa-Charley M, Marinescu D, Tomaro-Duchesneau C, Shao W, Kahouli I, Prakash S. Effect of probiotics Lactobacillus and Bifidobacterium on gut-derived lipopolysaccharides and inflammatory cytokines: an in vitro study using a human colonic microbiota model. *J Microbiol Biotechnol* 2013; **23**: 518-526 [PMID: 23568206]
229 **Urbanska AM**, Paul A, Bhathena J, Prakash S. Suppression of tumorigenesis: modulation of inflammatory cytokines by oral administration of microencapsulated probiotic yogurt formulation. *Int J Inflam* 2010; **2010**: 894972 [PMID: 21188222 DOI: 10.4061/2010/894972]
230 **Barouei J**, Moussavi M, Hodgson DM. Perinatal maternal probiotic intervention impacts immune responses and ileal mucin

gene expression in a rat model of irritable bowel syndrome. *Benef Microbes* 2015; **6**: 83-95 [PMID: 25245571 DOI: 10.3920/BM2013.0011]

231 **Spaiser SJ**, Culpepper T, Nieves C, Ukhanova M, Mai V, Percival SS, Christman MC, Langkamp-Henken B. Lactobacillus gasseri KS-13, Bifidobacterium bifidum G9-1, and Bifidobacterium longum MM-2 Ingestion Induces a Less Inflammatory Cytokine Profile and a Potentially Beneficial Shift in Gut Microbiota in Older Adults: A Randomized, Double-Blind, Placebo-Controlled, Crossover Study. *J Am Coll Nutr* 2015; **34**: 459-469 [PMID: 25909149 DOI: 10.1080/07315724.2014.983249]

232 **Abbas Z**, Yakoob J, Jafri W, Ahmad Z, Azam Z, Usman MW, Shamim S, Islam M. Cytokine and clinical response to Saccharomyces boulardii therapy in diarrhea-dominant irritable bowel syndrome: a randomized trial. *Eur J Gastroenterol Hepatol* 2014; **26**: 630-639 [PMID: 24722560 DOI: 10.1097/MEG.0000000000000094]

233 **Boren J**, Lee WN, Bassilian S, Centelles JJ, Lim S, Ahmed S, Boros LG, Cascante M. The stable isotope-based dynamic metabolic profile of butyrate-induced HT29 cell differentiation. *J Biol Chem* 2003; **278**: 28395-28402 [PMID: 12750369 DOI: 10.1074/jbc.M302932200]

234 **Ogawa H**, Rafiee P, Fisher PJ, Johnson NA, Otterson MF, Binion DG. Butyrate modulates gene and protein expression in human intestinal endothelial cells. *Biochem Biophys Res Commun* 2003; **309**: 512-519 [PMID: 12963019 DOI: 10.1016/j.bbrc.2003.08.026]

235 **Gaudier E**, Jarry A, Blottière HM, de Coppet P, Buisine MP, Aubert JP, Laboisse C, Cherbut C, Hoebler C. Butyrate specifically modulates MUC gene expression in intestinal epithelial goblet cells deprived of glucose. *Am J Physiol Gastrointest Liver Physiol* 2004; **287**: G1168-G1174 [PMID: 15308471 DOI: 10.1152/ajpgi.00219.2004]

236 **Roediger WE**. Role of anaerobic bacteria in the metabolic welfare of the colonic mucosa in man. *Gut* 1980; **21**: 793-798 [PMID: 7429343]

237 **McIntyre A**, Gibson PR, Young GP. Butyrate production from dietary fibre and protection against large bowel cancer in a rat model. *Gut* 1993; **34**: 386-391 [PMID: 8386131]

238 **Vanhoutvin SA**, Troost FJ, Kilkens TO, Lindsey PJ, Hamer HM, Jonkers DM, Venema K, Brummer RJ. The effects of butyrate enemas on visceral perception in healthy volunteers. *Neurogastroenterol Motil* 2009; **21**: 952-e76 [PMID: 19460106 DOI: 10.1111/j.1365-2982.2009.01324.x]

239 **Fukumoto S**, Tatewaki M, Yamada T, Fujimiya M, Mantyh C, Voss M, Eubanks S, Harris M, Pappas TN, Takahashi T. Short-chain fatty acids stimulate colonic transit via intraluminal 5-HT release in rats. *Am J Physiol Regul Integr Comp Physiol* 2003; **284**: R1269-R1276 [PMID: 12676748 DOI: 10.1152/ajpregu.00442.2002]

240 **Treem WR**, Ahsan N, Kastoff G, Hyams JS. Fecal short-chain fatty acids in patients with diarrhea-predominant irritable bowel syndrome: in vitro studies of carbohydrate fermentation. *J Pediatr Gastroenterol Nutr* 1996; **23**: 280-286 [PMID: 8890079]

241 **Ferrario C**, Taverniti V, Milani C, Fiore W, Laureati M, De Noni I, Stuknyte M, Chouaia B, Riso P, Guglielmetti S. Modulation of fecal Clostridiales bacteria and butyrate by probiotic intervention with Lactobacillus paracasei DG varies among healthy adults. *J Nutr* 2014; **144**: 1787-1796 [PMID: 25332478 DOI: 10.3945/jn.114.197723]

242 **Kato K**, Mizuno S, Umesaki Y, Ishii Y, Sugitani M, Imaoka A, Otsuka M, Hasunuma O, Kurihara R, Iwasaki A, Arakawa Y. Randomized placebo-controlled trial assessing the effect of bifidobacteria-fermented milk on active ulcerative colitis. *Aliment Pharmacol Ther* 2004; **20**: 1133-1141 [PMID: 15569116 DOI: 10.1111/j.1365-2036.2004.02268.x]

243 **Mohan R**, Koebnick C, Schildt J, Mueller M, Radke M, Blaut M. Effects of Bifidobacterium lactis Bb12 supplementation on body weight, fecal pH, acetate, lactate, calprotectin, and IgA in preterm infants. *Pediatr Res* 2008; **64**: 418-422 [PMID: 18552710 DOI: 10.1203/PDR.0b013e318181b7fa]

244 **Dinan TG**, Quigley EM, Ahmed SM, Scully P, O'Brien S, O'Mahony L, O'Mahony S, Shanahan F, Keeling PW. Hypothalamic-pituitary-gut axis dysregulation in irritable bowel syndrome: plasma cytokines as a potential biomarker? *Gastroenterology* 2006; **130**: 304-311 [PMID: 16472586 DOI: 10.1053/j.gastro.2005.11.033]

245 **Kennedy PJ**, Cryan JF, Quigley EM, Dinan TG, Clarke G. A sustained hypothalamic-pituitary-adrenal axis response to acute psychosocial stress in irritable bowel syndrome. *Psychol Med* 2014; **44**: 3123-3134 [PMID: 25065954 DOI: 10.1017/S003329171400052X]

246 **Barouei J**, Moussavi M, Hodgson DM. Effect of maternal probiotic intervention on HPA axis, immunity and gut microbiota in a rat model of irritable bowel syndrome. *PLoS One* 2012; **7**: e46051 [PMID: 23071537 DOI: 10.1371/journal.pone.0046051]

247 **Gareau MG**, Jury J, MacQueen G, Sherman PM, Perdue MH. Probiotic treatment of rat pups normalises corticosterone release and ameliorates colonic dysfunction induced by maternal separation. *Gut* 2007; **56**: 1522-1528 [PMID: 17339238 DOI: 10.1136/gut.2006.117176]

248 **Savignac HM**, Tramullas M, Kiely B, Dinan TG, Cryan JF. Bifidobacteria modulate cognitive processes in an anxious mouse strain. *Behav Brain Res* 2015; **287**: 59-72 [PMID: 25794930 DOI: 10.1016/j.bbr.2015.02.044]

249 **Distrutti E**, O'Reilly JA, McDonald C, Cipriani S, Renga B, Lynch MA, Fiorucci S. Modulation of intestinal microbiota by the probiotic VSL#3 resets brain gene expression and ameliorates the age-related deficit in LTP. *PLoS One* 2014; **9**: e106503 [PMID: 25202975 DOI: 10.1371/journal.pone.0106503]

250 **O'Sullivan E**, Barrett E, Grenham S, Fitzgerald P, Stanton C, Ross RP, Quigley EM, Cryan JF, Dinan TG. BDNF expression in the hippocampus of maternally separated rats: does Bifidobacterium breve 6330 alter BDNF levels? *Benef Microbes* 2011; **2**: 199-207 [PMID: 21986359 DOI: 10.3920/BM2011.0015]

251 **Pineiro M**, Asp NG, Reid G, Macfarlane S, Morelli L, Brunser O, Tuohy K. FAO Technical meeting on prebiotics. *J Clin Gastroenterol* 2008; **42** Suppl 3 Pt 2: S156-S159 [PMID: 18685504 DOI: 10.1097/MCG.0b013e31817f184e]

252 **Roberfroid MB**. Functional foods: concepts and application to inulin and oligofructose. *Br J Nutr* 2002; **87** Suppl 2: S139-S143 [PMID: 12088510 DOI: 10.1079/BJN/2002529]

253 **Boehm G**, Stahl B, Jelinek J, Knol J, Miniello V, Moro GE. Prebiotic carbohydrates in human milk and formulas. *Acta Paediatr Suppl* 2005; **94**: 18-21 [PMID: 16214760]

254 **Chatchatee P**, Lee WS, Carrilho E, Kosuwon P, Simakachorn N, Yavuz Y, Schouten B, Graaff PL, Szajewska H. Effects of growing-up milk supplemented with prebiotics and LCPUFAs on infections in young children. *J Pediatr Gastroenterol Nutr* 2014; **58**: 428-437 [PMID: 24614142 DOI: 10.1097/MPG.0000000000000252]

255 **Neyrinck AM**, Van Hée VF, Bindels LB, De Backer F, Cani PD, Delzenne NM. Polyphenol-rich extract of pomegranate peel alleviates tissue inflammation and hypercholesterolaemia in high-fat diet-induced obese mice: potential implication of the gut microbiota. *Br J Nutr* 2013; **109**: 802-809 [PMID: 22676910 DOI: 10.1017/S0007114512002206]

256 **Yasuda A**, Inoue K, Sanbongi C, Yanagisawa R, Ichinose T, Tanaka M, Yoshikawa T, Takano H. Dietary supplementation with fructooligosaccharides attenuates allergic peritonitis in mice. *Biochem Biophys Res Commun* 2012; **422**: 546-550 [PMID: 22580001 DOI: 10.1016/j.bbrc.2012.05.007]

257 **Arslanoglu S**, Moro GE, Boehm G, Wienz F, Stahl B, Bertino E. Early neutral prebiotic oligosaccharide supplementation reduces the incidence of some allergic manifestations in the first 5 years of life. *J Biol Regul Homeost Agents* 2012; **26**: 49-59 [PMID: 23158515]

258 **Hayen SM**, Kostadinova AI, Garssen J, Otten HG, Willemsen LE. Novel immunotherapy approaches to food allergy. *Curr Opin Allergy Clin Immunol* 2014; **14**: 549-556 [PMID: 25159183 DOI: 10.1097/ACI.0000000000000109]

259 **Dasopoulou M**, Briana DD, Boutsikou T, Karakasidou E,

Roma E, Costalos C, Malamitsi-Puchner A. Motilin and gastrin secretion and lipid profile in preterm neonates following prebiotics supplementation: a double-blind randomized controlled study. *JPEN J Parenter Enteral Nutr* 2015; **39**: 359-368 [PMID: 24233255 DOI: 10.1177/0148607113510182]

260 **Armanian AM**, Sadeghnia A, Hoseinzadeh M, Mirlohi M, Feizi A, Salehimehr N, Saee N, Nazari J. The Effect of Neutral Oligosaccharides on Reducing the Incidence of Necrotizing Enterocolitis in Preterm infants: A Randomized Clinical Trial. *Int J Prev Med* 2014; **5**: 1387-1395 [PMID: 25538834]

261 **Magrone T**, Jirillo E. Childhood obesity: immune response and nutritional approaches. *Front Immunol* 2015; **6**: 76 [PMID: 25759691 DOI: 10.3389/fimmu.2015.00076]

262 **Mirmiran P**, Bahadoran Z, Azizi F. Functional foods-based diet as a novel dietary approach for management of type 2 diabetes and its complications: A review. *World J Diabetes* 2014; **5**: 267-281 [PMID: 24936248 DOI: 10.4239/wjd.v5.i3.267]

263 **Romero-Gómez M**, Montagnese S, Jalan R. Hepatic encephalopathy in patients with acute decompensation of cirrhosis and acute-on-chronic liver failure. *J Hepatol* 2015; **62**: 437-447 [PMID: 25218789 DOI: 10.1016/j.jhep.2014.09.005]

264 **Ghouri YA**, Richards DM, Rahimi EF, Krill JT, Jelinek KA, DuPont AW. Systematic review of randomized controlled trials of probiotics, prebiotics, and synbiotics in inflammatory bowel disease. *Clin Exp Gastroenterol* 2014; **7**: 473-487 [PMID: 25525379 DOI: 10.2147/CEG.S27530]

265 **Collado Yurrita L**, San Mauro Martín I, Ciudad-Cabañas MJ, Calle-Purón ME, Hernández Cabria M. Effectiveness of inulin intake on indicators of chronic constipation; a meta-analysis of controlled randomized clinical trials. *Nutr Hosp* 2014; **30**: 244-252 [PMID: 25208775 DOI: 10.3305/nh.2014.30.2.7565]

266 **Hunter JO**, Tuffnell Q, Lee AJ. Controlled trial of oligofructose in the management of irritable bowel syndrome. *J Nutr* 1999; **129**: 1451S-1453S [PMID: 10395619]

267 **Olesen M**, Gudmand-Hoyer E. Efficacy, safety, and tolerability of fructooligosaccharides in the treatment of irritable bowel syndrome. *Am J Clin Nutr* 2000; **72**: 1570-1575 [PMID: 11101487]

268 **Paineau D**, Payen F, Panserieu S, Coulombier G, Sobaszek A, Lartigau I, Brabet M, Galmiche JP, Tripodi D, Sacher-Huvelin S, Chapalain V, Zourabichvili O, Respondek F, Wagner A, Bornet FR. The effects of regular consumption of short-chain fructo-oligosaccharides on digestive comfort of subjects with minor functional bowel disorders. *Br J Nutr* 2008; **99**: 311-318 [PMID: 17697398 DOI: 10.1017/S000711450779894X]

269 **Hasler WL**. Lactulose breath testing, bacterial overgrowth, and IBS: just a lot of hot air? *Gastroenterology* 2003; **125**: 1898-1900; discussion 1900 [PMID: 14724846 DOI: 10.1053/j.gastro.2003.08.038]

270 **Snook J**, Shepherd HA. Bran supplementation in the treatment of irritable bowel syndrome. *Aliment Pharmacol Ther* 1994; **8**: 511-514 [PMID: 7865643 DOI: 10.1111/j.1365-2036.1994.tb00323.x]

271 **Badiali D**, Corazziari E, Habib FI, Tomei E, Bausano G, Magrini P, Anzini F, Torsoli A. Effect of wheat bran in treatment of chronic nonorganic constipation. A double-blind controlled trial. *Dig Dis Sci* 1995; **40**: 349-356 [PMID: 7851201]

272 **Nelis GF**, Vermeeren MA, Jansen W. Role of fructose-sorbitol malabsorption in the irritable bowel syndrome. *Gastroenterology* 1990; **99**: 1016-1020 [PMID: 2394324]

273 **Symons P**, Jones MP, Kellow JE. Symptom provocation in irritable bowel syndrome. Effects of differing doses of fructose-sorbitol. *Scand J Gastroenterol* 1992; **27**: 940-944 [PMID: 1455191]

274 **Ong DK**, Mitchell SB, Barrett JS, Shepherd SJ, Irving PM, Biesiekierski JR, Smith S, Gibson PR, Muir JG. Manipulation of dietary short chain carbohydrates alters the pattern of gas production and genesis of symptoms in irritable bowel syndrome. *J Gastroenterol Hepatol* 2010; **25**: 1366-1373 [PMID: 20659225 DOI: 10.1111/j.1440-1746.2010.06370.x]

275 **Halmos EP**, Power VA, Shepherd SJ, Gibson PR, Muir JG. A diet low in FODMAPs reduces symptoms of irritable bowel syndrome. *Gastroenterology* 2014; **146**: 67-75.e5 [PMID: 24076059 DOI: 10.1053/j.gastro.2013.09.046]

276 **Staudacher HM**, Lomer MC, Anderson JL, Barrett JS, Muir JG, Irving PM, Whelan K. Fermentable carbohydrate restriction reduces luminal bifidobacteria and gastrointestinal symptoms in patients with irritable bowel syndrome. *J Nutr* 2012; **142**: 1510-1518 [PMID: 22739368 DOI: 10.3945/jn.112.159285]

277 **Tuck CJ**, Muir JG, Barrett JS, Gibson PR. Fermentable oligosaccharides, disaccharides, monosaccharides and polyols: role in irritable bowel syndrome. *Expert Rev Gastroenterol Hepatol* 2014; **8**: 819-834 [PMID: 24830318 DOI: 10.1586/17474124.2014.917956]

278 **Halmos EP**, Christophersen CT, Bird AR, Shepherd SJ, Gibson PR, Muir JG. Diets that differ in their FODMAP content alter the colonic luminal microenvironment. *Gut* 2015; **64**: 93-100 [PMID: 25016597 DOI: 10.1136/gutjnl-2014-307264]

279 **Saneian H**, Pourmoghaddas Z, Roohafza H, Gholamrezaei A. Synbiotic containing Bacillus coagulans and fructo-oligosaccharides for functional abdominal pain in children. *Gastroenterol Hepatol Bed Bench* 2015; **8**: 56-65 [PMID: 25584177]

280 **Tsuchiya J**, Barreto R, Okura R, Kawakita S, Fesce E, Marotta F. Single-blind follow-up study on the effectiveness of a symbiotic preparation in irritable bowel syndrome. *Chin J Dig Dis* 2004; **5**: 169-174 [PMID: 15612887 DOI: 10.1111/j.1443-9573.2004.00176.x]

281 **Rogha M**, Esfahani MZ, Zargarzadeh AH. The efficacy of a synbiotic containing Bacillus Coagulans in treatment of irritable bowel syndrome: a randomized placebo-controlled trial. *Gastroenterol Hepatol Bed Bench* 2014; **7**: 156-163 [PMID: 25120896]

282 **Bittner AC**, Croffut RM, Stranahan MC. Prescript-Assist probiotic-prebiotic treatment for irritable bowel syndrome: a methodologically oriented, 2-week, randomized, placebo-controlled, double-blind clinical study. *Clin Ther* 2005; **27**: 755-761 [PMID: 16117982 DOI: 10.1016/j.clinthera.2005.06.005]

283 **Quigley EM**. Therapies aimed at the gut microbiota and inflammation: antibiotics, prebiotics, probiotics, synbiotics, anti-inflammatory therapies. *Gastroenterol Clin North Am* 2011; **40**: 207-222 [PMID: 21333908 DOI: 10.1016/j.gtc.2010.12.009]

284 **Riordan SM**, McIver CJ, Walker BM, Duncombe VM, Bolin TD, Thomas MC. The lactulose breath hydrogen test and small intestinal bacterial overgrowth. *Am J Gastroenterol* 1996; **91**: 1795-1803 [PMID: 8792701]

285 **Pimentel M**, Chow EJ, Lin HC. Eradication of small intestinal bacterial overgrowth reduces symptoms of irritable bowel syndrome. *Am J Gastroenterol* 2000; **95**: 3503-3506 [PMID: 11151884 DOI: 10.1111/j.1572-0241.2000.03368.x]

286 **Bratten JR**, Spanier J, Jones MP. Lactulose breath testing does not discriminate patients with irritable bowel syndrome from healthy controls. *Am J Gastroenterol* 2008; **103**: 958-963 [PMID: 18371134 DOI: 10.1111/j.1572-0241.2008.01785.x]

287 **Schmulson M**, Bielsa MV, Carmona-Sánchez R, Hernández A, López-Colombo A, López Vidal Y, Peláez-Luna M, Remes-Troche JM, Tamayo JL, Valdovinos MA. Microbiota, gastrointestinal infections, low-grade inflammation, and antibiotic therapy in irritable bowel syndrome: an evidence-based review. *Rev Gastroenterol Mex* 2014; **79**: 96-134 [PMID: 24857420 DOI: 10.1016/j.rgmx.2014.01.004]

288 **Rezaie A**, Nikfar S, Abdollahi M. The place of antibiotics in management of irritable bowel syndrome: a systematic review and meta-analysis. *Arch Med Sci* 2010; **6**: 49-55 [PMID: 22371720 DOI: 10.5114/aoms.2010.13507]

289 **Pimentel M**, Park S, Mirocha J, Kane SV, Kong Y. The effect of a nonabsorbed oral antibiotic (rifaximin) on the symptoms of the irritable bowel syndrome: a randomized trial. *Ann Intern Med* 2006; **145**: 557-563 [PMID: 17043337 DOI: 10.7326/0003-4819-145-8200610170-00004]

290 **Pimentel M**, Lembo A, Chey WD, Zakko S, Ringel Y, Yu J, Mareya SM, Shaw AL, Bortey E, Forbes WP. Rifaximin therapy

for patients with irritable bowel syndrome without constipation. *N Engl J Med* 2011; **364**: 22-32 [PMID: 21208106 DOI: 10.1056/NEJMoa1004409]

291 **Menees SB**, Maneerattannaporn M, Kim HM, Chey WD. The efficacy and safety of rifaximin for the irritable bowel syndrome: a systematic review and meta-analysis. *Am J Gastroenterol* 2012; **107**: 28-35; quiz 36 [PMID: 22045120 DOI: 10.1038/ajg.2011.355]

292 **Schoenfeld P**, Pimentel M, Chang L, Lembo A, Chey WD, Yu J, Paterson C, Bortey E, Forbes WP. Safety and tolerability of rifaximin for the treatment of irritable bowel syndrome without constipation: a pooled analysis of randomised, double-blind, placebo-controlled trials. *Aliment Pharmacol Ther* 2014; **39**: 1161-1168 [PMID: 24697851 DOI: 10.1111/apt.12735]

293 **Konturek PC**, Haziri D, Brzozowski T, Hess T, Heyman S, Kwiecien S, Konturek SJ, Koziel J. Emerging role of fecal microbiota therapy in the treatment of gastrointestinal and extra-gastrointestinal diseases. *J Physiol Pharmacol* 2015; **66**: 483-491 [PMID: 26348073]

294 **Gough E**, Shaikh H, Manges AR. Systematic review of intestinal microbiota transplantation (fecal bacteriotherapy) for recurrent Clostridium difficile infection. *Clin Infect Dis* 2011; **53**: 994-1002 [PMID: 22002980 DOI: 10.1093/cid/cir632]

295 **Cammarota G**, Ianiro G, Gasbarrini A. Fecal microbiota transplantation for the treatment of Clostridium difficile infection: a systematic review. *J Clin Gastroenterol* 2014; **48**: 693-702 [PMID: 24440934 DOI: 10.1097/MCG.0000000000000046]

296 **Borody TJ**, Warren EF, Leis S, Surace R, Ashman O. Treatment of ulcerative colitis using fecal bacteriotherapy. *J Clin Gastroenterol* 2003; **37**: 42-47 [PMID: 12811208]

297 **Zhang FM**, Wang HG, Wang M, Cui BT, Fan ZN, Ji GZ. Fecal microbiota transplantation for severe enterocolonic fistulizing Crohn's disease. *World J Gastroenterol* 2013; **19**: 7213-7216 [PMID: 24222969 DOI: 10.3748/wjg.v19.i41.7213]

298 **Suskind DL**, Brittnacher MJ, Wahbeh G, Shaffer ML, Hayden HS, Qin X, Singh N, Damman CJ, Hager KR, Nielson H, Miller SI. Fecal microbial transplant effect on clinical outcomes and fecal microbiome in active Crohn's disease. *Inflamm Bowel Dis* 2015; **21**: 556-563 [PMID: 25647155 DOI: 10.1097/MIB.0000000000000307]

299 **Suskind DL**, Singh N, Nielson H, Wahbeh G. Fecal microbial transplant via nasogastric tube for active pediatric ulcerative colitis. *J Pediatr Gastroenterol Nutr* 2015; **60**: 27-29 [PMID: 25162366 DOI: 10.1097/MPG.0000000000000544]

300 **Vermeire S**, Joossens M, Verbeke K, Wang J, Machiels K, Sabino J, Ferrante M, Van Assche G, Rutgeerts P, Raes J. Donor Species Richness Determines Faecal Microbiota Transplantation Success in Inflammatory Bowel Disease. *J Crohns Colitis* 2015; Epub ahead of print [PMID: 26519463]

301 **Kunde S**, Pham A, Bonczyk S, Crumb T, Duba M, Conrad H, Cloney D, Kugathasan S. Safety, tolerability, and clinical response after fecal transplantation in children and young adults with ulcerative colitis. *J Pediatr Gastroenterol Nutr* 2013; **56**: 597-601 [PMID: 23542823 DOI: 10.1097/MPG.0b013e318292fa0d]

302 **Landy J**, Walker AW, Li JV, Al-Hassi HO, Ronde E, English NR, Mann ER, Bernardo D, McLaughlin SD, Parkhill J, Ciclitira PJ, Clark SK, Knight SC, Hart AL. Variable alterations of the microbiota, without metabolic or immunological change, following faecal microbiota transplantation in patients with chronic pouchitis. *Sci Rep* 2015; **5**: 12955 [PMID: 26264409 DOI: 10.1038/srep12955]

303 **Crouzet L**, Gaultier E, Del'Homme C, Cartier C, Delmas E, Dapoigny M, Fioramonti J, Bernalier-Donadille A. The hypersensitivity to colonic distension of IBS patients can be transferred to rats through their fecal microbiota. *Neurogastroenterol Motil* 2013; **25**: e272-e282 [PMID: 23433203 DOI: 10.1111/nmo.12103]

304 **Bakken JS**, Borody T, Brandt LJ, Brill JV, Demarco DC, Franzos MA, Kelly C, Khoruts A, Louie T, Martinelli LP, Moore TA, Russell G, Surawicz C. Treating Clostridium difficile infection with fecal microbiota transplantation. *Clin Gastroenterol Hepatol* 2011; **9**: 1044-1049 [PMID: 21871249 DOI: 10.1016/j.cgh.2011.08.014]

305 **Borody TJ**, George L, Andrews P, Brandl S, Noonan S, Cole P, Hyland L, Morgan A, Maysey J, Moore-Jones D. Bowel-flora alteration: a potential cure for inflammatory bowel disease and irritable bowel syndrome? *Med J Aust* 1989; **150**: 604 [PMID: 2783214]

306 **Borody TJ**, Paramsothy S, Agrawal G. Fecal microbiota transplantation: indications, methods, evidence, and future directions. *Curr Gastroenterol Rep* 2013; **15**: 337 [PMID: 23852569 DOI: 10.1007/s11894-013-0337-1]

307 **Andrews PJ**, Borody TJ. "Putting back the bugs": bacterial treatment relieves chronic constipation and symptoms of irritable bowel syndrome. *Med J Aust* 1993; **159**: 633-634 [PMID: 8155121]

308 **Pinn DM**, Aroniadis OC, Brandt LJ. Is fecal microbiota transplantation the answer for irritable bowel syndrome? A single-center experience. *Am J Gastroenterol* 2014; **109**: 1831-1832 [PMID: 25373585 DOI: 10.1038/ajg.2014.295]

309 **Borody TJ**, Brandt LJ, Paramsothy S. Therapeutic faecal microbiota transplantation: current status and future developments. *Curr Opin Gastroenterol* 2014; **30**: 97-105 [PMID: 24257037 DOI: 10.1097/MOG.0000000000000027]

310 **Lo Vecchio A**, Cohen MB. Fecal microbiota transplantation for Clostridium difficile infection: benefits and barriers. *Curr Opin Gastroenterol* 2014; **30**: 47-53 [PMID: 24275671 DOI: 10.1097/MOG.0000000000000023]

311 **Pinn DM**, Aroniadis OC, Brandt LJ. Is fecal microbiota transplantation (FMT) an effective treatment for patients with functional gastrointestinal disorders (FGID)? *Neurogastroenterol Motil* 2015; **27**: 19-29 [PMID: 25424663 DOI: 10.1111/nmo.12479]

P- Reviewer: Bellini M, Engin AB **S- Editor**: Qi Y
L- Editor: A **E- Editor**: Liu XM

World Journal of Gastroenterology

Submit a Manuscript: http://www.wjgnet.com/esps/
Help Desk: http://www.wjgnet.com/esps/helpdesk.aspx
DOI: 10.3748/wjg.v22.i7.2242

World J Gastroenterol 2016 February 21; 22(7): 2242-2255
ISSN 1007-9327 (print) ISSN 2219-2840 (online)

TOPIC HIGHLIGHT

2016 Irritable Bowel Syndrome: Global view

Inflammation in irritable bowel syndrome: Myth or new treatment target?

Emanuele Sinagra, Giancarlo Pompei, Giovanni Tomasello, Francesco Cappello, Gaetano Cristian Morreale, Georgios Amvrosiadis, Francesca Rossi, Attilio Ignazio Lo Monte, Aroldo Gabriele Rizzo, Dario Raimondo

Emanuele Sinagra, Francesca Rossi, Dario Raimondo, Gastroenterology and Endoscopy Unit, Fondazione Istituto San Raffaele Giglio, Contrada Pietra Pollastra Pisciotto, 90015 Cefalù, Italy

Emanuele Sinagra, PhD Course in Surgical Biotechnology and Regenerative Medicine, University of Palermo, 90100 Palermo, Italy

Emanuele Sinagra, Giovanni Tomasello, Francesco Cappello, Euro-Mediterranean Institute of Science and Technology (IEMEST), 90100 Palermo, Italy

Giancarlo Pompei, Pathology Unit, Fondazione Istituto San Raffaele Giglio, Contrada Pietra Pollastra Pisciotto, 90015 Cefalù, Italy

Giovanni Tomasello, Francesco Cappello, Department of Experimental Biomedicine and Clinical Neuroscience, Section of Human Anatomy, University of Palermo, 90100 Palermo, Italy

Gaetano Cristian Morreale, Georgios Amvrosiadis, Unit of Gastroenterology, Ospedali Riuniti Villa Sofia-Vincenzo Cervello, 90100 Palermo, Italy

Attilio Ignazio Lo Monte, DICHIRONS, Department of Surgical, Oncological and Stomatological Disciplines, University of Palermo, 90100 Palermo, Italy

Aroldo Gabriele Rizzo, Unit of Pathology, Ospedali Riuniti Villa Sofia-Vincenzo Cervello, 90100 Palermo, Italy

Author contributions: Sinagra E designed the study; Morreale GC and Amvrosiadis G wrote the paper; Rizzo AG and Pompei G provided pictures supporting the studies; Rossi F contributed to the revision of the manuscript; Tomasello G wrote the section describing the role of endoscopy in irritable bowel syndrome; and Lo Monte AI, Cappello F and Raimondo D supervised the work.

Conflict-of-interest statement: All the authors declare that this research received no specific grant from any funding agency in the public, commercial, or not-for-profit sectors, thus disclosing any conflict of interests regarding such work.

Correspondence to: Dr. Emanuele Sinagra, Gastroenterology and Endoscopy Unit, Fondazione Istituto San Raffaele Giglio, Contrada Pietra Pollastra Pisciotto, via Zagara Snc, Contrada Ogliastrillo, 90015 Cefalù, Italy. emanuelesinagra83@googlemail.com
Telephone: +39-3-270193383
Fax: +39-9-21920406

Received: June 1, 2015
Peer-review started: June 3, 2015
First decision: July 17, 2015
Revised: September 28, 2015
Accepted: December 19, 2015
Article in press: December 19, 2015
Published online: February 21, 2016

Abstract

Low-grade intestinal inflammation plays a key role in the pathophysiology of irritable bowel syndrome (IBS), and this role is likely to be multifactorial. The aim of this review was to summarize the evidence on the spectrum of mucosal inflammation in IBS, highlighting the relationship of this inflammation to the pathophysiology of IBS and its connection to clinical practice. We carried out a bibliographic search in Medline and the Cochrane Library for the period of January 1966 to December 2014, focusing on publications describing an interaction between inflammation and IBS. Several evidences demonstrate microscopic and molecular abnormalities

in IBS patients. Understanding the mechanisms underlying low-grade inflammation in IBS may help to design clinical trials to test the efficacy and safety of drugs that target this pathophysiologic mechanism.

Key words: Inflammation; Irritable bowel syndrome; Mast cells; Neuroendocrine cells; Pathology

Core tip: Low-grade intestinal inflammation plays a key role in the pathophysiology of irritable bowel syndrome, and this influence is likely multifactorial. Several evidences showed microscopic and molecular abnormalities in large subsets of patients with irritable bowel syndrome. Understanding the mechanisms underlying the low-grade inflammation in this disease may help to design clinical trials to test the efficacy and safety of drugs that target this pathophysiologic mechanism.

Sinagra E, Pompei G, Tomasello G, Cappello F, Morreale GC, Amvrosiadis G, Rossi F, Lo Monte AI, Rizzo AG, Raimondo D. Inflammation in irritable bowel syndrome: Myth or new treatment target? *World J Gastroenterol* 2016; 22(7): 2242-2255 Available from: URL: http://www.wjgnet.com/1007-9327/full/v22/i7/2242.htm DOI: http://dx.doi.org/10.3748/wjg.v22.i7.2242

INTRODUCTION

Irritable bowel syndrome (IBS) is a chronic, relapsing, and remitting functional disorder of the gastrointestinal tract characterized by abdominal pain, bloating, and changes in bowel habits that lack a known structural or anatomic explanation[1].

IBS consists of a set of altered bowel habits over a period of time and includes abdominal pain and discomfort. IBS is one of the most common diagnoses in primary care, accounting for approximately 12% of all visits[2]. In addition, a survey conducted by Russo *et al*[3] found IBS to be the most common functional gastrointestinal diagnosis, comprising 35% of all outpatient referrals to gastroenterologists[2,3]. Therefore, IBS is also the most common diagnosis for gastroenterologists, accounting for 20%-50% of patient visits[2,4].

With regard to the sex-related prevalence of IBS, in Western countries, the prevalence of IBS in female patients outnumbers that in male patients by 2:1[5,6]. Furthermore, the ratio of female to male IBS sufferers in the non-patient population is 2:1, and within the patient population who seek consultations with primary care physicians, females outnumber male patients by 3:1[5,7]. Finally, in tertiary-care settings, the number of female IBS patients is four- to five-times higher than the number of males[5-8]. This prevalence should not only be strictly attributed to sex, but also to gender-related differences in healthcare-seeking behavior and sociocultural characteristics that vary between men and women with IBS as well as among different cultures[5,6].

According to the Rome Ⅲ criteria, IBS is defined based on the presence of recurrent abdominal pain or discomfort at least three days per month in the past three months associated with two or more of the following: (1) improvement with defecation; (2) onset associated with a change in frequency of stool; and (3) onset associated with a change in form (appearance) of stool. These criteria should be fulfilled for the previous three months with symptom onset at least six months before diagnosis[9].

Rome Ⅲ criteria subtype IBS according to the predominant bowel habit as IBS with constipation (IBS-C), IBS with diarrhea (IBS-D), mixed type, and unclassified[9]. To this end, the definition of bowel-habit type is based on the patient's description of the stool form by referring to the Bristol Stool Scale[10]. Furthermore, IBS patients can be divided into two categories: sporadic (nonspecific) and postinfectious (PI-IBS) inflammatory bowel disease-associated[11,12].

IBS symptoms cannot be explained by structural abnormalities, and specific laboratory tests or biomarkers are not available for IBS. Therefore, IBS is classified as a functional disorder whose diagnosis depends on the history of manifested symptoms[13].

The cause of IBS is unknown, but a single factor is not likely to be responsible for the several presentations of this complex disorder[1]; new fields of research in this area include mucosal inflammation, postinfectious low-grade inflammation, genetic and immunologic factors, alteration of the human microbiota, alterations of the intestinal permeability, and dietary and neuroendocrine factors[13]. Usually, routine histologic examinations do not show significant colonic mucosal abnormalities in the majority of IBS patients; however, recent quantitative histologic, immunohistochemical, and ultrastructural analyses have indicated subtle organic alterations in these patients.

This literature review aims to summarize the findings relating the spectrum of mucosal inflammation to IBS, highlighting their relationship to the pathophysiology of IBS and their connections, if any, to clinical practice.

RESEARCH

We carried out a bibliographic search in MEDLINE for the period of January 1966 to July 2015, and focused on identifying publications describing an interaction between inflammation and IBS. The keywords used were: irritable bowel syndrome, inflammation, mucosal inflammation, pathology, mast cells, neuroendocrine cells, immune cells, intestinal permeability, and enteric nerves. The inclusion criteria to select articles were based on design (systematic reviews, meta-analysis,

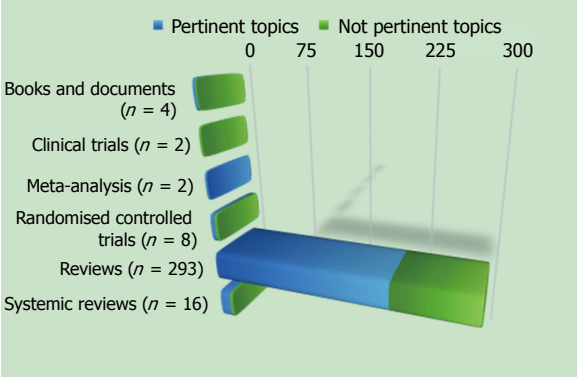


Figure 1 Literature findings on the relationship between irritable bowel syndrome and inflammation (*n* = 305).

clinical trials, and experimental studies on animals) and population (adult patients > 18 years of age). We excluded articles not pertinent to this topic.

According to the aforementioned criteria, we found 305 studies, and we excluded 100 studies because they were not pertinent to this topic (Figure 1).

ROLE OF ENDOSCOPY IN IBS

According to the American Gastroenterology Association, "a colonoscopy is recommended for patients over age 50 years (due to higher pretest probability of colon cancer), but in younger patients, performing a colonoscopy or sigmoidoscopy is determined by clinical features suggestive of disease (*e.g.*, diarrhea, weight loss), and may not be indicated"[14].

However, the British guidelines suggest that, "given the high frequency of colonic cancer in the population at large, an examination of the colon is advisable for a change in bowel habit over the age of 50"; the authors of these guidelines highlighted that, "as IBS patients have no increased risk of colon cancer, advice on screening for this is no different from the general population"[15].

More recently, Japanese guidelines suggested that "colonoscopy has a diagnostic value, not only for excluding organic diseases but also for supporting the existence of pathophysiology compatible to IBS due to visceral hypersensitivity to colonoscopic procedures and colonic spasms"[16].

A prospective, multicenter study performed by Ishihara and coworkers[17] aimed to determine the presence of organic colonic lesions in IBS patients. Their study showed that the prevalence of organic colonic diseases in IBS patients was at an acceptably low level, thus showing that the Rome Ⅲ criteria are specific for the diagnosis of IBS. Conversely, another study performed by Hsiao and coworkers[18] demonstrated that IBS was not associated with the development of colon cancer in Taiwan.

Despite these recommendations, a recent Korean survey indicated that colonoscopy was the most commonly required test (79.5%) in IBS patients[19], whereas a study performed by Lieberman and coworkers[20] to evaluate trends in the utilization and outcomes of colonoscopy in the United States from 2000 to 2011 showed that the most common reason for colonoscopy in patients aged < 50 years was the evaluation of symptoms, such as IBS (28.7%), together with bleeding or anemia (35.3%).

Based on these updated data, IBS still represents the majority of colonoscopic biopsies seen by pathologists[21] that are usually considered either normal or near to normal on routine histologic examination. These findings provide valuable information to the physician who is suspecting a diagnosis of IBS. However, the pathologists must be aware of variations in normal tissue as well as artifacts that may result from bowel preparations or the biopsy procedure in order to not to report these variations as abnormal. Furthermore, the pathologists must consider subtle morphologic changes reported in the intestinal mucosa in IBS and associated with chronic inflammatory cells, mast cells, enteroendocrine cells, and enteric nerves[22].

INFLAMMATION IN IBS

The intestinal mucosa harbors a florid immune system that can be regarded as "physiologically inflamed"[23]. Thus low-grade inflammation can only be evaluated using quantitative assessments[24]. IBS patients have been shown to exhibit significant increases in lamina propria immune cells in the colonic mucosa compared with healthy subjects, which appears to be more predominant in the right than in the left colon[25].

Granulocytes and plasma cells

More than ten years ago, O'Sullivan *et al*[26] evaluated the number of plasma cells, lymphocytes, eosinophils, neutrophils, and macrophages in a case-control study. Specifically, each cell type was semiquantitatively graded in hematoxylin-and-eosin-stained sections of the entire colon, and possible increases in the number of mast cells (MCs) in the colon of IBS patients compared with controls were examined using a monoclonal mouse antibody for human MC tryptase (AA1). Other than MCs, increases in cellular infiltrate were not observed in the IBS group, and the number of MCs was significantly increased in the cecum of IBS patients compared with controls.

Similarly, in 2008, Piche and coworkers[27] aimed to examine associations between fatigue, depression, and the MCs of the colonic mucosa in IBS by comparing the numbers of CD3-positive intraepithelial T lymphocytes, MCs, plasma cells, eosinophils, and neutrophils in cecal biopsies taken during colonoscopy. There was not a significant difference in the numbers of intraepithelial lymphocytes, plasma cells, eosinophils, or neutrophils between IBS patients and healthy controls, but the MC numbers per high-power field were significantly higher

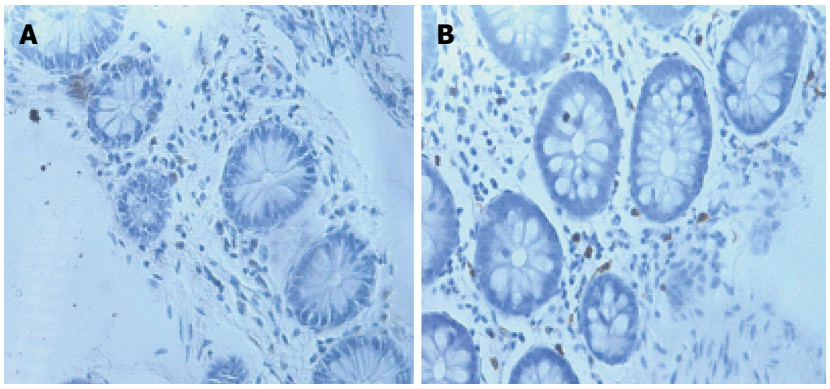


Figure 2 Immunohistochemistry for tryptase showing increases in the number of mast cells in the colonic mucosa in inflammatory bowel disease. A: Irritable bowel syndrome patient; B: Control (× 40 magnification). Courtesy of Giancarlo Pompei, personal data.

in IBS patients than in healthy controls (9.3 *vs* 4.0, $P = 0.001$). Furthermore, the number of MCs correlated with the severity of fatigue and depression scores in IBS patients but not in healthy controls[28].

With regard to the small bowel, Walker *et al*[29] examined the MC, eosinophil, and intraepithelial lymphocyte populations in duodenal biopsies of subjects with IBS and functional dyspepsia. Their study showed a significant increase in the number of intraepithelial lymphocytes in biopsies from the duodenum in patients with IBS-C. However, this increase was not observed in the second part of the duodenum. Nevertheless, MC counts were also higher in IBS cases in both the first and second parts of the duodenum, but this difference was only significant for constipation-predominant IBS[28]. Interestingly, the eosinophil counts in this study did not differ between IBS patients and controls in either the first or second part of the duodenum[28].

To date, a significant difference in the numbers of plasma cells, neutrophils, or eosinophils has not been demonstrated among IBS cases[28]. Importantly, increases in eosinophils were not identified in IBS, but the eosinophil counts were elevated in individuals with functional dyspepsia[29]. Functional dyspepsia and IBS demonstrate significant overlap in cross-sectional surveys[30], despite attempts to classify them separately, and a biomarker to predict the presence of IBS remains elusive[31]. Therefore, this histopathologic marker may serve to distinguish the two conditions[28].

MCs

MCs are innate immune cells involved in food allergies, wound healing, and protection against pathogens[32]. Their functional activation consists of a degranulation process, leading to the release of various compounds, such as histamine, tryptase, and chymase[32].

More than 40 years ago, Hiatt and Katz[33] were the first to demonstrate MC infiltration in the muscular layer of full-thickness colonic biopsy samples from four patients with "spastic colitis"[34]. Increases in the number of mucosal MCs have been observed in IBS patients in the rectum[35,36], rectosigmoid colon[37,38], descending colon[39-44], ascending colon[36], cecum[45], terminal ileum[25,36,46], jejunum[47-49], and duodenum[29,50] (Figure 2).

However, discrepancies in data obtained from these studies could be due to sex-specific differences, bowel preparation artifacts, fixation protocols, tissue orientation, sample size, or IBS-related recruitment criteria[32,43,44,51]. Furthermore, clinical studies have also yielded conflicting evidence correlating MC numbers with the onset of abdominal pain[32].

The number of functionally active MCs (exhibiting changes in the release of tryptase and histamine), rather than the absolute number of MCs, plays a pivotal role in IBS[43,50]. Consequently, the role of MCs in IBS may be affected by cells that are functionally active and form close connections with enteric and extrinsic nerve terminals, thus determining visceral hypersensitivity and altered gut function[47].

Lymphocytes

The aforementioned inflammatory changes described in the mucosa of IBS patients show that immune activation may play a role in IBS pathophysiology[34]. Mucosal T- and B-type lymphocytes are also part of the gut adaptive immune response to pathogens[32].

An increased density of T lymphocytes in the mucosa of IBS patients has been widely demonstrated. Specifically, the T-cell density is higher in the rectum[35,36,52], rectosigmoid colon[53], colon[38,48,54], cecum[26], jejunum[55], and duodenum[56]. Like for MCs, several studies showed that IBS patients exhibit a normal lymphocyte density in different intestinal tissue segments[19,36,38,53,57-61]. These discrepancies may be due to differences in the immunostaining techniques, quantification methods, and IBS-related recruitment criteria (Figure 3)[32].

Conversely, the density of B-cells in the rectum[19,36], colon[19,43,53,62], cecum[19,20], ileum[36], or jejunum[60] did not differ in IBS patients. However, Forshammar and coworkers[62] and others[32] found a decrease in secretory B cells in the colon (Figure 4).

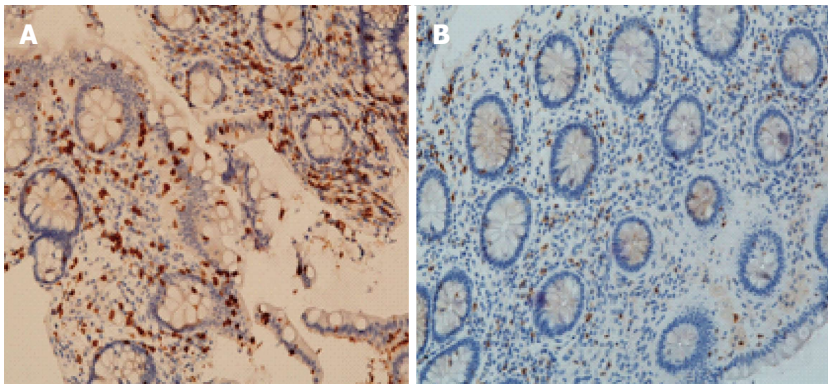


Figure 3 Immunohistochemistry for CD3 showing increase in the number of intraepithelial T-lymphocytes in the large bowel in inflammatory bowel disease. A: Irritable bowel syndrome patient; B: Normal distribution of T-lymphocytes, which are mainly distributed within the lamina propria of the large bowel of a control patient (× 20 magnification). Courtesy of Giancarlo Pompei, personal data.

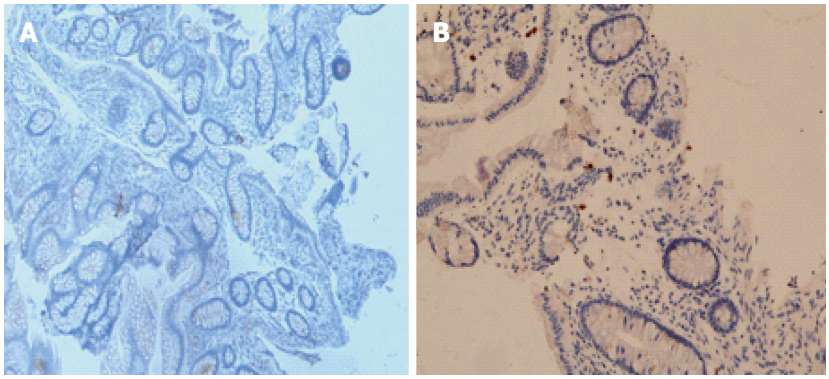


Figure 4 Immunohistochemical staining for CD20. An equivalent distribution of B lymphocytes in the lamina propria was seen in the large intestine. A: Patient with irritable bowel syndrome; B: Control patient (× 20 magnification). Courtesy of Giancarlo Pompei, personal data.

With regard to intraepithelial lymphocytes, several discrepancies have been reported in studies assessing the density of these cells in IBS patients. An increase in density has been demonstrated in the rectum[35,36,57], colon[57], jejunum[55,49], and duodenum[56], but these increases were not confirmed by other groups[20,32,45,49,59,61].

Dendritic cells and macrophages

Dendritic cells are antigen-presenting cells that are usually located at the surveillance interfaces of the human body, such as the skin or mucosa, and play a pivotal role in the generation and regulation of immune responses[63]. In fact, they represent the link between allergen uptake and the clinical manifestations of intestinal inflammation[64,65]. Furthermore, the gut also harbors abundant macrophages. These cells do not function as typical antigen-presenting cells and lack the cellular machinery for the production of pro-inflammatory cytokines and induction of potent adaptive immune responses. However, they show very potent phagocytic activity[65].

In a *Trichinella spiralis* mouse model of PI-IBS, Long and coworkers[66] reported numerical and phenotypic alterations in the lamina propria dendritic cells following acute *T. spiralis* infection. In their study, the lamina propria dendritic cells expressed increased levels of costimulatory molecules and exhibited a greater ability to migrate and induce $CD4^+$ T-cell proliferation[66]. Consequently, these changes favored increased levels of pro-inflammatory interferon-γ, interleukin-23, and tumor necrosis factor-α production in the so-called "PI-IBS stage"[66,67].

With regard to macrophages, the numbers of resident $CD68^+$ macrophages are reduced in PI-IBS cases following *Campylobacter jejuni* infection, probably due to the cytotoxic nature of the pathogen inside host cells[50]. Similarly, *Shigella* spp.[68,69] and *Salmonella* infections have also been shown to be involved in PI-IBS, and both of these organisms are intracellular pathogens that induce phagocytosis by macrophages[70,71]. Furthermore, *Salmonella* seems to be less cytotoxic to macrophages[72] and also causes a marked interleukin-18 response[72] with important implications in exerting paracrine effects on surrounding immune cells (inducing interferon-γ expression). These changes result in increased levels of activated T cells in the infected intestine[47,52,54,55,57].

Enteroendocrine cells

Enteroendocrine cells (residing among the epithelial

cells of the mucosa in all gut segments, with the exception of the esophagus) secrete multiple regulatory molecules that control several functions, such as postprandial secretion and motility[12,73,74]. Animal experimental studies have demonstrated abnormalities in the function of enteroendocrine cells in the setting of gastrointestinal infection[73]. Enteroendocrine cells seem to be involved in visceral hypersensitivity, disturbed gastrointestinal motility, and abnormal gut secretion[12] that patients with IBS usually present[75-77].

In fact, visceral hypersensitivity has been shown in the colon of IBS patients[78-85], but the correlation of this disturbance with the severity of abdominal pain is currently poorly understood[12]. Some authors hypothesize the involvement of a peripheral mechanism in visceral hypersensitivity in IBS[86-88]. Because the gut mucosa can produce high levels of serotonin[88], a reduction in serotonin impairs intracellular uptake and degradation in the gut epithelial cells and consequently increases serotonin availability of in the gut mucosa[89-92]. Therefore, the amount of serotonin available at its receptors is markedly increased[12,87,88]. Due to this mechanism, the development of visceral hypersensitivity in PI-IBS patients may be due to the increase in serotonin at the 5-hydroxytryptamine 3 receptors of the sensory neurons of the enteric nervous system.

Dysmotility has also been shown in the small and large bowel of IBS patients, as evidenced by the involvement of cholecystokinin, ghrelin, secretin, serotonin, and peptide YY[12]. Both esophageal motility abnormalities and abnormal gastric emptying have been observed in IBS patients with conflicting results[93-108]. Specifically, IBS-C patients exhibit delayed gastric emptying, whereas accelerated gastric emptying was observed in IBS-D patients[77,98]. In this setting, ghrelin was shown to stimulate gastric and small- and large-bowel motility[106-117]. Conversely, serotonin relaxes the stomach through a nitrergic pathway and consequently delays gastric emptying[118-120]. Moreover, cholecystokinin[121-123] and secretin[124,125] were shown to relax the proximal stomach, which inhibited gastric emptying in a manner similar to secretin; furthermore, small-bowel transit was also found to be delayed overall in IBS-C patients and accelerated in IBS-D patients[126-131], but conflicting results have been reported[132-139].

Ghrelin, which is involved in the stimulation of small-bowel motility, and peptide YY, a regulator of the ileal brakes[140-145], play pivotal roles in gastric emptying by stimulating the absorption of water and electrolytes and inhibiting prostaglandin E2 and vasoactive intestinal polypeptide[146-148]. Therefore, ghrelin cell density is reportedly low in the stomach, and that of peptide YY is reported to be high in the ileal mucosa of IBS-C patients, whereas the ghrelin cell density is reported to be high in the stomach, and that of secretin is reported to be low in the duodenum of IBS-D patients[12]. Furthermore, colorectal transit was found to be delayed in IBS-C patients and accelerated in IBS-D patients[80,125,126,149-154], but contradictory results have been reported[12,105,152,154-176].

Finally, abnormal gastrointestinal secretion is common in IBS patients. Among the abnormalities in the enteroendocrine cells in IBS patients, low levels of duodenal cholecystokinin (which stimulates the secretion of digestive enzymes from pancreatic exocrine glands) and secretin (which stimulates pancreatic bicarbonate and fluid secretions)[122,123], as well as high levels of ileal peptide YY (which stimulates the absorption of water and electrolytes), were reported in IBS-C patients[12].

Intestinal permeability

The term "mucosal barrier" was adopted by Cummings *et al*[177] in 2004 to describe "the complex structure that separates the internal milieu from the luminal environment, consisting of the vascular endothelium, the epithelial cell lining, and the mucus layer, next to which digestive secretions, immune molecules, cell products such as cytokines, inflammatory mediators, and antimicrobial peptides, are found, mainly produced by Paneth cells in the crypts of the small intestine"[177,178].

Conversely, impaired intestinal permeability is defined as "an altered permeability being nontransiently changed compared to the normal permeability leading to a loss of intestinal homeostasis, functional impairments and disease"[178]. Increases in the numbers of MCs in the gut of IBS patients were found to be related to changes in gut permeability[32,179-181]. In IBS patients, the assessment of permeability via the urinary recovery of orally administered markers has demonstrated increases in the permeability of the small and in the large bowels[45,182-184], but results have been contradictory[185-187]. Furthermore, rectal permeability was also reportedly increased in IBS-D patients following exposure to MC tryptase[188]. Finally, recent studies of the permeability of the epithelial barrier have reported a decrease in the colonic expression of the tight junction proteins occludin, claudin-1, and zonula occludens-1 in IBS patients[42,189] (Figure 5).

Several aliments, as well as microbiota and bile acids, have been proposed to cause low-grade inflammation and altered permeability in IBS. In fact, in some patients, IBS was related to food allergy[190]. Furthermore, endogenous triggers, such as MC-derived histamine, proteases, and eicosanoids, could increase intestinal permeability, either directly or via the stimulation of neurons of the enteric nervous system[183]. Moreover, serotonin was also identified as an endogenous trigger of pain, inflammation, and increased permeability in IBS[40]; therefore, LX1031, an oral inhibitor of tryptophan hydroxylase, the principal enzyme needed for mucosal serotonin synthesis, has been successful for treatment of patients with non-

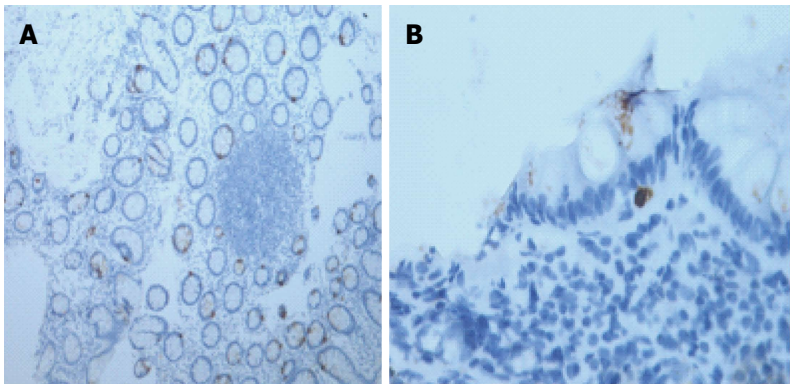


Figure 5 Immunohistochemistry for chromogranin A showing increased expression in nerve terminals at the level of the basal membrane in the large intestine in inflammatory bowel disease. A: Irritable bowel syndrome patient; B: Control patient (× 40 magnification). Courtesy of Giancarlo Pompei, personal data.

constipating IBS[191].

Enteric nerves

Few studies have investigated the role of calcitonin gene related peptide and substance P. Wang *et al*[37] investigated the incidence of IBS in patients who had recovered from bacillary dysentery by focusing on neuroimmunologic changes, including changes in interleukins, MCs, neuropeptides, and the relationship between MCs and intestinal nerves[50]. The density of substance P-immunoreactive fibers was increased in both the ileal and the rectosigmoid samples of IBS patients[37], but the density of calcitonin gene related peptide-containing fibers remained unchanged. Palsson and coworkers[192] reported similar findings, and Kerkhoffs and coworkers[193] reported an increase of rectal substance P. However, these findings have not been universal[192,194], possibly reflecting region-specific discrepancies[51].

Neuronal plasticity in the enteric nervous system has also been investigated[195]. Akbar *et al*[38] investigated the capsaicin receptor transient receptor potential vanilloid 1-immunoreactive nerve fibers in colonic biopsies from patients with IBS. Specifically, they demonstrated that the number of nerve fibers exhibiting immunoreactivity for substance P and transient receptor potential vanilloid 1 was increased in IBS patients. Moreover, the number of these fibers did not differ by IBS subtype, but significantly correlated with patient pain scores[50,196].

Nerve growth factor has also been suggested to play a central role in promoting the growth and differentiation of primary afferent fibers[50]. Specifically, its expression was found to be markedly increased in rectal biopsies from pediatric[197] and adult IBS patients[198], suggesting both the sprouting of sensory afferent fibers expressing transient receptor potential vanilloid 1 and increases in receptor sensitivity in IBS, which consequently induced visceral hyperalgesia[50]. More recently, Dothel *et al*[199] also showed that nerve fiber density and sprouting, as well as the expression of nerve growth and neurotrophic tyrosine kinase receptor type 1, are significantly increased in the mucosal tissues of patients with IBS. Mucosal mediators participate in these neuroplastic changes.

Finally, the morphology of enteric glia, which are known to regulate intestinal barrier integrity and neuronal activity[200] has only been examined in one study of human intestinal biopsy samples from IBS patients and was found to be unchanged[50,201].

CONCLUSION

Low-grade intestinal inflammation plays a key role in the pathophysiology of IBS, and this role is likely multifactorial[202]. Several studies demonstrated microscopic and molecular abnormalities in IBS patients[202,203].

The above-reported evidence provides a rationale to test the efficacy of intestinal anti-inflammatory compounds in patients with IBS. Previously, treatment with corticosteroids was found to be ineffective in PI-IBS patients[204]; however, MC stabilizers have produced promising results, particularly in IBS-D, suggesting that immune mechanisms and MCs are involved in the generation of IBS symptoms[205,206]. Based on this approach, Clarke and coworkers[207] recently conducted a phase 3, multicenter, tertiary setting, randomized, double-blind, placebo-controlled trial in patients with Rome Ⅲ-confirmed IBS to evaluate the efficacy and safety of mesalazine in patients with IBS. In this study, mesalazine treatment was not superior to placebo based on the study primary endpoint (68.6% *vs* 67.4%, 95%CI: 12.8-15.1, P = 0.870). However, the placebo response was high in this trial and this study enrolled both male and female subjects and patients with mild symptoms[207], which likely masked drug efficacy. Furthermore, a subgroup of patients with IBS showed a sustained therapy response and benefits from mesalazine therapy[207].

As mentioned above, abnormalities in the enteric nervous system of the gut may alter digestion, gastrointestinal motility, and visceral hypersensitivity, which contribute to symptom onset and play a pivotal

role in the pathogenesis of IBS[12].

The enteric nervous system of the gut seems to be affected by genetic differences, diet, intestinal flora, and inflammation[12]. For example, the food content of FODMAPs and fibers, which interacts with the intestinal flora and drives subsequent fermentation, may increase intestinal osmotic pressure to induce hormonal and serotonin release[12]. Targeting these known factors may improve the control of IBS symptoms by acting on mechanisms that trigger these symptoms and regulate the pathophysiology of IBS. Finally, probiotics have also been found to be effective in select IBS patients, as suggested by several recent systematic reviews, guidelines and meta-analyses, by improving intestinal permeability[208-212].

In conclusion, a high proportion of IBS patients show low-grade inflammation, which is a multifactorial process, in the intestinal mucosa. Understanding the mechanisms underlying the low-grade inflammation in IBS may allow the design of clinical trials that test the efficacy and safety of drugs that target the pathophysiologic mechanism of this disease.

REFERENCES

1 **Sinagra E**, Romano C, Cottone M. Psychopharmacological treatment and psychological interventions in irritable bowel syndrome. *Gastroenterol Res Pract* 2012; **2012**: 486067 [PMID: 22956940 DOI: 10.1155/2012/486067]

2 **Stamboldjiev T**. Management of Irritable Bowel Syndrome in Primary Care. Mas-ter of Arts in Nursing Theses 2011: 10 Available from: URL: http://sophia.stkate.edu/ma_nursing/10

3 **Russo MW**, Gaynes BN, Drossman DA. A national survey of practice patterns of gastroenterologists with comparison to the past two decades. *J Clin Gastroenterol* 1999; **29**: 339-343 [PMID: 10599638]

4 **Wald A**, Rakel D. Behavioral and complementary approaches for the treatment of irritable bowel syndrome. *Nutr Clin Pract* 1999; **23**: 284-292 [PMID: 18595861 DOI: 10.1177/0884533608318677]

5 **Mulak A**, Tachè Y. Sex difference in irritable bowel syndrome: do gonadal hormones play a role? *Gastroenterol Pol* 2010; **17**: 89-97 [PMID: 25435761]

6 **Heitkemper M**, Jarrett M, Bond EF, Chang L. Impact of sex and gender on irritable bowel syndrome. *Biol Res Nurs* 2003; **5**: 56-65 [PMID: 12886671]

7 **Longstreth GF**, Wolde-Tsadik G. Irritable bowel-type symptoms in HMO examinees. Prevalence, demographics, and clinical correlates. *Dig Dis Sci* 1993; **38**: 1581-1589 [PMID: 8359067]

8 **Toner BB**, Akman D. Gender role and irritable bowel syndrome: literature review and hypothesis. *Am J Gastroenterol* 2000; **95**: 11-16 [PMID: 10638553]

9 **Longstreth GF**, Thompson WG, Chey WD, Houghton LA, Mearin F, Spiller RC. Functional bowel disorders. *Gastroenterology* 2006; **130**: 1480-1491 [PMID: 16678561]

10 **Lewis SJ**, Heaton KW. Stool form scale as a useful guide to intestinal transit time. *Scand J Gastroenterol* 1997; **32**: 920-924 [PMID: 9299672]

11 **El-Salhy M**, Gundersen D, Hatlebakk JG, Hausken T. Irritable bowel syndrome: diagnosis, pathogenesis and treatment options. New York: Nova Science Publishers, 2012

12 **El-Salhy M**, Gundersen D, Gilja OH, Hatlebakk JG, Hausken T. Is irritable bowel syndrome an organic disorder? *World J Gastroenterol* 2014; **20**: 384-400 [PMID: 24574708 DOI: 10.3748/wjg.v20.i2.384]

13 **Lee YJ**, Park KS. Irritable bowel syndrome: emerging paradigm in pathophysiology. *World J Gastroenterol* 2014; **20**: 2456-2469 [PMID: 24627583 DOI: 10.3748/wjg.v20.i10.2456]

14 **Drossman DA**, Camilleri M, Mayer EA, Whitehead WE. AGA technical review on irritable bowel syndrome. *Gastroenterology* 2002; **123**: 2108-2131 [PMID: 12454866]

15 **Spiller R**, Aziz Q, Creed F, Emmanuel A, Houghton L, Hungin P, Jones R, Kumar D, Rubin G, Trudgill N, Whorwell P. Guidelines on the irritable bowel syndrome: mechanisms and practical management. *Gut* 2007; **56**: 1770-1798 [PMID: 17488783]

16 **Fukudo S**, Kaneko H, Akiho H, Inamori M, Endo Y, Okumura T, Kanazawa M, Kamiya T, Sato K, Chiba T, Furuta K, Yamato S, Arakawa T, Fujiyama Y, Azuma T, Fujimoto K, Mine T, Miura S, Kinoshita Y, Sugano K, Shimosegawa T. Evidence-based clinical practice guidelines for irritable bowel syndrome. *J Gastroenterol* 2015; **50**: 11-30 [PMID: 25500976 DOI: 10.1007/s00535-014-1017-0]

17 **Ishihara S**, Yashima K, Kushiyama Y, Izumi A, Kawashima K, Fujishiro H, Kojo H, Komazawa Y, Hamamoto T, Yamamoto T, Sasaki Y, Shimizu T, Okamoto E, Yoshimura T, Furuta K, Noguchi N, Tanaka H, Murawaki Y, Kinoshita Y. Prevalence of organic colonic lesions in patients meeting Rome III criteria for diagnosis of IBS: a prospective multi-center study utilizing colonoscopy. *J Gastroenterol* 2012; **47**: 1084-1090 [PMID: 22460220 DOI: 10.1007/s00535-012-0573-4]

18 **Hsiao CW**, Huang WY, Ke TW, Muo CH, Chen WT, Sung FC, Kao CH. Association between irritable bowel syndrome and colorectal cancer: a nationwide population-based study. *Eur J Intern Med* 2014; **25**: 82-86 [PMID: 24268837 DOI: 10.1016/j.ejim.2013.11.005]

19 **Ahn E**, Son KY, Shin DW, Han MK, Lee H, An AR, Kim EH, Cho B. Perceived risk as a barrier to appropriate diagnosis of irritable bowel syndrome. *World J Gastroenterol* 2014; **20**: 18360-18366 [PMID: 25561803 DOI: 10.3748/wjg.v20.i48.18360]

20 **Lieberman DA**, Williams JL, Holub JL, Morris CD, Logan JR, Eisen GM, Carney P. Colonoscopy utilization and outcomes 2000 to 2011. *Gastrointest Endosc* 2014; **80**: 133-143 [PMID: 24565067 DOI: 10.1016/j.gie.2014.01.014]

21 **McKenna BJ**. Is it really colitis? Dealing with the nearly normal colonic biopsy and variations of microscopic colitis. *Pathol Case Rev* 2004; **9**: 106-114 [DOI: 10.1097/01.pcr.0000126995.27683.bf]

22 **Kirsch R**, Riddell RH. Histopathological alterations in irritable bowel syndrome. *Mod Pathol* 2006; **19**: 1638-1645 [PMID: 17013373]

23 **Barbara G**, De Giorgio R, Stanghellini V, Cremon C, Corinaldesi R. A role for inflammation in irritable bowel syndrome? *Gut* 2002; **51** Suppl 1: i41-i44 [PMID: 12077063]

24 **Lee E**, Schiller LR, Fordtran JS. Quantification of colonic lamina propria cells by means of a morphometric point-counting method. *Gastroenterology* 1988; **94**: 409-418 [PMID: 3335315]

25 **Salzmann JL**, Peltier-Koch F, Bloch F, Petite JP, Camilleri JP. Morphometric study of colonic biopsies: a new method of estimating inflammatory diseases. *Lab Invest* 1989; **60**: 847-851 [PMID: 2733385]

26 **O'Sullivan M**, Clayton N, Breslin NP, Harman I, Bountra C, McLaren A, O'Morain CA. Increased mast cells in the irritable bowel syndrome. *Neurogastroenterol Motil* 2000; **12**: 449-457 [PMID: 11012945]

27 **Piche T**, Saint-Paul MC, Dainese R, Marine-Barjoan E, Iannelli A, Montoya ML, Peyron JF, Czerucka D, Cherikh F, Filippi J, Tran A, Hébuterne X. Mast cells and cellularity of the colonic mucosa correlated with fatigue and depression in irritable bowel syndrome. *Gut* 2008; **57**: 468-473 [PMID: 18194987 DOI: 10.1136/gut.2007.127068]

28 **Ford AC**, Talley NJ. Mucosal inflammation as a potential etiological factor in irritable bowel syndrome: a systematic review. *J Gastroenterol* 2011; **46**: 421-431 [PMID: 21331765 DOI: 10.1007/s00535-011-0379-9]

29 **Walker MM**, Talley NJ, Prabhakar M, Pennaneac'h CJ, Aro P, Ronkainen J, Storskrubb T, Harmsen WS, Zinsmeister AR, Agreus L. Duodenal mastocytosis, eosinophilia and intraepithelial lymphocytosis as possible disease markers in the irritable bowel syndrome and functional dyspepsia. *Aliment Pharmacol Ther* 2009; **29**: 765-773

[PMID: 19183150 DOI: 10.1111/j.1365-2036.2009.03937.x]
30 **Ford AC**, Marwaha A, Lim A, Moayyedi P. Systematic review and meta-analysis of the prevalence of irritable bowel syndrome in individuals with dyspepsia. *Clin Gastroenterol Hepatol* 2010; **8**: 401-409 [PMID: 19631762 DOI: 10.1016/j.cgh.2009.07.020]
31 **Lembo AJ**, Neri B, Tolley J, Barken D, Carroll S, Pan H. Use of serum biomarkers in a diagnostic test for irritable bowel syndrome. *Aliment Pharmacol Ther* 2009; **29**: 834-842 [PMID: 19226291 DOI: 10.1111/j.1365-2036.2009.03975.x]
32 **Matricon J**, Meleine M, Gelot A, Piche T, Dapoigny M, Muller E, Ardid D. Review article: Associations between immune activation, intestinal permeability and the irritable bowel syndrome. *Aliment Pharmacol Ther* 2012; **36**: 1009-1031 [PMID: 23066886 DOI: 10.1111/apt.12080]
33 **Hiatt RB**, Katz L. Mast cells in inflammatory conditions of the gastrointestinal tract. *Am J Gastroenterol* 1962; **37**: 541-545 [PMID: 13907162]
34 **De Giorgio R**, Barbara G. Is irritable bowel syndrome an inflammatory disorder? *Curr Gastroenterol Rep* 2008; **10**: 385-390 [PMID: 18627650]
35 **Dunlop SP**, Jenkins D, Spiller RC. Distinctive clinical, psychological, and histological features of postinfective irritable bowel syndrome. *Am J Gastroenterol* 2003; **98**: 1578-1583 [PMID: 12873581]
36 **Park JH**, Rhee PL, Kim HS, Lee JH, Kim YH, Kim JJ, Rhee JC. Mucosal mast cell counts correlate with visceral hypersensitivity in patients with diarrhea predominant irritable bowel syndrome. *J Gastroenterol Hepatol* 2006; **21**: 71-78 [PMID: 16706815]
37 **Wang LH**, Fang XC, Pan GZ. Bacillary dysentery as a causative factor of irritable bowel syndrome and its pathogenesis. *Gut* 2004; **53**: 1096-1101 [PMID: 15247174]
38 **Akbar A**, Yiangou Y, Facer P, Walters JR, Anand P, Ghosh S. Increased capsaicin receptor TRPV1-expressing sensory fibres in irritable bowel syndrome and their correlation with abdominal pain. *Gut* 2008; **57**: 923-929 [PMID: 18252749 DOI: 10.1136/gut.2007.138982]
39 **Barbara G**, Wang B, Stanghellini V, de Giorgio R, Cremon C, Di Nardo G, Trevisani M, Campi B, Geppetti P, Tonini M, Bunnett NW, Grundy D, Corinaldesi R. Mast cell-dependent excitation of visceral-nociceptive sensory neurons in irritable bowel syndrome. *Gastroenterology* 2007; **132**: 26-37 [PMID: 17241857]
40 **Cremon C**, Carini G, Wang B, Vasina V, Cogliandro RF, De Giorgio R, Stanghellini V, Grundy D, Tonini M, De Ponti F, Corinaldesi R, Barbara G. Intestinal serotonin release, sensory neuron activation, and abdominal pain in irritable bowel syndrome. *Am J Gastroenterol* 2011; **106**: 1290-1298 [PMID: 21427712 DOI: 10.1038/ajg.2011.86]
41 **Buhner S**, Li Q, Vignali S, Barbara G, De Giorgio R, Stanghellini V, Cremon C, Zeller F, Langer R, Daniel H, Michel K, Schemann M. Activation of human enteric neurons by supernatants of colonic biopsy specimens from patients with irritable bowel syndrome. *Gastroenterology* 2009; **137**: 1425-1434 [PMID: 19596012 DOI: 10.1053/j.gastro.2009.07.005]
42 **Coëffier M**, Gloro R, Boukhettala N, Aziz M, Lecleire S, Vandaele N, Antonietti M, Savoye G, Bôle-Feysot C, Déchelotte P, Reimund JM, Ducrotté P. Increased proteasome-mediated degradation of occludin in irritable bowel syndrome. *Am J Gastroenterol* 2010; **105**: 1181-1188 [PMID: 19997094 DOI: 10.1038/ajg.2009.700]
43 **Cremon C**, Gargano L, Morselli-Labate AM, Santini D, Cogliandro RF, De Giorgio R, Stanghellini V, Corinaldesi R, Barbara G. Mucosal immune activation in irritable bowel syndrome: gender-dependence and association with digestive symptoms. *Am J Gastroenterol* 2009; **104**: 392-400 [PMID: 19174797 DOI: 10.1038/ajg.2008.94]
44 **Barbara G**, Stanghellini V, De Giorgio R, Cremon C, Cottrell GS, Santini D, Pasquinelli G, Morselli-Labate AM, Grady EF, Bunnett NW, Collins SM, Corinaldesi R. Activated mast cells in proximity to colonic nerves correlate with abdominal pain in irritable bowel syndrome. *Gastroenterology* 2004; **126**: 693-702 [PMID: 14988823]
45 **Vivinus-Nébot M**, Dainese R, Anty R, Saint-Paul MC, Nano JL, Gonthier N, Marjoux S, Frin-Mathy G, Bernard G, Hébuterne X, Tran A, Theodorou V, Piche T. Combination of allergic factors can worsen diarrheic irritable bowel syndrome: role of barrier defects and mast cells. *Am J Gastroenterol* 2012; **107**: 75-81 [PMID: 21931380 DOI: 10.1038/ajg.2011.315]
46 **Wang SH**, Dong L, Luo JY, Gong J, Li L, Lu XL, Han SP. Decreased expression of serotonin in the jejunum and increased numbers of mast cells in the terminal ileum in patients with irritable bowel syndrome. *World J Gastroenterol* 2007; **13**: 6041-6047 [PMID: 18023097 DOI: 10.3748/wjg.v13.45.6041]
47 **Martínez C**, Vicario M, Ramos L, Lobo B, Mosquera JL, Alonso C, Sánchez A, Guilarte M, Antolín M, de Torres I, González-Castro AM, Pigrau M, Saperas E, Azpiroz F, Santos J. The jejunum of diarrhea-predominant irritable bowel syndrome shows molecular alterations in the tight junction signaling pathway that are associated with mucosal pathobiology and clinical manifestations. *Am J Gastroenterol* 2012; **107**: 736-746 [PMID: 22415197 DOI: 10.1038/ajg.2011.472]
48 **Martínez C**, Lobo B, Pigrau M, Ramos L, González-Castro AM, Alonso C, Guilarte M, Guilá M, de Torres I, Azpiroz F, Santos J, Vicario M. Diarrhoea-predominant irritable bowel syndrome: an organic disorder with structural abnormalities in the jejunal epithelial barrier. *Gut* 2013; **62**: 1160-1168 [PMID: 22637702 DOI: 10.1136/gutjnl-2012-302093]
49 **Guilarte M**, Santos J, de Torres I, Alonso C, Vicario M, Ramos L, Martínez C, Casellas F, Saperas E, Malagelada JR. Diarrhoea-predominant IBS patients show mast cell activation and hyperplasia in the jejunum. *Gut* 2007; **56**: 203-209 [PMID: 17005763]
50 **Nasser Y**, Boeckxstaens GE, Wouters MM, Schemann M, Vanner S. Using human intestinal biopsies to study the pathogenesis of irritable bowel syndrome. *Neurogastroenterol Motil* 2014; **26**: 455-469 [PMID: 24602069 DOI: 10.1111/nmo.12316]
51 **Schemann M**, Camilleri M. Functions and imaging of mast cell and neural axis of the gut. *Gastroenterology* 2013; **144**: 698-704.e4 [PMID: 23354018 DOI: 10.1053/j.gastro.2013.01.040]
52 **Spiller RC**, Jenkins D, Thornley JP, Hebden JM, Wright T, Skinner M, Neal KR. Increased rectal mucosal enteroendocrine cells, T lymphocytes, and increased gut permeability following acute Campylobacter enteritis and in post-dysenteric irritable bowel syndrome. *Gut* 2000; **47**: 804-811 [PMID: 11076879]
53 **Kim HS**, Lim JH, Park H, Lee SI. Increased immunoendocrine cells in intestinal mucosa of postinfectious irritable bowel syndrome patients 3 years after acute Shigella infection--an observation in a small case control study. *Yonsei Med J* 2010; **51**: 45-51 [PMID: 20046513 DOI: 10.3349/ymj.2010.51.1.45]
54 **Ohman L**, Isaksson S, Lindmark AC, Posserud I, Stotzer PO, Strid H, Sjövall H, Simrén M. T-cell activation in patients with irritable bowel syndrome. *Am J Gastroenterol* 2009; **104**: 1205-1212 [PMID: 19367268 DOI: 10.1038/ajg.2009.116]
55 **Törnblom H**, Lindberg G, Nyberg B, Veress B. Full-thickness biopsy of the jejunum reveals inflammation and enteric neuropathy in irritable bowel syndrome. *Gastroenterology* 2002; **123**: 1972-1979 [PMID: 12454854]
56 **Foley S**, Garsed K, Singh G, Duroudier NP, Swan C, Hall IP, Zaitoun A, Bennett A, Marsden C, Holmes G, Walls A, Spiller RC. Impaired uptake of serotonin by platelets from patients with irritable bowel syndrome correlates with duodenal immune activation. *Gastroenterology* 2011; **140**: 1434-1443.e1 [PMID: 21315720 DOI: 10.1053/j.gastro.2011.01.052]
57 **Chadwick VS**, Chen W, Shu D, Paulus B, Bethwaite P, Tie A, Wilson I. Activation of the mucosal immune system in irritable bowel syndrome. *Gastroenterology* 2002; **122**: 1778-1783 [PMID: 12055584]
58 **Lee KJ**, Kim YB, Kim JH, Kwon HC, Kim DK, Cho SW. The alteration of enterochromaffin cell, mast cell, and lamina propria T lymphocyte numbers in irritable bowel syndrome and its relationship with psychological factors. *J Gastroenterol Hepatol* 2008; **23**: 1689-1694 [PMID: 19120860 DOI: 10.1111/j.1440-1746.2008.05574.x]
59 **Faure C**, Patey N, Gauthier C, Brooks EM, Mawe GM. Serotonin signaling is altered in irritable bowel syndrome with diarrhea but not in functional dyspepsia in pediatric age patients. *Gastroenterology*

2010; **139**: 249-258 [PMID: 20303355 DOI: 10.1053/j.gastro.2010.03.032]
60 **Park JH**, Rhee PL, Kim G, Lee JH, Kim YH, Kim JJ, Rhee JC, Song SY. Enteroendocrine cell counts correlate with visceral hypersensitivity in patients with diarrhoea-predominant irritable bowel syndrome. *Neurogastroenterol Motil* 2006; **18**: 539-546 [PMID: 16771769]
61 **Park H**. [The pathophysiology of irritable bowel syndrome: inflammation and motor disorder]. *Korean J Gastroenterol* 2006; **47**: 101-110 [PMID: 16498275]
62 **Forshammar J**, Isaksson S, Strid H, Stotzer PO, Sjövall H, Simrén M, Ohman L. A pilot study of colonic B cell pattern in irritable bowel syndrome. *Scand J Gastroenterol* 2008; **43**: 1461-1466 [PMID: 18663666 DOI: 10.1080/00365520802272126]
63 **Steinman RM**. The dendritic cell system and its role in immunogenicity. *Annu Rev Immunol* 1991; **9**: 271-296 [PMID: 1910679]
64 **Adams S**, O'Neill DW, Bhardwaj N. Recent advances in dendritic cell biology. *J Clin Immunol* 2005; **25**: 177-188 [PMID: 16118915]
65 **Koido S**, Ohkusa T, Kan S, Takakura K, Saito K, Komita H, Ito Z, Kobayashi H, Takami S, Uchiyama K, Arakawa H, Ito M, Okamoto M, Kajihara M, Homma S, Tajiri H. Production of corticotropin-releasing factor and urocortin from human monocyte-derived dendritic cells is stimulated by commensal bacteria in intestine. *World J Gastroenterol* 2014; **20**: 14420-14429 [PMID: 25339828 DOI: 10.3748/wjg.v20.i39.14420]
66 **Long Y**, Wang W, Wang H, Hao L, Qian W, Hou X. Characteristics of intestinal lamina propria dendritic cells in a mouse model of postinfectious irritable bowel syndrome. *J Gastroenterol Hepatol* 2012; **27**: 935-944 [PMID: 22141367 DOI: 10.1111/j.1440-1746.2011.07046.x]
67 **Beatty JK**, Bhargava A, Buret AG. Post-infectious irritable bowel syndrome: mechanistic insights into chronic disturbances following enteric infection. *World J Gastroenterol* 2014; **20**: 3976-3985 [PMID: 24744587 DOI: 10.3748/wjg.v20.i14.3976]
68 **Ji S**, Park H, Lee D, Song YK, Choi JP, Lee SI. Post-infectious irritable bowel syndrome in patients with Shigella infection. *J Gastroenterol Hepatol* 2005; **20**: 381-386 [PMID: 15740480]
69 **Kim HS**, Kim MS, Ji SW, Park H. [The development of irritable bowel syndrome after Shigella infection: 3 year follow-up study]. *Korean J Gastroenterol* 2006; **47**: 300-305 [PMID: 16632982]
70 **Kindt S**, Van Oudenhove L, Broekaert D, Kasran A, Ceuppens JL, Bossuyt X, Fischler B, Tack J. Immune dysfunction in patients with functional gastrointestinal disorders. *Neurogastroenterol Motil* 2009; **21**: 389-398 [PMID: 19126184 DOI: 10.1111/j.1365-2982.2008.01220.x]
71 **Liebregts T**, Adam B, Bredack C, Röth A, Heinzel S, Lester S, Downie-Doyle S, Smith E, Drew P, Talley NJ, Holtmann G. Immune activation in patients with irritable bowel syndrome. *Gastroenterology* 2007; **132**: 913-920 [PMID: 17383420]
72 **Miao EA**, Rajan JV. Salmonella and Caspase-1: A complex Interplay of Detection and Evasion. *Front Microbiol* 2011; **2**: 85 [PMID: 21833326 DOI: 10.3389/fmicb.2011.00085]
73 **Moran GW**, Leslie FC, Levison SE, Worthington J, McLaughlin JT. Enteroendocrine cells: neglected players in gastrointestinal disorders? *Therap Adv Gastroenterol* 2008; **1**: 51-60 [PMID: 21180514 DOI: 10.1177/1756283X08093943]
74 **Rindi G**, Inzani F, Solcia E. Pathology of gastrointestinal disorders. *Endocrinol Metab Clin North Am* 2010; **39**: 713-727 [PMID: 21095540 DOI: 10.1016/j.ecl.2010.08.009]
75 **Gunnarsson J**, Simrén M. Peripheral factors in the pathophysiology of irritable bowel syndrome. *Dig Liver Dis* 2009; **41**: 788-793 [PMID: 19665956 DOI: 10.1016/j.dld.2009.07.006]
76 **Delgado-Aros S**, Camilleri M. Visceral hypersensitivity. *J Clin Gastroenterol* 2005; **39**: S194-S203; discussion S210 [PMID: 15798485]
77 **Lee OY**. Asian motility studies in irritable bowel syndrome. *J Neurogastroenterol Motil* 2010; **16**: 120-130 [PMID: 20535342 DOI: 10.5056/jnm.2010.16.2.120]
78 **Posserud I**, Syrous A, Lindström L, Tack J, Abrahamsson H, Simrén M. Altered rectal perception in irritable bowel syndrome is associated with symptom severity. *Gastroenterology* 2007; **133**: 1113-1123 [PMID: 17919487]
79 **Ritchie J**. Pain from distension of the pelvic colon by inflating a balloon in the irritable colon syndrome. *Gut* 1973; **14**: 125-132 [PMID: 4696535]
80 **Mertz H**, Naliboff B, Munakata J, Niazi N, Mayer EA. Altered rectal perception is a biological marker of patients with irritable bowel syndrome. *Gastroenterology* 1995; **109**: 40-52 [PMID: 7797041]
81 **Whitehead WE**, Palsson OS. Is rectal pain sensitivity a biological marker for irritable bowel syndrome: psychological influences on pain perception. *Gastroenterology* 1998; **115**: 1263-1271 [PMID: 9797383]
82 **Whitehead WE**, Holtkotter B, Enck P, Hoelzl R, Holmes KD, Anthony J, Shabsin HS, Schuster MM. Tolerance for rectosigmoid distention in irritable bowel syndrome. *Gastroenterology* 1990; **98**: 1187-1192 [PMID: 2323511]
83 **Bouin M**, Plourde V, Boivin M, Riberdy M, Lupien F, Laganière M, Verrier P, Poitras P. Rectal distention testing in patients with irritable bowel syndrome: sensitivity, specificity, and predictive values of pain sensory thresholds. *Gastroenterology* 2002; **122**: 1771-1777 [PMID: 12055583]
84 **Bradette M**, Delvaux M, Staumont G, Fioramonti J, Bueno L, Frexinos J. Evaluation of colonic sensory thresholds in IBS patients using a barostat. Definition of optimal conditions and comparison with healthy subjects. *Dig Dis Sci* 1994; **39**: 449-457 [PMID: 8131679]
85 **Camilleri M**, McKinzie S, Busciglio I, Low PA, Sweetser S, Burton D, Baxter K, Ryks M, Zinsmeister AR. Prospective study of motor, sensory, psychologic, and autonomic functions in patients with irritable bowel syndrome. *Clin Gastroenterol Hepatol* 2008; **6**: 772-781 [PMID: 18456567 DOI: 10.1016/j.cgh.2008.02.060]
86 **Wendelbo I**, Mazzawi T, El-Salhy M. Increased serotonin transporter immunoreactivity intensity in the ileum of patients with irritable bowel disease. *Mol Med Rep* 2014; **9**: 180-184 [PMID: 24213511]
87 **Coates MD**, Mahoney CR, Linden DR, Sampson JE, Chen J, Blaszyk H, Crowell MD, Sharkey KA, Gershon MD, Mawe GM, Moses PL. Molecular defects in mucosal serotonin content and decreased serotonin reuptake transporter in ulcerative colitis and irritable bowel syndrome. *Gastroenterology* 2004; **126**: 1657-1664 [PMID: 15188158]
88 **El-Salhy M**, Wendelbo IH, Gundersen D. Reduced chromogranin A cell density in the ileum of patients with irritable bowel syndrome. *Mol Med Rep* 2013; **7**: 1241-1244 [PMID: 23426642 DOI: 10.3892/mmr.2013.1325]
89 **Chen JX**, Pan H, Rothman TP, Wade PR, Gershon MD. Guinea pig 5-HT transporter: cloning, expression, distribution, and function in intestinal sensory reception. *Am J Physiol* 1998; **275**: G433-G448 [PMID: 9724254]
90 **Keating C**, Beyak M, Foley S, Singh G, Marsden C, Spiller R, Grundy D. Afferent hypersensitivity in a mouse model of post-inflammatory gut dysfunction: role of altered serotonin metabolism. *J Physiol* 2008; **586**: 4517-4530 [PMID: 18653657 DOI: 10.1113/jphysiol.2008.156984]
91 **Coleman NS**, Foley S, Dunlop SP, Wheatcroft J, Blackshaw E, Perkins AC, Singh G, Marsden CA, Holmes GK, Spiller RC. Abnormalities of serotonin metabolism and their relation to symptoms in untreated celiac disease. *Clin Gastroenterol Hepatol* 2006; **4**: 874-881 [PMID: 16797248]
92 **Gershon MD**, Tack J. The serotonin signaling system: from basic understanding to drug development for functional GI disorders. *Gastroenterology* 2007; **132**: 397-414 [PMID: 17241888 DOI: 10.1053/j.gastro.2006.11.002]
93 **Whorwell PJ**, Clouter C, Smith CL. Oesophageal motility in the irritable bowel syndrome. *Br Med J* (Clin Res Ed) 1981; **282**: 1101-1102 [PMID: 6786454]
94 **Clouse RE**, Eckert TC. Gastrointestinal symptoms of patients with esophageal contraction abnormalities. *Dig Dis Sci* 1986; **31**: 236-240 [PMID: 3948627]

95 **Soffer EE**, Scalabrini P, Pope CE, Wingate DL. Effect of stress on oesophageal motor function in normal subjects and in patients with the irritable bowel syndrome. *Gut* 1988; **29**: 1591-1594 [PMID: 3209118]

96 **Lind CD**. Motility disorders in the irritable bowel syndrome. *Gastroenterol Clin North Am* 1991; **20**: 279-295 [PMID: 2066153]

97 **van Wijk HJ**, Smout AJ, Akkermans LM, Roelofs JM, ten Thije OJ. Gastric emptying and dyspeptic symptoms in the irritable bowel syndrome. *Scand J Gastroenterol* 1992; **27**: 99-102 [PMID: 1561533]

98 **Charles F**, Phillips SF, Camilleri M, Thomforde GM. Rapid gastric emptying in patients with functional diarrhea. *Mayo Clin Proc* 1997; **72**: 323-328 [PMID: 9121178 DOI: 10.1016/s0025-6196(11)63331-4]

99 **Caballero-Plasencia AM**, Valenzuela-Barranco M, Herrerías-Gutiérrez JM, Esteban-Carretero JM. Altered gastric emptying in patients with irritable bowel syndrome. *Eur J Nucl Med* 1999; **26**: 404-409 [PMID: 10199947]

100 **Morin DR**. The patient's records and the defense of dental malpractice claims. *Am J Orthod Dentofacial Orthop* 1992; **102**: 569-570 [PMID: 1456239]

101 **Stanghellini V**, Tosetti C, Barbara G, De Giorgio R, Cogliandro L, Cogliandro R, Corinaldesi R. Dyspeptic symptoms and gastric emptying in the irritable bowel syndrome. *Am J Gastroenterol* 2002; **97**: 2738-2743 [PMID: 12425541 DOI: 10.1111/j.1572-0241.2002.07062.x]

102 **Leahy A**, Besherdas K, Clayman C, Mason I, Epstein O. Abnormalities of the electrogastrogram in functional gastrointestinal disorders. *Am J Gastroenterol* 1999; **94**: 1023-1028 [PMID: 10201477 DOI: 10.1111/j.1572-0241.1999.01007.x]

103 **Evans PR**, Bak YT, Shuter B, Hoschl R, Kellow JE. Gastroparesis and small bowel dysmotility in irritable bowel syndrome. *Dig Dis Sci* 1997; **42**: 2087-2093 [PMID: 9365140]

104 **Nielsen OH**, Gjørup T, Christensen FN. Gastric emptying rate and small bowel transit time in patients with irritable bowel syndrome determined with 99mTc-labeled pellets and scintigraphy. *Dig Dis Sci* 1986; **31**: 1287-1291 [PMID: 3803129]

105 **Acharya U**, Waite N, Howlett P, Tanner AR, Smith CL. Failure to demonstrate altered gastric emptying in irritable bowel syndrome. *Dig Dis Sci* 1983; **28**: 889-892 [PMID: 6352205]

106 **El-Salhy M**. Ghrelin in gastrointestinal diseases and disorders: a possible role in the pathophysiology and clinical implications (review). *Int J Mol Med* 2009; **24**: 727-732 [PMID: 19885611]

107 **Asakawa A**, Ataka K, Fujino K, Chen CY, Kato I, Fujimiya M, Inui A. Ghrelin family of peptides and gut motility. *J Gastroenterol Hepatol* 2011; **26** Suppl 3: 73-74 [PMID: 21443714 DOI: 10.1111/j.1440-1746.2011.06638.x]

108 **Dornonville de la Cour C**, Lindström E, Norlén P, Håkanson R. Ghrelin stimulates gastric emptying but is without effect on acid secretion and gastric endocrine cells. *Regul Pept* 2004; **120**: 23-32 [PMID: 15177917 DOI: 10.1016/j.regpep.2004.02.008]

109 **Fukuda H**, Mizuta Y, Isomoto H, Takeshima F, Ohnita K, Ohba K, Omagari K, Taniyama K, Kohno S. Ghrelin enhances gastric motility through direct stimulation of intrinsic neural pathways and capsaicin-sensitive afferent neurones in rats. *Scand J Gastroenterol* 2004; **39**: 1209-1214 [PMID: 15742997]

110 **Levin F**, Edholm T, Schmidt PT, Grybäck P, Jacobsson H, Degerblad M, Höybye C, Holst JJ, Rehfeld JF, Hellström PM, Näslund E. Ghrelin stimulates gastric emptying and hunger in normal-weight humans. *J Clin Endocrinol Metab* 2006; **91**: 3296-3302 [PMID: 16772353 DOI: 10.1210/jc.2005-2638]

111 **Edholm T**, Levin F, Hellström PM, Schmidt PT. Ghrelin stimulates motility in the small intestine of rats through intrinsic cholinergic neurons. *Regul Pept* 2004; **121**: 25-30 [PMID: 15256270 DOI: 10.1016/j.regpep.2004.04.001]

112 **Tack J**, Depoortere I, Bisschops R, Delporte C, Coulie B, Meulemans A, Janssens J, Peeters T. Influence of ghrelin on interdigestive gastrointestinal motility in humans. *Gut* 2006; **55**: 327-333 [PMID: 16216827 DOI: 10.1136/gut.2004.060426]

113 **Ariga H**, Tsukamoto K, Chen C, Mantyh C, Pappas TN, Takahashi T. Endogenous acyl ghrelin is involved in mediating spontaneous phase III-like contractions of the rat stomach. *Neurogastroenterol Motil* 2007; **19**: 675-680 [PMID: 17640183 DOI: 10.1111/j.1365-2982.2007.00945.x]

114 **Ariga H**, Nakade Y, Tsukamoto K, Imai K, Chen C, Mantyh C, Pappas TN, Takahashi T. Ghrelin accelerates gastric emptying via early manifestation of antro-pyloric coordination in conscious rats. *Regul Pept* 2008; **146**: 112-116 [PMID: 17913258 DOI: 10.1016/j.regpep.2007.08.022]

115 **Tümer C**, Oflazoğlu HD, Obay BD, Kelle M, Taşdemir E. Effect of ghrelin on gastric myoelectric activity and gastric emptying in rats. *Regul Pept* 2008; **146**: 26-32 [PMID: 17825442 DOI: 10.1016/j.regpep.2007.07.008]

116 **Tack JF**, Janssens J, Vantrappen G, Wood JD. Actions of 5-hydroxytryptamine on myenteric neurons in guinea pig gastric antrum. *Am J Physiol* 1992; **263**: G838-G846 [PMID: 1476191]

117 **Michel K**, Sann H, Schaaf C, Schemann M. Subpopulations of gastric myenteric neurons are differentially activated via distinct serotonin receptors: projection, neurochemical coding, and functional implications. *J Neurosci* 1997; **17**: 8009-8017 [PMID: 9315919]

118 **Camilleri M**. Integrated upper gastrointestinal response to food intake. *Gastroenterology* 2006; **131**: 640-658 [PMID: 16890616 DOI: 10.1053/j.gastro.2006.03.023]

119 **Lal S**, McLaughlin J, Barlow J, D'Amato M, Giacovelli G, Varro A, Dockray GJ, Thompson DG. Cholecystokinin pathways modulate sensations induced by gastric distension in humans. *Am J Physiol Gastrointest Liver Physiol* 2004; **287**: G72-G79 [PMID: 14764444 DOI: 10.1152/ajpgi.00351.2003]

120 **Chey WY**, Chang TM. Secretin, 100 years later. *J Gastroenterol* 2003; **38**: 1025-1035 [PMID: 14673718]

121 **Cann PA**, Read NW, Brown C, Hobson N, Holdsworth CD. Irritable bowel syndrome: relationship of disorders in the transit of a single solid meal to symptom patterns. *Gut* 1983; **24**: 405-411 [PMID: 6840614]

122 **Sadik R**, Stotzer PO, Simrén M, Abrahamsson H. Gastrointestinal transit abnormalities are frequently detected in patients with unexplained GI symptoms at a tertiary centre. *Neurogastroenterol Motil* 2008; **20**: 197-205 [PMID: 17999649 DOI: 10.1111/j.1365-2982.2007.01025.x]

123 **Jian R**, Najean Y, Bernier JJ. Measurement of intestinal progression of a meal and its residues in normal subjects and patients with functional diarrhoea by a dual isotope technique. *Gut* 1984; **25**: 728-731 [PMID: 6735253]

124 **Corbett CL**, Thomas S, Read NW, Hobson N, Bergman I, Holdsworth CD. Electrochemical detector for breath hydrogen determination: measurement of small bowel transit time in normal subjects and patients with the irritable bowel syndrome. *Gut* 1981; **22**: 836-840 [PMID: 7297914]

125 **Kellow JE**, Phillips SF, Miller LJ, Zinsmeister AR. Dysmotility of the small intestine in irritable bowel syndrome. *Gut* 1988; **29**: 1236-1243 [PMID: 3197998]

126 **Kellow JE**, Phillips SF. Altered small bowel motility in irritable bowel syndrome is correlated with symptoms. *Gastroenterology* 1987; **92**: 1885-1893 [PMID: 3569764]

127 **Kellow JE**, Gill RC, Wingate DL. Prolonged ambulant recordings of small bowel motility demonstrate abnormalities in the irritable bowel syndrome. *Gastroenterology* 1990; **98**: 1208-1218 [PMID: 2323514]

128 **Quigley EM**, Donovan JP, Lane MJ, Gallagher TF. Antroduodenal manometry. Usefulness and limitations as an outpatient study. *Dig Dis Sci* 1992; **37**: 20-28 [PMID: 1728526]

129 **Quigley EM**. Intestinal manometry--technical advances, clinical limitations. *Dig Dis Sci* 1992; **37**: 10-13 [PMID: 1728512]

130 **Gorard DA**, Libby GW, Farthing MJ. Ambulatory small intestinal motility in 'diarrhoea' predominant irritable bowel syndrome. *Gut* 1994; **35**: 203-210 [PMID: 8307470]

131 **Zhao JH**, Dong L, Hao XQ. [Small intestine motility and gastrointestinal hormone levels in irritable bowel syndrome]. *Nanfang Yike Daxue Xuebao* 2007; **27**: 1492-1495 [PMID: 17959521]

132 **Kellow JE**, Eckersley CM, Jones MP. Enhanced perception of

physiological intestinal motility in the irritable bowel syndrome. *Gastroenterology* 1991; **101**: 1621-1627 [PMID: 1955127]
133 **Thompson DG**, Laidlow JM, Wingate DL. Abnormal small-bowel motility demonstrated by radiotelemetry in a patient with irritable colon. *Lancet* 1979; **2**: 1321-1323 [PMID: 92671]
134 **Kingham JG**, Bown R, Colson R, Clark ML. Jejunal motility in patients with functional abdominal pain. *Gut* 1984; **25**: 375-380 [PMID: 6706216]
135 **Schmidt T**, Pfeiffer A, Kaess H. Abnormal intestinal motility in irritable bowel syndrome. *Gastroenterology* 1996; **111**: 1400-1401 [PMID: 8898662]
136 **Schmidt T**, Hackelsberger N, Widmer R, Meisel C, Pfeiffer A, Kaess H. Ambulatory 24-hour jejunal motility in diarrhea-predominant irritable bowel syndrome. *Scand J Gastroenterol* 1996; **31**: 581-589 [PMID: 8789897]
137 **Hellström PM**, Näslund E, Edholm T, Schmidt PT, Kristensen J, Theodorsson E, Holst JJ, Efendic S. GLP-1 suppresses gastrointestinal motility and inhibits the migrating motor complex in healthy subjects and patients with irritable bowel syndrome. *Neurogastroenterol Motil* 2008; **20**: 649-659 [PMID: 18298441 DOI: 10.1111/j.1365-2982.2007.01079.x]
138 **Simrén M**, Castedal M, Svedlund J, Abrahamsson H, Björnsson E. Abnormal propagation pattern of duodenal pressure waves in the irritable bowel syndrome (IBS) [correction of (IBD)]. *Dig Dis Sci* 2000; **45**: 2151-2161 [PMID: 11215731]
139 **Stanghellini V**, Ghidini C, Maccarini MR, Paparo GF, Corinaldesi R, Barbara L. Fasting and postprandial gastrointestinal motility in ulcer and non-ulcer dyspepsia. *Gut* 1992; **33**: 184-190 [PMID: 1541413]
140 **Björnsson ES**, Abrahamsson H. Interdigestive gastroduodenal manometry in humans. Indication of duodenal phase III as a retroperistaltic pump. *Acta Physiol Scand* 1995; **153**: 221-230 [PMID: 7625174 DOI: 10.1111/j.1748-1716.1995]
141 **Maljaars PW**, Keszthelyi D, Masclee AA. An ileal brake-through? *Am J Clin Nutr* 2010; **92**: 467-468 [PMID: 20685954 DOI: 10.3945/ajcn.2010.30180]
142 **Van Citters GW**, Lin HC. Ileal brake: neuropeptidergic control of intestinal transit. *Curr Gastroenterol Rep* 2006; **8**: 367-373 [PMID: 16968603]
143 **Lin HC**, Zhao XT, Wang L, Wong H. Fat-induced ileal brake in the dog depends on peptide YY. *Gastroenterology* 1996; **110**: 1491-1495 [PMID: 8613054]
144 **Pironi L**, Stanghellini V, Miglioli M, Corinaldesi R, De Giorgio R, Ruggeri E, Tosetti C, Poggioli G, Morselli Labate AM, Monetti N. Fat-induced ileal brake in humans: a dose-dependent phenomenon correlated to the plasma levels of peptide YY. *Gastroenterology* 1993; **105**: 733-739 [PMID: 8359644]
145 **Spiller RC**, Trotman IF, Adrian TE, Bloom SR, Misiewicz JJ, Silk DB. Further characterisation of the 'ileal brake' reflex in man--effect of ileal infusion of partial digests of fat, protein, and starch on jejunal motility and release of neurotensin, enteroglucagon, and peptide YY. *Gut* 1988; **29**: 1042-1051 [PMID: 3410330]
146 **Spiller RC**, Trotman IF, Higgins BE, Ghatei MA, Grimble GK, Lee YC, Bloom SR, Misiewicz JJ, Silk DB. The ileal brake--inhibition of jejunal motility after ileal fat perfusion in man. *Gut* 1984; **25**: 365-374 [PMID: 6706215]
147 **Goumain M**, Voisin T, Lorinet AM, Ducroc R, Tsocas A, Rozé C, Rouet-Benzineb P, Herzog H, Balasubramaniam A, Laburthe M. The peptide YY-preferring receptor mediating inhibition of small intestinal secretion is a peripheral Y(2) receptor: pharmacological evidence and molecular cloning. *Mol Pharmacol* 2001; **60**: 124-134 [PMID: 11408607]
148 **Souli A**, Chariot J, Voisin T, Presset O, Tsocas A, Balasubramaniam A, Laburthe M, Rozé C. Several receptors mediate the antisecretory effect of peptide YY, neuropeptide Y, and pancreatic polypeptide on VIP-induced fluid secretion in the rat jejunum in vivo. *Peptides* 1997; **18**: 551-557 [PMID: 9210175]
149 **Whang EE**, Hines OJ, Reeve JR, Grandt D, Moser JA, Bilchik AJ, Zinner MJ, McFadden DW, Ashley SW. Antisecretory mechanisms of peptide YY in rat distal colon. *Dig Dis Sci* 1997; **42**: 1121-1127 [PMID: 9201071]
150 **Konturek SJ**, Konturek PC, Brzozowska I, Pawlik M, Sliwowski Z, Cześnikiewicz-Guzik M, Kwiecień S, Brzozowski T, Bubenik GA, Pawlik WW. Localization and biological activities of melatonin in intact and diseased gastrointestinal tract (GIT). *J Physiol Pharmacol* 2007; **58**: 381-405 [PMID: 17928638]
151 **Thor PJ**, Krolczyk G, Gil K, Zurowski D, Nowak L. Melatonin and serotonin effects on gastrointestinal motility. *J Physiol Pharmacol* 2007; **58** Suppl 6: 97-103 [PMID: 18212403]
152 **Lu WZ**, Song GH, Gwee KA, Ho KY. The effects of melatonin on colonic transit time in normal controls and IBS patients. *Dig Dis Sci* 2009; **54**: 1087-1093 [PMID: 18720001 DOI: 10.1007/s10620-008-0463-z]
153 **Charles F**, Camilleri M, Phillips SF, Thomforde GM, Forstrom LA. Scintigraphy of the whole gut: clinical evaluation of transit disorders. *Mayo Clin Proc* 1995; **70**: 113-118 [PMID: 7845035 DOI: 10.1016/s0025-6196(11)64277-8]
154 **van der Sijp JR**, Kamm MA, Nightingale JM, Britton KE, Mather SJ, Morris GP, Akkermans LM, Lennard-Jones JE. Radioisotope determination of regional colonic transit in severe constipation: comparison with radio opaque markers. *Gut* 1993; **34**: 402-408 [PMID: 8472991]
155 **Vassallo M**, Camilleri M, Phillips SF, Brown ML, Chapman NJ, Thomforde GM. Transit through the proximal colon influences stool weight in the irritable bowel syndrome. *Gastroenterology* 1992; **102**: 102-108 [PMID: 1727743]
156 **Snape WJ**, Carlson GM, Cohen S. Colonic myoelectric activity in the irritable bowel syndrome. *Gastroenterology* 1976; **70**: 326-330 [PMID: 765183]
157 **Snape WJ**. Myoelectric and motor activity of the colon in normal and abnormal states. *Scand J Gastroenterol Suppl* 1984; **96**: 55-60 [PMID: 6591381]
158 **Sarna S**, Latimer P, Campbell D, Waterfall WE. Effect of stress, meal and neostigmine on rectosigmoid electrical control activity (ECA) in normals and in irritable bowel syndrome patients. *Dig Dis Sci* 1982; **27**: 582-591 [PMID: 7083996]
159 **Latimer P**, Sarna S, Campbell D, Latimer M, Waterfall W, Daniel EE. Colonic motor and myoelectrical activity: a comparative study of normal subjects, psychoneurotic patients, and patients with irritable bowel syndrome. *Gastroenterology* 1981; **80**: 893-901 [PMID: 7202974]
160 **Welgan P**, Meshkinpour H, Ma L. Role of anger in antral motor activity in irritable bowel syndrome. *Dig Dis Sci* 2000; **45**: 248-251 [PMID: 10711433]
161 **Welgan P**, Meshkinpour H, Hoehler F. The effect of stress on colon motor and electrical activity in irritable bowel syndrome. *Psychosom Med* 1985; **47**: 139-149 [PMID: 4048360]
162 **Katschinski M**, Lederer P, Ellermann A, Ganzleben R, Lux G, Arnold R. Myoelectric and manometric patterns of human rectosigmoid colon in irritable bowel syndrome and diverticulosis. *Scand J Gastroenterol* 1990; **25**: 761-768 [PMID: 2204105]
163 **Chey WY**, Jin HO, Lee MH, Sun SW, Lee KY. Colonic motility abnormality in patients with irritable bowel syndrome exhibiting abdominal pain and diarrhea. *Am J Gastroenterol* 2001; **96**: 1499-1506 [PMID: 11374689]
164 **Vassallo MJ**, Camilleri M, Phillips SF, Steadman CJ, Talley NJ, Hanson RB, Haddad AC. Colonic tone and motility in patients with irritable bowel syndrome. *Mayo Clin Proc* 1992; **67**: 725-731 [PMID: 1434910]
165 **Corsetti M**, Ogliari C, Marino B, Basilisco G. Perceptual sensitivity and response bias during rectal distension in patients with irritable bowel syndrome. *Neurogastroenterol Motil* 2005; **17**: 541-547 [PMID: 16078943 DOI: 10.1111/j.1365-2982.2005.00701.x]
166 **Corsetti M**, Cesana B, Bhoori S, Basilisco G. Rectal hyperreactivity to distention in patients with irritable bowel syndrome: role of distention rate. *Clin Gastroenterol Hepatol* 2004; **2**: 49-56 [PMID: 15017632]
167 **Bassotti G**, de Roberto G, Chistolini F, Sietchiping-Nzepa F, Morelli O, Morelli A. Twenty-four-hour manometric study of colonic propulsive activity in patients with diarrhea due to inflammatory (ulcerative colitis) and non-inflammatory (irritable bowel syndrome)

conditions. *Int J Colorectal Dis* 2004; **19**: 493-497 [PMID: 15083326 DOI: 10.1007/s00384-004-0604-6]
168 **Bassotti G**, Sietchiping-Nzepa F, De Roberto G, Chistolini F, Morelli A. Colonic regular contractile frequency patterns in irritable bowel syndrome: the 'spastic colon' revisited. *Eur J Gastroenterol Hepatol* 2004; **16**: 613-617 [PMID: 15167165]
169 **Clemens CH**, Samsom M, Van Berge Henegouwen GP, Smout AJ. Abnormalities of left colonic motility in ambulant nonconstipated patients with irritable bowel syndrome. *Dig Dis Sci* 2003; **48**: 74-82 [PMID: 12645793]
170 **Clemens CH**, Samsom M, Roelofs JM, van Berge Henegouwen GP, Smout AJ. Association between pain episodes and high amplitude propagated pressure waves in patients with irritable bowel syndrome. *Am J Gastroenterol* 2003; **98**: 1838-1843 [PMID: 12907341 DOI: 10.1111/j.1572-0241.2003.07541.x]
171 **Rogers J**, Henry MM, Misiewicz JJ. Increased segmental activity and intraluminal pressures in the sigmoid colon of patients with the irritable bowel syndrome. *Gut* 1989; **30**: 634-641 [PMID: 2731756]
172 **Simrén M**, Abrahamsson H, Björnsson ES. An exaggerated sensory component of the gastrocolonic response in patients with irritable bowel syndrome. *Gut* 2001; **48**: 20-27 [PMID: 11115818]
173 **Di Stefano M**, Miceli E, Missanelli A, Mazzocchi S, Corazza GR. Meal induced rectosigmoid tone modification: a low caloric meal accurately separates functional and organic gastrointestinal disease patients. *Gut* 2006; **55**: 1409-1414 [PMID: 16434428 DOI: 10.1136/gut.2005.076323]
174 **Park JH**, Baek YH, Park DI, Kim HJ, Cho YK, Sohn CI, Jeon WK, Kim BI, Rhee PL. Analysis of rectal dynamic and static compliances in patients with irritable bowel syndrome. *Int J Colorectal Dis* 2008; **23**: 659-664 [PMID: 18357460 DOI: 10.1007/s00384-008-0469-1]
175 **Steens J**, Van Der Schaar PJ, Penning C, Brussee J, Masclee AA. Compliance, tone and sensitivity of the rectum in different subtypes of irritable bowel syndrome. *Neurogastroenterol Motil* 2002; **14**: 241-247 [PMID: 12061908]
176 **Kwan CL**, Davis KD, Mikula K, Diamant NE. Abnormal rectal motor physiology in patients with irritable bowel syndrome. *Neurogastroenterol Motil* 2004; **16**: 251-263 [PMID: 15086879 DOI: 10.1111/j.1365-2982.2004.00508.x]
177 **Cummings JH**, Antoine JM, Azpiroz F, Bourdet-Sicard R, Brandtzaeg P, Calder PC, Gibson GR, Guarner F, Isolauri E, Pannemans D, Shortt C, Tuijtelaars S, Watzl B. PASSCLAIM--gut health and immunity. *Eur J Nutr* 2004; **43** Suppl 2: II118-II173 [PMID: 15221356]
178 **Bischoff SC**, Barbara G, Buurman W, Ockhuizen T, Schulzke JD, Serino M, Tilg H, Watson A, Wells JM. Intestinal permeability--a new target for disease prevention and therapy. *BMC Gastroenterol* 2014; **14**: 189 [PMID: 25407511 DOI: 10.1186/s12876-014-0189-7]
179 **Santos J**, Yang PC, Söderholm JD, Benjamin M, Perdue MH. Role of mast cells in chronic stress induced colonic epithelial barrier dysfunction in the rat. *Gut* 2001; **48**: 630-636 [PMID: 11302959]
180 **Söderholm JD**, Yang PC, Ceponis P, Vohra A, Riddell R, Sherman PM, Perdue MH. Chronic stress induces mast cell-dependent bacterial adherence and initiates mucosal inflammation in rat intestine. *Gastroenterology* 2002; **123**: 1099-1108 [PMID: 12360472]
181 **McDermott JR**, Bartram RE, Knight PA, Miller HR, Garrod DR, Grencis RK. Mast cells disrupt epithelial barrier function during enteric nematode infection. *Proc Natl Acad Sci USA* 2003; **100**: 7761-7766 [PMID: 12796512]
182 **Zhou Q**, Souba WW, Croce CM, Verne GN. MicroRNA-29a regulates intestinal membrane permeability in patients with irritable bowel syndrome. *Gut* 2010; **59**: 775-784 [PMID: 19951903 DOI: 10.1136/gut.2009.181834]
183 **Piche T**, Barbara G, Aubert P, Bruley des Varannes S, Dainese R, Nano JL, Cremon C, Stanghellini V, De Giorgio R, Galmiche JP, Neunlist M. Impaired intestinal barrier integrity in the colon of patients with irritable bowel syndrome: involvement of soluble mediators. *Gut* 2009; **58**: 196-201 [PMID: 18824556 DOI: 10.1136/gut.2007.140806]
184 **Zhou Q**, Zhang B, Verne GN. Intestinal membrane permeability and hypersensitivity in the irritable bowel syndrome. *Pain* 2009; **146**: 41-46 [PMID: 19595511 DOI: 10.1016/j.pain.2009.06.017]
185 **Shulman RJ**, Eakin MN, Czyzewski DI, Jarrett M, Ou CN. Increased gastrointestinal permeability and gut inflammation in children with functional abdominal pain and irritable bowel syndrome. *J Pediatr* 2008; **153**: 646-650 [PMID: 18538790 DOI: 10.1016/j.jpeds.2008.04.062]
186 **Dunlop SP**, Hebden J, Campbell E, Naesdal J, Olbe L, Perkins AC, Spiller RC. Abnormal intestinal permeability in subgroups of diarrhea-predominant irritable bowel syndromes. *Am J Gastroenterol* 2006; **101**: 1288-1294 [PMID: 16771951]
187 **Kerckhoffs AP**, Akkermans LM, de Smet MB, Besselink MG, Hietbrink F, Bartelink IH, Busschers WB, Samsom M, Renooij W. Intestinal permeability in irritable bowel syndrome patients: effects of NSAIDs. *Dig Dis Sci* 2010; **55**: 716-723 [PMID: 19255843 DOI: 10.1007/s10620-009-0765-9]
188 **Lee JW**, Park JH, Park DI, Park JH, Kim HJ, Cho YK, Sohn CI, Jeon WK, Kim BI. Subjects with diarrhea-predominant IBS have increased rectal permeability responsive to tryptase. *Dig Dis Sci* 2010; **55**: 2922-2928 [PMID: 20087660 DOI: 10.1007/s10620-009-1094-8]
189 **Bertiaux-Vandaële N**, Youmba SB, Belmonte L, Lecleire S, Antonietti M, Gourcerol G, Leroi AM, Déchelotte P, Ménard JF, Ducrotté P, Coëffier M. The expression and the cellular distribution of the tight junction proteins are altered in irritable bowel syndrome patients with differences according to the disease subtype. *Am J Gastroenterol* 2011; **106**: 2165-2173 [PMID: 22008894 DOI: 10.1038/ajg.2011.257]
190 **Bischoff SC**. Food allergy and eosinophilic gastroenteritis and colitis. *Curr Opin Allergy Clin Immunol* 2010; **10**: 238-245 [PMID: 20431371 DOI: 10.1097/ACI.0b013e32833982c3]
191 **Brown PM**, Drossman DA, Wood AJ, Cline GA, Frazier KS, Jackson JI, Bronner J, Freiman J, Zambrowicz B, Sands A, Gershon MD. The tryptophan hydroxylase inhibitor LX1031 shows clinical benefit in patients with nonconstipating irritable bowel syndrome. *Gastroenterology* 2011; **141**: 507-516 [PMID: 21684281 DOI: 10.1053/j.gastro.2011.05.005]
192 **Palsson OS**, Morteau O, Bozymski EM, Woosley JT, Sartor RB, Davies MJ, Johnson DA, Turner MJ, Whitehead WE. Elevated vasoactive intestinal peptide concentrations in patients with irritable bowel syndrome. *Dig Dis Sci* 2004; **49**: 1236-1243 [PMID: 15387352]
193 **Kerckhoffs AP**, ter Linde JJ, Akkermans LM, Samsom M. SERT and TPH-1 mRNA expression are reduced in irritable bowel syndrome patients regardless of visceral sensitivity state in large intestine. *Am J Physiol Gastrointest Liver Physiol* 2012; **302**: G1053-G1060 [PMID: 22323131 DOI: 10.1152/ajpgi.00153.2011]
194 **Simrén M**, Stotzer PO, Sjövall H, Abrahamsson H, Björnsson ES. Abnormal levels of neuropeptide Y and peptide YY in the colon in irritable bowel syndrome. *Eur J Gastroenterol Hepatol* 2003; **15**: 55-62 [PMID: 12544695]
195 **Barbara G**, Cremon C, De Giorgio R, Dothel G, Zecchi L, Bellacosa L, Carini G, Stanghellini V, Corinaldesi R. Mechanisms underlying visceral hypersensitivity in irritable bowel syndrome. *Curr Gastroenterol Rep* 2011; **13**: 308-315 [PMID: 21537962 DOI: 10.1007/s11894-011-0195-7]
196 **van Wanrooij SJ**, Wouters MM, Van Oudenhove L, Vanbrabant W, Mondelaers S, Kollmann P, Kreutz F, Schemann M, Boeckxstaens GE. Sensitivity testing in irritable bowel syndrome with rectal capsaicin stimulations: role of TRPV1 upregulation and sensitization in visceral hypersensitivity? *Am J Gastroenterol* 2014; **109**: 99-109 [PMID: 24189713 DOI: 10.1038/ajg.2013.371]
197 **Willot S**, Gauthier C, Patey N, Faure C. Nerve growth factor content is increased in the rectal mucosa of children with diarrhea-predominant irritable bowel syndrome. *Neurogastroenterol Motil* 2012; **24**: 734-739, e347 [PMID: 22625872 DOI: 10.1111/j.1365-2982.2012.01933.x]
198 **Barbara G**, Gargano L, Cremon C, Vasina V, Dothel G, Carini G, De Giorgio R, Stanghellini V, Cogliandro R, Tonini M, De Ponti F, Corinaldesi R. Nerve growth and plasticity in the colonic mucosa of

patients with irritable bowel syndrome. *Gastroenterology* 2010; **138**: S65 [DOI: 10.1016/S0016-5085(10)60293-4]

199 **Dothel G**, Barbaro MR, Boudin H, Vasina V, Cremon C, Gargano L, Bellacosa L, De Giorgio R, Le Berre-Scoul C, Aubert P, Neunlist M, De Ponti F, Stanghellini V, Barbara G. Nerve fiber outgrowth is increased in the intestinal mucosa of patients with irritable bowel syndrome. *Gastroenterology* 2015; **148**: 1002-1011.e4 [PMID: 25655556 DOI: 10.1053/j.gastro.2015.01.042]

200 **Gulbransen BD**, Sharkey KA. Novel functional roles for enteric glia in the gastrointestinal tract. *Nat Rev Gastroenterol Hepatol* 2012; **9**: 625-632 [PMID: 22890111 DOI: 10.1038/nrgastro.2012.138]

201 **Andrews CN**, Shaffer E, Ho W, Nasser Y, O'Hara JR, Sharkey KA. Enteric glia and enteroen-docrine cells in irritable bowel syndrome: controlled pilot study. *Gastroenterology* 2005; **128**: A270

202 **Barbara G**, Cremon C, Annese V, Basilisco G, Bazzoli F, Bellini M, Benedetti A, Benini L, Bossa F, Buldrini P, Cicala M, Cuomo R, Germanà B, Molteni P, Neri M, Rodi M, Saggioro A, Scribano ML, Vecchi M, Zoli G, Corinaldesi R, Stanghellini V. Randomised controlled trial of mesalazine in IBS. *Gut* 2016; **65**: 82-90 [PMID: 25533646 DOI: 10.1136/gutjnl-2014-308188]

203 **Barbara G**, Cremon C, Carini G, Bellacosa L, Zecchi L, De Giorgio R, Corinaldesi R, Stanghellini V. The immune system in irritable bowel syndrome. *J Neurogastroenterol Motil* 2011; **17**: 349-359 [PMID: 22148103 DOI: 10.5056/jnm.2011.17.4.349]

204 **Dunlop SP**, Jenkins D, Neal KR, Naesdal J, Borgaonker M, Collins SM, Spiller RC. Randomized, double-blind, placebo-controlled trial of prednisolone in post-infectious irritable bowel syndrome. *Aliment Pharmacol Ther* 2003; **18**: 77-84 [PMID: 12848628]

205 **Barbara G**, Stanghellini V, Cremon C, De Giorgio R, Fronzoni L, Serra M, Corinaldesi R. Aminosalicylates and other anti-inflammatory compounds for irritable bowel syndrome. *Dig Dis* 2009; **27** Suppl 1: 115-121 [PMID: 20203507 DOI: 10.1159/000268131]

206 **Klooker TK**, Braak B, Koopman KE, Welting O, Wouters MM, van der Heide S, Schemann M, Bischoff SC, van den Wijngaard RM, Boeckxstaens GE. The mast cell stabiliser ketotifen decreases visceral hypersensitivity and improves intestinal symptoms in patients with irritable bowel syndrome. *Gut* 2010; **59**: 1213-1221 [PMID: 20650926 DOI: 10.1136/gut.2010.213108]

207 **Clarke G**, Cryan JF, Dinan TG, Quigley EM. Review article: probiotics for the treatment of irritable bowel syndrome--focus on lactic acid bacteria. *Aliment Pharmacol Ther* 2012; **35**: 403-413 [PMID: 22225517 DOI: 10.1111/j.1365-2036.2011.04965.x]

208 **Whelan K**. Probiotics and prebiotics in the management of irritable bowel syndrome: a review of recent clinical trials and systematic reviews. *Curr Opin Clin Nutr Metab Care* 2011; **14**: 581-587 [PMID: 21892075 DOI: 10.1097/MCO.0b013e32834b8082]

209 **DuPont AW**, DuPont HL. The intestinal microbiota and chronic disorders of the gut. *Nat Rev Gastroenterol Hepatol* 2011; **8**: 523-531 [PMID: 21844910 DOI: 10.1038/nrgastro.2011.133]

210 **Brenner DM**, Moeller MJ, Chey WD, Schoenfeld PS. The utility of probiotics in the treatment of irritable bowel syndrome: a systematic review. *Am J Gastroenterol* 2009; **104**: 1033-1049; quiz 1050 [PMID: 19277023 DOI: 10.1038/ajg.2009.25]

211 **Hoveyda N**, Heneghan C, Mahtani KR, Perera R, Roberts N, Glasziou P. A systematic review and meta-analysis: probiotics in the treatment of irritable bowel syndrome. *BMC Gastroenterol* 2009; **9**: 15 [PMID: 19220890 DOI: 10.1186/1471-230X-9-15]

212 **Schmulson M**, Chang L. Review article: the treatment of functional abdominal bloating and distension. *Aliment Pharmacol Ther* 2011; **33**: 1071-1086 [PMID: 21488913 DOI: 10.1111/j.1365-2036.2011.04637.x]

P- Reviewer: Jia HC **S- Editor**: Yu J **L- Editor**: Filipodia
E- Editor: Wang CH

World Journal of Gastroenterology

Submit a Manuscript: http://www.wjgnet.com/esps/
Help Desk: http://www.wjgnet.com/esps/helpdesk.aspx
DOI: 10.3748/wjg.v22.i7.2256

World J Gastroenterol 2016 February 21; 22(7): 2256-2270
ISSN 1007-9327 (print) ISSN 2219-2840 (online)

REVIEW

Management of pancreatic fluid collections: A comprehensive review of the literature

Amy Tyberg, Kunal Karia, Moamen Gabr, Amit Desai, Rushabh Doshi, Monica Gaidhane, Reem Z Sharaiha, Michel Kahaleh

Amy Tyberg, Kunal Karia, Moamen Gabr, Amit Desai, Rushabh Doshi, Monica Gaidhane, Reem Z Sharaiha, Michel Kahaleh, Division of Gastroenterology and Hepatology, Weill Cornell Medical College, New York, NY 10021, United States

Author contributions: Desai A, Karia K, Tyberg A, Gabr M and Doshi R contributed to acquisition of data, drafting of the manuscript, critical revision of the manuscript for important intellectual content; Sharaiha RZ and Gaidhane M contributed to acquisition of data, interpretation of data, critical revision of the manuscript for important intellectual content, study coordination; Kahaleh M contributed to study concept and design, acquisition of data, critical revision of the manuscript for important intellectual content, study supervision.

Conflict-of-interest statement: The authors have no conflict of interest to report.

Correspondence to: Michel Kahaleh, MD, FASGE, Chief, Professor, Division of Gastroenterology and Hepatology, Weill Cornell Medical College, New York, NY 10021, United States. mkahaleh@gmail.com
Telephone: +1-646-9624000
Fax: +1-646-9620110

Received: August 19, 2015
Peer-review started: August 20, 2015
First decision: November 5, 2015
Revised: December 14, 2015
Accepted: December 30, 2015
Article in press: December 30, 2015
Published online: February 21, 2016

Abstract

Pancreatic fluid collections (PFCs) are a frequent complication of pancreatitis. It is important to classify PFCs to guide management. The revised Atlanta criteria classifies PFCs as acute or chronic, with chronic fluid collections subdivided into pseudocysts and walled-off pancreatic necrosis (WOPN). Establishing adequate nutritional support is an essential step in the management of PFCs. Early attempts at oral feeding can be trialed in patients with mild pancreatitis. Enteral feeding should be implemented in patients with moderate to severe pancreatitis. Jejunal feeding remains the preferred route of enteral nutrition. Symptomatic PFCs require drainage; options include surgical, percutaneous, or endoscopic approaches. With the advent of newer and more advanced endoscopic tools and expertise, and an associated reduction in health care costs, minimally invasive endoscopic drainage has become the preferable approach. An endoscopic ultrasonography-guided approach using a seldinger technique is the preferred endoscopic approach. Both plastic stents and metal stents are efficacious and safe; however, metal stents may offer an advantage, especially in infected pseudocysts and in WOPN. Direct endoscopic necrosectomy is often required in WOPN. Lumen apposing metal stents that allow for direct endoscopic necrosectomy and debridement through the stent lumen are preferred in these patients. Endoscopic retrograde cholangio pancreatography with pancreatic duct (PD) exploration should be performed concurrent to PFC drainage. PD disruption is associated with an increased severity of pancreatitis, an increased risk of recurrent attacks of pancreatitis and long-term complications, and a decreased rate of PFC resolution after drainage. Any pancreatic ductal disruption should be bridged with endoscopic stenting.

Key words: Pancreatic fluid collection; Pancreatic fluid

collection; Pseudocyst; Walled-off pancreatic necrosis; Walled-off pancreatic necrosis; Pancreatitis

Core tip: Pancreatic fluid collections are a frequent complication of pancreatitis. Management includes correctly classifying these collections, initiating early enteral feeding, and draining symptomatic collections. Endoscopic ultrasound with stent placement is the technique of choice. Both metal and plastic stents are efficacious, though metal stents may offer an advantage. When necrosis is present within the collection, direct endoscopic necrosectomy may be required in addition to drainage. Lumen apposing metal stents allow for direct endoscopic necrosectomy through the stent and are preferred in these patients. When a pancreatic duct leak is suspected, endoscopic investigation and stenting is mandated.

Tyberg A, Karia K, Gabr M, Desai A, Doshi R, Gaidhane M, Sharaiha RZ, Kahaleh M. Management of pancreatic fluid collections: A comprehensive review of the literature. *World J Gastroenterol* 2016; 22(7): 2256-2270 Available from: URL: http://www.wjgnet.com/1007-9327/full/v22/i7/2256.htm DOI: http://dx.doi.org/10.3748/wjg.v22.i7.2256

INTRODUCTION

Pancreatic fluid collections (PFCs) area frequent complication of pancreatitis. It is estimated that 5%-15% of pancreatitis episodes are complicated by the development of pseudocysts[1]. PFCs can also result from inflammation due to trauma, post surgery, post transplant or pancreatic ductal obstruction. Fifteen percent of pancreatitis episodes are complicated by pancreatic necrosis, and approximately 33% (range 16%-47%) of those with necrosis are complicated by infected necrosis[2]. Management of these collections can pose a challenge. Traditionally, the management has primarily been surgical. However, with new understanding of the pathophysiology paired with new technological advancements, the pendulum has swung towards an emphasis on a minimally invasive approach with a progression to more invasive options as necessary.

CLASSIFICATION OF PANCREATIC FLUID COLLECTIONS

Correctly classifying PFCs is critical for optimizing treatment and management. The first widespread classification system was developed in 1993 by an international consensus meeting in Atlanta, Georgia and became referred to as the Atlanta Criteria[3]. This criteria classified pancreatic fluid collections as acute or chronic collections, with chronic collections being further divided into pancreatic necrosis, pseudocysts, and pancreatic abscesses.

However, with improving pathophysiologic understanding and improving diagnostic tools, it became clear that a more detailed organizational system was required. More specifically, one that distinguished between collections containing fluid alone *vs* those arising from necrosis and/or containing solid components. As such, a new classification system was developed known as the revised Atlanta criteria[4]. Similar to the original Atlanta Criteria, PFCs are classified as acute (< 4 wk after the pancreatitis episode) or chronic (> 4 wk after the pancreatitis episode). However, in the revised criteria, both acute and chronic collections are further subdivided based on the presence of necrosis within the collection. Acute collections are divided into: acute peripancreatic fluid collections (APFC) and acute necrotic collections (ANC); chronic fluid collections are divided into: pseudocysts or walled-off pancreatic necrosis (WOPN). These new classifications are important because the treatment and management varies depending on the type of collection.

ENTERAL FEEDING

The first step in the management of any PFC is ensuring adequate nutritional support. In mild to moderate acute pancreatitis, oral feeding can be initiated when symptoms are controlled. In severe cases, patients have traditionally been kept nil per os (npo) due to concerns for worsening pancreatic inflammation if normal pancreatic digestion were to be enacted during oral intake[5]. However, prolonged npo in the catabolic stress state of pancreatitis leads to a negative nitrogen balance and nutritional deficiency that became recognized to be associated with a higher mortality rate due to loss of function and structural integrity of vital organs[6]. As a result, total parental nutrition (TPN) became the standard of care in patients with severe acute pancreatitis in an attempt to avoid pancreatic stimulation while still providing nutritional support[5,6].

ENTERAL FEEDING *VS* TPN

This approach was questioned when studies began showing that complete bowel rest is associated with intestinal mucosal atrophy leading to increased intestinal permeability and bacterial translocation[7]. Furthermore, a metabolically deprived gut absorbs endotoxins and other bacterial products stimulating endogenous cytokines which increases the likelihood of nosocomial infections, sepsis, and organ failure[8]. The use of TPN was further called into question with the emergence of data showing that enteral feeding distal to the ligament of Treitz causes negligible pancreatic stimulation and therefore may be safe in patients with severe pancreatitis[9].

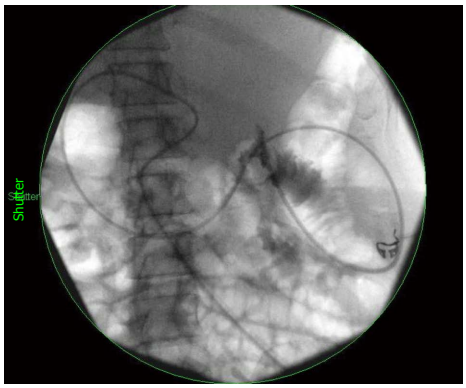


Figure 1 Fluoroscopic image of a percutaneous nasojejunal feeding tube beyond the ligament of Treitz.

In 2010, the Cochrane Collaboration published their results of a meta-analysis comparing randomized trials of enteral nutrition *vs* TPN in patients with severe acute pancreatitis[6]. Eternal nutrition was associated with a significant reduction in mortality, multi-system organ failure, and systemic infections with a trend towards shorter length of hospital stay. Based on these findings, enteral nutrition was recommended as the standard of care for nutritional support in acute pancreatitis[6].

In addition to improved morbidity and mortality rates, enteral nutrition is associated with a lower overall cost compared to TPN. In a study of 24 patients with severe acute pancreatitis, enteral nutrition was associated with savings of $5553.06 per patient ($P$ = 0.08). Though not statistically significant, there was a medium to large effect size (d = 0.61) suggesting that the difference between the two groups would likely have been significantin a larger sample size[10].

EARLY *VS* LATE ENTERAL FEEDING

The timing of initiation of enteral feeding in severe acute pancreatitis has been debated. In a recent meta-analysis, patients receiving early initiation of enteral nutrition (defined as within 48 h of admission) had significantly lower rates of infectious complications (OR = 0.45, 95%CI: 0.15-0.77, P < 0.05), organ failure (OR = 0.27, 95%CI: 0.14-0.50, P < 0.05), length of hospitalization [mean difference -2.18 d, 95%CI: (-3.48)-(-0.87), P < 0.05], and mortality (OR = 0.31, 95%CI: 0.14-0.71, P < 0.05) compared to those with delayed enteral nutrition or TPN[11]. However, the exact time at whichenteral feeding should be initiated is not yet established.

JEJUNAL *VS* GASTRIC ENTERAL FEEDING

Though enteral nutrition distal to the ligament of Treitz is thought to decrease pancreatic stimulation, placement of a nasojejunal tube requires endoscopy for placement and is more cumbersome than a nasogastric tube which can be placed bedside (Figure 1). Studies have been performed to evaluate the safety of nasogastric feeds compared to nasojejunal feeds. A meta-analysis of these studies showed no difference in mortality and tolerance between the two types of feeding; however, this analysis was limited by the small sample size (157 patients in the 3 studies included for analysis) and the lack of verification of placement of the nasojejunal tube distal to ligament of Treitz in two of the three studies[12]. A recent non-inferiority trial of 78 patients randomized to nasogastric or radiologically-confirmed nasojejunal feeding was recently published, showing non-inferiority of nasogastric feeds. However, there was a higher rate of infectious complications, need for surgical intervention for infected necrosis, and mortality in the nasogastric feeding group[13]. A prospective, randomized controlled trial evaluating nasogastric *vs* nasojejunal feeding called the Study on Nutrition in Acute Pancreatitis is currently underway, which will provide further evidence on this subject. Until more high-quality data is available, nasojejunal feeding remains the preferred route of enteral nutrition.

ENTERAL FEEDING FORMULATIONS

Enteral nutrition is available in a variety of formulations, including standard, elemental, and semi-elemental with the latter two more commonly used based upon the assumption that they result in less pancreatic stimulation. Standard enteral formulas are, however, significantly cheaper and proven effective[14]. Windsor *et al*[15] randomized patients with severe acute pancreatitis to TPN *vs* standard enteral formulas and found that patients receiving standard enteral formulas had improved clinical outcomes compared to those receiving TPN, including decreased rates of systemic inflammatory response syndrome, sepsis, and multi-system organ failure. Makola *et al*[14] also examined the efficacy of enteral formulas in acute pancreatitis and demonstrated that it is associated with an improvement in the severity of pancreatitis, a higher albumin, and a trend towards a normal BMI.

INDICATIONS FOR DRAINAGE OF PFCS

In the initial Atlanta criteria, PFCs were recommended for drainage based on the presence of symptoms and/or complications such as abdominal pain, gastrointestinal obstruction, vascular compression, biliary obstruction, or infection, as well as on the size of the collection. However, in the revised criteria, size alone does not necessitate treatment; only symptomatic PFCs are recommended for drainage. Historically, drainage has been managed *via* surgical techniques. But with the advent of newer and more advanced endoscopic tools and expertise, and an associated reduction in health care costs, minimally invasive endoscopic drainage has

become the preferable approach[16].

PANCREATIC PSEUDOCYSTS

As described in the revised Atlanta criteria, a pseudocyst is an encapsulated fluid collection, without the presence of solid debris, that develops as a consequence of pancreatitis a minimum of 4 wk after the initial injury[3].

SURGICAL DRAINAGE

Surgical cystogastrostomy involves an open or laparoscopic procedure in which an anastomosis is created between the lumen of the cyst cavity and the stomach or small bowel using suturing or stapling devices[11]. Depending on the location, a cystojejunostomy can also be a surgical alternative.

Historically, surgical drainage was an efficacious therapy, with published pseudocyst recurrence rates between 2.5%-5% post-drainage, but complication rates approaching 30% in some studies[16]. As endoscopic therapies emerged, initial studies comparing surgical cystogastrostomy to endoscopic cystogastrostomy showed grossly equivalent success rates, defined as pseudocyst resolution, and comparable complication rates[17,18]. However, as endoscopic techniques improved, endoscopic therapy became the preferred initial treatment approach. A randomized comparative trial by Varadarajulu *et al*[19] looking at surgical *vs* endoscopic cystogastrostomy found that while the two techniques yielded similar technical success and complication rates, endoscopic therapy was associated with a shorter hospital stay, a lower overall cost, and better mental health and physical health component scores among patients.

PERCUTANEOUS DRAINAGE

Percutaneous drainage involves placement of an external drainage catheter into the pseudocyst using real-time imaging guidance, usually with computed tomography (CT) or ultrasound (US) with fluoroscopy. Initial studies comparing surgical drainage to percutaneous drainage found both procedures to be efficacious[20,21]. However, more recent comparative studies have generally favored percutaneous drainage[22], with some studies even demonstrating a mortality benefit[23]. Percutaneous drainage has also recently been compared to endoscopic drainage. A recent study directly comparing percutaneous *vs* endoscopic management retrospectively reviewed 81 patients. This study found equal technical success rates and adverse events rates between the techniques, but a decreased re-intervention rate, a shorter hospital stay, and a decreased number of follow-up abdominal imaging studies among patients drained endoscopically[24].

CONVENTIONAL TRANSMURAL DRAINAGE

Conventional transmural drainage was the endoscopic procedure of choice to drain PFCs in the early era of endoscopic PFC management. This procedure consists of endoscopically visualizing the PFC bulge in the gastric wall, creating a fistulous tract between the pseudocyst cavity and the gastric lumen using a seldinger technique, advancing a guidewire into the pseudocyst cavity, dilating the tract, and finally deploying one or more plastic stents to secure apposition and allow for continuous drainage[25].

This concept was first introduced into the medical literature in 1975 in a case report by Rogers *et al*[26]. It was expanded upon by Kozarek *et al*[27] in 1985 in a case series of 4 patients who underwent endoscopic cystogastrostomy needle decompression and by Cremer *et al*[28] in 1986 in which they described 13 patients who underwent cystogastrostomy with transnasal drain placement. The first large series evaluating this technique was published in 1989 and consisted of a 7-year follow-up study of 33 patients who underwent endoscopic cystogastrostomy or cystoduodenostomy with a success rate of 82%, recurrence rate of 12%, and complication rate of 2%[29]. In 1995, Binmoeller *et al*[30] published a similar study of 53 patients with a success rate of 87%, recurrent rate of 21%, and complication rate of 11%. A series of subsequent studies from the early 2000s demonstrated similar results, reporting success rates between 70%-100% and complication rates ranging from 2%-40%, mainly bleeding, perforation, and infection due to stent occlusion or migration[29-39].

One of the limitations of this technique was the need for the PFC to be bulging into the gastric wall. It is estimated that no bulge is present in 42%-48% of PFCs, limiting the efficacy and safety of this technique in almost half of all cases[40]. However, with the incorporation of echoendoscopy, this limitation was overcome.

EUS-GUIDED TRANSMURAL DRAINAGE

The use of EUS in pseudocyst drainage provides endoscopists with the ability to identify and avoid vascular structures between the cyst and the gastric lumen, to measure the distance between the lumen and the cystic lesion and ensure that adequate apposition can be obtained, to localize non-bulging pseudocysts that are otherwise unidentifiable using endoscopy alone, and to confirm the lack of solid or necrotic components within the pseudocyst cavity (Figure 2). This technique first emerged in the medical literature in 1992 by Grimm *et al*[41] and 1996 by

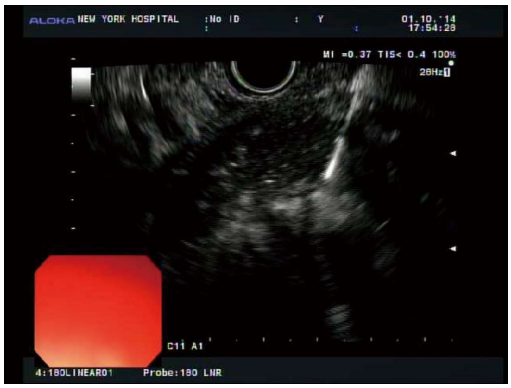


Figure 2 Endosonographic visualization of accessing a pancreatic fluid collection with a fine needle aspiration needle.

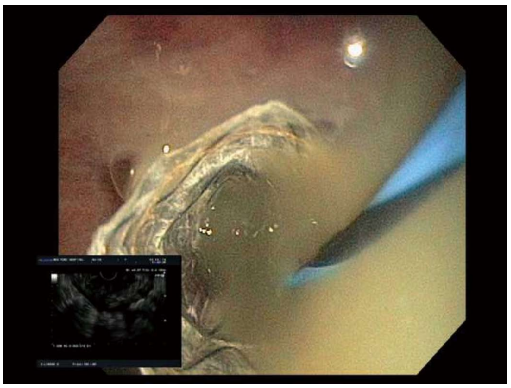


Figure 3 Endoscopic visualization of a biliary fully covered self-expanding metal stent to drain an infected pseudocyst.

Wiersema[42], both of whom described a single case of successful endoscopic pseudocyst drainage using an echoendoscope. Several larger case series looking at 27 patients[30] and 35 patients[43] documented success rates of 78% and 89% with complication rates of 7% and 4% respectively, significantly lower than with conventional transmural drainage (CTD). Since then, a multitude of studies have validated these initial findings, with early studies quoting success rates ranging from 80%-100% and complication rates averaging around 10%, mainly bleeding and perforation[25,30,35,40,43-47].

More recent studies have further subdivided pancreatic pseudocysts into simple *vs* infected pseudocysts. Sadik *et al*[48] noted a 94% success rate and 5% complication rate in simple pseudocysts *vs* 80% success rate and 30% complication rate in infected pseudocysts. Similarly, Varadarajulu *et al*[49] found a 93.5% success rate and 5% complication rate *vs* a 63% success rate and 16% complication rate in sterile *vs* infected pseudocysts. This suggests that while EUS-guided drainage is still efficacious, infected pseudocysts are more difficult to drain and associated with a higher complication rate.

Several studies have directly compared EUS-guided PFC drainage to CTD. A study by Kahaleh *et al*[25] showed equal efficacy and safety between the two techniques when conventional drainage was used for bulging lesions and EUS-guided drainage was used for all other lesions. Subsequently, two prospective, randomized studies by Varadarajulu *et al*[50] and Park *et al*[51] found significantly higher technical success rates with EUS-guided drainage, and a trend towards a better safety profile although statistical significance was not reached.

FULLY COVERED SELF-EXPANDING METAL STENTS

Fully-covered self-expanding metal stents (FCSEMS) offer a variety of advantages over traditional plastic stents. Firstly, they allow for a larger drainage lumen, which decreases the risk of stent occlusion and theoretically the need for repeat procedures. And secondly, they allow for shorter procedure times since they require a single access of the cyst for deployment, rather than the multiple access points required for the deployment of multiple plastic stents.

A study by Penn *et al*[52] looked at 20 patients with symptomatic pancreatic pseudocysts which were drained under EUS guidance with placement of biliary FCSEMS (Wallflex; Boston Scientific, Natick, MA). They found a 100% technical success rate and a 70% rate of complete pseudocyst resolution without recurrence. Three patients experienced complications (15%) requiring surgery in 2 of the 3, and stent migration was noted in 3 patients, all of whom still achieved pseudocyst resolution. Similarly, a case series looking at 18 patients with symptomatic pseudocysts drained with FCSEMS (Wallflex; Boston Scientific) under EUS-guidance showed a 78% rate of complete pseudocyst resolution (14 patients); however, 16% of patients required surgery for ongoing sepsis or ineffective drainage[53]. A case series looking at 20 patients with infected pseudocysts drained with biliary FCSEMS and/or esophageal CSEMS reported a 100% technical success rate and a complete clinical success rate of 85%[54]. In this series, 1 patient had stent migration and 1 patient had a superinfection treated with medical therapy[55].

FCSEMS with antimigratory fins (Viabil, Conmed, city, state) have also been proven efficacious (Figure 3). Talreja *et al*[56] reported a 78% clinical success rate with complete resolution after pseudocyst drainage in 18 patients. In their series, 1 patient had stent migration, though still achieved pseudocyst resolution. Berzosa *et al*[57] evaluated the same stent for pseudocyst drainage in 5 patients and found an 83% resolution rate without recurrence at 18 wk.

PLASTIC STENTS *VS* METAL STENTS

Despite the advantages that FCSEMS hold over traditional plastic stents, direct comparison has not

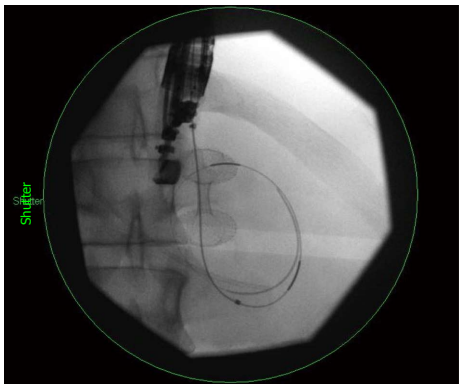


Figure 4 Fluoroscopic visualization of a lumen apposing metal stent being deployed into a pancreatic pseudocyst.

consistently shown them to be superior. A recent meta-analysis that included 698 patients found no difference in treatment success, adverse events, or recurrence rates between pseudocysts drained with multiple plastic stents *vs* metal stents[18,58]. However, a more recent study by Sharaiha *et al*[59] of 230 patients found that pseudocysts drained with plastic stents were 2.5 times more likely to report adverse events than when FCSEMS were used. Similarly, complete pseudocyst resolution was 89% with plastic stents compared to 98% with FCSEMS. Given the cost differential between metal and plastic stents, further randomized controlled trials are needed prior to final recommendations on the best approach.

NOVEL LUMEN-APPOSING METAL STENT

In 2013, a new FCSEMS received FDA approval for use in drainage of PFCs (Axios; Boston Scientific, Boston, MA). The design of the stent includes two 21 mm or 24 mm flanges on either side of a 10 mm or 15 mm diameter lumen to help decrease the risk of stent migration. The first clinical data using this stent came from a study by Itoi *et al*[60] in 2012 looking at 15 patients with symptomatic pseudocysts. Success rate in the trial was 100%, with zero percent recurrence at 11 mo follow-up and the only complication being stent migration in 1 patient without clinical sequelae (Figure 4).

Several additional studies validated this initial reported success. A prospective study by Shah *et al*[61] looking at 33 patients found a technical success rate of 91% with a cyst resolution rate of 93%. Gornals *et al*[62] looked at 9 patients who underwent pseudocyst drainage with placement of a lumen-apposing metal stent (LAMS) and reported a technical success 89%, a pseudocyst resolution rate of 100%, and 1 significant complication (pneumothorax). Walter *et al*[63] published their data of 15 patients with a clinical success rate of 93%, resolution rate of 100%, and 1 significant complication (perforation). And most recently, Rinninella *et al*[64] documented a 98% cyst resolution rate with adverse events in 2 out of 41 patients.

In summary, pancreatic pseudocysts can be efficaciously managed endoscopically. Although conventional endoscopic drainage can be safely used for bulging pseudocysts, the majority of pseudocysts are drained under EUS-guidance to allow for safer access and a decrease in complications. Metal stents, including the newly emerged lumen-apposing metal stent, carry an advantage over plastic stents in pseudocyst drainage, but given the increased cost and lack of definitive evidence as to their superiority, further trials are needed (Table 1).

MANAGEMENT OF WOPN

WOPN is a PFC that contains solid necrotic debris surrounded by a clearly defined capsule with or without concurrent fluid[4]. Although a small percentage of WOPN will resolve spontaneously, the majority of collections will require drainage.

SURGICAL DRAINAGE

Open surgical debridement has historically been the therapy for WOPN[65,66]. Surgical management consists of 4 principal approaches, all involving accessing the pancreatic bed but differing in the surgical approach. The standard approaches include access *via* the lesser sac, the gastrocolic-omentum, or trans-mesenterially through the transverse mesocolon[67]. Once the necrosectomy has been performed, the options are: (1) necrosectomy alongside open packing[68]; (2) planed, staged re-laparotomies with repeat lavage[69]; (3) closed continuous lavage of the lesser sac and retro-peritoneum[65]; and (4) closed packing[70].

Open necrosectomy is associated with high morbidity (34% to 95%) and mortality (6% to 25%) rates[71-76], and a plethora of adverse events including organ failure, perforation, wound infections, hemorrhage, chronic pancreatico-cutaneous and entero-cutaneous fistulae, and abdominal wall hernias[65,67,70,72,73]. With the development of laparoscopic surgery, minimally invasive procedures supplanted open debridement as the surgical option of choice. Laparoscopic debridement can be performed using 2 approaches: trans-peritoneal (anterior) or retroperitoneal (posterior)[66]. The trans-peritoneal approach involves an anterior access through the stomach or the bowel to drain the collection. The retroperitoneal approach uses a mini-lumbotomy, usually left-sided, through which a laparoscope is introduced to remove the necrotic debris under direct visualization. Currently, the trans-peritoneal approach is rarely used due to increased technical difficulty and the risk of contamination of the peritoneal cavity[77]. Additionally, a retroperitoneal approach can be performed with minimal or no gas insufflation and avoids the complications associated with severing the peritoneum[78,79].

Table 1 Pancreatic fluid collection

	Cases	Procedure used	Device used	Clinical success rates	Technical success rates	Complications
Pancreatic pseudocysts						
Hookey *et al*[35], 2006	116	Conventional Transmural drainage	Stents	88%	88%	11% complication rate
Antillon *et al*[40], 2006	33	EUS-Guided Transmural drainage	Double-pigtail Stent	94%	82%	2 major complications and 3 minor complications
Azar *et al*[44], 2006	23	EUS-Guided Transmural drainage	Double-pigtail Stent	91%	91%	
Lopes *et al*[46], 2007	51	EUS-guided Transmural drainage	Straight/Double-pigtail Stent	94%	94%	17.7% stent migration, stent obstruction
Barthet *et al*[45], 2008	50	EUS-guided Transmural drainage	Double-pigtail Stent/ Straight Polyethylene	90%	98%	18% morbidity, 5 superinfections
Talreja *et al*[56], 2008	18	EUS-guided drainage	Covered self-expanding metal stent	95%	78%	Superinfection (5), bleeding (2), and inner migration (1).
Berzosa *et al*[57], 2012	7	Single-step endoscopic ultrasonography-guided drainage	Single-self expandable metal stent	100%	83%	
Fabbri *et al*[95], 2012	22	EUS-guided drainage	Covered self-expanding metal stent	77%	77%	
Penn *et al*[52], 2012	20	EUS-guided drainage	Fully covered self-expandable metallic stents	70%	70%	Pseudocyst infection (2), post transmural drainage fever and post-ERCP pancreatitis(1)
Itoi *et al*[60], 2012	15	EUS-guided drainage	Novel lumen-apposing, self-expandable metal stent (Axios)	100%	100%	
Weilert *et al*[53], 2012	18	EUS-guided drainage	Fully covered self-expanding metal stent	78%	78%	
Varadarajulu *et al*[19], 2013	20	Endoscopic Cystogastrostomy	Plastic stents	95%	90%	
Sarkaria *et al*[97], 2014	17	EUS-guided drainage	Fully covered esophageal self-expandable metallic stents	88%	88%	Perforation during tract dilation (1)
Shah *et al*[61], 2015	33	EUS-guided drainage	Lumen-apposing, covered, self-expanding metal stent; Axios	91%	93%	Abdominal pain (n = 3), spontaneous stent migration, back pain (n = 1), access-site infection, and stent dislodgement (n = 1)
Walter *et al*[63], 2015	61	EUS-guided drainage	Axios	93%	98%	stent migration (n = 3), stent dislodgement during necrosectomy (n = 3), stent removal during surgery (n = 2), or refusal by the patient (n = 2)
Mukai *et al*[99], 2015	2	EUS-guided drainage/ Direct endoscopic necrosectomy	novel flared-type biflangedmetal stent	100%	100%	There was 1 psuedocyst recurrence in cystogramy
Rinninella *et al*[64], 2015	18	EUS-guided drainage	Lumen-apposing, self-expanding metal stent (Axios)	100%		
Sharaiha *et al*[59], 2015	230	EUS-guided transmural drainage	118 DP plastic stents/112 FCSEMS	75%-90%	< 90%	
Walled-off Necrosis						
Seewald *et al*[89], 2005	13	Direct endoscopic necrosectomy	Double-pigtail stent	91%	91%	Minor bleeding after balloon dilation, Necrosectomy (4)
Charnley *et al*[92], 2006	13	Direct endoscopic necrosectomy	Double-pigtail stents	92.3%	92.3%	
Voermans *et al*[90], 2007	25	Direct endoscopic necrosectomy	Double-pigtail stents	93%	93%	Surgery(2), Hemorrhage (1), perforation of cyst wall (1)
Papachristou *et al*[88], 2007	53	Direct endoscopic necrosectomy	Double-pigtail stents	81%	81%	Twelve patients (23%) required open operative intervention a median of 47 d (range, 5–540) after initial endoscopic drainage/debridement, due to persistence of WOPN (n = 3), recurrence of a fluid collection (n = 2), cutaneous fistula formation (n = 2), or technical failure, persistence of pancreatic pain, colonic obstruction, perforation, and flank abscess (n = 1 each)

Escourrou *et al*[91], 2008	13	Direct endoscopic necrosectomy	Double-pigtail stents	100%	100%	bleeding (n = 3), transient aggravation of sepsis (n = 3)
Seifert *et al*[93], 2009	93	Transmural endoscopic necresectomy	Multiple Stents	80%	80%	Bleeding (13), Perforations of the necrosis (5), fistula formation (2), air embolism (2), complications at other organs (2)
Gardner *et al*[102], 2009	45	25 used direct endoscopic neserectomy and 20 used conventional standard endoscopic drainage	Multiple Stents	45%	88% for DEN and 45% for Standard endoscopy drainage	
Gardner *et al*[94], 2011	104	Direct endoscopic necrosectomy	Multiple Stents	91%	91%	14%; included 5 retrogastric perforations/pneumoperitoneum
Attam *et al*[98], 2014	10	endoscopic transluminal necrosectomy and transmural drain	Novel large-bore, fully covered metal through-the-scope esophageal stent	90%	100%	
Smoczyński *et al*[100], 2014	112	Endoscopic drainage	Multiple Stents	84%	93%	Stoma bleeding (19), GI Perforation (4), collection perforation (2), sepsis (1), stent migration (3)
Sarkaria *et al*[97], 2014	17	EUS-guided drainage	Fully covered esophageal self-expandable metallic stents	83%	83%	
Mukai *et al*[99], 2015	19	EUS-guided drainage and DEN for PFCs using the novel flared-type BFMS	novel flared-type biflangedmetal stent	100%	100%	
Rinninella *et al*[64], 2015	52	EUS guidance FCSEMS/ LACSEMS	Axios Stent	90.4%	100%	3 patients required surgery due to infection/1 patient had a perforated wall
Walter *et al*[63], 2015	46	EUS guided drainage	Axios Stent	81%	81%	9%

EUS: Endoscopic ultrasonography; GI: Gastrointestinal; DEN: Direct endoscopic necrosectomy; PFCs: Pancreatic fluid collections.

PERCUTANOUS DRAINAGE

Percutaneous drainage for WOPN involves placement of a catheter into the collection under US guidance with fluoroscopy or CT guidance. Ideally, a retroperitoneal approach is taken. After placement and aspiration of as much fluid as possible, 12 French drains are left in place and irrigated with 10-20 mL of sterile saline 3 times daily. The catheters can be upsized to a maximum of 28 French as the patient's follow-up requires[80].

Traditionally, the success rate of percutaneous drainage alone (defined as survival without the need for additional surgical necrosectomy) ranged from 35%-84%, with mortality rates ranging from 5.6%-34% and morbidity ranges of 11%-42%, most commonly due to pancreatico-cutaneous fistulas and pancreatico-enteric fistulas which occur in an as many as 20% of cases[81-85]. Consequently, percutaneous drainage is more often used as an adjunct therapy, often serving as the first step of a step-up approach to endoscopic or surgical drainage[65,76,81]. The Dutch PANTER trial illustrated this concept by comparing open necrosectomy with a less-invasive step-up approach in 88 patients[86]. In the step-up approach, patients first underwent percutaneous drainage of the collection followed by minimally invasive retroperitoneal necrosectomy if clinical improvement was not achieved. Results showed that the minimally invasive approach was associated with an overall decreased mortality rate, fewer major and long-term complications, and reduced overall healthcare costs. Of note, percutaneous drainage alone without subsequent necrosectomy was achieved only in 30% of patients.

ENDOSCOPIC NECROSECTOMY

The endoscopic technique for drainage of WOPN is called direct endoscopic necrosectomy (DEN). As in pseudocyst drainage, EUS is used to identify and access the collection, a wire is coiled within the cavity lumen, and the fistulous tract is created. However, unlike pseudocyst drainage, the tract is then dilated enough to allow for passage of an endoscope into the collection. Mechanical cleaning with removal of necrotic debris is then performed.

Nasocystic drainage is typically performed to facilitate liquefaction of the debris and improve drainage[31].

Hydrogen peroxide (H_2O_2) can be used to facilitate removal of necrotic debris[15]. H_2O_2 is infused into the cavity during endoscopy in a 1:5 or 1:10 dilution with normal saline, allowing for enhanced necrotic tissue dislodgement and debris extraction during endoscopy. The use of H_2O_2 has been shown to decrease procedure time, reduce complication rates, and decrease the total number of necrosectomy sessions until resolution. Some adverse events have been reported including bleeding, perforation, and self-limited pneumoperitoneum. However, these complications are rare, especially after the incorporation of carbon dioxide for peri-procedural insufflation.

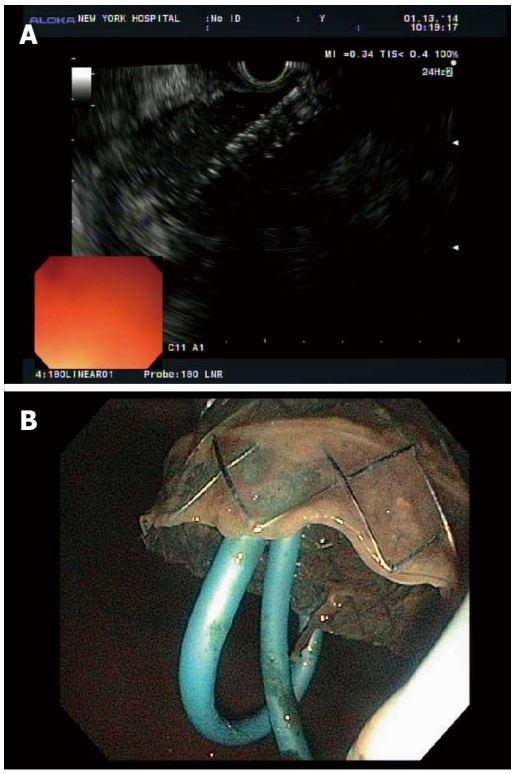


Figure 5 Endosonographic visualization (A) and endoscopic visualization (B) of a biliary fully covered self-expanding metal stent being deployed into walled-off pancreatic necrosis.

The first experiences with endoscopic necrosectomy were done through the deployment of plastic stents and placement of a nasocystic drain without direct mechanical debridement. This was first described by Baron *et al*[87] in 1996, in which 11 patients underwent WOPN drainage with an overall success rate of 81% and a complication rate of 36% (bleeding and infection). Papachristou *et al*[88] reported similar findings in 2007 in a study of 53 patients, with an overall success rate of 81% and a complication rate of 21%.

Seewald *et al*[89] introduced the concept of dilation of the fistulous tract to allow for advancement of an endoscope into the necrotic cavity and mechanical removal of debris. They described a 91% WOPN resolution rate in 13 patients, with 2 patients having recurrence on 4 mo follow-up necessitating surgical resection. Voermans *et al*[90] documented a 93% success rate in 25 patients, with only 2 patients requiring surgical intervention for bleeding and perforation. Smaller studies by Escourrou *et al*[91] and Charnley *et al*[92] found similar results.

The first multicenter study evaluating endoscopic necrosectomy was performed by Seifert *et al*[93]. In this study of 93 patients, an 80% clinical success rate was achieved with a 23% complication rate and 7.5% mortality rate. A second multicenter study was published by Gardner *et al*[94] in 2011 looking at 104 patients with WOPN. Successful resolution was achieved in 91% of patients, with a complication rate of 14% including 3 patients requiring surgical intervention either for bleeding or failed resolution, 5 patients dying of other causes prior to WOPN resolution, and 1 peri-procedural death due to hypotension.

FULLY-COVERED SELF-EXPANDING METAL STENTS

Biliary FCSEMS provide a larger stent lumen for drainage of WOPN, but are limited in that they do not permit passage of an endoscope (Figure 5). Fabbri *et al*[95] published results of 2 patients with WOPN drained with biliary FCSEMS (Wallflex, Boston Scientific). In 1 patient, the WOPN completely resolved; in the second patient, the stent migrated leading to widespread sepsis and need for surgical intervention. Berzosa *et al*[57] also looked at 2 patients with WOPN drained with biliary FCSEMS (Viable, ConMed). The WOPN resolved in both patients with no recurrence after 18 wk follow-up.

Esophageal FCSEMS have a larger lumen diameter and allow for passage of the endoscope through the lumen of the stent after deployment (Figure 6A). The first reported case of WOPN drainage using an esophageal FCSEMS was published by Antillon *et al*[96]. Sarkaria *et al*[97] published results of 17 patients who underwent WOPN drainage with placement of an esophageal stent, 88% of whom demonstrated complete resolution with an average of 5 endoscopic sessions and 2 of whom ultimately required surgical intervention. No major complications were reported. Attam *et al*[98] found similar results in 10 patients using a through-the-scope esophageal FCSEMS in which resolution was achieved in 90% of patients after an average of 3 endoscopic sessions. Two patients required stent revision due to persistent infection in long-term follow-up, and 1 patient died of gastrointestinal bleeding from a pseudoaneurysm. Esophageal FCSEMS are a promising concept in the endoscopic management of WOPN. However, the development of lumen apposing metal stent may supplant the utilization of esophageal FCSEMS.

LAMS

The previously mentioned LAMS (Axios, Xlumena) also allows for passage of an endoscope through the lumen of the stent into the cavity for mechanical necrosectomy. Only a small number of studies have been published specifically evaluating the use of LAMS for drainage of WOPN. Shah *et al*[61] achieved WOPN resolution in 10 of 11 patients using a LAMS for drainage. Walter *et al*[63] looked at 46 patients with WOPN and found a clinical success rate of 81%, with an overall major complication rate of 9% due to infection from stent occlusion, all managed endoscopically with only 3 patients ultimately requiring surgical intervention for persistent infection. Most recently, Rinninella *et al*[64] documented a 90% clinical

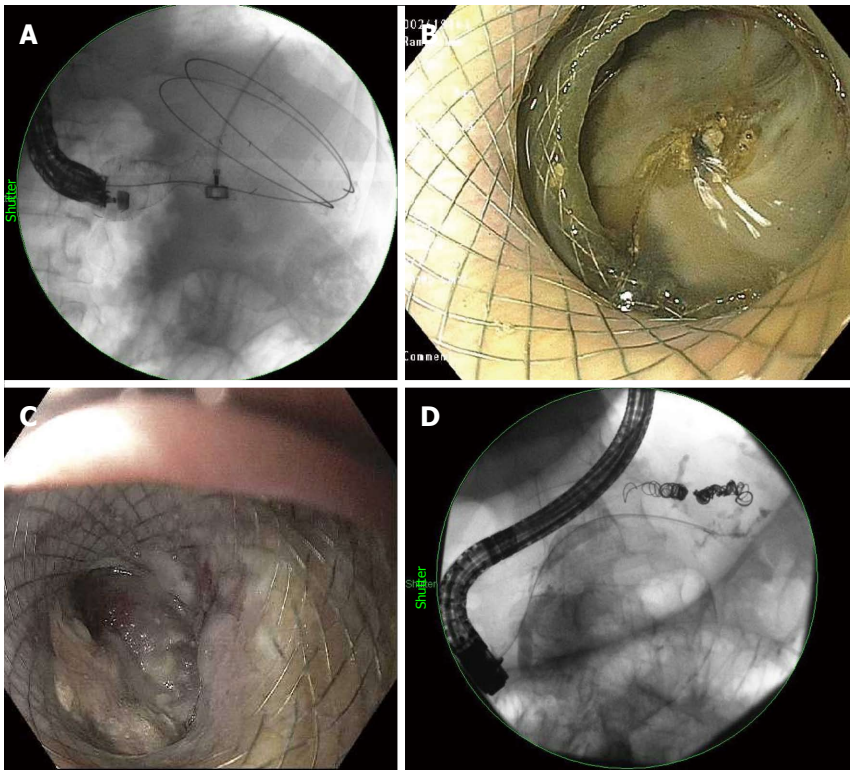


Figure 6 Fluoroscopic visualization of an esophageal fully-covered self-expanding metal stents deployed into walled-off necrosis (A), a pancreatic duct leak (D), endoscopic visualization of a lumen-apposing metal stent deployed into walled-off necrosis (B, C).

success rate in 52 patients, with a 5.4% complication rate. Additional multi-center studies are needed, but LAMS represent a promising advance in the endoscopic management of WOPN (Figure 6B and C).

Cumulatively, these studies illustrate that while endoscopic necrosectomy is efficacious, it is a complicated procedure requiring a high-level of skill in endoscopy with complications occurring even in the most experienced of hands and requiring the presence of a strong multi-disciplinary team to be successful. The incorporation of metal stents that allow for a large drainage lumen and the advancement of an endoscope through the stent lumen for DEN is a major advance, which may ultimately improve efficacy and decrease complications associated with these procedures (Table 1)[99-102].

ENDOSCOPY *VS* PERCUTAENOUS OR SURGICAL DRAINAGE

A recent randomized multicenter trial from 2012 directly compared endoscopic necrosectomy and surgical necrosectomy (video-assisted retroperitoneal debridement with open laparoscopic necrosectomy for rescue) in 22 patients[103]. Their results showed that endoscopic therapy was associated with a lower post-procedure inflammatory response (as demonstrated by interleukin levels), a lower complication rate, fewer pancreatic fistulae developments, and less pancreatic enzyme use on 6 mo follow-up. Amore recent study from 2014 directly compared a step-up approach starting with percutaneous drainage and escalating to more invasive therapy as needed to DEN in 24 patients[104]. Their results demonstrated a resolution rate of 92% *vs* 25% in the necrosectomy *vs* percutaneous drainage group, with 9 of 12 patients requiring surgery after percutaneous drainage alone. Additionally, less antibiotic use, pancreatic insufficiency, and hospitalization was seen in the endoscopic necrosectomy group.

ERCP FOR PANCREATIC DUCT EXPLORATION

An important component in the management of PFCs is ensuring the integrity of the pancreatic duct (PD) *via* ERCP. Disruptions in the PD are associated with an increased severity of pancreatitis, an increased risk of recurrent attacks of pancreatitis and long-term complications, and a decreased rate of PFC resolution after drainage[105-110] (Figure 6D).

PD DISRUTPION AND SEVERITY OF PANCREATITIS

A PD disruption has been shown to be associated with a more severe course of pancreatitis. A retrospective review of 105 patients with acute pancreatitis found that nearly half of patients with severe pancreatitis

had concurrent PD disruption, while a normal PD was noted in 100% of patients with mild pancreatitis[105]. Similarly, in a retrospective review of 144 patients with severe pancreatitis, Lau *et al*[109] found that patients with a PD leak were 3.4 times more likely to have pancreatic necrosis. Thus, assessing for a PD disruption in patients with pancreatitis is an important prognosticating step.

PD DISRUPTION AND RECURRENT PANCREATITIS/LONG-TERM COMPLICATIONS

In addition to predicting the severity of pancreatitis, a PD disruption can also predict the likelihood of long-term complications and recurrent episodes of pancreatitis. Howard *et al*[106] looked at 14 patients with WOPN who developed recurrent pancreatitis after initially-successful debridement, and found that all 14 patients had a pancreatic duct abnormality on either ERCP or MRCP. No other predictive factor of recurrence was identified. Nealon *et al*[107] demonstrated that in 174 patients with severe pancreatitis, long-term complications such as sepsis and recurrent pancreatitis occurred in 36%-38% *vs* 0% and 62%-89% *vs* 7% of patients with an abnormal PD compared to those with a normal PD.

PD DISRUPTION AND PFC RESOLUTION

Assessing for PD disruptions can also predict treatment success. In the same study as above-mentioned, Nealon *et al*[107] demonstrated that altered PD anatomy is directly correlated with a decreased rate of pseudocyst resolution. In 563 patients with pseudocysts, they found that spontaneous resolution occurred only in 0%-5% of patients with a ductal disruption compared to 87% of patients with a normal pancreatic duct. Similarly, Trevino *et al*[108] demonstrated improved PFC resolution of both pseudocysts and WOPN in patients who underwent PFC drainage with transpapillary PD stenting compared with PFC drainage alone (97.5% *vs* 80%). Of note, undergoing ERCP was not associated with any increase in mortality, the need for necrosectomy, or hospital length of stay.

CONCLUSION

Pancreatitis can frequently result in the development of fluid collections, ranging from simple pseudocysts to WOPN. The initial step in management of these collections is ensuring adequate nutritional support is provided. Enteral nutrition is preferred over parenteral nutrition, with post-pancreatic jejunal feeding being the optimal enteral route in patients with moderate or severe disease. Symptomatic PFCs require drainage. Endoscopic drainage can be successfully accomplished with improved safety and efficacy as compared to surgical or radiologic approaches. Furthermore, patients with WOPN can safely undergo endoscopic necrosectomy, obviating the need for surgical exploration. Lastly, in all patients with suspected PD disruption, ERCP with PD exploration should be performed and if MRCP is available, it should be used accordingly to rule out pancreatic duct disruption in low probability patients.

In summary, all forms of PFC can be safely and effectively managed by a variety of endoscopic procedures.

REFERENCES

1 **Poornachandra KS**, Bhasin DK, Nagi B, Sinha SK, Rana SS, Shafiq N, Greer K, Gupta R, Kang M, Malhotra S, Singh K. Clinical, biochemical, and radiologic parameters at admission predicting formation of a pseudocyst in acute pancreatitis. *J Clin Gastroenterol* 2011; **45**: 159-163 [PMID: 20628310 DOI: 10.1097/MCG.0b013e3181dd9d14]

2 **Banks PA**, Freeman ML; Practice Parameters Committee of the American College of Gastroenterology. Practice guidelines in acute pancreatitis. *Am J Gastroenterol* 2006; **101**: 2379-2400 [PMID: 17032204]

3 **Bradley EL**. A clinically based classification system for acute pancreatitis. Summary of the International Symposium on Acute Pancreatitis, Atlanta, Ga, September 11 through 13, 1992. *Arch Surg* 1993; **128**: 586-590 [PMID: 8489394]

4 **Banks PA**, Bollen TL, Dervenis C, Gooszen HG, Johnson CD, Sarr MG, Tsiotos GG, Vege SS. Classification of acute pancreatitis--2012: revision of the Atlanta classification and definitions by international consensus. *Gut* 2013; **62**: 102-111 [PMID: 23100216 DOI: 10.1136/gutjnl-2012-302779]

5 **Goodgame JT**, Fischer JE. Parenteral nutrition in the treatment of acute pancreatitis: effect on complications and mortality. *Ann Surg* 1977; **186**: 651-658 [PMID: 411429]

6 **Al-Omran M**, Albalawi ZH, Tashkandi MF, Al-Ansary LA. Enteral versus parenteral nutrition for acute pancreatitis. *Cochrane Database Syst Rev* 2010; (**1**): CD002837 [PMID: 20091534 DOI: 10.1002/14651858.CD002837]

7 **Tenner S**, Baillie J, DeWitt J, Vege SS. American College of Gastroenterology guideline: management of acute pancreatitis. *Am J Gastroenterol* 2013; **108**: 1400-1415; 1416 [PMID: 23896955 DOI: 10.1038/ajg.2013.218]

8 **Oláh A**, Romics L. Enteral nutrition in acute pancreatitis: a review of the current evidence. *World J Gastroenterol* 2014; **20**: 16123-16131 [PMID: 25473164 DOI: 10.3748/wjg.v20.i43.16123]

9 **Corcoy RSJ**, Domingo P. Nutrition in patients with severe acute pancreatitis. *Nutrition* 1988; **4**: 269-275

10 **Mutch KL**, Heidal KB, Gross KH, Bertrand B. Cost-analysis of nutrition support in patients with severe acute pancreatitis. *Int J Health Care Qual Assur* 2011; **24**: 540-547 [PMID: 22204087]

11 **Li JY**, Yu T, Chen GC, Yuan YH, Zhong W, Zhao LN, Chen QK. Enteral nutrition within 48 hours of admission improves clinical outcomes of acute pancreatitis by reducing complications: a meta-analysis. *PLoS One* 2013; **8**: e64926 [PMID: 23762266 DOI: 10.1371/journal.pone.0064926]

12 **Chang YS**, Fu HQ, Xiao YM, Liu JC. Nasogastric or nasojejunal feeding in predicted severe acute pancreatitis: a meta-analysis. *Crit Care* 2013; **17**: R118 [PMID: 23786708 DOI: 10.1186/cc12790]

13 **Singh N**, Sharma B, Sharma M, Sachdev V, Bhardwaj P, Mani K, Joshi YK, Saraya A. Evaluation of early enteral feeding through nasogastric and nasojejunal tube in severe acute pancreatitis: a noninferiority randomized controlled trial. *Pancreas* 2012; **41**: 153-159 [PMID: 21775915]

14 **Makola D**, Krenitsky J, Parrish C, Dunston E, Shaffer HA, Yeaton P, Kahaleh M. Efficacy of enteral nutrition for the treatment of

pancreatitis using standard enteral formula. *Am J Gastroenterol* 2006; **101**: 2347-2355 [PMID: 17032201]
15 **Windsor AC**, Kanwar S, Li AG, Barnes E, Guthrie JA, Spark JI, Welsh F, Guillou PJ, Reynolds JV. Compared with parenteral nutrition, enteral feeding attenuates the acute phase response and improves disease severity in acute pancreatitis. *Gut* 1998; **42**: 431-435 [PMID: 9577354]
16 **Parks RW**, Tzovaras G, Diamond T, Rowlands BJ. Management of pancreatic pseudocysts. *Ann R Coll Surg Engl* 2000; **82**: 383-387 [PMID: 11103153]
17 **Johnson MD**, Walsh RM, Henderson JM, Brown N, Ponsky J, Dumot J, Zuccaro G, Vargo J. Surgical versus nonsurgical management of pancreatic pseudocysts. *J Clin Gastroenterol* 2009; **43**: 586-590 [PMID: 19077728 DOI: 10.1097/MCG.0b013e31817440be]
18 **Melman L**, Azar R, Beddow K, Brunt LM, Halpin VJ, Eagon JC, Frisella MM, Edmundowicz S, Jonnalagadda S, Matthews BD. Primary and overall success rates for clinical outcomes after laparoscopic, endoscopic, and open pancreatic cystgastrostomy for pancreatic pseudocysts. *Surg Endosc* 2009; **23**: 267-271 [PMID: 19037696 DOI: 10.1007/s00464-008-0196-2]
19 **Varadarajulu S**, Bang JY, Sutton BS, Trevino JM, Christein JD, Wilcox CM. Equal efficacy of endoscopic and surgical cystogastrostomy for pancreatic pseudocyst drainage in a randomized trial. *Gastroenterology* 2013; **145**: 583-590.e1 [PMID: 23732774 DOI: 10.1053/j.gastro.2013.05.046]
20 **Heider R**, Meyer AA, Galanko JA, Behrns KE. Percutaneous drainage of pancreatic pseudocysts is associated with a higher failure rate than surgical treatment in unselected patients. *Ann Surg* 1999; **229**: 781-787; discussion 787-789 [PMID: 10363891]
21 **Spivak H**, Galloway JR, Amerson JR, Fink AS, Branum GD, Redvanly RD, Richardson WS, Mauren SJ, Waring JP, Hunter JG. Management of pancreatic pseudocysts. *J Am Coll Surg* 1998; **186**: 507-511 [PMID: 9583690]
22 **Lang EK**, Paolini RM, Pottmeyer A. The efficacy of palliative and definitive percutaneous versus surgical drainage of pancreatic abscesses and pseudocysts: a prospective study of 85 patients. *South Med J* 1991; **84**: 55-64 [PMID: 1702557]
23 **Adams DB**, Anderson MC. Percutaneous catheter drainage compared with internal drainage in the management of pancreatic pseudocyst. *Ann Surg* 1992; **215**: 571-576; discussion 576-578 [PMID: 1632678]
24 **Akshintala VS**, Saxena P, Zaheer A, Rana U, Hutfless SM, Lennon AM, Canto MI, Kalloo AN, Khashab MA, Singh VK. A comparative evaluation of outcomes of endoscopic versus percutaneous drainage for symptomatic pancreatic pseudocysts. *Gastrointest Endosc* 2014; **79**: 921-928; quiz 983.e2, 983.e5 [PMID: 24315454 DOI: 10.1016/j.gie.2013.10.032]
25 **Kahaleh M**, Shami VM, Conaway MR, Tokar J, Rockoff T, De La Rue SA, de Lange E, Bassignani M, Gay S, Adams RB, Yeaton P. Endoscopic ultrasound drainage of pancreatic pseudocyst: a prospective comparison with conventional endoscopic drainage. *Endoscopy* 2006; **38**: 355-359 [PMID: 16680634]
26 **Rogers BH**, Cicurel NJ, Seed RW. Transgastric needle aspiration of pancreatic pseudocyst through an endoscope. *Gastrointest Endosc* 1975; **21**: 133-134 [PMID: 1112474]
27 **Kozarek RA**, Brayko CM, Harlan J, Sanowski RA, Cintora I, Kovac A. Endoscopic drainage of pancreatic pseudocysts. *Gastrointest Endosc* 1985; **31**: 322-327 [PMID: 4043685]
28 **Cremer M**, Deviere J. Endoscopic management of pancreatic cysts and pseudocysts. *Gastrointest Endosc* 1986; **32**: 367-368 [PMID: 3770394]
29 **Cremer M**, Deviere J, Engelholm L. Endoscopic management of cysts and pseudocysts in chronic pancreatitis: long-term follow-up after 7 years of experience. *Gastrointest Endosc* 1989; **35**: 1-9 [PMID: 2920879]
30 **Binmoeller KF**, Seifert H, Walter A, Soehendra N. Transpapillary and transmural drainage of pancreatic pseudocysts. *Gastrointest Endosc* 1995; **42**: 219-224 [PMID: 7498686]
31 **Baron TH**, Harewood GC, Morgan DE, Yates MR. Outcome differences after endoscopic drainage of pancreatic necrosis, acute pancreatic pseudocysts, and chronic pancreatic pseudocysts. *Gastrointest Endosc* 2002; **56**: 7-17 [PMID: 12085029]
32 **Beckingham IJ**, Krige JE, Bornman PC, Terblanche J. Long term outcome of endoscopic drainage of pancreatic pseudocysts. *Am J Gastroenterol* 1999; **94**: 71-74 [PMID: 9934733]
33 **Cahen D**, Rauws E, Fockens P, Weverling G, Huibregtse K, Bruno M. Endoscopic drainage of pancreatic pseudocysts: long-term outcome and procedural factors associated with safe and successful treatment. *Endoscopy* 2005; **37**: 977-983 [PMID: 16189770]
34 **De Palma GD**, Galloro G, Puzziello A, Masone S, Persico G. Endoscopic drainage of pancreatic pseudocysts: a long-term follow-up study of 49 patients. *Hepatogastroenterology* 2002; **49**: 1113-1115 [PMID: 12143215]
35 **Hookey LC**, Debroux S, Delhaye M, Arvanitakis M, Le Moine O, Devière J. Endoscopic drainage of pancreatic-fluid collections in 116 patients: a comparison of etiologies, drainage techniques, and outcomes. *Gastrointest Endosc* 2006; **63**: 635-643 [PMID: 16564865]
36 **Sharma SS**, Bhargawa N, Govil A. Endoscopic management of pancreatic pseudocyst: a long-term follow-up. *Endoscopy* 2002; **34**: 203-207 [PMID: 11870570]
37 **Smits ME**, Rauws EA, Tytgat GN, Huibregtse K. The efficacy of endoscopic treatment of pancreatic pseudocysts. *Gastrointest Endosc* 1995; **42**: 202-207 [PMID: 7498683]
38 **Weckman L**, Kylänpää ML, Puolakkainen P, Halttunen J. Endoscopic treatment of pancreatic pseudocysts. *Surg Endosc* 2006; **20**: 603-607 [PMID: 16424988]
39 **Sanchez Cortes E**, Maalak A, Le Moine O, Baize M, Delhaye M, Matos C, Devière J. Endoscopic cystenterostomy of nonbulging pancreatic fluid collections. *Gastrointest Endosc* 2002; **56**: 380-386 [PMID: 12196776]
40 **Antillon MR**, Shah RJ, Stiegmann G, Chen YK. Single-step EUS-guided transmural drainage of simple and complicated pancreatic pseudocysts. *Gastrointest Endosc* 2006; **63**: 797-803 [PMID: 16650541]
41 **Grimm H**, Binmoeller KF, Soehendra N. Endosonography-guided drainage of a pancreatic pseudocyst. *Gastrointest Endosc* 1992; **38**: 170-171 [PMID: 1568613]
42 **Wiersema MJ**. Endosonography-guided cystoduodenostomy with a therapeutic ultrasound endoscope. *Gastrointest Endosc* 1996; **44**: 614-617 [PMID: 8934175]
43 **Giovannini M**, Pesenti C, Rolland AL, Moutardier V, Delpero JR. Endoscopic ultrasound-guided drainage of pancreatic pseudocysts or pancreatic abscesses using a therapeutic echo endoscope. *Endoscopy* 2001; **33**: 473-477 [PMID: 11437038]
44 **Azar RR**, Oh YS, Janec EM, Early DS, Jonnalagadda SS, Edmundowicz SA. Wire-guided pancreatic pseudocyst drainage by using a modified needle knife and therapeutic echoendoscope. *Gastrointest Endosc* 2006; **63**: 688-692 [PMID: 16564874]
45 **Barthet M**, Lamblin G, Gasmi M, Vitton V, Desjeux A, Grimaud JC. Clinical usefulness of a treatment algorithm for pancreatic pseudocysts. *Gastrointest Endosc* 2008; **67**: 245-252 [PMID: 18226686 DOI: 10.1016/j.gie.2007.06.014]
46 **Lopes CV**, Pesenti C, Bories E, Caillol F, Giovannini M. Endoscopic-ultrasound-guided endoscopic transmural drainage of pancreatic pseudocysts and abscesses. *Scand J Gastroenterol* 2007; **42**: 524-529 [PMID: 17454865]
47 **Varadarajulu S**, Wilcox CM, Tamhane A, Eloubeidi MA, Blakely J, Canon CL. Role of EUS in drainage of peripancreatic fluid collections not amenable for endoscopic transmural drainage. *Gastrointest Endosc* 2007; **66**: 1107-1119 [PMID: 17892874]
48 **Sadik R**, Kalaitzakis E, Thune A, Hansen J, Jönson C. EUS-guided drainage is more successful in pancreatic pseudocysts compared with abscesses. *World J Gastroenterol* 2011; **17**: 499-505 [PMID: 21274380 DOI: 10.3748/wjg.v17.i4.499]
49 **Varadarajulu S**, Bang JY, Phadnis MA, Christein JD, Wilcox CM. Endoscopic transmural drainage of peripancreatic fluid collections: outcomes and predictors of treatment success in 211 consecutive patients. *J Gastrointest Surg* 2011; **15**: 2080-2088 [PMID: 21786063 DOI: 10.1007/s11605-011-1621-8]

50 **Varadarajulu S**, Christein JD, Tamhane A, Drelichman ER, Wilcox CM. Prospective randomized trial comparing EUS and EGD for transmural drainage of pancreatic pseudocysts (with videos). *Gastrointest Endosc* 2008; **68**: 1102-1111 [PMID: 18640677 DOI: 10.1016/j.gie.2008.04.028]

51 **Park DH**, Lee SS, Moon SH, Choi SY, Jung SW, Seo DW, Lee SK, Kim MH. Endoscopic ultrasound-guided versus conventional transmural drainage for pancreatic pseudocysts: a prospective randomized trial. *Endoscopy* 2009; **41**: 842-848 [PMID: 19798610 DOI: 10.1055/s-0029-1215133]

52 **Penn DE**, Draganov PV, Wagh MS, Forsmark CE, Gupte AR, Chauhan SS. Prospective evaluation of the use of fully covered self-expanding metal stents for EUS-guided transmural drainage of pancreatic pseudocysts. *Gastrointest Endosc* 2012; **76**: 679-684 [PMID: 22732874 DOI: 10.1016/j.gie.2012.04.457]

53 **Weilert F**, Binmoeller KF, Shah JN, Bhat YM, Kane S. Endoscopic ultrasound-guided drainage of pancreatic fluid collections with indeterminate adherence using temporary covered metal stents. *Endoscopy* 2012; **44**: 780-783 [PMID: 22791588 DOI: 10.1055/s-0032-1309839]

54 **Fabbri C**, Luigiano C, Maimone A, Polifemo AM, Tarantino I, Cennamo V. Endoscopic ultrasound-guided drainage of pancreatic fluid collections. *World J Gastrointest Endosc* 2012; **4**: 479-488 [PMID: 23189219 DOI: 10.4253/wjge.v4.i11.479]

55 **Tarantino I**, Barresi L, Fazio V, Di Pisa M, Traina M. EUS-guided self-expandable stent placement in 1 step: a new method to treat pancreatic abscess. *Gastrointest Endosc* 2009; **69**: 1401-1403 [PMID: 19152887 DOI: 10.1016/j.gie.2008.08.018]

56 **Talreja JP**, Shami VM, Ku J, Morris TD, Ellen K, Kahaleh M. Transenteric drainage of pancreatic-fluid collections with fully covered self-expanding metallic stents (with video). *Gastrointest Endosc* 2008; **68**: 1199-1203 [PMID: 19028232 DOI: 10.1016/j.gie.2008.06.015]

57 **Berzosa M**, Maheshwari S, Patel KK, Shaib YH. Single-step endoscopic ultrasonography-guided drainage of peripancreatic fluid collections with a single self-expandable metal stent and standard linear echoendoscope. *Endoscopy* 2012; **44**: 543-547 [PMID: 22407382 DOI: 10.1055/s-0031-1291710]

58 **Navaneethan U**. 734: Endoscopic Transmural Drainage of Pancreatic Pseudocysts: Multiple Plastic Stents Vs Metal Stents - A Systematic Review and Meta-Analysis. *Gastrointest Endosc* 2014; **79**: AB 167-AB 8

59 **Sharaiha RZ**, DeFilippis EM, Kedia P, Gaidhane M, Boumitri C, Lim HW, Han E, Singh H, Ghumman SS, Kowalski T, Loren D, Kahaleh M, Siddiqui A. Metal versus plastic for pancreatic pseudocyst drainage: clinical outcomes and success. *Gastrointest Endosc* 2015; **82**: 822-827 [PMID: 25936453 DOI: 10.1016/j.gie.2015.02.035]

60 **Itoi T**, Binmoeller KF, Shah J, Sofuni A, Itokawa F, Kurihara T, Tsuchiya T, Ishii K, Tsuji S, Ikeuchi N, Moriyasu F. Clinical evaluation of a novel lumen-apposing metal stent for endosonography-guided pancreatic pseudocyst and gallbladder drainage (with videos). *Gastrointest Endosc* 2012; **75**: 870-876 [PMID: 22301347 DOI: 10.1016/j.gie.2011.10.020]

61 **Shah RJ**, Shah JN, Waxman I, Kowalski TE, Sanchez-Yague A, Nieto J, Brauer BC, Gaidhane M, Kahaleh M. Safety and efficacy of endoscopic ultrasound-guided drainage of pancreatic fluid collections with lumen-apposing covered self-expanding metal stents. *Clin Gastroenterol Hepatol* 2015; **13**: 747-752 [PMID: 25290534 DOI: 10.1016/j.cgh.2014.09.047]

62 **Gornals JB**, De la Serna-Higuera C, Sánchez-Yague A, Loras C, Sánchez-Cantos AM, Pérez-Miranda M. Endosonography-guided drainage of pancreatic fluid collections with a novel lumen-apposing stent. *Surg Endosc* 2013; **27**: 1428-1434 [PMID: 23232994 DOI: 10.1007/s00464-012-2591-y]

63 **Walter D**, Will U, Sanchez-Yague A, Brenke D, Hampe J, Wollny H, López-Jamar JM, Jechart G, Vilmann P, Gornals JB, Ullrich S, Fähndrich M, de Tejada AH, Junquera F, Gonzalez-Huix F, Siersema PD, Vleggaar FP. A novel lumen-apposing metal stent for endoscopic ultrasound-guided drainage of pancreatic fluid collections: a prospective cohort study. *Endoscopy* 2015; **47**: 63-67 [PMID: 25268308 DOI: 10.1055/s-0034-1378113]

64 **Rinninella E**, Kunda R, Dollhopf M, Sanchez-Yague A, Will U, Tarantino I, Gornals Soler J, Ullrich S, Meining A, Esteban JM, Enz T, Vanbiervliet G, Vleggaar F, Attili F, Larghi A. EUS-guided drainage of pancreatic fluid collections using a novel lumen-apposing metal stent on an electrocautery-enhanced delivery system: a large retrospective study (with video). *Gastrointest Endosc* 2015; **82**: 1039-1046 [PMID: 26014960 DOI: 10.1016/j.gie.2015.04.006]

65 **Aranda-Narváez JM**, González-Sánchez AJ, Montiel-Casado MC, Titos-García A, Santoyo-Santoyo J. Acute necrotizing pancreatitis: Surgical indications and technical procedures. *World J Clin Cases* 2014; **2**: 840-845 [PMID: 25516858 DOI: 10.12998/wjcc.v2.i12.840]

66 **Freeman ML**, Werner J, van Santvoort HC, Baron TH, Besselink MG, Windsor JA, Horvath KD, vanSonnenberg E, Bollen TL, Vege SS. Interventions for necrotizing pancreatitis: summary of a multidisciplinary consensus conference. *Pancreas* 2012; **41**: 1176-1194 [PMID: 23086243 DOI: 10.1097/MPA.0b013e318269c660]

67 **Karakayali FY**. Surgical and interventional management of complications caused by acute pancreatitis. *World J Gastroenterol* 2014; **20**: 13412-13423 [PMID: 25309073 DOI: 10.3748/wjg.v20.i37.13412]

68 **Bradley EL**. Management of infected pancreatic necrosis by open drainage. *Ann Surg* 1987; **206**: 542-550 [PMID: 3662663]

69 **Sarr MG**, Nagorney DM, Mucha P, Farnell MB, Johnson CD. Acute necrotizing pancreatitis: management by planned, staged pancreatic necrosectomy/debridement and delayed primary wound closure over drains. *Br J Surg* 1991; **78**: 576-581 [PMID: 2059810]

70 **Fernández-del Castillo C**, Rattner DW, Makary MA, Mostafavi A, McGrath D, Warshaw AL. Débridement and closed packing for the treatment of necrotizing pancreatitis. *Ann Surg* 1998; **228**: 676-684 [PMID: 9833806]

71 **Wittau M**, Scheele J, Gölz I, Henne-Bruns D, Isenmann R. Changing role of surgery in necrotizing pancreatitis: a single-center experience. *Hepatogastroenterology* 2010; **57**: 1300-1304 [PMID: 21410076]

72 **Rodriguez JR**, Razo AO, Targarona J, Thayer SP, Rattner DW, Warshaw AL, Fernández-del Castillo C. Debridement and closed packing for sterile or infected necrotizing pancreatitis: insights into indications and outcomes in 167 patients. *Ann Surg* 2008; **247**: 294-299 [PMID: 18216536 DOI: 10.1097/SLA.0b013e31815b6976]

73 **Raraty MG**, Halloran CM, Dodd S, Ghaneh P, Connor S, Evans J, Sutton R, Neoptolemos JP. Minimal access retroperitoneal pancreatic necrosectomy: improvement in morbidity and mortality with a less invasive approach. *Ann Surg* 2010; **251**: 787-793 [PMID: 20395850 DOI: 10.1097/SLA.0b013e3181d96c53]

74 **Parikh PY**, Pitt HA, Kilbane M, Howard TJ, Nakeeb A, Schmidt CM, Lillemoe KD, Zyromski NJ. Pancreatic necrosectomy: North American mortality is much lower than expected. *J Am Coll Surg* 2009; **209**: 712-719 [PMID: 19959039 DOI: 10.1016/j.jamcollsurg.2009.08.009]

75 **Howard TJ**, Patel JB, Zyromski N, Sandrasegaran K, Yu J, Nakeeb A, Pitt HA, Lillemoe KD. Declining morbidity and mortality rates in the surgical management of pancreatic necrosis. *J Gastrointest Surg* 2007; **11**: 43-49 [PMID: 17390185]

76 **van Santvoort HC**, Besselink MG, Bakker OJ, Hofker HS, Boermeester MA, Dejong CH, van Goor H, Schaapherder AF, van Eijck CH, Bollen TL, van Ramshorst B, Nieuwenhuijs VB, Timmer R, Laméris JS, Kruyt PM, Manusama ER, van der Harst E, van der Schelling GP, Karsten T, Hesselink EJ, van Laarhoven CJ, Rosman C, Bosscha K, de Wit RJ, Houdijk AP, van Leeuwen MS, Buskens E, Gooszen HG. A step-up approach or open necrosectomy for necrotizing pancreatitis. *N Engl J Med* 2010; **362**: 1491-1502 [PMID: 20410514 DOI: 10.1056/NEJMoa0908821]

77 **Wroński M**, Cebulski W, Słodkowski M, Krasnodębski IW. Minimally invasive treatment of infected pancreatic necrosis. *Prz Gastroenterol* 2014; **9**: 317-324 [PMID: 25653725 DOI: 10.5114/

pg.2014.47893]
78 **Gambiez LP**, Denimal FA, Porte HL, Saudemont A, Chambon JP, Quandalle PA. Retroperitoneal approach and endoscopic management of peripancreatic necrosis collections. *Arch Surg* 1998; **133**: 66-72 [PMID: 9438762]
79 **van Santvoort HC**, Besselink MG, Bollen TL, Buskens E, van Ramshorst B, Gooszen HG. Case-matched comparison of the retroperitoneal approach with laparotomy for necrotizing pancreatitis. *World J Surg* 2007; **31**: 1635-1642 [PMID: 17572838 DOI: 10.1007/s00268-007-9083-6]
80 **Freeny PC**, Hauptmann E, Althaus SJ, Traverso LW, Sinanan M. Percutaneous CT-guided catheter drainage of infected acute necrotizing pancreatitis: techniques and results. *AJR Am J Roentgenol* 1998; **170**: 969-975 [PMID: 9530046]
81 **van Baal MC**, van Santvoort HC, Bollen TL, Bakker OJ, Besselink MG, Gooszen HG. Systematic review of percutaneous catheter drainage as primary treatment for necrotizing pancreatitis. *Br J Surg* 2011; **98**: 18-27 [PMID: 21136562 DOI: 10.1002/bjs.7304]
82 **Lee JK**, Kwak KK, Park JK, Yoon WJ, Lee SH, Ryu JK, Kim YT, Yoon YB. The efficacy of nonsurgical treatment of infected pancreatic necrosis. *Pancreas* 2007; **34**: 399-404 [PMID: 17446837]
83 **Chang YC**, Tsai HM, Lin XZ, Chang CH, Chuang JP. No debridement is necessary for symptomatic or infected acute necrotizing pancreatitis: delayed, mini-retroperitoneal drainage for acute necrotizing pancreatitis without debridement and irrigation. *Dig Dis Sci* 2006; **51**: 1388-1395 [PMID: 16855881]
84 **Bruennler T**, Langgartner J, Lang S, Wrede CE, Klebl F, Zierhut S, Siebig S, Mandraka F, Rockmann F, Salzberger B, Feuerbach S, Schoelmerich J, Hamer OW. Outcome of patients with acute, necrotizing pancreatitis requiring drainage-does drainage size matter? *World J Gastroenterol* 2008; **14**: 725-730 [PMID: 18205262 DOI: 10.3748/wjg.14.725]
85 **Mortelé KJ**, Girshman J, Szejnfeld D, Ashley SW, Erturk SM, Banks PA, Silverman SG. CT-guided percutaneous catheter drainage of acute necrotizing pancreatitis: clinical experience and observations in patients with sterile and infected necrosis. *AJR Am J Roentgenol* 2009; **192**: 110-116 [PMID: 19098188 DOI: 10.2214/AJR.08.1116]
86 **Besselink MG**, van Santvoort HC, Nieuwenhuijs VB, Boermeester MA, Bollen TL, Buskens E, Dejong CH, van Eijck CH, van Goor H, Hofker SS, Lameris JS, van Leeuwen MS, Ploeg RJ, van Ramshorst B, Schaapherder AF, Cuesta MA, Consten EC, Gouma DJ, van der Harst E, Hesselink EJ, Houdijk LP, Karsten TM, van Laarhoven CJ, Pierie JP, Rosman C, Bilgen EJ, Timmer R, van der Tweel I, de Wit RJ, Witteman BJ, Gooszen HG. Minimally invasive 'step-up approach' versus maximal necrosectomy in patients with acute necrotising pancreatitis (PANTER trial): design and rationale of a randomised controlled multicenter trial [ISRCTN13975868]. *BMC Surg* 2006; **6**: 6 [PMID: 16606471]
87 **Baron TH**, Thaggard WG, Morgan DE, Stanley RJ. Endoscopic therapy for organized pancreatic necrosis. *Gastroenterology* 1996; **111**: 755-764 [PMID: 8780582]
88 **Papachristou GI**, Takahashi N, Chahal P, Sarr MG, Baron TH. Peroral endoscopic drainage/debridement of walled-off pancreatic necrosis. *Ann Surg* 2007; **245**: 943-951 [PMID: 17522520]
89 **Seewald S**, Groth S, Omar S, Imazu H, Seitz U, de Weerth A, Soetikno R, Zhong Y, Sriram PV, Ponnudurai R, Sikka S, Thonke F, Soehendra N. Aggressive endoscopic therapy for pancreatic necrosis and pancreatic abscess: a new safe and effective treatment algorithm (videos). *Gastrointest Endosc* 2005; **62**: 92-100 [PMID: 15990825]
90 **Voermans RP**, Veldkamp MC, Rauws EA, Bruno MJ, Fockens P. Endoscopic transmural debridement of symptomatic organized pancreatic necrosis (with videos). *Gastrointest Endosc* 2007; **66**: 909-916 [PMID: 17963877]
91 **Escourrou J**, Shehab H, Buscail L, Bournet B, Andrau P, Moreau J, Fourtanier G. Peroral transgastric/transduodenal necrosectomy: success in the treatment of infected pancreatic necrosis. *Ann Surg* 2008; **248**: 1074-1080 [PMID: 19092353 DOI: 10.1097/SLA.0b013e31818b728b]
92 **Charnley RM**, Lochan R, Gray H, O'Sullivan CB, Scott J, Oppong KE. Endoscopic necrosectomy as primary therapy in the management of infected pancreatic necrosis. *Endoscopy* 2006; **38**: 925-928 [PMID: 16981111]
93 **Seifert H**, Biermer M, Schmitt W, Jürgensen C, Will U, Gerlach R, Kreitmair C, Meining A, Wehrmann T, Rösch T. Transluminal endoscopic necrosectomy after acute pancreatitis: a multicentre study with long-term follow-up (the GEPARD Study). *Gut* 2009; **58**: 1260-1266 [PMID: 19282306 DOI: 10.1136/gut.2008.163733]
94 **Gardner TB**, Coelho-Prabhu N, Gordon SR, Gelrud A, Maple JT, Papachristou GI, Freeman ML, Topazian MD, Attam R, Mackenzie TA, Baron TH. Direct endoscopic necrosectomy for the treatment of walled-off pancreatic necrosis: results from a multicenter U.S. series. *Gastrointest Endosc* 2011; **73**: 718-726 [PMID: 21237454 DOI: 10.1016/j.gie.2010.10.053]
95 **Fabbri C**, Luigiano C, Cennamo V, Polifemo AM, Barresi L, Jovine E, Traina M, D'Imperio N, Tarantino I. Endoscopic ultrasound-guided transmural drainage of infected pancreatic fluid collections with placement of covered self-expanding metal stents: a case series. *Endoscopy* 2012; **44**: 429-433 [PMID: 22382852 DOI: 10.1055/s-0031-1291624]
96 **Antillon MR**, Bechtold ML, Bartalos CR, Marshall JB. Transgastric endoscopic necrosectomy with temporary metallic esophageal stent placement for the treatment of infected pancreatic necrosis (with video). *Gastrointest Endosc* 2009; **69**: 178-180 [PMID: 18582877 DOI: 10.1016/j.gie.2008.03.1066]
97 **Sarkaria S**, Sethi A, Rondon C, Lieberman M, Srinivasan I, Weaver K, Turner BG, Sundararajan S, Berlin D, Gaidhane M, Rolshud D, Widmer J, Kahaleh M. Pancreatic necrosectomy using covered esophageal stents: a novel approach. *J Clin Gastroenterol* 2014; **48**: 145-152 [PMID: 23751853 DOI: 10.1097/MCG.0b013e3182972219]
98 **Attam R**, Trikudanathan G, Arain M, Nemoto Y, Glessing B, Mallery S, Freeman ML. Endoscopic transluminal drainage and necrosectomy by using a novel, through-the-scope, fully covered, large-bore esophageal metal stent: preliminary experience in 10 patients. *Gastrointest Endosc* 2014; **80**: 312-318 [PMID: 24721519 DOI: 10.1016/j.gie.2014.02.013]
99 **Mukai S**, Itoi T, Sofuni A, Tsuchiya T, Gotoda T, Moriyasu F. Clinical evaluation of endoscopic ultrasonography-guided drainage using a novel flared-type biflanged metal stent for pancreatic fluid collection. *Endosc Ultrasound* 2015; **4**: 120-125 [PMID: 26020046 DOI: 10.4103/2303-9027.156738]
100 **Smoczyński M**, Marek I, Dubowik M, Rompa G, Kobiela J, Studniarek M, Pieńkowska J, Adrych K. Endoscopic drainage/debridement of walled-off pancreatic necrosis--single center experience of 112 cases. *Pancreatology* 2014; **14**: 137-142 [PMID: 24650969 DOI: 10.1016/j.pan.2013.11.005]
101 **Bang JY**, Varadarajulu S. Endoscopic ultrasound-guided management of pancreatic pseudocysts and walled-off necrosis. *Clin Endosc* 2014; **47**: 429-431 [PMID: 25325003 DOI: 10.5946/ce.2014.47.5.429]
102 **Gardner TB**, Chahal P, Papachristou GI, Vege SS, Petersen BT, Gostout CJ, Topazian MD, Takahashi N, Sarr MG, Baron TH. A comparison of direct endoscopic necrosectomy with transmural endoscopic drainage for the treatment of walled-off pancreatic necrosis. *Gastrointest Endosc* 2009; **69**: 1085-1094 [PMID: 19243764 DOI: 10.1016/j.gie.2008.06.061]
103 **Bakker OJ**, van Santvoort HC, van Brunschot S, Geskus RB, Besselink MG, Bollen TL, van Eijck CH, Fockens P, Hazebroek EJ, Nijmeijer RM, Poley JW, van Ramshorst B, Vleggaar FP, Boermeester MA, Gooszen HG, Weusten BL, Timmer R. Endoscopic transgastric vs surgical necrosectomy for infected necrotizing pancreatitis: a randomized trial. *JAMA* 2012; **307**: 1053-1061 [PMID: 22416101 DOI: 10.1001/jama.2012.276]
104 **Kumar N**, Conwell DL, Thompson CC. Direct endoscopic necrosectomy versus step-up approach for walled-off pancreatic necrosis: comparison of clinical outcome and health care utilization. *Pancreas* 2014; **43**: 1334-1339 [PMID: 25083997 DOI: 10.1097/MPA.0000000000000213]

105 **Neoptolemos JP**, London NJ, Carr-Locke DL. Assessment of main pancreatic duct integrity by endoscopic retrograde pancreatography in patients with acute pancreatitis. *Br J Surg* 1993; **80**: 94-99 [PMID: 8428306]
106 **Howard TJ**, Moore SA, Saxena R, Matthews DE, Schmidt CM, Wiebke EA. Pancreatic duct strictures are a common cause of recurrent pancreatitis after successful management of pancreatic necrosis. *Surgery* 2004; **136**: 909-916 [PMID: 15467678]
107 **Nealon WH**, Bhutani M, Riall TS, Raju G, Ozkan O, Neilan R. A unifying concept: pancreatic ductal anatomy both predicts and determines the major complications resulting from pancreatitis. *J Am Coll Surg* 2009; **208**: 790-799; discussion 799-801 [PMID: 19476839 DOI: 10.1016/j.jamcollsurg.2008.12.027]
108 **Trevino JM**, Tamhane A, Varadarajulu S. Successful stenting in ductal disruption favorably impacts treatment outcomes in patients undergoing transmural drainage of peripancreatic fluid collections. *J Gastroenterol Hepatol* 2010; **25**: 526-531 [PMID: 20074158 DOI: 10.1111/j.1440-1746.2009.06109]
109 **Lau ST**, Simchuk EJ, Kozarek RA, Traverso LW. A pancreatic ductal leak should be sought to direct treatment in patients with acute pancreatitis. *Am J Surg* 2001; **181**: 411-415 [PMID: 11448431]
110 **Iso Y**, Kubota K. Intragastric stapled pancreatic pseudocyst-gastrostomy under endoscopic guidance. *Surg Laparosc Endosc Percutan Tech* 2013; **23**: 330-333 [PMID: 23752005 DOI: 10.1097/SLE.0b013e31828e3675]

P- Reviewer: Ercolani G, Iso Y, Kleeff J, Sharma SS **S- Editor**: Yu J
L- Editor: A **E- Editor**: Ma S

Published by **Baishideng Publishing Group Inc**
8226 Regency Drive, Pleasanton, CA 94588, USA
Telephone: +1-925-223-8242
Fax: +1-925-223-8243
E-mail: bpgoffice@wjgnet.com
Help Desk: http://www.wjgnet.com/esps/helpdesk.aspx
http://www.wjgnet.com

ISSN 1007-9327

World Journal of Gastroenterology

Submit a Manuscript: http://www.wjgnet.com/esps/
Help Desk: http://www.wjgnet.com/esps/helpdesk.aspx
DOI: 10.3748/wjg.v22.i7.2271

World J Gastroenterol 2016 February 21; 22(7): 2271-2283
ISSN 1007-9327 (print) ISSN 2219-2840 (online)

REVIEW

Hepatitis E virus: An ancient hidden enemy in Latin America

Nora A Fierro, Mauricio Realpe, Tzintli Meraz-Medina, Sonia Roman, Arturo Panduro

Nora A Fierro, Immunovirology Unit, Department of Molecular Biology in Medicine, Civil Hospital of Guadalajara, "Fray Antonio Alcalde", Department of Physiology, Health Sciences Center, University of Guadalajara, Guadalajara 44280, Jalisco, México

Mauricio Realpe, Departamento de Medicina Veterinaria, Centro Universitario de Ciencias Biológicas y Agropecuarias, Universidad de Guadalajara, Nextipac, Zapopan 44600, Jalisco, México

Tzintli Meraz-Medina, Universidad Politécnica de la Zona Metropolitana de Guadalajara, Tlajomulco de Zúñiga 45640, Jalisco, Mexico

Sonia Roman, Arturo Panduro, Department of Molecular Biology in Medicine, Civil Hospital de Guadalajara "Fray Antonio Alcalde", and Health Sciences Center, University of Guadalajara, Guadalajara 44280, Jalisco, México

Author contributions: Fierro NA and Realpe M contributed equally to this work, they performed the research and wrote the paper; Meraz-Medina T, Roman S and Panduro A performed the research and critically revised the manuscript.

Supported by Consejo Nacional de Ciencia y Tecnologia of Mexico (CONACYT) Grant No.127229 and Grant No.188240 to Fierro NA.

Conflict-of-interest statement: Authors declare no conflict of interest for this article.

Correspondence to: Arturo Panduro, MD, PhD, FAASLD, Department of Molecular Biology in Medicine, Civil Hospital de Guadalajara "Fray Antonio Alcalde", and Health Sciences Center, University of Guadalajara, Hospital # 278, Col. El Retiro, Guadalajara 44280, Jalisco, México. apanduro@prodigy.net.mx
Telephone: +52-33-36147743
Fax: +52-33-36147743

Received: July 21, 2015
Peer-review started: July 30, 2015
First decision: September 29, 2015
Revised: October 21, 2015
Accepted: December 30, 2015
Article in press: December 30, 2015
Published online: February 21, 2016

Abstract

Hepatitis E virus (HEV) infection is a common cause of acute clinical hepatitis worldwide. HEV is an RNA-containing virus and the only member of the genus *Hepevirus* in the family *Hepeviridae*. Human HEV is classified into four genotypes widely distributed across the world. The virus is mainly transmitted *via* the fecal-oral route, and water-borne epidemics have become characteristic of hepatitis E in developing countries, including those in Latin America. The zoonotic potential of HEV is broadly recognized. Thus, there is an urgent need to re-evaluate virus transmission scenarios and to enforce epidemiological surveillance systems. Additionally, it is known that HEV infections, initially defined as self-limiting, can also take chronic courses in immunocompromised patients. Moreover, we recently reported a high seroprevalence of HEV in samples from cirrhotic patients with no other etiological agents present, suggesting the potential role of HEV in the development of chronic liver illness. In this review, HEV genomic variability, transmission, chronic infectious course, zoonotic potential and treatment are discussed. Focus is placed on the impact of HEV infection in Latin America, to support the development of specific control strategies and the handling of this important and typically imperceptible viral infection.

Key words: Emerging diseases; Zoonosis; Viral genotypes; Mexico; Hepatitis E virus-chronic infection

Core tip: Despite the widespread presence of hepatitis E virus (HEV), this pathogen is not commonly considered from a global public health perspective. Active research on hepatitis E both in animals and humans has provided novel insight into HEV pathogenesis, zoonotic potential and its role in chronic liver disease. Detailed guidelines for tracking cases need to be developed to contain the virus. This action is particularly necessary in endemic and emerging situations in regions with a higher risk of developing the infection, including Latin America.

Fierro NA, Realpe M, Meraz-Medina T, Roman S, Panduro A. Hepatitis E virus: An ancient hidden enemy in Latin America. *World J Gastroenterol* 2016; 22(7): 2271-2283 Available from: URL: http://www.wjgnet.com/1007-9327/full/v22/i7/2271.htm DOI: http://dx.doi.org/10.3748/wjg.v22.i7.2271

INTRODUCTION

Multiple outbreaks of viral hepatitis have been documented around the world since ancient times. In Latin America, viral hepatitis may have been implicated in the extermination of more than half the population of Mesoamerica in colonial times[1]. In the past century, hepatitis A virus (HAV) and hepatitis B virus (HBV), followed by the more recent description of hepatitis C virus (HCV), have been identified as causative agents of viral hepatitis. Hepatitis E virus (HEV), although probably also ancient, was not recognized as a new virus-causing hepatic disease until 1980[2], which is the main reason for the limited information on this viral disease.

HEV infection is responsible for the half of all outbreaks of acute liver disease in endemic areas[3]. HEV, which was formerly known as non-A, non-B hepatitis-causing infectious virus, is mainly transmitted *via* the fecal-oral route through contaminated water and is primarily found in areas with inadequate sanitary conditions. Other routes, such as organ transplants and zoonotic transmission, may possibly play important roles in transmission. Although the disease is usually associated with rather low fatality and mortality rates (0.2%-3.0%), in some highly susceptible populations the estimated infection rates have been reported in the range 15%-20%[4]. Of interest, in HEV-positive pregnant women, mortality due to fulminant hepatic failure has been reported to reach up to 25% in infected individuals[4,5], which is the highest value reported so far for HEV-caused fatalities.

HEV infection and HEV-associated diseases represent a major public health problem. It is estimated that 2.3 billion people are infected globally. HEV is responsible for nearly 50% of acute viral hepatitis in developing countries in Asia, Africa and Latin America[6]. Acute infections mostly affect adults, 15 to 40 years of age and are symptomatically mild. Studies from Asian endemic regions indicate a high seroprevalence, with rates ranging from 15% to 60%[3]. Chronic disease related to HEV has been reported in immune-suppressed individuals, such as organ transplant recipients, patients receiving chemotherapy, and HIV-infected patients[3,6], in whom chronic HEV infection may lead to the development of hepatic fibrosis and cirrhosis[7].

HEV, the etiological agent of hepatitis E disease, has been classified into at least four genotypes and several subtypes (Table 1). HEV genotypes 1 and 2 are hyper-endemic in Asia and Africa, and frequently cause outbreaks of acute hepatitis. HEV genotype 3 is prevalent in developed nations, where sporadic acute hepatitis has been reported[3,6]. HEV genotype 4 is almost exclusive to Asia, and it is recognized as the most frequent cause of the sporadic hepatitis E cases that affecting humans in China[8].

Initially considered an infection associated with the use of low-quality water sources, its importance has increased due to animal reservoirs. In the last decade, HEV has gained increasing attention as depicted in Figure 1. The detection of HEV in animals raised concerns about the risk of zoonotic transmission to humans. Thus, the need to involve animal health into

Table 1 Hepatitis E virus genotypes reported for Latin America

Genotype	Region	Species[1]			Detection method/input specimen[2]	
		Humans	Swine	Other[3]	RT-PCR	Serum
Genotype 1	Uruguay	X			X	X
	Venezuela	X			X	
	Cuba	X				X
	Mexico	X			X	X
Genotype 2	Mexico	X	X		X	X
Genotype 3	Argentina	X	X	X	X	X
	Brazil	X	X	X	X	X
	Bolivia	X				X
	Cuba	X			X	
	Venezuela	X			X	
	México		X	X	X	
	Uruguay	X			X	
	Chile	X			X	X
	Costa Rica		X		X	
Genotype 4	China, Japan, Taiwan (not in Latin America)	X	X		X	X

[1]According to reports found in PubMed, indicates infection regardless of disease condition of the host (with or without clinical signs). [2]Origin of the host in analyzed samples. Reverse Transcription PCR (RT-PCR) was the method used to detect genomic RNA of HEV. When serum was the input material, the detection of anti-HEV specific antibodies (seroconversion) was indicative of current contact (active infection) or past infection. [3]Host or developed in chickens, deer, rodent and other mammals.

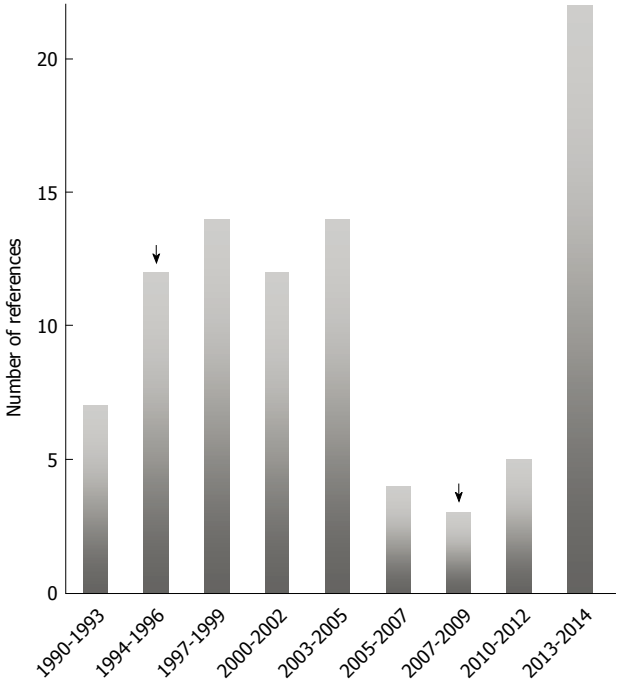


Figure 1 Timeline of the number of papers about hepatitis E virus. Based on references found in PubMed when hepatitis E virus (HEV) was used as a search keyword. All the years prior to 1990 clustered at first time point. Awareness was more prominent following the demonstration of chronic hepatitis as caused by HEV. Arrows highlights first report of zoonotic transmission (left arrow), and the demonstration of chronicity due to HEV infection (right arrow).

a single approach was recently recognized as the One Health initiative stated of the World Health Organization (WHO), which was developed to cope with such multi-source causes of disease. Human HEV outbreaks have been reported in Latin America, and specifically, twice in Mexico[2]. In both reported cases, the viral genotype 2 was detected, and this remains the only viral variant from this country[2]. HEV has also been detected in pigs from Mexico and Costa Rica[6]. Moreover, recent reports demonstrated that HEV circulates in Uruguay[6] and central Argentina[9]. Additionally, it is endemic in the Brazilian Amazon[10] and is postulated to be present in Bolivia based on the detection of antibodies against HEV[11]. Based on the limited knowledge available about the distribution of HEV viral variants in Latin America, in this review a general scientific landscape is presented to update HEV epidemiology literature and to assess the epidemiological risk for humans in this region.

VIRUS CAUSING HEV DISEASE

Hepatitis E disease is due to infection with HEV virus, a member of the *Hepaviridae* family[3]. This family includes the genus *hepevirus*, which contains viruses isolated from humans, avian species, mice, rats, and several other mammals such as boars, rabbits, camels, goats, ferrets, and mongooses. The viral particle is a non-enveloped sphere with approximately 32-34 nm in diameter. The viral genome consists of a single-stranded, positive-sense RNA molecule 7.2 kb in size. The genome organization includes a 7-methylguanosine cap structure attached to the 5′ end, a noncoding region in 5′ end, an open reading frame 1 (ORF1) and two other ORF2 and ORF3, which are partially overlapping. HEV RNA also has a non-translated region at the 3′ region spanning approximately 27-35 nucleotides (nt), and the 3′ end is extended by a poly A tract[5] (Figure 2).

The first genomic region, ORF-1, gives rise to a protein of approximately 1693 amino acids (aa) that encodes non-structural proteins and enzymes involved in viral replication, transcription and protein processing[12]. The most downstream region, ORF-2, consists of 1980 nt, ending with 65 nt before a poly-A tail signal, which encodes a 660-aa, a glycosylated protein corresponding to the structural protein of the capsid[3,6]. The ORF-2 protein contains epitopes that induce the neutralizing antibodies located mainly near the carboxyl end. The intermediate region, ORF-3, overlaps with a single nt at its 5′ end with ORF-1 and with 328 nt with ORF-2. ORF-3 encodes for 123 aa, a small, approximately 13.5 kDa protein, that is phosphorylated[5]. Also known as phosphopeptide, this small protein was reported to be associated with the hepatocellular cytoskeleton and forms a complex with the major capsid protein ORF-2, suggesting their involvement in virion assembly. ORF-3 might also have regulatory functions involved in the modulation of cellular signaling transduction[5,13]. Additionally, the ORF-3 protein is thought to contain neutralizing epitopes toward its 3′ end[12,13], which highlights its importance during the viral infection cycle.

HEV SEROEPIDEMIOLOGY IN LATIN AMERICA

Because HEV is primarily transmitted *via* the fecal-oral route, most outbreaks have been described as originating from a source of water. This situation occurs mainly in developing countries with a temperate climate, high population density and poor sanitary conditions[4]. Since the first epidemics described in New Delhi, India (1955-1956), many others have occurred in India (Kashmir), Nepal (Kathmandu) and China (Xinjiang Province, 1986-1988)[3]. In Latin America, the only major outbreak of HEV occurred in Mexico from 1986-1987[2,14].

The total prevalence of antibodies against HEV in endemic countries is variable (3%-27%)[4]. In contrast to other enteric viruses, such as polio or HAV, the prevalence of IgG anti-HEV is lower in children and young people than it is in adults[2]. In non-endemic areas with proper sanitary conditions and a well-controlled water supply, the prevalence of antibodies against HEV in the general population is relatively high (up to 7%-10%), and is even higher in certain endemic areas[2]. In Mexico, a study analyzing the

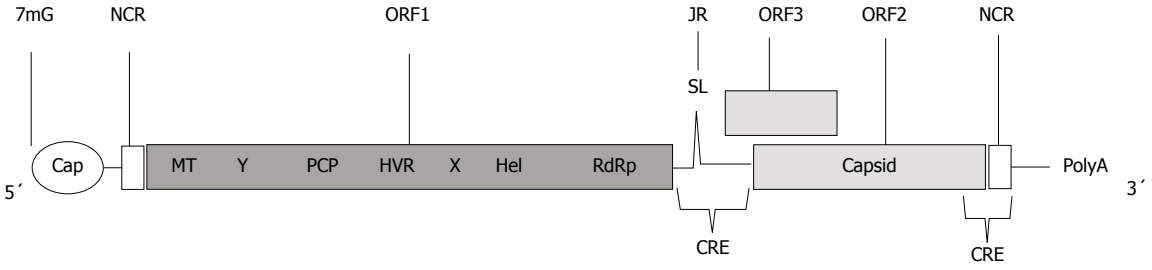


Figure 2 A schematic representation of the RNA- hepatitis E virus genome. RNA encodes for multiple proteins from three Open Reading Frames (ORFs). ORF1 comprises the methyltransferase (MT), Y domain, a papain-like cysteine protease (PCP), hypervariable region (HVR), X macrodomain, helicase (Hel), and RNA-dependent RNA polymerase (RdRp). ORF 2 encodes the capsid protein, and ORF3 encodes a cytoskeleton-associated phosphoprotein. 5´Cap and 3´PolyA modifications are also depicted. The junction region (JR), stem-loop structure (SL), and cis-reactive element (CRE) have been described elsewhere[12].

serum samples of 3549 individuals found a HEV seroprevalence of 10.5% in young adults and children of different socioeconomic status and from various regions within the country. This seroprevalence increased with age, from 1.1% in children under five years old up to 14% in people between 26 to 29 years of age[14,15]. Age, the type of community, and the level of education have been described as risk factors for infection[2]. A seroprevalence of 6.3% with a clear predominance of men older than 50 years was then confirmed in the same Mexican study[15]. In Mexico, HEV has also been detected as a cause of disease in the State of Hidalgo[16], and circulates in pig populations[17]. So far, no studies have evaluated HEV zoonotic potential or the risk of transmission in the food chain in Mexico.

From recent studies, it seems that HEV has been found in several other regions in Northern Mexico. Analysis of blood samples from 557 low-income, pregnant women in El Paso, Texas (United States) and 307 women in Ciudad Juarez showed a seroprevalence for HEV of 0.4% and 1.6%, respectively[18]. Additionally, a study of 273 serum samples from rural adults in Durango state revealed a higher (36.6%) seroprevalence than that reported in other Mexican regions[19]. This same study reported serological evidence of HEV exposure in 150 Mennonites in the same geographical area. However, Mennonites had a lower seroprevalence (6.7%) of HEV antibodies than the general rural population (40.7%) and, as reported for other groups, the seroprevalence in Mennonites increased with age[20]. The findings of a higher prevalence in older age subjects could represent a latent infectious stage in which the virus circulates in a subclinical form, or the constant permanence within an undetected animal reservoir.

An evaluation of HEV presence in higher risk population has been conducted in Mexico. The study of 439 pregnant women in Durango, Mexico revealed an HEV seroprevalence of 5.7% and an association between unpasteurized cow milk consumption and HEV exposure[21]. In Latin America, HEV has also been found in Brazil[22,23], Chile[24], Argentina[9], Costa Rica[25], Bolivia[6,11] and Uruguay[26] (Table 1). Currently, it is accepted that in these regions, HEV has a high prevalence.

HEV GENOMIC VARIABILITY: THE CASE OF LATIN AMERICA

As an RNA virus, HEV has been recognized to exhibit broad genetic diversity although no serotype variation has been identified so far. A single serotype has been described and is composed of at least four different genotypes differing in geographic distribution and host (Table 1). Studies characterizing the genome of HEV from the same outbreak have found sequence similarities in the range of 95%-98% at the nucleotide level and 95%-100% at the amino acid level[27,28]. Support for the quasispecies nature of HEV relies on this reported genetic heterogeneity, but its impact on epidemiology has not been assessed. The genomic sequence dissimilarity has been proposed to extend the classification to incorporate HEV variants detected in many animal species, but the virus that infects humans belongs to the same four genotypes previously recognized[29]. Two additional genotypes have been proposed following the detection of HEV in wild boar in Japan, and the taxonomy of Hepeviridae is currently under revision[30]. At present, HEV is still classified into the same four genotypes, which were further subdivided into subtypes[29]. Most viral diversity relies on RNA, and alternative protein sequence-based methods could be useful for this multi-host pathogen (see Table 1) to avoid multiple subdivisions and fragmentation of this single-serotype virus. Notably, the availability of a detailed description of viral epitopes[30] could permit the use of immune-oriented methods to understand current and upcoming sequence diversity.

HEV genotypes 1 and 2 have been isolated from humans and associated with HEV outbreaks[5]. Genotype 1 is considered endemic in some areas of Asia and Africa and was also detected in Cuba and Venezuela[6,27]. In Uruguay, an indigenous HEV, genotype 1, was recently described[26]. Genotype 2 has been reported in Mexico and some local variants from Africa[2,6,27]. HEV genotypes 3 and 4 were initially

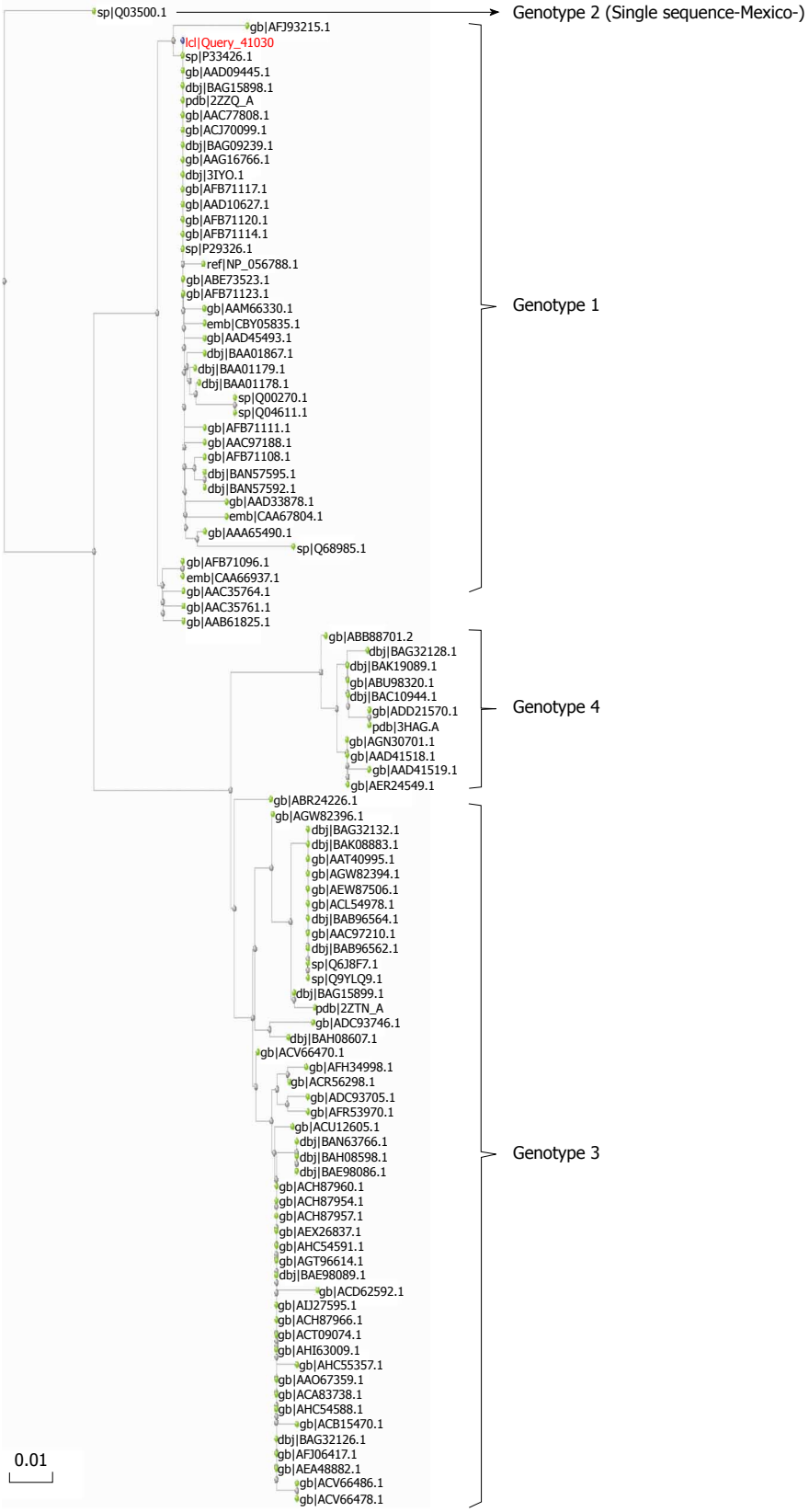


Figure 3 A phylogenetic tree for hepatitis E virus according to their amino-acid sequences from the recognition domain E2 (E domain, residues 455 to 606, based on US-1 strain) in the open reading frame capsid protein. This region corresponds with the binding domain of neutralizing Mab 8C11[32,33]. It contains all epitopes demonstrated to elicit neutralizing antibodies. This region is sufficient to provide protection, and is the basis of the current recombinant vaccine Hecolin 293 approved in China. The analysis was based on 100 sequences representing the diversity of HEV sequences. The tree was constructed by the Maximum Likelihood method using PhyML software, as implemented in server http://phylogeny.lirmm.fr[33]. The scale bar represents amino-acid substitutions and the statistical support was obtained from 100 Bootstrap replicates.

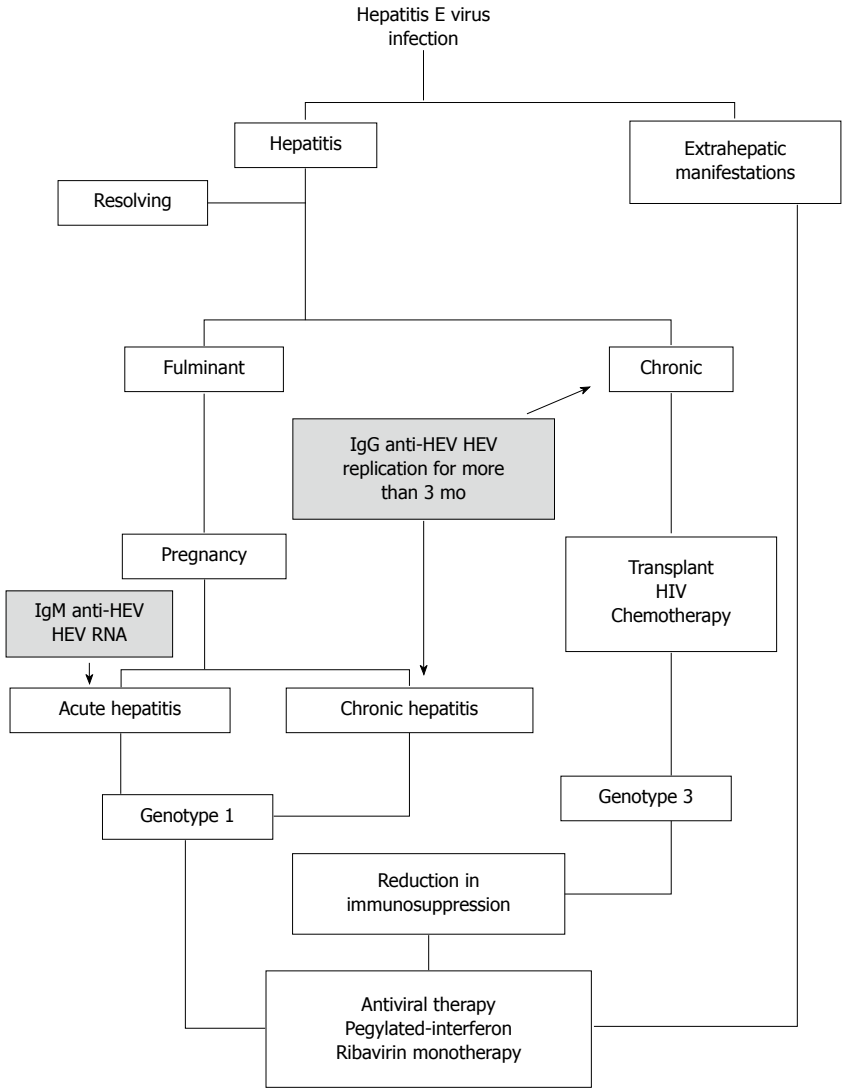


Figure 4 Patterns of hepatitis E virus infection. The typical clinical courses taken by hepatitis E virus (HEV) infections are depicted. The scheme is based on the clinical approach followed at different institutions, as first revised in Kamar *et al*[13]. The shaded text corresponds to the clinical laboratory markers used to classify the degree of disease caused. This model is based mainly on infections with HEV from genotypes 1 and 3, as shown. Fewer data are available for genotypes 2 and 4, but the same general model may apply.

isolated after causing infection in humans and animals, mainly pigs. In humans, these genotypes 3 and 4 have been associated with acute hepatitis sporadically during outbreaks[10]. HEV genotype 3 includes isolates from non-endemic regions (the United States, Italy and Greece), and its occurrence is considered to be related to traveling to endemic regions, representing a group of more diverse sequences[4-6,10]. HEV genotype 4 is found in Asia, and is particularly endemic in China, and Central Europe[3,4]. HEV genotype 3 is the most frequent genotype found in South America, where the HEV epidemiology appears to be composed of at least three of the four known genotypes[3,4,6] (Table 1). It is interesting that the clinical manifestations of HEV have been associated with distinct ages depending on the infectious genotype. In the Indian outbreak, which primarily consisted of genotype 1, the age group with the highest incidence of infection was between 20 and 29 years. Characterization by extensive sequence analysis of three regions of HEV genome from Uruguay revealed that these viruses were closely related to a set of European strains[26] and, thus, dissimilar to Brazilian, Argentinean and Bolivian isolates[6]. The outbreaks reported in Mexico and those associated with genotypes 1 and 2 in developing countries have shown the highest incidence among individuals in the same age range. In contrast, sporadic infections in industrialized countries have been associated with genotypes 3 and 4, with an average age of highest incidence of 60 years. HEV detected from Argentina and Brazil are more related to viruses from industrialized countries (North America and Europe), whereas the HEV in the Caribbean and Mexico include viral genotypes more closely related to outbreaks in Africa and Asia[2,6]. The heterogeneity of HEV viruses in Latin America can be demonstrated by the

phylogenetic analysis of their sequences as detailed in Figure 3[28,29], and particularly according to their amino-acid sequence from recognition of the E2 domain in ORF2 that corresponds to the major recognition epitope for neutralizing antibodies[30-32]. The prevalence observed in this region and its genetic heterogeneity highlight the urgent need to improve our knowledge of the molecular epidemiology of HEV in Latin America. Thus, single or multiple re-introductions of HEV may be detected to prevent further outbreaks.

TRANSMISSION

HEV is primarily transmitted *via* the fecal-oral route. As such, the epidemics of hepatitis E in endemic areas are due to contaminated water[2]. The optimal circumstances for hepatitis E epidemics arise when untreated wastewater comes into contact with drinking water during times of heavy rain. Examples of these circumstances included the 1950s epidemic in Delhi (India), which was preceded by heavy rains and floods[6], and outbreaks in Mexico, which have coincided with the rainy season. There is a direct correlation between a high incidence of positive serology of HEV and the use of superficial waters without boiling for food consumption or personal hygiene[6]. Some studies have described the presence of viral particles and RNA in the wastewater of cities after the slaughter of swine in industrialized countries[33,34]. However, subsequent studies have not confirmed any risk of HEV infection *via* this type of water contamination in industrialized countries[35]. This discrepancy may reflect the difficulty of detecting pathogens in water samples, particularly in the case of HEV RNA, which is very labile. Clearly, there is still a great need for systematic studies that identify the risk represented by such water conditions in Latin America because many areas are considered to have poor health conditions and deficient sanitary treatment of the potable water systems.

The incidence of HEV transmission from person to person is low, representing between 1 and 2% of the total number of cases described[5]. In contrast, the rate of HEV transmission from mother to child, though variable, is quite high (30% to 100%)[20,21]. Up to two-thirds of pregnant women infected with HEV may have premature births and high neonatal mortality[36]. Reports of HEV RNA in the blood of newborns, when the virus could not be detected in the mothers, have also been published as a possible case of vertical transmission[37]. Additionally, the presence of HEV in multiple animal reservoirs shows that the origin and transmission of HEV disease are in need of urgent revision. Thus, animal reservoirs used as a food source cannot be discarded as risk factors for spreading HEV[13].

PATHOGENESIS

After entering the body, HEV virus shows exquisite tropism for the liver, *via* as-yet-unknown mechanisms. The virus accumulates in the bile, reaches the intestine through the bile duct, and then can be found in the feces after approximately two weeks of infection. During the first two weeks, anti-virus specific antibodies can be found in the serum[4,5]. HEV has been reported in the blood or feces for longer periods, up to 16 wk, depending on unknown conditions. The more prolonged maintenance of HEV in asymptomatic individuals may result in reservoirs during inter-epidemic stages over time, resulting in sporadic infections among persons exposed to contaminated food or water[4]. HEV is shed in the feces of infected individuals as infectious, nonenveloped virions with their genome encapsidated in a naked protein shell[10,13]. However, recent reports suggest that HEV circulates during acute infection in a membrane-wrapped form in which the encapsidated RNA is completely enveloped and sequestered from neutralizing antibodies, and yet has an infectivity equivalent to that of naked virus particles. These membrane-wrapped forms of HEV differ from classical enveloped viruses in that the surrounding lipid bilayer appears to be devoid of virally encoded proteins[13]. This would allow the extracellular virus to masquerade as a host-derived exocytic vesicle and likely facilitates its dissemination within the host, but this hypothesis remains to be tested.

During the infection cycle, typical humoral responses have been described with less information available for the corresponding cellular component of the immune response. The role of the host response in the self-damage to liver cells is poorly understood, and there is agreement regarding the prominent role of the immune system plays in the resultant liver damage[3]. The identification of specific IgM antibodies for HEV in the serum coincides with the appearance of symptoms. HEV-specific IgG antibodies can be detected shortly after the emergence of IgM antibodies, and IgG values increase during the acute phase of the disease and remain detectable in the serum for several years[3,4].

The lack of a cellular or animal model hampers the progress of studies regarding the pathogenesis of HEV virus. Attempts to culture the virus have given rise to a few reports on cells lines permissive for HEV replication while in culture[10,13]. However, no standard methodology for viral isolation has been established, and the characterization of infection is performed using only serological and molecular methodologies (Table 1). The understanding of viral pathogenesis is in urgent

need for *in vitro* methods and *in vivo* approaches that might evoke the viral life cycle.

HEV-chronic infection in immunocompromised patients

Although HEV infections are defined as acute and self-limiting, we previously reported a high seroprevalence of HEV in samples from cirrhotic patients with no other etiological agents, suggesting the potential role of HEV in the development of chronic liver illness[2]. In fact, it has been recently accepted that HEV infections may take chronic courses under specific circumstances, such as in immunocompromised individuals. Although chronic HEV infections have been mainly diagnosed in the organ transplanted population[38-43], chronic HEV infections have also been found in patients receiving chemotherapy[44] and in patients coinfected with HIV[45,46].

HEV and transplants

The HEV seroprevalence is high in liver transplant recipients[38]. The prevalence of HEV infection in organ transplant patients (OT) ranges from 2.3% to 43.9%, depending on the serological test employed[47-53]. The incidence of HEV RNA in OT with increased liver enzyme levels ranges between 4.3% and 6.5%[38,53]. To date, HEV is considered to cause chronic infection with rapidly progressive cirrhosis within 1-2 years of infection in organ-transplanted patients[53,54], faster than reported in HCV-infected OT. This rapid progression is found in liver and non-liver transplant patients[54]. The administration of immunosuppressive medication to prevent organ rejection appears to be an important risk factor for developing a chronic infection caused by HEV. In particular, tacrolimus, a potent immunosuppressant, has been associated with chronic HEV infection[55-57]. Advances in the description of optimal immunosuppressive protocols for HEV-infected patients are currently in progress[58,59].

A diagnosis of chronic hepatitis infection is defined by the presence of genomic viral content for more than six months. However, in the setting of organ transplantation, it has been found that no spontaneous clearance of HEV occurs between 3 and 6 mo after an acute infection[13]. Thus, chronic HEV infection should be considered when HEV replication persists for more than 3 mo. Moreover, given the liver enzyme abnormalities often attributed to hepatic graft-versus-host disease or drug-induced liver injury in liver transplant recipients, the misdiagnosis of HEV is frequent. Symptoms are present in only 32% of OT patients, with fatigue being the main symptom and, in contrast to acute hepatitis A virus infection, clinically apparent jaundice is uncommon. Liver enzyme levels are increased (300 IU/L) but are lower than those observed in immunocompetent patients (1000 to 3000 IU/L)[57]. Considering that HEV infection may occur in donors, this emphasizes the need for HEV screening not only after transplantation but also in donors presenting liver function abnormalities[60]. HEV diagnosis in OT with elevated liver enzymes is advised and is based on HEV RNA testing as antibody assays are typically not sensitive enough. HEV seroconversion may be delayed and may not occur in some patients. Thus, the molecular detection of HEV RNA is essential to exclude an HEV infection in patients who are negative for anti-HEV IgM and to assess the evolution of infection. To date, no cases of chronic HEV genotypes 1, 2 or 4 have been reported. All chronic cases have been associated with HEV genotype 3. Interestingly, fulminant hepatitis in pregnant women has been related to viral genotype 1[13]. Thus, the determination of genotypes may be crucial to predicting the disease outcome.

HEV, chemotherapy, and HIV co-infection

The systematic analysis of the incidence of chronic HEV infection among hematological patients receiving chemotherapy has not been conducted. Among the small number of reported cases are patients treated for lymphoma, chronic myelomonocytic leukemia, and B-cell chronic lymphocytic leukemia[59-62]. The incidence and HEV seroprevalence among stem cell transplantation patients is in progress. Preliminary, evidence from two independent studies report an anti-HEV seroprevalence of 36% and 5.6% among cell transplanted patients. However, in both studies, ongoing HEV infection was absent[63,64]. This piece of information has induced clinicians to screen patients in chemotherapy with abnormal function tests for HEV RNA. Similarly, chronic infection with HEV has been described in individuals with HIV infection. Based on the limited number of analyzed cases, the seroprevalence of anti-HEV IgG in HIV-positive patients ranges from 1.5% to 11.2%[65-75]. However, the incidence of HEV infection defined by the presence of HEV RNA in the serum is low, ranging from 0 to 1.3%[66,70-75].

A small number of cases of HEV coinfection confirmed by the detection of genomic viral content have been documented around the world[45,66-68,71,73,76-78]. A high HEV seroprevalence in HIV-infected patients has been documented in both HIV-infected patients with unexplained liver disease[79] and HIV-infected patients in the absence of chronic liver infection[80]. As detailed above, genotype 3 has been the HEV variant detected among HEV-related cirrhosis cases in HIV co-infected patients[67,68,70,81]. The clinical presentation in patients receiving chemotherapy and in the HIV co-infected patients is similar to that found in OT patients. Moreover, HEV infection can even result in extra-hepatic manifestations both during and after the resolution of infection[80]. However, data regarding the epidemiology of hepatitis E in particular populations is limited. Further studies are required to determine the exact role of HEV in the development of liver damage in immunocompromised and immunocompetent indi-

viduals.

ZOONOSIS

HEV is widely recognized as a zoonotic infectious agent[82-84]. Recently, a re-visited American population had a 6% seroprevalence of anti-HEV antibodies in the general population. For this US-based study, Hispanic race, and "meat" consumption were identified as factors associated with HEV-seropositivity. No significant association was observed with low socioeconomic status, water source, or level of education. In the multivariate analysis, only older age remained predictive of HEV seropositivity[81,84]. Of note, in previous studies in the United States, having a pet in the home was identified as another important factor for HEV-seropositivity[83,84]. From studies in other countries, it seems that the presence of anti-HEV antibodies in pet dogs could be approximately 1%, and this factor could also become another component to understanding the epidemiology of HEV[85,86].

In the 1990s, the presence of antibodies against HEV in swine was described for the first time[84,86] (Figure 1). Subsequently, the experimental infection of swine with swine HEV or isolates of human origin demonstrated that infected animals exhibited viremia, releasing the virus along with their feces while showing no evidence of clinical or biochemical disease. Studies in America, Asia, and Oceania, have shown very high prevalence rates, ranging between 20% and 100%[86]. In Latin America, HEV circulates in animal species, including swine, as reported in Brazil[87] and Argentina[88]. A study analyzing the presence of antibodies against swine HEV in Mexico and Thailand found positivity for IgG anti-HEV in 81% of the swine analyzed in Mexico[6,17]. The sequence analysis of a total of 44 positive samples isolated from Mexico and Thailand were genotype 3, supporting the notion that only genotypes 3 and 4 have zoonotic potential[17,89-94]. This finding is of particular interest as it considers the genotypes found in industrialized countries, suggesting that the mechanism of infection in these regions could be zoonotic. Moreover, the study of 87 livers collected from pigs destined for human consumption in Nuevo Leon, Mexico revealed that between 19.54% and 22.5% of the livers were positive for genomic HEV[89]. These findings indicate that HEV-infected meat may constitute a source of contamination[82,89]. The initial suggestion that HEV could potentially be a zoonotic agent has been supported by data showing a high prevalence of anti-HEV antibodies in farms in both endemic and non-endemic areas[82]. Moreover, swine isolates are genetically more related to human variants in the same geographical region than to swine strains from other parts of the world, which supports the zoonotic nature of transmission. Furthermore, the described cases of acute hepatitis after ingesting raw meat from HEV-infected deer demonstrate the potential zoonotic characteristics of HEV[90,91].

In addition to swine, HEV infections have been detected in other animal species. Anti-HEV antibodies and the HEV RNA genome have been detected in animals such as cattle, sheep, dog, deer, cat, goat and nonhuman primates[82,90]. The presence of specific antibodies only (seroprevalence) has been described by several studies in chickens, dogs, cattle, cats and rodents[82,94-103]. In most cases detecting and analyzing HEV genome, sequencing results obtained from a particular location have been very similar regardless of the species of origin. Altogether, these observations confirm of the zoonotic circulation of HEV virus crossing the species barrier frequently[84,96].

Experimentally, a rabbit HEV strain was successfully demonstrated to be transmitted to pigs, indicative of the ability of HEV to cross the species barrier[91]. The zoonotic transmission of HEV from deer[90] and pet cats[95] to humans has also been reported[82,84]. In addition, it has been demonstrated that avian HEV, although genetically less related to human HEV compared to swine, shares antigenic epitopes with both[98]. At least three genotypes of HEV have been documented from chickens worldwide[92-94], and these are different from the genotypes described for mammals. HEV infection in chickens is enzootic and affects 71% of chicken flocks in the United States. HEV infection in chickens is mostly subclinical, although 30% of chickens were seropositive for avian HEV antibodies[92,94]. While the evidence of avian infection in humans is currently lacking[93], the spread of bird-to-bird infection has been reported[94]. HEV has been isolated from a variety of animal species ranging from bats, chicken, camel, cutthroat trout, deer, ferret, fox, mink, mongoose, moose, pigs, rabbits, rats and wild boar[91-96].

The high incidence of HEV infection in Mexican swine requires adequate epidemiological surveillance in high-risk groups near farms. Also, although some studies have revealed that domestic pet veterinarians are at no increased risk of hepatitis E compared to the general population[83], the data have primarily come from Asia and Europe. Specific studies in Latin American countries are required to determine the potential risk of infection in this group. Descriptions of genotypes in rural areas with poor sanitary conditions are needed to provide the necessary data for controlling these infections, the incidence of which at present has been underestimated.

TREATMENT

There is no specific prophylactic treatment for acute hepatitis E infection. The results obtained in animal models suggest that the use of specific Ig, when faced with high HEV titers, can be useful during outbreaks[3]. The existence of a single serotype of HEV supports the possibility of generating a vaccine that has broad cross-reactivity against all known genotypes. The availability of such vaccine would be useful to protect against HEV

infections and to prevent local outbreaks in developing countries, especially in immunosuppressed individuals, inhabitants of endemic regions and travelers to endemic areas. In 2011, the first vaccine against HEV (Hecolin, based on strain HEV-239), was licensed in China[97]. This vaccine is not yet available in the rest of the world. In the absence of a vaccine, the availability of clean water and good hygiene practices such as washing hands properly and the consumption of only properly cooked food is very helpful in controlling HEV virus spread[98].

In the case of immunocompromised patients, particularly in OT patients, intervention strategies should be considered in cases of acute or chronic HEV infection[99]. The first-line approach includes reducing of immunosuppressive medication because these drugs may influence viral replication and the course of liver disease. Oral ribavirin and pegylated-interferon have antiviral activity against HEV[59,100]. A twelve-week course of pegylated interferon, ribavirin or a combination of the two agents leads to viral clearance in about two-thirds of patients with chronic hepatitis E[100]; however, treatment failure may occur[59]. For patients with severe infection, ribavirin monotherapy should be considered to expedite viral clearance and recovery. Although ribavirin therapy is contraindicated in pregnancy owing to teratogenicity, the risks of untreated HEV to the mother and fetus are high and specific treatments are yet to be developed[100]. Given that specific therapies should be indicated for particular populations, the determination of the optimal dose, duration, and quantitative goals of ribavirin or pegylated-interferon treatment are still in progress[99].

CONCLUSION

In 2009, the WHO Expert Committee on Biological Standardization endorsed a proposal by the Paul-Ehrlich-Institut to prepare an International Standard for HEV RNA for use in NAT-based assays. This standard is currently available and should be implemented in all epidemiological studies with the aim of harmonizing methods globally[101].

To date, there are limited established guidelines and regulatory mechanisms for the study of highly dynamic diseases of public health impact, such as HEV, in Latin America. Careful scrutiny of the host distribution of the viruses that cause hepatitis E in Latin America, changes in the pathways of transmission, or the evolutionary dynamics of the genotypes of these circulating viruses, are required to support handling strategies of the disease, to define clinical treatments, and to prevent potential outbreaks. The common finding of this virus in epidemiological studies[102,103] represent a risk that must be properly handled.

Despite the widespread presence of HEV, this pathogen is not commonly considered from a global public health perspective. Limitations in medical and laboratory infrastructure and the absence of awareness of the disease caused by HEV may hinder surveillance studies and thus facilitate viral spread. There are now sensitive diagnostic assays and well-defined validation reagents to support the identification and preparedness to prevent HEV outbreaks[101]. A detailed guideline for following cases in endemic as well as in emergency situations needs to be developed to contain the virus (Figure 4). Active research on hepatitis E both in animals and humans has provided novel insights into HEV pathogenesis. More research is recommended to understand chronic and extra-hepatic infections to determine better treatment approaches.

REFERENCES

1 **Schmid R**. History of viral hepatitis: a tale of dogmas and misinterpretations. *J Gastroenterol Hepatol* 2001; **16**: 718-722 [PMID: 11446877]

2 **Panduro A**, Escobedo Meléndez G, Fierro NA, Ruiz Madrigal B, Zepeda-Carrillo EA, Román S. [Epidemiology of viral hepatitis in Mexico]. *Salud Publica Mex* 2011; **53** Suppl 1: S37-S45 [PMID: 21877071]

3 **Dalton HR**, Hunter JG, Bendall RP. Hepatitis E. *Curr Opin Infect Dis* 2013; **26**: 471-478 [PMID: 23982238 DOI: 10.1097/01.qco.0000433308.83029.97]

4 **Riveiro-Barciela M**, Rodríguez-Frías F, Buti M. Hepatitis E virus: new faces of an old infection. *Ann Hepatol* 2013; **12**: 861-870 [PMID: 24114815]

5 **Purcell RH**, Emerson SU. Hepatitis E: an emerging awareness of an old disease. *J Hepatol* 2008; **48**: 494-503 [PMID: 18192058 DOI: 10.1016/j.jhep.2007.12.008]

6 **Mirazo S**, Ramos N, Mainardi V, Gerona S, Arbiza J. Transmission, diagnosis, and management of hepatitis E: an update. *Hepat Med* 2014; **6**: 45-59 [PMID: 24966702 DOI: 10.2147/HMER.S63417]

7 **Jagjit Singh GK**, Ijaz S, Rockwood N, Farnworth SP, Devitt E, Atkins M, Tedder R, Nelson M. Chronic Hepatitis E as a cause for cryptogenic cirrhosis in HIV. *J Infect* 2013; **66**: 103-106 [PMID: 22166370]

8 **Shu X**, Duan X, Song C, Li J, Jiang L, Yin G, Li W. Genetic heterogeneity of swine hepatitis E virus isolates from Yunnan province, China in 2011-2012. *Virol J* 2014; **11**: 162 [PMID: 25187005 DOI: 10.1186/1743-422X-11-162]

9 **Martínez Wassaf MG**, Pisano MB, Barril PA, Elbarcha OC, Pinto MA, Mendes de Oliveira J, DiGiusto P, Nates SV, Ré VE. First detection of hepatitis E virus in Central Argentina: environmental and serological survey. *J Clin Virol* 2014; **61**: 334-339 [PMID: 25213209 DOI: 10.1016/j.jcv.2014.08.016]

10 **Echevarría JM**, González JE, Lewis-Ximenez LL, Dos Santos DR, Munné MS, Pinto MA, Pujol FH, Rodríguez-Lay LA. Hepatitis E virus infection in Latin America: a review. *J Med Virol* 2013; **85**: 1037-1045 [PMID: 23588729 DOI: 10.1002/jmv.23526]

11 **León P**, Venegas E, Bengoechea L, Rojas E, López JA, Elola C, Echevarría JM. [Prevalence of infections by hepatitis B, C, D and E viruses in Bolivia]. *Rev Panam Salud Publica* 1999; **5**: 144-151 [PMID: 10355311 DOI: 10.1590/S1020-49891999000300002]

12 **Cao D**, Meng XJ. Molecular biology and replication of hepatitis E virus. *Emerg Microbes Infect* 2012; **1**: e17 [PMID: 26038426 DOI: 10.1038/emi.2012.7]

13 **Kamar N**, Dalton HR, Abravanel F, Izopet J. Hepatitis E virus infection. *Clin Microbiol Rev* 2014; **27**: 116-138 [PMID: 24396139 DOI: 10.1128/CMR.00057-13]

14 **Velázquez O**, Stetler HC, Avila C, Ornelas G, Alvarez C, Hadler SC, Bradley DW, Sepúlveda J. Epidemic transmission of enterically transmitted non-A, non-B hepatitis in Mexico, 1986-1987. *JAMA* 1990; **263**: 3281-3285 [PMID: 2112204 DOI: 10.1001/jama.1990.03440240071018]

15 **Alvarez-Muñoz MT**, Torres J, Damasio L, Gómez A, Tapia-Conyer

R, Muñoz O. Seroepidemiology of hepatitis E virus infection in Mexican subjects 1 to 29 years of age. *Arch Med Res* 1999; **30**: 251-254 [PMID: 10427876 DOI: 10.1016/S0188-0128(99)00019-6]
16 **Bernal Reyes R**, Licona Solís JE. [Seroepidemiology of hepatitis E in the State of Hidalgo]. *Rev Gastroenterol Mex* 1996; **61**: 233-238 [PMID: 9102746]
17 **Cooper K**, Huang FF, Batista L, Rayo CD, Bezanilla JC, Toth TE, Meng XJ. Identification of genotype 3 hepatitis E virus (HEV) in serum and fecal samples from pigs in Thailand and Mexico, where genotype 1 and 2 HEV strains are prevalent in the respective human populations. *J Clin Microbiol* 2005; **43**: 1684-1688 [PMID: 15814985]
18 **Redlinger T**, O'Rourke K, Nickey L, Martinez G. Elevated hepatitis A and E seroprevalence rates in a Texas-Mexico border community. *Texas Medicine* 1998; **5**: 68-71
19 **Alvarado-Esquivel C**, Sanchez-Anguiano LF, Hernandez-Tinoco J. Seroepidemiology of hepatitis e virus infection in general population in rural durango, Mexico. *Hepat Mon* 2014; **14**: e16876 [PMID: 24976837 DOI: 10.5812/hepatmon.16876]
20 **Alvarado-Esquivel C**, Sanchez-Anguiano LF, Hernandez-Tinoco J. Seroepidemiology of hepatitis e virus infection in mennonites in Mexico. *J Clin Med Res* 2015; **7**: 103-108 [PMID: 25436027 DOI: 10.14740/jocmr1993w]
21 **Alvarado-Esquivel C**, Sánchez-Anguiano LF, Hernández-Tinoco J. Hepatitis E virus exposure in pregnant women in rural Durango, Mexico. *Ann Hepatol* 2014; **13**: 510-517 [PMID: 25152983]
22 **Parana R**, Cotrim HP, Cortey-Boennec ML, Trepo C, Lyra L. Prevalence of hepatitis E virus IgG antibodies in patients from a referral unit of liver diseases in Salvador, Bahia, Brazil. *Am J Trop Med Hyg* 1997; **57**: 60-61 [PMID: 9242319]
23 **Vitral CL**, da Silva-Nunes M, Pinto MA, de Oliveira JM, Gaspar AM, Pereira RC, Ferreira MU. Hepatitis A and E seroprevalence and associated risk factors: a community-based cross-sectional survey in rural Amazonia. *BMC Infect Dis* 2014; **14**: 458 [PMID: 25149658 DOI: 10.1186/1471-2334-14-458]
24 **Ibarra H**, Riedemann S, Reinhardt G, Frieck P, Siegel F, Toledo C, Calvo M, Froösner G. [Prevalence of hepatitis E virus antibodies in blood donors and other population groups in southern Chile]. *Rev Med Chil* 1997; **125**: 275-278 [PMID: 9460262]
25 **Kase JA**, Correa MT, Luna C, Sobsey MD. Isolation, detection and characterization of swine hepatitis E virus from herds in Costa Rica. *Int J Environ Health Res* 2008; **18**: 165-176 [PMID: 18569145 DOI: 10.1080/09603120701498311]
26 **Mirazo S**, Mainardi V, Ramos N, Gerona S, Rocca A, Arbiza J. Indigenous hepatitis E virus genotype 1 infection, Uruguay. *Emerg Infect Dis* 2014; **20**: 171-173 [PMID: 24378037 DOI: 10.3201/eid2001.131471]
27 **Mirazo S**, Ramos N, Russi JC, Arbiza J. Genetic heterogeneity and subtyping of human Hepatitis E virus isolates from Uruguay. *Virus Res* 2013; **173**: 364-370 [PMID: 23339897 DOI: 10.1016/j.virusres.2013.01.005]
28 **Smith DB**, Purdy MA, Simmonds P. Genetic variability and the classification of hepatitis E virus. *J Virol* 2013; **87**: 4161-4169 [PMID: 23388713 DOI: 10.1128/JVI.02762-12]
29 **Smith DB**, Simmonds P, Jameel S, Emerson SU, Harrison TJ, Meng XJ, Okamoto H, Van der Poel WH, Purdy MA. Consensus proposals for classification of the family Hepeviridae. *J Gen Virol* 2014; **95**: 2223-2232 [PMID: 24989172 DOI: 10.1099/vir.0.068429-0]
30 **Tang X**, Yang C, Gu Y, Song C, Zhang X, Wang Y, Zhang J, Hew CL, Li S, Xia N, Sivaraman J. Structural basis for the neutralization and genotype specificity of hepatitis E virus. *Proc Natl Acad Sci USA* 2011; **108**: 10266-10271 [PMID: 21642534 DOI: 10.1073/pnas.1101309108]
31 **Zhao Q**, Zhang J, Wu T, Li SW, Ng MH, Xia NS, Shih JW. Antigenic determinants of hepatitis E virus and vaccine-induced immunogenicity and efficacy. *J Gastroenterol* 2013; **48**: 159-168 [PMID: 23149436 DOI: 10.1007/s00535-012-0701-1]
32 **Guindon S**, Dufayard JF, Lefort V, Anisimova M, Hordijk W, Gascuel O. New algorithms and methods to estimate maximum-likelihood phylogenies: assessing the performance of PhyML 3.0. *Syst Biol* 2010; **59**: 307-321 [PMID: 20525638 DOI: 10.1093/sysbio/syq010]
33 **Pina S**, Jofre J, Emerson SU, Purcell RH, Girones R. Characterization of a strain of infectious hepatitis E virus isolated from sewage in an area where hepatitis E is not endemic. *Appl Environ Microbiol* 1998; **64**: 4485-4488 [PMID: 9797311]
34 **Pina S**, Buti M, Cotrina M, Piella J, Girones R. HEV identified in serum from humans with acute hepatitis and in sewage of animal origin in Spain. *J Hepatol* 2000; **33**: 826-833 [PMID: 11097493 DOI: 10.1016/S0168-8278(00)80316-5]
35 **Kasorndorkbua C**, Opriessnig T, Huang FF, Guenette DK, Thomas PJ, Meng XJ, Halbur PG. Infectious swine hepatitis E virus is present in pig manure storage facilities on United States farms, but evidence of water contamination is lacking. *Appl Environ Microbiol* 2005; **71**: 7831-7837 [PMID: 16332757 DOI: 10.1128/AEM.71.12.7831-7837.2005]
36 **Kumar A**, Beniwal M, Kar P, Sharma JB, Murthy NS. Hepatitis E in pregnancy. *Int J Gynaecol Obstet* 2004; **85**: 240-244 [PMID: 15145258 DOI: 10.1016/j.ijgo.2003.11.018]
37 **Khuroo MS**, Kamili S, Jameel S. Vertical transmission of hepatitis E virus. *Lancet* 1995; **345**: 1025-1026 [PMID: 7723501 DOI: 10.1016/S0140-6736(95)90761-0]
38 **Behrendt P**, Steinmann E, Manns MP, Wedemeyer H. The impact of hepatitis E in the liver transplant setting. *J Hepatol* 2014; **61**: 1418-1429 [PMID: 25195557 DOI: 10.1016/j.jhep.2014.08.047]
39 **de Niet A**, Zaaijer HL, ten Berge I, Weegink CJ, Reesink HW, Beuers U. Chronic hepatitis E after solid organ transplantation. *Neth J Med* 2012; **70**: 261-266 [PMID: 22859417]
40 **Kamar N**, Garrouste C, Haagsma EB, Garrigue V, Pischke S, Chauvet C, Dumortier J, Cannesson A, Cassuto-Viguier E, Thervet E, Conti F, Lebray P, Dalton HR, Santella R, Kanaan N, Essig M, Mousson C, Radenne S, Roque-Afonso AM, Izopet J, Rostaing L. Factors associated with chronic hepatitis in patients with hepatitis E virus infection who have received solid organ transplants. *Gastroenterology* 2011; **140**: 1481-1489 [PMID: 21354150 DOI: 10.1053/j.gastro.2011.02.050]
41 **Koning L**, Pas SD, de Man RA, Balk AH, de Knegt RJ, ten Kate FJ, Osterhaus AD, van der Eijk AA. Clinical implications of chronic hepatitis E virus infection in heart transplant recipients. *J Heart Lung Transplant* 2013; **32**: 78-85 [PMID: 23260707 DOI: 10.1016/j.healun.2012.10.008]
42 **Pischke S**, Stiefel P, Franz B, Bremer B, Suneetha PV, Heim A, Ganzenmueller T, Schlue J, Horn-Wichmann R, Raupach R, Darnedde M, Scheibner Y, Taubert R, Haverich A, Manns MP, Wedemeyer H, Bara CL. Chronic hepatitis e in heart transplant recipients. *Am J Transplant* 2012; **12**: 3128-3133 [PMID: 22823202 DOI: 10.1111/j.1600-6143.2012.04200.x]
43 **Te HS**, Drobeniuc J, Kamili S, Dong C, Hart J, Sharapov UM. Hepatitis E virus infection in a liver transplant recipient in the United States: a case report. *Transplant Proc* 2013; **45**: 810-813 [PMID: 23498824 DOI: 10.1016/j.transproceed.2012.08.020]
44 **Geng Y**, Zhang H, Huang W, J Harrison T, Geng K, Li Z, Wang Y. Persistent hepatitis e virus genotype 4 infection in a child with acute lymphoblastic leukemia. *Hepat Mon* 2014; **14**: e15618 [PMID: 24596581]
45 **Dalton HR**, Bendall RP, Keane FE, Tedder RS, Ijaz S. Persistent carriage of hepatitis E virus in patients with HIV infection. *N Engl J Med* 2009; **361**: 1025-1027 [PMID: 19726781 DOI: 10.1056/NEJMc0903778]
46 **Lhomme S**, Abravanel F, Dubois M, Sandres-Saune K, Mansuy JM, Rostaing L, Kamar N, Izopet J. Characterization of the polyproline region of the hepatitis E virus in immunocompromised patients. *J Virol* 2014; **88**: 12017-12025 [PMID: 25100839 DOI: 10.1128/JVI.01625-14]
47 **Legrand-Abravanel F**, Kamar N, Sandres-Saune K, Lhomme S, Mansuy JM, Muscari F, Sallusto F, Rostaing L, Izopet J. Hepatitis E virus infection without reactivation in solid-organ transplant recipients, France. *Emerg Infect Dis* 2011; **17**: 30-37 [PMID: 21192851 DOI: 10.3201/eid1701.100527]

48 **Buti M**, Cabrera C, Jardi R, Castells L, Esteban R. Are recipients of solid organ transplantation a high-risk population for hepatitis E virus infection? *Liver Transpl* 2010; **16**: 106-107; author reply 108 [PMID: 20035519 DOI: 10.1002/lt.21925]

49 **Moal V**, Legris T, Burtey S, Morange S, Purgus R, Dussol B, Garcia S, Motte A, Gérolami R, Berland Y, Colson P. Infection with hepatitis E virus in kidney transplant recipients in southeastern France. *J Med Virol* 2013; **85**: 462-471 [PMID: 23239466 DOI: 10.1002/jmv.23469]

50 **Pas SD**, de Man RA, Mulders C, Balk AH, van Hal PT, Weimar W, Koopmans MP, Osterhaus AD, van der Eijk AA. Hepatitis E virus infection among solid organ transplant recipients, the Netherlands. *Emerg Infect Dis* 2012; **18**: 869-872 [PMID: 22516170 DOI: 10.3201/eid1805.111712]

51 **Pischke S**, Suneetha PV, Baechlein C, Barg-Hock H, Heim A, Kamar N, Schlue J, Strassburg CP, Lehner F, Raupach R, Bremer B, Magerstedt P, Cornberg M, Seehusen F, Baumgaertner W, Klempnauer J, Izopet J, Manns MP, Grummer B, Wedemeyer H. Hepatitis E virus infection as a cause of graft hepatitis in liver transplant recipients. *Liver Transpl* 2010; **16**: 74-82 [PMID: 19866448 DOI: 10.1002/lt.21958]

52 **Riezebos-Brilman A**, Puchhammer-Stöckl E, van der Weide HY, Haagsma EB, Jaksch P, Bejvl I, Niesters HG, Verschuuren EA. Chronic hepatitis E infection in lung transplant recipients. *J Heart Lung Transplant* 2013; **32**: 341-346 [PMID: 23415316 DOI: 10.1016/j.healun.2012.11.027]

53 **Moal V**, Motte A, Kaba M, Gerolami R, Berland Y, Colson P. Hepatitis E virus serological testing in kidney transplant recipients with elevated liver enzymes in 2007-2011 in southeastern France. *Diagn Microbiol Infect Dis* 2013; **76**: 116-118 [PMID: 23608351 DOI: 10.1016/j.diagmicrobio.2013.02.017]

54 **Pérez-Gracia MT**, García M, Suay B, Mateos-Lindemann ML. Current Knowledge on Hepatitis E. *J Clin Transl Hepatol* 2015; **3**: 117-126 [PMID: 26355220 DOI: 10.14218/JCTH.2015.00009]

55 **Kamar N**, Abravanel F, Selves J, Garrouste C, Esposito L, Lavayssière L, Cointault O, Ribes D, Cardeau I, Nogier MB, Mansuy JM, Muscari F, Peron JM, Izopet J, Rostaing L. Influence of immunosuppressive therapy on the natural history of genotype 3 hepatitis-E virus infection after organ transplantation. *Transplantation* 2010; **89**: 353-360 [PMID: 20145528 DOI: 10.1097/TP.0b013e3181c4096c]

56 **Wang Y**, Metselaar HJ, Peppelenbosch MP, Pan Q. Chronic hepatitis E in solid-organ transplantation: the key implications of immunosuppressants. *Curr Opin Infect Dis* 2014; **27**: 303-308 [PMID: 24977682 DOI: 10.1097/QCO.0000000000000074]

57 **Verna EC**. Hepatitis viruses and liver transplantation: evolving trends in antiviral management. *Clin Liver Dis* 2014; **18**: 575-601 [PMID: 25017077 DOI: 10.1016/j.cld.2014.05.002]

58 **van der Eijk AA**, Pas SD, Cornelissen JJ, de Man RA. Hepatitis E virus infection in hematopoietic stem cell transplant recipients. *Curr Opin Infect Dis* 2014; **27**: 309-315 [PMID: 24977683 DOI: 10.1097/QCO.0000000000000076]

59 **Alric L**, Bonnet D, Beynes-Rauzy O, Izopet J, Kamar N. Definitive clearance of a chronic hepatitis E virus infection with ribavirin treatment. *Am J Gastroenterol* 2011; **106**: 1562-1563 [PMID: 21811285 DOI: 10.1038/ajg.2011.158]

60 **Alric L**, Bonnet D, Laurent G, Kamar N, Izopet J. Chronic hepatitis E virus infection: successful virologic response to pegylated interferon-alpha therapy. *Ann Intern Med* 2010; **153**: 135-136 [PMID: 20547885 DOI: 10.7326/0003-4819-153-2-201007200-00256]

61 **Gauss A**, Wenzel JJ, Flechtenmacher C, Navid MH, Eisenbach C, Jilg W, Stremmel W, Schnitzler P. Chronic hepatitis E virus infection in a patient with leukemia and elevated transaminases: a case report. *J Med Case Rep* 2012; **6**: 334 [PMID: 23031738 DOI: 10.1186/1752-1947-6-334]

62 **Tavitian S**, Péron JM, Huynh A, Mansuy JM, Ysebaert L, Huguet F, Vinel JP, Attal M, Izopet J, Récher C. Hepatitis E virus excretion can be prolonged in patients with hematological malignancies. *J Clin Virol* 2010; **49**: 141-144 [PMID: 20678959 DOI: 10.1016/j.jcv.2010.06.016]

63 **Koenecke C**, Pischke S, Heim A, Raggub L, Bremer B, Raupach R, Buchholz S, Schulz T, Manns MP, Ganser A, Wedemeyer H. Chronic hepatitis E in hematopoietic stem cell transplant patients in a low-endemic country? *Transpl Infect Dis* 2012; **14**: 103-106 [PMID: 22212560]

64 **Abravanel F**, Mansuy JM, Huynh A, Kamar N, Alric L, Peron JM, Récher C, Izopet J. Low risk of hepatitis E virus reactivation after haematopoietic stem cell transplantation. *J Clin Virol* 2012; **54**: 152-155 [PMID: 22425538 DOI: 10.1016/j.jcv.2012.02.015]

65 **Crum-Cianflone NF**, Curry J, Drobeniuc J, Weintrob A, Landrum M, Ganesan A, Bradley W, Agan BK, Kamili S. Hepatitis E virus infection in HIV-infected persons. *Emerg Infect Dis* 2012; **18**: 502-506 [PMID: 22377220 DOI: 10.3201/eid1803.111278]

66 **Jardi R**, Crespo M, Homs M, van den Eynde E, Girones R, Rodriguez-Manzano J, Caballero A, Buti M, Esteban R, Rodriguez-Frias F. HIV, HEV and cirrhosis: evidence of a possible link from eastern Spain. *HIV Med* 2012; **13**: 379-383 [PMID: 22257075 DOI: 10.1111/j.1468-1293.2011.00985.x]

67 **Kaba M**, Richet H, Ravaux I, Moreau J, Poizot-Martin I, Motte A, Nicolino-Brunet C, Dignat-George F, Ménard A, Dhiver C, Brouqui P, Colson P. Hepatitis E virus infection in patients infected with the human immunodeficiency virus. *J Med Virol* 2011; **83**: 1704-1716 [PMID: 21837786 DOI: 10.1002/jmv.22177]

68 **Keane F**, Gompels M, Bendall R, Drayton R, Jennings L, Black J, Baragwanath G, Lin N, Henley W, Ngui SL, Ijaz S, Dalton H. Hepatitis E virus coinfection in patients with HIV infection. *HIV Med* 2012; **13**: 83-88 [PMID: 21819531]

69 **Kenfak-Foguena A**, Schöni-Affolter F, Bürgisser P, Witteck A, Darling KE, Kovari H, Kaiser L, Evison JM, Elzi L, Gurter-De La Fuente V, Jost J, Moradpour D, Abravanel F, Izpopet J, Cavassini M. Hepatitis E Virus seroprevalence and chronic infections in patients with HIV, Switzerland. *Emerg Infect Dis* 2011; **17**: 1074-1078 [PMID: 21749774 DOI: 10.3201/eid/1706.101067]

70 **Maylin S**, Stephan R, Molina JM, Peraldi MN, Scieux C, Nicand E, Simon F, Delaugerre C. Prevalence of antibodies and RNA genome of hepatitis E virus in a cohort of French immunocompromised. *J Clin Virol* 2012; **53**: 346-349 [PMID: 22293627 DOI: 10.1016/j.jcv.2012.01.001]

71 **Pischke S**, Ho H, Urbanek F, Meyer-Olsen D, Suneetha PV, Manns MP, Stoll M, Wedemeyer H. Hepatitis E in HIV-positive patients in a low-endemic country. *J Viral Hepat* 2010; **17**: 598-599 [PMID: 20002566 DOI: 10.1111/j.1365-2893.2009.01219.x]

72 **Renou C**, Lafeuillade A, Cadranel JF, Pavio N, Pariente A, Allègre T, Poggi C, Pénaranda G, Cordier F, Nicand E. Hepatitis E virus in HIV-infected patients. *AIDS* 2010; **24**: 1493-1499 [PMID: 20467291 DOI: 10.1097/QAD.0b013e32833a29ab]

73 **Sellier P**, Mazeron MC, Tesse S, Badsi E, Evans J, Magnier JD, Sanson-Le-Pors MJ, Bergmann JF, Nicand E. Hepatitis E virus infection in HIV-infected patients with elevated serum transaminases levels. *Virol J* 2011; **8**: 171 [PMID: 21496215 DOI: 10.1186/1743-422X-8-171]

74 **van Welzen BJ**, Verduyn Lunel FM, Meindertsma F, Hoepelman AI, Arends JE. Hepatitis E virus as a causative agent of unexplained liver enzyme elevations in HIV-infected patients. *J Acquir Immune Defic Syndr* 2012; **60**: e65-e67 [PMID: 22622079 DOI: 10.1097/QAI.0b013e318251b01f]

75 **Andersson MI**, Preiser W, Maponga TG, Heys I, Taljaard JJ, van Rensburg C, Tedder RS, Ijaz S. Immune reconstitution hepatitis E: a neglected complication of antiretroviral therapy in Africa? *AIDS* 2013; **27**: 487-489 [PMID: 23291543 DOI: 10.1097/QAD.0b013e32835b1074]

76 **Colson P**, Dhiver C, Poizot-Martin I, Tamalet C, Gérolami R. Acute and chronic hepatitis E in patients infected with human immunodeficiency virus. *J Viral Hepat* 2011; **18**: 227-228 [PMID: 20384963 DOI: 10.1111/j.1365-2893.2010.01311.x]

77 **Hajji H**, Gérolami R, Solas C, Moreau J, Colson P. Chronic hepatitis E resolution in a human immunodeficiency virus (HIV)-infected patient treated with ribavirin. *Int J Antimicrob Agents* 2013; **41**: 595-597 [PMID: 23507411 DOI: 10.1016/j.ijantimicag.2013.02.005]

78 **Rivero-Juarez A**, Martinez-Dueñas L, Martinez-Peinado A, Camacho A, Cifuentes C, Gordon A, Frias M, Torre-Cisneros J, Pineda JA, Rivero A. High hepatitis E virus seroprevalence with absence of chronic infection in HIV-infected patients. *J Infect* 2015; **70**: 624-630 [PMID: 25452042]

79 **Merchante N**, Parra-Sánchez M, Rivero-Juárez A, Cifuentes C, Camacho Á, Macías J, Martínez-Dueñas L, Pérez-Navarro E, Rivero A, Pineda JA. High prevalence of antibodies against hepatitis E virus in HIV-infected patients with unexplained liver disease. *Enferm Infecc Microbiol Clin* 2015; **33**: 532-535 [PMID: 25533742 DOI: 10.1016/j.eimc.2014.10.018]

80 **Kamar N**, Abravanel F, Lhomme S, Rostaing L, Izopet J. Hepatitis E virus: chronic infection, extra-hepatic manifestations, and treatment. *Clin Res Hepatol Gastroenterol* 2015; **39**: 20-27 [PMID: 25150374 DOI: 10.1016/j.clinre.2014.07.005]

81 **Ditah I**, Ditah F, Devaki P, Ditah C, Kamath PS, Charlton M. Current epidemiology of hepatitis E virus infection in the United States: low seroprevalence in the National Health and Nutrition Evaluation Survey. *Hepatology* 2014; **60**: 815-822 [PMID: 24824965 DOI: 10.1002/hep.27219]

82 **Meng XJ**. Zoonotic and foodborne transmission of hepatitis E virus. *Semin Liver Dis* 2013; **33**: 41-49 [PMID: 23564388 DOI: 10.1055/s-0033-1338113]

83 **Mesquita JR**, Valente-Gomes G, Conceição-Neto N, Nascimento MS. Pet veterinarians have no increased risk of hepatitis E compared to the general population. *J Med Virol* 2014; **86**: 954-956 [PMID: 24610550 DOI: 10.1002/jmv.23927]

84 **Meng XJ**. Hepatitis E virus: animal reservoirs and zoonotic risk. *Vet Microbiol* 2010; **140**: 256-265 [PMID: 19361937 DOI: 10.1016/j.vetmic.2009.03.017]

85 **Meng XJ**. Recent advances in Hepatitis E virus. *J Viral Hepat* 2010; **17**: 153-161 [PMID: 20040046 DOI: 10.1111/j.1365-2893.2009.01257.x]

86 **Purdy MA**, Khudyakov YE. The molecular epidemiology of hepatitis E virus infection. *Virus Res* 2011; **161**: 31-39 [PMID: 21600939 DOI: 10.1016/j.virusres.2011.04.030]

87 **dos Santos DR**, Vitral CL, de Paula VS, Marchevsky RS, Lopes JF, Gaspar AM, Saddi TM, Júnior NC, Guimarães Fde R, Júnior JG, Ximenes LL, Souto FJ, Pinto MA. Serological and molecular evidence of hepatitis E virus in swine in Brazil. *Vet J* 2009; **182**: 474-480 [PMID: 18805029 DOI: 10.1016/j.tvjl.2008.08.001]

88 **Munné MS**, Altabert NR, Otegui M LO, Vladimirsky SN, Moreiro R, Espul MP, Espul C, Manzur A, Soto SS, Brajterman LS, González JE. Updating the knowledge of hepatitis E: new variants and higher prevalence of anti-HEV in Argentina. *Ann Hepatol* 2014; **13**: 496-502 [PMID: 25152981]

89 **Cantú-Martínez MA**, Roig-Sagués AX, Cedillo-Rosales S, Zamora-Ávila DE, Avalos-Ramírez R. [Molecular detection of hepatitis E virus in pig livers destined for human consumption in the state of Nuevo Leon, Mexico]. *Salud Publica Mex* 2013; **55**: 193-195 [PMID: 23546411]

90 **Tei S**, Kitajima N, Ohara S, Inoue Y, Miki M, Yamatani T, Yamabe H, Mishiro S, Kinoshita Y. Consumption of uncooked deer meat as a risk factor for hepatitis E virus infection: an age- and sex-matched case-control study. *J Med Virol* 2004; **74**: 67-70 [PMID: 15258970 DOI: 10.1002/jmv.20147]

91 **Cossaboom CM**, Córdoba L, Cao D, Ni YY, Meng XJ. Complete genome sequence of hepatitis E virus from rabbits in the United States. *J Virol* 2012; **86**: 13124-13125 [PMID: 23118454 DOI: 10.1128/JVI.02414-12]

92 **Bilic I**, Jaskulska B, Basic A, Morrow CJ, Hess M. Sequence analysis and comparison of avian hepatitis E viruses from Australia and Europe indicate the existence of different genotypes. *J Gen Virol* 2009; **90**: 863-873 [PMID: 19264623 DOI: 10.1099/vir.0.007179-0]

93 **Marek A**, Bilic I, Prokofieva I, Hess M. Phylogenetic analysis of avian hepatitis E virus samples from European and Australian chicken flocks supports the existence of a different genus within the Hepeviridae comprising at least three different genotypes. *Vet Microbiol* 2010; **145**: 54-61 [PMID: 20399575 DOI: 10.1016/j.vetmic.2010.03.014]

94 **Hsu IW**, Tsai HJ. Avian hepatitis E virus in chickens, Taiwan, 2013. *Emerg Infect Dis* 2014; **20**: 149-151 [PMID: 24378180 DOI: 10.3201/eid2001.131224]

95 **Kuno A**, Ido K, Isoda N, Satoh Y, Ono K, Satoh S, Inamori H, Sugano K, Kanai N, Nishizawa T, Okamoto H. Sporadic acute hepatitis E of a 47-year-old man whose pet cat was positive for antibody to hepatitis E virus. *Hepatol Res* 2003; **26**: 237-242 [PMID: 12850697 DOI: 10.1016/S1386-6346(03)00197-9]

96 **Saxena V**, Arora S. Hepatitis E virus infection: A zoonotic threat. *Adv Anim Vet Sciences* 2014; **2**: 582-591 [DOI: 10.14737/journal.aavs/2014/2.10.582.591]

97 **Wu T**, Li SW, Zhang J, Ng MH, Xia NS, Zhao Q. Hepatitis E vaccine development: a 14 year odyssey. *Hum Vaccin Immunother* 2012; **8**: 823-827 [PMID: 22699438 DOI: 10.4161/hv.20042]

98 **Zhang X**, Wang H, Ding S, Wang X, Chen X, Wo Y, Wang L, Huang D, Liu W, Cao W. Prevalence of enteroviruses in children with and without hand, foot, and mouth disease in China. *BMC Infect Dis* 2013; **13**: 606 [PMID: 24370001 DOI: 10.1186/1471-2334-13-606]

99 **Abbas Z**, Afzal R. Hepatitis E: when to treat and how to treat. *Antivir Ther* 2014; **19**: 125-131 [PMID: 24192696 DOI: 10.3851/IMP2705]

100 **Kamar N**, Mallet V, Izopet J. Ribavirin for chronic hepatitis E virus infection. *N Engl J Med* 2014; **370**: 2447-2448 [PMID: 24941183 DOI: 10.1056/NEJMoa1215246]

101 **Baylis SA**, Blümel J, Mizusawa S, Matsubayashi K, Sakata H, Okada Y, Nübling CM, Hanschmann KM. World Health Organization International Standard to harmonize assays for detection of hepatitis E virus RNA. *Emerg Infect Dis* 2013; **19**: 729-735 [PMID: 23647659 DOI: 10.3201/eid1905.121845]

102 **Rodríguez Lay Lde L**, Delgado González G, Bello Corredor M, Montalvo Villalba MC, Frómeta SS, Gutiérrez Moreno A. [Surveillance of viral hepatitis: laboratory results. Cuba, 1992-2004]. *Rev Cubana Med Trop* 2006; **58**: 97-102 [PMID: 23427426]

103 **Valenzuela V**, Pinto J, Padilla M, Piscoya A, De Los Rios R, Surco Y, Bravo E, Huerta-Mercado J. [Severe decompensation of hepatitis e in a patient with autoimmune hepatitis: a case report]. *Rev Gastroenterol Peru* 2012; **32**: 187-191 [PMID: 23023183]

P- Reviewer: Parvez MK **S- Editor**: Gong ZM
L- Editor: A **E- Editor**: Liu XM

World Journal of Gastroenterology

Submit a Manuscript: http://www.wjgnet.com/esps/
Help Desk: http://www.wjgnet.com/esps/helpdesk.aspx
DOI: 10.3748/wjg.v22.i7.2284

World J Gastroenterol 2016 February 21; 22(7): 2284-2293
ISSN 1007-9327 (print) ISSN 2219-2840 (online)

REVIEW

Genomic characterization of esophageal squamous cell carcinoma: Insights from next-generation sequencing

Yasushi Sasaki, Miyuki Tamura, Ryota Koyama, Takafumi Nakagaki, Yasushi Adachi, Takashi Tokino

Yasushi Sasaki, Miyuki Tamura, Ryota Koyama, Takafumi Nakagaki, Takashi Tokino, Department of Medical Genome Sciences, Research Institute for Frontier Medicine, Sapporo Medical University, Sapporo 060-8556, Japan

Yasushi Adachi, Department of Gastroenterology, Rheumatology and Clinical Immunology, Sapporo Medical University School of Medicine, Sapporo 060-8543, Japan

Author contributions: Sasaki Y designed the report, analyzed the data and wrote the manuscript; Tamura M, Koyama R and Nakagaki T analyzed the data; Adachi Y and Tokino T edited the manuscript.

Supported by MEXT KAKENHI, Grant No. 221S0001.

Conflict-of-interest statement: The authors have no conflict of interest to declare.

Correspondence to: Yasushi Sasaki, MD, PhD, Department of Medical Genome Sciences, Research Institute for Frontier Medicine, Sapporo Medical University, S-1, W-17, Chuo-ku, Sapporo 060-8556, Japan. yasushi@sapmed.ac.jp
Telephone: +81-11-6112111-2410
Fax: +81-11-6183313

Received: July 28, 2015
Peer-review started: July 30, 2015
First decision: September 9, 2015
Revised: September 29, 2015
Accepted: December 19, 2015
Article in press: December 19, 2015
Published online: February 21, 2016

Abstract

Two major types of cancer occur in the esophagus: squamous cell carcinoma, which is associated with chronic smoking and alcohol consumption, and adenocarcinoma, which typically arises in gastric reflux-associated Barrett's esophagus. Although there is increasing incidence of esophageal adenocarcinoma in Western counties, esophageal squamous cell carcinoma (ESCC) accounts for most esophageal malignancies in East Asia, including China and Japan. Technological advances allowing for massively parallel, high-throughput next-generation sequencing (NGS) of DNA have enabled comprehensive characterization of somatic mutations in large numbers of tumor samples. Recently, several studies were published in which whole exome or whole genome sequencing was performed in ESCC tumors and compared with matched normal DNA. Mutations were validated in several genes, including in *TP53*, *CDKN2A*, *FAT1*, *NOTCH1*, *PIK3CA*, *KMT2D* and *NFE2L2*, which had been previously implicated in ESCC. Several new recurrent alterations have also been identified in ESCC. Combining the clinicopathological characteristics of patients with information obtained from NGS studies may lead to the development of effective diagnostic and therapeutic approaches for ESCC. As this research becomes more prominent, it is important that gastroenterologist become familiar with the various NGS technologies and the results generated using these methods. In the present study, we describe recent research approaches using NGS in ESCC.

Key words: Esophageal squamous cell carcinoma; Next-generation sequencing; Somatic mutation; Driver mutation; Copy number variant

Core tip: Because targeted therapies have not been implemented in the treatment of esophageal squamous cell carcinoma (ESCC) to date, defining the genetic landscape of ESCC would facilitate the use of targeted therapies. Improvements in molecular profiling technologies have provided new insight into the basic molecular events during carcinogenesis as well as the mechanisms of anti-cancer drug resistance. Our invited review offers a current overview of the somatic genetic alterations in ESCC, emphasizing the recent results of large-scale sequencing efforts using next-generation sequencing technology.

Sasaki Y, Tamura M, Koyama R, Nakagaki T, Adachi Y, Tokino T. Genomic characterization of esophageal squamous cell carcinoma: Insights from next-generation sequencing. *World J Gastroenterol* 2016; 22(7): 2284-2293 Available from: URL: http://www.wjgnet.com/1007-9327/full/v22/i7/2284.htm DOI: http://dx.doi.org/10.3748/wjg.v22.i7.2284

INTRODUCTION

Cancer of the esophagus is the eighth leading causes of cancer-related mortality worldwide[1]. It is one of the most deadly gastrointestinal tumors, with a 5-year survival rate of 20%-30% after curative surgery[2]. Two major types of cancer occur in the esophagus, including squamous cell carcinoma and adenocarcinoma, but their epidemiological features differ considerably. The incidence of esophageal cancer varies greatly by geographic location. Esophageal squamous cell carcinoma (ESCC) has a predilection for black and Asian populations and more than 70% of esophageal cancers worldwide are squamous cell carcinomas[3-5]. ESCC is considered an environmental malignancy attributable to chronic smoking and alcohol consumption[6]. In contrast, esophageal adenocarcinoma (EAC) predominantly affects white populations, which typically arises in a premalignant condition called Barrett's esophagus[7-10]. The changing epidemiology of esophageal cancer, with a dramatic increase in EAC and decrease in ESCC in Western countries indicates that differences exist between the two types of esophageal cancer[2].

Despite recent advances in imaging and surgical techniques, as well as the intensification of treatment with the increased use of chemoradiation, the survival rates for esophageal cancers have remained largely unchanged for several decades[6]. We have observed many patients with ESCC in whom local tumor recurrence or distant metastases occurred during an early disease stage and within a short period after surgery. Therefore, the molecular carcinogenesis and metastatic process of esophageal cancer must be clarified. Understanding tumor biology offers the potential for individualizing treatment and developing targeted therapies to increase cure rates and minimize morbidities. This review provides a current overview of the genomic and molecular characterization of ESCC, emphasizing recent results of large-scale sequencing efforts using next-generation sequencing (NGS) technology.

Since unique mutations have been observed in individual human cancer samples, the identification and characterization of molecular alterations underlying individual cancer patients is a critical step in the development of more effective, personalized therapies. For example, NGS technologies have revolutionized cancer genomics research by providing a comprehensive method for detecting somatic cancer genome alterations, such as point mutations, insertions, deletions, and copy number variations[11,12]. NGS has also revolutionized the field of genomics and improved our understanding of cancer biology. Advances have been achieved in the sequencing of tumor DNA; matched normal DNA was used to filter out germline variants to identify cancer-specific changes. High incidences of activating mutations in ESCCs amenable to drug targeting have also been identified. Investigators have also identified several critical genes and pathways important in the tumorigenesis of ESCC using this technology. This wealth of information undoubtedly improves our understanding of ESCC biology and provides clear targets for drug targeting to guide future personalized medicine.

TECHNICAL FEATURES OF NGS

NGS technologies have several advantages over classical Sanger sequencing, such as the ability to generate large quantities of DNA sequence information in a single run for detecting genetic mosaicism in depth[13]. However, routine usage of these technologies has several limitations, such as high cost, long processing time, and sample scalability. Three NGS platforms are now widely applied in cancer genome studies, including short-read technologies (< 400 bp) from Illumina (Genome analyzer/MiSeq/HiSeq/NextSeq; San Diego, CA, United States) and Thermo Fisher (SOLiD/Ion Torrent, Waltham, MA, United States) as well as a relative long-read technology (< 700 bp) from Roche (GS FLX, Basel, Switzerland). NGS platforms differ in performance metrics such as read length, accuracy, and output. The next next-generation (third-generation) sequencing system from Pacific Biosciences is also available (PacBio RS, Menlo Park, CA, United States), which can sequence a single molecule of DNA without polymerase chain reaction (PCR) amplification[14]. The average read length is 1500 bp, which is longer than that of any NGS technology, although the throughput of PacBio RS is lower than that of the second-generation sequencer. A brief summary of the technical features of these NGS platforms is shown in Table 1.

The NGS market is dominated by Illumina, which

Table 1 Commercial next-generation sequencing platforms for human genome sequencing

	454 GS FLX	GAIIx	MiSeq	HiSeq 2500	SOLiD 5500	Ion PGM (318 chip)	Ion Proton	PacBio RS
Reads per run	1 M	150 M	50 M	6 G	1.4 G	5.5 M	60 M	50 K
Read length (bp)	700	2 × 150	2 × 150	2 × 100	2 × 50	400	200	250-10000
Output per run	700 Mb	90 Gb	15 Gb	600 Gb	120 Gb	2 Gb	12 Gb	200 Mb
Run time	24 h	14 d	55 h	10 d	7 d	5 h	3 h	2 h
Cost/Mb[1]	$10.00	$0.15	$0.50	$0.05	$0.10	$1.00	$0.08	$2.00
Advantage	Long read length	Widly used	Widly used	High-throughput, widly used	High-throughput, accuracy	Fast, flexible chip	High-throughput, fast	Long read length, fast
Disadvantage	Long hand-on time, low output	Long run time	Long run time	Long run time	Long run time, short read length	High error rate (homopolymer)	High error rate (homopolymer)	High error rate

[1]Cost calculations are based on list price quotations obtained from the manufacturer. Mb: Megabase; Gb: Gigabase.

occupies the largest market share at 70% (www.marketsandmarkets.com). Illumina platforms are based on bridge amplification to clonally amplify the fragments, which are then sequenced using sequencing-by-synthesis chemistry[15]. Sequencing capabilities include both single-end sequencing and paired-end sequencing. The HiSeq 2000/2500 set the standard for high-throughput massively parallel sequencing. The original output was 200 Gb per run, which was improved to 600 Gb per run and can be finished in 10 d. The MiSeq was then released as a lower-throughput fast-turnaround instrument for use in smaller laboratories. Recently, Illumina developed the HiSeq X Ten Sequencing System, a very high-throughput and high-speed sequencing platform that enables sequencing for less than $1000 per genome at 30 × coverage[16].

After the human genome project, the first commercial NGS platform 454 pyrosequencer was developed by 454 Life Sciences Corp in 2005. The platform was purchased by Roche in 2007. Roche 454 platforms use emulsion PCR, and is based on pyrosequencing technology relying on the detection of pyrophosphate released during nucleotide incorporation[17]. The 454 GS-FLX system produces one million 700-bp sequences within 24 h. However, this platform has a significantly lower output compared to other NGS platforms. Additionally, the cost per base is also significantly higher compared with short-read technologies. The GS Junior is a benchtop version of this platform.

Similarly to Roche 454, the SOLiD sequencer relies on emulsion PCR and sequencing by ligation to small beads. Although the reads obtained from the SOLiD 5500 Genetic Analyzer system are only 50-75 bp in length, its system accuracy of 99.99% ranks first among all NGS platforms[18]. Recently, Ion Torrent sequencing technology based on semiconductor sequencing[19] has been released. Ion Torrent platforms use a high-density array of micro-machined wells, each containing a different DNA template. Beneath the wells lies an ion-sensitive layer, which is placed on a proprietary ion sensor to detect changes in pH resulting from incorporation of nucleotides in the new strand of DNA. The compact Ion Personal Genome Analyzer has three different chips, each designed for a specific purpose, including ranging from sequencing small genomes (314 chip, 550 K reads) and targeted gene sequencing (316 chip, 3 M reads) to chromatin immunoprecipitation-sequencing (ChIP-seq) (318 chip, 5.5 M reads). The desktop-type Ion Proton allows for larger chips with higher densities needed for the human exome and whole genome sequencing. The outstanding advantage of Ion Torrent is its speed: it takes 3-5 h from the start of sequencing until completion; however, this method has high error rate in homopolymer regions[20].

Applications of NGS for cancer genome research

NGS is increasingly used in many areas of cancer research and in the clinical setting. Depending on the purpose, NGS is applied in cancer genome studies, including whole genome, whole exome, targeted gene sequencing, RNA sequencing, and ChIP-Seq[11,12,21-23]. For variant identification by resequencing target regions, whole genomes, or whole exons, it is key to sequence both the tumor and non-malignant tissues of an individual. There are 3-5 million inherited sequence variants per human genome. Consequently, most sequence variants identified in a cancer genome are inherited polymorphisms and are not somatic mutations[24]. Thus, comparing a tumor genome to its paired normal genome is required to efficiently identify somatic sequence variants (Figure 1). In addition to CGH and SNP arrays, NGS techniques can be used to detect copy number variations[12,25]. Targeted sequencing is a variation of re-sequencing where only a small subset of the genome is sequenced, such as a set of genes or particular sequences under interest. Although this approach will not detect most structural

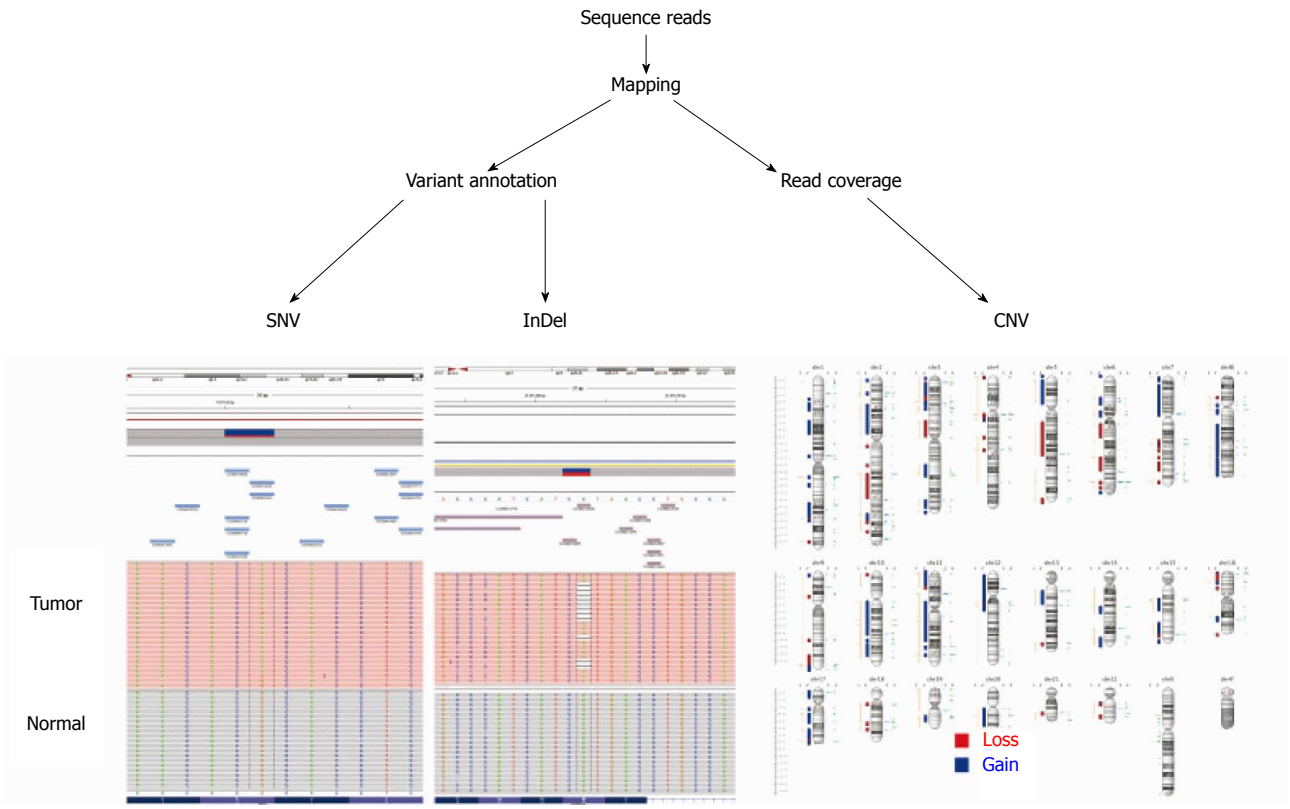


Figure 1 Cancer genome research using next-generation sequencing. Sequence reads are quality checked and then mapped to the reference genome. Somatic DNA alterations are detected using statistical approaches in tumor and normal samples from the available software or an integrated workflow such as the GATK pipeline (Broad Institute). SNV: Single nucleotide variant; InDel: Insertion and deletion; CNV: Copy number variation.

Table 2 Next-generation sequencing studies of esophageal squamous cell carcinoma to date

Study	Method	Sample number	Number of non-silent mutations/tumor	Additional analyses	Platform
Agrawal *et al*[31]	WES	12 WES	83	-	GA IIx
Song *et al*[34]	WGS and WES	17 WGS, 71 WES	61	123 CGH	HiSeq 2000
Lin *et al*[33]	WES and TS	20 WES, 119 TS	59	4 RNA-seq, 59 CGH, 125 SNP-array	HiSeq 2000
Gao *et al*[32]	WES	113 WES	82	-	HiSeq 2000
Zhang *et al*[35]	WGS and WES	14 WGS, 90 WES	104	-	HiSeq 2000

WGS: Whole-genome sequencing; WES: Whole-exome sequencing; TS: Targeted sequencing; CGH: Comparative genomic hybridization; RNA-seq: RNA sequence; SNP: Single nucleotide polymorphism.

variants, such as chromosomal translocations, targeted gene sequencing represents a cost- and resource-efficient approach for identifying somatic mutations in cancer genomes[26,27].

GENETIC ALTERATIONS DRIVING ESCC

Targeted therapies have been successfully used for the treatment of in certain human solid tumors, including lung adenocarcinoma, colorectal cancer, stomach cancer, breast cancer and renal cell carcinoma as well as hematologic malignancies, but have not been implemented in the treatment of ESCC[28-30]. Therefore, defining the genetic landscape of ESCCs would facilitate the use of targeted therapies. Agrawal and colleagues published the first exome-sequencing study of esophageal cancer, sequencing 12 ESCCs and 11 EACs as well as matched non-neoplastic tissues from subjects in the United States[31], and a handful of NGS studies in ESCC have been published over the last four years (summarized in Table 2)[31-35]. Genetic aberrations identified within these studies, including gene mutation, gene rearrangement, and gene amplification/deletion, increased the understanding of constitutive activation of oncogenes, or loss of function of tumor suppressors. These comprehensive studies have demonstrated recurrent mutations in several genes in ESCC, most notably *TP53*, *NOTCH1*, PIK3CA and *FAT1* as well as copy-number alterations in *CCND1* and *CDKN2A* (Table 3). Figure 2 shows a Venn diagram of the most significantly mutated genes identified in the three whole genome and whole exome

Table 3 Frequently altered genes in esophageal squamous cell carcinoma

Gene symbol	*TP53*	*NOTCH1*	*PIK3CA*	*CDKN2A*	*CCND1*	*FAT1*
Chromosomal location	17p13.1	9q34.3	3q26.3	9p21.3	11q13	4q35.2
Alteration frequency (%)						
Agrawal *et al*[31]	92 (M)	33 (M)	0 (M)	8 (M)	NA	8 (M)
Song *et al*[34]	83 (M) 1 (L)	9 (M)	5 (M) 41 (G)	5 (M) 44 (L)	46 (G)	5 (M)
Lin *et al*[33]	60 (M)	8 (M)	7 (M) 10 (G)	3 (M) 33 (L)	46 (G)	12 (M)
Gao *et al*[32]	93 (M)	14 (M)	9 (M) 2 (G)	8 (M) 12 (L)	33 (G)	11 (M)
Zhang *et al*[35]	88 (M)	21 (M)	17 (M)	8 (M) 64 (L)	64 (G)	15 (M)

M: Nonsynonymous mutation; L: Copy number loss; G: Copy number gain; NA: Not applicable.

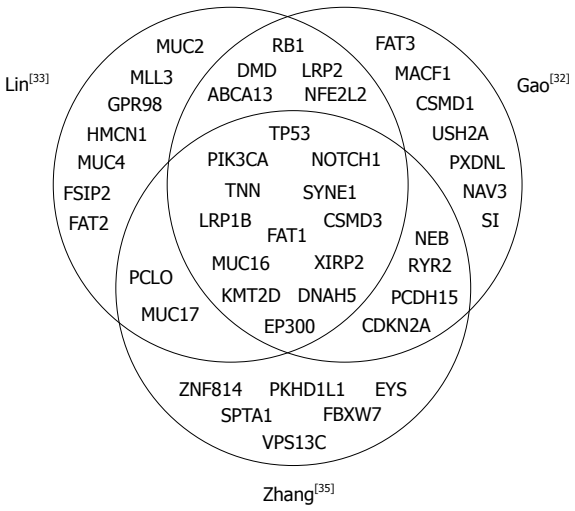


Figure 2 Comparison of most significantly mutated genes identified in the three whole genome and whole exon sequencing studies for esophageal squamous cell carcinomas. Top significantly mutated genes (25-27 genes per study) were obtained from three recent next-generation sequencing studies of large cohorts. Only nonsynonymous mutations were considered.

sequencing studies of relatively large cohorts for ESCCs. The Broad Institute (Cambridge, MA, United States) project[36] used this method to examine 149 EAC tumors, and confirmed recurrent driver mutations in *TP53*, *CDKN2A*, *SMAD4*, *ARID1A*, and *PIK3CA*. Previously unidentified mutations in *SPG20*, *TLR4*, *ELMO1*, and *DOCK2* were also found, and a possible role for the RAC1 GTPase pathway was identified. The genomic landscape of EAC differed from that of ESCC, highlighting the different therapeutic strategies needed to treat esophageal cancers. In this review, we highlight the current knowledge regarding molecular targets, clinical trials of targeted agents, and druggable aberrations in ESCCs.

p53 family

TP53 is one of the most thoroughly studied tumor suppressor genes in human cancer. Genetic mutations in *TP53* are present in more than 50% of human cancers, leading to dysregulation of its downstream targets[37,38]. NGS studies have confirmed that *TP53* is the most commonly mutated gene in ESCC. The first whole exome sequencing study found that ESCCs contained an average of 83 mutations per tumor, and that the most frequent mutations in ESCC occurred in *TP53* (92% of the 12 cases sequenced), *NOTCH1* (33%), *NOTCH3* (25%), and *FBXW7* (17%)[31]. The p53 protein is activated by a variety of cell stresses, such as DNA damage, oncogene activation, spindle damage, and hypoxia. Activated p53 transactivates a number of target genes, many of which are involved in DNA repair, cell cycle arrest, and apoptosis[39-41]. *TP53* alterations have been identified as early events in the carcinogenesis of ESCC and have been associated with disease progression and a poor outcome[42-44]. Therapies targeting TP53 loss of function are currently being examined in clinical trials, and several studies suggest that patients harboring *TP53* alterations will respond better to angiogenesis inhibitors[45]. The efficacy of intra-tumor injection of p53 adenovirus (Advexin, Introgen Therapeutics Inc., Austin, TX, United States) has been confirmed in Japanese ESCC patients[46]. Additionally, a TP53 adenoviral-based treatment (Gendicine, Shenshen Sibiono Genetech, Shenzhen, China) for patients with squamous cell carcinoma of the head and neck has recently been approved for use in China[47]. Two other p53 family members, p63 and p73, also induce cell cycle arrest and apoptosis and play an important role in development and differentiation[48]. Dominant negative forms lacking the N-terminal transactivation domain (DNp63 and DNp73) are overexpressed in some types of cancers[49]. In esophageal cancer, DNp63 is overexpressed in ESCC but not in EAC, making p63 a useful marker of squamous cell cancer[50,51]. Additionally, at least 30% of head and neck squamous cell carcinomas harbor mutations in genes regulating squamous differentiation, including *p63*[52].

Notch signaling

NOTCH1 is the second most commonly mutated gene in ESCC, with a mutation rate of 8%-33%[31-35]. The

Notch signaling pathway is thought to play important roles in regulating normal cell differentiation in a context-dependent manner[53]. The Notch pathway has also been implicated in human carcinogenesis as both an oncogene and a tumor suppressor[54]. The oncogenic activity of this pathway has been observed in a number of hematopoietic cancers[55]. When we characterized the distribution of *NOTCH1* somatic mutations obtained from the two studies[32,35], most *NOTCH1* mutations observed in ESCC affect the epidermal growth factor (EGF)-like ligand-binding domain (56%, 30 of 54) and are thought to lead to a loss of function. Inactivating mutations in these regions of the gene have also been observed in cutaneous, lung, head, and neck squamous cell carcinomas[56-58]. Thus, the idea that the same gene can function in completely opposite manners in different cell types is important for understanding cell signaling pathways. In addition to *NOTCH1*, mutations in the *NOTCH2* and *NOTCH3* genes were detected in ESCC[31,32]. Interestingly, Agrawal *et al*[31] identified inactivating mutations of *NOTCH1* in 21% of ESCC but not in EAC, suggesting tumor-suppressive roles of Notch signaling in squamous cell carcinomas. Notch pathway disruption also results from *FBXW7* mutations, which were identified in 5%-17% of ESCC specimens, because FBXW7 forms part of the ubiquitin ligase complex that mediates NOTCH1 degradation[59].

RTK-MAPK-PI3K pathway

KRAS is one of the most frequently mutated oncogenes in human cancer[60]. In ESCC, *KRAS* mutations are generally rare[61], although the incidence of *KRAS* mutations in Chinese patients with ESCC was relatively high, with a mutation rate of 12%[62]. Receptor tyrosine kinases (RTKs) of the EGFR family are involved in development and progression of epithelial tumors and thus represent therapeutic targets for inhibition by tyrosine kinase inhibitors or humanized monoclonal antibodies[63-65]. Upstream RTKs, EGFR, ERBB2, ERBB4, and MET, as well as G-protein-coupled receptors activate phosphoinositide-3-kinase (PI3K) after binding of growth factor ligands[63]. The PI3K pathway plays a key role in regulating multiple cellular events, including cell growth, proliferation, cell cycle progression, and survival[66,67]. *PIK3CA* is the second most commonly mutated gene, occurring frequently (< 20%) in most cancer types[60]. Overexpression of EGFR has been described in ESCC; most ESCC tumors show increased activity in the absence of somatic mutations[68-70]. In addition to *EGFR* amplification, this pathways displayed genetic alterations in 78.6% of cases, including *FGFR1*, *ERBB2*, *RAF1*, *AKT1*, *SOS1*, *SOS2*, and *PIK3CA* mutations and amplifications[33]. Moreover, EGFR transactivation *via* ectodomain shedding of EGFR ligands plays a role in inflammation as well as tumor growth and metastasis[71,72]. A recent report demonstrated that targeting the sheddase activity of ADAM17, which is responsible for the release of multiple EGFR ligands, decreased head and neck squamous cell carcinoma cell viability and motility through blocking of the EGFR pathway[73]. Since RTKs are well-characterized druggable proteins, targeting components in this pathway may represent valuable investigational avenues for clinical trials in patients with ESCCs. Of interest, *KRAS*, a frequently aberrant gene in non-squamous tumors that leads to resistance to PI3K pathway inhibitors, was found to be aberrant significantly less frequent in ESCCs. Recent clinical studies have demonstrated that anti-EGFR monoclonal antibody (cetuximab) in combination with irradiation yielded encouraging survival and local control in ESCC patients[74].

Cell cycle regulation

The cell cycle regulation pathway is one of the most perturbed pathways in ESCC. Mutations have been observed in the cell-cycle regulatory pathway genes *TP53* (88%), *CDKN2A* (8%), and *RB1* (2%)[35]. In addition, ESCC tumors show amplification of *CCND1*, which encodes for cyclin D1, and deletion of *CDKN2A/B*, which encodes for p16 and p14. Cyclin D1 is responsible for inducing the G1/S phase transition and is located at 11q13[31-35]. Gains in the chromosomal region 11q13 are some of the most prominent genetic alterations in squamous cell carcinomas and are associated with poor prognosis and metastasis[28,75,76]. Other G1/S transition control molecules, *CDK4*, *CDK6*, *E2F1*, and *MDM2*, are also amplified in ESCC. The p16 tumor suppressor can inhibit the formation of the CDK4/6 and cyclin D1 complex and plays a role in the oncogene-induced senescence of cells. Gain of *CCND1* and/or loss of *CDK2NA* events occurred in over 70% of ESCC samples[33-35]. Flavopiridol, the first cyclin-dependent kinase inhibitor examined in human clinical trials, was reported to be a targeting drug for ESCC and head and neck squamous cell carcinoma patients[77]. *NFE2L2*, a frequently mutated gene in ESCC, encodes a sequence-specific transcriptional factor that upregulates genes associated with oxidative stress. Activating missense mutations in the *NFE2L2* gene result in accumulation of the NFE2L2 protein and promote aberrant activation of downstream genes that confer resistance to oxidative stress and induce metabolic transformation in cancer cells[78].

Other signaling pathways

Altered genes in the Wnt pathway were also frequently found in ESCC, including mutations in CTNNB1 and SFRP4, and mutations and amplifications of AXIN inhibitors, DAAM2, DVL3, LRP5 and LRP6[34]. In addition, loss of FAT1, by either somatic mutation or deletions, promotes tumorigenesis through activation of Wnt signaling[79].

Dysregulation of proteins involved in chromatin regulation can affect the genome-wide control of

gene expression and play key roles in DNA repair and genome maintenance. Mutations in a number of genes involved in histone modifications have been identified in many cancer types[60]. Inactivating missense mutations in several chromatin-remodeling genes, including *EP300*, *CREBBP*, and *BAP1*, in ESCC samples. Moreover, truncating mutations were observed in the chromatin-remodeling genes *KMT2D*, *KMT2C*, and *KDM6A*[35]. Approximately 30% of ESCC tumors contained at least one chromatin remodeling gene alteration.

Recently, inactivating mutations in the Hippo pathway regulator (*AJUBA*, *FAT1*, *FAT2*, *FAT3*, *and FAT4*) were observed in ESCC[32]. Hippo signaling cross-talks with commonly mutated cancer genes such as *KRAS, PIK3CA, CTNNB1*, or *FBXW7*[80,81].

CONCLUSION

The identification and characterization of molecular alterations in individual cancer patients is a critical step towards the development of more effective personalized therapies. NGS technologies have revolutionized cancer genomics research by providing a comprehensive method of detecting somatic DNA modifications. ESCC is the major histological type of esophageal cancer in East Asian countries and is one of the most aggressive malignant tumors. Recent studies using NGS have revealed that ESCC is characterized by specific somatic DNA modifications such as exonic mutations, copy-number alterations, and genomic rearrangements. The most common mutation in ESCC is TP53. Pathway assessment has shown that somatic aberrations within ESCC genomes are mainly involved in several important pathways, including cell cycle regulation and the Notch, RTK-MAPK-PI3K, and Wnt pathways. We expect that many new discoveries will increase our understanding of the molecular mechanisms of ESCC for targeted therapies.

REFERENCES

1 **Ferlay J**, Shin HR, Bray F, Forman D, Mathers C, Parkin DM. Estimates of worldwide burden of cancer in 2008: GLOBOCAN 2008. *Int J Cancer* 2010; **127**: 2893-2917 [PMID: 21351269 DOI: 10.1002/ijc.25516]

2 **Holmes RS**, Vaughan TL. Epidemiology and pathogenesis of esophageal cancer. *Semin Radiat Oncol* 2007; **17**: 2-9 [PMID: 17185192 DOI: 10.1016/j.semradonc.2006.09.003]

3 **Cook MB**. Non-acid reflux: the missing link between gastric atrophy and esophageal squamous cell carcinoma? *Am J Gastroenterol* 2011; **106**: 1930-1932 [PMID: 22056574 DOI: 10.1038/ajg.2011.288]

4 **Dawsey SM**, Lewin KJ, Liu FS, Wang GQ, Shen Q. Esophageal morphology from Linxian, China. Squamous histologic findings in 754 patients. *Cancer* 1994; **73**: 2027-2037 [PMID: 8156507]

5 **Dawsey SM**, Lewin KJ, Wang GQ, Liu FS, Nieberg RK, Yu Y, Li JY, Blot WJ, Li B, Taylor PR. Squamous esophageal histology and subsequent risk of squamous cell carcinoma of the esophagus. A prospective follow-up study from Linxian, China. *Cancer* 1994; **74**: 1686-1692 [PMID: 8082069]

6 **Zhang Y**. Epidemiology of esophageal cancer. *World J Gastroenterol* 2013; **19**: 5598-5606 [PMID: 24039351 DOI: 10.3748/wjg.v19.i34.5598]

7 **Huang Q**, Fang DC, Yu CG, Zhang J, Chen MH. Barrett's esophagus-related diseases remain uncommon in China. *J Dig Dis* 2011; **12**: 420-427 [PMID: 22118690 DOI: 10.1111/j.1751-2980.2011.00535.x]

8 **Kountourakis P**, Papademetriou K, Ardavanis A, Papamichael D. Barrett's esophagus: treatment or observation of a major precursor factor of esophageal cancer? *J BUON* 2011; **16**: 425-430 [PMID: 22006743]

9 **Hongo M**, Nagasaki Y, Shoji T. Epidemiology of esophageal cancer: Orient to Occident. Effects of chronology, geography and ethnicity. *J Gastroenterol Hepatol* 2009; **24**: 729-735 [PMID: 19646015 DOI: 10.1111/j.1440-1746.2009.05824.x]

10 **Shaheen N**, Ransohoff DF. Gastroesophageal reflux, barrett esophagus, and esophageal cancer: scientific review. *JAMA* 2002; **287**: 1972-1981 [PMID: 11960540]

11 **Dong H**, Wang S. Exploring the cancer genome in the era of next-generation sequencing. *Front Med* 2012; **6**: 48-55 [PMID: 22460448 DOI: 10.1007/s11684-012-0182-x]

12 **Tran B**, Dancey JE, Kamel-Reid S, McPherson JD, Bedard PL, Brown AM, Zhang T, Shaw P, Onetto N, Stein L, Hudson TJ, Neel BG, Siu LL. Cancer genomics: technology, discovery, and translation. *J Clin Oncol* 2012; **30**: 647-660 [PMID: 22271477 DOI: 10.1200/JCO.2011.39.2316]

13 **Suzuki S**, Ono N, Furusawa C, Ying BW, Yomo T. Comparison of sequence reads obtained from three next-generation sequencing platforms. *PLoS One* 2011; **6**: e19534 [PMID: 21611185 DOI: 10.1371/journal.pone.0019534]

14 **Eid J**, Fehr A, Gray J, Luong K, Lyle J, Otto G, Peluso P, Rank D, Baybayan P, Bettman B, Bibillo A, Bjornson K, Chaudhuri B, Christians F, Cicero R, Clark S, Dalal R, Dewinter A, Dixon J, Foquet M, Gaertner A, Hardenbol P, Heiner C, Hester K, Holden D, Kearns G, Kong X, Kuse R, Lacroix Y, Lin S, Lundquist P, Ma C, Marks P, Maxham M, Murphy D, Park I, Pham T, Phillips M, Roy J, Sebra R, Shen G, Sorenson J, Tomaney A, Travers K, Trulson M, Vieceli J, Wegener J, Wu D, Yang A, Zaccarin D, Zhao P, Zhong F, Korlach J, Turner S. Real-time DNA sequencing from single polymerase molecules. *Science* 2009; **323**: 133-138 [PMID: 19023044 DOI: 10.1126/science.1162986]

15 **Ross JS**, Cronin M. Whole cancer genome sequencing by next-generation methods. *Am J Clin Pathol* 2011; **136**: 527-539 [PMID: 21917674 DOI: 10.1309/AJCPR1SVT1VHUGXW]

16 **Wang Q**, Lu Q, Zhao H. A review of study designs and statistical methods for genomic epidemiology studies using next generation sequencing. *Front Genet* 2015; **6**: 149 [PMID: 25941534 DOI: 10.3389/fgene.2015.00149]

17 **Margulies M**, Egholm M, Altman WE, Attiya S, Bader JS, Bemben LA, Berka J, Braverman MS, Chen YJ, Chen Z, Dewell SB, Du L, Fierro JM, Gomes XV, Godwin BC, He W, Helgesen S, Ho CH, Irzyk GP, Jando SC, Alenquer ML, Jarvie TP, Jirage KB, Kim JB, Knight JR, Lanza JR, Leamon JH, Lefkowitz SM, Lei M, Li J, Lohman KL, Lu H, Makhijani VB, McDade KE, McKenna MP, Myers EW, Nickerson E, Nobile JR, Plant R, Puc BP, Ronan MT, Roth GT, Sarkis GJ, Simons JF, Simpson JW, Srinivasan M, Tartaro KR, Tomasz A, Vogt KA, Volkmer GA, Wang SH, Wang Y, Weiner MP, Yu P, Begley RF, Rothberg JM. Genome sequencing in microfabricated high-density picolitre reactors. *Nature* 2005; **437**: 376-380 [PMID: 16056220 DOI: 10.1038/nature03959]

18 **Daniels MG**, Bowman RV, Yang IA, Govindan R, Fong KM. An emerging place for lung cancer genomics in 2013. *J Thorac Dis* 2013; **5** Suppl 5: S491-S497 [PMID: 24163742 DOI: 10.3978/j.issn.2072-1439.2013.10.06]

19 **Pourmand N**, Karhanek M, Persson HH, Webb CD, Lee TH, Zahradníková A, Davis RW. Direct electrical detection of DNA synthesis. *Proc Natl Acad Sci USA* 2006; **103**: 6466-6470 [PMID: 16614066 DOI: 10.1073/pnas.0601184103]

20 **Boland JF**, Chung CC, Roberson D, Mitchell J, Zhang X, Im KM, He J, Chanock SJ, Yeager M, Dean M. The new sequencer on the block: comparison of Life Technology's Proton sequencer to an Illumina HiSeq for whole-exome sequencing. *Hum*

Genet 2013; **132**: 1153-1163 [PMID: 23757002 DOI: 10.1007/s00439-013-1321-4]
21 **Pant S**, Weiner R, Marton MJ. Navigating the rapids: the development of regulated next-generation sequencing-based clinical trial assays and companion diagnostics. *Front Oncol* 2014; **4**: 78 [PMID: 24860780 DOI: 10.3389/fonc.2014.00078]
22 **Quail MA**, Smith M, Coupland P, Otto TD, Harris SR, Connor TR, Bertoni A, Swerdlow HP, Gu Y. A tale of three next generation sequencing platforms: comparison of Ion Torrent, Pacific Biosciences and Illumina MiSeq sequencers. *BMC Genomics* 2012; **13**: 341 [PMID: 22827831 DOI: 10.1186/1471-2164-13-341]
23 **Thomas F**, Desmedt C, Aftimos P, Awada A. Impact of tumor sequencing on the use of anticancer drugs. *Curr Opin Oncol* 2014; **26**: 347-356 [PMID: 24709974 DOI: 10.1097/CCO.0000000000000078]
24 **Jones S**, Anagnostou V, Lytle K, Parpart-Li S, Nesselbush M, Riley DR, Shukla M, Chesnick B, Kadan M, Papp E, Galens KG, Murphy D, Zhang T, Kann L, Sausen M, Angiuoli SV, Diaz LA, Velculescu VE. Personalized genomic analyses for cancer mutation discovery and interpretation. *Sci Transl Med* 2015; **7**: 283ra53 [PMID: 25877891 DOI: 10.1126/scitranslmed.aaa7161]
25 **Wang H**, Nettleton D, Ying K. Copy number variation detection using next generation sequencing read counts. *BMC Bioinformatics* 2014; **15**: 109 [PMID: 24731174 DOI: 10.1186/1471-2105-15-109]
26 **Singh RR**, Patel KP, Routbort MJ, Aldape K, Lu X, Manekia J, Abraham R, Reddy NG, Barkoh BA, Veliyathu J, Medeiros LJ, Luthra R. Clinical massively parallel next-generation sequencing analysis of 409 cancer-related genes for mutations and copy number variations in solid tumours. *Br J Cancer* 2014; **111**: 2014-2023 [PMID: 25314059 DOI: 10.1038/bjc.2014.518]
27 **Nguyen-Dumont T**, Pope BJ, Hammet F, Mahmoodi M, Tsimiklis H, Southey MC, Park DJ. Cross-platform compatibility of Hi-Plex, a streamlined approach for targeted massively parallel sequencing. *Anal Biochem* 2013; **442**: 127-129 [PMID: 23933242 DOI: 10.1016/j.ab.2013.07.046]
28 **Chen J**, Kwong DL, Cao T, Hu Q, Zhang L, Ming X, Chen J, Fu L, Guan X. Esophageal squamous cell carcinoma (ESCC): advance in genomics and molecular genetics. *Dis Esophagus* 2015; **28**: 84-89 [PMID: 23796192 DOI: 10.1111/dote.12088]
29 **Shang L**, Wang M. Molecular alterations and clinical relevance in esophageal squamous cell carcinoma. *Front Med* 2013; **7**: 401-410 [PMID: 24002746 DOI: 10.1007/s11684-013-0286-y]
30 **Zhang WZ**, Chen JZ, Li DR, Chen ZJ, Guo H, Zhuang TT, Li DS, Zhou MZ, Chen CZ. Simultaneous modulated accelerated radiation therapy for esophageal cancer: a feasibility study. *World J Gastroenterol* 2014; **20**: 13973-13980 [PMID: 25320535 DOI: 10.3748/wjg.v20.i38.13973]
31 **Agrawal N**, Jiao Y, Bettegowda C, Hutfless SM, Wang Y, David S, Cheng Y, Twaddell WS, Latt NL, Shin EJ, Wang LD, Wang L, Yang W, Velculescu VE, Vogelstein B, Papadopoulos N, Kinzler KW, Meltzer SJ. Comparative genomic analysis of esophageal adenocarcinoma and squamous cell carcinoma. *Cancer Discov* 2012; **2**: 899-905 [PMID: 22877736 DOI: 10.1158/2159-8290.CD-12-0189]
32 **Gao YB**, Chen ZL, Li JG, Hu XD, Shi XJ, Sun ZM, Zhang F, Zhao ZR, Li ZT, Liu ZY, Zhao YD, Sun J, Zhou CC, Yao R, Wang SY, Wang P, Sun N, Zhang BH, Dong JS, Yu Y, Luo M, Feng XL, Shi SS, Zhou F, Tan FW, Qiu B, Li N, Shao K, Zhang LJ, Zhang LJ, Xue Q, Gao SG, He J. Genetic landscape of esophageal squamous cell carcinoma. *Nat Genet* 2014; **46**: 1097-1102 [PMID: 25151357 DOI: 10.1038/ng.3076]
33 **Lin DC**, Hao JJ, Nagata Y, Xu L, Shang L, Meng X, Sato Y, Okuno Y, Varela AM, Ding LW, Garg M, Liu LZ, Yang H, Yin D, Shi ZZ, Jiang YY, Gu WY, Gong T, Zhang Y, Xu X, Kalid O, Shacham S, Ogawa S, Wang MR, Koeffler HP. Genomic and molecular characterization of esophageal squamous cell carcinoma. *Nat Genet* 2014; **46**: 467-473 [PMID: 24686850 DOI: 10.1038/ng.2935]
34 **Song Y**, Li L, Ou Y, Gao Z, Li E, Li X, Zhang W, Wang J, Xu L, Zhou Y, Ma X, Liu L, Zhao Z, Huang X, Fan J, Dong L, Chen G, Ma L, Yang J, Chen L, He M, Li M, Zhuang X, Huang K, Qiu K, Yin G, Guo G, Feng Q, Chen P, Wu Z, Wu J, Ma L, Zhao J, Luo L, Fu M, Xu B, Chen B, Li Y, Tong T, Wang M, Liu Z, Lin D, Zhang X, Yang H, Wang J, Zhan Q. Identification of genomic alterations in oesophageal squamous cell cancer. *Nature* 2014; **509**: 91-95 [PMID: 24670651 DOI: 10.1038/nature13176]
35 **Zhang L**, Zhou Y, Cheng C, Cui H, Cheng L, Kong P, Wang J, Li Y, Chen W, Song B, Wang F, Jia Z, Li L, Li Y, Yang B, Liu J, Shi R, Bi Y, Zhang Y, Wang J, Zhao Z, Hu X, Yang J, Li H, Gao Z, Chen G, Huang X, Yang X, Wan S, Chen C, Li B, Tan Y, Chen L, He M, Xie S, Li X, Zhuang X, Wang M, Xia Z, Luo L, Ma J, Dong B, Zhao J, Song Y, Ou Y, Li E, Xu L, Wang J, Xi Y, Li G, Xu E, Liang J, Yang X, Guo J, Chen X, Zhang Y, Li Q, Liu L, Li Y, Zhang X, Yang H, Lin D, Cheng X, Guo Y, Wang J, Zhan Q, Cui Y. Genomic analyses reveal mutational signatures and frequently altered genes in esophageal squamous cell carcinoma. *Am J Hum Genet* 2015; **96**: 597-611 [PMID: 25839328 DOI: 10.1016/j.ajhg.2015.02.017]
36 **Dulak AM**, Stojanov P, Peng S, Lawrence MS, Fox C, Stewart C, Bandla S, Imamura Y, Schumacher SE, Shefler E, McKenna A, Carter SL, Cibulskis K, Sivachenko A, Saksena G, Voet D, Ramos AH, Auclair D, Thompson K, Sougnez C, Onofrio RC, Guiducci C, Beroukhim R, Zhou Z, Lin L, Lin J, Reddy R, Chang A, Landrenau R, Pennathur A, Ogino S, Luketich JD, Golub TR, Gabriel SB, Lander ES, Beer DG, Godfrey TE, Getz G, Bass AJ. Exome and whole-genome sequencing of esophageal adenocarcinoma identifies recurrent driver events and mutational complexity. *Nat Genet* 2013; **45**: 478-486 [PMID: 23525077 DOI: 10.1038/ng.2591]
37 **Soussi T**, Wiman KG. TP53: an oncogene in disguise. *Cell Death Differ* 2015; **22**: 1239-1249 [PMID: 26024390 DOI: 10.1038/cdd.2015.53]
38 **Vogelstein B**, Papadopoulos N, Velculescu VE, Zhou S, Diaz LA, Kinzler KW. Cancer genome landscapes. *Science* 2013; **339**: 1546-1558 [PMID: 23539594 DOI: 10.1126/science.1235122]
39 **Vogelstein B**, Lane D, Levine AJ. Surfing the p53 network. *Nature* 2000; **408**: 307-310 [PMID: 11099028 DOI: 10.1038/35042675]
40 **el-Deiry WS**. Regulation of p53 downstream genes. *Semin Cancer Biol* 1998; **8**: 345-357 [PMID: 10101800 DOI: 10.1006/scbi.1998.0097]
41 **Tokino T**, Nakamura Y. The role of p53-target genes in human cancer. *Crit Rev Oncol Hematol* 2000; **33**: 1-6 [PMID: 10714958]
42 **Egashira A**, Morita M, Yoshida R, Saeki H, Oki E, Sadanaga N, Kakeji Y, Tsujitani S, Maehara Y. Loss of p53 in esophageal squamous cell carcinoma and the correlation with survival: analyses of gene mutations, protein expression, and loss of heterozygosity in Japanese patients. *J Surg Oncol* 2011; **104**: 169-175 [PMID: 21462189 DOI: 10.1002/jso.21920]
43 **Mandard AM**, Hainaut P, Hollstein M. Genetic steps in the development of squamous cell carcinoma of the esophagus. *Mutat Res* 2000; **462**: 335-342 [PMID: 10767643]
44 **Makino T**, Yamasaki M, Miyata H, Yoshioka S, Takiguchi S, Fujiwara Y, Nakajima K, Nishida T, Mori M, Doki Y. p53 Mutation status predicts pathological response to chemoradiotherapy in locally advanced esophageal cancer. *Ann Surg Oncol* 2010; **17**: 804-811 [PMID: 19885698 DOI: 10.1245/s10434-009-0786-9]
45 **Schwaederlé M**, Lazar V, Validire P, Hansson J, Lacroix L, Soria JC, Pawitan Y, Kurzrock R. VEGF-A Expression Correlates with TP53 Mutations in Non-Small Cell Lung Cancer: Implications for Antiangiogenesis Therapy. *Cancer Res* 2015; **75**: 1187-1190 [PMID: 25672981 DOI: 10.1158/0008-5472.CAN-14-2305]
46 **Shimada H**, Matsubara H, Shiratori T, Shimizu T, Miyazaki S, Okazumi S, Nabeya Y, Shuto K, Hayashi H, Tanizawa T, Nakatani Y, Nakasa H, Kitada M, Ochiai T. Phase I/II adenoviral p53 gene therapy for chemoradiation resistant advanced esophageal squamous cell carcinoma. *Cancer Sci* 2006; **97**: 554-561 [PMID: 16734736 DOI: 10.1111/j.1349-7006.2006.00206.x]
47 **Nemunaitis J**, Nemunaitis J. Head and neck cancer: response to p53-based therapeutics. *Head Neck* 2011; **33**: 131-134 [PMID: 20222046 DOI: 10.1002/hed.21364]
48 **Irwin MS**, Kaelin WG. p53 family update: p73 and p63 develop

their own identities. *Cell Growth Differ* 2001; **12**: 337-349 [PMID: 11457731]
49 **Orzol P**, Holcakova J, Nekulova M, Nenutil R, Vojtesek B, Coates PJ. The diverse oncogenic and tumour suppressor roles of p63 and p73 in cancer: a review by cancer site. *Histol Histopathol* 2015; **30**: 503-521 [PMID: 25510918]
50 **Thépot A**, Hautefeuille A, Cros MP, Abedi-Ardekani B, Pétré A, Damour O, Krutovskikh V, Hainaut P. Intraepithelial p63-dependent expression of distinct components of cell adhesion complexes in normal esophageal mucosa and squamous cell carcinoma. *Int J Cancer* 2010; **127**: 2051-2062 [PMID: 20127860 DOI: 10.1002/ijc.25221]
51 **Bergholz J**, Xiao ZX. Role of p63 in Development, Tumorigenesis and Cancer Progression. *Cancer Microenviron* 2012; **5**: 311-322 [PMID: 22847008 DOI: 10.1007/s12307-012-0116-9]
52 **Stransky N**, Egloff AM, Tward AD, Kostic AD, Cibulskis K, Sivachenko A, Kryukov GV, Lawrence MS, Sougnez C, McKenna A, Shefler E, Ramos AH, Stojanov P, Carter SL, Voet D, Cortés ML, Auclair D, Berger MF, Saksena G, Guiducci C, Onofrio RC, Parkin M, Romkes M, Weissfeld JL, Seethala RR, Wang L, Rangel-Escareño C, Fernandez-Lopez JC, Hidalgo-Miranda A, Melendez-Zajgla J, Winckler W, Ardlie K, Gabriel SB, Meyerson M, Lander ES, Getz G, Golub TR, Garraway LA, Grandis JR. The mutational landscape of head and neck squamous cell carcinoma. *Science* 2011; **333**: 1157-1160 [PMID: 21798893 DOI: 10.1126/science.1208130]
53 **Bolós V**, Grego-Bessa J, de la Pompa JL. Notch signaling in development and cancer. *Endocr Rev* 2007; **28**: 339-363 [PMID: 17409286 DOI: 10.1210/er.2006-0046]
54 **Strizzi L**, Hardy KM, Seftor EA, Costa FF, Kirschmann DA, Seftor RE, Postovit LM, Hendrix MJ. Development and cancer: at the crossroads of Nodal and Notch signaling. *Cancer Res* 2009; **69**: 7131-7134 [PMID: 19738053 DOI: 10.1158/0008-5472.CAN-09-1199]
55 **Weng AP**, Ferrando AA, Lee W, Morris JP, Silverman LB, Sanchez-Irizarry C, Blacklow SC, Look AT, Aster JC. Activating mutations of NOTCH1 in human T cell acute lymphoblastic leukemia. *Science* 2004; **306**: 269-271 [PMID: 15472075 DOI: 10.1126/science.1102160]
56 **South AP**, Purdie KJ, Watt SA, Haldenby S, den Breems NY, Dimon M, Arron ST, Kluk MJ, Aster JC, McHugh A, Xue DJ, Dayal JH, Robinson KS, Rizvi SM, Proby CM, Harwood CA, Leigh IM. NOTCH1 mutations occur early during cutaneous squamous cell carcinogenesis. *J Invest Dermatol* 2014; **134**: 2630-2638 [PMID: 24662767 DOI: 10.1038/jid.2014.154]
57 **Westhoff B**, Colaluca IN, D'Ario G, Donzelli M, Tosoni D, Volorio S, Pelosi G, Spaggiari L, Mazzarol G, Viale G, Pece S, Di Fiore PP. Alterations of the Notch pathway in lung cancer. *Proc Natl Acad Sci USA* 2009; **106**: 22293-22298 [PMID: 20007775 DOI: 10.1073/pnas.0907781106]
58 **Sun W**, Gaykalova DA, Ochs MF, Mambo E, Arnaoutakis D, Liu Y, Loyo M, Agrawal N, Howard J, Li R, Ahn S, Fertig E, Sidransky D, Houghton J, Buddavarapu K, Sanford T, Choudhary A, Darden W, Adai A, Latham G, Bishop J, Sharma R, Westra WH, Hennessey P, Chung CH, Califano JA. Activation of the NOTCH pathway in head and neck cancer. *Cancer Res* 2014; **74**: 1091-1104 [PMID: 24351288 DOI: 10.1158/0008-5472.CAN-13-1259]
59 **Wang L**, Ye X, Liu Y, Wei W, Wang Z. Aberrant regulation of FBW7 in cancer. *Oncotarget* 2014; **5**: 2000-2015 [PMID: 24899581]
60 **Kandoth C**, McLellan MD, Vandin F, Ye K, Niu B, Lu C, Xie M, Zhang Q, McMichael JF, Wyczalkowski MA, Leiserson MD, Miller CA, Welch JS, Walter MJ, Wendl MC, Ley TJ, Wilson RK, Raphael BJ, Ding L. Mutational landscape and significance across 12 major cancer types. *Nature* 2013; **502**: 333-339 [PMID: 24132290 DOI: 10.1038/nature12634]
61 **Shigaki H**, Baba Y, Watanabe M, Miyake K, Murata A, Iwagami S, Ishimoto T, Iwatsuki M, Yoshida N, Baba H. KRAS and BRAF mutations in 203 esophageal squamous cell carcinomas: pyrosequencing technology and literature review. *Ann Surg Oncol* 2013; **20** Suppl 3: S485-S491 [PMID: 23274581 DOI: 10.1245/s10434-012-2819-z]
62 **Liu QW**, Fu JH, Luo KJ, Yang HX, Wang JY, Hu Y, Yang H, Bella E. Identification of EGFR and KRAS mutations in Chinese patients with esophageal squamous cell carcinoma. *Dis Esophagus* 2011; **24**: 374-380 [PMID: 21615826 DOI: 10.1111/j.1442-2050.2010.01155.x]
63 **Yarden Y**, Sliwkowski MX. Untangling the ErbB signalling network. *Nat Rev Mol Cell Biol* 2001; **2**: 127-137 [PMID: 11252954 DOI: 10.1038/35052073]
64 **Imai K**, Takaoka A. Comparing antibody and small-molecule therapies for cancer. *Nat Rev Cancer* 2006; **6**: 714-727 [PMID: 16929325 DOI: 10.1038/nrc1913]
65 **Wakeling AE**, Guy SP, Woodburn JR, Ashton SE, Curry BJ, Barker AJ, Gibson KH. ZD1839 (Iressa): an orally active inhibitor of epidermal growth factor signaling with potential for cancer therapy. *Cancer Res* 2002; **62**: 5749-5754 [PMID: 12384534]
66 **Samuels Y**, Ericson K. Oncogenic PI3K and its role in cancer. *Curr Opin Oncol* 2006; **18**: 77-82 [PMID: 16357568 DOI: 10.1097/01.cco.0000198021.99347.b9]
67 **Yuan TL**, Cantley LC. PI3K pathway alterations in cancer: variations on a theme. *Oncogene* 2008; **27**: 5497-5510 [PMID: 18794884 DOI: 10.1038/onc.2008.245]
68 **Hanawa M**, Suzuki S, Dobashi Y, Yamane T, Kono K, Enomoto N, Ooi A. EGFR protein overexpression and gene amplification in squamous cell carcinomas of the esophagus. *Int J Cancer* 2006; **118**: 1173-1180 [PMID: 16161046 DOI: 10.1002/ijc.21454]
69 **Kato H**, Arao T, Matsumoto K, Fujita Y, Kimura H, Hayashi H, Nishiki K, Iwama M, Shiraishi O, Yasuda A, Shinkai M, Imano M, Imamoto H, Yasuda T, Okuno K, Shiozaki H, Nishio K. Gene amplification of EGFR, HER2, FGFR2 and MET in esophageal squamous cell carcinoma. *Int J Oncol* 2013; **42**: 1151-1158 [PMID: 23426935 DOI: 10.3892/ijo.2013.1830]
70 **Wang CY**, Deng JY, Cai XW, Fu XL, Li Y, Zhou XY, Wu XH, Hu XC, Fan M, Xiang JQ, Zhang YW, Chen HQ, Perez R, Jiang GL, Zhao KL. High EGFR and low p-Akt expression is associated with better outcome after nimotuzumab-containing treatment in esophageal cancer patients: preliminary clinical result and testable hypothesis. *Oncotarget* 2015; **6**: 18674-18682 [PMID: 26124180 DOI: 10.18632/oncotarget.4367]
71 **Xu P**, Derynck R. Direct activation of TACE-mediated ectodomain shedding by p38 MAP kinase regulates EGF receptor-dependent cell proliferation. *Mol Cell* 2010; **37**: 551-566 [PMID: 20188673 DOI: 10.1016/j.molcel.2010.01.034]
72 **Slomiany BL**, Slomiany A. Role of epidermal growth factor receptor transactivation in the amplification of Helicobacter pylori-elicited induction in gastric mucosal expression of cyclooxygenase-2 and inducible nitric oxide synthase. *OA Inflammation* 2013; **1**: 1-8 [DOI: 10.13172/2052-787X-1-1-412]
73 **Huang Y**, Benaich N, Tape C, Kwok HF, Murphy G. Targeting the sheddase activity of ADAM17 by an anti-ADAM17 antibody D1(A12) inhibits head and neck squamous cell carcinoma cell proliferation and motility via blockage of bradykinin induced HERs transactivation. *Int J Biol Sci* 2014; **10**: 702-714 [PMID: 25013379 DOI: 10.7150/ijbs.9326]
74 **Chen Y**, Wu X, Bu S, He C, Wang W, Liu J, Guo W, Tan B, Wang Y, Wang J. Promising outcomes of definitive chemoradiation and cetuximab for patients with esophageal squamous cell carcinoma. *Cancer Sci* 2012; **103**: 1979-1984 [PMID: 22845557 DOI: 10.1111/j.1349-7006.2012.02393.x]
75 **Lam AK**. Molecular biology of esophageal squamous cell carcinoma. *Crit Rev Oncol Hematol* 2000; **33**: 71-90 [PMID: 10737369]
76 **Okumura H**, Uchikado Y, Setoyama T, Matsumoto M, Owaki T, Ishigami S, Natsugoe S. Biomarkers for predicting the response of esophageal squamous cell carcinoma to neoadjuvant chemoradiation therapy. *Surg Today* 2014; **44**: 421-428 [PMID: 23605218 DOI: 10.1007/s00595-013-0580-y]
77 **Yan W**, Wistuba II, Emmert-Buck MR, Erickson HS. Squamous Cell Carcinoma - Similarities and Differences among Anatomical Sites. *Am J Cancer Res* 2011; **1**: 275-300 [PMID: 21938273]
78 **Shibata T**, Ohta T, Tong KI, Kokubu A, Odogawa R, Tsuta K,

Asamura H, Yamamoto M, Hirohashi S. Cancer related mutations in NRF2 impair its recognition by Keap1-Cul3 E3 ligase and promote malignancy. *Proc Natl Acad Sci USA* 2008; **105**: 13568-13573 [PMID: 18757741 DOI: 10.1073/pnas.0806268105]

79 **Morris LG**, Kaufman AM, Gong Y, Ramaswami D, Walsh LA, Turcan Ş, Eng S, Kannan K, Zou Y, Peng L, Banuchi VE, Paty P, Zeng Z, Vakiani E, Solit D, Singh B, Ganly I, Liau L, Cloughesy TC, Mischel PS, Mellinghoff IK, Chan TA. Recurrent somatic mutation of FAT1 in multiple human cancers leads to aberrant Wnt activation. *Nat Genet* 2013; **45**: 253-261 [PMID: 23354438 DOI: 10.1038/ng.2538]

80 **Mohamed AD**, Tremblay AM, Murray GI, Wackerhage H. The Hippo signal transduction pathway in soft tissue sarcomas. *Biochim Biophys Acta* 2015; **1856**: 121-129 [PMID: 26050962 DOI: 10.1016/j.bbcan.2015.05.006]

81 **Moroishi T**, Hansen CG, Guan KL. The emerging roles of YAP and TAZ in cancer. *Nat Rev Cancer* 2015; **15**: 73-79 [PMID: 25592648 DOI: 10.1038/nrc3876]

P- Reviewer: Chen XL, Komatsu S, Slomiany BL
S- Editor: Gong ZM **L- Editor**: A **E- Editor**: Liu XM

World Journal of Gastroenterology

Submit a Manuscript: http://www.wjgnet.com/esps/
Help Desk: http://www.wjgnet.com/esps/helpdesk.aspx
DOI: 10.3748/wjg.v22.i7.2294

World J Gastroenterol 2016 February 21; 22(7): 2294-2303
ISSN 1007-9327 (print) ISSN 2219-2840 (online)

REVIEW

Role of Tim-3 in hepatitis B virus infection: An overview

Yuan Liu, Li-Fen Gao, Xiao-Hong Liang, Chun-Hong Ma

Yuan Liu, Li-Fen Gao, Xiao-Hong Liang, Chun-Hong Ma, Department of Immunology, Key Laboratory for Experimental, Teratology of Ministry of Education, Shandong Provincial Key Laboratory of Infection and Immunology, Shandong University School of Medicine, Jinan 250012, Shandong Province, China

Author contributions: Liu Y wrote the paper; Gao LF and Liang XH provided helpful discussion and critical draft editing; Ma CH performed the literature review and analysis, drafting, critical revision and editing of the original manuscript; and final approval of the final manuscript.

Supported by the National Natural Science Fund for Outstanding Youth Fund, No. 81425012; National Nature Science Foundation of China, No. 81100203, No. 81371831 and No. 91129704; and Research Fund for the Doctoral Program of Higher Education of China (RFDP), No. 20110131110034.

Conflict-of-interest statement: The authors of this manuscript declare no conflict of interest.

Correspondence to: Chun-Hong Ma, PhD, Professor of Immunology, Key Laboratory for Experimental, Teratology of Ministry of Education, Shandong Provincial Key Laboratory of Infection and Immunology, Shandong University School of Medicine, 44 Wenhua Xi Road, Jinan 250012, Shandong Province, China. machunhong@sdu.edu.cn
Telephone: +86-531-88382038
Fax: +86-531-88382052

Received: August 2, 2015
Peer-review started: August 3, 2015
First decision: September 9, 2013
Revised: October 8, 2015
Accepted: December 19, 2015
Article in press: December 19, 2015
Published online: February 21, 2016

Abstract

Hepatitis B virus (HBV) infection has received increasing public attention. HBV is the prototypical member of hepadnaviruses, which naturally infect only humans and great apes and induce the acute and persistent chronic infection of hepatocytes. A large body of evidence has demonstrated that dysfunction of the host anti-viral immune response is responsible for persistent HBV replication, unresolved inflammation and disease progression. Many regulatory factors are involved in immune dysfunction. Among these, T cell immunoglobulin domain and mucin domain-3 (Tim-3), one of the immune checkpoint proteins, has attracted increasing attention due to its critical role in regulating both adaptive and innate immune cells. In chronic HBV infection, Tim-3 expression is elevated in many types of immune cells, such as T helper cells, cytotoxic T lymphocytes, dendritic cells, macrophages and natural killer cells. Tim-3 over-expression is often accompanied by impaired function of the above-mentioned immunocytes, and Tim-3 inhibition can at least partially rescue impaired immune function and thus promote viral clearance. A better understanding of the regulatory role of Tim-3 in host immunity during HBV infection will shed new light on the mechanisms of HBV-related liver disease and suggest new therapeutic methods for intervention.

Key words: Tim-3; Hepatitis B virus; Inflammation; Immunity; Liver disease

Core tip: Here, we discuss the current knowledge of the interaction between hepatitis B virus (HBV) and host immunity, addressing the important role of T cell immunoglobulin domain and mucin domain-3 (Tim-3) in HBV infection. Tim-3 expression on both adaptive and innate immune cells is elevated in HBV infection. Increasing Tim-3 expression inhibits, and blocking Tim-3 expression rescues, the anti-viral immune

response, indicating that Tim-3 is a potential target for controlling HBV infection. Finally, we describe remaining unsolved problems in this field and analyze the potential of Tim-3 as a novel drug target in the treatment of HBV-related liver diseases.

Liu Y, Gao LF, Liang XH, Ma CH. Role of Tim-3 in hepatitis B virus infection: An overview. *World J Gastroenterol* 2016; 22(7): 2294-2303 Available from: URL: http://www.wjgnet.com/1007-9327/full/v22/i7/2294.htm DOI: http://dx.doi.org/10.3748/wjg.v22.i7.2294

INTRODUCTION

Hepatitis B virus (HBV) infection is a well-known and increasingly severe public health problem worldwide. According to epidemiological data, the number of people with resolved or present HBV infection has reached an alarming 2 billion[1,2]. For most patients with chronic HBV infection, the present drug treatment is incapable of thoroughly eliminating the virus, owing to HBV DNA integration into the host genome and the formation of covalently closed circular DNA structures[3]. Furthermore, many patients are threatened by a lifetime 15%-40% risk of developing HBV-related cirrhosis, liver failure and hepatocellular carcinoma (HCC)[1,2]. The HBV genome contains 3200 bp and forms a relaxed circular, partially double-stranded structure[4]. The HBV genome contains 4 compact overlapping open reading frames encoding different viral proteins: preS/S, preCore/Core, polymerase (pol) and X. Because of multiple alternative start codons, surface proteins exist in 3 forms, termed small, medium and large surface proteins, which are needed for virion assembly. The core protein forms the viral nucleocapsid and has a secreted counterpart termed e antigen. The polymerase is a multi-functional enzyme that serves as a DNA-dependent DNA polymerase, reverse transcriptase and RNase H. *X* is the smallest gene of HBV; this gene is composed of 452 nucleotides and encodes a 17-kDa protein[5]. A large body of evidence has demonstrated that HBV can cooperate with other etiological factors and then trigger tumorigenesis and the development of HCC. Thus, suppression of HBV DNA replication and the clearance of viral products are the main goals of HBV treatment.

Considerable evidence has shown that host immunity is responsible for the control of HBV infection and is the primary determinant of HBV disease progression. Impaired function of adaptive immunocytes, particularly HBV-specific $CD8^+$ T cells, is considered to be the primary cause of widespread viral infection. HBV tends to stimulate an immunosuppressive environment that is beneficial for its survival. For example, HBV infection increases the number of regulatory T cells (Tregs), which repress effector T cell activity[6]. However, impairments in the adaptive immune response cannot explain all events that occur during HBV infection, because various components of the innate immune system also participate in disease progression. Indeed, the activation of dendritic cells (DCs), natural killer cells (NKs) and macrophages during acute infection leads to a bona fide clinical outcome, whereas persistent HBV infection at least partly results from dysregulation of the innate immune response at early stages of infection[7]. Therefore, studying the interaction between HBV and host immunity and uncovering the reason why the immune response is dysregulated in HBV infection are critical.

Innate and adaptive immunocyte activation is regulated by a set of inhibitory surface receptor-ligand pairs, or immune checkpoints. Among these pairs, T cell immunoglobulin domain and mucin domain-3 (Tim-3) and its matched ligand are currently attracting increasing attention because of their demonstrated potential as a target for immunotherapy for infectious diseases and cancers. Although Tim-3 was first identified as a surface molecule specifically expressed on $CD4^+$ T helper 1 (Th1) and $CD8^+$ type 1 (Tc1) cells[8], further studies have revealed that Tim-3 is also expressed on many other cell types undergoing dynamic changes during infection. In the resting state, Tim-3 is expressed on only a very small percentage of $CD4^+$ or $CD8^+$ T cells, and its over-expression may indicate T cell exhaustion and represent a pathological immune state[9]. However, innate immune cells including monocytes, macrophages and DCs show constitutive and high-level Tim-3 expression that can be further elevated in some diseases. Tim-3 is the prototypical member of the Tim family, which includes 8 members (Tim-1- Tim-8) in mice and 3 members in humans (Tim-1, -3, -4). Tim family members share a similar molecular structure consisting of 4 parts: an N-terminal IgV domain, a mucin domain, a transmembrane domain and a cytoplasmic tail[9]. Galectin-9 (Gal-9), a widely expressed S-type lectin, was the first identified ligand for Tim-3. The interaction of Tim-3 with Gal-9 leads to apoptosis of Th1 cells and inhibition of Th1 and Tc1 cell-mediated immunity[10]. Emerging evidence has shown that additional Tim-3 ligands exist, including phosphatidylserine, carbohydrate moieties and the alarmin high-mobility group box 1[11]. Carcinoembryonic antigen cell adhesion molecule 1 (CEACAM1), another membrane molecule that inhibits T cell activation, is a newly identified ligand for Tim-3. Binding of Tim-3 and CEACAM1 appears to be necessary for the T cell inhibiting function of Tim-3, and this interaction has a crucial role in regulating anti-tumour immunity[12]. Thus, the interactions of Tim-3 with its ligands play important roles in different immune-related diseases by regulating both innate and adaptive immunity.

Although Tim-3 has gained public attention as an inhibitory immune regulator, its role in regulating the host immune response is complicated and remains controversial in several fields, particularly in infectious diseases.

This review will briefly describe the function of Tim-3 in regulating immunity, which has become a hot topic of research in recent years. In addition, this review will discuss in detail the important role of Tim-3 in HBV infection, because studies in this field are currently lacking.

TIM-3 AND THE ADAPTIVE IMMUNE RESPONSE IN HBV INFECTION

Tim-3 and effector T cells

T cell exhaustion, which is characterized as low proliferative ability, decreased cytokine production and suppressed cytotoxicity, often occurs in individuals with chronic viral infections including HBV, hepatitis C virus (HCV) and human immunodeficiency virus (HIV). T cell exhaustion has been detected in both animal models and clinical patients. In particular, dysfunction of antigen-specific $CD8^+$ T cells is believed to be one of the most important reasons why viruses such as HBV, HCV and HIV escape from the anti-viral immune response. One of the key characteristics of exhausted T cells is the combined over-expression of several inhibitory surface markers, such as programmed death 1 receptor(PD-1), lymphocyte-activation gene 3 (LAG-3) and Tim-3[13,14]. Although PD-1 has been extensively studied, Tim-3 has attracted increasing attention in recent years. However, the role of Tim-3 in infectious diseases remains unclear.

The identification of Tim-3 as a negative regulator of the anti-viral adaptive immune response was first reported in chronic HIV infection. The numbers of $Tim\text{-}3^+CD8^+$ T and $Tim\text{-}3^+CD4^+$ T cells are increased in patients infected with HIV[15,16], and compared with $Tim\text{-}3^-$ cells, $Tim\text{-}3^+CD4^+$ and $Tim\text{-}3^+CD8^+$ T cells show impaired functions. Furthermore, blocking Tim-3 with a neutralizing antibody rescues the anti-viral immune response to a certain extent[15].

In 2009, our laboratory was the first to demonstrate the crucial role of Tim-3 in inhibiting hepatic $CD8^+$ T cells in HBV infection. In a mouse model with hydrodynamic injection of HBV-bearing plasmids, augmented Tim-3 expression was detected on hepatic $CD8^+$ T cells which displayed decreased interferon (IFN)-γ production. Furthermore, Tim-3 silencing enhanced IFN-γ production and even indirectly affected HBV neutralizing antibody production, suggesting the potential role of Tim-3 in the host antiviral immune response against HBV infection[17].

Two years later, Wu *et al*[18] studied the relationship between Tim-3 expression on peripheral T cell subsets and disease progression in patients with chronic hepatitis B (CHB). They found that Tim-3 expression is increased on $CD4^+$ and $CD8^+$ T cells, and its expression is associated with the severity of CHB. Tim-3 expression may also indicate the severity of liver injury because its expression has been found to be markedly and positively correlated with alanine aminotransferase (ALT), aspartate aminotransferase (AST), the international normalized ratio (INR) and total bilirubin (TB). After control of CHB infection, Tim-3 expression decreases. Moreover, the percentage of $Tim\text{-}3^+$ T cells is negatively correlated with plasma IFN-γ and T-bet mRNA levels, indicating that high levels of Tim-3 expression inhibit T cell activity[18].

In 2012, the same group investigated the immunocompetence of $Tim\text{-}3^+CD8^+$ and $Tim\text{-}3^-CD8^+$ T cells and the effects of Tim-3 expression on lymphocyte proliferation and cytokine secretary capacity. Compared with $Tim\text{-}3^-CD8^+$ cells, $Tim\text{-}3^+CD8^+$ T cells show a lower capacity to proliferate and produce cytokines upon antigen challenge. Interference of the Tim-3 pathway by either anti-Tim-3 antibodies or Tim-3 short hairpin RNAs rescues $CD8^+$ T cell activity, improving their proliferation and enhancing their cytokine secretary capacity, which suggests the potential of Tim-3 to become a new drug target for controlling HBV infection[19].

Similar results have been observed in HCV infection. During chronic HCV infection, Tim-3 expression on $CD4^+$ and $CD8^+$ T cells is elevated, and these $Tim\text{-}3^+$ T cells exhibit a $CD127^{low}CD57^{high}$ and $CD45RA^-CCR^{high}$ phenotypes, indicating the impaired function of these effector cells. Accordingly, blockade of Tim-3 expression enhances cell proliferation and promotes cytokine production[20]. The level of Tim-3 expression on $CD4^+CD25^+$ T cells is negatively correlated with the proliferative capacity of effector T cells, and blocking Tim-3 results in the rapid expansion of these cells[21]. This finding has been further confirmed in studies with HCV vaccination. Upon stimulation with live-attenuated HCV vaccine, effector T cells isolated from patients infected with HCV display a diminished anti-viral response compared to those isolated from healthy individuals. Furthermore, Tim-3 blockade substantially rescues the impaired function of $Tim\text{-}3^+$ T cells, indicating that Tim-3 is responsible for the peripheral tolerance during persistent HCV infection. Of note, the recovery of T cell function after Tim-3 blockade may at least partially result from an enhanced antigen presentation ability of DCs because researchers have also found that Tim-3 may inhibit DC maturation during chronic HCV infection[22].

The co-expression of Tim-3 and other inhibitory regulators such as PD-1 in HBV and HCV infections is also important. Studies have shown that $PD\text{-}1^+$ $Tim\text{-}3^+$ T cells are abundant among the central memory T cell subsets, particularly in the liver, during chronic HCV infection. Moreover, compared to HCV mono-infection, the percentage of $PD\text{-}1^+Tim\text{-}3^+$ T cells is much higher in patients co-infected with HIV and HCV. Co-

expression of PD-1 and Tim-3 on HCV-specific T cells may also reflect liver disease progression. Although the function of PD-1 and Tim-3 co-expression remains unclear, researchers have hypothesized that co-expression of various inhibitors may increase the risk of persistent and refractory virus infection[23].

Although Tim-3 has been well recognized as a marker of T cell exhaustion and a negative regulator of adaptive immunity in chronic virus infection, its roles in acute viral infection and bacterial infection are different. Elevated Tim-3 expression is observed on T cells in the early stage of acute hepatitis B (AHB); however, this elevation is transient and quickly reversed at the convalescence stage. Moreover, unlike CHB, the level of Tim-3 expression is not correlated with either different stages of hepatic injury or serum IFN-γ levels in patients with AHB[19]. In active TB infection, Tim-3 is up-regulated on both $CD4^+$ and $CD8^+$ T cells; however, in contrast to chronic virus infection, Tim-3^+ effector T cells show more active anti-TB responses. One possible explanation for this finding is that Tim-3 is not only a marker of T cell exhaustion but also a marker of T cell differentiation, because CD127 is also expressed on these cells, indicating the complicated roles of Tim-3 in different microenvironments[24]. Similar results have been observed in mice infected with *Listeria monocytogene*s. Tim-3 expression is induced in cytotoxic T cells in infected wild-type mice, and the host exhibits a much stronger immune response compared to that in Tim-3-knockout mice[25]. Because other members in the Tim family may substitute for Tim-3 in Tim-3-deficient mice, the hypothesis that Tim-3 may play an important positive role in the adaptive immune response should be considered.

Tim-3 and Treg/Th17 cells

Tregs, defined as $CD4^+CD25^+FOXP3^+$ regulatory T cells, can repress the functions of other immune cells *via* cell-to-cell contact and secretion of immuno-suppressive cytokines such as transforming growth factor (TGF)-β and interleukin (IL)-10[26]. Th17 cells are a new subtype of $CD4^+$ T cells that secrete the cytokine IL-17[27]. Accumulating data support the negative roles of these 2 cell types in chronic viral infections including HBV. Indeed, the proportion and absolute numbers of both cell types are increased in both peripheral blood mononuclear cells and liver tissues in patients with CHB[28-32]. The number of circulating Th17 cells is also positively associated with the levels of liver injury markers[33]. Moreover, the differentiation pathways of Th17 cells and Tregs are controlled by similar cytokines, and the Treg/Th17 ratio is strongly associated with HBV load. Furthermore, imbalance of the Treg/Th17 ratio is involved in HBV-related diseases and may become a novel drug target in the future[34,35]. HBV has also been reported to enhance the function of Tregs. In particular, co-culture of T cells with HepG2.2.15 cells, a hepatoma cell line stably integrated with the HBV genome, promotes Treg development and induces the expression of Treg-related genes[36].

The Tim-3/Gal-9 interaction is known to be involved in Treg function. Accordingly, blocking the Tim-3-Gal-9 pathway results in an obvious decrease in the suppressive activity of Tregs *in vitro*[37,38]. In mice, Tim-3 is constitutively expressed on natural Treg cells. In contrast, Tim-3 is not expressed on human Treg cells *ex vivo* but is up-regulated after activation. Tim-3^+ Treg cells also display increased expression of other inhibitory receptors including LAG-3, cytotoxic T-lymphocyte antigen 4 (CTLA-4), glucocorticoid-induced TNF receptor and PD-1[37]. In addition, Tim-3 has been identified as a marker of Tregs in tumors[39].

Tim-3 is over-expressed in Tregs in patients chronically infected with HCV. Tim-3^+ Tregs tend to resist apoptotic signals and show a higher capacity to proliferate, leading to Treg accumulation. Moreover, Ji *et al*[40] have reported that HCV infection leads to elevated Gal-9 and TGF-β production in hepatocytes. Co-culture of HCV-infected hepatocytes and $CD4^+$ T cells induces increased Tim-3 expression on $CD4^+$ T cells, and the Tim-3/Gal-9 interaction enhances TGF-β/IL-10 production by $CD4^+$ T cells, which accelerates the differentiation of $CD4^+$ T cells into Tregs[40]. However, the regulatory effects of Tim-3 on Tregs in HBV infection remain to be clarified.

Tim-3 has also been reported to be involved in regulating Th17 cells. Tim-3 appears to suppress the activation and cytokine secretion of Th17 cells, and Tim-3 expression is impaired in many auto-immune diseases such as Guillain-Barré syndrome and psoriasis[41,42]. However, few studies have focused on the expression pattern of Tim-3 on Th17 cells during persistent HBV or HCV infection, which highlights significant gaps in this research field.

In summary, during chronic HBV infection, Tim-3 is induced in adaptive immune cells and represses host anti-viral immunity. Furthermore, blocking Tim-3 seems to be beneficial for controlling viral activity and may become a future therapeutic approach for treating CHB (Figure 1).

TIM-3 AND THE INNATE IMMUNE RESPONSE IN HBV INFECTION

Because of the key role of adaptive immunity, the role of innate immunity in HBV infection has largely been ignored in previous studies. However, increased understanding of pathogen-associated molecular patterns and signaling pathways that control the activation of innate immunity has highlighted the importance of the innate immune system in HBV-related diseases[7]. A large body of evidence has proved that Tim-3 regulates innate immune response. Unlike adaptive T cells, innate immune cells such as

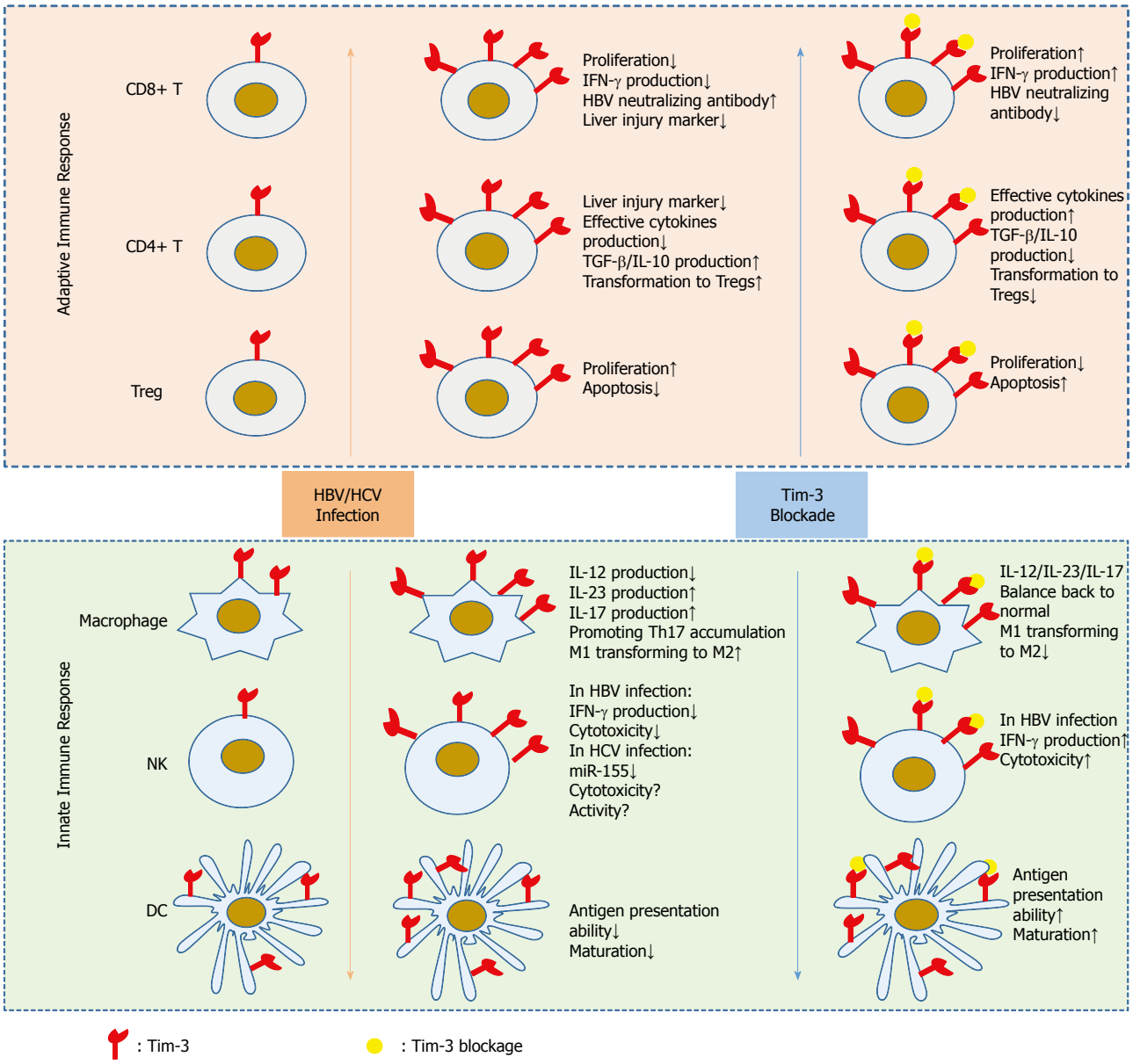


Figure 1 Role of Tim-3 in hepatitis B virus infection. In the resting state, Tim-3 expression on most adaptive and innate immune cells is low, except for dendritic cells and macrophages, which show high and stable Tim-3 expression. However, chronic HBV/HCV infection induces or further enhances Tim-3 expression on those cells and inhibits their anti-viral immune response. Blocking Tim-3 helps rescue the impaired function of these cells and promotes virus clearance, indicating its potential as a drug target for the treatment of virus-related liver diseases. HBV: Hepatitis B virus; HCV: Hepatitis C virus.

monocytes/macrophages, NKs and NK T cells (NKTs) constitutively express Tim-3, which can be further elevated in some diseases including chronic viral infection. Interference of Tim-3 pathway changes the function of innate immune cells[43,44].

Tim-3 and monocytes/macrophages

Monocytes and macrophages are important components of the innate immune system. Upon stimulation with inflammatory signals, monocytes rapidly infiltrate sites of infection and then differentiate into macrophages that kill pathogens. In HBV infection, macrophages are crucial in modulating chronic liver injury and HBV clearance. Macrophages can be classified into 2 types: M1 and M2. M1 cells contribute to HBV clearance, whereas M2 cells impair the host immune response, promote HBV infection and accelerate tumorigenesis[45,46]. In addition, HBV tends to promote M2 polarization[6,7]. Several studies have reported that pathogens can induce Tim-3 overexpression in macrophages and monocytes, which may regulate the activation and cytokine production of these cells[47]. Moreover, lipopolysaccharide, a Toll-like receptor (TLR) ligand, can repress Tim-3 expression on macrophages and at least partially rescue their function, suggesting that TLRs and their downstream pathways may be involved in the regulation of Tim-3 expression[48]. Of note, the role of Tim-3 in natural immunity is much more complex than its role in adaptive immunity. Recently, our laboratory has found

that Tim-3 regulate the polarization of macrophages and accelerate the transformation of M1 macrophages into M2 macrophages, which then suppress the inflammatory response in HCC[44]. Together, these data indicate the complicated role of Tim-3 in regulating innate immune cells.

Tim-3 expression has been reported to be strongly elevated on monocytes in patients with CHB and further elevated in those patients with acute-on-chronic liver failure (ACLF). Tim-3 expression on monocytes is also positively associated with the level of ALT in patients with CHB, indicating its role in disease progression[49]. Concordantly, Tim-3 expression is increased on monocytes from patients with HCV infection and is positively correlated with IL-17 levels in $CD4^+$ T cells, thus promoting Th17 cell accumulation. However, blocking Tim-3 on monocytes restores the balance of IL-12, IL-23 and IL-17 signaling *via* the STAT3 pathway[50,51].

Tim-3 and DCs

As the most potent antigen-presenting cells (APCs), DCs play a critical role in the innate immune response and greatly affect CHB progression. In particular, DCs control HBV recognition *in vivo*. Accumulating evidence has demonstrated that compared to DCs from healthy controls, DCs from patients infected with HBV exhibit impaired function[52,53], yet the reasons for this impairment remain unclear. Researchers have focused on developing a curative DC vaccine that activates the immune response through rescuing the function of DCs to treat HBV.

Constitutive expression of Tim-3 can be observed on DCs and may be positively associated with DC activation. Accordingly, stimulating Tim-3 with Gal-9 promotes TNF-α synthesis and secretion in cultured DCs[54]. Furthermore, using Gal-9 to activate Tim-3 signaling in tumor-bearing animal models can enhance the number of mature DCs and aid in the anti-tumor immune response[55]. However, some researchers have obtained opposing results, suggesting that Tim-3 might also be a negative regulator of DCs[56]. Compared with Tim-3-deficient bone marrow-derived DCs (BMDCs), $Tim\text{-}3^+$ BMDCs exhibit an impaired function phenotype. In particular, the latter cells showed a much poorer capacity to produce cytokines such as IFN-β1, IFN-α and IL-6[57]. The regulatory effect of Tim-3 on DCs is intermittent; many other factors, such as different pathogens and different ligands of Tim-3, can modulate the regulatory effect of Tim-3 on DCs.

In 2014, Ma *et al*[22] first engineered a live-attenuated HCV vaccine to stimulate immune cells. These researchers found that DCs isolated from healthy individuals demonstrated enhanced antigen presentation ability after stimulation, whereas DCs isolated from patients infected with HCV showed diminished responses after stimulation. Furthermore, blocking Tim-3 substantially rescued the function of DCs, indicating that Tim-3 may inhibit DC maturation. The effect of Tim-3 on DCs in HBV infection remains to be clarified; however, these findings observed in HCV infection may provide some clues[22].

Tim-3 and NK/NKTs

Over half of all liver lymphocytes are innate immune lymphocytes, and NKs account for the majority of these cells. Moreover, the percentage of NKs in the liver is approximately five-fold greater than that in spleen or blood, further indicating their important roles in liver diseases. Indeed, accumulating evidence has indicated the critical roles of NK cells in HBV-related diseases. The number and activity of circulating NKs are remarkably decreased in patients with CHB[58-60], and impaired NK function leads to persistent HBV infection and HCC tumorigenesis[61].

Tim-3 also appears to have conflicting effects on NKs. In some reports, the Tim-3-Gal-9 interaction has been shown to enhance IFN-γ production and Tim-3 has been described as a marker of fully mature NKs[62], whereas in other reports, for example, during HIV infection, Tim-3 has been found to inhibit the function of NKs, weakening the NK cell-mediated anti-viral immune response[63,64].

Our group first revealed the regulatory role of Tim-3 expression on NK cells in HBV infection. Increased Tim-3 expression on NK cells was detected in patients with CHB and in HBV-transgenic mice. In addition, Tim-3 expression on NK cells was positively correlated with the serum ALT levels in patients with CHB. Blockade of the Tim-3/Gal-9 interaction induced increased cytotoxicity and up-regulated IFN-γ production in both NKs from patients with CHB and in NK92 cell lines, strongly suggesting that Tim-3 plays negative roles in NKs during HBV[43]. However, the role of Tim-3 appears to be more complicated in HCV infection. Some studies have demonstrated that Tim-3 expression is elevated in NKs and that Tim-3 over-expression tends to result from down-regulated miR-155 in NKs during HCV infection, similarly to chronic HBV infection. Blocking Tim-3 can rescue the function of NKs, whereas reconstituting miR-155 can down-regulate Tim-3[65]. However, a recent study has reported the opposite results. Golden-Mason *et al*[66] have analyzed Tim-3 expression on NKs, demonstrating not only elevated expression of Tim-3 on these cells but also a positive correlation between Tim-3 and NK activity. These $Tim\text{-}3^+$ NKs also showed a stronger response to IFN-α stimulation and exhibited more intense killing activity[66]. Thus, the role of Tim-3 on NKs requires additional studies.

NKT-like cells, defined as $CD3^+CD16^+CD56^+$ cells, refer to a small population of T cells that co-express NK markers, for example, NK1.1 and CD56. If activated, these cells produce abundant pro-inflammatory cytokines and anti-inflammatory cytokines, including IFN-γ, MCP-1, and IL-4. Similarly to its expression on

monocytes and NKs, Tim-3 over-expression is also observed on NKT-like cells and is positively associated with the level of ALT in patients with CHB. Moreover, ACLF may further elevate Tim-3 expression[49].

Above all, elevated Tim-3 expression is observed in innate immunocytes and exerts a suppressive effect on their function during HBV infection (Figure 1). However, the role of Tim-3 in innate immune cells is complicated and requires further study.

TIM-3 POLYMORPHISMS AND HBV INFECTION

In 2012, Chinese scientists examined polymorphisms of the Tim-3 gene in a population of 712 individuals. Among these individuals, 182 represented healthy controls, and the others were patients with HBV-related liver diseases. The *Tim-3*-1541C/T, -1516G/T, -882C/T, -574G/T and +4259T/G polymorphisms were examined and analyzed, and the results showed that allele T-containing genotypes (GT+ TT), allele T and the allele T-containing haplotype (CTCGT) of the -1516G/T polymorphism occur more often in patients with CHB. The allele T-containing genotypes and allele T of -1516G/T are also associated with lymph node metastasis and tumor grade of HCC[67]. Other researchers have identified 2 other single nucleotide polymorphisms, rs31223 and rs246871, which correlate with the progression of HBV-induced liver disease. The minor allele "C" in rs31223 represents an increased chance of sero-clearance of HBsAg, whereas the genotype "CC" in rs246871 suggests an increased likelihood of developing HBV-related HCC. Furthermore, the haplotype blocks CGC* and TGC* strongly correlate with serum HBsAg sero-clearance, whereas CAT*, CGT*, TAC* and TGT* tend to be markedly correlated with HBV-induced HCC[68]. In accordance with their containment functions in negatively regulating immunity, polymorphisms of *Tim-3* and *PD-1* may differentially and interactively predispose individuals to HBV-related liver disease progression. The combined carriage of *PD1*+8669 AA/*TIM3* -1516 GT or TT shows a higher frequency in patients with cirrhosis than in patients without cirrhosis. Patients with HCC also have a higher frequency of this combined carriage than do patients with cirrhosis[69]. Together, these findings suggest that *Tim-3* polymorphisms may affect disease susceptibility and HCC traits associated with HBV infection.

TIM-3 AND HCC

The relationship between tumors and Tim-3 has been studied for many years, and Tim-3 may become the next major target in the treatment of cancer. In several cancer models, including breast cancer, colon cancer and melanoma, Tim-3 is induced in tumor-infiltrated lymphocytes and appears to mark exhausted $CD8^+$ T cells because $PD\text{-}1^+Tim\text{-}3^-CD8^+$ cells remain able to produce bona fide cytokines such as IFN-γ, IL-2 and TNF-α[70]. Here, we focus on the role of Tim-3 in liver cancer and discuss whether it can be regarded as a novel drug target in the treatment of liver cancer.

Chronic HBV infection is one of the most important risk factors for HCC, accounting for up to 54% of HCC cases worldwide, and this percentage is even higher in China. Accumulating evidence has supported the hypothesis that Tim-3 plays roles in HCC, particularly by modulating the tumor microenvironment. For instance, Tim-3 expression is elevated on $CD4^+$ and $CD8^+$ T cells infiltrating tumor tissues compared to those cells infiltrating the adjacent tissues, and $Tim\text{-}3^+$ T cells exhibit a senescence phenotype. Furthermore, the number of $Tim\text{-}3^+$ tumor-infiltrating cells is negatively correlated with patient survival, and Tim-3/Gal-9 signaling induces T cell senescence. Kupffer cells (KCs) have the highest Gal-9 expression, and $Tim\text{-}3^+$ T cells and $Gal\text{-}9^+$ KCs show a co-localization pattern in HCC. Blocking Tim-3/Gal-9 signaling re-activates tumor-infiltrating T cells, which display increased T cell proliferation and enhanced cytokine production. Moreover, in the HCC microenvironment, IFN-γ secreted by tumor-infiltrating T cells stimulates Gal-9 expression on APCs[71].

Tumor-associated macrophages (TAMs) are a major component of the tumor microenvironment and play a critical role in promoting tumor progression. Recently, our laboratory has discovered the important role of Tim-3 in TAM polarization in HCC. Specifically, elevated Tim-3 expression is negatively associated with tumor grade and patient survival. Moreover, ectopic expression of Tim-3 induces altered M2 activation, with a phenotype that promotes tumor development[44]. Our results further emphasize the critical role of Tim-3 as a new component in HCC progression.

In fact, Tim-3 is not expressed only in immune cells; our *in vivo* and *in vitro* experiments both demonstrated that Tim-3 is also expressed in HCC cells and that Tim-3 serves as an oncoprotein in these cells (unpublished data). These new data suggest that Tim-3 may have other functions in addition to immune inhibition.

HCC remains refractory to current chemotherapeutic drugs and generally is associated with a poor prognosis. Moreover, many patients with HCC cannot receive local ablative or surgical interventions because HCC is frequently diagnosed at an advanced stage. Recently, cancer immunotherapy has attracted substantial attention, and immune checkpoint blockade has achieved great success in many clinical trials. Although blockade of CTLA-4 and PD-1 has shown objective responses in several cancers, some issues still remain. For example, some patients have been shown to be non-responders to immunotherapies that target CTLA-4 and PD-1 in various clinical trials[72,73]. In this context, the discovery of novel immune checkpoints is

urgently required, and Tim-3 is a potential candidate. In 2010, Sakuishi reported that combined inhibition of Tim-3 and PD-1 demonstrated greater inhibition of tumor growth than PD-1 inhibition alone. Specifically, half of all tumor-bearing mice treated with combined blockade of Tim-3 and PD-1 displayed complete tumor regression, suggesting the crucial role of Tim-3 in tumor progression[74]. However, additional studies are required to demonstrate the therapeutic role of Tim-3 blockade in HCC treatment.

CONCLUSION

During HBV infection, Tim-3 expression is elevated on both adaptive and innate immune cells. This increased Tim-3 expression inhibits the anti-viral immune response, indicating that Tim-3 is a potential target for controlling HBV infection (Figure 1). However, several critical questions remain to be clarified. For example, how does HBV infection induce ectopic Tim-3 expression in different types of immune cells? What are the downstream signaling pathways promoted by Tim-3 in both adaptive and innate immune cells? Moreover, the regulatory role of Tim-3 in the innate immune response remains unclear, and Tim-3 may possess dual functions depending on the specific context. Therefore, we cannot be blindly optimistic to the potential of Tim-3 as a drug target for controlling chronic infection and HCC.

REFERENCES

1 **Chen CJ**, Yang HI. Natural history of chronic hepatitis B REVEALed. *J Gastroenterol Hepatol* 2011; **26**: 628-638 [PMID: 21323729 DOI: 10.1111/j.1440-1746.2011.06695.x]

2 **Fattovich G**, Olivari N, Pasino M, D'Onofrio M, Martone E, Donato F. Long-term outcome of chronic hepatitis B in Caucasian patients: mortality after 25 years. *Gut* 2008; **57**: 84-90 [PMID: 17715267 DOI: 10.1136/gut.2007.128496]

3 **Sung WK**, Zheng H, Li S, Chen R, Liu X, Li Y, Lee NP, Lee WH, Ariyaratne PN, Tennakoon C, Mulawadi FH, Wong KF, Liu AM, Poon RT, Fan ST, Chan KL, Gong Z, Hu Y, Lin Z, Wang G, Zhang Q, Barber TD, Chou WC, Aggarwal A, Hao K, Zhou W, Zhang C, Hardwick J, Buser C, Xu J, Kan Z, Dai H, Mao M, Reinhard C, Wang J, Luk JM. Genome-wide survey of recurrent HBV integration in hepatocellular carcinoma. *Nat Genet* 2012; **44**: 765-769 [PMID: 22634754 DOI: 10.1038/ng.2295]

4 **Summers J**, Mason WS. Replication of the genome of a hepatitis B--like virus by reverse transcription of an RNA intermediate. *Cell* 1982; **29**: 403-415 [PMID: 6180831 DOI: 10.1016/0092-8674(82)90157-X]

5 **Seeger C**, Mason WS. Hepatitis B virus biology. *Microbiol Mol Biol Rev* 2000; **64**: 51-68 [PMID: 10704474 DOI: 10.1128/MMBR.64.1.51-68.2000]

6 **Loggi E**, Gamal N, Bihl F, Bernardi M, Andreone P. Adaptive response in hepatitis B virus infection. *J Viral Hepat* 2014; **21**: 305-313 [PMID: 24674098 DOI: 10.1111/jvh.12255]

7 **Busca A**, Kumar A. Innate immune responses in hepatitis B virus (HBV) infection. *Virol J* 2014; **11**: 22 [PMID: 24507433 DOI: 10.1186/1743-422X-11-22]

8 **Sabatos CA**, Chakravarti S, Cha E, Schubart A, Sánchez-Fueyo A, Zheng XX, Coyle AJ, Strom TB, Freeman GJ, Kuchroo VK. Interaction of Tim-3 and Tim-3 ligand regulates T helper type 1 responses and induction of peripheral tolerance. *Nat Immunol* 2003; **4**: 1102-1110 [PMID: 14556006 DOI: 10.1038/ni988]

9 **Zhu C**, Anderson AC, Kuchroo VK. TIM-3 and its regulatory role in immune responses. *Curr Top Microbiol Immunol* 2011; **350**: 1-15 [PMID: 20700701 DOI: 10.1007/82_2010_84]

10 **Zhu C**, Anderson AC, Schubart A, Xiong H, Imitola J, Khoury SJ, Zheng XX, Strom TB, Kuchroo VK. The Tim-3 ligand galectin-9 negatively regulates T helper type 1 immunity. *Nat Immunol* 2005; **6**: 1245-1252 [PMID: 16286920 DOI: 10.1038/ni1271]

11 **Dolina JS**, Braciale TJ, Hahn YS. Liver-primed CD8+ T cells suppress antiviral adaptive immunity through galectin-9-independent T-cell immunoglobulin and mucin 3 engagement of high-mobility group box 1 in mice. *Hepatology* 2014; **59**: 1351-1365 [PMID: 24677194 DOI: 10.1002/hep.26938]

12 **Huang YH**, Zhu C, Kondo Y, Anderson AC, Gandhi A, Russell A, Dougan SK, Petersen BS, Melum E, Pertel T, Clayton KL, Raab M, Chen Q, Beauchemin N, Yazaki PJ, Pyzik M, Ostrowski MA, Glickman JN, Rudd CE, Ploegh HL, Franke A, Petsko GA, Kuchroo VK, Blumberg RS. CEACAM1 regulates TIM-3-mediated tolerance and exhaustion. *Nature* 2015; **517**: 386-390 [PMID: 25363763 DOI: 10.1038/nature13848]

13 **Virgin HW**, Wherry EJ, Ahmed R. Redefining chronic viral infection. *Cell* 2009; **138**: 30-50 [PMID: 19596234 DOI: 10.1016/j.cell.2009.06.036]

14 **Wherry EJ**. T cell exhaustion. *Nat Immunol* 2011; **12**: 492-499 [PMID: 21739672 DOI: 10.1038/ni.2035]

15 **Jones RB**, Ndhlovu LC, Barbour JD, Sheth PM, Jha AR, Long BR, Wong JC, Satkunarajah M, Schweneker M, Chapman JM, Gyenes G, Vali B, Hyrcza MD, Yue FY, Kovacs C, Sassi A, Loutfy M, Halpenny R, Persad D, Spotts G, Hecht FM, Chun TW, McCune JM, Kaul R, Rini JM, Nixon DF, Ostrowski MA. Tim-3 expression defines a novel population of dysfunctional T cells with highly elevated frequencies in progressive HIV-1 infection. *J Exp Med* 2008; **205**: 2763-2779 [PMID: 19001139 DOI: 10.1084/jem.20081398]

16 **Kassu A**, Marcus RA, D'Souza MB, Kelly-McKnight EA, Golden-Mason L, Akkina R, Fontenot AP, Wilson CC, Palmer BE. Regulation of virus-specific CD4+ T cell function by multiple costimulatory receptors during chronic HIV infection. *J Immunol* 2010; **185**: 3007-3018 [PMID: 20656923 DOI: 10.4049/jimmunol.1000156]

17 **Ju Y**, Hou N, Zhang XN, Zhao D, Liu Y, Wang JJ, Luan F, Shi W, Zhu FL, Sun WS, Zhang LN, Gao CJ, Gao LF, Liang XH, Ma CH. Blockade of Tim-3 pathway ameliorates interferon-gamma production from hepatic CD8+ T cells in a mouse model of hepatitis B virus infection. *Cell Mol Immunol* 2009; **6**: 35-43 [PMID: 19254478 DOI: 10.1038/cmi.2009.5]

18 **Wu W**, Shi Y, Li S, Zhang Y, Liu Y, Wu Y, Chen Z. Blockade of Tim-3 signaling restores the virus-specific CD8+ T-cell response in patients with chronic hepatitis B. *Eur J Immunol* 2012; **42**: 1180-1191 [PMID: 22539292 DOI: 10.1002/eji.201141852]

19 **Wu W**, Shi Y, Li J, Chen F, Chen Z, Zheng M. Tim-3 expression on peripheral T cell subsets correlates with disease progression in hepatitis B infection. *Virol J* 2011; **8**: 113 [PMID: 21392402 DOI: 10.1186/1743-422X-8-113]

20 **Golden-Mason L**, Palmer BE, Kassam N, Townshend-Bulson L, Livingston S, McMahon BJ, Castelblanco N, Kuchroo V, Gretch DR, Rosen HR. Negative immune regulator Tim-3 is overexpressed on T cells in hepatitis C virus infection and its blockade rescues dysfunctional CD4+ and CD8+ T cells. *J Virol* 2009; **83**: 9122-9130 [PMID: 19587053 DOI: 10.1128/JVI.00639-09]

21 **Moorman JP**, Wang JM, Zhang Y, Ji XJ, Ma CJ, Wu XY, Jia ZS, Wang KS, Yao ZQ. Tim-3 pathway controls regulatory and effector T cell balance during hepatitis C virus infection. *J Immunol* 2012; **189**: 755-766 [PMID: 22706088 DOI: 10.4049/jimmunol.1200162]

22 **Ma CJ**, Ren JP, Li GY, Wu XY, Brockstedt DG, Lauer P, Moorman JP, Yao ZQ. Enhanced virus-specific CD8+ T cell responses by Listeria monocytogenes-infected dendritic cells in the context of Tim-3 blockade. *PLoS One* 2014; **9**: e87821 [PMID: 24498204 DOI: 10.1371/journal.pone.0087821]

23 **McMahan RH**, Golden-Mason L, Nishimura MI, McMahon BJ,

Kemper M, Allen TM, Gretch DR, Rosen HR. Tim-3 expression on PD-1+ HCV-specific human CTLs is associated with viral persistence, and its blockade restores hepatocyte-directed in vitro cytotoxicity. *J Clin Invest* 2010; **120**: 4546-4557 [PMID: 21084749 DOI: 10.1172/JCI43127]

24 **Qiu Y**, Chen J, Liao H, Zhang Y, Wang H, Li S, Luo Y, Fang D, Li G, Zhou B, Shen L, Chen CY, Huang D, Cai J, Cao K, Jiang L, Zeng G, Chen ZW. Tim-3-expressing CD4+ and CD8+ T cells in human tuberculosis (TB) exhibit polarized effector memory phenotypes and stronger anti-TB effector functions. *PLoS Pathog* 2012; **8**: e1002984 [PMID: 23144609 DOI: 10.1371/journal.ppat.1002984]

25 **Gorman JV**, Starbeck-Miller G, Pham NL, Traver GL, Rothman PB, Harty JT, Colgan JD. Tim-3 directly enhances CD8 T cell responses to acute Listeria monocytogenes infection. *J Immunol* 2014; **192**: 3133-3142 [PMID: 24567532 DOI: 10.4049/jimmunol.1302290]

26 **Barbi J**, Pardoll D, Pan F. Treg functional stability and its responsiveness to the microenvironment. *Immunol Rev* 2014; **259**: 115-139 [PMID: 24712463 DOI: 10.1111/imr.12172]

27 **Harrington LE**, Mangan PR, Weaver CT. Expanding the effector CD4 T-cell repertoire: the Th17 lineage. *Curr Opin Immunol* 2006; **18**: 349-356 [PMID: 16616472 DOI: 10.1016/j.coi.2006.03.017]

28 **Yan J**, Liu XL, Xiao G, Li NL, Deng YN, Han LZ, Yin LC, Ling LJ, Liu LX. Prevalence and clinical relevance of T-helper cells, Th17 and Th1, in hepatitis B virus-related hepatocellular carcinoma. *PLoS One* 2014; **9**: e96080 [PMID: 24867183 DOI: 10.1371/journal.pone.0096080]

29 **Wu W**, Li J, Chen F, Zhu H, Peng G, Chen Z. Circulating Th17 cells frequency is associated with the disease progression in HBV infected patients. *J Gastroenterol Hepatol* 2010; **25**: 750-757 [PMID: 20492330 DOI: 10.1111/j.1440-1746.2009.06154.x]

30 **Ge J**, Wang K, Meng QH, Qi ZX, Meng FL, Fan YC. Implication of Th17 and Th1 cells in patients with chronic active hepatitis B. *J Clin Immunol* 2010; **30**: 60-67 [PMID: 19756987 DOI: 10.1007/s10875-009-9328-2]

31 **Sun HQ**, Zhang JY, Zhang H, Zou ZS, Wang FS, Jia JH. Increased Th17 cells contribute to disease progression in patients with HBV-associated liver cirrhosis. *J Viral Hepat* 2012; **19**: 396-403 [PMID: 22571901 DOI: 10.1111/j.1365-2893.2011.01561.x]

32 **Stoop JN**, van der Molen RG, Baan CC, van der Laan LJ, Kuipers EJ, Kusters JG, Janssen HL. Regulatory T cells contribute to the impaired immune response in patients with chronic hepatitis B virus infection. *Hepatology* 2005; **41**: 771-778 [PMID: 15791617 DOI: 10.1002/hep.20649]

33 **Zhang GL**, Xie DY, Ye YN, Lin CS, Zhang XH, Zheng YB, Huang ZL, Peng L, Gao ZL. High level of IL-27 positively correlated with Th17 cells may indicate liver injury in patients infected with HBV. *Liver Int* 2014; **34**: 266-273 [PMID: 23890319 DOI: 10.1111/liv.12268]

34 **Chen Y**, Fang J, Chen X, Pan C, Liu X, Liu J. Effects of the Treg/Th17 cell balance and their associated cytokines in patients with hepatitis B infection. *Exp Ther Med* 2015; **9**: 573-578 [PMID: 25574237 DOI: 10.3892/etm.2014.2104]

35 **Yu XP**, Guo RY, Su ML, Ming DS, Lin CZ, Deng Y, Lin ZZ, Su ZJ. Dynamic Changes of Treg and Th17 Cells and Related Cytokines Closely Correlate With the Virological and Biochemical Response in Chronic Hepatitis B Patients Undergoing Nucleos(t)ide Analogues Treatment. *Hepat Mon* 2013; **13**: e15332 [PMID: 24403916 DOI: 10.5812/hepatmon.15332]

36 **Zhang HH**, Mei MH, Fei R, Liu F, Wang JH, Liao WJ, Qin LL, Wei L, Chen HS. Regulatory T cells in chronic hepatitis B patients affect the immunopathogenesis of hepatocellular carcinoma by suppressing the anti-tumour immune responses. *J Viral Hepat* 2010; **17** Suppl 1: 34-43 [PMID: 20586932 DOI: 10.1111/j.1365-2893.2010.01269.x]

37 **Gautron AS**, Dominguez-Villar M, de Marcken M, Hafler DA. Enhanced suppressor function of TIM-3+ FoxP3+ regulatory T cells. *Eur J Immunol* 2014; **44**: 2703-2711 [PMID: 24838857 DOI: 10.1002/eji.201344392]

38 **Ju Y**, Shang X, Liu Z, Zhang J, Li Y, Shen Y, Liu Y, Liu C, Liu B, Xu L, Wang Y, Zhang B, Zou J. The Tim-3/galectin-9 pathway involves in the homeostasis of hepatic Tregs in a mouse model of concanavalin A-induced hepatitis. *Mol Immunol* 2014; **58**: 85-91 [PMID: 24333756 DOI: 10.1016/j.molimm.2013.11.001]

39 **Gao X**, Zhu Y, Li G, Huang H, Zhang G, Wang F, Sun J, Yang Q, Zhang X, Lu B. TIM-3 expression characterizes regulatory T cells in tumor tissues and is associated with lung cancer progression. *PLoS One* 2012; **7**: e30676 [PMID: 22363469 DOI: 10.1371/journal.pone.0030676]

40 **Ji XJ**, Ma CJ, Wang JM, Wu XY, Niki T, Hirashima M, Moorman JP, Yao ZQ. HCV-infected hepatocytes drive CD4+ CD25+ Foxp3+ regulatory T-cell development through the Tim-3/Gal-9 pathway. *Eur J Immunol* 2013; **43**: 458-467 [PMID: 23161469 DOI: 10.1002/eji.201242768]

41 **Kanai Y**, Satoh T, Igawa K, Yokozeki H. Impaired expression of Tim-3 on Th17 and Th1 cells in psoriasis. *Acta Derm Venereol* 2012; **92**: 367-371 [PMID: 22294262 DOI: 10.2340/00015555-1285]

42 **Liang SL**, Wang WZ, Huang S, Wang XK, Zhang S, Wu Y. Th17 helper cell and T-cell immunoglobulin and mucin domain 3 involvement in Guillain-Barré syndrome. *Immunopharmacol Immunotoxicol* 2012; **34**: 1039-1046 [PMID: 22738814 DOI: 10.3109/08923973.2012.697469]

43 **Ju Y**, Hou N, Meng J, Wang X, Zhang X, Zhao D, Liu Y, Zhu F, Zhang L, Sun W, Liang X, Gao L, Ma C. T cell immunoglobulin- and mucin-domain-containing molecule-3 (Tim-3) mediates natural killer cell suppression in chronic hepatitis B. *J Hepatol* 2010; **52**: 322-329 [PMID: 20133006 DOI: 10.1016/j.jhep.2009.12.005]

44 **Yan W**, Liu X, Ma H, Zhang H, Song X, Gao L, Liang X, Ma C. Tim-3 fosters HCC development by enhancing TGF-β-mediated alternative activation of macrophages. *Gut* 2015; **64**: 1593-1604 [PMID: 25608525 DOI: 10.1136/gutjnl-2014-307671]

45 **Dai K**, Huang L, Sun X, Yang L, Gong Z. Hepatic CD206-positive macrophages express amphiregulin to promote the immunosuppressive activity of regulatory T cells in HBV infection. *J Leukoc Biol* 2015; **98**: 1071-1080 [PMID: 26216935 DOI: 10.1189/jlb.4A0415-152R]

46 **Bility MT**, Cheng L, Zhang Z, Luan Y, Li F, Chi L, Zhang L, Tu Z, Gao Y, Fu Y, Niu J, Wang F, Su L. Hepatitis B virus infection and immunopathogenesis in a humanized mouse model: induction of human-specific liver fibrosis and M2-like macrophages. *PLoS Pathog* 2014; **10**: e1004032 [PMID: 24651854 DOI: 10.1371/journal.ppat.1004032]

47 **Zhang Y**, Ma CJ, Wang JM, Ji XJ, Wu XY, Moorman JP, Yao ZQ. Tim-3 regulates pro- and anti-inflammatory cytokine expression in human CD14+ monocytes. *J Leukoc Biol* 2012; **91**: 189-196 [PMID: 21844165 DOI: 10.1189/jlb.1010591]

48 **Yang X**, Jiang X, Chen G, Xiao Y, Geng S, Kang C, Zhou T, Li Y, Guo X, Xiao H, Hou C, Wang R, Lin Z, Li X, Feng J, Ma Y, Shen B, Li Y, Han G. T cell Ig mucin-3 promotes homeostasis of sepsis by negatively regulating the TLR response. *J Immunol* 2013; **190**: 2068-2079 [PMID: 23365080 DOI: 10.4049/jimmunol.1202661]

49 **Rong YH**, Wan ZH, Song H, Li YL, Zhu B, Zang H, Zhao Y, Liu HL, Zhang AM, Xiao L, Xin SJ, You SL. Tim-3 expression on peripheral monocytes and CD3+CD16/CD56+natural killer-like T cells in patients with chronic hepatitis B. *Tissue Antigens* 2014; **83**: 76-81 [PMID: 24397461 DOI: 10.1111/tan.12278]

50 **Wang JM**, Shi L, Ma CJ, Ji XJ, Ying RS, Wu XY, Wang KS, Li G, Moorman JP, Yao ZQ. Differential regulation of interleukin-12 (IL-12)/IL-23 by Tim-3 drives T(H)17 cell development during hepatitis C virus infection. *J Virol* 2013; **87**: 4372-4383 [PMID: 23388728 DOI: 10.1128/JVI.03376-12]

51 **Zhang Y**, Ma CJ, Wang JM, Ji XJ, Wu XY, Jia ZS, Moorman JP, Yao ZQ. Tim-3 negatively regulates IL-12 expression by monocytes in HCV infection. *PLoS One* 2011; **6**: e19664 [PMID: 21637332 DOI: 10.1371/journal.pone.0019664]

52 **Op den Brouw ML**, Binda RS, van Roosmalen MH, Protzer U, Janssen HL, van der Molen RG, Woltman AM. Hepatitis B virus surface antigen impairs myeloid dendritic cell function: a possible immune escape mechanism of hepatitis B virus. *Immunology* 2009; **126**: 280-289 [PMID: 18624732 DOI: 10.1111/

j.1365-2567.2008.02896.x]
53 **Woltman AM**, Op den Brouw ML, Biesta PJ, Shi CC, Janssen HL. Hepatitis B virus lacks immune activating capacity, but actively inhibits plasmacytoid dendritic cell function. *PLoS One* 2011; **6**: e15324 [PMID: 21246041 DOI: 10.1371/journal.pone.0015324]
54 **Anderson AC**, Anderson DE, Bregoli L, Hastings WD, Kassam N, Lei C, Chandwaskar R, Karman J, Su EW, Hirashima M, Bruce JN, Kane LP, Kuchroo VK, Hafler DA. Promotion of tissue inflammation by the immune receptor Tim-3 expressed on innate immune cells. *Science* 2007; **318**: 1141-1143 [PMID: 18006747 DOI: 10.1126/science.1148536]
55 **Nagahara K**, Arikawa T, Oomizu S, Kontani K, Nobumoto A, Tateno H, Watanabe K, Niki T, Katoh S, Miyake M, Nagahata S, Hirabayashi J, Kuchroo VK, Yamauchi A, Hirashima M. Galectin-9 increases Tim-3+ dendritic cells and CD8+ T cells and enhances antitumor immunity via galectin-9-Tim-3 interactions. *J Immunol* 2008; **181**: 7660-7669 [PMID: 19017954 DOI: 10.4049/jimmunol.181.11.7660]
56 **Patel J**, Bozeman EN, Selvaraj P. Taming dendritic cells with TIM-3: another immunosuppressive strategy used by tumors. *Immunotherapy* 2012; **4**: 1795-1798 [PMID: 23240746 DOI: 10.2217/imt.12.126]
57 **Chiba S**, Baghdadi M, Akiba H, Yoshiyama H, Kinoshita I, Dosaka-Akita H, Fujioka Y, Ohba Y, Gorman JV, Colgan JD, Hirashima M, Uede T, Takaoka A, Yagita H, Jinushi M. Tumor-infiltrating DCs suppress nucleic acid-mediated innate immune responses through interactions between the receptor TIM-3 and the alarmin HMGB1. *Nat Immunol* 2012; **13**: 832-842 [PMID: 22842346 DOI: 10.1038/ni.2376]
58 **Peppa D**, Micco L, Javaid A, Kennedy PT, Schurich A, Dunn C, Pallant C, Ellis G, Khanna P, Dusheiko G, Gilson RJ, Maini MK. Blockade of immunosuppressive cytokines restores NK cell antiviral function in chronic hepatitis B virus infection. *PLoS Pathog* 2010; **6**: e1001227 [PMID: 21187913 DOI: 10.1371/journal.ppat.1001227]
59 **Sun C**, Fu B, Gao Y, Liao X, Sun R, Tian Z, Wei H. TGF-β1 down-regulation of NKG2D/DAP10 and 2B4/SAP expression on human NK cells contributes to HBV persistence. *PLoS Pathog* 2012; **8**: e1002594 [PMID: 22438812 DOI: 10.1371/journal.ppat.1002594]
60 **Li Y**, Wang JJ, Gao S, Liu Q, Bai J, Zhao XQ, Hao YH, Ding HH, Zhu F, Yang DL, Zhao XP. Decreased peripheral natural killer cells activity in the immune activated stage of chronic hepatitis B. *PLoS One* 2014; **9**: e86927 [PMID: 24520324 DOI: 10.1371/journal.pone.0086927]
61 **Sun C**, Sun H, Zhang C, Tian Z. NK cell receptor imbalance and NK cell dysfunction in HBV infection and hepatocellular carcinoma. *Cell Mol Immunol* 2015; **12**: 292-302 [PMID: 25308752 DOI: 10.1038/cmi.2014.91]
62 **Gleason MK**, Lenvik TR, McCullar V, Felices M, O'Brien MS, Cooley SA, Verneris MR, Cichocki F, Holman CJ, Panoskaltsis-Mortari A, Niki T, Hirashima M, Blazar BR, Miller JS. Tim-3 is an inducible human natural killer cell receptor that enhances interferon gamma production in response to galectin-9. *Blood* 2012; **119**: 3064-3072 [PMID: 22323453 DOI: 10.1182/blood-2011-06-360321]
63 **Ndhlovu LC**, Lopez-Vergès S, Barbour JD, Jones RB, Jha AR, Long BR, Schoeffler EC, Fujita T, Nixon DF, Lanier LL. Tim-3 marks human natural killer cell maturation and suppresses cell-mediated cytotoxicity. *Blood* 2012; **119**: 3734-3743 [PMID: 22383801 DOI: 10.1182/blood-2011-11-392951]
64 **Finney CA**, Ayi K, Wasmuth JD, Sheth PM, Kaul R, Loutfy M, Kain KC, Serghides L. HIV infection deregulates Tim-3 expression on innate cells: combination antiretroviral therapy results in partial restoration. *J Acquir Immune Defic Syndr* 2013; **63**: 161-167 [PMID: 23314411 DOI: 10.1097/QAI.0b013e318285cf13]
65 **Cheng YQ**, Ren JP, Zhao J, Wang JM, Zhou Y, Li GY, Moorman JP, Yao ZQ. MicroRNA-155 regulates interferon-γ production in natural killer cells via Tim-3 signalling in chronic hepatitis C virus infection. *Immunology* 2015; **145**: 485-497 [PMID: 25772938 DOI: 10.1111/imm.12463]
66 **Golden-Mason L**, Waasdorp Hurtado CE, Cheng L, Rosen HR. Hepatitis C viral infection is associated with activated cytolytic natural killer cells expressing high levels of T cell immunoglobulin- and mucin-domain-containing molecule-3. *Clin Immunol* 2015; **158**: 114-125 [PMID: 25797693 DOI: 10.1016/j.clim.2015.03.008]
67 **Li Z**, Liu Z, Zhang G, Han Q, Li N, Zhu Q, Lv Y, Chen J, Xing F, Wang Y, Li F. TIM3 gene polymorphisms in patients with chronic hepatitis B virus infection: impact on disease susceptibility and hepatocellular carcinoma traits. *Tissue Antigens* 2012; **80**: 151-157 [PMID: 22587604 DOI: 10.1111/j.1399-0039.2012.01898.x]
68 **Liao J**, Zhang Q, Liao Y, Cai B, Chen J, Li L, Wang L. Association of T-cell immunoglobulin and mucin domain-containing molecule 3 (Tim-3) polymorphisms with susceptibility and disease progression of HBV infection. *PLoS One* 2014; **9**: e98280 [PMID: 24867713 DOI: 10.1371/journal.pone.0098280]
69 **Li Z**, Li N, Zhu Q, Zhang G, Han Q, Zhang P, Xun M, Wang Y, Zeng X, Yang C, Liu Z. Genetic variations of PD1 and TIM3 are differentially and interactively associated with the development of cirrhosis and HCC in patients with chronic HBV infection. *Infect Genet Evol* 2013; **14**: 240-246 [PMID: 23291409 DOI: 10.1016/j.meegid.2012.12.008]
70 **Fourcade J**, Sun Z, Benallaoua M, Guillaume P, Luescher IF, Sander C, Kirkwood JM, Kuchroo V, Zarour HM. Upregulation of Tim-3 and PD-1 expression is associated with tumor antigen-specific CD8+ T cell dysfunction in melanoma patients. *J Exp Med* 2010; **207**: 2175-2186 [PMID: 20819923 DOI: 10.1084/jem.20100637]
71 **Li H**, Wu K, Tao K, Chen L, Zheng Q, Lu X, Liu J, Shi L, Liu C, Wang G, Zou W. Tim-3/galectin-9 signaling pathway mediates T-cell dysfunction and predicts poor prognosis in patients with hepatitis B virus-associated hepatocellular carcinoma. *Hepatology* 2012; **56**: 1342-1351 [PMID: 22505239 DOI: 10.1002/hep.25777]
72 **Hamid O**, Robert C, Daud A, Hodi FS, Hwu WJ, Kefford R, Wolchok JD, Hersey P, Joseph RW, Weber JS, Dronca R, Gangadhar TC, Patnaik A, Zarour H, Joshua AM, Gergich K, Elassaiss-Schaap J, Algazi A, Mateus C, Boasberg P, Tumeh PC, Chmielowski B, Ebbinghaus SW, Li XN, Kang SP, Ribas A. Safety and tumor responses with lambrolizumab (anti-PD-1) in melanoma. *N Engl J Med* 2013; **369**: 134-144 [PMID: 23724846 DOI: 10.1056/NEJMoa1305133]
73 **Melero I**, Lasarte JJ. Genetic basis for clinical response to CTLA-4 blockade. *N Engl J Med* 2015; **372**: 783 [PMID: 25693025 DOI: 10.1056/NEJMc1415938#SA1]
74 **Sakuishi K**, Apetoh L, Sullivan JM, Blazar BR, Kuchroo VK, Anderson AC. Targeting Tim-3 and PD-1 pathways to reverse T cell exhaustion and restore anti-tumor immunity. *J Exp Med* 2010; **207**: 2187-2194 [PMID: 20819927 DOI: 10.1084/jem.20100643]

P- Reviewer: Garcia-Roman R, Villinger F
S- Editor: Gong ZM **L- Editor**: A **E- Editor**: Liu XM

World Journal of Gastroenterology

Submit a Manuscript: http://www.wjgnet.com/esps/
Help Desk: http://www.wjgnet.com/esps/helpdesk.aspx
DOI: 10.3748/wjg.v22.i7.2304

World J Gastroenterol 2016 February 21; 22(7): 2304-2313
ISSN 1007-9327 (print) ISSN 2219-2840 (online)

Chronic pancreatitis: A diagnostic dilemma

Sinead N Duggan, Hazel M Ní Chonchubhair, Oladapo Lawal, Donal B O'Connor, Kevin C Conlon

Sinead N Duggan, Hazel M Ní Chonchubhair, Oladapo Lawal, Donal B O'Connor, Kevin C Conlon, Professorial Surgical Unit, Department of Surgery, Trinity College Dublin, Centre for Pancreatico-Biliary Diseases, Trinity Centre for Health Sciences, Tallaght Hospital, 24 Dublin, Ireland

Author contributions: Duggan SN performed the literature search and review, developed the concepts, and wrote the manuscript; Ní Chonchubhair HM, Lawal O and O'Connor DB participated in drafting the paper and revised the manuscript critically; Conlon KC conceived the idea, participated in drafting the paper, revised the manuscript critically, and is guarantor of the paper.

Supported by an unrestricted educational grant from The Meath Foundation www.meathfoundation.com (in part, to Duggan SN); unrestricted research grant from Mylan (in part, to Ní Chonchubhair HM).

Conflict-of-interest statement: Duggan SN has received fees for serving as a speaker and/or writer for Mylan, Fresenius Kabi, Merck and Nutricia.

Correspondence to: Sinead N Duggan, PhD, Research Fellow, Professorial Surgical Unit, Department of Surgery, Trinity College Dublin, Centre for Pancreatico-Biliary Diseases, Trinity Centre for Health Sciences, Tallaght Hospital, 24 Dublin, Ireland. duggansi@tcd.ie
Telephone: +353-1-8963719
Fax: +353-1-8963788

Received: August 18, 2015
Peer-review started: August 19, 2015
First decision: October 14, 2015
Revised: October 23, 2015
Accepted: December 8, 2015

Article in press: December 8, 2015
Published online: February 21, 2016

Abstract

Typical clinical symptoms of chronic pancreatitis are vague and non-specific and therefore diagnostic tests are required, none of which provide absolute diagnostic certainly, especially in the early stages of disease. Recently-published guidelines bring much needed structure to the diagnostic work-up of patients with suspected chronic pancreatitis. In addition, novel diagnostic modalities bring promise for the future. The assessment and diagnosis of pancreatic exocrine insufficiency remains challenging and this review contests the accepted perspective that steatorrhea only occurs with > 90% destruction of the gland.

Key words: Pancreatitis, chronic; Diagnosis; Exocrine pancreatic insufficiency; Pancreatic enzyme replacement therapy; Malabsorption

Core tip: Chronic pancreatitis presents a diagnostic challenge, especially in early disease. This paper summarizes the available diagnostic modalities as well as the most recently-published diagnostic guidelines. It is widely accepted that the pancreas has excellent exocrine reserve. We review the original studies which have supported this principle and suggest an alternative interpretation of the data.

Duggan SN, Ní Chonchubhair HM, Lawal O, O'Connor DB, Conlon KC. Chronic pancreatitis: A diagnostic dilemma. *World J Gastroenterol* 2016; 22(7): 2304-2313 Available from: URL: http://www.wjgnet.com/1007-9327/full/v22/i7/2304.htm DOI: http://dx.doi.org/10.3748/wjg.v22.i7.2304

INTRODUCTION

Defined as a chronic inflammatory disease of the pancreas characterized by irreversible morphological change and typically causing pain and/or permanent loss of function[1], chronic pancreatitis is beset by destruction of healthy pancreatic tissue and the development of fibrous scar tissue. Gradual loss of exocrine and endocrine function ensues with clinical manifestations such as steatorrhea, abdominal pain, and diabetes. Current treatments can only provide temporary pain relief and manage complications, but are unable to halt or slow the advance of this disease[2]. The overall incidence of chronic pancreatitis in Europe is thought to be about 6-7 per 100000[3], and data suggest increasing incidence[4]. A study from the United Kingdom in the 1990's showed trends of rising incidence based on national statistics for admission[5]. Seven consecutive surveys from Japan have shown a definite increase in the prevalence of alcoholic chronic pancreatitis[6]. There are limited epidemiological data regarding the natural progression to chronic pancreatitis following an episode of acute pancreatitis. A study from North America[7] following over 7000 patients with an admission for acute pancreatitis found subsequent chronic pancreatitis in 12% of patients.

The majority of cases from western countries have been attributed to alcohol excess, although etiologies vary by region and country. The presenting symptom of most patients with chronic pancreatitis is abdominal pain, usually epigastric, dull and constant in nature. It is almost always localized in the upper half of the abdomen, from which it can radiate directly through to the back, or laterally around to the left or right flank. Initially the duration of pain is quite variable, ranging from several hours to several days, but as the disease progresses the attacks become more frequent and pain-free intervals shrink and vanish[8].

In some patients, chronic pancreatitis can be entirely silent, and in presentation patients may present with the sequelae of exocrine or endocrine insufficiency: steatorrhea, weight loss and diabetes. Less common initial presentations include biliary obstruction with recurrent episodes of mild jaundice, cholangitis, or vague attacks of indigestion[9]. Obstruction of the splenic vein by an inflamed tail of the pancreas can lead to left-sided portal hypertension, gastric varices and GI bleeding. Chronic pancreatitis and pancreatic cancer may present in a similar manner, making it difficult to distinguish between them[9].

Although chronic pancreatitis diagnosis may be suspected following presentation with suggestive symptoms, clinical presentation is usually insufficient for a firm diagnosis. In fact, a diagnosis of chronic pancreatitis is difficult to establish, especially in the early stages of disease. Typical symptoms such as weight loss, pain, steatorrhea, and malnutrition are vague and not specific to chronic pancreatitis. Therefore diagnostic tests of pancreatic structure and function are required - none of which provide absolute diagnostic certainly in the early stages.

The aim of this review is to: (1) summarize the available diagnostic modalities and the most recent diagnostic guidelines; (2) review emerging and novel diagnostic techniques; and (3) challenge the *status quo* regarding pancreatic exocrine insufficiency, specifically the accepted concept that steatorrhea occurs only with greater than 90% destruction of the gland.

DIAGNOSTIC TOOLS

There is no universally accepted diagnostic gold standard for chronic pancreatitis. While no one radiological, clinical or endoscopic tool can definitively diagnose this disease; there is an array of diagnostic instruments, which fall into four broad categories.

Histology

Histological features of chronic pancreatitis include parenchymal fibrosis, acinar atrophy, ductal distortion, and intraductal calcification[10,11]. Histological diagnosis is limited by a lack of consensus around grading for chronic pancreatitis[10]. Whilst histology is the most specific method of diagnosis, however it is rarely available and therefore proxy testing is required.

Radiological studies

Computed tomography: Computed tomography (CT) is a widely-used imaging modality and is an objective and reliable method of measuring pancreatic morphology. "Classical" diagnostic chronic pancreatitis findings on CT include atrophy, dilated pancreatic duct and pancreatic calcification (Figure 1A). While diagnosis of early chronic pancreatitis is not reliable, CT should nevertheless be performed in all patients to exclude a mass or gastro-intestinal malignancy[12]. In addition, CT may be used in the assessment of chronic pancreatitis-related complications, such as pseudocysts, pseudoaneurysm, duodenal stenosis and malignancy. CT should be performed using a non-contrast phase to identify calcifications followed by a "pancreas-protocol" contrast phase[13]. Overall, CT remains the best screening tool for detection of chronic pancreatitis and exclusion of other intra-abdominal pathology that may be indistinguishable from chronic pancreatitis based on clinical symptoms.

Magnetic resonance imaging, magnetic resonance cholangiopancreatography, and secretin-enhanced magnetic resonance cholangiopancreatography: Magnetic resonance imaging (MRI) is more sensitive than CT and is emerging as the initial radiological imaging modality of choice for the evaluation of chronic pancreatitis with unequivocal CT scans[12]. Magnetic resonance cholangiopancreatography (MRCP) allows for excellent

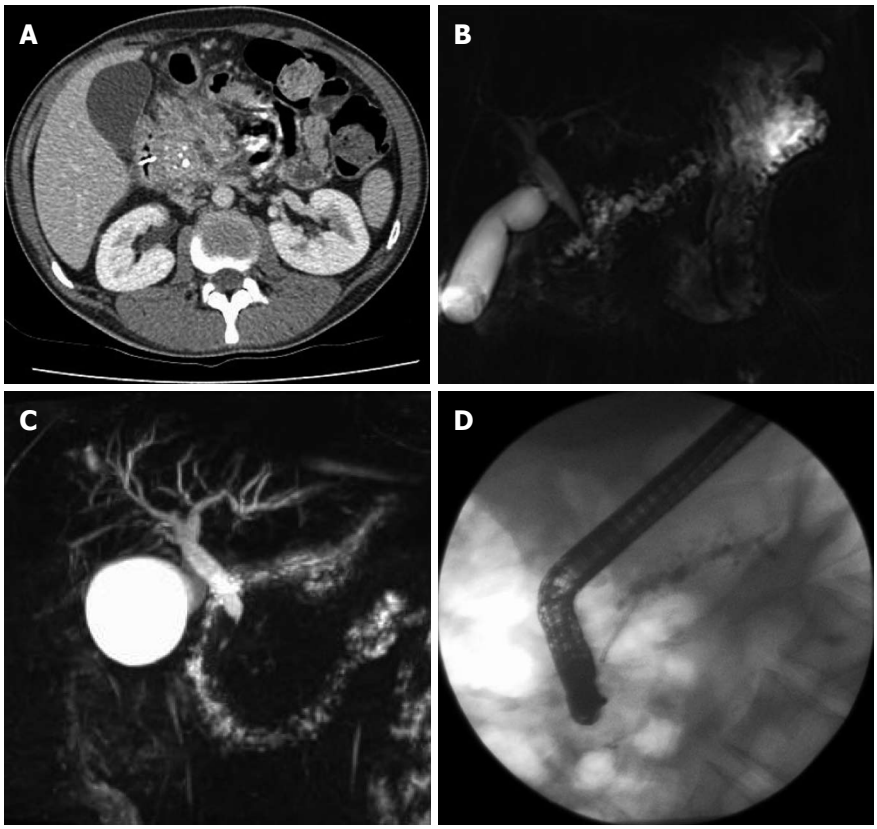


Figure 1 Computed tomography demonstrating enlarged head of pancreas with coarse calcification and a dilated main pancreatic duct (A), magnetic resonance cholangiopancreatography showing a tortuous, dilated pancreatic duct (B), inflammatory stricture of the distal common bile duct (C), endoscopic retrograde cholangiopancreatography showing a stent placed in a dilated pancreatic duct (D).

Table 1 Rosemont criteria for chronic pancreatitis

Parenchymal features	
Major A	Hyperechoic foci with stranding
Major B	Lobularity with honeycombing
Minor	Hyperechoic foci
	Lobularity
	Cysts
	Hyperechoic strands
Ductal features	
Major A	Calculi
Minor	Main pancreatic duct dilation
	Irregular main pancreatic duct contour
	Hyperechoic main pancreatic duct margin
	Dilated side branches

visualization of the pancreatic duct (Figure 1B and C), although visualization of the side branches is not good[14]. However, the addition of secretin enhancement provides even better visualization of abnormalities of the pancreatic duct and its branches, which may not have been evident on routine MRCP. Secretin stimulates fluid secretion in the ductal system, and increases the tonus of the sphincter of Oddi during the first 5 min, hindering the release of fluid through the papilla of Vater[14,15]. Therefore secretin increases the absolute volume of intraductal free water and fills the collapsed branches with fluid, thereby allowing the detection of mild ductal changes in mild disease that are not detectable using routine MRCP[15]. MRCP allows for similar visualization of the pancreatic duct as is afforded during the much more invasive endoscopic retrograde cholangiopancreatography (ERCP). MRCP also facilitates the diagnosis of complications of chronic pancreatitis such as biliary strictures (Figure 1C). Negatives associated with these modalities include limited access to MR time combined with the technical complexity of the test[16].

Endoscopic studies

Endoscopic ultrasound: Endoscopic ultrasound (EUS) provides close-proximity imaging of the entire pancreas and adjacent structures[17]. Although more invasive than CT and MRI/MRCP, EUS is the most sensitive imaging method for detecting minimal structural changes associated with chronic pancreatitis, and therefore is useful in minimal change or non-calcified chronic pancreatitis. The EUS-Rosemount criteria were published in 2009[18] as consensus-based criteria for EUS features of chronic pancreatitis (Table 1). Depending on the number of features identifiable, the following classification is applied: "consistent with chronic pancreatitis", "suggestive of chronic pancreatitis", "indeterminate for chronic pancreatitis", or "normal" (Table 2)[18]. It is still unresolved whether or not "indeterminate for chronic pancreatitis" refers to early-stage chronic pancreatitis[19]. The number of

Table 2 Endoscopic ultrasound diagnosis of chronic pancreatitis on the basis of Rosemont criteria

Consistent with chronic pancreatitis	1 major A feature + ⩾ 3 minor features or 1 major A feature + major B feature or 2 major A features
Suggestive of chronic pancreatitis	1 major A feature + < 3 minor features or 1 major B + ⩾ 3 minor features or ⩾ 5 minor features
Indeterminate for chronic pancreatitis	3 or 4 minor features, no major features or Major B feature alone with < 3 minor features
Normal	⩽ 2 minor features, no major features

EUS criteria for diagnosis varies between institutions, and in additions, intra-observer agreement among endosonographers is low, which is one of its greatest limitations[20]. Conwell and colleagues[17] showed that based on a gold standard pancreatic function test [an endoscopic, secretin-stimulated pancreatic function test (PFT)], 6 or more EUS criteria are needed to establish a definitive diagnosis of chronic pancreatitis. However, less than 6 EUS criteria may be associated with pancreatic secretory dysfunction, and so, EUS may not be an adequate screening modality for early chronic pancreatitis where there is an absence of significant parenchymal and ductal scarring[17].

ERCP: ERCP is considered a sensitive test for the diagnosis of chronic pancreatitis, having the ability to show dilation or stricture of the pancreatic duct and its branches, as well as early features of chronic pancreatitis[21]. ERCP provides therapeutic options, such as dilation, stone extraction, and stenting of the duct (Figure 1D). An additional benefit is the possibility of procuring pancreatic juice during ERCP[22]. The Cambridge criteria developed in 1984[23] allows the classification of chronic pancreatitis based on the number of ductal abnormalities found at ERCP. However, with the widespread availability of other non-invasive imaging modalities, ERCP should not be used for the diagnosis of chronic pancreatitis. ERCP is also limited by the fact that it does not allow evaluation of the pancreatic parenchyma[10]. Axial imaging (CT or MRCP) and EUS have replaced ERCP as a diagnostic tool and the principles of the Cambridge classification can be adapted to CT or MRCP.

Pancreatic function tests

Direct pancreatic function testing: PFTs for the testing of exocrine function may be classified as direct and indirect. Direct tests involve the stimulation of the pancreatic cells using secretagogues (secretin or cholecystokinin, CCK). These tests are invasive (requiring endoscopic procedures), expensive and tend not to be widely done outside of specialist centers. Sensitivity is high for direct PFTs in the diagnosis of late chronic pancreatitis, however lower (70%-75%) for early chronic pancreatitis. Direct PFTs have a long history (from the 1900s), and the original Dreiling tube method[24,25] (popularized at the University of Florida) and newer methods such as the endoscopic PFT (ePFT, developed at the Cleveland Clinic) are considered the nonhistological criterion standards for diagnosis of early chronic pancreatitis[2].

Indirect pancreatic function testing: The invasive nature of direct testing, along with the expense and unavailability of the tests, obligates indirect means of pancreatic function testing. Such tests include fecal elastase, fecal fat measurements and serum trypsinogen. The 3 d fecal fat collection test requires the collection of stool for a 72 h period following the ingestion of a precisely-known quantity of fat (100 g per day). Excretion of more than 7 g of fat in the stool per day is indicative of fat malabsorption, while loss of more than 15 g per day is considered severe fat malabsorption. However the 3 d fecal fat assessment is a cumbersome test for both patients and laboratory personnel, and is not routinely done. In general, indirect tests are moderately sensitive and specific for diagnosing advanced chronic pancreatitis, but less so for early disease. Pancreatic elastase-1 fecal elastase-1 (FE-1) is a human-specific enzyme that is not degraded during intestinal transit, is enriched 5-6 fold in the feces, and is therefore a test of pancreatic exocrine function. Benefits include the fact that patients do not have to consume a specific substrate (*i.e.*, fat) prior to testing, nor must they halt pancreatic enzyme replacement therapy. However whilst FE-1 is an adequate measure of severe exocrine impairment, it is not a good indicator of mild to moderate disease.

DIAGNOSTIC GUIDELINES FOR CHRONIC PANCREATITIS

American pancreatic association guidelines

At the 2011 meeting of the American Pancreatic Association, a chronic pancreatitis conference was held to develop a 3-part set of practice guidelines for this disease. The first part of these guidelines relates to diagnosis and was published in 2014[2]. The document, which represents the first US practice guidelines for chronic pancreatitis, defines the diagnostic evidence for CP as definitive, probable and insufficient based on current knowledge. The guidelines emphasize that without sufficient evidence, patients should not be mislabeled as having chronic pancreatitis, and it is better to err on the side of not labelling the patient with chronic pancreatitis, recommending longitudinal follow-up with serial imaging and physiological testing in unequivocal cases until definitive evidence is present. The guidelines propose a diagnostic algorithm which proceeds from non-invasive to a more invasive approach (Figure 2). Upon confirmed diagnosis, the guidelines recommend a comprehensive etiological/morphological and physiological characterization of chronic pancreatitis, and propose an associated nomenclature. This nomenclature recommends the following structure: chronic (TIGARO etiology-induced)

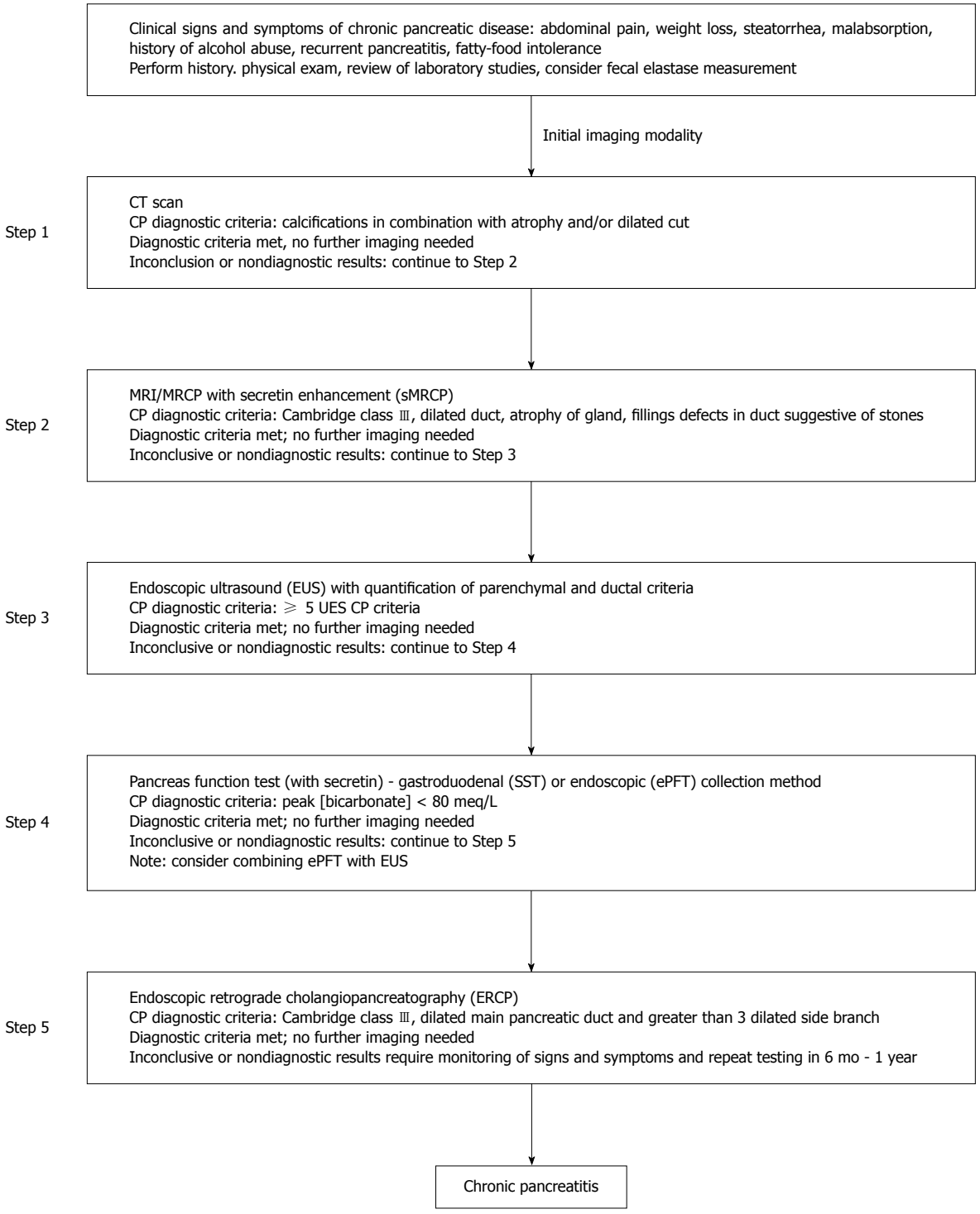


Figure 2 Step-wise algorithm approach to diagnosis of chronic pancreatitis. Step 1: Survey (data review, risk factors, CT-imaging); Step 2: Tomography (pancreas protocol CT scan, MRI/secretin-enhanced magnetic resonance cholangiopancreatography); Step 3: Endocopy [EUS (standard criteria)]; Step 4: Pancreas functioning (Dreiling, ePFT); Step 5: ERCP (with intent for therapeutic intervention). From Conwell *et al*[2]. CT: Computed tomography; MRI: Magnetic resonance imaging; EUS: Endoscopic ultrasound; ERCP: Endoscopic retrograde cholangiopancreatography.

pancreatitis + MANNHEIM/Cambridge imaging grade + physiological stage (where TIGARO is toxic-metabolic, idiopathic, genetic, autoimmune, recurrent and severe acute pancreatitis associated, obstructive). The document details the available evidence for 9 topics, giving Evidence-Based Medicine Statements for each. With the exception of the anatomic pathology topic, each statement is given a recommendation (strong/conditional) and the level of evidence is defined as strong/moderate/low. The proportion of "strong" *vs* "conditional" statements was roughly half and half. The intention of the group is to modify these guidelines with emerging evidence. The APA diagnostic guidelines are summarized in Table 3.

Table 3 A summary of the APA diagnostic guidelines (2014)

Topic		Level
Epidemiology and risk factors	Data on population-based estimates are emerging	C/L
	A small fraction of patients progress from AP to CP	C/M
	Alcohol/smoking are independent risk factors for CP. Both are associated with disease progression and their risks are likely multiplicative	S/H
	The spectrum of risk factors for CP has broadened	C/L
	Genetic discoveries are rapidly uncovering new susceptibility factors. Knowledge of gene-environment interactions may translate into new diagnostic and treatment paradigms	S/M
Pathological Definitions	CP is characterized by atrophy and fibrosis of the exocrine tissue with or without chronic inflammation	-
	Scarring of the parenchyma may be focal, patchy or diffuse	-
	Progressive fibrosis and atrophy may lead to exocrine insufficiency followed by endocrine insufficiency	-
	Autoimmune pancreatitis can mimic pancreas carcinoma	-
Ultrasound and CT	Ultrasound and CT are best for late findings of CP but are limited in the diagnosis of early or mild pancreatitis	C/M
	Intraductal pancreatic calcifications are the most specific and reliable sonographic and CT signs of CP	S/M
	CT is helpful for the diagnosis of complications of CP	S/M
	CT is helpful for the diagnosis of other conditions that can mimic CT	C/L
MRI imaging	Compared with ultrasound and CT, MRI is a more sensitive imaging tool for the diagnosis of CT	C/M
	Ductal abnormalities are very specific and reliable MRI signs of CP	C/L
	Signal intensity changes in the pancreas, seen on MRI, may precede ductal abnormalities and suggest early CT	C/L
	Stimulation of the pancreas using IV secretin may improve the diagnostic accuracy in the detection of ductal and parenchymal abnormalities seen on CT	C/L
Endoscopic ultrasound	The ideal threshold number of EUS criteria necessary to diagnose CP has not been firmly established, but the presence of 5 or more or 2 or less strongly suggests or refutes the diagnosis of CP	S/L
	The EUS features of CP are not necessarily pathologic and may occur as a normal aging, as a normal variant, or due to the nonpathologic asymptomatic fibrosis in the absence of endocrine/exocrine dysfunction	S/L
	The relatively poor IOA for EUS CP features limits the diagnostic accuracy and overall utility of the EUS for diagnosing CP	S/M
ERCP	ERP is rarely used for diagnostic purposes	S/M
	The correlation between the Cambridge criteria and histology is highest in advanced CP	S/M
	Multiple confounders limit the interpretation of ductal changes by Cambridge criteria	S/L
Indirect PFTs	Indirect PFTs generally are sensitive for steatorrhea and useful in quantifying the degree of exocrine insufficiency	C/L
	Indirect PFTs are moderately sensitive and specific for diagnosing advanced CP but are less so for diagnosing early CP	C/S
	The FE-1 assay, polyclonal assay more than monoclonal, can be limited in specificity, especially if the stool has is watery and/or in the presence of small bowel disease	C/L
	Faecal chymotrypsin may be useful in detecting compliance with exogenous pancreatic enzyme supplementation	C/L
	Faecal fat assays are sensitive for steatorrhea but are of limited utility due to the cumbersome nature of patient collection and laboratory handling of samples. In addition, strict adherence to dietary recommendations for several days is required	C/M
Direct PFTs	Direct PFTs have high sensitivity for detecting late CP, but lower sensitivity (70%-75%) for early CP	S/L
	The traditional secretin and CCK PFTs performed with the aortoduodenal tube pancreas fluid collection are highly accurate but require fluoroscopy for confirmation of tube placement and are not widely utilized	S/M
	The ePFT has good correlation with the traditional Dreiling PFT	S/M
Correlation of imaging and function with histology	As structural severity worsens in CP, exocrine function declines	S/M
	Both EUS and PFT results correlate with fibrosis in CP	C/L
	A combined approach (*e.g.*, EUS/ePFT) could improve detection of minimal change CP (MCCP)	C/L

Levels relate to level of recommendation (conditional; strong)/level of evidence (low; moderate; high). AP: Acute pancreatitis; CP: Chronic pancreatitis; CT: Computed tomography; MRI: Magnetic resonance imaging; IV: Intravenous; EUS: Endoscopic ultrasound; IOA: Inter-observer variability; PFTs: Pancreatic function tests; FE-1: Fecal elastase-1; CCK: Cholecystokinin; ePFT: Endoscopic PFT; MCCP: Minimal change chronic pancreatitis.

Other guidelines

Conwell and Bechien[12] devised an algorithm for the stepwise diagnosis of chronic pancreatitis. Using the most commonly available radiological and endoscopic tests, the algorithm progresses from a non-invasive to an invasive approach, starting with a clinical Survey, Tomography (imaging), Endoscopy, and finally Pancreatic function. The authors caution against mislabeling patients with a chronic pancreatitis diagnosis where they instead have a chronic abdominal pain syndrome with a remote history of procedure-induced pancreatitis.

In 2010, the Japanese Clinical Diagnostic criteria for chronic pancreatitis were published[26]. These criteria were intended to diagnose "early chronic pancreatitis", with the intention of preventing intractable disease by allowing early treatment. The diagnostic tool specifies that 2 of the following 4 items be present: repeated upper abdominal pain, abnormal pancreatic enzyme levels (serum or urine), abnormal pancreatic function, and on-going heavy alcohol ingestion (of > 80 g pure ethanol per day). These items, along with characteristic early findings by EUS imaging are said to be indicative of early chronic pancreatitis. According to this tool, more than 2 of the following EUS criteria are required for diagnosis (as well as at least one from the first 4 criteria: (1) lobulating with honeycombing; (2) lobulating without honeycombing; (3) hyperechoic foci with stranding; (4) stranding; (5) cysts; (6) dilated side branches; and (7) hyperechoic MPD margin. More

recently, reports of the Tissue Harmonic Echo mode on EUS have suggested that these modes can reveal details of abnormalities of early chronic pancreatitis and might therefore contribute to a definite diagnosis in the early stages of disease[27].

Guidelines were published in 2010 by the Hepato-Pancreatico-Biliary Association of South Africa, along with the South Africa Gastroenterology Society which summarized the diagnostic tools for chronic pancreatitis[28]. The authors suggested that the choice of imaging study should be based on the available technology, the available skills and the invasive nature of the investigation. They emphasize the limitations of PFTs in the diagnosis of chronic pancreatitis, stressing that PFTs alone do not distinguish chronic pancreatitis from pancreatic exocrine insufficiency (PEI) without chronic pancreatitis.

Emerging diagnostic techniques

Engjom *et al*[16] in 2015 described a technique which evaluated ultrasonography of the fluid in the descending duodenum and Wirsung duct, after secretin stimulation, as a measure of pancreatic fluid flow. Using both chronic pancreatitis and cystic fibrosis patients, those with pancreatic exocrine insufficiency (Defined as FE-1 < 100 μg/g, or peak bicarbonate concentrations of > 80 meq/L) were compared to healthy controls. Ultrasonography gave precise measurement of the volume transported in the descending duodenum and Wirsung duct after secretin stimulation. The authors identified subjects with severe pancreatic output failure compared to healthy controls with good diagnostic accuracy.

EUS elastography is a recently described diagnostic tool which quantitatively analyses pancreatic tissue consistency. This method enables areas with varying elasticities to be differentiated within the pancreas. The principle of elastography is based on the assumption that compression of a target tissue by an echo-endoscopic probe creates a strain that differs according to the hardness and softness of the tissue. During the procedure, elastography is shown in real time as transparent colour images[29]. Quantitative elastography therefore allows for the quantitative assessment of fibrosis in chronic pancreatitis. In quantitative elastography, the tissue stiffness is measured in the targeted area [region of interest (ROI) A] and outside the targeted area in a region representing normal tissue (ROI B). Thereafter, the strain ratio value is calculated as the quotient B/A. One study[30] on EUS elastography in chronic pancreatitis found excellent concordance between EUS criteria for chronic pancreatitis and strain ratio, and reported a diagnostic accuracy of 91%. A further study from this group[31] evaluated whether EUS-elastography can predict PEI in chronic pancreatitis. Comparing elastography to the C-mixed triglyceride breath test, pancreatic strain ratio was higher in those with PEI than with a normal breath test. The probability of PEI was 87% with a strain ratio of greater than 4.5, and could therefore be considered for pancreatic enzyme therapy, even in the absence of any pancreatic function test. The relationship between pancreatic morphology and exocrine function is discussed in the following section.

The occurrence of nutrition deficiencies in chronic pancreatitis has recently been suggested by Lindkvist *et al*[32] as an indicator of PEI. One hundred and fourteen patients had a chronic pancreatitis diagnosis based on endoscopic ultrasonography or MRI, and PEI was investigated by the ^{13}C-mixed triglyceride breath test. They found that serum nutritional markers were able to predict PEI with reasonably high sensitivity and specificity.

RELATIONSHIP BETWEEN PANCREATIC DESTRUCTION AND FAT MALABSORPTION: CHALLENGING THE *STATUS QUO*

PEI is the reduction in pancreatic enzyme activity in the intestinal lumen to a level that is below the threshold required to maintain normal digestion[33]. It is widely believed that the pancreas has a large exocrine reserve. This is largely due to a landmark study published in 1973 by DiMagno *et al*[34], which studied the relationship between malabsorption and lipase secretion of the pancreas. They reported confirmation "that 90% of the gland must be functionally destroyed or obstructed before steatorrhea or creatorrhea occurs", and that "fat digestion is not clearly impaired until lipase outputs are decreased to about 10% of normal". These findings were based on a comparison of 17 patients with chronic pancreatitis and 33 healthy controls. Total enzyme output was measured in response to duodenal perfusion with essential amino acids and intravenous cholecystokinin-pancreaozymin in patients and controls. Values were expressed as a percentage of normal, which was derived from the healthy controls. While the study was well-conducted, the data interpretation was open to debate. The low sample size of 17 was itself not necessarily a limitation, as few subjects are required to show statistical significance where there is a large effect. However, critically, 16/17 patients had poor pancreatic function (defined by lipase secretion < 10% of normal), therefore, the authors can only conclude that those with poor pancreatic secretory function (and presumably severe disease) suffer fat excretion consistent with steatorrhea (> 7 g per day) (Figure 3). The one patient with high percentage lipase secretion happened to have normal fat absorption; however, this sole patient does not provide enough evidence that those with greater than 10% pancreatic function have normal fat excretion. Moreover, among

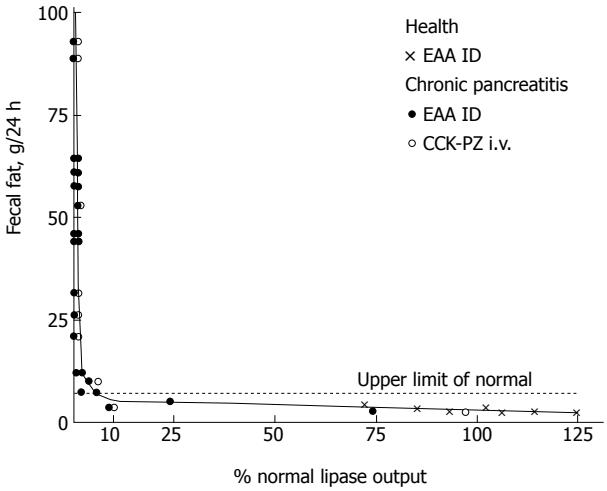


Figure 3 Relation of lipase outputs per 24 h to fecal fat excretion in healthy subjects and patients with chronic pancreatitis. Values above the horizontal dashed line denote steatorrhea (> 7 g per 24 h). The shaded area represents lipase outputs less than 10 percent of normal. From DiMagno *et al*[34]. Copyright © 2015 Massachusetts Medical Society. Reprinted with permission from Massachusetts Medical Society.

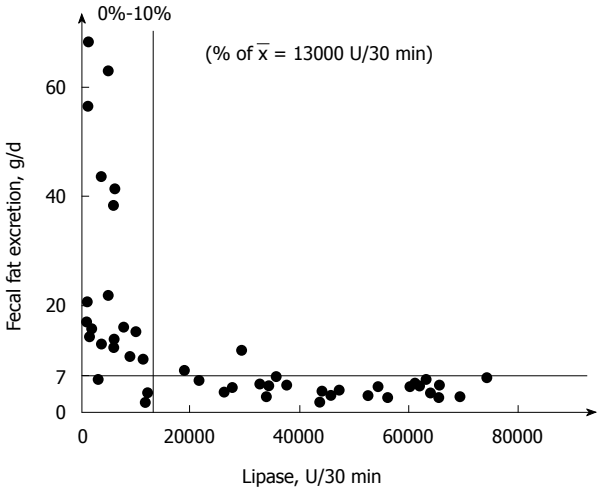


Figure 4 Relation of lipase output to fecal fat excretion in 47 patients with exocrine insufficiency. Reprinted with permission from Lankisch *et al*[35]. Copyright © 2015 Karger Publishers, Basel, Switzerland.

the majority that did have low lipase secretion (< 10% normal lipase output), the range of fat loss per day was extraordinarily broad. Those with severely reduced lipase output secondary to chronic pancreatitis exhibited fat malabsorption ranging from mild (about 10 g/24 h), to very severe (almost 100 g/24 h), an enormously broad range in clinical terms.

Lankisch *et al*[35] conducted a similar, larger study in 1986 (n = 47 chronic pancreatitis patients) with a broader range of exocrine impairment. Figure 4 displays the relationship between lipase output and fecal fat excretion from this study. Consistent with the DiMagno study, most patients with < 10% lipase excretion had steatorrhea. However not all did; three patients with < 10% lipase excretion had normal fecal fat excretion. And similarly consistent with the DiMagno study there was a remarkably broad variation in fecal fat excretion for those with lipase secretion of < 10 g/d, ranging from normal to greater than 60 g/d. Unlike the DiMagno study, the Lankisch study included subjects with moderately impaired lipase secretion, and of those patients, two (7.7%) had steatorrhea. Furthermore, 16.2% and 15.6% of patients with moderate impairment of amylase and trypsin respectively exhibited steatorrhea (graphs not shown). Therefore steatorrhea was not limited to those with extreme pancreatic damage.

Various studies quantifying lipase excretion in chronic pancreatitis have been published. Conwell *et al*[36] investigated peak lipase concentration by means of a CCK-stimulated pancreatic function test in 19 healthy volunteers and 18 patients with chronic pancreatitis. They found that lipase concentration in duodenal fluid was markedly lower in those with chronic pancreatitis compared to controls; 50% in mild chronic pancreatitis, 23% in moderate chronic pancreatitis and 13% in severe chronic pancreatitis. Mizuno *et al*[37] found that lipase output in severe disease and mild disease was 10% and 60% respectively. Ideally, the studies conducted by DiMagno *et al*[34] and Lankisch *et al*[35] should be repeated on an adequately large number of subjects with a broad spectrum of lipase outputs. Intuitively one would expect a linear relationship between lipase secretion and fat excretion. The seemingly non-linear relationship suggested by DiMagno *et al*[34] has been contradicted in an artificial model of steatorrhea (induced by lipase-inhibitor orlistat). They showed a linear and positive correlation between lipolysis inhibition and fat excretion levels[38].

The appearance of sufficient pancreatic exocrine function (until > 90% gland destruction) may be in part due to the secretion and action of gastric lipase. There is an element of compensation by gastric lipase in chronic pancreatitis patients with advancing disease, essentially giving the illusion of adequate pancreatic exocrine function. As well as evidence of increased secretion of gastric lipase in severe (*vs* mild) chronic pancreatitis and healthy controls, gastric lipase is also more stable in severe chronic pancreatitis due to an increase in the specific activity of the enzyme[39]. Gastric lipase has higher specific activity at acidic pH values, and those with chronic pancreatitis are known to have more acidic small intestine contents than normal patients[40] (due to reduced bicarbonate excretion). Hence, this provides another reason to revisit data from early studies examining an association between lipase excretion and fecal fat loss, as the clinically relevant contribution of gastric lipase had not been considered. Indeed the contribution of gastric lipase may partially explain the remarkably broad range of fecal fat excretion in patients with pancreatic lipase excretion of < 10% normal (Figures 3 and 4).

The 1973 paper by DiMagno *et al*[34], along with the

1986 paper by Lankisch *et al*[35], appear to be the only studies that have examined exocrine insufficiency and fat excretion in this manner. The study by DiMagno in particular has greatly influenced understanding and practice in PEI and is widely cited as evidence of adequate exocrine function until almost total pancreatic destruction. Therefore it is possible that PEI is ignored, disregarded and untreated in all but the most morphologically severe patients. In fact, a study from The Netherlands[41] found that a considerable number of patients with PEI were undertreated, with 70% of subjects reporting ongoing steatorrhea-related symptoms, and 42% still suffering weight loss. Undertreatment may result in PEI-related abdominal symptoms, weight loss, muscle depletion, nutrient deficiency[42,43], and deficiency-related complications, including osteoporosis[44,45] and premature fragility fracture[46,47].

CONCLUSION

Diagnosis of chronic pancreatitis continues to present a clinical challenge; however recent guidelines have brought much need direction and clarity to this endeavor. In the assessment of pancreatic exocrine function, the traditional viewpoint that steatorrhea does not occur until > 90% of the pancreas is destroyed is still often quoted and accepted. We have challenged this perspective by revisiting the old data and suggesting an alternative interpretation. The perception that the pancreas has excellent exocrine reserve needs to be reconsidered, not least due to the potential disregard for PEI and resultant delays in establishing appropriate and adequate enzyme therapy that are likely to occur if this unsound principle continues to be accepted.

REFERENCES

1 **Go VL**, Dimagno EP, Gardner JD, Lebenthal E, Reber HA, Scheele GA. The Pancreas: Pathobiology and Disease. 2nd ed. New York: Raven, 1993

2 **Conwell DL**, Lee LS, Yadav D, Longnecker DS, Miller FH, Mortele KJ, Levy MJ, Kwon R, Lieb JG, Stevens T, Toskes PP, Gardner TB, Gelrud A, Wu BU, Forsmark CE, Vege SS. American Pancreatic Association Practice Guidelines in Chronic Pancreatitis: evidence-based report on diagnostic guidelines. *Pancreas* 2014; **43**: 1143-1162 [PMID: 25333398 DOI: 10.1097/MPA.0000000000000237]

3 **Jupp J**, Fine D, Johnson CD. The epidemiology and socioeconomic impact of chronic pancreatitis. *Best Pract Res Clin Gastroenterol* 2010; **24**: 219-231 [PMID: 20510824 DOI: 10.1016/j.bpg.2010.03.005]

4 **Joergensen M**, Brusgaard K, Crüger DG, Gerdes AM, de Muckadell OB. Incidence, prevalence, etiology, and prognosis of first-time chronic pancreatitis in young patients: a nationwide cohort study. *Dig Dis Sci* 2010; **55**: 2988-2998 [PMID: 20108119 DOI: 10.1007/s10620-009-1118-4]

5 **Tinto A**, Lloyd DA, Kang JY, Majeed A, Ellis C, Williamson RC, Maxwell JD. Acute and chronic pancreatitis--diseases on the rise: a study of hospital admissions in England 1989/90-1999/2000. *Aliment Pharmacol Ther* 2002; **16**: 2097-2105 [PMID: 12452943]

6 **Hirota M**, Shimosegawa T, Masamune A, Kikuta K, Kume K, Hamada S, Kanno A, Kimura K, Tsuji I, Kuriyama S. The seventh nationwide epidemiological survey for chronic pancreatitis in Japan: clinical significance of smoking habit in Japanese patients. *Pancreatology* 2014; **14**: 490-496 [PMID: 25224249 DOI: 10.1016/j.pan.2014.08.008]

7 **Yadav D**, O'Connell M, Papachristou GI. Natural history following the first attack of acute pancreatitis. *Am J Gastroenterol* 2012; **107**: 1096-1103 [PMID: 22613906 DOI: 10.1038/ajg.2012.126]

8 **Bouchier IAD**, Hodgson HJF, Keighley MRB. Chronic pancreatitis. Gastroenterology Clinical Science and Practice. 2nd ed. Philadelphia: Saunders, 1993

9 **Giger U**, Stanga Z, DeLegge MH. Management of chronic pancreatitis. *Nutr Clin Pract* 2004; **19**: 37-49 [PMID: 16215095]

10 **Sze KC**, Pirola RC, Apte MV, Wilson JS. Current options for the diagnosis of chronic pancreatitis. *Expert Rev Mol Diagn* 2014; **14**: 199-215 [PMID: 24512138 DOI: 10.1586/14737159.2014.883277]

11 **Klöppel G**, Maillet B. Chronic pancreatitis: evolution of the disease. *Hepatogastroenterology* 1991; **38**: 408-412 [PMID: 1765357]

12 **Conwell DL**, Wu BU. Chronic pancreatitis: making the diagnosis. *Clin Gastroenterol Hepatol* 2012; **10**: 1088-1095 [PMID: 22642958 DOI: 10.1016/j.cgh.2012.05.015]

13 **Hollett MD**, Jorgensen MJ, Jeffrey RB. Quantitative evaluation of pancreatic enhancement during dual-phase helical CT. *Radiology* 1995; **195**: 359-361 [PMID: 7724753 DOI: 10.1148/radiology.195.2.7724753]

14 **Cappeliez O**, Delhaye M, Devière J, Le Moine O, Metens T, Nicaise N, Cremer M, Stryuven J, Matos C. Chronic pancreatitis: evaluation of pancreatic exocrine function with MR pancreatography after secretin stimulation. *Radiology* 2000; **215**: 358-364 [PMID: 10796908 DOI: 10.1148/radiology.215.2.r00ma10358]

15 **Sai JK**, Suyama M, Kubokawa Y, Watanabe S. Diagnosis of mild chronic pancreatitis (Cambridge classification): comparative study using secretin injection-magnetic resonance cholangiopancreatography and endoscopic retrograde pancreatography. *World J Gastroenterol* 2008; **14**: 1218-1221 [PMID: 18300347 DOI: 10.3748/wjg.14.1218]

16 **Engjom T**, Erchinger F, Tjora E, Lærum BN, Georg D, Gilja OH. Diagnostic accuracy of secretin-stimulated ultrasonography of the pancreas assessing exocrine pancreatic failure in cystic fibrosis and chronic pancreatitis. *Scand J Gastroenterol* 2015; **50**: 601-610 [PMID: 25623422 DOI: 10.3109/00365521.2015.1004363]

17 **Conwell DL**, Zuccaro G, Purich E, Fein S, Vargo JJ, Dumot JA, VanLente F, Lopez R, Trolli P. Comparison of endoscopic ultrasound chronic pancreatitis criteria to the endoscopic secretin-stimulated pancreatic function test. *Dig Dis Sci* 2007; **52**: 1206-1210 [PMID: 17387611 DOI: 10.1007/s10620-006-9469-6]

18 **Catalano MF**, Sahai A, Levy M, Romagnuolo J, Wiersema M, Brugge W, Freeman M, Yamao K, Canto M, Hernandez LV. EUS-based criteria for the diagnosis of chronic pancreatitis: the Rosemont classification. *Gastrointest Endosc* 2009; **69**: 1251-1261 [PMID: 19243769 DOI: 10.1016/j.gie.2008.07.043]

19 **Hernandez LV**, Catalano MF. EUS in the diagnosis of early-stage chronic pancreatitis. *Best Pract Res Clin Gastroenterol* 2010; **24**: 243-249 [PMID: 20510826 DOI: 10.1016/j.bpg.2010.03.004]

20 **Wallace MB**, Hawes RH, Durkalski V, Chak A, Mallery S, Catalano MF, Wiersema MJ, Bhutani MS, Ciaccia D, Kochman ML, Gress FG, Van Velse A, Hoffman BJ. The reliability of EUS for the diagnosis of chronic pancreatitis: interobserver agreement among experienced endosonographers. *Gastrointest Endosc* 2001; **53**: 294-299 [PMID: 11231386]

21 **Afghani E**, Sinha A, Singh VK. An overview of the diagnosis and management of nutrition in chronic pancreatitis. *Nutr Clin Pract* 2014; **29**: 295-311 [PMID: 24743046 DOI: 10.1177/0884533614529996]

22 **Löhr JM**. What are the useful biological and functional markers of early-stage chronic pancreatitis? *J Gastroenterol* 2007; **42** Suppl 17: 66-71 [PMID: 17238031 DOI: 10.1007/s00535-006-1932-9]

23 **Sarner M**, Cotton PB. Classification of pancreatitis. *Gut* 1984; **25**: 756-759 [PMID: 6735257]

24 **Dreiling DA**, Hollander F. Studies in pancreatic function; preliminary series of clinical studies with the secretin test. *Gastroenterology* 1948; **11**: 714-729 [PMID: 18100241]

25 **Chowdhury RS**, Forsmark CE. Review article: Pancreatic function testing. *Aliment Pharmacol Ther* 2003; **17**: 733-750 [PMID: 12641496]

26 **Shimosegawa T**, Kataoka K, Kamisawa T, Miyakawa H, Ohara H, Ito T, Naruse S, Sata N, Suda K, Hirota M, Takeyama Y, Shiratori K, Hatori T, Otsuki M, Atomi Y, Sugano K, Tanaka M. The revised Japanese clinical diagnostic criteria for chronic pancreatitis. *J Gastroenterol* 2010; **45**: 584-591 [PMID: 20422433 DOI: 10.1007/s00535-010-0242-4]

27 **Shibukawa G**, Irisawa A. Diagnostic efficacy of a brand-new endoscopic ultrasound processor for early-stage chronic pancreatitis. *Dig Endosc* 2015; **27** Suppl 1: 75 [PMID: 25556722 DOI: 10.1111/den.12430]

28 **Bornman PC**, Botha JF, Ramos JM, Smith MD, Van der Merwe S, Watermeyer GA, Ziady CC. Guideline for the diagnosis and treatment of chronic pancreatitis. *S Afr Med J* 2010; **100**: 845-860 [PMID: 21414280]

29 **Arcidiacono PG**. Endoscopic ultrasound elastography. *Gastroenterol Hepatol* (N Y) 2012; **8**: 48-67 [PMID: 22347834]

30 **Iglesias-Garcia J**, Domínguez-Muñoz JE, Castiñeira-Alvariño M, Luaces-Regueira M, Lariño-Noia J. Quantitative elastography associated with endoscopic ultrasound for the diagnosis of chronic pancreatitis. *Endoscopy* 2013; **45**: 781-788 [PMID: 24019131 DOI: 10.1055/s-0033-1344614]

31 **Dominguez-Muñoz JE**, Iglesias-Garcia J, Castiñeira Alvariño M, Luaces Regueira M, Lariño-Noia J. EUS elastography to predict pancreatic exocrine insufficiency in patients with chronic pancreatitis. *Gastrointest Endosc* 2015; **81**: 136-142 [PMID: 25088920 DOI: 10.1016/j.gie.2014.06.040]

32 **Lindkvist B**, Domínguez-Muñoz JE, Luaces-Regueira M, Castiñeiras-Alvariño M, Nieto-Garcia L, Iglesias-Garcia J. Serum nutritional markers for prediction of pancreatic exocrine insufficiency in chronic pancreatitis. *Pancreatology* 2012; **12**: 305-310 [PMID: 22898630 DOI: 10.1016/j.pan.2012.04.006]

33 **Lindkvist B**. Diagnosis and treatment of pancreatic exocrine insufficiency. *World J Gastroenterol* 2013; **19**: 7258-7266 [PMID: 24259956 DOI: 10.3748/wjg.v19.i42.7258]

34 **DiMagno EP**, Go VL, Summerskill WH. Relations between pancreatic enzyme ouputs and malabsorption in severe pancreatic insufficiency. *N Engl J Med* 1973; **288**: 813-815 [PMID: 4693931 DOI: 10.1056/NEJM197304192881603]

35 **Lankisch PG**, Lembcke B, Wemken G, Creutzfeldt W. Functional reserve capacity of the exocrine pancreas. *Digestion* 1986; **35**: 175-181 [PMID: 3781113]

36 **Conwell DL**, Zuccaro G, Morrow JB, Van Lente F, Obuchowski N, Vargo JJ, Dumot JA, Trolli P, Shay SS. Cholecystokinin-stimulated peak lipase concentration in duodenal drainage fluid: a new pancreatic function test. *Am J Gastroenterol* 2002; **97**: 1392-1397 [PMID: 12094856 DOI: 10.1111/j.1572-0241.2002.05675.x]

37 **Mizuno R**, Hayakawa T, Noda A. Elastase secretion in pancreatic disease. *Am J Gastroenterol* 1985; **80**: 113-117 [PMID: 3844284]

38 **Carrière F**, Renou C, Ransac S, Lopez V, De Caro J, Ferrato F, De Caro A, Fleury A, Sanwald-Ducray P, Lengsfeld H, Beglinger C, Hadvary P, Verger R, Laugier R. Inhibition of gastrointestinal lipolysis by Orlistat during digestion of test meals in healthy volunteers. *Am J Physiol Gastrointest Liver Physiol* 2001; **281**: G16-G28 [PMID: 11408251]

39 **Carrière F**, Grandval P, Renou C, Palomba A, Priéri F, Giallo J, Henniges F, Sander-Struckmeier S, Laugier R. Quantitative study of digestive enzyme secretion and gastrointestinal lipolysis in chronic pancreatitis. *Clin Gastroenterol Hepatol* 2005; **3**: 28-38 [PMID: 15645402]

40 **Keller J**, Layer P. Human pancreatic exocrine response to nutrients in health and disease. *Gut* 2005; **54** Suppl 6: vi1-v28 [PMID: 15951527 DOI: 10.1136/gut.2005.065946]

41 **Sikkens EC**, Cahen DL, van Eijck C, Kuipers EJ, Bruno MJ. Patients with exocrine insufficiency due to chronic pancreatitis are undertreated: a Dutch national survey. *Pancreatology* 2012; **12**: 71-73 [PMID: 22487479 DOI: 10.1016/j.pan.2011.12.010]

42 **Sikkens EC**, Cahen DL, Koch AD, Braat H, Poley JW, Kuipers EJ, Bruno MJ. The prevalence of fat-soluble vitamin deficiencies and a decreased bone mass in patients with chronic pancreatitis. *Pancreatology* 2013; **13**: 238-242 [PMID: 23719594 DOI: 10.1016/j.pan.2013.02.008]

43 **Duggan SN**, Smyth ND, O'Sullivan M, Feehan S, Ridgway PF, Conlon KC. The prevalence of malnutrition and fat-soluble vitamin deficiencies in chronic pancreatitis. *Nutr Clin Pract* 2014; **29**: 348-354 [PMID: 24727205 DOI: 10.1177/0884533614528361]

44 **Duggan SN**, Purcell C, Kilbane M, O'Keane M, McKenna M, Gaffney P, Ridgway PF, Boran G, Conlon KC. An association between abnormal bone turnover, systemic inflammation, and osteoporosis in patients with chronic pancreatitis: a case-matched study. *Am J Gastroenterol* 2015; **110**: 336-345 [PMID: 25623657 DOI: 10.1038/ajg.2014.430]

45 **Duggan SN**, Smyth ND, Murphy A, Macnaughton D, O'Keefe SJ, Conlon KC. High prevalence of osteoporosis in patients with chronic pancreatitis: a systematic review and meta-analysis. *Clin Gastroenterol Hepatol* 2014; **12**: 219-228 [PMID: 23856359 DOI: 10.1016/j.cgh.2013.06.016]

46 **Tignor AS**, Wu BU, Whitlock TL, Lopez R, Repas K, Banks PA, Conwell D. High prevalence of low-trauma fracture in chronic pancreatitis. *Am J Gastroenterol* 2010; **105**: 2680-2686 [PMID: 20736937 DOI: 10.1038/ajg.2010.325]

47 **Bang UC**, Benfield T, Bendtsen F, Hyldstrup L, Beck Jensen JE. The risk of fractures among patients with cirrhosis or chronic pancreatitis. *Clin Gastroenterol Hepatol* 2014; **12**: 320-326 [PMID: 23644391 DOI: 10.1016/j.cgh.2013.04.031]

P- Reviewer: Barauskas G, Wu WJ, Yan MX
S- Editor: Yu J **L- Editor**: A **E- Editor**: Liu XM

World Journal of Gastroenterology

Submit a Manuscript: http://www.wjgnet.com/esps/
Help Desk: http://www.wjgnet.com/esps/helpdesk.aspx
DOI: 10.3748/wjg.v22.i7.2314

World J Gastroenterol 2016 February 21; 22(7): 2314-2325
ISSN 1007-9327 (print) ISSN 2219-2840 (online)

ORIGINAL ARTICLE

Basic Study

Mutation analysis of 13 driver genes of colorectal cancer-related pathways in Taiwanese patients

Yuli Christine Chang, Jan-Gowth Chang, Ta-Chih Liu, Chien-Yu Lin, Shu-Fen Yang, Cheng-Mao Ho, William Tzu-Liang Chen, Ya-Sian Chang

Yuli Christine Chang, Graduate Institute of Medicine, College of Medicine, Kaohsiung Medical University, Kaohsiung 80708, Taiwan

Yuli Christine Chang, Department of Laboratory Medicine, Kaohsiung Medical University Hospital, Kaohsiung 80708, Taiwan

Jan-Gowth Chang, Chien-Yu Lin, Shu-Fen Yang, Cheng-Mao Ho, Ya-Sian Chang, Department of Laboratory Medicine, China Medical University Hospital, Taichung 40447, Taiwan

Jan-Gowth Chang, Ya-Sian Chang, Epigenome Research Center, China Medical University Hospital, Taichung 40447, Taiwan

Jan-Gowth Chang, School of Medicine, China Medical University, Taichung 40402, Taiwan

Ta-Chih Liu, Institute of Clinical Medicine, College of Medicine, Kaohsiung Medical University, Kaohsiung 80707, Taiwan

William Tzu-Liang Chen, Division of Colorectal Surgery, Department of Surgery, China Medical University Hospital, Taichung 40447, Taiwan

Author contributions: Chang YC performed the experiments and drafted the manuscript; Chang JG helped to design the study; Liu TC, Lin CY and Yang SF participated in the statistical analysis; Ho CM helped to design the study; Chen WT participated in the coordination of the study; Chang YS design the study; Chang JG and Chang YS contributed equally to this paper; all authors read and approved the manuscript.

Supported by research grant from the China Medical University Hospital, DMR-103-017.

Institutional review board statement: This study was reviewed and approved by the Institutional Review Board of the China Medical University Hospital.

Conflict-of-interest statement: The authors have no conflicts of interest to declare.

Data sharing statement: No additional data are available.

Correspondence to: Ya-Sian Chang, PhD, Epigenome Research Center, China Medical University Hospital, 2 Yuh-Der Road, Taichung 40447, Taiwan. t25074@mail.cmuh.org.tw
Telephone: +886-4-22052121-2010
Fax: +886-4-22031029

Received: June 14, 2015
Peer-review started: June 15, 2015
First decision: October 14, 2015
Revised: October 28, 2015
Accepted: November 30, 2015
Article in press: November 30, 2015
Published online: February 21, 2016

Abstract

AIM: To investigate the driver gene mutations associated with colorectal cancer (CRC) in the Taiwanese population.

METHODS: In this study, 103 patients with CRC were evaluated. The samples consisted of 66 men and 37 women with a median age of 59 years and an age range of 26-86 years. We used high-resolution melting analysis (HRM) and direct DNA sequencing to characterize the mutations in 13 driver genes of CRC-related pathways. The HRM assays were conducted using the LightCycler® 480 Instrument provided with

the software LightCycler® 480 Gene Scanning Software Version 1.5. We also compared the clinicopathological data of CRC patients with the driver gene mutation status.

RESULTS: Of the 103 patients evaluated, 73.79% had mutations in one of the 13 driver genes. We discovered 18 novel mutations in *APC*, *MLH1*, *MSH2*, *PMS2*, *SMAD4* and *TP53* that have not been previously reported. Additionally, we found 16 *de novo* mutations in *APC*, *BMPR1A*, *MLH1*, *MSH2*, *MSH6*, *MUTYH* and *PMS2* in cancerous tissues previously reported in the dbSNP database; however, these mutations could not be detected in peripheral blood cells. The APC mutation correlates with lymph node metastasis (34.69% *vs* 12.96%, P = 0.009) and cancer stage (34.78% *vs* 14.04%, P = 0.013). No association was observed between other driver gene mutations and clinicopathological features. Furthermore, having two or more driver gene mutations correlates with the degree of lymph node metastasis (42.86% *vs* 24.07%, P = 0.043).

CONCLUSION: Our findings confirm the importance of 13 CRC-related pathway driver genes in the development of CRC in Taiwanese patients.

Key words: Colorectal cancer; Driver gene; Colorectal cancer-related pathway; Mutation; High-resolution melting analysis

Core tip: In Taiwan, colorectal cancer (CRC) has had the highest incidences among cancers recently. In a study of 103 patients with CRC, we identified 18 novel mutations in *APC*, *MLH1*, *MSH2*, *PMS2*, *SMAD4* and *TP53*. We assessed the frequency of non-pathological somatic mutations during oncogenesis, which has not been explored before. Our results indicated 16 *de novo* mutations that have been previously described in a public database and were detected in cancerous tissues only, but not in the patient's blood cells. We suggest these mutation sites may belong to a frequent mutational hotspot in both germline and cancerous tissues.

Chang YC, Chang JG, Liu TC, Lin CY, Yang SF, Ho CM, Chen WT, Chang YS. Mutation analysis of 13 driver genes of colorectal cancer-related pathways in Taiwanese patients. *World J Gastroenterol* 2016; 22(7): 2314-2325 Available from: URL: http://www.wjgnet.com/1007-9327/full/v22/i7/2314.htm DOI: http://dx.doi.org/10.3748/wjg.v22.i7.2314

INTRODUCTION

Colorectal cancer (CRC) is one of the major causes of mortality and morbidity in Western and in Asian countries. In 2014, an estimated 136830 new cases were diagnosed, and 50310 deaths were due to CRC, making it the third most common cancer among men and women in the United States[1]. The lifetime risk of CRC is 6%, and the average age at diagnosis is 66 years old in the United States[2]. CRC has also become the third leading cause of cancer-related death in the Taiwanese population[3].

Inherited CRCs can be attributed to hereditary nonpolyposis CRC (HNPCC), familial adenomatous polyposis (FAP), and closely related variant syndromes[4]. Approximately 15%-30% of the patients may fall into this category, and their first- or second-degree relatives may have CRC[5]. New or *de novo* germ-line mutations of adenomatous polyposis coli (*APC*) occur in approximately 25% of FAP cases. The lifetime incidence of CRC in untreated FAP patients is approaching 100%[6]. The most common germline *APC* mutations are located at codons 1061 and 1309[7]. HNPCC is the result of germline mutations in DNA mismatch repair (*MMR*) genes, including mutL homolog 1 (*MLH1*), mutS homolog 2 (*MSH2*), mutS homolog 6 (*MSH6*) and PMS1 homolog 2 (*PMS2*), with mutations in *MLH1* and *MSH2* being more common than those in other *MMR* genes[8]. Juvenile polyposis syndrome is caused by mutations in the bone morphogenetic protein receptor, type 1A (*BMPR1A*) or SMAD family member 4 (*SMAD4*) tumor suppressor genes[9]. Cowden syndrome is associated with mutations in phosphatase and tensin homolog (*PTEN*)[10]. Homozygous mutations in the base excision repair (BER) pathway gene mutY DNA glycosylase (*MUTYH*) cause *MUTYH*-associated polyposis syndrome, and heterozygous *MUTYH* mutations are found in some cases of familial CRC[11].

Sporadic CRCs account for approximately 70%-85% of all cases, and these patients have no distinguishable genetic risk factors. The development of sporadic CRC is probably as a result of diet, lifestyle, and environmental factors as well as somatic mutations[12]. Sporadic CRCs have more biological variables compared with hereditary CRCs[13]. Chromosomal instability (CIN), microsatellite instability and CpG island methylator phenotype pathways are the major genetic mechanisms responsible for sporadic CRCs[14]. The CIN pathway implies the progression from adenoma to carcinoma. This pathway suggests a stepwise pattern of mutational inactivation of tumor suppressor genes, such as the *APC* and tumor protein p53 (*TP53*), and the activation of oncogenes, such as Kirsten rat sarcoma viral oncogene homolog (*KRAS*)[15]. Most sporadic CRCs (70%-80%) have *APC* somatic mutations, and the mutations appear to be enriched in the mutation cluster region (MCR, codons 1309 to 1450)[7]. Approximately 40% of CRCs have *KRAS* mutations, and almost all of these mutations are located at codons 12, 13 or 61[16,17]. The MSI pathway

is characterized by the inactivation of the MMR genes such as *MLH1*. Inactivation of MMR genes occurs either through *MLH1* promoter hypermethylation or point mutations in one of the MMR genes. *De novo* germline mutations or somatic mutations in MMR genes account for a small number of sporadic CRCs[8]. The Serrated Pathway is characterized by the presence of a mutation in the oncogene v-raf murine sarcoma viral oncogene homolog B (*BRAF*) and the hypermethylation of other genes[18]; 3%-13% of CRC patients have a mutation in the *BRAF* gene[19].

Multiple previous reports have revealed that several critical genes and pathways are important in the initiation and progression of CRC, these include WNT, RAS-MAPK, PI3K, TGF-β, P53, and DNA MMR pathways[20]. The Cancer Genome Atlas Network project has identified numerous recurrently mutated genes[21].

The aim of our study was to assess the genes known to be implicated in CRC and to compare the clinicopathological data with the molecular genetic profiles of the tumors. We used a high resolution melting (HRM) technique and direct DNA sequencing to analyze the *APC* exons 1-14 and part of exon 15, *BRAF* exon 15, *KRAS* exon 2, phosphatidylinositol-4,5-bisphosphate 3-kinase, catalytic subunit alpha (*PIK3CA*) exon 9 and 20, the complete coding region of *BMPR1A*, *MLH1*, *MSH2*, *MSH6*, *MUTYH*, *PMS2*, *PTEN*, *SMAD4* and *TP53* in CRCs from 103 Taiwanese patients.

MATERIALS AND METHODS

DNA samples

One hundred and three colorectal adenocarcinomas were collected and analyzed. All samples were tested for sporadic and familial genetic changes in known CRC related genes (*APC*, *BMPR1A*, *BRAF*, *KRAS*, *MLH1*, *MSH2*, *MSH6*, *MUTYH*, *PIK3CA*, *PMS2*, *PTEN*, *SMAD4* and *TP53*). DNA was extracted using a commercially available kit (GE Healthcare, Little Chalfont, UK), following the manufacturer's recommendations. After extraction, DNA was quantified using a NanoDrop 1000 Spectrophotometer (Thermo Scientific, Wilmington DE, United States). This study was approved by the Institutional Review Board of the China Medical University Hospital.

HRM technique

To assess *APC*, *BMPR1A*, *BRAF*, *KRAS*, *MLH1*, *MSH2*, *MSH6*, *MUTYH*, *PIK3CA*, *PMS2*, *PTEN*, *SMAD4* and *TP53* mutations, we performed HRM of small amplicons using a LightCycler® 480 Instrument (Roche Diagnostics, Roche Instrument Center AG, Rotkreuz, Switzerland) in tumor samples from CRC patients. The primers used for HRM analysis are shown in Supplementary material. The amplifications were performed in 10 μL volumes containing 10 ng of genomic DNA, 0.25 μmol/L primers, 2.5 mmol/L $MgCl_2$ and 5 μL 2X LightCycler® 480 High Resolution Melting Master (reference 04909631001, Roche Diagnostics) buffer. Polymerase chain reaction cycling included an initial denaturation at 95 ℃ for 10 min followed by 45 cycles of 15 s at 95 ℃, 15 s at 60 ℃, and 15 s at 72 ℃. The melting program included three steps: denaturation at 95 ℃ for 1 min, renaturation at 40 ℃ for 1 min, and a subsequent melting cycle that consists of a continuous fluorescent reading from 60 to 90 ℃ at a rate of 25 acquisitions per ℃.

Gene scanning

Gene scanning analysis of the data using Gene Scanning Software consisted of three steps: (1) normalization of melting curves, which involved setting the initial fluorescence equal to 100% and the remaining fluorescence signal after DNA dissociation to 0%; (2) shifting of the temperature axis of the normalized melting curves to the point where the entire double-stranded DNA was completely denatured; and (3) generation of difference plots, allowing capture of the melting profile difference between the reference sample curves and the test samples.

Direct sequencing

After HRM analysis, the samples were purified using the PCR-M™ clean up system (VIOGEN, Sunnyvale CA, United States). The sequence reaction was performed using 1 μL of the purified PCR product, 2.5 μmol/L of one of the PCR primers and 1 μL ABI PRISM terminator cycle sequencing kit v3.1 (Applied Biosystems, Foster City, CA) in a final reaction volume of 10 μL. The samples were sequencing using a 25-cycle PCR program (denaturation at 96 ℃ for 10 s, annealing at 50 ℃ for 5 s and elongation at 60 ℃ for 4 min). The sequencing detection was performed using an ABI Prism 3130 Genetic Analyzer (Applied Biosystems).

Due to its size (2545 nucleotides) it was costly and time consuming to screen *MSH6* exon 4 using HRM; thus, direct DNA sequencing was performed.

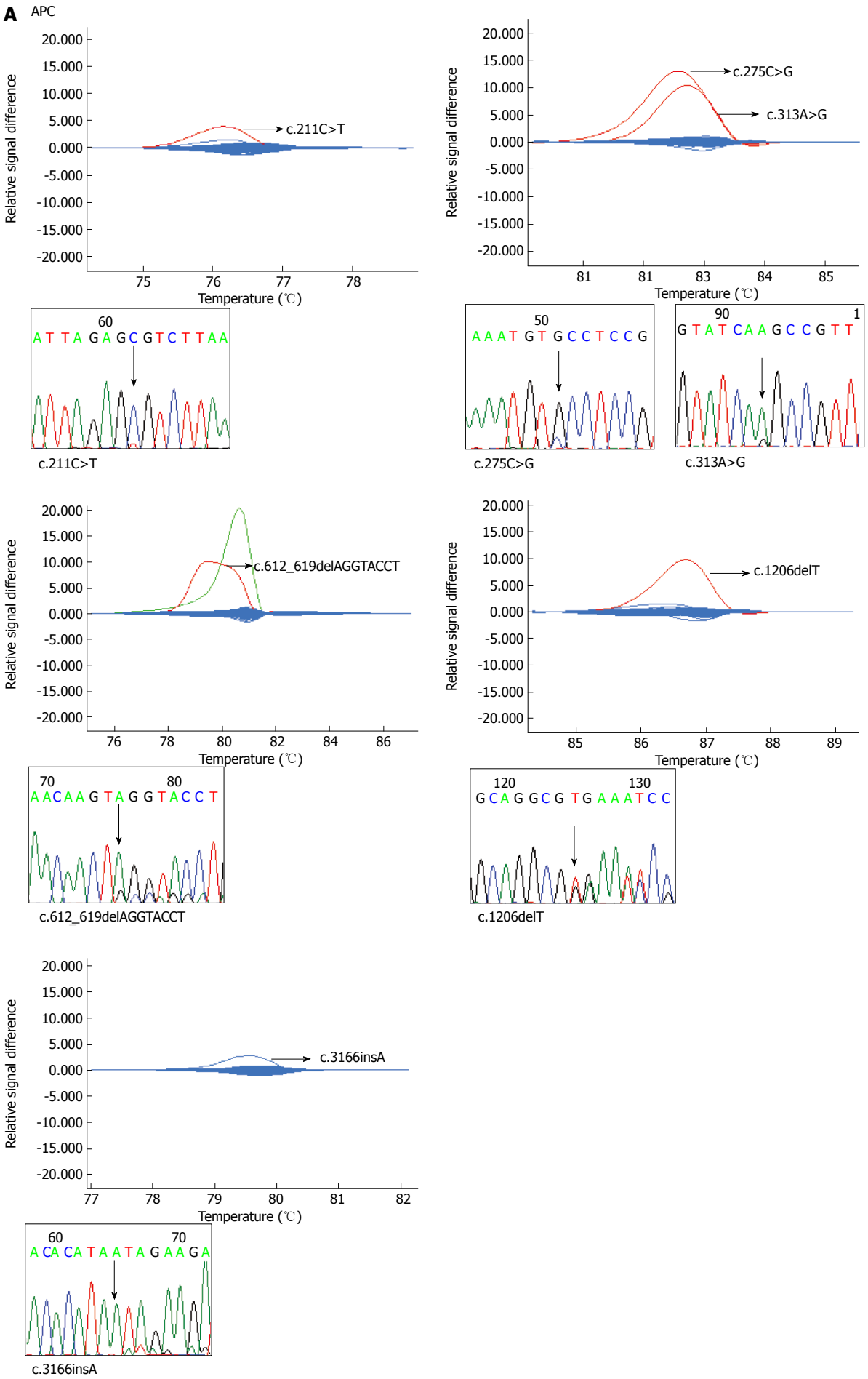
Statistical analysis

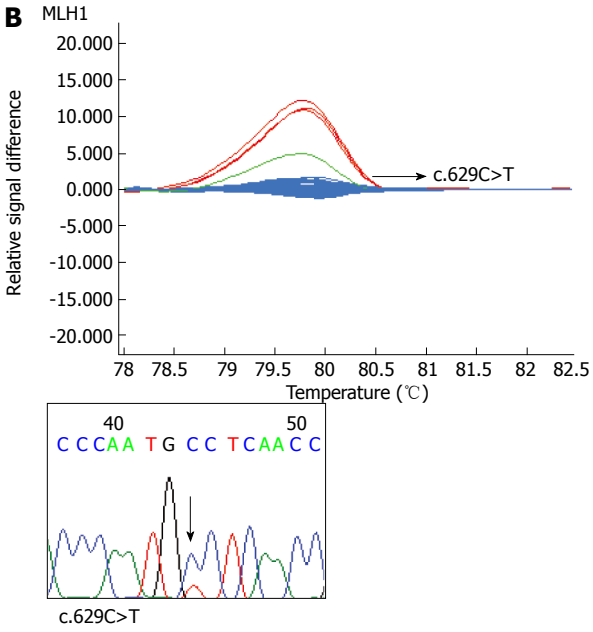
The results were analyzed using SPSS version 17.0 program. *P* values of less than 0.05 were considered statistically significant.

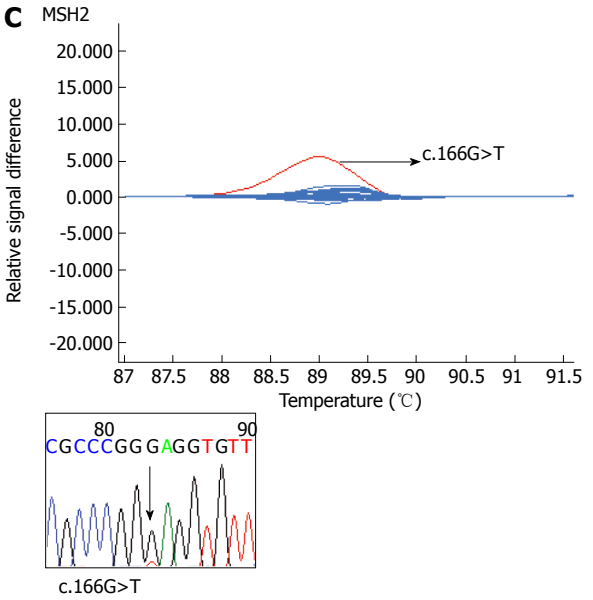
RESULTS

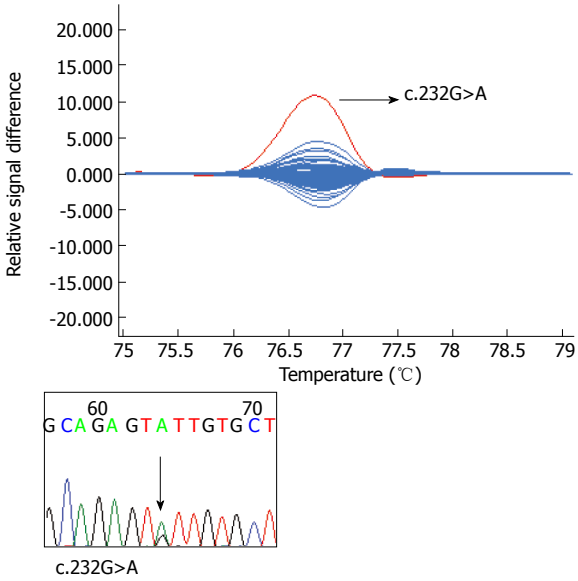
Novel pathological mutations in the 13 driver genes

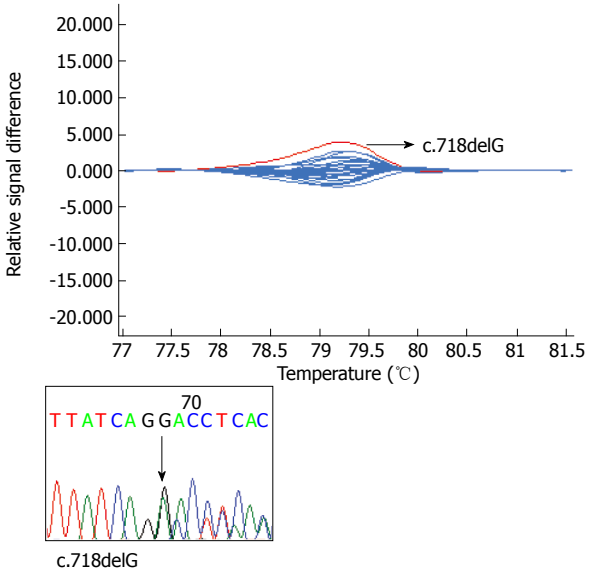
In total, we validated 18 mutations in six genes that have not been previously described in a public database (Figure 1). Six of these mutations occurred in the *APC* gene (c.211C>T, c.275C>G, c.313A>G, c.612_619delAGGTACCT, c.1206delT and c.3166insA), one in the *MLH1* gene (c.629C>T), three in the *MSH2* gene (c.166G>T, c.232G>A and c.718delG), one in the *PMS2* gene (c.1313A>C), three in the *SMAD4*

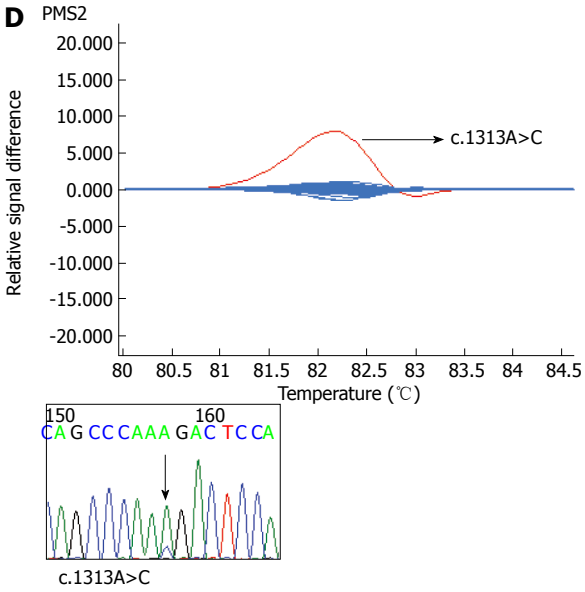

A
APC
Relative signal difference
Temperature (℃)
c.211C>T
c.275C>G
c.313A>G
c.612_619delAGGTACCT
c.1206delT
c.3166insA

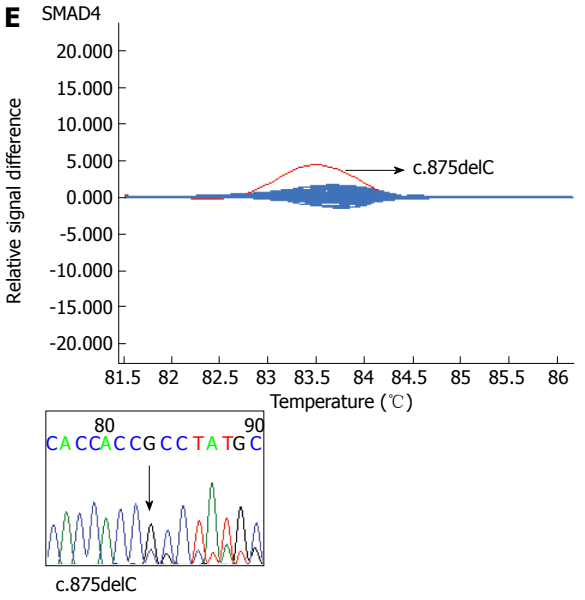

B
MLH1
Relative signal difference
20.000
15.000
10.000
5.000
0.000
-5.000
-10.000
-15.000
-20.000
c.629C>T
78 78.5 79 79.5 80 80.5 81 81.5 82 82.5
Temperature (℃)
40 50
C C C A A T G C C T C A A C C
c.629C>T

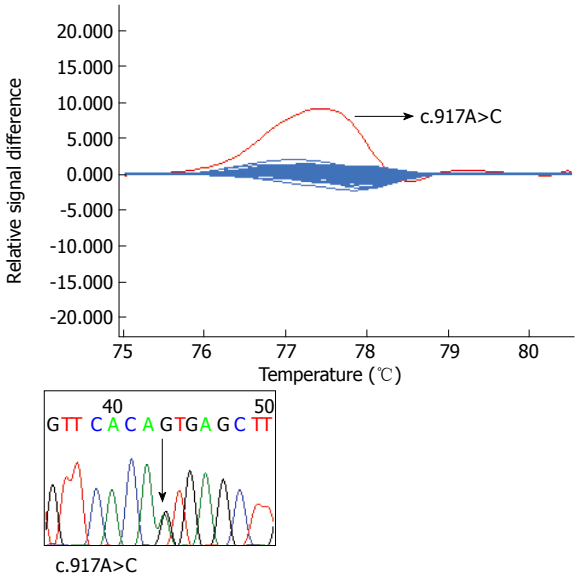

C
MSH2
Relative signal difference
20.000
15.000
10.000
5.000
0.000
-5.000
-10.000
-15.000
-20.000
c.166G>T
87 87.5 88 88.5 89 89.5 90 90.5 91 91.5
Temperature (℃)
80 90
C G C C C G G G A G G T G T T
c.166G>T

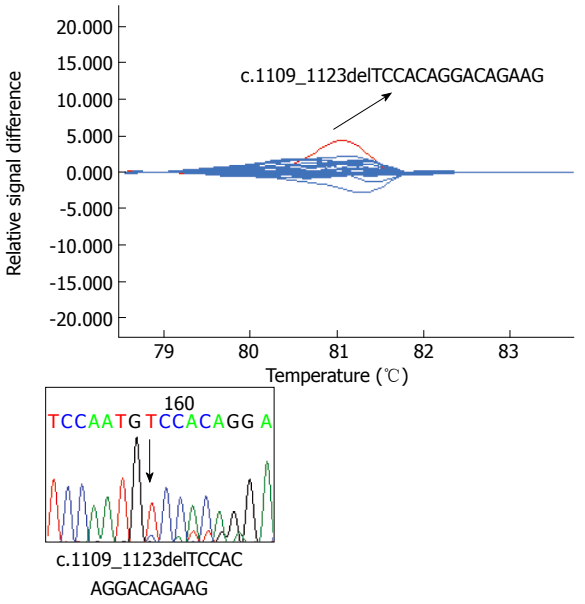

Relative signal difference
20.000
15.000
10.000
5.000
0.000
-5.000
-10.000
-15.000
-20.000
c.232G>A
75 75.5 76 76.5 77 77.5 78 78.5 79
Temperature (℃)
60 70
G C A G A G T A T T G T G C T
c.232G>A


Relative signal difference
20.000
15.000
10.000
5.000
0.000
-5.000
-10.000
-15.000
-20.000
c.718delG
77 77.5 78 78.5 79 79.5 80 80.5 81 81.5
Temperature (℃)
70
T T A T C A G G A C C T C A C
c.718delG


D
PMS2
Relative signal difference
20.000
15.000
10.000
5.000
0.000
-5.000
-10.000
-15.000
-20.000
c.1313A>C
80 80.5 81 81.5 82 82.5 83 83.5 84 84.5
Temperature (℃)
150
160
CA G CC C AAA G AC TC CA
c.1313A>C


E
SMAD4
Relative signal difference
20.000
15.000
10.000
5.000
0.000
-5.000
-10.000
-15.000
-20.000
c.875delC
81.5 82 82.5 83 83.5 84 84.5 85 85.5 86
Temperature (℃)
80
90
CA CC AC C G C C TA TG C
c.875delC


Relative signal difference
20.000
15.000
10.000
5.000
0.000
-5.000
-10.000
-15.000
-20.000
c.917A>C
75 76 77 78 79 80
Temperature (℃)
40
50
GTT C A C A GTGA G C TT
c.917A>C


Relative signal difference
20.000
15.000
10.000
5.000
0.000
-5.000
-10.000
-15.000
-20.000
c.1109_1123delTCCACAGGACAGAAG
79 80 81 82 83
Temperature (℃)
160
TCCAATG TCCAC AGG A
c.1109_1123delTCCAC
AGGACAGAAG

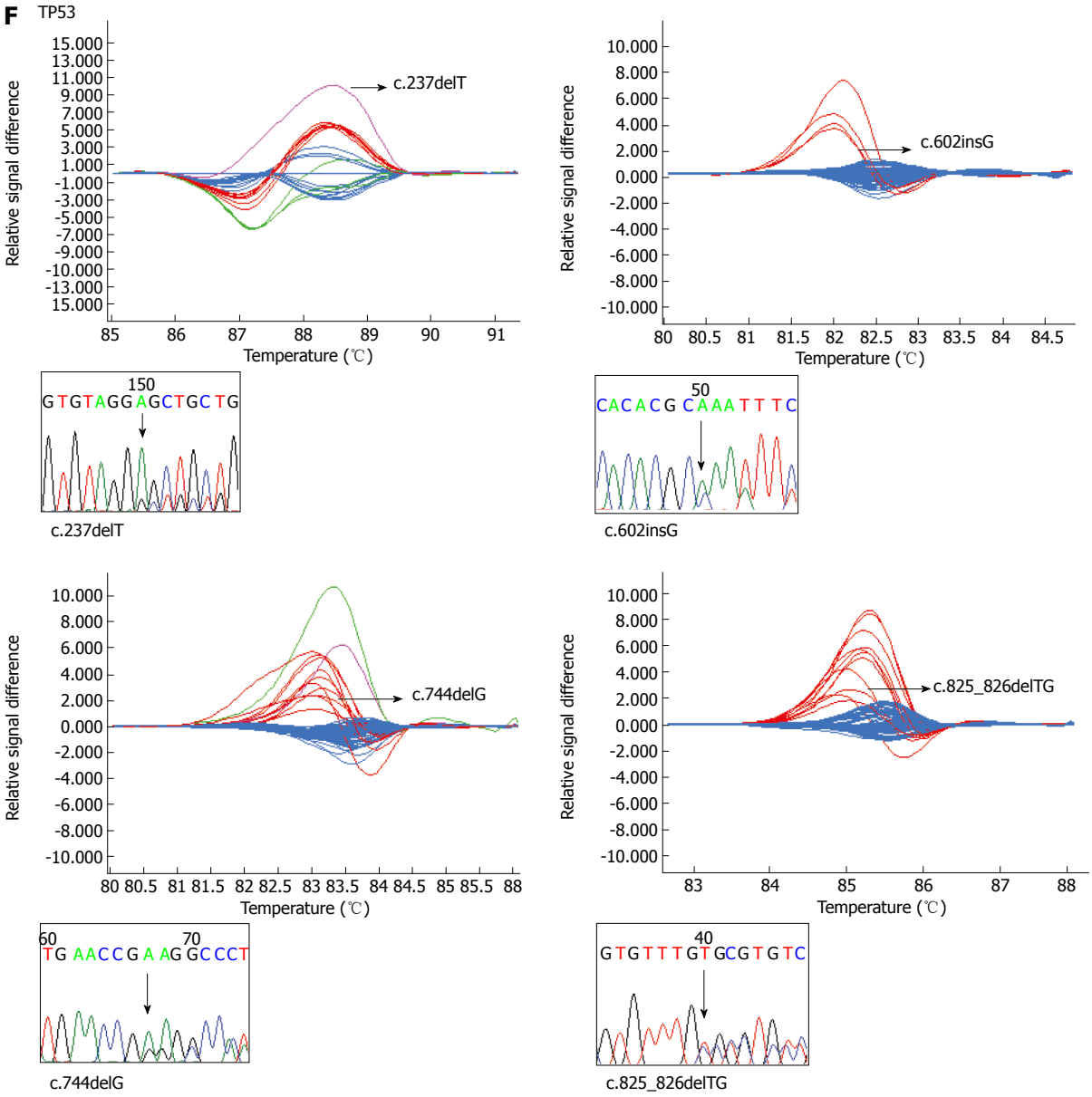


Figure 1 Direct sequencing was used to validate novel pathological mutations. A: *APC*; B: *MLH1*; C: *MSH2*; D: *PMS2*; E: *SMAD4*; F: *TP53*.

gene (c.875delC, c.917A>G and c.1109_1123delTCCACAGGACAGAAG) and four in the *TP53* gene (c.237delT, c.602insG, c.744delG and c.825_826delTG). To our knowledge, these mutations have not been detected in human cancers prior to this study.

De novo mutations in the 13 driver genes

In total, we found 16 *de novo* mutations in seven genes that have been previously described in a public database with the exception of *APC* c.465A>G, these mutations were detected in cancerous tissues only, and not in the patient's blood cells (Table 1). Three of these mutations occurred in the *APC* gene (c.465A>G, c.573T>C and c.1005A>G), one in the *BMPR1A* gene (c.1578A>G), five in the *MLH1* gene (c.462C>T, c.655A>G, c.1151T>A, c.1742C>T and c.2101C>A), two in the *MSH2* gene (c.23C>T and c.1886A>G), two in the *MSH6* gene (c.3488A>T and c.4065_4066insTTGA), two in the *MUTYH* gene (c.1422G>C and c.1440C>T) and one in the *PMS2* gene (c.1532C>T).

Polymorphisms in the 13 driver genes

In total, we validated 18 polymorphisms in six genes previously described in a public database (Table 2). One of them occurred in the *BMPR1A* gene (c.4C>A), three in the *MSH2* gene (c.471C>A, c.1168C>T and c.1690A>G), two in the *MSH6* gene (c.116G>A and c.3306T>A), one in the *MUTYH* gene (c.1014G>C), ten in the *PMS2* gene (c.59G>A, c.288C>T, c.780C>G, c.1408C>T, c.1454C>A, c.1621G>A, c.2253T>C, c.2324A>G, c.2340C>T and c.2570G>C) and one in the *TP53* gene (c.215C>G). Some of the frequencies are similar to those in a public database, but some are

Table 1 ***De novo*** **mutations of 13 driver genes detected in colorectal cancer**

Gene	Mutation	Protein change	rs number	Number of mutations, *n* (%)	Minor allele frequency in cancer	Minor allele frequency in Asian	GMAF (global minor allele frequency%)
APC	c.465A>G	p.Lys155=		1 (0.97)	0.49%		
	c.573T>C	p.Tyr191=	rs185154886	1 (0.97)	0.49%	NA	C = 0.06
	c.1005A>G	p.Leu335=	rs3797704	1 (0.97)	0.49%	G = 0%	G = 0.06
BMPR1A	c.1578A>G	p.Glu526=	rs202030576	1 (0.97)	0.49%	NA	G = 0.02
MLH1	c.462C>T	p.Asp154=	rs192938577	1 (0.97)	0.49%	NA	T = 0.02
	c.655A>G	p.Ile219Val	rs1799977	7 (6.8)	3.40%	G = 0%-37.5%	G = 12.96
	c.1151T>A	p.Val384Asp	rs63750447	4 (3.88)	1.94%	NA	A = 0.52
	c.1742C>T	p.Pro581Leu	rs63751684	1 (0.97)	0.49%	NA	T = 0.12
	c.2101C>A	p.Gln701Lys	rs63750114	1 (0.97)	0.49%	NA	A = 0.12
MSH2	c.23C>T	p.Thr8Met	rs17217716	3 (2.91)	1.46%	T = 0%-5%	T = 0.52
	c.1886A>G	p.Gln629Arg	rs61756468	3 (2.91)	1.46%	NA	G = 0.22
MSH6	c.3488A>T	p.Glu1163Val	rs63750252	2 (1.94)	0.97%	NA	T = 0.28
	c.4065_4066insTTGA	p.Lys1328Aspfs	rs55740729	1 (0.97)	0.49%	NA	TTGA = 0.8
MUTYH	c.1422G>C	p.Thr474=	rs74318065	1 (0.97)	0.49%	NA	G = 1.04
	c.1440C>T	p.Thr480=	rs150269172	3 (2.91)	1.46%	NA	A = 0.4
PMS2	c.1532C>T	p.Thr511Met	rs74902811	4 (3.88)	1.94%	NA	A = 3.69

Table 2 Polymorphisms of 13 driver genes detected in colorectal cancer

Gene	Mutation	Protein change	rs number	Number of mutations, *n* (%)	Minor allele frequency in cancer	Minor allele frequency in Asian	GMAF (global minor allele frequency%)
BMPR1A	c.4C>A	p.Pro2Thr	rs11528010	41(39.81)	19.9%	NA	A = 49.98
MSH2	c.471C>A	p.Gly157=	rs61756463	5 (4.85)	2.43%	NA	A = 0.24
	c.1168C>T	p.Leu390Phe	rs17224367	5 (4.85)	2.43%	T = 0%-4.7%	T = 0.28
	c.1690A>G	p.Thr564Ala	rs55778204	3 (2.91)	1.46%	NA	G = 0.06
MSH6	c.116G>A	p.Gly39Glu	rs1042821	1 (0.97)	0.49%	NA	A = 20.29
	c.3306T>A	p.Thr1102=	rs2020910	41 (39.81)	37.38%	A = 0%-22.9%	A = 4.93
MUTYH	c.1014G>C	p.Gln338His	rs3219489	51 (49.51)	27.67%	C = 45.2%-46.7%	C = 31.35
PMS2	c.59G>A	p.Arg20Gln	rs10254120	10 (9.71)	4.85%	NA	T = 7.57
	c.288C>T	p.Ala96=	rs12532895	58 (56.31)	33.5%	A = 28.2%-36%	A = 11.36
	c.780C>G	p.Ser260=	rs1805319	17 (16.5)	8.25%	G = 4.8%-8%	G = 16.87
	c.1408C>T	p.Pro470Ser	rs1805321	44 (42.72)	21.36%	T = 0%	T = 35.82
	c.1454C>A	p.Thr485Lys	rs1805323	44 (42.72)	21.36%	NA	T = 11.20
	c.1621G>A	p.Lys541Glu	rs2228006	15 (14.56)	7.28%	A = 4.4%-23%	A = 11.68
	c.2253T>C	p.Phe751=	rs1805325	2 (1.94)	0.97%	NA	NA
	c.2324A>G	p.Asn775Ser	rs17420802	8 (7.77)	3.88%	NA	NA
	c.2340C>T	p.Pro780=	rs142230276	8 (7.77)	3.88%	NA	A = 0.12
	c.2570G>C	p.Gly857ala	rs1802683	1 (0.97)	0.49%	NA	NA
TP53	c.215C>G	p.Pro72Arg	rs1042522	78 (75.73)	50%	G = 48.9%-61.4%	G = 45.71

not, which maybe due to ethnic differences.

Known pathological mutations in the 13 driver genes

In total, we validated 58 mutations in 10 genes that have been previously described in a public database (Table 3). Fifteen of them occurred in the *APC* gene (c.95A>G, c.646C>T, c.694C>T, c.799G>T, c.832C>T, c.904C>T, c.3907C>T, c.3914C>A, c.3914delC, c.3934G>T, c.3935delG, c.3944C>A, c.3982C>T, c.4012C>T and c.4031C>A), two in the *BRAF* gene (c.1780G>A and c.1799T>C), six in the *KRAS* gene (c.34G>C, c.34G>T, c.35G>A, c.35G>C, c.35G>T and c.38G>C), one in the *MSH2* gene (c.1480T>C), on in the *MUTYH* gene (c.74G>A), four in the *PIK3CA* gene (c.1624G>A, c.1633G>A, c.1636C>G and c.3104A>G), one in the *PMS2* gene (c.2437C>T), one in the *PTEN* gene (c.19G>T), three in the *SMAD4* gene (c.1067C>G, c.1069T>C and c.1081C>T) and 24 in the *TP53* gene (c.318C>G, c.423C>G, c.440T>G, c.511G>T, c.514G>T, c.524G>A, c.536A>G, c.586C>T, c.638G>T, c.646G>A, c.700T>G, c.734G>A, c.742C>T, c.761T>G, c.772G>A, c.772G>T, c.817C>T, c.818G>A, c.841G>C, c.844C>T, c.853G>A, c.856G>A, c.857A>G and c.1015G>T).

Distribution of mutations in CRC-related pathways

To explore the patterns of mutations in the candidate pathways, we divided the 13 driver genes into six pathways: WNT, TGF-β, PI3K, RTK-RAS, P53, and DNA repair pathways. The *TP53* gene in the P53 pathway has a relatively high rate of mutation compared with genes in the WNT, TGF-β, PI3K, RTK-RAS, and DNA repair pathways.

In total, 76 patients (73.79%) had mutations in one

Table 3 Known pathological mutations of 13 driver genes detected in colorectal cancer

Gene	Mutation	Protein change	rs number in dbSNP/mutation id in COSMIC	Number of mutations, *n* (%)	Minor allele frequency in cancer	Minor allele frequency in Asian	GMAF (global minor allele frequency%)
APC	c.95A>G	p.Asn32Ser	rs539108537	1 (0.97)	0.49%	NA	G = 0.02
	c.646C>T	p.Arg216Stop	rs62619935	1 (0.97)	0.49%	NA	NA
	c.694C>T	p.Arg232Stop	rs397515734	1 (0.97)	0.49%	NA	NA
	c.799G>T	p.Gly267Stop	The UMD-APC mutations database	1 (0.97)	0.49%	NA	NA
	c.832C>T	p.Gln278Stop	The UMD-APC mutations database	1 (0.97)	0.49%	NA	NA
	c.904C>T	p.Arg302Stop	rs137854568	1 (0.97)	0.49%	NA	NA
	c.3907C>T	p.Gln1303Stop	COSM13728	1 (0.97)	0.49%	NA	NA
	c.3914C>A	p.Ala1305Glu	COSM1432302	1 (0.97)	0.49%	NA	NA
	c.3914delC	p.Ala1305Glufs	COSM19687	1 (0.97)	0.49%	NA	NA
	c.3934G>T	p.Gly1312Stop	COSM18817	1 (0.97)	0.49%	NA	NA
	c.3935delG	p.Gly1312Glufs	COSM18796	1 (0.97)	0.49%	NA	NA
	c.3944C>A	p.Ser1315Stop	COSM18777	1 (0.97)	0.49%	NA	NA
	c.3982C>T	p.Gln1328Stop	rs398123121	3 (2.91)	1.46%	NA	NA
	c.4012C>T	p.Gln1338Stop	rs121913327	3 (2.91)	1.46%	NA	NA
	c.4031C>A	p.Ser1344Stop	COSM19135	1 (0.97)	0.49%	NA	NA
BRAF	c.1780G>A	p.Asp594Asn	rs397516896	1 (0.97)	0.49%	NA	NA
	c.1799T>C	p.Val600Glu	rs113488022	3 (2.91)	1.46%	NA	NA
KRAS	c.34G>C	p.Gly12Cys	rs121913530	2 (1.94)	0.97%	NA	NA
	c.34G>T	p.Gly12Ser	rs121913530	2 (1.94)	0.97%	NA	NA
	c.35G>A	p.Gly12Ala	rs121913529	2 (1.94)	0.97%	NA	NA
	c.35G>C	p.Gly12Asp	rs121913529	11 (10.98)	5.34%	NA	NA
	c.35G>T	p.Gly12Val	rs121913529	12 (11.65)	5.83%	NA	NA
	c.38G>C	p.Gly13Asp	rs112445441	5 (4.85)	2.43%	NA	NA
MSH2	c.1480T>C	p.Ser494Pro	rs55653533	1 (0.97)	0.49%	NA	C = 0.02
MUTYH	c.74G>A	p.Gly25Asp	rs75321043	1 (0.97)	0.49%	NA	T = 0.18
PIK3CA	c.1624G>A	p.Glu542Lys	rs121913273	1 (0.97)	0.49%	NA	NA
	c.1633G>A	p.Glu545Lys	rs104886003	1 (0.97)	0.49%	NA	NA
	c.1636C>G	p.Gln546Lys	rs121913286	1 (0.97)	0.49%	NA	NA
	c.3140A>G	p.His1047Arg	rs121913279	2 (1.94)	0.97%	NA	NA
PMS2	c.2437C>T	p.Arg813Trp	rs375968016	1 (0.97)	0.49%	NA	A = 0.02
PTEN	c.19G>T	p.Glu7Stop	COSM5298	1 (0.97)	0.49%	NA	NA
SMAD4	c.1067C>G	p.Pro356Arg	COSM339351	1 (0.97)	0.49%	NA	NA
	c.1069T>C	p.Ser357Pro	COSM189735	1 (0.97)	0.49%	NA	NA
	c.1081C>T	p.Arg361Cys	rs80338963	1 (0.97)	0.49%	NA	NA
TP53	c.318C>G	p.Ser106Arg	COSM45944	1 (0.97)	0.49%	NA	NA
	c.423C>G	p.Cys141Trp	COSM44204	1 (0.97)	0.49%	NA	NA
	c.440T>G	p.Val147Gly	COSM44309	1 (0.97)	0.49%	NA	NA
	c.511G>T	p.Glu171Stop	COSM10996	1 (0.97)	0.49%	NA	NA
	c.514G>T	p.Val172Phe	COSM44240	1 (0.97)	0.49%	NA	NA
	c.524G>A	p.Arg175His	rs28934578	5 (4.85)	2.43%	NA	NA
	c.536A>G	p.His179Arg	COSM10889	1 (0.97)	0.49%	NA	NA
	c.586C>T	p.Arg196Stop	rs397516435	2 (1.94)	0.97%	NA	NA
	c.638G>T	p.Arg213Leu	COSM43650	1 (0.97)	0.49%	NA	NA
	c.646G>A	p.Val216Met	COSM10667	1 (0.97)	0.49%	NA	NA
	c.700T>G	p.Tyr234Asp	COSM43768	1 (0.97)	0.49%	NA	NA
	c.734G>A	p.Gly245Asp	rs121912656	2 (1.94)	0.97%	NA	NA
	c.742C>T	p.Arg248Trp	rs121912651	3 (2.91)	1.46%	NA	NA
	c.761T>G	p.Ile254Ser	COSM45035	1 (0.97)	0.49%	NA	NA
	c.772G>A	p.Glu258Lys	rs121912652	1 (0.97)	0.49%	NA	NA
	c.772G>T	p.Glu258Stop	COSM43568	1 (0.97)	0.49%	NA	NA
	c.817C>T	p.Arg273Cys	rs121913343	1 (0.97)	0.49%	NA	NA
	c.818G>A	p.Arg273His	rs28934576	2 (1.94)	0.97%	NA	T = 0.02
	c.841G>C	p.Asp281His	COSM10943	1 (0.97)	0.49%	NA	NA
	c.844C>T	p.Arg282Trp	rs28934574	5 (4.85)	2.43%	NA	NA
	c.853G>A	p.Glu285Lys	rs112431538	1 (0.97)	0.49%	NA	NA
	c.856G>A	p.Glu286Lys	COSM10726	1 (0.97)	0.49%	NA	NA
	c.857A>G	p.Glu286Gly	COSM43565	1 (0.97)	0.49%	NA	NA
	c.1015G>T	p.Glu339Stop	COSM11286	1 (0.97)	0.49%	NA	NA

NA: Not available.

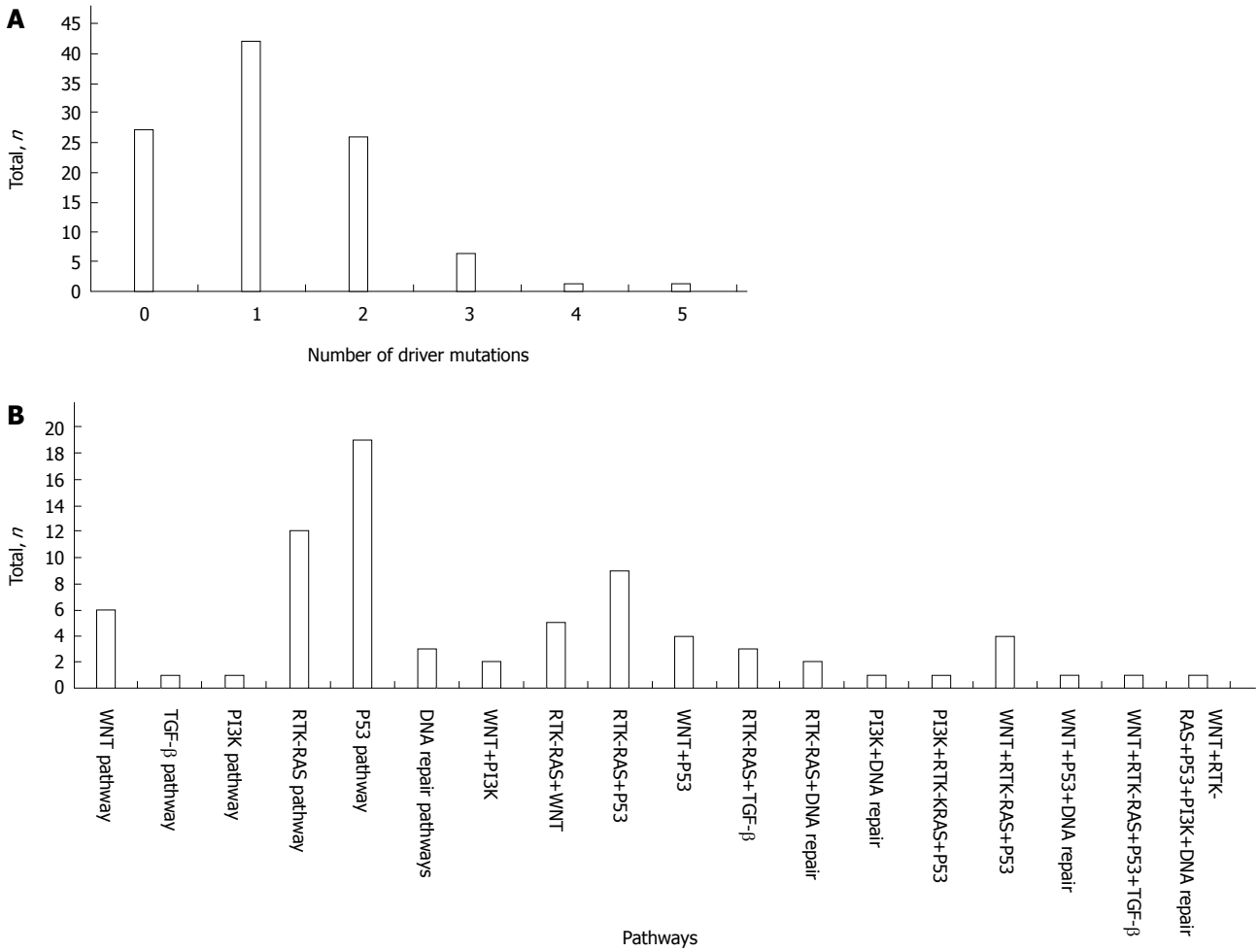


Figure 2 Mutation distribution in colorectal cancer-related pathways. A: Relationship between the number of driver mutations (horizontal axis) and number of patients (vertical axis); B: Relationship between the six major pathways (horizontal axis) and the number of patient (vertical axis).

of the 13 driver genes; of these, 42 patients (40.78%) had one driver gene mutation, and 34 patients (33.01%) had more than one driver gene mutation, including 26 patients (25.24%) with mutations in two driver genes, 6 patients (5.83%) with mutations in three driver genes, 1 patient (0.97%) with mutations in four driver genes, and 1 patient (0.97%) with mutations in five driver genes (Figure 2A).

The mutation combinations included 9 involved in the RTK-RAS/P53 pathways, 5 in the RTK-RAS/WNT pathways, 4 in the WNT/P53 pathways, 3 in the RTK-RAS/TGF-β pathways, 2 in the WNT/PI3K pathways, 2 in the RTK-RAS/DNA repair pathways, 1 in the PI3K/DNA repair pathway, 4 in the WNT/RTK-RAS/P53 pathways, 1 in the PI3K/RTK-RAS/P53 pathway, 1 in the WNT/P53/DNA repair pathway, 1 in the WNT/RTK-RAS/P53/TGF-β pathway, and 1 in the WNT/RTK-RAS/P53/PI3K/DNA repair pathway (Figure 2B).

Correlation of molecular findings with clinical data

APC mutations were significantly correlated with lymph node metastasis (P = 0.009) and cancer stage (P = 0.013) (Table 4). Other mutations did not show any significant correlation with sex, grade, lymph node involvement or stage. In addition, having mutations in two or more driver genes was correlated significantly with the degree of lymph node metastasis (P = 0.043).

DISCUSSION

The advent of next generation sequencing (NGS) has provided a powerful platform to investigate the genetic etiology of diseases. The HRM analysis is not practical for detecting mutations encompassing an entire exon or deletions of entire genes or exons; in contrast, NGS can identify the entire genetic coding sequence. NGS has been comprehensively applied in a variety of ways, including whole genome sequencing, targeted sequencing, chromatin immunoprecipitation sequencing, small RNA sequencing and transcriptome sequencing[22]. Although NGS has become the premier tool in genetic and genomic analyses, this approach can generate a large quantity of genetic data but often with high sequencing errors. Equipment, labor, reagent and supply costs for HRM analysis are significantly lower than those for NGS[23]. The HRM technique does not require complex protocols for experimental steps or data analysis, so it is faster and less expensive

Table 4 Correlation between clinicopathological features and *APC* mutation and two or more driver genes mutations

		Mutation of *APC*				Mutations of two or more driver genes			
		No	Yes	Total	*P* value	No	Yes	Total	*P* value
Gender	F	27	10	37	0.503	23	14	37	0.435
	M	52	14	66		46	20	66	
Grade	Well	4	3	7	0.443	4	3	7	0.579
	Moderate	67	19	86		57	29	86	
	Poor	8	2	10		8	2	10	
LN	-	32	17	49	0.009	28	21	49	0.043
	+	47	7	54		41	13	54	
Stage	Ⅰ, Ⅱ	30	16	46	0.013	27	19	46	0.108
	Ⅲ, Ⅳ	49	8	57		42	15	57	

P value by χ^2 test.

than NGS. We used the HRM technique to analyze the mutation profiles in CRCs of Taiwanese patients, and proved the concept.

No studies to date have assessed the frequency of non-pathological somatic mutations during oncogenesis. In our study, a *de novo* mutation was defined as a genomic alteration that was undetectable in peripheral blood and with nonpathogenic significance; however, the dbSNP database has shown the minor allele frequency for this group. Therefore, we suggest that these nucleotide changes may occur during/after cancer development, and that these mutation sites may belong to a mutational hotspot that occurs frequently in both germline and cancerous tissues.

We identified four point mutations and two deletions in the *SMAD4* gene in five CRC cases. SMAD4 plays a unique and pivotal role in the TGF-β pathway by mediating the transcriptional activation of target genes[24]. The mechanism by which mutation alters gene function is still unknown. Ling *et al*[25] proposed that a mutation in this gene may facilitate CRC progression. In our study, three samples were in the T3 stage and one was in the T4b stage, which may support this idea.

PTEN is a negative regulator of the PI3K pathway that induces cell survival and proliferation. Berg *et al*[26] found that *PTEN* mutations were more frequent in young CRC patients (< 50 years). However, in our study, we identified a *PTEN* nonsense somatic mutation in a male patient aged 66 years.

APC mutations play a critical role in CRC tumorigenesis. Some reports have indicated a potential interdependence of the two hits in *APC*, both in sporadic and FAP-associated CRCs[27,28]. In our study, one patient had two *APC* mutations outside the MCR, whereas most of patients had only one *APC* mutation. From these results, we suggest that one *APC* mutation is capable of initiating of CRC oncogenesis, similar to a *KRAS* mutation.

Tomasetti *et al*[29] showed that only three driver gene mutations are required for the development of advanced cancers in the lung and colon. In addition, they indicated that patients with MMR deficiencies that occurred through the sequential mutation of four or more driver genes significantly increased the incidence of CRC. In this study, we only analyzed 13 driver genes and were unable to confirm their findings, but we determined that 95 patients had fewer than three driver gene mutations. We suggest that further studies using NGS to sequence the exome may solve the discrepancies in these cases.

In conclusion, we identified mutations in genes such as *BRAF*, *KRAS*, *MUTYH*, *PIK3CA* and *PTEN*, as well as previously unreported point mutations or frameshift mutations in *APC*, *MLH1*, *MSH2*, *PMS2*, *SMAD4* and *TP53* genes in a group of Taiwanese CRC patients.

COMMENTS

Background

Previous genetic studies on colorectal cancer (CRC) have revealed multiple critical mutations in candidate pathways; furthermore, statistical analysis has shown that the number of driver gene mutations plays an important role in the development of CRC. However, the genetic mutations associated with CRC in the Taiwanese population are unclear.

Research frontiers

Multiple previous reports and The Cancer Genome Atlas database have revealed that several critical genes and pathways are important in the initiation, progression and treatment of CRC, these include WNT, RAS-MAPK, PI3K, TGF-β, P53, and DNA MMR pathways, and some of these mutations may affect the results of treatment.

Innovations and breakthroughs

This is the first study using high-resolution melting analysis (HRM) technique to analyze the mutation profiles in CRCs of Taiwanese patients and evaluating the frequency of non-pathological somatic mutations during oncogenesis.

Applications

The studies show that HRM analysis can be used for high-throughput mutation screening for research, as well as for molecular diagnosis and clinical purposes.

Terminology

HRM analysis is a closed-tube method, indicating that PCR amplification and subsequent analysis are sequentially performed in 1 well.

Peer-review

The manuscript entitled "Mutational analysis of 13 driver genes of colorectal cancer-related pathways in Taiwanese patients" by Chang *et al* 2015 details the use of HRM and DNA sequencing techniques applied to CRC samples, and details the identification of novel genetic mutations, as well as characterization of the prevalence of other mutations in 13 driver genes of CRC-related pathways. This paper will be of interest to scientists working in the CRC field, recommend publication.

REFERENCES

1 **Siegel R**, Desantis C, Jemal A. Colorectal cancer statistics, 2014. *CA Cancer J Clin* 2014; **64**: 104-117 [PMID: 24639052 DOI: 10.3322/caac.21220]

2 **Hawk ET**, Levin B. Colorectal cancer prevention. *J Clin Oncol* 2005; **23**: 378-391 [PMID: 15637400]

3 **Chang YS**, Er TK, Lu HC, Yeh KT, Chang JG. Detection of KRAS codon 12 and 13 mutations by mutant-enriched PCR assay. *Clin Chim Acta* 2014; **436**: 169-175 [PMID: 24863805 DOI: 10.1016/j.cca.2014.05.008]

4 **Jasperson KW**, Tuohy TM, Neklason DW, Burt RW. Hereditary and familial colon cancer. *Gastroenterology* 2010; **138**: 2044-2058 [PMID: 20420945 DOI: 10.1053/j.gastro.2010.01.054]

5 **Taylor DP**, Burt RW, Williams MS, Haug PJ, Cannon-Albright LA. Population-based family history-specific risks for colorectal cancer: a constellation approach. *Gastroenterology* 2010; **138**: 877-885 [PMID: 19932107 DOI: 10.1053/j.gastro.2009.11.044]

6 **Galiatsatos P**, Foulkes WD. Familial adenomatous polyposis. *Am J Gastroenterol* 2006; **101**: 385-398 [PMID: 16454848]

7 **Segditsas S**, Tomlinson I. Colorectal cancer and genetic alterations in the Wnt pathway. *Oncogene* 2006; **25**: 7531-7537 [PMID: 17143297]

8 **Vilar E**, Gruber SB. Microsatellite instability in colorectal cancer-the stable evidence. *Nat Rev Clin Oncol* 2010; **7**: 153-162 [PMID: 20142816 DOI: 10.1038/nrclinonc.2009.237]

9 **Merg A**, Howe JR. Genetic conditions associated with intestinal juvenile polyps. *Am J Med Genet C Semin Med Genet* 2004; **129C**: 44-55 [PMID: 15264272 DOI: 10.1002/ajmg.c.30020]

10 **Rustgi AK**. The genetics of hereditary colon cancer. *Genes Dev* 2007; **21**: 2525-2538 [PMID: 17938238]

11 **Sampson JR**, Jones S, Dolwani S, Cheadle JP. MutYH (MYH) and colorectal cancer. *Biochem Soc Trans* 2005; **33**: 679-683 [PMID: 16042573]

12 **Baena R**, Salinas P. Diet and colorectal cancer. *Maturitas* 2015; **80**: 258-264 [PMID: 25619144]

13 **Vasovcak P**, Pavlikova K, Sedlacek Z, Skapa P, Kouda M, Hoch J, Krepelova A. Molecular genetic analysis of 103 sporadic colorectal tumours in Czech patients. *PLoS One* 2011; **6**: e24114 [PMID: 21901162 DOI: 10.1371/journal.pone.0024114]

14 **Mundade R**, Imperiale TF, Prabhu L, Loehrer PJ, Lu T. Genetic pathways, prevention, and treatment of sporadic colorectal cancer. *Oncoscience* 2014; **1**: 400-406 [PMID: 25594038]

15 **Vogelstein B**, Fearon ER, Hamilton SR, Kern SE, Preisinger AC, Leppert M, Nakamura Y, White R, Smits AM, Bos JL. Genetic alterations during colorectal-tumor development. *N Engl J Med* 1988; **319**: 525-532 [PMID: 2841597 DOI: 10.1056/NEJM198809013190901]

16 **Chang YS**, Yeh KT, Chang TJ, Chai C, Lu HC, Hsu NC, Chang JG. Fast simultaneous detection of K-RAS mutations in colorectal cancer. *BMC Cancer* 2009; **9**: 179 [PMID: 19515263 DOI: 10.1186/1471-2407-9-179]

17 **Chang YS**, Yeh KT, Hsu NC, Lin SH, Chang TJ, Chang JG. Detection of N-, H-, and KRAS codons 12, 13, and 61 mutations with universal RAS primer multiplex PCR and N-, H-, and KRAS-specific primer extension. *Clin Biochem* 2010; **43**: 296-301 [PMID: 19879255 DOI: 10.1016/j.clinbiochem.2009.10.007]

18 **Leggett B**, Whitehall V. Role of the serrated pathway in colorectal cancer pathogenesis. *Gastroenterology* 2010; **138**: 2088-2100 [PMID: 20420948 DOI: 10.1053/j.gastro.2009.12.066]

19 **Hsieh LL**, Er TK, Chen CC, Hsieh JS, Chang JG, Liu TC. Characteristics and prevalence of KRAS, BRAF, and PIK3CA mutations in colorectal cancer by high-resolution melting analysis in Taiwanese population. *Clin Chim Acta* 2012; **413**: 1605-1611 [PMID: 22579930 DOI: 10.1016/j.cca.2012.04.029]

20 **Fearon ER**. Molecular genetics of colorectal cancer. *Annu Rev Pathol* 2011; **6**: 479-507 [PMID: 21090969 DOI: 10.1146/annurev-pathol-011110-130235]

21 **Cancer Genome Atlas Network**. Comprehensive molecular characterization of human colon and rectal cancer. *Nature* 2012; **487**: 330-337 [PMID: 22810696 DOI: 10.1038/nature11252]

22 **Morozova O**, Marra MA. Applications of next-generation sequencing technologies in functional genomics. *Genomics* 2008; **92**: 255-264 [PMID: 18703132 DOI: 10.1016/j.ygeno.2008.07.001]

23 **Cousins MM**, Ou SS, Wawer MJ, Munshaw S, Swan D, Magaret CA, Mullis CE, Serwadda D, Porcella SF, Gray RH, Quinn TC, Donnell D, Eshleman SH, Redd AD. Comparison of a high-resolution melting assay to next-generation sequencing for analysis of HIV diversity. *J Clin Microbiol* 2012; **50**: 3054-3059 [PMID: 22785188 DOI: 10.1128/JCM.01460-12]

24 **Shioda T**, Lechleider RJ, Dunwoodie SL, Li H, Yahata T, de Caestecker MP, Fenner MH, Roberts AB, Isselbacher KJ. Transcriptional activating activity of Smad4: roles of SMAD hetero-oligomerization and enhancement by an associating transactivator. *Proc Natl Acad Sci USA* 1998; **95**: 9785-9790 [PMID: 9707553]

25 **Ling C**, Wang L, Wang Z, Xu L, Sun L, Yang H, Li WD, Wang K. A pathway-centric survey of somatic mutations in Chinese patients with colorectal carcinomas. *PLoS One* 2015; **10**: e0116753 [PMID: 25617745 DOI: 10.1371/journal.pone.0116753]

26 **Berg M**, Danielsen SA, Ahlquist T, Merok MA, Ågesen TH, Vatn MH, Mala T, Sjo OH, Bakka A, Moberg I, Fetveit T, Mathisen Ø, Husby A, Sandvik O, Nesbakken A, Thiis-Evensen E, Lothe RA. DNA sequence profiles of the colorectal cancer critical gene set KRAS-BRAF-PIK3CA-PTEN-TP53 related to age at disease onset. *PLoS One* 2010; **5**: e13978 [PMID: 21103049 DOI: 10.1371/journal.pone.0013978]

27 **Lamlum H**, Ilyas M, Rowan A, Clark S, Johnson V, Bell J, Frayling I, Efstathiou J, Pack K, Payne S, Roylance R, Gorman P, Sheer D, Neale K, Phillips R, Talbot I, Bodmer W, Tomlinson I. The type of somatic mutation at APC in familial adenomatous polyposis is determined by the site of the germline mutation: a new facet to Knudson's 'two-hit' hypothesis. *Nat Med* 1999; **5**: 1071-1075 [PMID: 10470088 DOI: 10.1038/12511]

28 **Rowan AJ**, Lamlum H, Ilyas M, Wheeler J, Straub J, Papadopoulou A, Bicknell D, Bodmer WF, Tomlinson IP. APC mutations in sporadic colorectal tumors: A mutational "hotspot" and interdependence of the "two hits". *Proc Natl Acad Sci USA* 2000; **97**: 3352-3357 [PMID: 10737795]

29 **Tomasetti C**, Marchionni L, Nowak MA, Parmigiani G, Vogelstein B. Only three driver gene mutations are required for the development of lung and colorectal cancers. *Proc Natl Acad Sci USA* 2015; **112**: 118-123 [PMID: 25535351 DOI: 10.1073/pnas.1421839112]

P- Reviewer: Carter WG **S- Editor**: Yu J
L- Editor: A **E- Editor**: Liu XM

World Journal of Gastroenterology

Submit a Manuscript: http://www.wjgnet.com/esps/
Help Desk: http://www.wjgnet.com/esps/helpdesk.aspx
DOI: 10.3748/wjg.v22.i7.2326

World J Gastroenterol 2016 February 21; 22(7): 2326-2335
ISSN 1007-9327 (print) ISSN 2219-2840 (online)

ORIGINAL ARTICLE

Basic Study

Choledochojejunostomy with an innovative magnetic compressive anastomosis: How to determine optimal pressure?

Fei Xue, Hong-Chang Guo, Jian-Peng Li, Jian-Wen Lu, Hao-Hua Wang, Feng Ma, Ya-Xiong Liu, Yi Lv

Fei Xue, Jian-Peng Li, Jian-Wen Lu, Yi Lv, Department of Hepatobiliary Surgery, First Affiliated Hospital, Xi'an Jiaotong University, Xi'an 710061, Shaanxi Province, China

Fei Xue, Jian-Peng Li, Jian-Wen Lu, Hao-Hua Wang, Feng Ma, Yi Lv, XJTU Research Institute of Advanced Surgical Technology and Engineering, Xi'an Jiaotong University, Xi'an 710061, Shaanxi Province, China

Fei Xue, Jian-Peng Li, Jian-Wen Lu, Hao-Hua Wang, Feng Ma, Yi Lv, Regenerative Medicine and Surgery Engineering Research Center of Shaanxi Province, Xi'an 710061, Shaanxi Province, China

Hong-Chang Guo, Ya-Xiong Liu, School of Mechanical Engineering, Xi'an Polytechnic University, Xi'an 710048, Shaanxi Province, China

Hong-Chang Guo, Ya-Xiong Liu, State Key Laboratory of Mechanical System Engineering, Xi'an 710049, Shaanxi Province, China

Author contributions: Xue F, Liu YX and Lv Y conceived and designed the research; Xue F and Liu YX observed the magnets; Xue F, Li JP, Lu JW and Guo HC performed the research; Xue F, Li JP and Lu JW acquired the data; Xue F, Guo HC, Wang HH and Ma F performed histological studies; Xue F and Lv Y wrote the draft and made critical revisions related to the intellectual content of the manuscript, and approved the final version of the article to be published.

Supported by the National Natural Science Foundation of China, No. 51275387; the Project of Development and Innovation Team of Ministry of Education, No. IRT1279; and the Science and Technology Co-ordination and Innovation Project, Shaanxi Province of China, No. 2011KTCQ03-12.

Institutional review board statement: The entire study was carried out in strict accordance with protocols approved by the Xi'an Jiaotong University Biomedical Ethics Committee (Ethics Permit No. XJTULAC201-398).

Institutional animal care and use committee statement: All procedures involving animals were reviewed and approved by the Xi'an Jiaotong University Institutional Care and Use Committee, and performed according to the Guidelines for Animal Experimentation of Xi'an Jiaotong University (SYXK-SHAN 2014-003) and the Guide for the Care and Use of Laboratory Animals Published by the US National Institutes of Health.

Conflict-of-interest statement: The authors report no declarations of interest. Yi Lv has received research funding from the Ministry of Education of China and the Science and Technology Co-ordination and Innovation Project of Shaanxi province of China. Ya-Xiong Liu has received research funding from the National Natural Science Foundation of China. Hao-Hua Wang and Feng Ma are the employees in professor Lv's research group. Fei Xue, Jian-Peng Li and Jian-Wen Lu are the graduate students professor Lv's research group in Xi'an Jiaotong University. Hong-Chang Guo is the graduate student in Xi'an Polytechnic University and a member in professor Liu's research group.

Data sharing statement: Technical appendix, statistical code, and dataset available from the corresponding author at luyi169@126.com. Participants gave informed consent for data sharing.

Correspondence to: Yi Lv, MD, PhD, Department of Hepatobiliary Surgery, First Affiliated Hospital, Xi'an Jiaotong University, No. 277 West Yan-ta Road, Xi'an 710061, Shaanxi Province, China. luyi169@126.com
Telephone: +86-29-82657541

Fax: +86-29-85323900

Received: June 4, 2015
Peer-review started: June 6, 2015
First decision: September 29, 2015
Revised: October 18, 2015
Accepted: December 12, 2015
Article in press: December 12, 2015
Published online: February 21, 2016

Core tip: This study introduced a magnetic anastomosis device and verified the feasibility of magnetic compression anastomosis (magnamosis) in choledochojejunostomy; moreover, 3D printing technology was used to design and produce magnetic shells of different sizes to explore the optimum magnetic pressure range in choledochojejunostomy. The result of this study provided a more efficient and accurate theoretical basis for clinical application of choledochojejunostomy magnamosis in the future.

Xue F, Guo HC, Li JP, Lu JW, Wang HH, Ma F, Liu YX, Lv Y. Choledochojejunostomy with an innovative magnetic compressive anastomosis: How to determine optimal pressure? *World J Gastroenterol* 2016; 22(7): 2326-2335 Available from: URL: http://www.wjgnet.com/1007-9327/full/v22/i7/2326.htm DOI: http://dx.doi.org/10.3748/wjg.v22.i7.2326

Abstract

AIM: To investigate the optimal magnetic pressure and provide a theoretical basis for choledochojejunostomy magnetic compressive anastomosis (magnamosis).

METHODS: Four groups of neodymium-iron-boron magnets with different magnetic pressures of 0.1, 0.2, 0.3 and 0.4 MPa were used to complete the choledochojejunostomy magnamosis. Twenty-six young mongrel dogs were randomly divided into five groups: four groups with different magnetic pressures and 1 group with a hand-suture anastomosis. Serum bilirubin levels were measured in all groups before and 1 wk, 2 wk, 3 wk, 1 mo and 3 mo after surgery. Daily abdominal X-ray fluoroscopy was carried out postoperatively to detect the path and the excretion of the magnet. The animals were euthanized at 1 or 3 mo after the operation, the burst pressure was detected in each anastomosis, and the gross appearance and histology were compared according to the observation.

RESULTS: The surgical procedures were all successfully performed in animals. However, animals of group D (magnetic pressure of 0.4 MPa) all experienced complications with bile leakage (4/4), whereas half of animals in group A (magnetic pressure of 0.1 MPa) experienced complications (3/6), 1 animal in the manual group E developed anastomotic stenosis, and animals in group B and group C (magnetic pressure of 0.2 MPa and 0.3 MPa, respectively) all healed well without complications. These results also suggested that the time required to form the stoma was inversely proportional to the magnetic pressure; however, the burst pressure of group A was smaller than those of the other groups at 1 mo (187.5 ± 17.7 *vs* 290 ± 10/296.7 ± 5.7/287.5 ± 3.5, $P < 0.05$); the remaining groups did not differ significantly. A histologic examination demonstrated obvious differences between the magnamosis groups and the hand-sewn group.

CONCLUSION: We proved that the optimal range for choledochojejunostomy magnamosis is 0.2 MPa to 0.3 MPa, which will help to improve the clinical application of this technique in the future.

Key words: Choledochojejunostomy; Magnetic compressive anastomosis; Optimal range; Pressure intensity; Magnetic pressure

INTRODUCTION

Roux-en-Y choledochojejunostomy is known as a standard operation for the treatment of benign biliary stricture or malignant biliary obstruction and a well-developed approach[1]. However, the currently used manual anastomosis technique is time-consuming and associated with a high risk of complications, such as stricture recurrence and anastomotic leak[2]. Staple anastomosis has been introduced to solve this problem, but many limitations remain, such as foreign residues, low histocompatibility, and anastomosis diameter mismatch[3].

The compressive anastomosis technique was invented two centuries ago, and Denans proposed the concept of compressive anastomosis as early as 1826[4]. A new device was invented by Murphy in 1892, which has been referred to as "Murphy's button" and extensively used in intestinal anastomosis[5,6]. In 1978, Obora[7] first used magnets instead of mechanical devices; this technique cleverly avoids physical contact by using magnetic force, which is field-mediated. With advantages of simpleness, saving time, and low cost, the magnetic compressive anastomosis (magnamosis) has attracted many surgeons to solve a variety of surgical problems. Jansen *et al*[8] first successfully used magnetic rings for colorectal anastomosis in 1981. Mimuro *et al*[9] and Akita *et al*[10] reported many cases of the successful application of magnamosis for biliary strictures and biliary anastomoses in liver transplantation. In 2003, the Ventrica company launched magnetic devices used for vascular side-to-side anastomosis, and these devices were clinically successful[11,12]. Magnamosis has been proven to be a safe surgical technique that is equivalent or superior

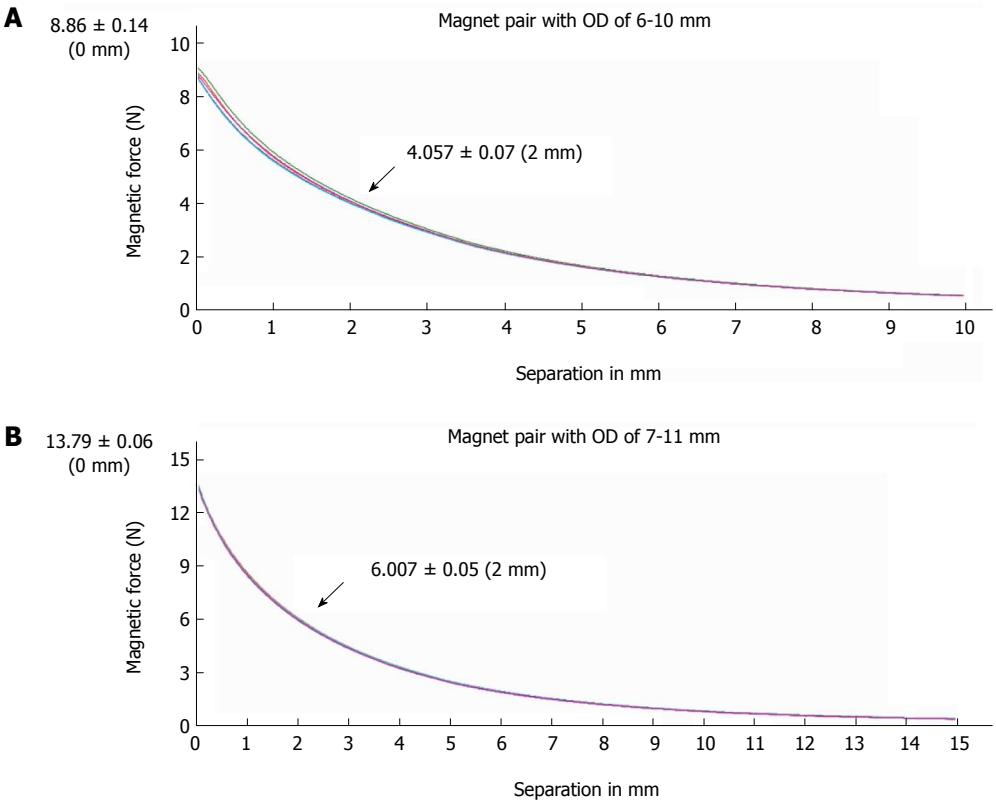


Figure 1 Magnetic force displacement curve. The magnetic force measured by a universal tensile testing machine is shown as a function of intermagnet separation (in mm) for 2 types of magnet pairs used for choledochojejunostomy magnamosis; 5 samples were tested for each magnet. A: Magnet pair with an outside diameter of 6 mm (biliary part) to 10 mm (enteric part); B: Magnet pair with an outside diameter of 7 mm (biliary part) to 11 mm (enteric part). OD: Outside diameter.

Table 1 Magnetic force of magnet pairs at the distance of 0 mm, 2 mm or 4 mm

Separation (mm)	Outside diameter of biliary - enteric magnet pairs (mm)			
	6-10	6-11	7-10	6-11
0	8.86 ± 0.14	8.24 ± 0.46	14.63 ± 0.24	13.79 ± 0.06
2	4.06 ± 0.07	4.04 ± 0.16	5.82 ± 0.09	6.01 ± 0.05
4	2.15 ± 0.03	2.30 ± 0.06	2.99 ± 0.05	3.27 ± 0.04

to anastomosis created by the hand-sewn or stapling technique[13].

Although magnetic approaches have shown promise in choledochojejunostomy, the compressive pressure and magnet specification are based on experience, and significant differences have been reported in these parameters. Furthermore, these parameters often lack systematic research, and a weaker magnetic force may create local ulceration or abscesses due to slow and contained perforation. Stronger attraction can cause severe ischemia and/or lacerating/shearing trauma, which leads to free perforation. We hypothesized that an appropriate range of magnetic pressure can create a viable and durable choledochojejunostomy, and we further proposed that the magnetic pressure affects the quality of anastomosis.

MATERIALS AND METHODS

Magnetic device preparation

The device used for the end-to-side choledochojejunostomy consisted of two parts: the biliary part and the enteric part. Both parts featured magnetic rings constructed of sintered-type neodymium-iron-boron (NdFeB, N45); the surface field was approximately 2500 GS. These magnetic materials were all plated with titanium film on the external surfaces to maintain material stability and biocompatibility. According to a previous design[14], two magnets for the biliary part were constructed with the following respective outer diameter, inner diameter and height: 6 mm × 2.5 mm × 6 mm and 7 mm × 3 mm × 6 mm. The two magnets for the enteric part were designed with the following respective outer diameter, inner diameter and height: 10 mm × 3 mm × 6 mm and 11 mm × 3 mm × 6 mm. The force-displacement curve of the biliary-enteric magnet pair with outside diameters of 6 mm-10 mm and 7 mm-11 mm were measured using a universal tensile testing machine (UTM6202, Suns Technology Stock Co., Ltd., Shenzhen, China) (Figure 1). The magnetic forces of different magnet pairs (6-10 mm, 6-11 mm, 7-10 mm, and 7-11 mm) at separation distances of 0 mm,

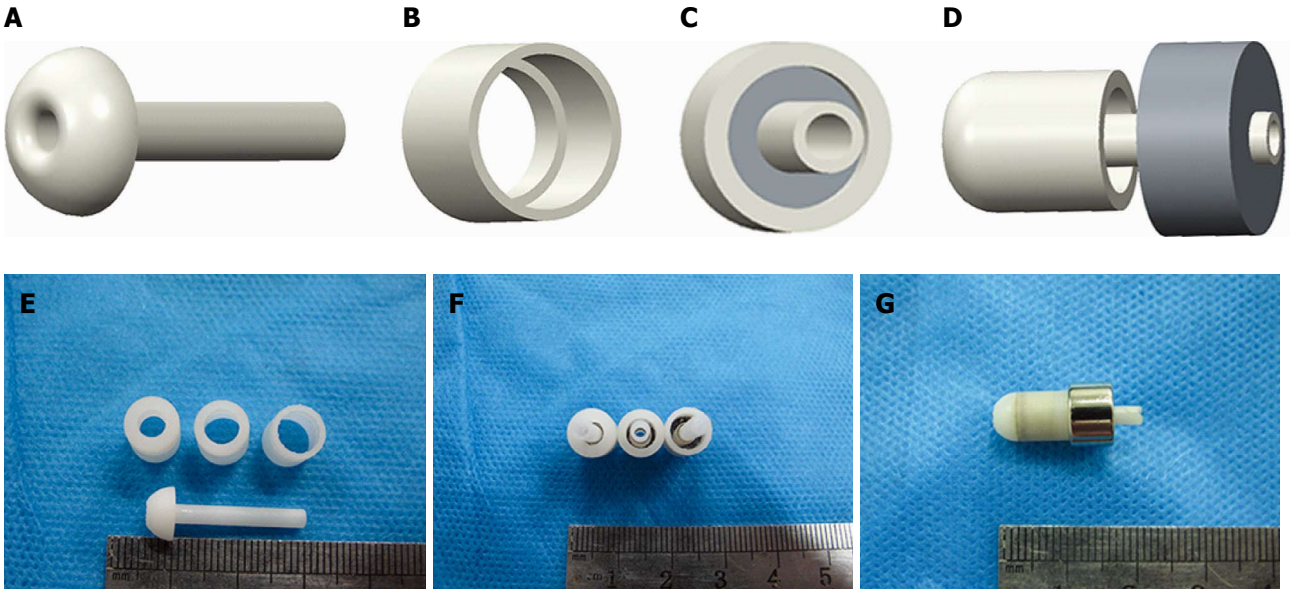


Figure 2 Mode pattern and real pictures of magnet devices. A: Lateral view of an internal drainage tube; B: View of the biliary part magnet shell; C: Antapical view of the combined biliary part; D: Lateral view of biliary part approach to enteric part; E: The internal drainage tube and shells of different crimping areas; F: Magnets with different pressures; G: Biliary part and enteric part coupled together.

2 mm and 4 mm are given in Table 1.

Three dimensional printing

To optimize the magnetic pressure for choledochojejunostomy, four different pressures were tested: 0.1 MPa, 0.2 MPa, 0.3 MPa, and 0.4 MPa (1 MPa = 1 N/mm^2). According to P = F/S, the pressure can be changed by adjusting the crimping area at a constant force. Based on these calculations, we designed a series of magnetic outer shells with different crimping areas to meet the required predetermined pressure values. The shells were made of photosensitive resin and produced using a three dimensional (3-D) printer (Figure 2). The shells feature an internal drainage duct with an inside diameter of 1.5 mm at the middle, which allowed bile to flow through and the enteric part to precisely couple with the biliary part.

Animals and grouping

Twenty-six mongrel male dogs older than 1 year and weighing more than 15 kg were provided by the Experimental Animal Center (SYXK-SHAN 2014-003) of the School of Medicine of Xi'an Jiaotong University. Male animals were selected because they cannot menstruate or become pregnant. The animals were randomly assigned to five groups: A (n = 6) - choledochojejunostomy with 0.1 MPa magnetic pressure, B (n = 6) - choledochojejunostomy with 0.2 MPa magnetic pressure, C (n = 6) - choledochojejunostomy with 0.3 MPa magnetic pressure, D (n = 4) - choledochojejunostomy with 0.4 MPa magnetic pressure, and E (n = 4) - choledochojejunostomy with traditional suture. The end-to-side enteroenteric anastomosis for the Roux-en-Y choledochojejunostomy of each group was completed using 3-0 non-absorbable sutures. One and 3 mo after surgery, postoperative complications, the bursting pressure of anastomoses, gross appearance, and pathology were evaluated.

Animal ethical approval

The experimental protocol was approved by the Animal Experimentation Committee of Xi'an Jiaotong University (No. XJTULAC201-398), and the animals were acclimatized to laboratory conditions (23 ℃, 12 h/12 h light/dark, 50% humidity, *ad libitum* access to food and water) for 2 wk prior to experimentation. They were euthanized using a barbiturate overdose (intravenous injection, 150 mg/kg pentobarbital sodium) for tissue collection, and all dogs received humane care in compliance with the Guide for the Care and Use of Laboratory Animals published by the National Institutes of Health.

Surgical procedure

First, a common bile duct dilation animal model was established in all dogs. After being fasted for 12 h and water deprived for 4 h, the dogs were anesthetized by an intraperitoneal injection of 30 g/L pentobarbital (1 mL/kg). Penicillin (2400000 U) was injected intramuscularly 30 min before surgery to avoid postoperative infection. After disinfection with povidone iodine, sterile towels were placed and an abdominal midline incision was made. By fully exposing the hepatoduodenal ligament, the common bile duct could be easily identified. 3-0 Mersilk (Ethicon; Johnson & Johnson Medical Ltd., Shanghai, China) sutures were used to ligate the distal end of the common bile duct near the duodenum (Figure 3A). Water was freely available after recovery from anesthesia, but food was

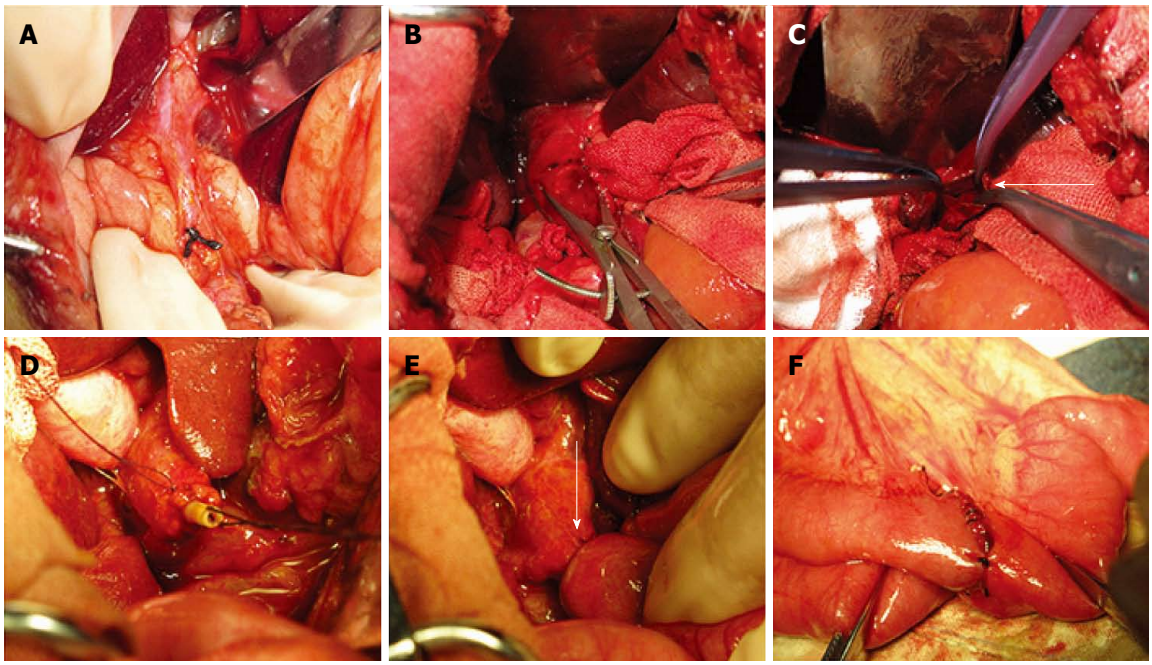


Figure 3 Surgical procedure. Images illustrating the surgical procedure with a magnet pair. A: The ligation of the distal end of common bile duct near the duodenum. B: Obvious dilatation of the common bile duct can be observed 10 d after ligation; C: Opened common bile duct before placing the biliary part magnet (arrow); D: The biliary part magnet was fixed to the stump of the common bile duct by a purse string; E: The choledochojejunostomy was constructed with the magnet pair (arrow); F: Suture enteroenteric anastomosis between the proximal end of the jejunum and the distal 50 cm of the Roux-en-Y limb.

not provided until 2 d later. Penicillin (2400000 U) was injected twice daily after surgery for 3 consecutive days.

Ten days after ligation, the dogs showed obvious symptoms of biliary obstruction such as dark-yellow urine and clay-colored stools. Serum bilirubin also significantly increased, confirming that the animal model was successfully established (Figure 3B).

The repair and reconstruction process was then performed. After the same presurgical procedures described in the common bile duct ligation operation, a second laparotomy was performed. The jejunum was dissociated and cut off approximately 15 cm away from the ligament of Treitz, and the distal end was closed with a suture. An end-to-side anastomosis was created between the proximal end and jejunum 50 cm away from the distal end with a double-layer suture of 3-0 Mersilk (Ethicon; Johnson & Johnson Medical Ltd., Shanghai, China).

In groups A, B, C and D, duct parts of the devices of different magnetic pressures were inserted into the proximal end of the common bile duct, and the stump of the bile duct was purse-string fixed with 5-0 Vicryl (Ethicon; Johnson & Johnson, Somerville, New Jersey, United States) and ligated onto the internal drainage tube. The jejunum was then punched 5 cm distal to the raised loop, and the enteric part magnet was inserted into the jejunum and coupled with the duct part magnet under the guidance of a drainage tube through the punch hole. After confirming that the common bile duct wall and the intestinal wall were clamped between the two magnets, the stump of the jejunum was then closed with 3-0 non-absorbable sutures.

Group E was subjected to a hand-sewn biliary-enteric bypass using 5-0 Vicryl, and full-thickness puncture and the mucosa-to-mucosa contact of the duct and jejunum were confirmed. The abdominal wall was then closed layer by layer (Figure 3C-E).

No food was allowed until the third day after the operation, and water was freely available. Penicillin sodium (2400000 U) was postoperatively injected intravenously twice daily for 3 d.

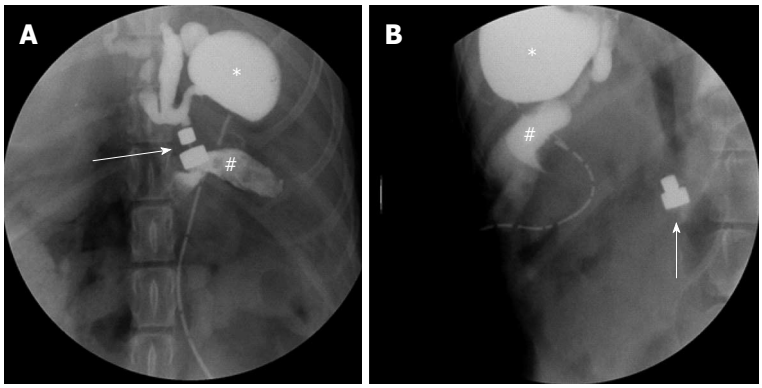
Blood test and follow-up

Blood samples for total bilirubin tests were collected at each time point, including before the ligation of the common bile duct and 10 d after ligation; 1, 2 and 3 wk after choledochojejunostomy and 1 and 3 mo after surgery.

Postoperative complications mainly included biliary stenosis and bile leakage. Biliary stenosis is reflected by recurrent jaundice and a rebound in the total bilirubin. Bile leakage can be judged by the animal state and postoperative cholangiography results. In case of death, dogs were carefully autopsied to determine the exact cause.

X-ray examination

After choledochojejunostomy, a plain abdominal X-ray was immediately taken to confirm the accurate coupling of the two magnets. The X-ray test and cholangiography were carried out every day after surgery to verify the passage of the magnets until they disappeared in the



Postoperative Postoperative 7 d

Figure 4 Postoperative abdominal X-ray. The path of the magnet pairs was monitored *via* an abdominal X-ray examination. The arrows indicates the magnetic pair, the asterisk indicates the gallbladder and the pound sign indicates the jejunum. A: Abdominal X-ray examination immediately after surgery; the two parts of the magnet pair coupled very well, exhibited good patency and were leak free; B: Daily abdominal radiography until the magnets were shed from the anastomosis.

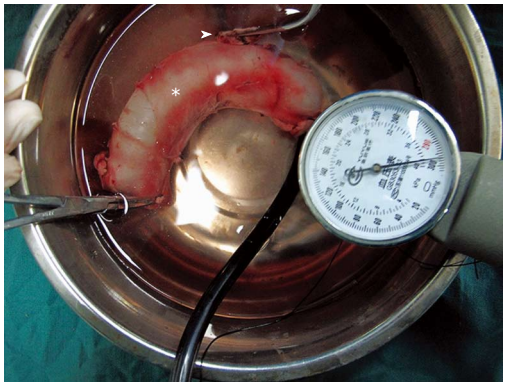


Figure 5 Bursting pressure test. Mechanical interrogation of anastomotic integrity. The arrowhead indicates the common bile duct, and the asterisk indicates the jejunum. The pointer on the sphygmomanometer is almost at the maximum, but bubbles were not observed.

photograph. The time required to shed the magnets from the anastomosis was accurately recorded for different magnet pressures (Figure 4).

Bursting strength test

The burst pressure was measured in each anastomosis. The two ends of the anastomotic specimen were ligated using hemostatic forceps or silk sutures, and the third end was attached to the sphygmomanometer and submerged in water. The intraluminal pressure was then gradually increased, and the readings were recorded as air first rose in bubbles to the surface of the water (Figure 5). The maximum hydraulic pressure when the specimen ruptured was recorded.

Tissue harvest

Dogs from each group were sacrificed at 1 and 3 mo (half of animals were sacrificed at 1 mo, and the other half were sacrificed at 3 mo), and the anastomotic specimens were harvested. After a gross observation, the specimens were cut into sections, fixed in 10% neutral formalin for subsequent mounting and stained on slides.

Statistical analysis

The statistical methods of this study were reviewed by Qian Li from the First Affiliated Hospital at Xi'an Jiaotong University.

For descriptive statistics, the data were evaluated by analysis of variance (ANOVA) and student's *t*-test. In all of the tests, the significant level was set at $P < 0.05$. The data were analyzed using the SPSS 17.0 software.

RESULTS

Total bilirubin

To accurately assess the patency of anastomosis, the initial bilirubin levels were ensured to be normal in each group. These levels significantly increased within 10 d after ligation, decreased during postoperative 1 wk and returned to normal within 1 mo. Bile leakage occurred in group A, which resulted in a faster bilirubin decrease than in the other groups (ANOVA, $P < 0.05$); in the manual group with stenosis formation, the bilirubin levels slightly increased 3 mo after a decline to normal levels (ANOVA, $P < 0.01$) (Figure 6).

Postoperative complications

Four dogs in group A experienced postoperative bile leakage, and 3 animals died of anastomosis leakage because of a failure of coupling. In addition, all dogs in group D died within one week because of severe bile leakage. The total mortality rate of 26 dogs was 27% (7/26), and the incidences of postoperative complications was 34.6% (9/26) (Table 2).

Stoma molding time

Daily abdominal radiography was performed strictly to monitor the exact time of anastomosis formation. We found that the magnet shedding time decreased as the pressure gradually increased; the mean times were

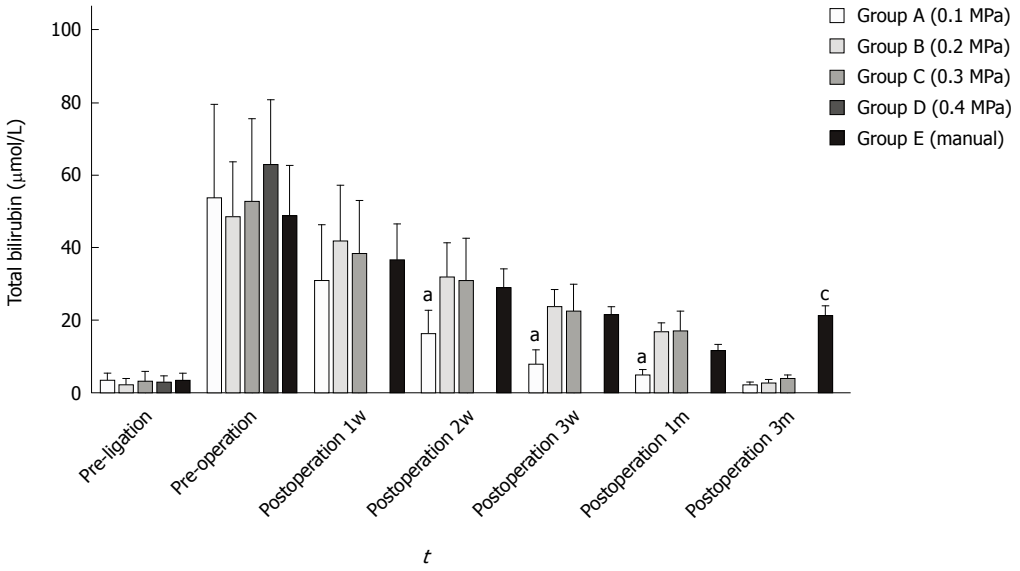
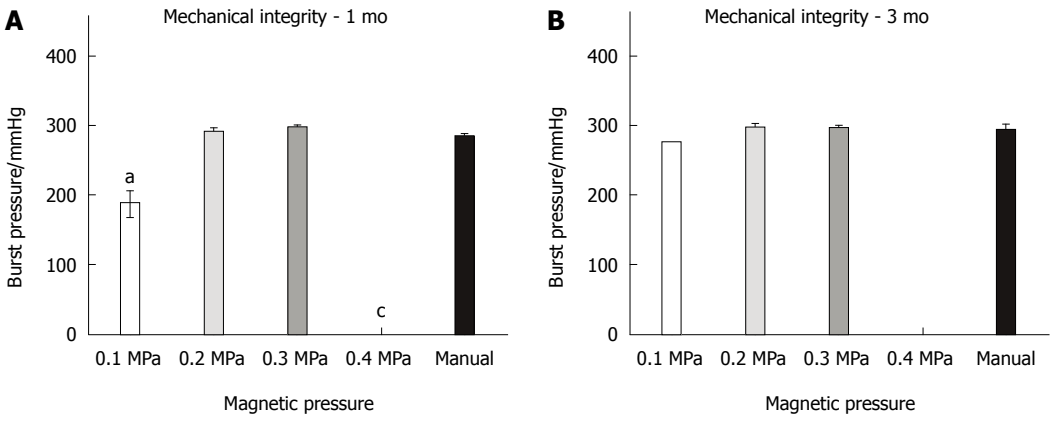


Figure 6 Serum total bilirubin between each group at different time points. Group A exhibited a faster decrease 2 wk, 3 wk and 1 mo after surgery (ANOVA, $^{a}P < 0.05$); group E exhibited a significant increase within 3 mo (ANOVA, $^{c}P < 0.05$); data were not obtained from group D due to a high mortality rate.



$^{a}P < 0.05$ for group A *vs* others

^{c}P No tissue available in group D for measurement

Figure 7 Anastomosis mechanical integrity at 1 (A) and 3 mo (B). The burst pressure at 1 mo was significantly lower in group A than in other groups (ANOVA, $P < 0.05$). The burst pressure did not differ between groups at 3 mo (ANOVA, $P = 0.052$).

9.3 ± 0.6 d for group A, 6.3 ± 0.82 d for group B and 4.5 ± 0.8 d for group D, and these times significantly differed between groups (ANOVA $P < 0.05$) (Table 2).

Bursting strength

The burst pressures at 1 and 3 mo are displayed in Figure 7. At 1 mo, the burst pressure of group A was 187.5 ± 17.7 mmHg, and this pressure significantly differed from those of groups B (290 ± 10 mmHg), C (296.7 ± 5.7 mmHg) and E (287.5 ± 3.5 mmHg) ($P < 0.05$). All dogs in group D died of complications; therefore, the exact burst pressure could not be measured. Within 3 mo, significant differences could not be observed between groups A (275 mmHg), B (296.7 ± 5.7 mmHg), C (295 ± 5 mmHg) and E (297.5 ± 3.5 mmHg) ($P = 0.052$).

Gross appearance of anastomosis

One month after the anastomosis, significant differences were observed between the traditional hand-sewn group and groups with magnamosis (Figure 8A1-E1). The suture knots remained evident in the manual group, and the mucosal surfaces appeared uneven and rough due to the interference of suture (Figure 8E1). By contrast, the mucosa of the magnamosis groups was smoother and flatter, but differences were evident between groups: an obvious anastomotic line in the mucosa can be observed in group A (Figure 8A1), whereas the mucosa was smoother in groups B and C, and the anastomosis line was not easily identified (Figure 8B1-C1). Animals in group D all experienced perforation (Figure 8D1, D2). Within 3 mo, all animals exhibited improved gross

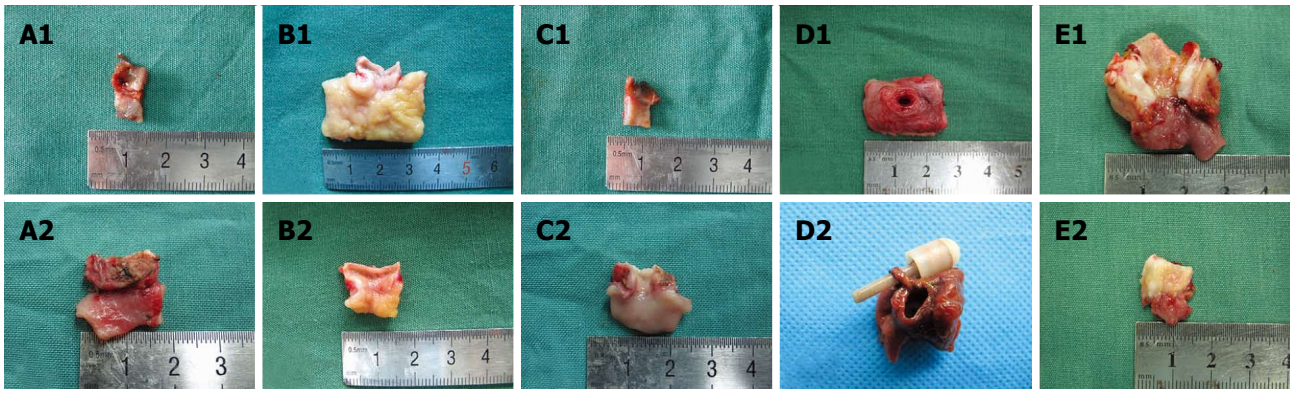


Figure 8 Gross observation of biliary-enteric anastomoses. Gross observation of anastomoses in different groups at 1 and 3 mo. A1-E1: Images of anastomoses comparing in groups A, B, C, D and E at 1 mo, respectively; A2-E2: Images of anastomoses in all groups at 3 mo.

Table 2 Postoperative outcomes of dogs and stoma molding time

Group	*n*	Complications, *n*	Death, *n*	Anastomotic molding time (d), mean ± SD
A	6	4	3	9.3 ± 0.6
B	6	0	0	6.3 ± 0.82
C	6	0	0	4.5 ± 0.84
D	4	4	4	/
E	4	1	0	/

appearances, and the inner surfaces of anastomoses healed very well (Figure 8A2-C2). Even in the manual group, almost all the suture knots disappeared from the mucosa (Figure 8E2).

Histological studies

Histological observations revealed that all groups healed very well: the submucosal layer, muscular layer and collagen fibers were appropriately organized, and a continuous epithelium migrating from the bile duct wall to the jejunum wall could be observed. Within one month, the mucous of group E sloughed and exhibited higher levels of lymphocyte infiltration compared with other groups due to foreign body stimulation (Figure 9E1). Little difference could be observed between groups A-C, and all showed mild inflammation in the submucosal region (Figure 9A1-C1). Within 3 mo, healing was completed at the anastomosis site in all groups, and the serosal, submucosal, and mucosal layers were continuous without ischemia or necrosis (Figure 9A2-E2). However, the level of lymphocytes in group E remained higher than those in the magnamosis groups (Figure 9E2).

DISCUSSION

Since the introduction of the concept of magnetic compressive anastomosis (magnamosis), it has been used to resolve certain clinical dilemmas in some case reports[15-17], including a wide range of applications in diseases of the biliary system, mainly in the treatment of biliary strictures and obstructions. Although success is not uncommon, these approaches have lacked a theoretical basis to regulate their use. Because magnamosis relies on transluminal compression, the magnetic pressure must be sufficient to effect ischemia with central necrosis such that a new channel is formed rather than an ulcer or fistula. However, the pressure must allow the surrounding non-compressed tissue to have sufficient time to remodel.

Existing research has reported that an optimized range for the bilioenteric compression force is 0.18 to 0.3 N (18-31 g) and the associated pressure can vary between 1 and 3.5 N/mm^2 (1 MPa = 1 N/mm^2)[18]. However, these data are based on the author's retrospective study of previously published studies with the help of the MAGDA online tool (http://magda.ucc.ie). Because the MAGDA tool is too idealistic to simulate the actual magnetic force and the pressure, the accuracy of this conclusion remains to be demonstrated. Thus, we adjusted the magnitude of compression and topology of the mated surfaces in this study to explore the relationship between ischemic processes and pressure and identified the most appropriate range of pressure.

Our research demonstrated the feasibility of magnamosis in performing choledochojejunostomies. The most prominent advantages of this technique are a low incidence of stenosis and the absence of postoperative residual foreign bodies. However, due to the low pressure intensity in group A, segments of tissue sandwiched between two magnets appeared viable, and the remaining ischemic and necrotic tissue eventually formed partially free perforations to cause leakage and death. Furthermore, a very long molding time was required in only three cases. In group D, excessive pressure led to larger cutting forces, which exerted the greatest effect toward the center but did not allow sufficient time for the surrounding tissue to remodel; therefore, all dogs died. In groups B and C, the moderate pressure optimized the effect of anastomosis without any postoperative complications.

To accurately monitor the anastomotic molding

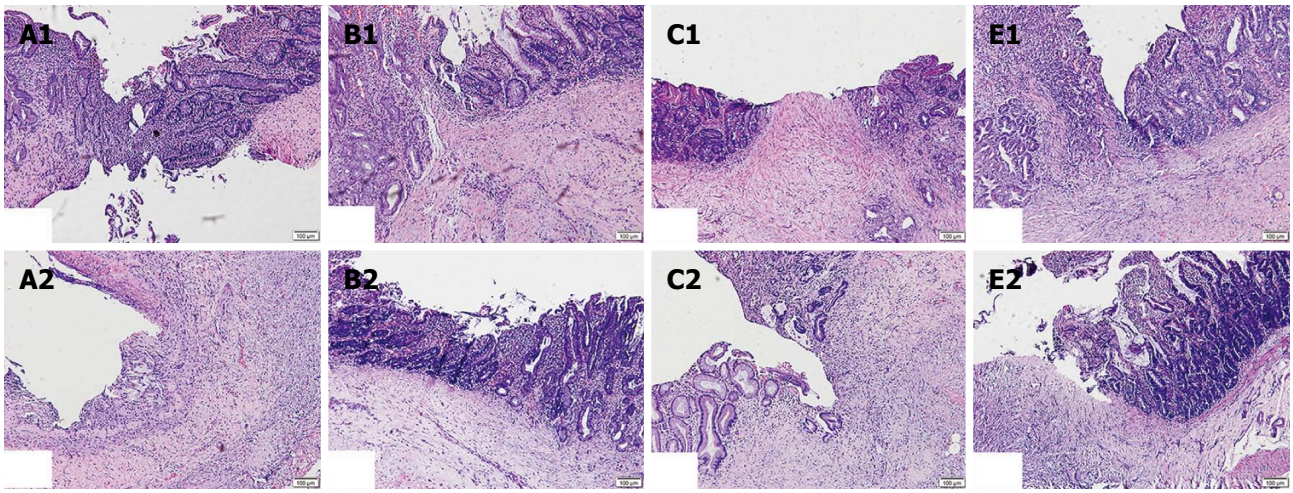


Figure 9 Histological appearance of biliary-enteric anastomoses (hematoxylin and eosin staining; original magnification × 100). Histological appearance of anastomoses in different groups at 1 and 3 mo. A1-C1 and E1: Images of anastomoses compared in groups A, B, C and E at 1 mo; A2-C2 and E2: Images of anastomoses compared in all groups at 3 mo.

time under different pressures, abdominal X-ray examinations should routinely be conducted after surgery. The results showed that the formation time was negatively correlated with the pressure - group C showed the fastest molding time; in one case, the magnets pressed on ischemic necrotic tissue and fell off on the third day. Fortunately, bile leakage was not observed under careful monitoring, the device was found in the feces two days later, and the progression of the dog was uneventful in the following days.

Although the burst pressures at 1 mo and 3 mo after surgery were similar in each group, the suture produced significant inflammation in the hand-sewn group. This inflammation easily led to fibrin deposition around the stoma and severely limited the expansion of anastomosis due to fluctuations in pressure, which increases the risk of stenosis. The burst pressure of group A was slightly lower than those of the other groups 1 mo after surgery; therefore, a lower pressure is the key factor to influence tissue anastomosis. Histopathology showed that layers of tissue did not fully heal, and obvious breakage was observed, which led to the formation of leakage. The anastomoses healed well in the other two groups with sufficient burst pressure, indicating that the magnetic pressures in these groups were ideal to complete the choledochojejunostomy magnamosis.

In conclusion, the inappropriate selection of compression characteristics may incur difficulties. This study proved that the magnetic pressure for choledochojejunostomy anastomosis can vary between 0.1 MPa to 0.3 MPa, and the optimized pressure range is 0.2 MPa to 0.3 MPa. Designing and selecting the appropriate magnet specifications will help both physicians and engineers. Further investigation remains necessary, including finite-element modeling and an analysis of optimized pressure ranges in additional, different tissues, such as gastro-enteric, entero-enteric and vascular tissues. Only such studies can provide a more rational theoretical basis for magnamosis and improve and accelerate its clinical application.

COMMENTS

Background

The magnetic compression technique (MCT), which is a simple and effective way of anastomosis, has been applied in gastroenterostomy and bilioenterostomy since it was first proposed in 1978. The authors have designed and successfully applied magnetic devices for choledochojejunostomy anastomosis. However, the blind use of these devices will result in complications. Therefore, the authors examined the effect of magnetic pressure on the effectiveness of anastomosis devices in this study. These devices were tested in animal models to determine the optimal pressure intensity in choledochojejunostomy magnamosis. The result provided a more reliable theoretical basis for the scientific and clinical application of these devices in the future.

Research frontiers

MCT utilizes a magnetic field force to achieve organ compression anastomosis, which has been widely researched and applied in bilioenterostomy and hollow organ anastomosis. However, few studies have examined the optimal magnetic pressure, and a theoretical basis is consequently lacking for these devices.

Innovations and breakthroughs

3D printing technology features advantage of high precision and easy operation. Thus, the authors combined MCT with 3D printing technology to design and produce devices used for choledochojejunostomy magnamosis with different magnetic pressures and verified the relationship between pressure gradient and tissue healing to lay a foundation for the further clinical application of these devices.

Applications

The scientific and theoretical basis provided in this study has greatly improved the safety and reliability of choledochojejunostomy magnamosis, which can be used for the treatment of obstructive jaundice as a minimally invasive approach that provides stable stomas and allows the patients to be implant free in the long term.

Terminology

MCT is a novel procedure utilizing magnetic forces for suture-less anastomoses

in hollow organs. Combined with endoscopic or interventional techniques, some conventional laparotomies may turn to be solved in a simplified minimal invasive procedure.

Peer-review

The research group performed animal experiments to examine choledochojejunostomy using MCT. Combined with 3D printing technology, the magnetic devices were cleverly designed. The animal study was well designed and executed with great innovativeness.

REFERENCES

1 **Ahrendt SA**, Pitt HA. A history of the bilioenteric anastomosis. *Arch Surg* 1990; **125**: 1493-1500 [PMID: 2241564]
2 **Nealon WH**, Urrutia F. Long-term follow-up after bilioenteric anastomosis for benign bile duct stricture. *Ann Surg* 1996; **223**: 639-645; discussion 645-648 [PMID: 8645037]
3 **Cirocchi R**, Covarelli P, Mazieri M, Fabbri B, Bisacci C, Fabbri C, Bisacci R. [Choledochojejunostomy using a mechanical stapler]. *Chir Ital* 1999; **51**: 177-179 [PMID: 10514935]
4 **Hardy KJ**. Non-suture anastomosis: the historical development. *Aust N Z J Surg* 1990; **60**: 625-633 [PMID: 2202284]
5 Classical articles in colonic and rectal surgery. Cholecystointestinal, entero-intestinal anastomosis, and approximation without sutures. *Dis Colon Rectum* 1981; **24**: 51-59 [PMID: 7009105]
6 **Booth CC**. What has technology done to gastroenterology? *Gut* 1985; **26**: 1088-1094 [PMID: 3902589]
7 **Obora Y**, Tamaki N, Matsumoto S. Nonsuture microvascular anastomosis using magnet rings: preliminary report. *Surg Neurol* 1978; **9**: 117-120 [PMID: 625696]
8 **Jansen A**, Brummelkamp WH, Davies GA, Klopper PJ, Keeman JN. Clinical applications of magnetic rings in colorectal anastomosis. *Surg Gynecol Obstet* 1981; **153**: 537-545 [PMID: 7280943]
9 **Mimuro A**, Tsuchida A, Yamanouchi E, Itoi T, Ozawa T, Ikeda T, Nakamura R, Koyanagi Y, Nakamura K. A novel technique of magnetic compression anastomosis for severe biliary stenosis. *Gastrointest Endosc* 2003; **58**: 283-287 [PMID: 12872106 DOI: 10.1067/mge.2003.354]
10 **Akita H**, Hikita H, Yamanouchi E, Marubashi S, Nagano H, Umeshita K, Dono K, Tsutsui S, Hayashi N, Monden M. Use of a metallic-wall stent in the magnet compression anastomosis technique for bile duct obstruction after liver transplantation. *Liver Transpl* 2008; **14**: 118-120 [PMID: 18161766 DOI: 10.1002/lt.21273]
11 **Klima U**, Falk V, Maringka M, Bargenda S, Badack S, Moritz A, Mohr F, Haverich A, Wimmer-Greinecker G. Magnetic vascular coupling for distal anastomosis in coronary artery bypass grafting: a multicenter trial. *J Thorac Cardiovasc Surg* 2003; **126**: 1568-1574 [PMID: 14666034 DOI: 10.1016/s0022]
12 **Klima**, Macvaugh Iii, Maringka, Kirschner, Haverich. Clinical experience with the Ventrica distal anastomotic device in coronary surgery. *Minim Invasive Ther Allied Technol* 2004; **13**: 26-31 [PMID: 16754121 DOI: 10.1080/13645700410024805]
13 **Jamshidi R**, Stephenson JT, Clay JG, Pichakron KO, Harrison MR. Magnamosis: magnetic compression anastomosis with comparison to suture and staple techniques. *J Pediatr Surg* 2009; **44**: 222-228 [PMID: 19159747 DOI: 10.1016/j.jpedsurg.2008.10.044]
14 **Li J**, Lü Y, Qu B, Zhang Z, Liu C, Shi Y, Wang B. Application of a new type of sutureless magnetic biliary-enteric anastomosis stent for one-stage reconstruction of the biliary-enteric continuity after acute bile duct injury: an experimental study. *J Surg Res* 2008; **148**: 136-142 [PMID: 18511078 DOI: 10.1016/j.jss.2007.09.014]
15 **Zaritzky M**, Ben R, Zylberg GI, Yampolsky B. Magnetic compression anastomosis as a nonsurgical treatment for esophageal atresia. *Pediatr Radiol* 2009; **39**: 945-949 [PMID: 19506849 DOI: 10.1007/s00247-009-1305-7]
16 **Marubashi S**, Nagano H, Yamanouchi E, Kobayashi S, Eguchi H, Takeda Y, Tanemura M, Maeda N, Tomoda K, Hikita H, Tsutsui S, Doki Y, Mori M. Salvage cystic duct anastomosis using a magnetic compression technique for incomplete bile duct reconstruction in living donor liver transplantation. *Liver Transpl* 2010; **16**: 33-37 [PMID: 20035518 DOI: 10.1002/lt.21934]
17 **Ashikawa K**, Komoriyama H, Kumano R, Yamanouchi E. Magnetic compression anastomosis for rectal anastomotic stenosis: report of a case. *Brit J Surg* 2010; **97**: S79-S80
18 **Lambe T**, Ríordáin MG, Cahill RA, Cantillon-Murphy P. Magnetic compression in gastrointestinal and bilioenteric anastomosis: how much force? *Surg Innov* 2014; **21**: 65-73 [PMID: 23592733 DOI: 10.1177/1553350613484824]

P- Reviewer: Harrison MR **S- Editor**: Yu J
L- Editor: Wang TQ **E- Editor**: Liu XM

World Journal of Gastroenterology

Submit a Manuscript: http://www.wjgnet.com/esps/
Help Desk: http://www.wjgnet.com/esps/helpdesk.aspx
DOI: 10.3748/wjg.v22.i7.2336

World J Gastroenterol 2016 February 21; 22(7): 2336-2341
ISSN 1007-9327 (print) ISSN 2219-2840 (online)

ORIGINAL ARTICLE

Retrospective Study

Recurrent colorectal cancer after endoscopic resection when additional surgery was recommended

Yukiko Takatsu, Yosuke Fukunaga, Shunsuke Hamasaki, Atsushi Ogura, Jun Nagata, Toshiya Nagasaki, Takashi Akiyoshi, Tsuyoshi Konishi, Yoshiya Fujimoto, Satoshi Nagayama, Masashi Ueno

Yukiko Takatsu, Yosuke Fukunaga, Shunsuke Hamasaki, Atsushi Ogura, Jun Nagata, Toshiya Nagasaki, Takashi Akiyoshi, Tsuyoshi Konishi, Yoshiya Fujimoto, Satoshi Nagayama, Masashi Ueno, Gastroenterological Center, Department of Gastroenterological Surgery, Cancer Institute Hospital, Japanese Foundation for Cancer Research, Tokyo 135-8550, Japan

Author contributions: Takatsu Y designed, performed research and wrote the paper; Fukunaga Y designed the research and supervised the report; Hamasaki S, Ogura A, Nagata J, Nagasaki T, Akiyoshi T, Konishi T, Fujimoto Y, Nagayama S and Ueno M supervised the report.

Institutional review board statement: An Ethics Committee's approval is unnecessary for this manuscript in our hospital's rule because of its retrospective case study.

Informed consent statement: All patients gave informed consent.

Conflict-of-interest statement: We have no financial relationships to disclose.

Data sharing statement: No additional data are available.

Correspondence to: Dr. Yosuke Fukunaga, Gastroenterological Center, Department of Gastroenterological Surgery, Cancer Institute Hospital, Japanese Foundation for Cancer Research, 3-8-31 Ariake, Koto-ku, Tokyo 135-8550, Japan. yosuke.fukunaga@jfcr.or.jp
Telephone: +81-3-35200111
Fax: +81-3-35200141

Received: July 22, 2015
Peer-review started: July 30, 2015
First decision: September 9, 2015
Revised: September 26, 2015
Accepted: November 30, 2015
Article in press: November 30, 2015
Published online: February 21, 2016

Abstract

AIM: To evaluate the type of recurrence after endoscopic resection in colorectal cancer patients and whether rescue was possible by salvage operation.

METHODS: Among 4972 patients who underwent surgical resection at our institution for primary or recurrent colorectal cancers from January 2005 to February 2015, we experienced eight recurrent colorectal cancers after endoscopic resection when additional surgical resection was recommended.

RESULTS: The recurrence patterns were: intramural local recurrence (five cases), regional lymph node recurrence (three cases), and associated with simultaneous distant metastasis (three cases). Among five cases with lymphatic invasion observed histologically in endoscopic resected specimens, four cases recurred with lymph node metastasis or distant metastasis. All cases were treated laparoscopically and curative surgery was achieved in six cases. Among four cases located in the rectum, three cases achieved preservation of the anus. Postoperative complications occurred in two cases (enteritis).

CONCLUSION: For high-risk submucosal invasive colorectal cancers after endoscopic resection, additional surgical resection with lymphadenectomy is recommended, particularly in cases with lympho-

vascular invasion.

Key words: Colorectal neoplasms; Colorectal surgery; Laparoscopy; Endoscopy; Recurrence

Core tip: This is a retrospective study to evaluate the type of recurrence after endoscopic resection in colorectal cancer patients and whether rescue was possible by salvage operation. All cases were treated laparoscopically and curative surgery was achieved in six cases. Among five cases with lymphatic invasion observed histologically in endoscopic resected specimens, four cases recurred with lymph node metastasis or distant metastasis. For high-risk submucosal invasive colorectal cancers after endoscopic resection, additional surgical resection with lymphadenectomy is recommended, particularly in cases with lymphovascular invasion.

Takatsu Y, Fukunaga Y, Hamasaki S, Ogura A, Nagata J, Nagasaki T, Akiyoshi T, Konishi T, Fujimoto Y, Nagayama S, Ueno M. Recurrent colorectal cancer after endoscopic resection when additional surgery was recommended. *World J Gastroenterol* 2016; 22(7): 2336-2341 Available from: URL: http://www.wjgnet.com/1007-9327/full/v22/i7/2336.htm DOI: http://dx.doi.org/10.3748/wjg.v22.i7.2336

INTRODUCTION

Following recent advances in endoscopic diagnosis and techniques, the number of T1 [tumor node metastasis (TNM) cancer staging] colorectal cancer cases initially treated by endoscopic resection has been increasing[1]. Lymph node metastasis occurs in approximately 10% of cases with submucosal invasive colorectal cancers[2]. In Japan, according to the Japanese Society for Cancer of the Colon and Rectum (JSCCR) guidelines[3], when any high-risk findings are observed in histological examination of a resected specimen after endoscopic resection, additional surgical resection with lymphadenectomy is recommended. Patients with submucosal invasive colorectal cancers treated by surgical or endoscopic resection, or both, according to the JSCCR, had good clinical outcomes[2].

However, certain patients cannot undergo operation because of factors such as the patient's age and comorbid state. Particularly, in cases of rectal cancer, additional surgical resection with lymphadenectomy may cause dyschezia and a diverting stoma is sometimes necessary, which may decrease a patient's quality of life. Little is known about outcomes during follow-up in cases with endoscopic resection alone. Although some studies reporting local recurrence after endoscopic resection in T1 colorectal cancer patients for whom additional surgical resection was not indicated have been published[4-7], few reports discuss outcomes in these patients[8].

In the present study, we retrospectively reviewed eight recurrent colorectal cancer cases after endoscopic resection, for which additional surgical resection including lymphadenectomy was recommended because of high-risk submucosal invasive cancer. Our aim was to evaluate the type of recurrence and whether the patient could be rescued by a salvage operation.

MATERIALS AND METHODS

Among 4972 patients who underwent surgical resection at our institution for primary or recurrent colorectal cancers at our institution from January 2005 to February 2015, we experienced eight recurrent colorectal cancers after endoscopic resection. Additional surgical resection with lymphadenectomy had been recommended in these patients because of high-risk submucosal invasive colorectal cancer. High-risk submucosal invasive colorectal cancer after ER is defined according to the JSCCR Guidelines, when any of the following findings are observed in histological examination of the endoscopic resected specimen: (1) depth of submucosal invasion $\geqslant$ 1000 μm; (2) lymphovascular invasion was positive; (3) signet-ring cell carcinoma, mucinous carcinoma, or poorly differentiated adenocarcinoma; (4) Grade 2/3 budding; and (5) vertical tumor margin was positive. All cases had undergone endoscopic resection at another hospital and were referred to our institution after cancer recurred. The study was approved by our local institutional review board and signed consent was obtained from all patients to use data from their medical records in the study.

We retrospectively reviewed the patient characteristics including age, sex, American Society of Anesthesiologists physical status, body mass index, tumor location, and pathological data. Pathological data in six of eight cases were re-examined in our institution. All specimens from endoscopic resection were examined microscopically for resection margin status and tumor characteristics as identified above. Treatment and analysis information for recurrence after ER included the use of adjuvant therapy, follow-up interval, recurrence pattern, time to recurrence, and treatment to recurrence. Surgical outcome information in our institution included the surgical procedures, harvested lymph nodes, estimated blood loss, operating time, and complications. Postoperative outcome data included pathological findings, therapy after surgery, and survival outcome.

RESULTS

Patients' demographic data, including the primary cancer, are shown in Table 1. The median age was 60 years (range, 39-76 years) and the proportion of male patients was higher than female (six *vs* two cases, respectively). The median body mass index of all

Table 1 Characteristics of patients and primary tumors

Case	Age (yr)	Sex	ASA	BMI (kg/m^2)	Location	Pathological data					
						Invasion depth	Differentiation	ly	v	VM	Budding
1	39	F	1	19.7	Rectum	sm (≥ 1000 μm)	Well	+	+	-	Grade 2
2	43	M	1	19.4	Rectum	sm (≥ 1000 μm)	Well	+	+	+	Unknown
3	71	F	1	17.0	Rectum	sm (< 1000 μm)	Well	+	+	-	Unknown
4	75	M	1	25.3	Transverse	sm (= 1000 μm)	Well	-	-	-	Grade 0
5	76	M	2	21.7	Rectum	un clear	Moderate	-	-	+	Grade 0
6	42	M	1	18.8	Rectum	sm (≥ 1000 μm)	Well	+	+	-	Grade 0
7	74	M	2	25.4	Rectum	sm (≥ 1000 μm)	Moderate	-	+	-	Grade 3
8	49	M	2	22.4	Sigmoid	sm (≥ 1000 μm)	Moderate	+	-	-	Grade 1

Table 2 Follow up and recurrence after endoscopic resection

Case	Use of adjuvant therapy			
	After ESD	Follow up interval	Recurrence pattern	Time to recurrence
1	-	3 mo	Distant metastasis (lung, PALN)	8 mo
2	-	Every year	Local + regional lymphnode	10 mo
3	-	No follow	Distant metastasis (lung, liver)	7 yr
4	-	8 mo	Local	4 yr
5	-	No follow	Local + regional lymphnode	18 mo
6	XELOX 6 mo	No follow	Local	2 yr
7	-	Every year	Local + regional lymphnode	4 yr
8	-	No follow	Peritoneal dissemination	4 yr

Local: Intra mural; PALN: Para aortic lymphnode.

patients was 20.7 (range, 17.0-25.4) and the primary cancer was located in the rectum in six patients. Pathological examination in the previous hospitals showed that all cases indicated a need for additional surgical resection including lymphadenectomy, with the following findings: deep submucosal invasion (6 cases), lymphatic invasion positive (five cases), vascular invasion positive (five cases), vertical margin positive (2 cases), poor differentiation (0 case), and grade 2/3 budding (2 cases).

Follow-up and recurrence after endoscopic resection

Adjuvant chemotherapy after ER was performed in only one case. Four patients were followed up once every 3-12 mo after ER but another four cases were not followed up. The recurrence patterns were intramural local recurrence in five cases, regional lymph node recurrence in three cases, and associated with simultaneous distant metastasis in three cases (Table 2). Among five cases with lymphatic invasion observed histologically in the ER specimen, four cases recurred with lymph node metastasis or distant metastasis, and one case receiving adjuvant chemotherapy after ER experienced only local recurrence. Surgical outcomes are shown in Table 3. All cases were treated laparoscopically, curative surgery was achieved in six cases, and there was no conversion to open surgery. The median operating time was 284 min (range, 205-440 min) and the median estimated blood loss was 168 mL (range, 10-285 mL). Among four cases located in the rectum, three cases achieved preservation of the anus. Postoperative complications occurred in two cases (enteritis).

Among three cases with distant metastasis, laparoscopic sigmoidectomy and excision of peritoneal dissemination were performed in one case. The remaining two cases received systemic chemotherapy after staging laparoscopy or laparoscopic sigmoid colostomy.

Postoperative outcomes are shown in Table 4. Macroscopically complete resection was achieved in five cases and no recurrence occurred during the 3-106-mo follow-up. Adjuvant chemotherapy was performed in three patients who had lymph node metastasis.

DISCUSSION

Of the eight cases in our study, three experienced recurrence with distant metastasis. Follow-up was not performed for all of the patients for whom additional resection after endoscopic treatment was recommended and some cases presented with distant metastasis at the time of recurrence. Yoshii *et al*[8] compared outcomes between patients who underwent additional surgery (ER + SURG) and those who did not (ER only) and reported that the cumulative risks of recurrence was 3.7% (5/180) in the ER + SURG group *vs* 20.1% (13/96) in the ER only group (P = 0.001). The authors also emphasized 6 of 13 recurrent cases in the ER only group were associated with concurrent distant metastasis. These findings support the JSCCR guidelines that additional surgery should be performed. However, additional surgical resection with lymphadenectomy in cases of rectal cancers can be associated with permanent stoma or some degree of anal dysfunction. Certain risks of surgical complications related to the operation have also been reported. Because of these concerns as well as patient age and comorbid state, some cases were followed up by ER

Table 3 Surgical outcomes

Case	Surgical procedures	Operating time (min)	Estimated blood loss (mL)	Harvested lymph nodes	Lymphadenectomy	Complication
1	Staging laparoscopy	139	10	-	-	-
2	Laparoscopic LAR	205	10	15	D3	Enteritis
3	Laparoscopic Sigmoid colostomy	-	-	-	-	-
4	Laparoscopic TCR	339	135	12	D2	-
5	Laparoscopic LAR	440	285	10	D3	Enteritis
6	Laparoscopic APR	403	200	18	D3	-
7	Laparoscopic LAR	227	20	13	D3	-
8	Laparoscopic SCR+ Excision of peritoneal dissemination	230	350	-	-	-

LAR: Low anterior resection; TCR: Transverse colon resection; APR: Abdominoperineal resection; SCR: Sigmoid colon resection.

Table 4 Postoperative outcomes

Case	Pathological data								Survival outcome		Last follow-up
	Invasion depth	ly	v	ew	ow	aw	Lymphnode metastasis, *n*	Surgical margins	Therapy after surgery	Recurrence	(alive/death)	(mo)
1								R2	Systemic chemotherapy		Death	25
2	a	2	0	-	-	-	2	R0	Follow-up	-	Alive	106
3								R2	Systemic chemotherapy		Death	12
4	sm (700 μm)	0	0	-	-	-	0	R0	Follow-up	-	Alive	24
5	a	1	1	+	-	-	1	R1	Adjuvant chemotherapy	-	Alive	3
6	a	1	1	-	-	-	0	R0	Follow-up	-	Alive	7
7	a	0	1	-	-	-	1	R0	Adjuvant chemotherapy	-	Alive	23
8	Adenocarcinoma (recurrence of sigmoid colon cancer)							R0	Follow-up	-	Alive	33

without additional surgical resection.

Oka *et al*[9] reported that the incidence of lymph node metastasis was only 2.2%, regardless of the degree of submucosal invasion depth. Other studies also reported that patients with deep submucosal invasion only had a low cumulative risk of recurrence even without surgery[8,10,11]. Similarly, in our series, one case with deep submucosal invasion only, that experienced intramural local recurrence after ER, underwent curative surgery. Therefore, patients with only the single risk factor of deep submucosal invasion could be rescued by salvage if they are followed up.

In contrast, some studies have reported that lymphatic invasion was an independent risk factor for lymph node metastasis[2] and that venous invasion and lymph node metastasis were independent factors for a poor prognosis[2,12]. In our series, all cases with lymphatic invasion in the ER specimen recurred with distant metastasis. In patients with lymphovascular invasion, additional surgical resection is strongly recommended.

All of our cases were treated laparoscopically. Similar to findings in previous randomized clinical trials[13-15], laparoscopic surgery had less blood loss and associated with shorter hospital stay, and earlier recovery of bowel function compared with the open surgery. These results indicate that laparoscopic surgery is a feasible procedure with short-term benefits compared with open surgery.

Regarding adjuvant therapy after ER, our patient with lymphovascular invasion experienced only local recurrence after adjuvant chemotherapy. Studies of additional alternative therapy in rectal cancers have reported the effectiveness of chemoradiotherapy for patients with high-risk submucosal invasive colorectal cancers who declined additional surgery[16,17].

Surveillance after endoscopic resection is important. Some studies have reported recurrence within three to five years after curative ER[18-21]; however, the ideal follow-up period after ER with indication for additional surgery has not been determined. Yoshii *et al*[8] suggested a recommended follow-up period of at least 5 years based on the finding that their 13 cases of recurrence after ER occurred over 69 mo. Because the longest interval to recurrence was seven years in our series, it is difficult to recommend an ideal follow-up period.

In our study, two of three cases with simultaneous distant metastasis were not followed up using any modality. If ER is performed without additional surgery, we recommend monitoring closely for recurrence. Because the shortest interval to recurrence was 8 mo in our study, we recommend a follow-up interval of at least every 6 mo.

In conclusion, for high-risk submucosal invasive colorectal cancers after ER, we recommend additional surgical resection with lymphadenectomy particularly in cases with lymphovascular invasion. Patients with

high-risk submucosal invasive colorectal cancers should be adequately advised of the outcome of recurrence.

COMMENTS

Background

In Japan, according to the Japanese Society for Cancer of the Colon and Rectum guidelines, when any high-risk findings are observed in histological examination of a resected specimen after endoscopic resection, additional surgical resection with lymph node dissection is recommended. However, some patients refuse the operation because of the patient's will and comorbid state. Particularly, in cases of rectal cancer, additional surgical resection including lymph node dissection may cause dyschezia and a diverting stoma resulting decrease of patient's quality of life is sometimes necessary. Little is known about outcomes during follow-up in cases with endoscopic resection alone. Thus, it is important to evaluate the type of recurrence of these patients and whether they could be rescued by a salvage operation.

Research frontiers

Although some studies reporting local recurrence after endoscopic resection in T1 colorectal cancer patients for whom additional surgical resection was not indicated have been published, few reports discuss outcomes in the patients with endoscopic resection alone. The results of this study was persuasive and helpful for clinical.

Innovations and breakthroughs

In this study, all cases were treated laparoscopically and curative surgery was achieved in six cases. Among five cases with lymphatic invasion observed histologically in endoscopic resected specimens, four cases recurred with lymph node metastasis or distant metastasis. For high-risk submucosal invasive colorectal cancers after endoscopic resection, additional surgical resection with lymphadenectomy is recommended, particularly in cases with lymphovascular invasion.

Applications

This study suggests that for high-risk submucosal invasive colorectal cancers after endoscopic resection, additional surgical resection with lymphadenectomy is recommended, particularly in cases with lymphovascular invasion. Due to lack of cases only by this retrospective study, another case series of prospective study design or randomized control study with multicenter cooperation for correcting data will be required.

Peer-review

The authors evaluated the type of cancer recurrence after endoscopic resection in 8 colorectal cancer (CRC) patients and whether rescue was possible by salvage operation. The reviewer absolutely agrees with the main conclusion of the authors, namely for high-risk submucosal invasive CRCs additional surgical resection with lymphadenectomy is highly recommended after EMR/EMD, particularly in cases with lymphovascular invasion. Though the number of cases is small, that was persuasive and helpful for clinical.

REFERENCES

1 **Muto T**, Oya M. Recent advances in diagnosis and treatment of colorectal T1 carcinoma. *Dis Colon Rectum* 2003; **46**: S89-S93 [PMID: 14530664 DOI: 10.1097/01.DCR.0000083525.97708.B5]

2 **Kobayashi H**, Mochizuki H, Morita T, Kotake K, Teramoto T, Kameoka S, Saito Y, Takahashi K, Hase K, Oya M, Maeda K, Hirai T, Kameyama M, Shirouzu K, Sugihara K. Characteristics of recurrence after curative resection for T1 colorectal cancer: Japanese multicenter study. *J Gastroenterol* 2011; **46**: 203-211 [PMID: 21152938 DOI: 10.1007/s00535-010-0341-2]

3 **Watanabe T**, Itabashi M, Shimada Y, Tanaka S, Ito Y, Ajioka Y, Hamaguchi T, Hyodo I, Igarashi M, Ishida H, Ishiguro M, Kanemitsu Y, Kokudo N, Muro K, Ochiai A, Oguchi M, Ohkura Y, Saito Y, Sakai Y, Ueno H, Yoshino T, Fujimori T, Koinuma N, Morita T, Nishimura G, Sakata Y, Takahashi K, Takiuchi H, Tsuruta O, Yamaguchi T, Yoshida M, Yamaguchi N, Kotake K, Sugihara K. Japanese Society for Cancer of the Colon and Rectum (JSCCR) guidelines 2010 for the treatment of colorectal cancer. *Int J Clin Oncol* 2012; **17**: 1-29 [PMID: 22002491 DOI: 10.1007/s10147-011-0315-2]

4 **Ikematsu H**, Singh R, Yoda Y, Matsuda T, Saito Y. Follow up after endoscopic resection in submucosal invasive colorectal cancers. *Dig Endosc* 2013; **25** Suppl 2: 6-10 [PMID: 23617641 DOI: 10.1111/den.12114]

5 **Hotta K**, Fujii T, Saito Y, Matsuda T. Local recurrence after endoscopic resection of colorectal tumors. *Int J Colorectal Dis* 2009; **24**: 225-230 [PMID: 18972121 DOI: 10.1007/s00384-008-0596-8]

6 **Park JJ**, Cheon JH, Kwon JE, Shin JK, Jeon SM, Bok HJ, Lee JH, Moon CM, Hong SP, Kim TI, Kim H, Kim WH. Clinical outcomes and factors related to resectability and curability of EMR for early colorectal cancer. *Gastrointest Endosc* 2011; **74**: 1337-1346 [PMID: 22136778 DOI: 10.1016/j.gie.2011.07.069]

7 **Lee EJ**, Lee JB, Lee SH, Kim do S, Lee DH, Lee DS, Youk EG. Endoscopic submucosal dissection for colorectal tumors--1,000 colorectal ESD cases: one specialized institute's experiences. *Surg Endosc* 2013; **27**: 31-39 [PMID: 22729707 DOI: 10.1007/s00464-012-2403-4]

8 **Yoshii S**, Nojima M, Nosho K, Omori S, Kusumi T, Okuda H, Tsukagoshi H, Fujita M, Yamamoto H, Hosokawa M. Factors associated with risk for colorectal cancer recurrence after endoscopic resection of T1 tumors. *Clin Gastroenterol Hepatol* 2014; **12**: 292-302.e3 [PMID: 23962552 DOI: 10.1016/j.cgh.2013.08.008]

9 **Oka S**, Tanaka S, Nakadoi K, Kanao H, Chayama K. Risk analysis of submucosal invasive rectal carcinomas for lymph node metastasis to expand indication criteria for endoscopic resection. *Dig Endosc* 2013; **25** Suppl 2: 21-25 [PMID: 23617644 DOI: 10.1111/den.12089]

10 **Nakadoi K**, Tanaka S, Kanao H, Terasaki M, Takata S, Oka S, Yoshida S, Arihiro K, Chayama K. Management of T1 colorectal carcinoma with special reference to criteria for curative endoscopic resection. *J Gastroenterol Hepatol* 2012; **27**: 1057-1062 [PMID: 22142484 DOI: 10.1111/j.1440-1746.2011.07041.x]

11 **Ueno H**, Mochizuki H, Hashiguchi Y, Shimazaki H, Aida S, Hase K, Matsukuma S, Kanai T, Kurihara H, Ozawa K, Yoshimura K, Bekku S. Risk factors for an adverse outcome in early invasive colorectal carcinoma. *Gastroenterology* 2004; **127**: 385-394 [PMID: 15300569]

12 **Cooper HS**, Deppisch LM, Gourley WK, Kahn EI, Lev R, Manley PN, Pascal RR, Qizilbash AH, Rickert RR, Silverman JF. Endoscopically removed malignant colorectal polyps: clinicopathologic correlations. *Gastroenterology* 1995; **108**: 1657-1665 [PMID: 7768369]

13 **Smith PP**. Breast models: a useful tool for instruction. *Occup Health Nurs* 1985; **33**: 513-514 [PMID: 3851244 DOI: 10.1186/1471-2482-13-S2-S12]

14 **Fleshman J**, Sargent DJ, Green E, Anvari M, Stryker SJ, Beart RW, Hellinger M, Flanagan R, Peters W, Nelson H. Laparoscopic colectomy for cancer is not inferior to open surgery based on 5-year data from the COST Study Group trial. *Ann Surg* 2007; **246**: 655-662; discussion 662-664 [PMID: 17893502 DOI: 10.1097/SLA.0b013e318155a762]

15 **van der Pas MH**, Haglind E, Cuesta MA, Fürst A, Lacy AM, Hop WC, Bonjer HJ. Laparoscopic versus open surgery for rectal cancer (COLOR II): short-term outcomes of a randomised, phase 3 trial. *Lancet Oncol* 2013; **14**: 210-218 [PMID: 23395398 DOI: 10.1016/S1470-2045(13)70016-0]

16 **Nakamura T**. Proportional hazards model with covariates subject to measurement error. *Biometrics* 1992; **48**: 829-838 [PMID: 1420844]

17 **Russell AH**, Harris J, Rosenberg PJ, Sause WT, Fisher BJ, Hoffman JP, Kraybill WG, Byhardt RW. Anal sphincter conservation for patients with adenocarcinoma of the distal rectum: long-term results of radiation therapy oncology group protocol

89-02. *Int J Radiat Oncol Biol Phys* 2000; **46**: 313-322 [PMID: 10661337]

18 **Oka S**, Tanaka S, Kanao H, Ishikawa H, Watanabe T, Igarashi M, Saito Y, Ikematsu H, Kobayashi K, Inoue Y, Yahagi N, Tsuda S, Simizu S, Iishi H, Yamano H, Kudo SE, Tsuruta O, Tamura S, Saito Y, Cho E, Fujii T, Sano Y, Nakamura H, Sugihara K, Muto T. Mid-term prognosis after endoscopic resection for submucosal colorectal carcinoma: summary of a multicenter questionnaire survey conducted by the colorectal endoscopic resection standardization implementation working group in Japanese Society for Cancer of the Colon and Rectum. *Dig Endosc* 2011; **23**: 190-194 [PMID: 21429028 DOI: 10.1111/j.1443-1661.2010.01072.x]

19 **Winawer SJ**, Zauber AG, Fletcher RH, Stillman JS, O'brien MJ, Levin B, Smith RA, Lieberman DA, Burt RW, Levin TR, Bond JH, Brooks D, Byers T, Hyman N, Kirk L, Thorson A, Simmang C, Johnson D, Rex DK. Guidelines for colonoscopy surveillance after polypectomy: a consensus update by the US Multi-Society Task Force on Colorectal Cancer and the American Cancer Society. *CA Cancer J Clin* 2006; **56**: 143-159; quiz 184-185 [PMID: 16737947]

20 **Winawer SJ**, Zauber AG, O'Brien MJ, Ho MN, Gottlieb L, Sternberg SS, Waye JD, Bond J, Schapiro M, Stewart ET. Randomized comparison of surveillance intervals after colonoscopic removal of newly diagnosed adenomatous polyps. The National Polyp Study Workgroup. *N Engl J Med* 1993; **328**: 901-906 [PMID: 8446136]

21 **Fleischer DE**, Goldberg SB, Browning TH, Cooper JN, Friedman E, Goldner FH, Keeffe EB, Smith LE. Detection and surveillance of colorectal cancer. *JAMA* 1989; **261**: 580-585 [PMID: 2642563]

P- Reviewer: Sipos F, Yu B **S- Editor**: Yu J
L- Editor: A **E- Editor**: Liu XM

World Journal of Gastroenterology

Submit a Manuscript: http://www.wjgnet.com/esps/
Help Desk: http://www.wjgnet.com/esps/helpdesk.aspx
DOI: 10.3748/wjg.v22.i7.2342

World J Gastroenterol 2016 February 21; 22(7): 2342-2348
ISSN 1007-9327 (print) ISSN 2219-2840 (online)

ORIGINAL ARTICLE

Retrospective Study

Risk factors of biliary intervention by imaging after living donor liver transplantation

Soon Kyu Lee, Jong Young Choi, Dong Myung Yeo, Young Joon Lee, Seung Kew Yoon, Si Hyun Bae, Jeong Won Jang, Hee Yeon Kim, Dong Goo Kim, Young Kyoung You

Soon Kyu Lee, Jong Young Choi, Seung Kew Yoon, Si Hyun Bae, Jeong Won Jang, Hee Yeon Kim, Division of Hepatology, Department of Internal Medicine, College of Medicine, The Catholic University of Korea, Seoul 06591, South Korea

Dong Myung Yeo, Young Joon Lee, Department of Radiology, College of Medicine, The Catholic University of Korea, Seoul 06591, South Korea

Dong Goo Kim, Young Kyoung You, Department of Surgery, College of Medicine, The Catholic University of Korea, Seoul 06591, South Korea

Author contributions: Lee SK performed the study and wrote the paper; Choi JY designed the study; Yeo DM and Lee YJ performed the study; Yoon SK, Bae SH and Jang JW collected the data; Kim HY, Kim DG and You YK analyzed the data.

Institutional review board statement: Approval from the Institutional Review Board of Seoul St. Mary's Hospital (KC13RISI0788).

Conflict-of-interest statement: The authors declare no conflicts of interest.

Data sharing statement: No additional data are available.

Correspondence to: Jong Young Choi, MD, PhD, Professor, Division of Hepatology, Department of Internal Medicine, College of Medicine, The Catholic University of Korea, Seoul 06591, South Korea. jychoi@catholic.ac.kr

Telephone: +82-2-10-32714227
Fax: +82-2-5993589

Received: October 8, 2015
Peer-review started: October 9, 2015
First decision: November 5, 2015
Revised: November 14, 2015
Accepted: December 12, 2015
Article in press: December 12, 2015
Published online: February 21, 2016

Abstract

AIM: To determine the risk factors of biliary intervention using magnetic resonance cholangiopancreatography (MRCP) after living donor liver transplantation (LDLT).

METHODS: We retrospectively enrolled 196 patients who underwent right lobe LDLT between 2006 and 2010 at a single liver transplantation center. Direct duct-to-duct biliary anastomosis was performed in all 196 patients. MRCP images routinely taken 1 mo after LDLT were analyzed to identify risk factors for biliary intervention during follow-up, such as retrograde cholangiopancreatography or percutaneous transhepatic biliary drainage. Two experienced radiologists evaluated the MRCP findings, including the anastomosis site angle on three-dimensional images, the length of the filling defect on maximum intensity projection, bile duct dilatation, biliary stricture, and leakage.

RESULTS: Eighty-nine patients underwent biliary intervention during follow-up. The anastomosis site angle [hazard ratio (HR) = 0.48; 95% confidence interval (CI), 0.30-0.75, $P < 0.001$], a filling defect in the anastomosis site (HR = 2.18, 95%CI: 1.41-3.38,

P = 0.001), and biliary leakage (HR = 2.52, 95%CI: 1.02-6.20, P = 0.048) on MRCP were identified in the multivariate analysis as significant risk factors for biliary intervention during follow-up. Moreover, a narrower anastomosis site angle (*i.e.*, below the median angle of 113.3°) was associated with earlier biliary intervention (38.5 ± 4.2 mo *vs* 62. 1 ± 4.1 mo, P < 0.001). Kaplan-Meier analysis comparing biliary intervention-free survival according to the anastomosis site angle revealed that lower survival was associated with a narrower anastomosis site angle (36.3% *vs* 62.0%, P < 0.001).

CONCLUSION: The biliary anastomosis site angle in MRCP after LDLT may be associated with the need for biliary intervention.

Key words: Magnetic resonance cholangiopancreatography; Liver transplantation; Living donor; Biliary intervention; Endoscopic retrograde cholangiopancreatography; Percutaneous transhepatic biliary drainage

Core tip: Biliary complications and interventions are common after living donor liver transplantation (LDLT). Identifying patients who are at high risk for biliary interventions early after LDLT could help clinicians with patient follow-up. Magnetic resonance cholangiopancreatography (MRCP) imaging was performed 1 mo after LDLT to determine risk factors for biliary intervention. The anastomosis site angle, a filling defect in the anastomosis site, and biliary leakage on MRCP were identified as significant risk factors. Moreover, a narrower anastomosis site angle was related to earlier biliary intervention. Here, for the first time, we have shown that the anastomosis site angle might be associated with the need for biliary intervention.

Lee SK, Choi JY, Yeo DM, Lee YJ, Yoon SK, Bae SH, Jang JW, Kim HY, Kim DG, You YK. Risk factors of biliary intervention by imaging after living donor liver transplantation. *World J Gastroenterol* 2016; 22(7): 2342-2348 Available from: URL: http://www.wjgnet.com/1007-9327/full/v22/i7/2342.htm DOI: http://dx.doi.org/10.3748/wjg.v22.i7.2342

INTRODUCTION

Biliary complications occur commonly after liver transplantation (LT)[1] and are the main cause of morbidity and mortality in LT recipients[2]. Magnetic resonance cholangiopancreatography (MRCP), a non-invasive tool used to visualize the biliary tract, has 88% sensitivity and 94% specificity for detecting biliary complications following LT[3]. Therefore, MRCP is the recommended diagnostic modality for detecting biliary complications after LT[3]. Biliary interventions, such as endoscopic retrograde cholangiopancreatography (ERCP) and percutaneous transhepatic biliary drainage (PTBD) are generally used to manage these complications[4].

Several investigators have documented risk factors influencing the development of biliary complications. Perioperative risk factors include a Model for End-stage Liver Disease (MELD) score > 35, donor age > 60 years, and primary sclerosing cholangitis[5,6]. Intraoperative risk factors include cold ischemic time and anastomosis method (duct-to-duct *vs* hepaticojejunal methods)[5,6]. Cytomegalovirus infection and hepatic artery thrombosis have been reported as postoperative risk factors[5,6].

However, no study has investigated the risk factors associated with the future need for intervention based on MRCP findings shortly after living donor LT (LDLT). Identifying patients at high risk for biliary intervention by MRCP, a non-invasive and accurate tool, during the early post-transplant period would be clinically helpful for managing and following patients who have undergone LT.

The purpose of this study was to determine factors, specifically the anastomosis site angle, that increase the requirement for biliary intervention during follow-up in LDLT recipients on MRCP images 1 mo after LT.

MATERIALS AND METHODS

Study population

We retrospectively reviewed the records of 270 patients who underwent LDLT at Seoul St. Mary's Hospital between 2006 and 2010. Of these 270 patients, 74 patients were excluded for the following reasons: two subjects underwent ERCP or PTBD within 1 mo after LDLT, 38 had no MRCP images taken 1 mo after LDLT, 13 had no three-dimensional (3D) reconstruction or maximum intensity projection (MIP) images or had poor quality images with severe artefacts, 3 underwent choledochojejunostomy as the biliary anastomosis method, and 18 died < 1 mo after LDLT (bleeding, 4; sepsis, 11; graft failure, 3). Finally, 196 consecutive LDLT recipients who underwent MRCP 1 mo after LT were included in this study. The present study was approved by the Institutional Review Board of Seoul St. Mary's Hospital (KC13RISI0788).

Type of graft liver and anastomosis method

All 196 patients underwent right lobe living donor transplantation[7]. Biliary anastomosis was performed according to the anatomy of the hepatic duct: single duct-to-duct anastomosis for a single hepatic duct and double duct-to-duct anastomosis, or hepaticoplasty, for double hepatic ducts. Hepaticoplasty for double hepatic ducts was performed to create one lumen in cases of a short distance between the two hepatic

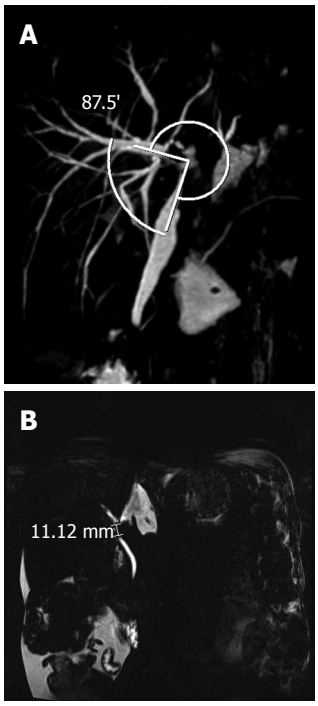


Figure 1 Representative magnetic resonance cholangiopancreatographic image showing the anastomosis site angle (A) and the filling defect (B).

ducts[8]. Alternatively, double duct-to-duct anastomosis was performed such that each duct was anastomosed to the left and right hepatic ducts individually.

Timing of biliary intervention during follow-up

Biliary intervention was defined as procedures involving ERCP and PTBD. During follow-up, these procedures were performed when the following criteria were met: (1) abnormal laboratory findings of biliary-associated factors, such as serum bilirubin, alkaline phosphatase and γ-glutamyl transferase; and (2) radiologically determined bile duct stricture with dilatation above the stricture site[9].

MRCP image analysis

MRCP was performed 1 mo after LDLT. The anastomosis site angle was measured using 3D reconstruction imaging. The anastomosis site angle was defined as the angle between the donor hepatic duct and the recipient's common hepatic duct (Figure 1A). If there were two anastomosis sites, the smaller one was chosen. To improve the accuracy of measurement of the anastomosis site, we checked the measurements on every 3D image rendered and chose the smallest site. We also identified the presence of a filling defect and the length of the filling defect on MIP images. Every image was reviewed, and the filling defect with the longest length was chosen (Figure 1B). The presence of bile duct dilatation, biliary stricture, and leakage was also verified. MRCP images were reviewed by two experienced radiologists (Lee YJ and Yeo DM) without knowledge of the patient's clinical status, and the measurements were made in consensus.

Statistical analysis

The patient characteristics are expressed as the means ± SD (range) or counts, as appropriate. The inter-observer correlation coefficient (ICC) was determined to evaluate agreement between the two radiologists for the anastomosis site angle and the length of the filling defects. The Cox proportional hazards model was used to determine risk factors for biliary intervention, such as ERCP or PTBD, after LDLT. Variables with P values < 0.2 in the univariate Cox regression analysis were considered potential variables for the multivariate Cox regression analysis. A forward selection method was adopted to identify significant risk factors with P values < 0.05. Kaplan-Meier analysis was also performed to estimate biliary intervention-free survival according to the anastomosis site angle. All statistical analyses were performed using SPSS ver. 15.0 (SPSS, Chicago, IL, United States).

RESULTS

Patient characteristics

Of the 196 patients, 136 (70.0%) were men, and the mean recipient age was 49.7 ± 10.1 years. The underlying causes for LT were hepatocellular carcinoma (n = 80, 40.8%), decompensated liver cirrhosis (LC) associated with hepatitis B (n = 51, 26.0%), alcoholic LC (n = 27, 13.8%), and hepatitis C-associated LC (n = 4, 2.0%). Eighty-nine patients (45.4%) underwent biliary intervention (Table 1). At the time of biliary intervention, jaundice (80.5%) and itching sensation (33.3%) were the main manifestations. In laboratory findings, mean total bilirubin was 5.2 (1.7-32.4); mean alkaline phosphatase was 433.1 (130-1465) and mean γ-glutamyl transpeptidase was 502.7 (92.9-2000.0).

Single duct-to-duct anastomosis was the most common anastomosis type (n = 145, 74.0%). Biliary stricture (n = 91, 46.4%) and a filling defect on an MIP image (n = 90, 45.9%) were the most common findings. Biloma and hematoma were noted in 13 (6.6%) and 10 (5.1%) patients, respectively (Table 2).

The mean anastomosis site angles were 112.9° and 109.2° according to radiologists 1 and 2, respectively, and the ICC was 0.896 (P < 0.001). The lengths of the filling defects on the MIP images were 3.4 mm according to both radiologists, and the ICC was 0.921 (P < 0.001) (Table 3).

Factors predicting biliary intervention

Factors with P values < 0.20 in the univariate analysis were the anastomosis site angle on a 3D image [hazard ratio (HR) = 0.42, 95% confidence interval (CI), 0.27-0.65, P < 0.001], recipient age > 65 years (HR = 2.10, 95%CI: 0.85-5.20, P = 0.110), a filling defect on an MIP image (HR = 2.44, 95%CI: 1.58-3.75, P < 0.001), length of the filling defect on an MIP image

Table 1 Baseline characteristics of the patients *n* (%)

Variable	
Recipient age (yr)[1]	49.7 ± 10.1 (13-68)
Older age patients (> 65 yr)	6 (3.1)
Recipient sex (M/F)	138 (70.0)/58 (30.0)
Donor age (yr)[1]	34.0 ± 10.9 (16-64)
Older donor age (> 60 yr)	2 (1.0)
Donor sex (M/F)	114 (58.2)/82 (41.8)
Age difference (recipient age - donor age)	15.7 ± 14.4 (-22 to 42)
MELD score	17.4 ± 10.4 (2.1 to 58.1)
High score patients (> 35)	13 (6.6)
Cause	
LC-B	51 (26.0)
LC-C	4 (2.0)
Alcohol	27 (13.8)
Hepatocellular carcinoma	80 (40.8)
Combined	5 (2.6)
Hepatitis A	9 (4.6)
Other (drug, autoimmune, unknown)	20 (10.2)
Total ischemic time	91.5 ± 16.0 (60-145)
Group 1[2]	93.7 ± 17.9
Group 2[2]	88.8 ± 15.1
Number of patients with biliary intervention	89 (45.4)
ERCP	38
PTBD	12
Both (ERCP and PTBD)	38
Re-operative intervention	0
Mean duration without biliary intervention (mo)	33.5 ± 28.6 (1-89)

[1]Mean age; [2]The groups were categorized according to the anastomosis site angle (median angle = 113.3°); group 1, angle > 113.3°; group 2, angle ⩽ 113.3. MELD: Model for end-stage liver disease; ERCP: Endoscopic retrograde cholangiopancreatography; PTBD: Percutaneous transhepatic biliary drainage; LC: Liver cirrhosis.

Table 2 Clinical profiles of the patients analyzed *n* (%)

Variable	Number of patients
Using T-tube	13 (6.6)
Anastomosis method	
Type 1[1]	145 (74.0)
Type 2[2]	51 (26.0)
MRI findings	
Filling defect on MIP image	90 (45.9)
Diffuse bile duct dilatation	29 (14.8)
Biliary stricture	91 (46.4)
Biliary leakage	6 (3.1)
Biloma	13 (6.6)
Hematoma	10 (5.1)
Thrombus, infarct	3 (1.5)
Common bile duct stone	2 (1.0)

[1]Type 1, single duct-to-duct anastomosis; [2]Type 2, double duct-to-duct anastomosis including hepatoplasty. MRI: Magnetic resonance imaging; MIP: Maximum intensity projection.

(HR = 1.04, 95%CI: 1.01-1.06, *P* = 0.010), biliary leakage (HR = 2.49, 95%CI: 1.01-6.14, *P* = 0.049), hematoma (HR = 1.80, 95%CI: 0.78-4.10, *P* = 0.179), and diffuse bile duct dilatation (HR = 1.59, 95%CI: 0.93-2.70, *P* = 0.088) (Table 4).

The significant risk factors in the multivariate analysis were a filling defect on an MIP image (HR = 2.18, 95%CI: 1.41-3.38, *P* = 0.001), biliary leakage (HR = 2.52, 95%CI: 1.02-6.20, *P* = 0.048), and the anastomosis site angle (HR = 0.48, 95%CI: 0.30-0.75, *P* < 0.001) (Table 4).

Table 3 Patient characteristics and inter-observer agreement

	Radiologist 1	Radiologist 2	Inter-observer agreement
Anastomosis site angle (°)	112.9 (32.5-168.4)	109.2 (31-173)	0.896 (*P* < 0.001)
Length of filling defect (mm)	3.4 (0-33.9)	3.4 (0-33)	0.921 (*P* < 0.001)

Table 4 Cox regression model for factors predicting biliary intervention

Variable	Univariate		Multivariate	
	Exp (B)	95%CI	Exp (B)	95%CI
Recipient age	1.01	0.99-1.04		
Older age (> 65 yr)	2.10	0.85-5.20		
Recipient sex	1.11	0.69-1.70		
Donor age	1.00	0.98-1.02		
Older donor age (> 60 yr)	0.92	0.13-6.51		
Donor sex	0.84	0.55-1.28		
Age difference[1]	1.01	0.99-1.02		
MELD score[2]	1.00	0.99-1.02		
High MELD score (> 35)[2]	0.97	0.42-2.22		
Anastomosis method[3]				
Type 2 *vs* 1	1.14	0.72-1.80		
T-tube	0.98	0.43-2.24		
MRI findings				
Anastomosis site angle[4]				
Group 2 *vs* group 1[4]	0.42	0.27-0.65	0.48	0.30-0.75
Filling defect[5]	2.44	1.58-3.75	2.18	1.41-3.38
Length of filling defect[5]	1.04	1.01-1.06		
Diffuse bile duct dilatation	1.59	0.93-2.70		
Biliary stricture	1.03	0.68-1.56		
Biliary leakage	2.49	1.01-6.14	2.52	1.02-6.20
Biloma	1.54	0.74-3.19		
Hematoma	1.80	0.78-4.10		
Thrombus, infarct	0.64	0.09-4.59		

[1]Recipient age-donor age; [2]MELD, model for end-stage liver disease; [3]Type 1, single duct-to-duct anastomosis; type 2, double duct-to-duct anastomosis; [4]Checked on the three-dimensional image; the groups were categorized according to the anastomosis site angle (median angle = 113.3°); group 1, angle > 113.3°; group 2, angle ⩽ 113.3°; [5]Checked on the maximum intensity projection image. MRI: Magnetic resonance imaging.

Anastomosis site angle and biliary intervention

Two groups were created according to the median value of the anastomosis site angle (median angle = 113.3°): group 1, angle > 113.3° and group 2, angle ⩽ 113.3°. The biliary intervention rate was significantly lower in group 1 (30.6% *vs* 60.2% in group 2, *P* < 0.001), and the mean time to biliary intervention was longer in group 1 (62.1 ± 4.1 *vs* 38.5 ± 4.2 in group 2, *P* < 0.001) (Table 5). Kaplan-Meier analysis comparing biliary intervention-free survival between groups 1 and 2 revealed higher survival in group 1 (Figure 2).

Table 5 Biliary intervention rate by anastomosis site angle[1]

Variable	Total number	Number of events	Rate of events	*P* value	Mean time interval to events (mo)	*P* value
Group 1	98	30	30.6%	$P < 0.001$	62.1 ± 4.1	$P < 0.001$
Group 2	98	59	60.2%		38.5 ± 4.2	

[1]The groups were categorized according to the anastomosis site angle (median angle = 113.3°); group 1, angle > 113.3°; group 2, angle ⩽ 113.3°.

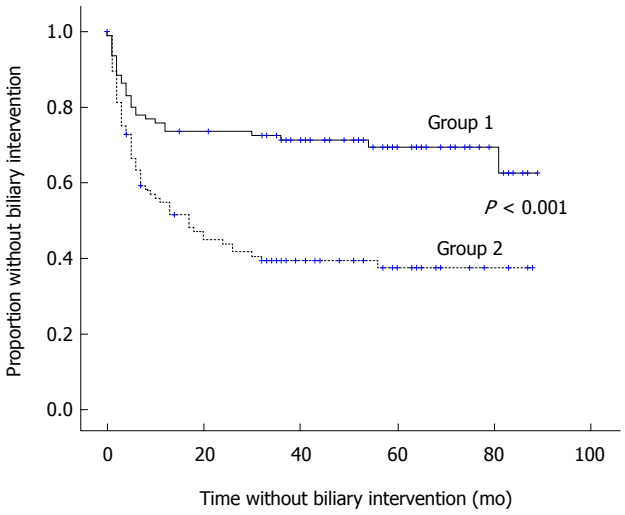


Figure 2 Kaplan-Meier curves for all biliary interventions according to the anastomosis site angle[1]. The Kaplan-Meier curves show that group 1 had a significant survival advantage without biliary intervention compared with group 2 (62.0% *vs* 36.3%, $P < 0.001$). [1]The groups were categorized according to the anastomosis site angle (median angle = 113.3°); group 1, angle > 113.3°; group 2, angle ⩽ 113.3°.

DISCUSSION

Biliary complications after LDLT are an important cause of morbidity and mortality; however, the risk factors for biliary complications that can be determined from an MRCP image after LT have yet to be determined. In the present study, we identified biliary leakage, the presence of a filling defect on an MIP image, and the anastomosis site angle as significant risk factors on MRCP images associated with future biliary intervention.

In our analysis, neither the anastomosis method nor the presence of a T-tube was a risk factor for biliary intervention. Consistent with our results, several studies have demonstrated that the presence of a T-tube is not a risk factor for biliary complications[10,11]; however, some have argued the opposite[2]. Because it is widely accepted to be more physiologically appropriate and has a therapeutic advantage over Roux-en-Y choledochojejunostomy, duct-to-duct anastomosis was performed in our study[12]. We investigated the relationship between increases in the number of duct-to-duct anastomoses and increases in biliary intervention rate. Our findings agree with those of Tsui *et al*[13]; however, they differ from the results of other studies[14,15].

Our results demonstrate that biliary leakage on MRCP was predictive of biliary intervention after LDLT. Biliary leakage can cause complications, such as infection or biliary stricture[16]. Moreover, ERCP and PTBD are the mainstays for managing biliary leakage[17]. Therefore, our result that biliary leakage was a risk factor for biliary intervention is in accordance with previous findings.

A filling defect on MIP images was also a risk factor for biliary intervention. Several studies have indicated the significance of a filling defect detected on MRCP and have suggested that a filling defect could be a sign of bile duct carcinoma or papillomatosis[18-20]. In addition, intra-ductal debris, sludge, and stones could be causes of a filling defect after LT[21]. For these reasons, a filling defect on MIP images should be considered a risk factor for biliary intervention.

However, donor age > 60 years and a MELD score > 35 were not determined to be significant predictors of biliary intervention. Some studies have shown that these are risk factors for biliary complications[5,6]. These inconsistencies could be due to the lower proportion of patients with a donor age > 60 years or a high MELD score (> 35) in our study.

Finally, the anastomosis site angle on a 3D image was shown to be a risk factor for biliary intervention. We demonstrated that a wider anastomosis site angle (*i.e.*, above the median angle of 113.3°) resulted in a lower and delayed incidence of biliary intervention. No study has investigated the relationship between the anastomosis site angle and biliary complications or interventions after LDLT. Thus, we documented, for the first time, that a decrease in the anastomosis site angle on MRCP after LT could be a risk factor for biliary intervention during the follow-up period.

Several limitations of our study should be discussed. First, the design was retrospective. To improve the accuracy of the results, we reviewed every possible factor blinded to biliary outcome. Further prospective studies are warranted to confirm these results. Second, we could not obtain data on patient cold ischemic time, which is a well-known risk factor for biliary complications in deceased donor liver transplantation (DDLT). Generally, however, cold ischemic time is very short during LDLT. Third, the biliary intervention rate we observed in our study was slightly higher than that reported by previous studies. Unfortunately, the reason for the observed high biliary intervention rate remains unknown.

Biliary complications after LDLT are commonly compared with those following DDLT[5]. Thus, pre-

dicting a future need for biliary intervention using a non-invasive method, such as MRCP, could be useful for hematologists and liver transplant surgeons.

In summary, we suggest that MRCP findings of a filling defect on MIP images, biliary leakage, and anastomosis site angle results 1 mo after LDLT can be used to determine the need for future biliary intervention. A further prospective clinical study will be needed to confirm the clinical implications of MRCP 1 mo after LDLT.

COMMENTS

Background

Biliary complications commonly occur after liver transplantation (LT) and are the main cause of morbidity and mortality in LT recipients. Magnetic resonance cholangiopancreatography (MRCP), a non-invasive and accurate tool, is the recommended diagnostic modality for detecting biliary complications after LT. Biliary interventions, such as endoscopic retrograde cholangiopancreatography (ERCP) and percutaneous transhepatic biliary drainage (PTBD), are generally used to manage these complications. Several investigators have documented risk factors influencing the development of biliary complications. However, no study has investigated the risk factors associated with the future need for intervention based on MRCP findings shortly after living donor LT (LDLT). The purpose of this study was to determine factors, specifically the anastomosis site angle, that increase the requirement for biliary intervention during follow-up in LDLT recipients on MRCP images 1 mo after LT.

Research frontiers

In this study, the authors documented several risk factors for biliary complication by MRCP. They suggest that MRCP findings of a filling defect on maximum intensity projection (MIP) images, biliary leakage, and anastomosis site angle results 1 mo after LDLT can be used to determine the need for future biliary intervention.

Innovations and breakthroughs

No study has investigated the relationship between the anastomosis site angle and biliary complications or interventions after LDLT. Thus, current study documented, for the first time, that a decrease in the anastomosis site angle on MRCP after LT could be a risk factor for biliary intervention during the follow-up period.

Applications

Biliary complications after LDLT are an important cause of morbidity and mortality. Thus, predicting a future biliary intervention using a non-invasive method, such as MRCP, could be useful for hematologists and liver transplant surgeons.

Terminology

MRCP: A non-invasive magnetic resonance imaging tool used to visualize the biliary tract with high sensitivity and specificity. ERCP: An endoscopic procedure specialized for viewing the biliary system and treating biliary complications such as stone and stricture. PTBD: An invasive procedure used to approach the biliary system and treat biliary complications *via* a percutaneous route.

Peer-review

Lee *et al* analyzed MRCP imaging performed 1 mo after LDLT to determine risk factors for biliary intervention. The anastomosis site angle, a filling defect in the anastomosis site, and biliary leakage on MRCP were identified as significant risk factors. Moreover, a narrower anastomosis site angle was related to earlier biliary intervention. For the first time, they showed that the anastomosis site angle may be associated with the need for biliary intervention. A further prospective clinical study will be needed to confirm the clinical implications of MRCP mo after LDLT.

REFERENCES

1 **Ryu CH**, Lee SK. Biliary strictures after liver transplantation. *Gut Liver* 2011; **5**: 133-142 [PMID: 21814591 DOI: 10.5009/gnl.2011.5.2.133]

2 **Gastaca M**. Biliary complications after orthotopic liver transplantation: a review of incidence and risk factors. *Transplant Proc* 2012; **44**: 1545-1549 [PMID: 22841209 DOI: 10.1016/j.transproceed.2012.05.008]

3 **Katz LH**, Benjaminov O, Belinki A, Geler A, Braun M, Knizhnik M, Aizner S, Shaharabani E, Sulkes J, Shabtai E, Pappo O, Atar E, Tur-Kaspa R, Mor E, Ben-Ari Z. Magnetic resonance cholangiopancreatography for the accurate diagnosis of biliary complications after liver transplantation: comparison with endoscopic retrograde cholangiography and percutaneous transhepatic cholangiography - long-term follow-up. *Clin Transplant* 2010; **24**: E163-E169 [PMID: 21039885 DOI: 10.1111/j.1399-0012.2010.01300.x]

4 **Arain MA**, Attam R, Freeman ML. Advances in endoscopic management of biliary tract complications after liver transplantation. *Liver Transpl* 2013; **19**: 482-498 [PMID: 23417867 DOI: 10.1002/lt.23624]

5 **Akamatsu N**, Sugawara Y, Hashimoto D. Biliary reconstruction, its complications and management of biliary complications after adult liver transplantation: a systematic review of the incidence, risk factors and outcome. *Transpl Int* 2011; **24**: 379-392 [PMID: 21143651 DOI: 10.1111/j.1432-2277.2010.01202.x]

6 **Nemes B**, Gámán G, Doros A. Biliary complications after liver transplantation. *Expert Rev Gastroenterol Hepatol* 2015; **9**: 447-466 [PMID: 25331256 DOI: 10.1586/17474124.2015.967761]

7 **Wachs ME**, Bak TE, Karrer FM, Everson GT, Shrestha R, Trouillot TE, Mandell MS, Steinberg TG, Kam I. Adult living donor liver transplantation using a right hepatic lobe. *Transplantation* 1998; **66**: 1313-1316 [PMID: 9846514]

8 **Testa G**, Malagó M, Valentín-Gamazo C, Lindell G, Broelsch CE. Biliary anastomosis in living related liver transplantation using the right liver lobe: techniques and complications. *Liver Transpl* 2000; **6**: 710-714 [PMID: 11084056 DOI: 10.1053/jlts.2000.18706]

9 **Na GH**, Kim DG, Choi HJ, Han JH, Hong TH, You YK. Interventional treatment of a biliary stricture after adult right-lobe living-donor liver transplantation with duct-to-duct anastomosis. *HPB* (Oxford) 2014; **16**: 312-319 [PMID: 23981034 DOI: 10.1111/hpb.12151]

10 **Riediger C**, Müller MW, Michalski CW, Hüser N, Schuster T, Kleeff J, Friess H. T-Tube or no T-tube in the reconstruction of the biliary tract during orthotopic liver transplantation: systematic review and meta-analysis. *Liver Transpl* 2010; **16**: 705-717 [PMID: 20517904 DOI: 10.1002/lt.22070]

11 **Sotiropoulos GC**, Sgourakis G, Radtke A, Molmenti EP, Goumas K, Mylona S, Fouzas I, Karaliotas C, Lang H. Orthotopic liver transplantation: T-tube or not T-tube? Systematic review and meta-analysis of results. *Transplantation* 2009; **87**: 1672-1680 [PMID: 19502959 DOI: 10.1097/TP.0b013e3181a5cf3f]

12 **Kirimlioglu V**, Tatli F, Ince V, Aydin C, Ersan V, Ara C, Aladag M, Kutlu R, Kirimlioglu H, Yilmaz S. Biliary complications in 106 consecutive duct-to-duct biliary reconstruction in right-lobe living donor liver transplantation performed in 1 year in a single center: a new surgical technique. *Transplant Proc* 2011; **43**: 917-920 [PMID: 21486628 DOI: 10.1016/j.transproceed.2010.11.024]

13 **Tsui TY**, Schlitt HJ, Obed A. Prospective evaluation of biliary reconstruction with duct-to-duct continuous suture in adult live donor liver transplantation. *Langenbecks Arch Surg* 2011; **396**: 209-215 [PMID: 21058040 DOI: 10.1007/s00423-010-0661-y]

14 **Gondolesi GE**, Varotti G, Florman SS, Muñoz L, Fishbein TM, Emre SH, Schwartz ME, Miller C. Biliary complications in 96 consecutive right lobe living donor transplant recipients. *Transplantation* 2004; **77**: 1842-1848 [PMID: 15223901]

15 **Wang SF**, Huang ZY, Chen XP. Biliary complications after living donor liver transplantation. *Liver Transpl* 2011; **17**: 1127-1136 [PMID: 21761548 DOI: 10.1002/lt.22381]

16 **Park CS**, Jung BH, Hwang S, Park YH, Kang SH, Park GC, Song GW, Jung DH, Ahn CS, Kim KH, Moon DB, Ha TY, Lee SG. External biliary drainage in living donor liver transplantation using duct-to-duct anastomosis. *Transplant Proc* 2014; **46**: 678-681 [PMID: 24767322 DOI: 10.1016/j.transproceed.2013.11.150]
17 **Mizuno S**, Inoue H, Tanemura A, Murata Y, Kuriyama N, Azumi Y, Kishiwada M, Usui M, Sakurai H, Tabata M, Yamada R, Yamamoto N, Sugimoto K, Shiraki K, Takei Y, Isaji S. Biliary complications in 108 consecutive recipients with duct-to-duct biliary reconstruction in living-donor liver transplantation. *Transplant Proc* 2014; **46**: 850-855 [PMID: 24767364 DOI: 10.1016/j.transproceed.2013.11.035]
18 **Sai JK**, Suyama M, Kubokawa Y, Watanabe S, Maehara T. Early detection of extrahepatic bile-duct carcinomas in the nonicteric stage by using MRCP followed by EUS. *Gastrointest Endosc* 2009; **70**: 29-36 [PMID: 19286177 DOI: 10.1016/j.gie.2008.10.036]
19 **Chung YE**, Kim MJ, Park MS, Choi JY, Kim H, Kim SK, Lee M, Kim HJ, Choi JS, Song SY, Kim KW. Differential features of pancreatobiliary- and intestinal-type ampullary carcinomas at MR imaging. *Radiology* 2010; **257**: 384-393 [PMID: 20829529 DOI: 10.1148/radiol.10100200]
20 **Yoon JH**. Biliary papillomatosis: correlation of radiologic findings with percutaneous transhepatic cholangioscopy. *J Gastrointestin Liver Dis* 2013; **22**: 427-433 [PMID: 24369325]
21 **Girometti R**, Cereser L, Como G, Zuiani C, Bazzocchi M. Biliary complications after orthotopic liver transplantation: MRCP findings. *Abdom Imaging* 2008; **33**: 542-554 [PMID: 17851711 DOI: 10.1007/s00261-007-9316-z]

P- Reviewer: Berlakovich GA, Liu B, Marino IR
S- Editor: Yu J **L- Editor**: A **E- Editor**: Liu XM

World Journal of Gastroenterology

Submit a Manuscript: http://www.wjgnet.com/esps/
Help Desk: http://www.wjgnet.com/esps/helpdesk.aspx
DOI: 10.3748/wjg.v22.i7.2349

World J Gastroenterol 2016 February 21; 22(7): 2349-2356
ISSN 1007-9327 (print) ISSN 2219-2840 (online)

ORIGINAL ARTICLE

Retrospective Study

Using typical endoscopic features to diagnose esophageal squamous papilloma

Ming-Wun Wong, Ming-Joug Bair, Shou-Chuan Shih, Cheng-Hsin Chu, Horng-Yuan Wang, Tsang-En Wang, Chen-Wang Chang, Ming-Jen Chen

Ming-Wun Wong, Ming-Joug Bair, Division of Gastroenterology, Department of Internal Medicine, MacKay Memorial Hospital, Taitung 950, Taiwan

Shou-Chuan Shih, Cheng-Hsin Chu, Horng-Yuan Wang, Tsang-En Wang, Chen-Wang Chang, Ming-Jen Chen, Division of Gastroenterology, Department of Internal Medicine, MacKay Memorial Hospital, Taipei 104, Taiwan

Ming-Wun Wong, Ming-Joug Bair, Cheng-Hsin Chu, Horng-Yuan Wang, Chen-Wang Chang, Ming-Jen Chen, MacKay Junior College of Medicine, Nursing and Management, Taipei 112, Taiwan

Shou-Chuan Shih, Cheng-Hsin Chu, Horng-Yuan Wang, Tsang-En Wang, Chen-Wang Chang, Ming-Jen Chen, MacKay Medical College, New Taipei 252, Taiwan

Author contributions: Shih SC and Chen MJ designed the study; Bair MJ performed the pathological analysis; Wong MW and Chen MJ wrote this article; Wang TE and Chang CW prepared the endoscopic photographs and conducted the literature review; Chu CH critically read the manuscript; Wang HY and Shih SC supported this work and supervised the final editing; all authors read and approved the final manuscript.

Institutional review board statement: This study was approved by the institutional review board of Mackay Memorial Hospital, Taipei, Taiwan (15MMHIS004).

Informed consent statement: Patients were not required to give informed consent to the study because the retrospectively analysis used anonymous clinical data.

Conflict-of-interest statement: We have no financial relationships to disclose.

Data sharing statement: No additional data are available.

Correspondence to: Ming-Jen Chen, MD, Division of Gastroenterology, Department of Internal Medicine, Mackay Memorial Hospital, No. 92, Sec. 2, Chungshan North Road, Taipei 104, Taiwan. mingjen.ch@msa.hinet.net
Telephone: +886-2-25433535-2260
Fax: +886-2-25433642

Received: June 24, 2015
Peer-review started: July 6, 2015
First decision: July 19, 2015
Revised: August 12, 2015
Accepted: November 19, 2015
Article in press: November 19, 2015
Published online: February 21, 2016

Abstract

AIM: To better understand some of the superficial tiny lesions that are recognized as squamous papilloma of the esophagus (SPE) and receive a different pathological diagnosis.

METHODS: All consecutive patients with esophageal polypoid lesions detected by routine endoscopy at our Endoscopy Centre between October 2009 and June 2014 were retrospectively analysed. We enrolled patients with SPE or other superficial lesions to investigate four key endoscopic appearances (whitish color, exophytic growth, wart-like shape, and surface vessels) and used narrow band imaging (NBI) to distinguish their differences. These series endoscopic images of each patient were retrospectively reviewed by three

experienced endoscopists with no prior access to the images. All lesion specimens obtained by forceps biopsy were fixed in formalin and processed for pathological examination. The following data were collected from patient medical records: gender, age, indications for esophagogastroduodenoscopy, and endoscopic characteristics including lesion location, number, color, size, surface morphology, surrounding mucosa, and surface vessels under NBI. Clinicopathological features were also compared.

RESULTS: During the study period, 41 esophageal polypoid lesions from 5698 endoscopic examinations were identified retrospectively. These included 24 patients with pathologically confirmed SPE, 11 patients with squamous hyperplasia, three patients with glycogenic acanthosis, two patients with ectopic sebaceous glands, and one patient with a xanthoma. In the χ^2 test, exophytic growth (P = 0.003), a wart-like shape (P < 0.001), and crossing surface vessels under NBI (P = 0.001) were more frequently observed in SPE than in other lesion types. By contrast, there was no significant difference regarding the appearance of a whitish color between SPE and other lesion types (P = 0.872). The most sensitive characteristic was wart-like projections (81.3%) and the most specific was exophytic growth (87.5%). Promising positive predictive values of 84.2%, 80.8%, and 82.6% were noted for exophytic growth, wart-like projections, and surface vessel crossing on NBI, respectively.

CONCLUSION: The use of three key typical endoscopic appearances - exophytic growth, a wart-like shape, and vessel crossing on the lesion surface under NBI - has a promising positive predictive value of 88.2%. This diagnostic triad is useful for the endoscopic diagnosis of SPE.

Key words: Diagnosis; Endoscopy; Esophagus; Squamous papilloma; Narrow band imaging

Core tip: Esophageal superficial and flat lesions possess a wide spectrum of clinical and pathological features. Understanding the endoscopic features of these lesions is essential for their detection, differential diagnosis, and management. Squamous papilloma of the esophagus (SPE) is a rare benign esophageal lesion characterised by whitish and wart-like projections under conventional endoscopy. Overall, 88.2% of patients with polypoid lesions who presented all three typical endoscopic features (exophytic growth, a wart-like shape, and crossing surface vessels) were ultimately histologically confirmed as SPE. Our results may allow endoscopists to more confidently simply observe SPE that meets all endoscopic criteria.

Wong MW, Bair MJ, Shih SC, Chu CH, Wang HY, Wang TE, Chang CW, Chen MJ. Using typical endoscopic features to diagnose esophageal squamous papilloma. *World J Gastroenterol* 2016; 22(7): 2349-2356 Available from: URL: http://www.wjgnet.com/1007-9327/full/v22/i7/2349.htm DOI: http://dx.doi.org/10.3748/wjg.v22.i7.2349

INTRODUCTION

Esophageal superficial and flat lesions possess a wide spectrum of clinical and pathological features[1]. Understanding the endoscopic features of these lesions is essential for their detection, differential diagnosis, and management. Squamous papilloma of the esophagus (SPE) is a rare benign esophageal lesion characterised by whitish and wart-like projections under conventional endoscopy. The prevalence of SPE ranges from 0.07% to 0.45%[2,3]. Most SPEs are solitary and do not cause symptoms. The sex distribution is either predominantly male or gender neutral[3-6] and the mean age at diagnosis is in the 40s to 50s[3,5-7].

The etiology of SPE is not fully understood and at present, there are at least two etiological hypotheses. One concerns inflammatory reactions such as gastroesophageal reflux disease or a chemical or mechanical mucosal injury[8-10]. The basis of this theory is the high percentage of SPE that occurs at the lower third of the esophagus[2,5,8]. Another hypothesis implicates human papilloma virus (HPV) infection[4,11,12]. However, the exact pathophysiological importance of HPV is not yet clear.

At times, tiny flat lesions that are recognised as SPE due to their small size are not pathologically diagnosed as SPE. Most of these lesions are pathologically diagnosed as squamous cell hyperplasia, glycogenic acanthosis, ectopic sebaceous glands, or xanthomas. The aim of the present study was to clarify the endoscopic characteristics of SPE that contribute to its discrimination from superficial esophageal lesion types.

MATERIALS AND METHODS

Patients

Consecutive outpatients scheduled for esophagogastroduodenoscopy (EGD) for upper gastrointestinal symptoms at our Endoscopy Centre between October 2009 and June 2014 were retrospectively analysed. The following data were collected from patient medical records: gender, age, indications for EGD, and endoscopic characteristics including lesion location, number, colour, size, surface morphology, surrounding mucosa, and surface vessels under narrow-band imaging (NBI). Lesion location was

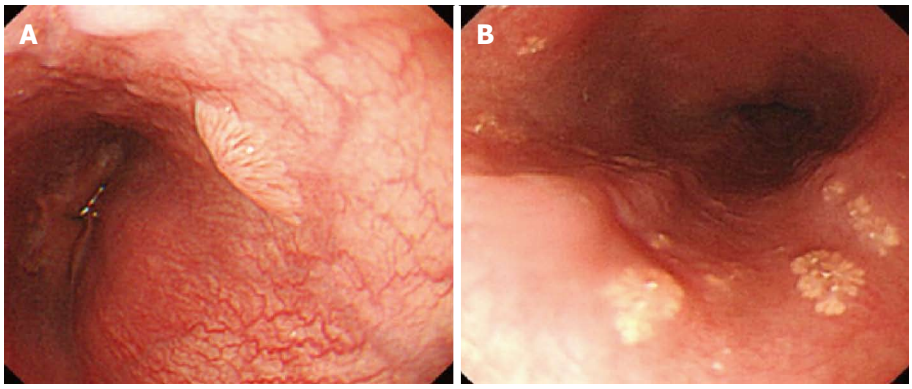


Figure 1 Color of the squamous papilloma of the esophagus looks pale compared to the normal pinkish esophageal mucosa under either near or far focus (A), and the color of the xanthoma looks yellowish under conventional endoscopy (B).

classified as the upper (less than 24 cm from the incisors), middle (between 24 and 32 cm from the incisors), or lower (more than 32 cm from the incisors) oesophagus. Lesion size was estimated using radial jaw biopsy forceps with a width of 6 mm when open (Boston Scientific, MA, United States). The key indications in patients undergoing EGD were epigastric pain, dysphagia, and acid regurgitation or heartburn. This study was approved by the Institutional Review Board of Mackay Memorial Hospital, Taipei, Taiwan (15MMHIS004).

Endoscopic diagnosis

We investigated the diagnostic yield of four key endoscopic characteristics of SPE: whitish colour, exophytic growth, a wart-like shape, and crossing surface vessels under NBI. Series endoscopy (Olympus GIF H260; Olympus Medical Systems Corp, Tokyo, Japan) with an NBI light source was performed in all cases. An evaluation of the entire esophagus was initially performed in a standardised manner by conventional white light endoscopy. Excess mucosal contents were removed using suction and flushes to produce a satisfactory view of the mucosa with no adherent mucus. After turning on the NBI light source, the entire esophagus was carefully scanned by NBI. Lesion specimens obtained by forceps biopsy were fixed in formalin and processed for pathological examination. For patients with multiple SPEs, at least two typical polyps were evaluated histologically. These series endoscopic images of each patient were reviewed by three experienced endoscopists with no prior access to the images. The endoscopists answered yes-or-no questions to determine whether each of the four key endoscopic characteristics was suggestive of an SPE diagnosis. A characteristic was considered positive if two or more endoscopists were in agreement.

Key endoscopic characteristics

Whitish colour was defined as a lesion that looked pale compared to the normal pinkish oesophageal mucosa under either near or far focus (Figure 1A). Exophytic growth was defined as a lesion that not only bulged from the flat mucosa of the esophagus but also floated on the plane without complete attachment to the mucosa (Figure 2A). A wart-like shape was defined as a lesion with an irregular border but with a margin that could be easily distinguished from the normal esophageal mucosa (Figure 3A). To evaluate the fourth characteristic, endoscopy was switched to NBI mode for a more sensitive observation of the blood vessels. Vessel crossing was defined as brownish lines passing through the surface of the lesion (Figure 4A).

Statistical analysis

The size and location of the lesions as well as their endoscopic characteristics (whitish colour, exophytic growth, wart-like shape, and crossing surface vessels under NBI) were statistically analysed to determine the accuracy of SPE diagnosis. Categorical endoscopic data were compared using Fisher's exact test or the χ^2 test, as appropriate. Continuous variables are expressed as the mean ± SD and were compared using the Student's *t*-test. SPSS version 12.0 (SPSS Inc., Chicago, IL, United States) was used for all statistical analyses. All statistical tests were two-tailed, and statistical significance was defined as $P < 0.05$. For SPE and the other diagnostic groups, each characteristic was evaluated independently for sensitivity, specificity, positive predictive value (PPV), negative predictive value (NPV), and accuracy.

RESULTS

Basic demographic features

During the study period, 41 patients who were diagnosed with esophageal polypoid lesions from among 5698 endoscopic examinations were retrospectively reviewed. These included 24 (0.42%) patients with pathologically confirmed SPE, 11 patients with squamous hyperplasia, three patients with glycogenic acanthosis, two patients with ectopic sebaceous glands, and one patient with a xanthoma.

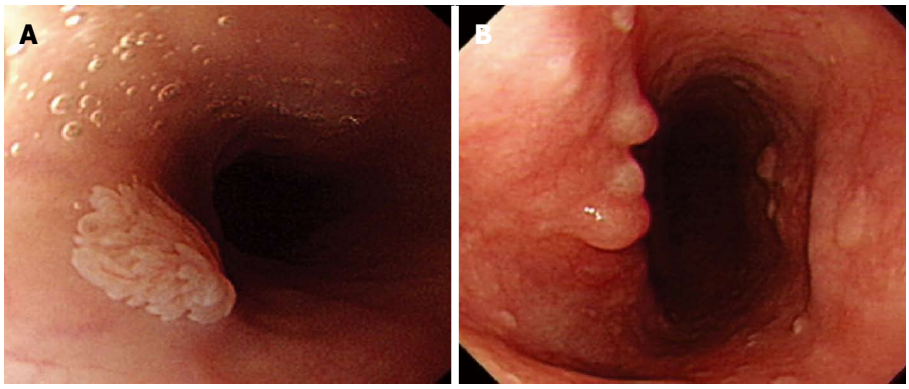


Figure 2 Exophytic growth of squamous papilloma of the esophagus was defined as a lesion that not only bulged from the flat mucosa of the oesophagus but also floated on the plane without complete attachment to the mucosa (A), and SPE may also appear as a sessile polypoid lesion tightly connected to the mucosa (B).

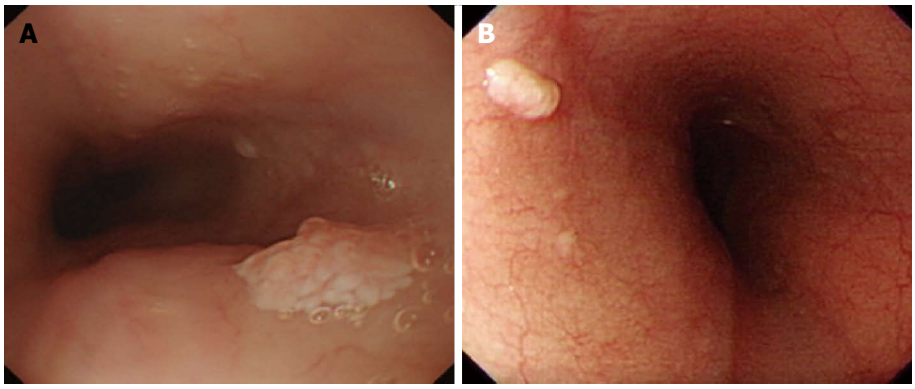


Figure 3 Wart-like shape of squamous papilloma in the esophagus was defined as a lesion with an irregular border but with a margin that could be easily distinguished from the normal esophageal mucosa (A), and the border of squamous hyperplasia was also well-defined and the margin was clear (B).

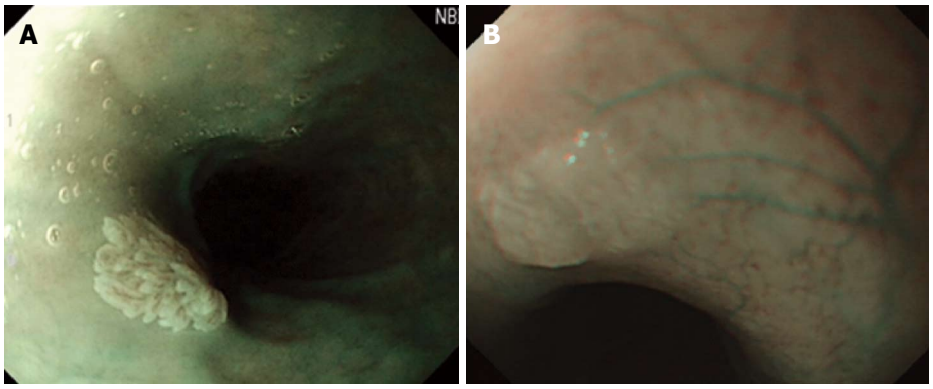


Figure 4 Under UBI mode of endoscopy, vessel crossing was defined as brownish lines passing through the surface of the lesion (A), and by contrast, no brownish lines on glycogenic acanthosis using NBI was observed (B).

The characteristics of all patients are shown in Table 1. The average age of the 24 SPE patients was 48.9 years (range, 28-68 years) and they included more female patients than male patients (20 *vs* 4). The average SPE size was 3.9 mm (range, 2-8 mm). The most common location of SPE was the middle esophagus (57.5%), followed by the lower (26.1%) and upper (17.4%) esophagus. Solitary SPE was present in 22 of the 24 patients. The indications for EGD were epigastric pain in 15 (62.5%) patients, dysphagia in 1 (4.3%) patient, and acid regurgitation or heartburn in 8 (33.3%) patients. With the exception of the gender ratio, there were no significant differences in parameters such as age, lesion location, lesion size, lesion number, or EGD indication between SPE patients and the other diagnostic groups (Table 1).

Table 1 Basic demographic and endoscopic features between squamous papilloma of the esophagus patients and the other diagnostic groups

Characteristic	SPE (n = 24)		Others (n = 17)		P value
Age (yr)	48	(26-68)	53.3	(27-70)	0.197
Gender					0.014
Male	4	16.6%	9	53.9%	
Female	20	82.7%	8	47.1%	
Lesion character					0.383
Location (upp/med/inf)	5/13/6	21/54/25%	10/6/2001	5.9/58.8/35.3%	
Size (mm)	3.8	(2-8)	3.2	(2-5)	0.098
Single lesion	22	92.0%	14	82.4%	0.369
Reason for EGD					0.533
Epigastric pain	15	62.5%	13	76.5%	
Dysphagia	1	4.3%	1	5.9%	
Acid regurgitation and/or heart burn	8	33.3%	3	17.6%	

SPE: Squamous papilloma of the esophagus; EGD: Esophagogastroduodenoscopy.

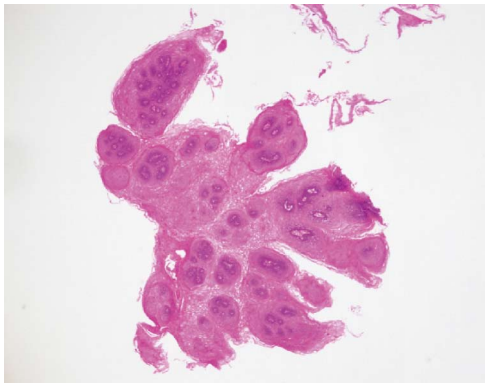


Figure 5 Squamous papilloma of the esophagus is diagnosed pathologically by a hematoxylin and eosin stain. The lesion is composed of papillary fronds lined by several layers of non-keratinizing squamous epithelium and forming finger-like projections (magnification × 20).

Table 2 Each characteristic was evaluated independently for sensitivity, specificity, positive predictive value, negative predictive value, and accuracy in the squamous papilloma of the esophagus and other diagnostic groups (%)

	Sensitivity	Specificity	PPV	NPV	Accuracy
Whitish color	79.2	18.8	59.4	37.5	55.0
Exophytic growth	66.7	81.3	84.2	61.9	72.5
Wart-like projections	87.5	68.8	80.8	78.6	80.0
Surface vessel crossing on NBI	79.2	75.0	82.6	70.6	77.5
Combination of exophytic growth, wart-like shape and surface vessel crossing	62.5	87.5	88.2	60.9	72.5

NBI: Narrow band imaging; PPV: Positive predictive value; NPV: Negative predictive value.

Endoscopic characteristics

Most lesions considered to be SPE were small but recognisable because of margins that were demarcated from the normal esophageal mucosa. We compared the statistical results of each characteristic between SPE and the other lesion types. In the χ^2 test, exophytic growth (P = 0.003), a wart-like shape (P < 0.001), and crossing surface vessels under NBI (P = 0.001) were more frequently observed in SPE than in other lesion types. By contrast, there was no significant difference regarding the appearance of a whitish colour between SPE and other lesion types (P = 0.872).

Pathological characteristics

SPE was diagnosed pathologically by a hematoxylin and eosin stain showing many squamous cells surrounding the vascular connective tissue and forming finger-like projections (Figure 5). By comparison, only an increasing number of squamous cells in the epithelium were noted in squamous hyperplasia. After periodic acid-Schiff staining, glycogenic acanthosis exhibits a combination of cellular hyperplasia and increased cellular glycogen. A xanthoma consists of fat accumulation in foamy histiocytes beneath the squamous epithelium. An ectopic sebaceous gland appears as mucosa covered by benign squamous epithelium with a focal sebaceous cell component. There were no dysplastic or malignant components in these specimens.

Using typical endoscopic appearances to predict SPE

Each characteristic was evaluated independently for sensitivity, specificity, PPV, NPV, and accuracy in SPE and the other diagnostic groups (Table 2). Among the typical endoscopic appearances, the most sensitive characteristic was wart-like projections (81.3%) and the most specific was exophytic growth (87.5%). Promising PPVs of 84.2%, 80.8%, and 82.6% were noted for exophytic growth, wart-like projections, and surface vessel crossing on NBI, respectively. However, fair NPVs of 61.9%, 78.9%, and 70.6% were noted for exophytic growth, wart-like projections, and surface vessel crossing on NBI, respectively. Using the diagnostic triad of exophytic growth, a wart-like shape, and surface vessel crossing under NBI achieved the

highest PPV of 88.2% for SPE.

DISCUSSION

A variety of benign esophageal lesions can be found during endoscopic evaluation. Although they are uncommon, cause no symptoms, and have no malignant potential, such lesions can pose a challenge for establishing an accurate diagnosis and a management plan. This study was the first to distinguish SPE from other tiny flat lesions in the esophagus using typical endoscopic appearances. We concluded that using three key endoscopic features of SPE, namely exophytic growth, a wart-like shape, and vessel crossing, can improve the diagnosis of SPE.

In our study, the average age of the 24 patients with SPE was 48.9 years, which is consistent with the fact that SPE is most commonly diagnosed in patients who are in their 50s[7,8]. Women were extremely dominant in our SPE population, with a male/female ratio of 1/4.75. In previous studies from Italy and other Western countries, most studies had male-dominant populations (male/female: 2.67/1 to 3.4/1)[5,9,11,13] or nearly equal sex distributions (male/female: 1.05/1 to 1/1.21)[2-4,6,14,15]. By contrast, one study in Japan reported a male/female ratio of 1/1.57[6]. Based on our study and the Japanese study, we suggest that there is a geographic difference whereby SPE is more common in women in Asia. Most reports from Western countries indicated a male predominance and a high prevalence of SPE in the lower third esophagus, which may be related to a high prevalence of erosive esophagitis. In our study, more than half of SPE (54.0%) cases occurred in the middle esophagus, similar to the Japanese study that reported a proportion of 52.6%. This suggests that the proposed inflammatory reactions due to gastroesophageal reflux disease may not constitute the main aetiology of SPE in our patients.

HPV infection has been thought to be associated with SPE. The HPV infection rate in the SPE population has been variable (0 to 50%) and the relationship between HPV infection and SPE remains controversial[1,4-6,14]. HPV-positive SPE showed a female predominance, relatively young age, and high prevalence of a middle esophagus location[6]. It is possible that these differences may be related to geographic variability in the frequency of oral HPV infection. We do not know whether or not the female dominance of SPE in our study is related to the prevalence of HPV infection. Further prospective cohort studies would be mandatory to better evaluate the impact of HPV in the pathogenesis of SPE.

On EGD, SPE appear as small, whitish-pink, wart-like exophytic projections that must be differentiated from other similar-appearing lesions such as squamous cell hyperplasia, verrucous squamous cell carcinoma, glycogenic acanthosis, and other rare flat lesions such as heterotopic sebaceous glands or xanthomas. The majority of SPEs are solitary. In our study, all but two patients had multiple SPEs. Glycogenic acanthosis typically appears as multiple lesions that are believed to grow more numerous and larger with age. Xanthoma looks yellowish (Figure 1B) and glycogenic acanthosis often appears paler than the surrounding mucosa. SPE lesions not only bulged from the flat mucosa of the oesophagus, but also floated on the plane without complete attachment to the mucosa. In rare circumstances, however, SPE may appear as a sessile polypoid lesion tightly connected to the mucosa (Figure 2B). The border of SPE was irregular, but the margin could be easily distinguished from the normal esophageal mucosa. The border of squamous hyperplasia was also well-defined and the margin was clear (Figure 3B). SPE is characterised histologically by finger-like tissue projections lined by a core of connective tissue that contains small blood vessels. For this reason, several brownish lines could be observed passing through the surface of the SPE on NBI. By contrast, we observed no brownish lines on glycogenic acanthosis using NBI (Figure 4B).

Although the two lesion types occur in the same esophageal sites and papilloma occurs earlier, the different male-to-female ratios between these two lesion types may indicate that SPE does not share the same risk factors as esophageal squamous cell carcinoma. Most studies indicated that SPE is generally a benign oesophageal lesion. However, there were a few case reports that presented papillomatosis of the esophagus with a squamous carcinoma component[16-20]. One study found synchronic planocellular carcinoma in a patient with SPE[4]. d'Huart *et al*[21] conducted a recent cohort study in France; during a median follow-up period of 21 mo, 2 esophageal squamous cell carcinomas were detected from 78 patients with SPE. The prevalence of associated cancer was 1.3%. One carcinoma was located at the previous resection site of the SPE and the other was located at a different area. In these rare circumstances, SPE or papillomatosis should be surveyed for malignancy.

There were some limitations to the present study. The first is its retrospective design, in that the series endoscopic images of each patient were reviewed retrospectively. We do not know whether the endoscopist could judge these key characteristics accurately in real time. The clinical outcomes should be validated in a prospective study. Second, while we acquired images using multiple angles and focuses, we did not use magnifying endoscopy to obtain more detailed information. We do not know if magnifying endoscopy can provide more relevant key characteristics that would result in better outcomes. Third, all specimens were obtained using cold biopsy forceps. This may be a less accurate method for

pathological evaluation than endoscopic resection.

Overall, 88.2% of patients with polypoid lesions who presented all three typical endoscopic features of SPE were ultimately histologically confirmed as SPE. The advantage of the study is in showing that the benign nature of SPE makes it possible to predict SPE using endoscopic criteria without histological examination. Data from the literature suggest that SPE is a generally benign lesion of the esophagus, except for papillomatosis or a large lesion. Our results may allow endoscopists to more confidently simply observe a single, small lesion in the oesophagus that meets all endoscopic criteria. This prevents unnecessary biopsy, especially for patients undergoing a non-sedative endoscopy that requires them to tolerate a longer biopsy procedure.

COMMENTS

Background

Squamous papilloma of the esophagus (SPE) is a rare benign esophageal lesion characterised by whitish and wart-like projections under endoscopy. However, some superficial tiny lesions that are recognised as squamous papilloma in the esophagus receive a different pathological diagnosis.

Research frontiers

Narrow band imaging is composed of just two specific wavelengths that are strongly absorbed by haemoglobin. The shorter wavelengths (blue band) only penetrate the top layer of the mucosa, while the longer wavelengths (red band) penetrate deep into the mucosa. These wavelengths allow a better understanding of the vasculature of mucosal lesions.

Innovations and breakthroughs

The advantage of the study is in showing that the benign nature of SPE makes it possible to predict SPE using endoscopic criteria without histological examination.

Applications

The use of three key typical endoscopic appearances - exophytic growth, a wart-like shape, and vessel crossing on the lesion's surface under narrow band imaging (NBI) - to predict SPE has a promising positive predictive value of 88.2%. This diagnostic triad is useful for the endoscopic diagnosis of SPE.

Terminology

NBI is a powerful optical image enhancement technology that improves the visibility of blood vessels and other structures on the mucosa.

Peer-review

The authors did a retrospective study to analyse whether some key endoscopic appearances (whitish color, exophytic growth, wart-like shape, and surface vessels) and narrow band imaging can distinguish squamous papilloma from other types of benign lesions in the esophagus. They claimed that combination of three key typical endoscopic appearances-exophytic growth, a wart-like shape, and vessel crossing on the lesion's surface under NBI-has a good positive predictive value, and this triad is useful for the endoscopic diagnosis of squamous papilloma.

REFERENCES

1 **Tsai SJ**, Lin CC, Chang CW, Hung CY, Shieh TY, Wang HY, Shih SC, Chen MJ. Benign esophageal lesions: endoscopic and pathologic features. *World J Gastroenterol* 2015; **21**: 1091-1098 [PMID: 25632181 DOI: 10.3748/wjg.v21.i4.1091]

2 **Chang F**, Janatuinen E, Pikkarainen P, Syrjänen S, Syrjänen K. Esophageal squamous cell papillomas. Failure to detect human papillomavirus DNA by in situ hybridization and polymerase chain reaction. *Scand J Gastroenterol* 1991; **26**: 535-543 [PMID: 1651558]

3 **Sablich R**, Benedetti G, Bignucolo S, Serraino D. Squamous cell papilloma of the esophagus. Report on 35 endoscopic cases. *Endoscopy* 1988; **20**: 5-7 [PMID: 3342776]

4 **Szántó I**, Szentirmay Z, Banai J, Nagy P, Gonda G, Vörös A, Kiss J, Bajtai A. [Squamous papilloma of the esophagus. Clinical and pathological observations based on 172 papillomas in 155 patients]. *Orv Hetil* 2005; **146**: 547-552 [PMID: 15853063]

5 **Odze R**, Antonioli D, Shocket D, Noble-Topham S, Goldman H, Upton M. Esophageal squamous papillomas. A clinicopathologic study of 38 lesions and analysis for human papillomavirus by the polymerase chain reaction. *Am J Surg Pathol* 1993; **17**: 803-812 [PMID: 8393303]

6 **Talamini G**, Capelli P, Zamboni G, Mastromauro M, Pasetto M, Castagnini A, Angelini G, Bassi C, Scarpa A. Alcohol, smoking and papillomavirus infection as risk factors for esophageal squamous-cell papilloma and esophageal squamous-cell carcinoma in Italy. *Int J Cancer* 2000; **86**: 874-878 [PMID: 10842204]

7 **Takeshita K**, Murata S, Mitsufuji S, Wakabayashi N, Kataoka K, Tsuchihashi Y, Okanoue T. Clinicopathological characteristics of esophageal squamous papillomas in Japanese patients--with comparison of findings from Western countries. *Acta Histochem Cytochem* 2006; **39**: 23-30 [PMID: 17460769]

8 **Fernández-Rodríguez CM**, Badia-Figuerola N, Ruiz del Arbol L, Fernández-Seara J, Dominguez F, Avilés-Ruiz JF. Squamous papilloma of the esophagus: report of six cases with long-term follow-up in four patients. *Am J Gastroenterol* 1986; **81**: 1059-1062 [PMID: 3776954]

9 **Carr NJ**, Monihan JM, Sobin LH. Squamous cell papilloma of the esophagus: a clinicopathologic and follow-up study of 25 cases. *Am J Gastroenterol* 1994; **89**: 245-248 [PMID: 8304311]

10 **Parnell SA**, Peppercorn MA, Antonioli DA, Cohen MA, Joffe N. Squamous cell papilloma of the esophagus. Report of a case after peptic esophagitis and repeated bougienage with review of the literature. *Gastroenterology* 1978; **74**: 910-913 [PMID: 640347]

11 **Carr NJ**, Bratthauer GL, Lichy JH, Taubenberger JK, Monihan JM, Sobin LH. Squamous cell papillomas of the esophagus: a study of 23 lesions for human papillomavirus by in situ hybridization and the polymerase chain reaction. *Hum Pathol* 1994; **25**: 536-540 [PMID: 8200650]

12 **Syrjänen KJ**. HPV infections and oesophageal cancer. *J Clin Pathol* 2002; **55**: 721-728 [PMID: 12354793]

13 **Franzin G**, Musola R, Zamboni G, Nicolis A, Manfrini C, Fratton A. Squamous papillomas of the esophagus. *Gastrointest Endosc* 1983; **29**: 104-106 [PMID: 6852465]

14 **Mosca S**, Manes G, Monaco R, Bellomo PF, Bottino V, Balzano A. Squamous papilloma of the esophagus: long-term follow up. *J Gastroenterol Hepatol* 2001; **16**: 857-861 [PMID: 11555097]

15 **Poljak M**, Orlowska J, Cerar A. Human papillomavirus infection in esophageal squamous cell papillomas: a study of 29 lesions. *Anticancer Res* 1995; **15**: 965-969 [PMID: 7645987]

16 **Reynoso J**, Davis RE, Daniels WW, Awad ZT, Gatalica Z, Filipi CJ. Esophageal papillomatosis complicated by squamous cell carcinoma in situ. *Dis Esophagus* 2004; **17**: 345-347 [PMID: 15569375]

17 **Attila T**, Fu A, Gopinath N, Streutker CJ, Marcon NE. Esophageal papillomatosis complicated by squamous cell carcinoma. *Can J Gastroenterol* 2009; **23**: 415-419 [PMID: 19543571]

18 **Donnellan F**, Walker B, Enns R. Esophageal papillomatosis complicated by squamous cell carcinoma. *Endoscopy* 2012; **44** Suppl 2 UCTN: E110-E111 [PMID: 22477170 DOI: 10.1055/s-0031-1291599]

19 **Waluga M**, Hartleb M, Sliwiński ZK, Romańczyk T, Wodołazski A. Esophageal squamous-cell papillomatosis complicated by carcinoma. *Am J Gastroenterol* 2000; **95**: 1592-1593 [PMID: 10894610]

20 **Wolfsen HC**, Hemminger LL, Geiger XJ, Krishna M, Woodward TA. Photodynamic therapy and endoscopic metal stent placement for esophageal papillomatosis associated with squamous cell carcinoma. *Dis Esophagus* 2004; **17**: 187-190 [PMID: 15230738]
21 **d'Huart MC**, Chevaux JB, Bressenot AM, Froment N, Vuitton L, Degano SV, Latarche C, Bigard MA, Courrier A, Hudziak H, Koch S, Kull E, Peyrin-Biroulet L. Prevalence of esophageal squamous papilloma (ESP) and associated cancer in northeastern France. *Endosc Int Open* 2015; **3**: E101-E106 [PMID: 26135647 DOI: 10.1055/s-0034-1390976]

P- Reviewer: Su CC **S- Editor**: Yu J
L- Editor: Wang TQ **E- Editor**: Liu XM

World Journal of Gastroenterology

Submit a Manuscript: http://www.wjgnet.com/esps/
Help Desk: http://www.wjgnet.com/esps/helpdesk.aspx
DOI: 10.3748/wjg.v22.i7.2357

World J Gastroenterol 2016 February 21; 22(7): 2357-2365
ISSN 1007-9327 (print) ISSN 2219-2840 (online)

ORIGINAL ARTICLE

Clinical Trials Study

Effects of endoplasmic reticulum stress on the expression of inflammatory cytokines in patients with ulcerative colitis

Nan Li, Xue-Ming Wang, Li-Jun Jiang, Meng Zhang, Na Li, Zhen-Zhen Wei, Nan Zheng, Ya-Jiao Zhao

Nan Li, Xue-Ming Wang, Li-Jun Jiang, Meng Zhang, Na Li, Zhen-Zhen Wei, Nan Zheng, Ya-Jiao Zhao, Department of Gastrology, PLA 309 Hospital, Beijing 100091, China

Author contributions: Li N designed the research; Wang XM, Jiang LJ and Zhang M performed the research; Li N contributed new reagents or analytic tools; Wei ZZ, Zheng N and Zhao YJ analyzed data; and Li N wrote the paper.

Supported by Beijing Municipal Natural Scientific Research Foundation, No. 7132175.

Conflict-of-interest statement: The authors declare no conflict of interests.

Correspondence to: Nan Li, Dean, Chief Physician, Doctoral Supervisor, Department of Gastrology, PLA 309 Hospital, No 17 Heishanhujia, Haidian District, Beijing 100091, China. linanforty@163.com
Telephone: +86-10-55473165
Fax: +86-10-66767722

Received: May 24, 2015
Peer-review started: May 25, 2015
First decision: June 25, 2015
Revised: September 5, 2015
Accepted: November 30, 2015
Article in press: November 30, 2015
Published online: February 21, 2016

Abstract

AIM: To explore the changes of X-box binding protein 1 splicing (XBP1s) and inflammatory cytokine expression in patients with ulcerative colitis (UC) in response to endoplasmic reticulum stress (ERS).

METHODS: Reverse transcription polymerase chain reaction and quantitative polymerase chain reaction were performed to detect the forms of XBP1s and the expression of interleukin (IL)-2, interferon (IFN)-γ, and IL-17α. Differences between patients with UC and normal subjects were then determined.

RESULTS: Mononuclear cells of the peripheral blood of normal subjects and UC patients with were stimulated with no drugs (control), phytohemagglutinin (PHA), thapsigargin (TG), or both PHA and TG. XBP1s in patients with UC exhibited splicing, which was greater with co-stimulation than single stimulation. Co-stimulation increased the expression level of IL-2, IFN-γ, and IL-17α.

CONCLUSION: The T lymphocytes of both normal subjects and patients with UC responded to ERS by activating the XBP1s-mediated signalling pathway, upregulating the expression of inflammatory cytokines, and increasing the occurrence of inflammation. The mononuclear cells in the peripheral blood of patients with UC were more sensitive to ERS than those in the peripheral blood of normal subjects.

Key words: Ulcerative colitis; Endoplasmic reticulum stress; X-box binding protein 1 splicing

Core tip: Endoplasmic reticulum stress (ERS) can repair stress-induced cell damage and restore normal cell function by the inositol-requiring enzyme 1/X-box binding protein 1 splicing (IRE1/XBP1) signalling pathway. However, the link to ulcerative colitis (UC)

remains unclear. In the present study, we report that T lymphocytes respond to ERS by activating the IRE1/XBP1 signalling pathway, upregulating the expression of inflammatory cytokines, and increasing the occurrence of inflammation. In addition, mononuclear cells in the peripheral blood of patients with UC were more sensitive to ERS than normal subjects.

Li N, Wang XM, Jiang LJ, Zhang M, Li N, Wei ZZ, Zheng N, Zhao YJ. Effects of endoplasmic reticulum stress on the expression of inflammatory cytokines in patients with ulcerative colitis. *World J Gastroenterol* 2016; 22(7): 2357-2365 Available from: URL: http://www.wjgnet.com/1007-9327/full/v22/i7/2357.htm DOI: http://dx.doi.org/10.3748/wjg.v22.i7.2357

INTRODUCTION

The endoplasmic reticulum regulates protein synthesis and folding and promotes the synthesis of various lipids, such as cholesterol and steroids. Various physiological or pathological states, such as an increase in unfolded proteins, synthesis of misfolded proteins, dysregulation of intracellular calcium ions, and changes in intracellular redox state, can cause the occurrence of endoplasmic reticulum stress (ERS)[1]. ERS can repair stress-induced cell damage and restore normal cell functions through an unfolded protein response. Inositol-requiring enzyme 1(IRE1)/X-box binding protein 1 splicing (XBP1) is an important signalling pathway in ERS; IREI/XBPI can reduce protein synthesis, promote protein degradation, increase chaperone generation, slow down ERS occurrence, and return cellular functions to normal. Under ERS, the IREI/XBPI pathway can activate c-Jun N-terminal kinase (JNK)[2,3] related signalling pathways. As a result, release of cytokines and bio-chemotactic factors is promoted, and the body's natural immune system is activated. Researchers have investigated changes in Toll-like receptors[4] and cytokines as well as the immune system to explain the pathogenesis of inflammatory bowel disease and ulcerative colitis (UC). The IREI/XBPI signalling pathway can conserve the integrity of the intestinal mucosal barrier, maintain the number of intestinal Paneth cells, and promote the secretion of cytokines inside the intestine. In this manner, the intestinal mucosa is protected, and the occurrence of intestinal inflammation is reduced[5-7]. However, studies have yet to describe the effects of ERS on T lymphocytes and the corresponding changes in patients in response to ERS. Hence, we determined whether XBPI influences the incidence of UC by adjusting the acquired immune response.

MATERIALS AND METHODS

Main equipment and reagents

Main instruments: The following instruments were used in this study: low-temperature high-speed centrifuge (Eppendorf, Hamburg, Germany); dry thermostat (Hangzhou ORSUS biotechnology Co, Hangzhou, China); DNA diffusion meter (PE, United States); real-time polymerase chain reaction (PCR) system (Eppendorf); polyacrylamide gel electrophoresis and electrotransferring instrument (Bio-Rad Co., Hercules, CA, United States); inverted fluorescence microscope (Nikon, Tokyo, Japan); CO_2 incubator (Thermo Scientific, Boston, MA, United States); high-speed desktop centrifuge (Eppendorf); low-temperature high-speed desktop centrifuge (Eppendorf); vortex turbulencer (Beijing Tongzheng Biotechnology Co., Ltd., Beijing, China); cryogenic tank (Haier Electric Co., Qingdao, China); chemiluminescence analyser (DLR, USA); temperature controller module (Eppendorf; pure water (Millipore, Billerica, MA, United States); Ultraviolet (UV) spectrometer (Pharmacia, Piscataway, NJ, United States); and agarose gel electrophoresis tank (Beijing Liuyi Instrument plant, Beijing, China).

Reagents: The following reagents were used in this study: chloroform, isopropanol, and ethanol (Beijing Chemical Plant); concanavalin A (ConA) (Sigma, St Louis, MO, Unites States); phytohemagglutinin (PHA) (Sigma); thapsigargin (TG) (Sigma); RPMI-1640 medium (Beijing Neuron biotech Co.); FBS (Gibco, Carlsbad, CA, United States); RNAiso Plus (Takara, Tokyo, Japan); RNA reverse transcription kit (Takara, Japan); real-time kit (Takara, Japan); SYBR (Kangwei Reagent Company, Xinzhuang, China); agarose (GENE Co., Chai Wan, China); Goodview (SBSbBio Genentech, Shanghai, China); and lymphocyte stratification fluid (Sigma).

Experimental methods

Normal control (Ctrl) subjects and patients with UC: The normal Ctrl group comprised 18 healthy volunteers (13 males and five females) aged 25–55 years (with a mean age of 40 years). These volunteers were selected from May 2012 to March 2013 from the Department of Gastroenterology, Hospital of General Staff Headquarters and excluded from the UC diagnostic criteria. All of the normal subjects were screened for high blood pressure, coronary heart disease, cerebrovascular accidents and other cardiovascular diseases, diabetes, thyroid dysfunction, and other endocrine, gastroenterological, and metabolic diseases, liver-kidney-pancreatic diseases, hypoxia-related diseases, inflammation, cancer, and stress response. A total of 21 UC patients aged 23–54 years (with a mean age of 39 years) were selected from May 2012 to March 2013 from the Department of Gastroenterology, Hospital of General Staff Headquarters, Xiyuan Hospital and West division of Chaoyang Hospital. Of the 21 patients, 16 were males and five were females. These patients were diagnosed with moderate to severe UC in accordance with the "consensus of diagnosis and treatment of UC", enacted

Table 1 Clinical data of patients with ulcerative colitis

No.	Gender	Age (yr)	Enteroscopic diagnosis	Pathological appearance
1	M	25	Severe, in acute period	Acute and chronic inflammation
2	M	52	Severe, in acute period	Acute and chronic inflammation
3	F	48	Moderate-severe, in acute period	Chronic and chronic inflammation
4	M	43	Moderate-severe, in remission period	Chronic inflammation
5	F	57	Moderate, in acute period	Chronic inflammation
6	M	50	Moderate, in acute period	Chronic inflammation
7	M	42	Moderate, in remission period	Chronic inflammation
8	M	23	Moderate, in acute period	Acute and chronic inflammation
9	M	41	Moderate -severe, in acute period	Acute and chronic inflammation
10	M	23	Moderate, in acute period	Acute inflammation
11	M	45	Moderate-severe, in acute period	Acute and chronic inflammation
12	M	35	Severe, in remission period	Acute and chronic inflammation
13	M	47	Severe, in acute period	Acute and chronic inflammation
14	M	33	Moderate -severe, in remission period	Chronic inflammation
15	F	56	Moderate, in remission period	Chronic inflammation
16	M	51	Moderate, in acute period	Chronic inflammation
17	M	40	Moderate, in remission period	Acute inflammation
18	M	22	Moderate, in acute period	Acute and chronic inflammation
19	M	39	Moderate-severe, in remission period	Chronic inflammation
20	M	27	Moderate, in acute period	Acute inflammation
21	M	43	Moderate-severe, in remission period	Acute inflammation

in Jinan in 2007. The patient data are shown in Table 1.

Cell isolation and primary culture were performed in accordance with the principles and methods of American Type Culture Collection (ATCC).

Grouping and treatment of human peripheral blood mononuclear cells

Peripheral blood mononuclear cell suspensions were obtained from normal volunteers and patients with UC; these suspensions were then seeded in 12-well plates with 1 mL of the cell suspension in each well. The cell density was adjusted to 5×10^8 cells/L.

The experiment was divided into two groups, namely, the peripheral blood mononuclear cells from normal volunteers and those from patients with UC. Each group was further divided into four subgroups, namely, the Ctrl group, the PHA stimulation group, the TG stimulation group, and the PHA + TG co-stimulation group. Each group was set in triplicate wells, and the experiment was repeated thrice.

Table 2 Primer sequences of human cytokines

Human cytokines	Primer name	Sequence
IL-2	Forward	5′-AAGTTTTACATGCCCAAGAAGG-3′
	Reverse	5′-AAGTGAAAGTTTTTGCTTTGAGCTA-3′
IFN-γ	Forward	5′-AGGGAAGCGAAAAAGGAGTCA-3′
	Reverse	5′-GGACAACCATTACTGGGATGCT-3′
IL-17α	Forward	5′-GAGCCCCAAAAGCAAGAGGAA-3′
	Reverse	5′-TGCGGGCATACGGTTTCATC-3′
IL-4	Forward	5′-GCCAAGACCCCTTCGAGAAAT-3′
	Reverse	5′-CCGTCCCTGTTATCTGCCTCC-3′
GAPDH	Forward	5′-TGTGGGCATCAATGGATTTGG-3′
	Reverse	5′-ACACCATGTTATTCCGGGTCAAT-3′

IL: Interleukin; IFN: Interferon.

Table 3 Primer sequences of X-box binding protein 1 splicing

XBP1	Primer name	Sequence
Human XBP1	Forward	5′-A AAC AG A GTA GCA GCT CAG ACT GC-3′
	Reverse	5′-TC CTT CTG GGT AGA CCT CTG GGA G-3′
Mouse XBP1	Forward	5′-A AAC AG A GTA GCA GCG CAG ACT GC-3′
	Reverse	5′-TC CTT CTG GGT AGA CCT CTG GG

XBP1: X-box binding protein 1 splicing.

Drugs were not added to the Ctrl group. A 20 μL PHA solution was added to the PHA stimulation group at a final concentration of 5 μg/mL. Thirty microliters TG solution was added to the TG stimulation group at a final concentration of 300 nmol/L. Twenty microliters PHA solution and 0 μL TG solution were added to the PHA + TG co-stimulation group. The groups were cultured at 37 ℃ and 5% CO_2 for 12 h; afterwards, the cells were collected to extract RNA for subsequent use.

Real-time polymerase chain reaction

Extraction of total RNA: The total RNA was extracted using the TRIzol method and stored at -70 ℃ for reverse transcription.

Analysis of experimental results: After the reaction, the amplification curve and the melting curve of real-time PCR were confirmed. Meanwhile, the PCR quantitation standard curve was performed. The primer sequences are shown in Table 2.

PCR products were then added onto the agarose gel tank for electrophoresis to observe the splicing of XBP1 among the primer sequences of the groups (Table 3).

Statistical analysis

The experimental data were expressed as mean ±

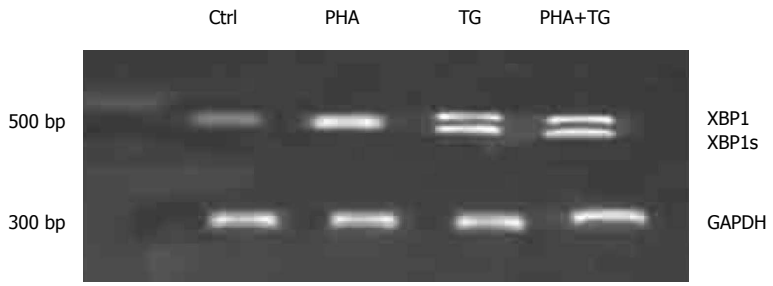


Figure 1 Expression detection of X-box binding protein 1 splicings in the phytohemagglutinin-thapsigargin co-stimulation group. After PHA-TG co-stimulation, the expression of XBPIs in the co-stimulation group was significantly greater than the Ctrl group. PHA: Phytohemagglutinin; TG: Thapsigargin; XBP1: X-box binding protein 1 splicing.

SD, and the statistical software Graphpad Prism 5.0 (La Jolla, CA, United States) was used to plot the data. T tests were performed to determine significant differences between groups; where $P < 0.05$ was considered statistically different and $P < 0.01$ was considered significantly and statistically different.

RESULTS

XBP1s and the expression of inflammatory cytokines in peripheral blood mononuclear cells of normal and UC patients under ERS

Human T lymphocytes were stimulated and activated, and, from the perspective of ERS effects, they produced effects towards the endoplasmic reticulum through XBPI. Under the ERS state, T lymphocytes could stimulate the adaptive immune system through XBPI, thus promoting the expression of inflammatory cytokines.

XBP1s in peripheral blood mononuclear cells of activated UC patients under ERS

The peripheral blood mononuclear cells of UC patients were extracted, stimulated, experimentally grouped, and then divided into the Ctrl group and the PHA stimulation group (with a stimulation concentration of 5 μg/mL). The cells of the TG group were collected 12 h after the stimulation to detect XBPIs. The results are shown in Figure 1. The expression of XBPIs in the PHA-TG co-stimulation group was significantly increased relative to that in the Ctrl group.

The cells were collected from the four groups after 12 h of stimulation, and the expression of interleukin (IL)-2, interferon (IFN)-γ, IL-17α, IL-4, and other cytokines were detected. The results are shown in Figure 2. After TG-PHA co-stimulation, the expression of IL-2, IFN-γ, and IL-17α was significantly increased relative to that in the Ctrl group.

To study the changes of XBP1s and the differences in the expression of inflammatory factors in the peripheral blood mononuclear cells of the healthy Ctrl group and the UC group, additional peripheral blood was extracted from normal volunteers. From this blood, mononuclear cells were extracted, and these cells were stimulated PHA, TG, or both. The experiment was divided into four groups, namely, the Control group, the PHA stimulation group (with a concentration of 5 μg/mL), the TG stimulation group (with a final concentration of 300 nmol/L) and the PHA + TG co-stimulation group. The cells were harvested after 12 h of stimulation to detect the status of XBPIs. The results are shown in Figure 3. XBPIs showed no significant change after PHA-TG co-stimulation.

To study the difference in the expression of inflammatory cytokines in the peripheral blood mononuclear cells of the healthy Ctrl group and the UC group under ERS, we conducted the following experiment. The subjects were divided into two groups: the normal group and the UC patient group. Each group was then further subdivided into four subgroups, namely, the Ctrl group, the PHA stimulation group (with a final concentration of 5 μg/mL), the TG stimulation group (with a final concentration of 300 nmol/L), and the PHA+TG co-stimulation group. The cells were harvested after 12 h of stimulation to detect the expression of 1L-2, IFN-γ, 1L-17α, and other cytokines. The results are shown in Figure 4. The expression levels of IL-2, IFN-γ, and IL-17α in the PHA-TG co-stimulation group were significantly increased compared with the levels found in normal volunteers.

PHA stimulation activated T lymphocytes in the peripheral blood mononuclear cells of normal volunteers and UC patients. When TG stimulation was performed under the ERS status, PHA-TG co-stimulation on the peripheral blood mononuclear cells of UC patients caused significant enhancement of XBP1s compared with the Ctrl group, the PHA stimulation group, and the TG stimulation group. No significant difference in XBP1s was found in the normal population. Meanwhile, PHA-TG co-stimulation of peripheral blood mononuclear cells in normal subjects did not significantly change the expression of IL-2, IFN-γ, and IL-17α. However, the expression of the above cytokines in UC patients was increased with co-stimulation, and the differences were statistically significant, indicating that under the same ERS status, the T lymphocytes in UC patients were much more sensitive towards ERS than normal subjects. UC patients may express more pro-inflammatory cytokines, thus increasing the inflammation response.

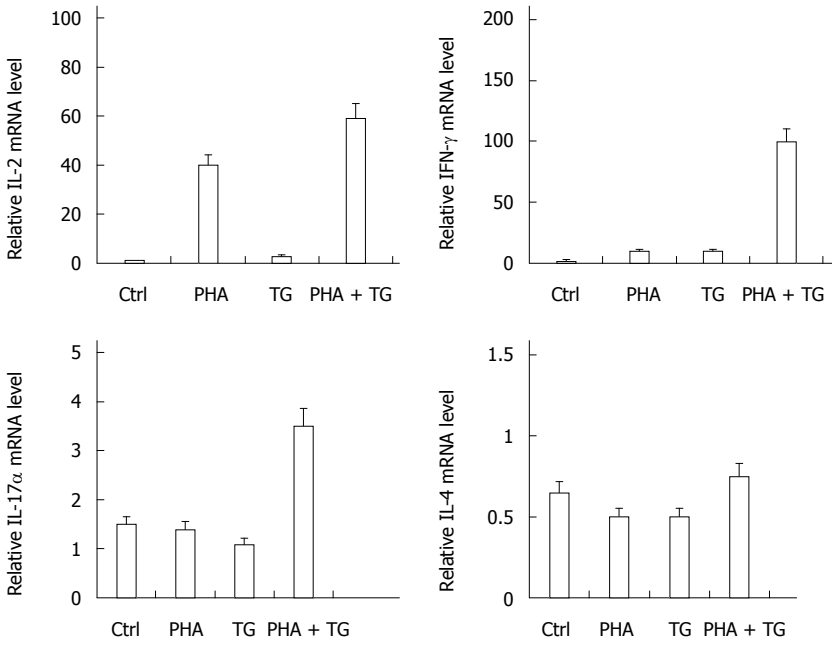


Figure 2 Expression of IL-2, IFN-γ, and IL-17α in the phytohemagglutinin-thapsigargin co-stimulation group. After PHA-TG co-stimulation, the mRNA expression of IL-2, IFN-γ, and IL-17α in the co-stimulation group were significantly increased, while that of IL-4 did not change. PHA: Phytohemagglutinin; TG: Thapsigargin.

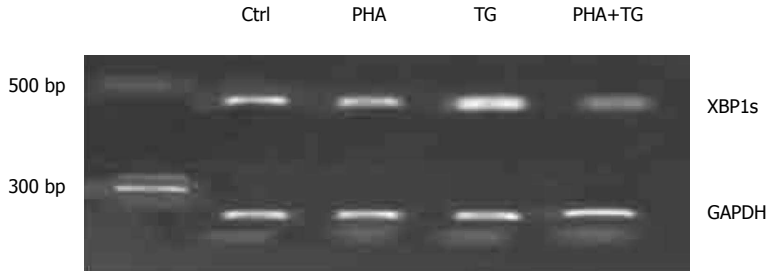


Figure 3 XBPIs detection after phytohemagglutinin-thapsigargin co-stimulation in the peripheral blood mononuclear cells of normal participants. XBPIs showed no significant change after the PHA-TG co-stimulation among the groups. PHA: Phytohemagglutinin; TG: Thapsigargin.

DISCUSSION

Inflammatory intestinal diseases (including UC and Crohn's disease) are chronic non-specific diseases that occur inside the intestine[8]. Currently, the causes are still unclear, although one study has shown that some environmental factors and dietary factors can modulate the clinical course of inflammatory bowel disease (IBD)[9]. Most scholars have classified UC and Crohn' disease as autoimmune diseases[10]. Because the cause of these diseases is unknown, the diagnosis rate is low, and the treatment effects and prognoses are poor. However, the use of biological drugs has opened up new horizons in the management of inflammatory bowel diseases, but the long prognosis remains uncertain[11]. Thus, the problem of diagnosis and treatment continues to be perpetuated. As an organelle of the body, the endoplasmic reticulum plays an important role in the synthesis, maturation, and transport of proteins as well as in the maintenance of calcium homeostasis[12], which affects the folding, quality control, and transport regulation of proteins[13]. Any changes of *in vitro* and *in vivo* conditions affect the functions of the endoplasmic reticulum, thus blocking protein processing and causing a large number of folded proteins to accumulate inside the endoplasmic reticulum, leading to endoplasmic reticulum dysfunction[14]. To ease the pressure of the endoplasmic reticulum, the chaperone binding protein (BiP) dissociates from three important signalling molecules PKR-like endoplasmic reticulum kinase (PERK), activating transcription factor 6 (ATF6), and inositol requiring 1 (IRE1) inside the ERS pathway[13,15-17]. Normally, BiP directly acts on the folding protein to promote protein folding and input the synthesised proteins into the endoplasmic reticulum. BiP also releases the pressure of the endoplasmic reticulum, thereby returning endoplasmic reticulum functions back to normal. If the folded proteins of the endoplasmic reticulum were continuously generated at an enormous rate, the pressure would be sustained and the loading would be increased. The PERK,

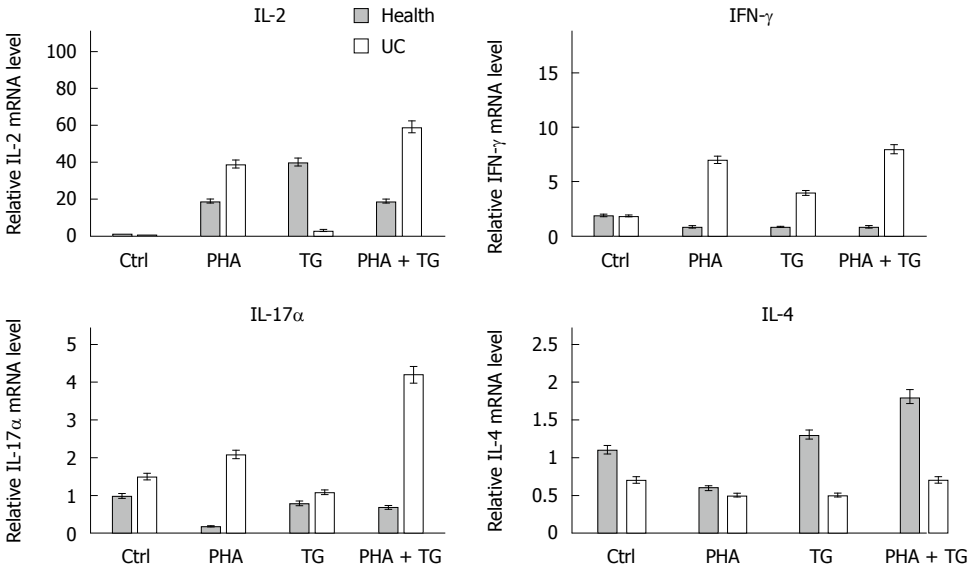


Figure 4 Comparison of the expression of IL-2, IFN-γ, and IL-17α in the peripheral blood mononuclear cells of normal healthy people and ulcerative colitis patients after phytohemagglutinin and thapsigargin stimulation. The mRNA expression levels in the normal healthy people and ulcerative colitis (UC) patients all exhibited changes after TG and PHA + TG stimulation, while the expression of IL-2, IFN-γ, and IL-17α in the peripheral blood mononuclear cells of UC patients was higher than that in normal volunteers. PHA: Phytohemagglutinin; TG: Thapsigargin.

ATF6, and IRE1 pathways would be activated and would reduce the synthesis of proteins, promote the degradation of proteins, and increase the generation of BiP, thus slowing the occurrence of ERS. However, if the pressure load inside the endoplasmic reticulum is not lifted, it would eventually lead to apoptosis[18]. During the occurrence of ERS, the immune system, the channels associated with inflammation and pressure, and the oxidative stress pathways are affected; hence, a number of chronic metabolic diseases and autoimmune diseases, such as type 2 diabetes, fatty liver, neuropathic lesions and various tumours and inflammatory intestinal diseases, would be induced[19]. Recent studies have linked ER stress and the UPR to IBD[20].

Experiments have shown that under ERS, the IRE1/XBP1 pathway could activate the body's natural immune system through TLR (Toll-like receptors)[4]. On the one hand, the activation of XBP1 within macrophages could promote the induction of NOX2 NADPH oxidase by TLR[21]. On the other hand, it could activate the ROS system[22], thus causing the activation of XBP1. This activation would ultimately activate NF-KB, JNK, and other signalling pathways[2,23,24], promote the secretion of IL-6, TNFα, and other cytokines, and act in the early stage of immune response[22]. Under ERS, the expression of XBP1s significantly increased after activation of human T lymphocytes[25]; the expression of IL-2, IFT-γ, and IL-17α increased, and inflammation increased. Compared with inactivated T lymphocytes, the activated T lymphocytes exhibited a significant enhancement of XBP1s after TG stimulation. XBP1s is the active form of XBP1. When the IRE1/XBP1 signalling pathway was activated, XBP1s was significantly enhanced[26]. In comparison with T lymphocytes activated by single stimuli, the mRNA expression levels of IL-2, IFN-γ, and IL-17α was significantly increased after the co-stimulation of the activator and TG[27-29]. Collectively activated T lymphocytes affect ERS by XBP1, namely; under ERS, XBP1 could not only activate the innate immune response[30] but also activate the body's acquired immune response and release cytokines. Acquired immune response is one of the most important parts of the immune system, playing a key role in the body's processing of the immune response. Acquired immunity participates in and affects the occurrence and development of various autoimmune diseases, and influences their prognosis. Previous studies found that the incidence of inflammatory intestinal diseases was most closely related to the autoimmune system. The TLR family was shown to regulate T cells through 15 natural immunity and $CD4^+CD25^+$[31] and to play important regulatory roles in the pathogenesis of IBD by adaptive immunity. Some cytokines, such as TNFα, IL-17α, IL-23, and TGF-β, play important roles in the pathogenesis of inflammatory intestinal diseases, though the inflammatory intestinal diseases are still not clearly understood. In this study, key molecules in the three channels of endoplasmic reticulum were detected. The expressions of IRE1/XBP1 and ATF6 in the intestinal epithelial mucosa of patients with severe UC were much higher than expressions in the normal volunteers, while the expression of PERK was reduced[32]. ERS occurred in patients with inflammatory intestinal disease, while the specific mechanism was still unclear.

Our experiment was designed and conducted based on ERS activation of the acquired immune system in UC patients, and it role in the occurrence

and development of UC. We sampled the peripheral blood of UC patients, separated the mononuclear cells, and then stimulated them with PHA to activate the T lymphocytes. Meanwhile, the TG stimulation was also performed to detect the conditions of XBP1s. Under ERS, UC patients exhibited obvious XBP1s inside the activated T lymphocytes, which was significantly enhanced compared with the unstimulated group and the PHA or TG single-stimulation group. We also detected the cytokines of each group after treatment and found that the mRNA expression of IL-2, IFN-γ, and IL-17α in the peripheral blood mononuclear cells of UC patients was significantly increased after co-stimulation by PHA and TG. We also isolated the peripheral blood mononuclear cells from healthy subjects and stimulated them with PHA, TG, or a combination of both. The results showed that after co-stimulation, the expression of IL-2, IFN-γ, and IL-17α, as well as XBP1s was increased. However, compared with the UC patients, the expression of cytokines and XBP1s in the other groups was significantly reduced. Thus, we believe that the peripheral blood mononuclear cells of UC patients were much more sensitive to ERS. Under ERS, the expression of XBP1s in the peripheral blood mononuclear cells of activated UC patients was much more obvious and could activate the body to achieve the acquired immune response to promote the expression of cytokines, such as IL-2, IFN-γ and IL-17α, aggravating the occurrence of UC.

The activation of T lymphocytes and peripheral blood mononuclear cells in UC patients by TG stimulation significantly increased the expression of IL-2, IFN-γ, and IL-17α. The expression of IL-14, however, was not significantly changed. T helper (Th) cells inside the body's T cells were divided into two subtypes (Th1 and Th2), and IL-2 and IFN-γ were expressed by Th1-type cells, while IL-4 was expressed by Th2 cells. Under normal circumstances, Th1yu and TH2 exist in dynamic equilibrium. The expression of IL-2, IFN-γ, and IL-17α increased, while IL-4 was not increased, indicating that under ERS, lymphocytes drifted towards Th1. The Th1 cells mainly mediate the cellular immune response, and are thus involved in inducing the occurrence of organ-specific autoimmune diseases. This observation further indicated that the body was more likely to develop autoimmune diseases under ERS, which might be an important mechanism for the occurrence of UC. Under ERS, the expression of IL-2, IFN-γ, and IL-17α in the lymphocytes of UC patients were increased, while the expression of IL-4 showed no significant change, indicating that the lymphocytes in UC patients drifted towards TH1; no such phenomenon occurred in healthy people, which is consistent with literature[33].

IL-17α is a cytokine secreted and released by the TH17 subgroup. As a pro-inflammation cytokine, IL-17α often plays roles in autoimmune and infectious diseases[34]. The expression of IL-17α was significantly increased during the process of UC[35]. We used CT to stimulate the peripheral blood mononuclear cells of normal subjects and activated UC patients and found that compared with normal people, the expression of IL-17α was increased in the lymphocytes of UC patients. In addition, the expression of IL-17α increased by the PHA–CG co-stimulation was significantly higher than PHA stimulation alone. We used TG to stimulate the activated human T lymphocytes, and the expression of IL-17α was significantly increased, indicating that ERS could activate T lymphocytes to express IL-17α, thus aggravating inflammation. We used TG to stimulate the activated lymphocytes in UC patients, and the expression level was significantly higher than that in PHA or TG stimulation alone, indicating that UC patients were much more sensitive to ERS.

In summary, under ERS, activated human T lymphocytes could affect the endoplasmic reticulum and promote the expression of inflammatory cytokines through XBP1s, and the lymphocytes drifted towards Th1. Therefore, we considered that under ERS, the acquired immune response could be activated, thus promoting the expressions of inflammatory cytokines and aggravating the occurrence of autoimmune diseases. UC is considered an autoimmune disease. Compared with normal healthy individuals, the peripheral blood lymphocytes of UC patients were much more sensitive to ERS. The lymphocytes could respond to ERS through XBP1s, thus activating the body to achieve the acquired immune response, promoting the expressions of IL-2, IL-17α, and IFN-γ. This response might contribute to the pathogenesis of UC; blocking this pathway might be one way to treat UC, although it still needs to be confirmed by further experiments.

In conclusion, this study found that human T lymphocytes responded to ERS through XBP1s and promoted the secretions of IFN-γ, IL-17α, and IL-2. In addition, we also found that the peripheral blood mononuclear cells of UC patients were much more sensitive to ERS. The T lymphocytes of the patient could respond to ERS through the IRE1/XBP1 pathway, activate the body to obtain the acquired immune response, and promote the expression of inflammatory cytokines. Hence, T lymphocytes play important roles towards the occurrence and development of inflammation.

COMMENTS

Background

Various physiological or pathological states can cause the occurrence of endoplasmic reticulum stress (ERS); ERS can repair stress-induced cell damage and restore normal cell functions through an unfolded protein response. Inositol-requiring enzyme 1(IRE1)/X-box binding protein 1 splicing (XBP1) is an important signalling pathway in ERS. Although the IREI/XBPI signalling pathway can conserve the integrity of the intestinal mucosal barrier, maintain the number of intestinal Paneth cells, and promote the secretion of cytokines inside the intestine, no studies have yet described the effects of ERS on T lymphocytes and the corresponding changes in patients in response to

ERS. Hence, the authors determined whether XBPI influences the incidence of UC by adjusting the acquired immune response.

Research frontiers

Experiments showed that under ERS, the expression of XBP1s is significantly increased after human T lymphocytes were activated and that the IRE1/XBP1 pathway could activate the body's natural immune system through TLR. This activation would ultimately activate NF-κB, JNK, and other signalling pathways, promote the secretion of IL-6, TNFα, and other cytokines, and act in the early stage of immune response.

Innovations and breakthroughs

This study provided direct evidence that T lymphocytes of patients with UC respond similarly to those of normal subjects. The response was through the XBP1s-mediated signalling pathway and was associated with activation of the expression of inflammatory cytokines and increased occurrence of inflammation. In contrast, the mononuclear cells of peripheral blood of UC patients were more sensitive to ERS than the normal subjects.

Applications

Mononuclear cells of peripheral blood may be a possible target in the treatment of UC.

Terminology

ERS, the stress status of the endoplasmic reticulum, repairs stress-induced cell damage and restores normal cell function. IRE1/XBP1 are two kinds of proteins that promote the pathway of ERS repair.

Peer-review

In this interesting study, Nan *et al* explored changes in XBP1s forms and the expression of inflammatory cytokines in patients with UC towards ERS. The results of this study are good.

REFERENCES

1 **Moore KA**, Plant JJ, Gaddam D, Craft J, Hollien J. Regulation of sumo mRNA during endoplasmic reticulum stress. *PLoS One* 2013; **8**: e75723 [PMID: 24058701 DOI: 10.1371/journal.pone.0075723]

2 **Urano F**, Wang X, Bertolotti A, Zhang Y, Chung P, Harding HP, Ron D. Coupling of stress in the ER to activation of JNK protein kinases by transmembrane protein kinase IRE1. *Science* 2000; **287**: 664-666 [PMID: 10650002 DOI: 10.1126/science.287.5453.664]

3 **Nishitoh H**, Matsuzawa A, Tobiume K, Saegusa K, Takeda K, Inoue K, Hori S, Kakizuka A, Ichijo H. ASK1 is essential for endoplasmic reticulum stress-induced neuronal cell death triggered by expanded polyglutamine repeats. *Genes Dev* 2002; **16**: 1345-1355 [PMID: 12050113 DOI: 10.1101/gad.992302]

4 **Zhang K**, Kaufman RJ. From endoplasmic-reticulum stress to the inflammatory response. *Nature* 2008; **454**: 455-462 [PMID: 18650916 DOI: 10.1038/nature07203]

5 **Kaser A**, Lee AH, Franke A, Glickman JN, Zeissig S, Tilg H, Nieuwenhuis EE, Higgins DE, Schreiber S, Glimcher LH, Blumberg RS. XBP1 links ER stress to intestinal inflammation and confers genetic risk for human inflammatory bowel disease. *Cell* 2008; **134**: 743-756 [PMID: 18775308 DOI: 10.1016/j.cell.2008.07.021]

6 **Keshav S**, Lawson L, Chung LP, Stein M, Perry VH, Gordon S. Tumor necrosis factor mRNA localized to Paneth cells of normal murine intestinal epithelium by in situ hybridization. *J Exp Med* 1990; **171**: 327-332 [PMID: 2404082 DOI: 10.1084/jem.171.1.327]

7 **Cadwell K**, Liu JY, Brown SL, Miyoshi H, Loh J, Lennerz JK, Kishi C, Kc W, Carrero JA, Hunt S, Stone CD, Brunt EM, Xavier RJ, Sleckman BP, Li E, Mizushima N, Stappenbeck TS, Virgin HW. A key role for autophagy and the autophagy gene Atg16l1 in mouse and human intestinal Paneth cells. *Nature* 2008; **456**: 259-263 [PMID: 18849966 DOI: 10.1038/nature07416]

8 **Morís G**. Inflammatory bowel disease: an increased risk factor for neurologic complications. *World J Gastroenterol* 2014; **20**: 1228-1237 [PMID: 24574797 DOI: 10.3748/wjg.v20.i5.1228]

9 **Cabré E**, Domènech E. Impact of environmental and dietary factors on the course of inflammatory bowel disease. *World J Gastroenterol* 2012; **18**: 3814-3822 [PMID: 22876032 DOI: 10.3748/wjg.v18.i29.3814]

10 **Schmidt C**, Stallmach A. Etiology and pathogenesis of inflammatory bowel disease. *Minerva Gastroenterol Dietol* 2005; **51**: 127-145 [PMID: 15990703]

11 **Rencz F**, Péntek M, Bortlik M, Zagorowicz E, Hlavaty T, Śliwczyński A, Diculescu MM, Kupcinskas L, Gecse KB, Gulácsi L, Lakatos PL. Biological therapy in inflammatory bowel diseases: access in Central and Eastern Europe. *World J Gastroenterol* 2015; **21**: 1728-1737 [PMID: 25684937 DOI: 10.3748/wjg.v21.i6.1728]

12 **Arbabian A**, Brouland JP, Gélébart P, Kovàcs T, Bobe R, Enouf J, Papp B. Endoplasmic reticulum calcium pumps and cancer. *Biofactors* 2011; **37**: 139-149 [PMID: 21674635 DOI: 10.1002/biof.142]

13 **Adolph TE**, Niederreiter L, Blumberg RS, Kaser A. Endoplasmic reticulum stress and inflammation. *Dig Dis* 2012; **30**: 341-346 [PMID: 22796794 DOI: 10.1159/000338121]

14 **Rutkowski DT**, Kaufman RJ. A trip to the ER: coping with stress. *Trends Cell Biol* 2004; **14**: 20-28 [PMID: 14729177 DOI: 10.1016/j.tcb.2003.11.001]

15 **Scharl M**, Rogler G. Inflammatory bowel disease pathogenesis: what is new? *Curr Opin Gastroenterol* 2012; **28**: 301-309 [PMID: 22573190 DOI: 10.1097/MOG.0b013e328353e61e]

16 **Dai MX**, Zheng XH, Yu J, Yin T, Ma MJ, Zhang L, Liu M, Ma Y, Liu LW, Gao X, Li Y, Song LQ, Wang HC. The impact of intermittent and repetitive cold stress exposure on endoplasmic reticulum stress and instability of atherosclerotic plaques. *Cell Physiol Biochem* 2014; **34**: 393-404 [PMID: 25059288 DOI: 10.1159/000363008]

17 **Hetz C**. The unfolded protein response: controlling cell fate decisions under ER stress and beyond. *Nat Rev Mol Cell Biol* 2012; **13**: 89-102 [PMID: 22251901 DOI: 10.1038/nrm3270]

18 **Yoo SA**, You S, Yoon HJ, Kim DH, Kim HS, Lee K, Ahn JH, Hwang D, Lee AS, Kim KJ, Park YJ, Cho CS, Kim WU. A novel pathogenic role of the ER chaperone GRP78/BiP in rheumatoid arthritis. *J Exp Med* 2012; **209**: 871-886 [PMID: 22430489 DOI: 10.1084/jem.20111783]

19 **Hotamisligil GS**. Endoplasmic reticulum stress and the inflammatory basis of metabolic disease. *Cell* 2010; **140**: 900-917 [PMID: 20303879 DOI: 10.1016/j.cell.2010.02.034]

20 **Luo K**, Cao SS. Endoplasmic reticulum stress in intestinal epithelial cell function and inflammatory bowel disease. *Gastroenterol Res Pract* 2015; **2015**: 328791 [PMID: 25755668]

21 **Martinon F**, Chen X, Lee AH, Glimcher LH. TLR activation of the transcription factor XBP1 regulates innate immune responses in macrophages. *Nat Immunol* 2010; **11**: 411-418 [PMID: 20351694 DOI: 10.1038/ni.1857]

22 **Malhotra JD**, Kaufman RJ. Endoplasmic reticulum stress and oxidative stress: a vicious cycle or a double-edged sword? *Antioxid Redox Signal* 2007; **9**: 2277-2293 [PMID: 17979528 DOI: 10.1089/ars.2007.1782]

23 **Kawai T**, Akira S. TLR signaling. *Semin Immunol* 2007; **19**: 24-32 [PMID: 17275323]

24 **Hu P**, Han Z, Couvillon AD, Kaufman RJ, Exton JH. Autocrine tumor necrosis factor alpha links endoplasmic reticulum stress to the membrane death receptor pathway through IRE1alpha-mediated NF-kappaB activation and down-regulation of TRAF2 expression. *Mol Cell Biol* 2006; **26**: 3071-3084 [PMID: 16581782 DOI: 10.1128/MCB.26.8.3071-3084.2006]

25 **Kaser A**, Blumberg RS. Endoplasmic reticulum stress in the intestinal epithelium and inflammatory bowel disease. *Semin Immunol* 2009; **21**: 156-163 [PMID: 19237300 DOI: 10.1016/j.smim.2009.01.001]

26 **Bae J**, Prabhala R, Voskertchian A, Brown A, Maguire C, Richardson P, Dranoff G, Anderson KC, Munshi NC. A

multiepitope of XBP1, CD138 and CS1 peptides induces myeloma-specific cytotoxic T lymphocytes in T cells of smoldering myeloma patients. *Leukemia* 2015; **29**: 218-229 [PMID: 24935722 DOI: 10.1038/leu.2014.159]

27 **Staege MS**, Hansen G, Baersch G, Burdach S. Functional and molecular characterization of interleukin-2 transgenic Ewing tumor cells for in vivo immunotherapy. *Pediatr Blood Cancer* 2004; **43**: 23-34 [PMID: 15170886 DOI: 10.1002/pbc.20013]

28 **Rice J**, Dossett ML, Ohlén C, Buchan SL, Kendall TJ, Dunn SN, Stevenson FK, Greenberg PD. DNA fusion gene vaccination mobilizes effective anti-leukemic cytotoxic T lymphocytes from a tolerized repertoire. *Eur J Immunol* 2008; **38**: 2118-2130 [PMID: 18624299 DOI: 10.1002/eji.200838213]

29 **McMaster WG**, Kirabo A, Madhur MS, Harrison DG. Inflammation, immunity, and hypertensive end-organ damage. *Circ Res* 2015; **116**: 1022-1033 [PMID: 25767287 DOI: 10.1161/CIRCRESAHA.116.303697]

30 **Siddique I**, Khan I. Mechanism of regulation of Na-H exchanger in inflammatory bowel disease: role of TLR-4 signaling mechanism. *Dig Dis Sci* 2011; **56**: 1656-1662 [PMID: 21221801 DOI: 10.1007/s10620-010-1524-7]

31 **Kanai T**, Kawamura T, Dohi T, Makita S, Nemoto Y, Totsuka T, Watanabe M. TH1/TH2-mediated colitis induced by adoptive transfer of CD4+CD45RBhigh T lymphocytes into nude mice. *Inflamm Bowel Dis* 2006; **12**: 89-99 [PMID: 16432372 DOI: 10.1097/01.MIB.0000197237.21387.mL]

32 **Tréton X**, Pédruzzi E, Cazals-Hatem D, Grodet A, Panis Y, Groyer A, Moreau R, Bouhnik Y, Daniel F, Ogier-Denis E. Altered endoplasmic reticulum stress affects translation in inactive colon tissue from patients with ulcerative colitis. *Gastroenterology* 2011; **141**: 1024-1035 [PMID: 21699776 DOI: 10.1053/j.gastro.2011.05.033]

33 **Olsen T**, Rismo R, Cui G, Goll R, Christiansen I, Florholmen J. TH1 and TH17 interactions in untreated inflamed mucosa of inflammatory bowel disease, and their potential to mediate the inflammation. *Cytokine* 2011; **56**: 633-640 [PMID: 21945121 DOI: 10.1016/j.cyto.2011.08.036]

34 **Dong C**. Differentiation and function of pro-inflammatory Th17 cells. *Microbes Infect* 2009; **11**: 584-588 [PMID: 19371793 DOI: 10.1016/j.micinf.2009.04.001]

35 **Zhang X**, Yu P, Wang Y, Jiang W, Shen F, Wang Y, Tu H, Yang X, Shi R, Zhang H. Genetic polymorphisms of interleukin 17A and interleukin 17F and their association with inflammatory bowel disease in a Chinese Han population. *Inflamm Res* 2013; **62**: 743-750 [PMID: 23652560 DOI: 10.1007/s00011-013-0629-9]

P- Reviewer: Orbell JH, Toth E **S- Editor**: Yu J **L- Editor**: Filipodia
E- Editor: Liu XM

World Journal of Gastroenterology

Submit a Manuscript: http://www.wjgnet.com/esps/
Help Desk: http://www.wjgnet.com/esps/helpdesk.aspx
DOI: 10.3748/wjg.v22.i7.2366

World J Gastroenterol 2016 February 21; 22(7): 2366-2372
ISSN 1007-9327 (print) ISSN 2219-2840 (online)

ORIGINAL ARTICLE

Observational Study

Endoscopic dilation of complete oesophageal obstructions with a combined antegrade-retrograde rendezvous technique

Reto Bertolini, Christa Meyenberger, Paul Martin Putora, Franziska Albrecht, Martina Anja Broglie, Sandro J Stoeckli, Michael Christian Sulz

Reto Bertolini, Christa Meyenberger, Franziska Albrecht, Michael Christian Sulz, Division of Gastroenterology and Hepatology, Kantonsspital St. Gallen, 9007 St. Gallen, Switzerland

Paul Martin Putora, Department of Radiation Oncology, Kantonsspital St. Gallen, 9007 St. Gallen, Switzerland

Martina Anja Broglie, Sandro J Stoeckli, Department of Otorhinolaryngology, Head and Neck Surgery, Kantonsspital St. Gallen, 9007 St. Gallen, Switzerland

Author contributions: Sulz MC designed the study together with Bertolini R; all authors provided data; Sulz MC, Bertolini R, Putora PM, Albrecht F and Broglie MA analysed and interpreted the data and wrote the manuscript; Meyenberger C and Stoeckli SJ interpreted the data and revised the manuscript; all authors approved the final version of the manuscript.

Institutional review board statement: The study was reviewed and approved by the Institutional Review Board of the Cantonal Hospital St. Gallen.

Informed consent statement: All study participants, or their legal guardian, provided informed written consent prior to study enrolment.

Conflict-of-interest statement: All authors disclosed no financial relationships relevant to this publication.

Correspondence to: Michael Christian Sulz, MD, Division of Gastroenterology and Hepatology, Kantonsspital St. Gallen, 9007 St. Gallen, Switzerland. michael.sulz@kssg.ch
Telephone: +41-71-4941245
Fax: +41-71-4946327

Received: September 17, 2015
Peer-review started: September 17, 2015
First decision: October 14, 2015
Revised: November 3, 2015
Accepted: December 8, 2015
Article in press: December 8, 2015
Published online: February 21, 2016

Abstract

AIM: To investigate the combined antegrade-retrograde endoscopic rendezvous technique for complete oesophageal obstruction and the swallowing outcome.

METHODS: This single-centre case series includes consecutive patients who were unable to swallow due to complete oesophageal obstruction and underwent combined antegrade-retrograde endoscopic dilation (CARD) within the last 10 years. The patients' demographic characteristics, clinical parameters, endoscopic therapy, adverse events, and outcomes were obtained retrospectively. Technical success was defined as effective restoration of oesophageal patency. Swallowing success was defined as either percutaneous endoscopic gastrostomy (PEG)-tube independency and/or relevant improvement of oral food intake, as assessed by the functional oral intake scale (FOIS) (≥ level 3).

RESULTS: The cohort consisted of six patients [five males; mean age 71 years (range, 54-74)]. All but one patient had undergone radiotherapy for head and neck or oesophageal cancer. Technical success was

achieved in five out of six patients. After discharge, repeated dilations were performed in all five patients. During follow-up (median 27 mo, range, 2-115), three patients remained PEG-tube dependent. Three of four patients achieved relevant improvement of swallowing (two patients: FOIS 6, one patient: FOIS 7). One patient developed mediastinal emphysema following CARD, without a need for surgery.

CONCLUSION: The CARD technique is safe and a viable alternative to high-risk blind antegrade dilation in patients with complete proximal oesophageal obstruction. Although only half of the patients remained PEG-tube independent, the majority improved their ability to swallow.

Key words: Oesophageal obstruction; Rendezvous technique; Combined antegrade-retrograde endoscopic dilation; Endoscopic dilation; Head and neck cancer; Radiotherapy

Core tip: Complete obstruction in the proximal oesophagus is rare after radiotherapy for head and neck cancers. We present our institutional experience with endoscopic rendezvous dilation and the clinical outcomes. This technique offers a safe and viable alternative to high-risk blind antegrade dilation. In our series, the rate of technical success was high. Although half of the patients remained percutaneous endoscopic gastrostomy-tube dependent, the majority showed relevant improvement in their ability to swallow and, consequently, in their quality of life.

Bertolini R, Meyenberger C, Putora PM, Albrecht F, Broglie MA, Stoeckli SJ, Sulz MC. Endoscopic dilation of complete oesophageal obstructions with a combined antegrade-retrograde rendezvous technique. *World J Gastroenterol* 2016; 22(7): 2366-2372 Available from: URL: http://www.wjgnet.com/1007-9327/full/v22/i7/2366.htm DOI: http://dx.doi.org/10.3748/wjg.v22.i7.2366

INTRODUCTION

Complete obstruction in the proximal oesophagus is a rare but severe complication after radiotherapy in head and neck cancer patients[1-3]. Less common causes are gastro-oesophageal reflux disease, Plummer-Vinson-Syndrome, or caustic injury[4-7]. Antegrade reopening and dilation of a complete oesophageal obstruction is difficult and carries a high risk of oesophageal perforation. A combined antegrade-retrograde endoscopic rendezvous procedure offers better visualisation and safer dilation. The antegrade-retrograde rendezvous technique was first described by van Twisk *et al*[8] in 1998, followed by Bueno in 2001[9]. This technique is also termed combined antegrade-retrograde endoscopic dilation (CARD). Several other small series[10-14] were subsequently reported. Most series reported on the technical feasibility of the procedure, but rarely on the functional assessment of swallowing. Therefore, our primary aim was to describe the swallowing outcome, including the dependency on a percutaneous endoscopic gastrostomy (PEG)-tube, using the objective functional oral intake scale (FOIS) to assess patients undergoing this rare endoscopic treatment.

MATERIALS AND METHODS

Patients and endoscopic technique

This single-centre case series included a consecutive cohort of patients who underwent CARD for complete obstruction in the area of the pharyngoesophageal segment at the Cantonal Hospital, St. Gallen, Switzerland, between July 2005 and February 2015. Prior to the intervention, all patients were completely unable to swallow and PEG-tube dependent. The diagnosis of complete obstruction was confirmed by endoscopic and/or radiologic findings. Data extracted included demographic characteristics, clinical parameters, endoscopic therapy, adverse events, and outcome. Approval for using pseudoanonymized patient data was obtained from the local ethics committee and all study participants, or their legal guardian, provided informed written consent prior to study enrollment.

The procedures were performed jointly by experienced endoscopists and head and neck surgeons with the patient under general anaesthesia. The existing PEG-tube gastrostomy is a condition to get access to the stomach for the *retro*grade part of this rendezvous procedure. The first step was to remove the PEG-tube carefully and to keep access to the stomach with a guidewire through the gastrostomy. Then, dilation of the gastrostomy with Savary bougies (Cook Medical, United Kingdom) up to 12 mm over the guidewire was necessary to pass the endoscope. In our experience, balloon dilation was not effective. All *retro*grade endoscopies were performed with extra-slim nasal endoscopes (Olympus, Tokyo, Japan) (Figure 1). Antegrade endoscopy was performed transorally with rigid and/or flexible endoscopes (left to the discretion of the head and neck surgeon). The obstruction within the oesophagus was identified with both endoscopes (Figure 2). Fluoroscopy on the one hand and antegrade transillumination on the other hand are important tools to guide the retrograde and the antegrade endoscope towards each other. Fluoroscopy helps to estimate the length of the obstructed oesophagus and the direction of both endoscopes. Furthermore, the retrograde puncture of the complete obstruction was directed by transillumination (Figure 3). It was crucial to use the hard end of the wire, as it is impossible to succeed puncture of the completely obstructed oesophagus with the soft tip of the wire. The puncture procedure

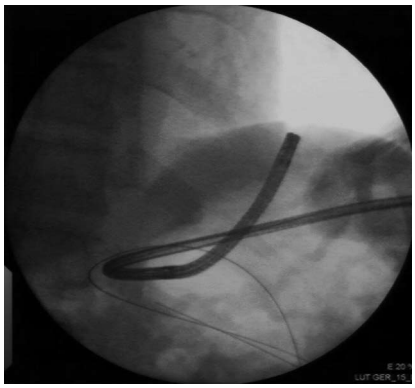


Figure 1 Fluoroscopy. Gastroscope in the stomach, inserted through the existing gastrostomy and used for retrograde puncture.

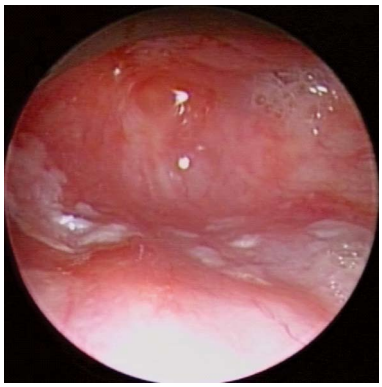


Figure 2 View from the antegrade site. Complete obstruction in the proximal oesophagus.

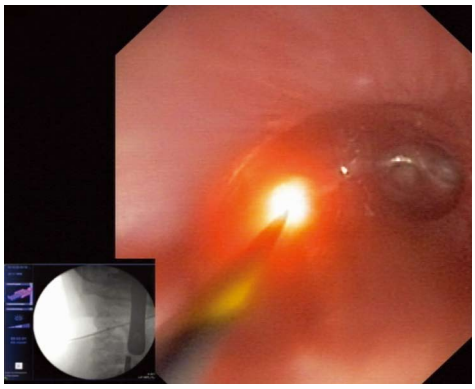


Figure 3 Rendezvous. Retrograde view, transillumination from the proximal site before puncture of the complete obstruction with a VisiGlide guidewire (Olympus, Tokyo, Japan). Inlet: Fluoroscopy showing the antegrade laryngoscope and the retrograde gastroscope opposite each other.

was documented by endoscopy and fluoroscopy (Figure 3). After successful puncture the wire was passed through the obstruction and finally picked up by the operator performing the antegrade endoscopy. Then, dilation was started using small Savary bougies (Cook Medical, United Kingdom) from the antegrade site, followed by insertion of a nasogastric tube to maintain the patency and balloon dilations (Figure 4). Nasogastric tubes were re-inserted after subsequent

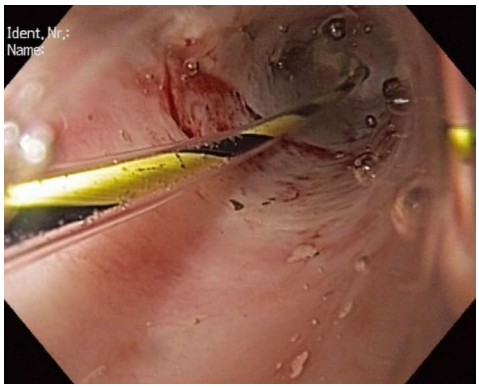


Figure 4 Balloon dilation of the punctured obstruction. A Hercules balloon, 6 mm, was used.

Table 1 Functional oral intake scale items[15]

Level 1	Nothing by mouth
Level 2	Tube dependent with minimal attempts of food or liquid
Level 3	Tube dependent with consistent oral intake of food or liquid
Level 4	Total oral diet of a single consistency
Level 5	Total oral diet with multiple consistencies, but requiring special preparation or compensations
Level 6	Total oral diet with multiple consistencies without special preparation, but with specific food limitations
Level 7	Total oral diet with no restrictions

dilations until the dilated oesophageal lumen was large enough, according to the discretion of the operators. After the procedure a new PEG-tube was placed percutaneously to provide additional nutritional support. Video 1 summarizes the single steps of the procedure. The details of the procedure were not based on a strict protocol. The endoscopists were allowed to choose any available endoscopic device to succeed.

Outcome parameters

Technical success was defined as effective restoration of oesophageal patency. The swallowing success was defined as either PEG-tube independency and/or relevant improvement of oral food intake, as assessed by the FOIS, a 7-point ordinal scale documenting the functional level of oral intake of food and liquids[15]. The scale focuses on the patient's intake by mouth on a daily basis (Table 1). Though the *pre*-therapeutic FOIS level was not assessed formally, the score of all patients corresponded to a FOIS level 1 (nothing by mouth, PEG-tube dependent) as they were unable to swallow anything due to complete obstruction. Relevant improvement of swallowing (FOIS $\geqslant$ level 3) at the time of follow-up was defined as swallowing success.

RESULTS

Patients' characteristics

The cohort consisted of six patients [five males; mean

Table 2 Patients' characteristics and outcomes

No	Sex	Age	Diagnosis	Prior radiotherapy (max dose i. Gy)	Surgery	Chemotherapy	Technical success	FOIS	Notes
1	F	68	Hypopharyngeal carcinoma T3 N0 and oropharyngeal carcinoma T2 N0	68	No	Yes	Yes	6	
2	M	59	Complete occlusion of sinus piriformis after Lyell syndrome	No	No	No	Yes	6	
3	M	54	Squamous carcinoma of the cervical oesophagus cT3 cN2 cM0	66	No	Yes	No	-	Died before follow-up with PEG-tube
4	M	74	Proximal oesophageal carcinoma and carcinoma of the glottic larynx cT2 cN0	Glottis: 66 Oesophagus: 68	Yes	Yes	Yes	-	Died before follow-up with PEG-tube
5	M	68	Carcinoma of the hypopharynx initial cT2c No cM0	70	Yes	No	Yes	2	
6	M	71	Carcinoma of the larynx cT3 cN2	68	No	No	Yes	7	

FOIS: Functional oral intake scale.

Table 3 Technical details and clinical success of endoscopic rendezvous dilation in patients with complete obstruction of the proximal oesophagus

Type of antegrade endoscope	
Rigid, flexible	4, 2
Method of retrograde puncture of the obstruction	
VisiGlide guidewire	4/6
Argon beamer	1/6
First stricture dilation	
With Savary bougie	5/5
Size	median 10 mm (range 6 - 10 mm)
Subsequent dilations before discharge	
With balloon	3/5 patients
size range	15-16.5 mm
With bougie	2/5 patients
size range	12-15 mm
Success rate of rendezvous procedures	
Technical success	5/6 (83%)
Need for recurrent dilations after discharge	5/5
Swallowing success	
Time of follow-up, median (range)	27 mo (2-115)
Need for long-term PEG-tube	3/6
Functional oral intake	
Tube dependent with minimal attempts of food or liquid (level 2)	1
Total oral diet with multiple consistencies without special preparation, but with specific food limitations (level 6)	2
Total oral diet with no restrictions (level 7)	1
Complications of rendezvous procedures	
Mediastinal emphysema (no surgery needed)	1/6
Death	0/6

FOIS: Functional oral intake scale.

age 71 years (range, 54-74)]. Patients' characteristics are shown in Table 2. Two patients died due to their underlying tumour disease 4 and 20 mo after the endoscopic rendezvous intervention. Death was associated with cancer.

Procedure characteristics

Technical details concerning the endoscopic rendezvous intervention are summarized in Table 3. Rigid endoscopes were used in four of six patients by head and neck surgeons; while flexible instruments were applied in two patients for the antegrade access. The retrograde puncture of the obstruction was achieved with a VisiGlide guidewire (Olympus, Tokyo, Japan) in four of six cases (Figure 3). In each case, once a lumen was established, a wire was cautiously passed through, and dilation (median 10 mm, range, 6 - 10 mm) was performed with Savary bougies (Cook Medical, United Kingdom). After the first intervention, nasogastric tubes were inserted in all cases to keep the dilated obstruction open and a new PEG-tube was placed successfully in all patients.

Outcome

Technical success: Technical success was achieved in five out of six patients (Tables 2 and 3). In one patient with squamous carcinoma of the proximal oesophagus, the complete obstruction in the proximal oesophagus could not be punctured retrogradely by VisiGlide wire, super stiff wire, Savary wire, or argon beamer. All five patients with successful puncture were treated with Savary bougies [median size of first dilation 10 mm (range, 6-10 mm)]. However, all five patients with technical success needed subsequent dilations; three were treated with balloons (size range, 15-16.5 mm; Figure 4) and the other two patients with bougies (size range, 12-15 mm) (Table 3). After discharge, repeated dilations or stenting were performed in all five patients during long-term follow-up; however the number of interventions and the time interval varied significantly between the individual patients, depending on their symptoms.

Swallowing success: At the date of follow-up (median 27 mo, range, 2-115 mo), the FOIS results of all patients who survived were available (Table 3). Before the procedure, all patients were completely unable to swallow correlating with FOIS level 1: Nothing by mouth, dependent from PEG-tube feeding. After the endoscopic treatment, containing the initial rendezvous procedure and the following dilations,

in three patients clinical success with a FOIS score more than 6 was reached. Unfortunately, two patients died before the authors could draw any conclusion regarding swallowing during the follow up. One patient had a poor result with a FOIS level of 2 and did not reach swallowing success (defined as FOIS ⩾ 3).

Adverse events: One patient developed a mediastinal emphysema following CARD, without a need for surgery. There were no deaths associated with the endoscopic procedure (Table 3).

DISCUSSION

We present a retrospective single-centre case series of all patients over the last 10 years who were treated with endoscopic antegrade-retrograde rendezvous dilation for complete obstruction in the proximal oesophagus or hypopharynx. The majority of patients had undergone previous radiotherapy, for treatment of head and neck and proximal oesophagus cancers, which is a major cause of stricture or obstruction in the proximal oesophagus[1-3]. Pharyngoesophageal stricture or stenosis necessitating dilations have been described in up to one fifth of patients after radio(chemo)therapy for head and neck cancer[16,17]. A correlation has been described between radiation stricture induction and radiation dose, as well as volume of irradiation to organs at risk (*e.g.*, upper oesophagus)[18]. Complete obstruction may also occur in a minority of affected patients[2].

While intensity modulated radiotherapy better spares the parotid gland and reduces xerostomia rates[19], a review of published literature suggested there is a higher rate of oesophageal stricture with this treatment compared with 3D conventional radiotherapy[20]. Chen *et al*[21] demonstrated that when planning target volumes were reduced (from 5 to 3 mm) and there was daily imaging of the application of radiotherapy treatment, the rate of radiation-induced oesophageal stricture was reduced from 14% to 7%. There is currently a stronger focus on sparing the dose to the pharyngeal constrictor muscles and the cervical oesophagus when feasible; thus, lower rates of (pharyngo-) oesophageal stricture might be expected in the future as a side-effect of radiotherapy.

This is one of the first series presenting clinical outcome data based on assessment of the patients' oral ingestion ability after rendezvous treatment using a validated score. Grooteman *et al*[22] used the Dakkak and Bennett score. Goguen *et al*[23] reported the outcome in terms of the achieved diet and the PEG-tube dependency, and the clinical outcome was recorded by the swallow therapists. The limited data on this topic illustrate that professional medical teams who take care of patients suffering from dysphagia after head and neck surgery or radiotherapy in the head and neck region (*e.g.*, speech therapists, head and neck surgeons, medical radio-oncologists, and gastroenterologists) rarely assess and publish the patients' functional oral food intake using objective scores of their daily routine. In our study, the patients' abilities to intake food orally were assessed using the FOIS. This tool was initially designed to document changes in functional oral intake of food and liquid in stroke patients[15]. The scale is useful to document a clinical change, for example before and after an intervention, such as with speech therapy[15,24].

Other scales are available, such as the Mann Assessment of Swallowing Ability, Acute Stroke Dysphagia Screen, and the Dysphagia Outcome and Severity Scale. However, they are often disease-specific. The FOIS offers an easy and quick assessment to reflect the individual patient's situation in daily life and to document a clinical change. The FOIS can be easily used by physicians and other professional health workers who are not experienced in adult dysphagia management. However, although FOIS is a useful tool to document oral intake, it is also important to pay attention to other characteristics, such as quality of life and nutritional status.

Although only half of our patients remained PEG-tube independent, the majority (three of four patients) had relevant improvement of swallowing (FOIS ⩾ level 3) and, therefore, gained quality of life. The largest case series to date[22] reported that 44% of the patients were able to eat at least soft food; whereas, 56% of their patients needed permanent PEG-tube feeding after a median follow-up of 1.8 years. Other authors reported a clinical success rate without PEG-tube dependency between 30% and 60%[13,23,25,26]. Previous reports found oral intake was possible in 45%-80% of subjects after these procedures[22,23,25,26]. Grooteman *et al*[22] reported that only 24% of the patients were dysphagia-free. We did not investigate dysphagia; rather, we evaluated the diet that was possible during follow-up as this is easy for patients to report on. The findings in literature concerning the dependency on PEG-tube feeding and oral intake are similar to our study.

The most difficult part of the antegrade-retrograde rendezvous procedure is to gain access through the completely obstructed oesophagus. Our data regarding technical success (five of six patients) are in line with the findings of other studies, which reported technical success rates of 83%-100%[13,23,25,26], demonstrating that this procedure is technically feasible. In our series, we started all punctures with guide wires (0.035 inch). It is crucial to puncture with the hard end of the wire, as it is impossible to succeed puncture of a complete oesophageal obstruction with the soft tip of the wire. Furthermore, it is important to reach a good transillumination from the antegradely inserted laryngoscope. The combination of an adequate transillumination and fluoroscopy helps the two operators to bring the two endoscopes as near as

possible and to have the best condition to puncture into the complete obstruction. The endoscopist has to be patient. One can try also other wires as super stiff or Savary wires. One of our cases was a technical failure, after trying to puncture with a super stiff wire, a Savary wire, and argon beamer. In most series[9,13,14,22,26], guidewires were also used. Grooteman *et al*[22] also used electrocautery. Other devices utilized were biopsy forceps[27], needle knifes (*e.g.*, biliary needle knifes)[11,22], and needles, *e.g.*, used in endoscopic ultrasound for fine-needle aspiration[11,14,27]. Schembre *et al*[14] mentioned severe complications, such as abscesses, after using needles and concluded that operators should be very cautious. In a single case, we utilized argon beamer coagulation in addition to the wire and succeeded. Overall, we think that the operator should be aware of the armamentarium of various devices for puncture and should feel confident with the tools utilized.

In our case series, a single case of mediastinal emphysema occurred as a complication of the rendezvous procedure. Fortunately, no surgery was needed. Goguen *et al*[23] reported pneumomediastinum in 18% of subjects, but also oesophageal perforation in 5% and gastrostomy tube site problems in 16% (*e.g.*, leakage by pulling the stomach away from abdominal wall). We only used thin nasal gastroscopes that may have prevented local complications at the gastrostomy tube site; whereas, Goguen *et al*[23] used adult endoscopes. Dellon *et al*[26] also described an oesophageal perforation that could be managed without surgery. However, Zald *et al*[28] reported a fatal venous air embolism after dilation by rendezvous.

One of our patients (a 59-year-old male) developed complete oesophageal obstruction due to toxic epidermal necrolysis (TEN), an idiosyncratic, potentially life-threatening disease characterized by widespread inflammation and necrosis of the epidermis and mucous membranes[29,30]. Mostly caused by a severe adverse event to drugs (*e.g.*, allopurinol or methazolamide)[29], TEN is a very rare disease with an incidence of 0.4-1.2 cases per million person-years. There are very few cases of TEN in the literature, with most encountered in children that resulted in narrowing of the oesophageal lumen through fibrosis and oesophageal obstruction[31]. As far as we know, this is the first report of a rendezvous dilation in a patient suffering from oesophageal complete obstruction caused by TEN.

Several limitations need to be addressed. This is a retrospective study with a small sample size showing a single-centre experience. However, the low number of cases throughout the literature is explained by the rarity of complete obstruction of the hypopharynx/oesophagus. Due to the retrospective nature of this study, we were not able to obtain patients' FOIS levels prior to the endoscopic rendezvous procedure. However, all patients could not swallow at all prior to the procedure, and this correlates to FOIS level 1. Furthermore, details regarding subsequent dilations after rendezvous procedure were not assessed. However, the time interval between and number of dilations over time varied relevantly, based on individual symptoms.

In conclusion, endoscopic antegrade-retrograde rendezvous dilation offers a safe and viable alternative to high-risk blind antegrade dilation of the proximal oesophagus and hypopharynx or surgical approaches in patients with complete proximal oesophageal obstruction. Although only half of the patients remained PEG-tube independent, the majority of patients improved their ability to swallow. We suggest using scores like the FOIS for standardised clinical follow-up.

COMMENTS

Background

Complete oesophageal obstruction is rare and may occur after radiotherapy of head and neck cancers. As antegrade dilation is often unsuccessful, retrograde endoscopic rendezvous dilation can be used to restore oesophageal patency.

Research frontiers

This special endoscopic technique is rarely used. Therefore, it is important to analyse its technical and clinical success.

Innovations and breakthroughs

This case series focuses on the clinical outcome of endoscopic retrograde-antegrade rendezvous dilation.

Applications

This case series showed a fairly good success rate and noticeably few complications. We contributed further information to the existing literature.

Terminology

Gastroscopes are instruments for the examination of the upper gastrointestinal tract. A complete obstruction is a completely occluded lumen. Rendezvous procedure means that one endoscope is used from the proximal part and one from the distal part of the complete obstruction.

Peer-review

This case series provides information about the technical and clinical success of antegrade-retrograde rendezvous dilation of complete oesophageal obstructions, which are rare. This endoscopic technique is interesting for other gastroenterologists.

REFERENCES

1 **Coia LR**, Myerson RJ, Tepper JE. Late effects of radiation therapy on the gastrointestinal tract. *Int J Radiat Oncol Biol Phys* 1995; **31**: 1213-1236 [PMID: 7713784 DOI: 10.1016/0360-3016(94)00419-I]

2 **Laurell G**, Kraepelien T, Mavroidis P, Lind BK, Fernberg JO, Beckman M, Lind MG. Stricture of the proximal esophagus in head and neck carcinoma patients after radiotherapy. *Cancer* 2003; **97**: 1693-1700 [PMID: 12655526 DOI: 10.1002/cncr.11236]

3 **Francis DO**, Hall E, Dang JH, Vlacich GR, Netterville JL, Vaezi MF. Outcomes of serial dilation for high-grade radiation-related esophageal strictures in head and neck cancer patients. *Laryngoscope* 2015; **125**: 856-862 [PMID: 25345779 DOI: 10.1002/lary.24987]

4 **Erdoğan E**, Eroğlu E, Tekant G, Yeker Y, Emir H, Sarimurat N, Yeker D. Management of esophagogastric corrosive injuries in children. *Eur J Pediatr Surg* 2003; **13**: 289-293 [PMID: 14618516 DOI: 10.1055/s-2003-43581]

5 **Brette M**, Aidan K, Halimi B, Cattan P, Grozier F, Sarfati E,

Monteil J. [Pharyngo-esophagoplasty by right coloplasty for the treatment of post-caustic pharyngo-laryngeal-esophageal burns: a report of 13 cases]. *Ann Otolaryngol Chir Cervicofac* 2000; **117**: 147-154 [PMID: 10863199]
6 **Novacek G**. Plummer-Vinson syndrome. *Orphanet J Rare Dis* 2006; **1**: 36 [PMID: 16978405 DOI: 10.1186/1750-1172-1-36]
7 **Thomas GR**, Raynor T. Complete esophageal stenosis secondary to peptic stricture in the cervical esophagus: case report. *Ear Nose Throat J* 2006; **85**: 187-189 [PMID: 16615603]
8 **van Twisk JJ**, Brummer RJ, Manni JJ. Retrograde approach to pharyngo-esophageal obstruction. *Gastrointest Endosc* 1998; **48**: 296-299 [PMID: 9744609 DOI: 10.1016/S0016-5107(98)70195-6]
9 **Bueno R**, Swanson SJ, Jaklitsch MT, Lukanich JM, Mentzer SJ, Sugarbaker DJ. Combined antegrade and retrograde dilation: a new endoscopic technique in the management of complex esophageal obstruction. *Gastrointest Endosc* 2001; **54**: 368-372 [PMID: 11522984 DOI: 10.1067/mge.2001.117517]
10 **Al-Haddad M**, Pungpapong S, Wallace MB, Raimondo M, Woodward TA. Antegrade and retrograde endoscopic approach in the establishment of a neo-esophagus: a novel technique. *Gastrointest Endosc* 2007; **65**: 290-294 [PMID: 17258990 DOI: 10.1016/j.gie.2006.08.008]
11 **Moyer MT**, Stack BC, Mathew A. Successful recovery of esophageal patency in 2 patients with complete obstruction by using combined antegrade retrograde dilation procedure, needle knife, and EUS needle. *Gastrointest Endosc* 2006; **64**: 789-792 [PMID: 17055876 DOI: 10.1016/j.gie.2006.06.081]
12 **Petro M**, Wein RO, Minocha A. Treatment of a radiation-induced esophageal web with retrograde esophagoscopy and puncture. *Am J Otolaryngol* 2005; **26**: 353-355 [PMID: 16137538 DOI: 10.1016/j.amjoto.2005.02.007]
13 **Maple JT**, Petersen BT, Baron TH, Kasperbauer JL, Wong Kee Song LM, Larson MV. Endoscopic management of radiation-induced complete upper esophageal obstruction with an antegrade-retrograde rendezvous technique. *Gastrointest Endosc* 2006; **64**: 822-828 [PMID: 17055888 DOI: 10.1016/j.gie.2006.06.026]
14 **Schembre D**, Dever JB, Glenn M, Bayles S, Brandabur J, Kozarek R. Esophageal reconstitution by simultaneous antegrade/retrograde endoscopy: re-establishing patency of the completely obstructed esophagus. *Endoscopy* 2011; **43**: 434-437 [PMID: 21360424 DOI: 10.1055/s-0030-1256075]
15 **Crary MA**, Mann GD, Groher ME. Initial psychometric assessment of a functional oral intake scale for dysphagia in stroke patients. *Arch Phys Med Rehabil* 2005; **86**: 1516-1520 [PMID: 16084801 DOI: 10.1016/j.apmr.2004.11.049]
16 **Caudell JJ**, Schaner PE, Desmond RA, Meredith RF, Spencer SA, Bonner JA. Dosimetric factors associated with long-term dysphagia after definitive radiotherapy for squamous cell carcinoma of the head and neck. *Int J Radiat Oncol Biol Phys* 2010; **76**: 403-409 [PMID: 19467801 DOI: 10.1016/j.ijrobp.2009.02.017]
17 **Lee WT**, Akst LM, Adelstein DJ, Saxton JP, Wood BG, Strome M, Butler RS, Esclamado RM. Risk factors for hypopharyngeal/upper esophageal stricture formation after concurrent chemoradiation. *Head Neck* 2006; **28**: 808-812 [PMID: 16732601 DOI: 10.1002/hed.20427]
18 **Mavroidis P**, Laurell G, Kraepelien T, Fernberg JO, Lind BK, Brahme A. Determination and clinical verification of dose-response parameters for esophageal stricture from head and neck radiotherapy. *Acta Oncol* 2003; **42**: 865-881 [PMID: 14968948]
19 **Nutting CM**, Morden JP, Harrington KJ, Urbano TG, Bhide SA, Clark C, Miles EA, Miah AB, Newbold K, Tanay M, Adab F, Jefferies SJ, Scrase C, Yap BK, A'Hern RP, Sydenham MA, Emson M, Hall E. Parotid-sparing intensity modulated versus conventional radiotherapy in head and neck cancer (PARSPORT): a phase 3 multicentre randomised controlled trial. *Lancet Oncol* 2011; **12**: 127-136 [PMID: 21236730 DOI: 10.1016/s1470-2045(10)70290-4]
20 **Wang JJ**, Goldsmith TA, Holman AS, Cianchetti M, Chan AW. Pharyngoesophageal stricture after treatment for head and neck cancer. *Head Neck* 2012; **34**: 967-973 [PMID: 21953721 DOI: 10.1002/hed.21842]
21 **Chen AM**, Yu Y, Daly ME, Farwell DG, Benedict SH, Purdy JA. Long-term experience with reduced planning target volume margins and intensity-modulated radiotherapy with daily image-guidance for head and neck cancer. *Head Neck* 2014; **36**: 1766-1772 [PMID: 24174221 DOI: 10.1002/hed.23532]
22 **Grooteman KV**, Wong Kee Song LM, Vleggaar FP, Siersema PD, Baron TH. Functional outcome of patients treated for radiation-induced complete esophageal obstruction after successful endoscopic recanalization (with video). *Gastrointest Endosc* 2014; **80**: 175-181 [PMID: 24810592 DOI: 10.1016/j.gie.2014.03.007]
23 **Goguen LA**, Norris CM, Jaklitsch MT, Sullivan CA, Posner MR, Haddad RI, Tishler RB, Burke E, Annino DJ. Combined antegrade and retrograde esophageal dilation for head and neck cancer-related complete esophageal stenosis. *Laryngoscope* 2010; **120**: 261-266 [PMID: 19998421 DOI: 10.1002/lary.20727]
24 **Huang KL**, Liu TY, Huang YC, Leong CP, Lin WC, Pong YP. Functional outcome in acute stroke patients with oropharyngeal Dysphagia after swallowing therapy. *J Stroke Cerebrovasc Dis* 2014; **23**: 2547-2553 [PMID: 25245482 DOI: 10.1016/j.jstrokecerebrovasdis.2014.05.031]
25 **Fowlkes J**, Zald PB, Andersen P. Management of complete esophageal stricture after treatment of head and neck cancer using combined anterograde retrograde esophageal dilation. *Head Neck* 2012; **34**: 821-825 [PMID: 22127917 DOI: 10.1002/hed.21826]
26 **Dellon ES**, Cullen NR, Madanick RD, Buckmire RA, Grimm IS, Weissler MC, Couch ME, Shaheen NJ. Outcomes of a combined antegrade and retrograde approach for dilatation of radiation-induced esophageal strictures (with video). *Gastrointest Endosc* 2010; **71**: 1122-1129 [PMID: 20421101 DOI: 10.1016/j.gie.2009.12.057]
27 **Mukherjee K**, Cash MP, Burkey BB, Yarbrough WG, Netterville JL, Melvin WV. Antegrade and retrograde endoscopy for treatment of esophageal stricture. *Am Surg* 2008; **74**: 686-687; discussion 688 [PMID: 18705567]
28 **Zald PB**, Andersen PE. Fatal central venous air embolism: a rare complication of esophageal dilation by rendezvous. *Head Neck* 2011; **33**: 441-444 [PMID: 19953633 DOI: 10.1002/hed.21304]
29 **Ellender RP**, Peters CW, Albritton HL, Garcia AJ, Kaye AD. Clinical considerations for epidermal necrolysis. *Ochsner J* 2014; **14**: 413-417 [PMID: 25249808]
30 **Sun J**, Liu J, Gong QL, Ding GZ, Ma LW, Zhang LC, Lu Y. Stevens-Johnson Syndrome and toxic epidermal necrolysis: a multi-aspect comparative 7-year study from the People's Republic of China. *Drug Des Devel Ther* 2014; **8**: 2539-2547 [PMID: 25548516 DOI: 10.2147/dddt.s71736]
31 **Njei B**, Schoenfeld A, Vaziri H. Esophageal stricture secondary to drug-induced toxic epidermal necrolysis presenting in an adult: an unusual complication of a rare disease. *Conn Med* 2013; **77**: 541-544 [PMID: 24273804]

P- Reviewer: Campo SMA, Rabago L **S- Editor**: Qi Y **L- Editor**: A
E- Editor: Liu XM

World Journal of Gastroenterology

Submit a Manuscript: http://www.wjgnet.com/esps/
Help Desk: http://www.wjgnet.com/esps/helpdesk.aspx
DOI: 10.3748/wjg.v22.i7.2373

World J Gastroenterol 2016 February 21; 22(7): 2373-2382
ISSN 1007-9327 (print) ISSN 2219-2840 (online)

ORIGINAL ARTICLE

Observational Study

CD24 genetic variants contribute to overall survival in patients with gastric cancer

Zhi-Fang Jia, Li-Zhong Wang, Xue-Yuan Cao, Chuan Wang, Dong-Hui Cao, Xing Wu, Li-Li You, Mei-Shan Jin, Yin-Ping Wang, Bao-Sen Zhou, Jing Jiang

Zhi-Fang Jia, Chuan Wang, Dong-Hui Cao, Xing Wu, Li-Li You, Jing Jiang, Division of Clinical Epidemiology, First Hospital of Jilin University, Changchun 130021, Jilin Province, China

Li-Zhong Wang, Department of Genetics, University of Alabama at Birmingham, Birmingham, AL 35294, United States

Xue-Yuan Cao, Department of Gastrointestinal Surgery, First Hospital of Jilin University, Changchun 130021, Jilin Province, China

Mei-Shan Jin, Yin-Ping Wang, Division of Pathology, First Hospital of Jilin University, Changchun 130021, Jilin Province, China

Zhi-Fang Jia, Bao-Sen Zhou, Department of Epidemiology, School of Public Health, China Medical University, Shenyang 110112, Liaoning Province, China

Author contributions: Jia ZF, Wang LZ, Cao XY and Jiang J designed the research; Jia ZF, Wang C, Cao DH, Wu X and You LL performed the research; Wang LZ, Cao XY, Jin MS and Wang YP analyzed the data; Jia ZF and Jiang J wrote the manuscript; Wang LZ, Cao XY and Zhou BS revised the manuscript.

Supported by National Natural Science Foundation of China, No. 81373084 and No. 81273065; the Norman Bethune Program of Jilin University, No. 2013025; and the Youth Fund of the First Hospital of Jilin University, No. JDYY42013014.

Institutional review board statement: The study was reviewed and approved by the ethics committee of the First Hospital of Jilin University.

Informed consent statement: All the participants provided informed written consent prior to study enrollment.

Conflict-of-interest statement: All the authors declare no conflicts of interest.

Data sharing statement: Technical appendix, statistical code, and dataset available from the corresponding author at jiangjing19702000@jlu.edu.cn.

Correspondence to: Jing Jiang, MD, PhD, Division of Clinical Epidemiology, First Hospital of Jilin University, 71 Xinmin Street, Changchun 130021, Jilin Province, China. jiangjing19702000@jlu.edu.cn
Telephone: +86-431-81875408
Fax: +86-431-85654528

Received: May 11, 2015
Peer-review started: May 12, 2015
First decision: July 19, 2015
Revised: August 12, 2015
Accepted: November 30, 2015
Article in press: November 30, 2015
Published online: February 21, 2016

Abstract

AIM: To investigate the role of single nucleotide polymorphisms (SNPs) in *CD24* gene in susceptibility and overall survival of gastric cancer (GC).

METHODS: We genotyped 3 tagging SNPs of *CD24*-P-534 in the promoter region, P170 in the coding region of exon 2 and P1527 in the 3′ untranslated region - using polymerase chain reaction-restriction fragment length polymorphism in specimens from 679 histologically-confirmed GC cases, 111 gastric atrophy (GA) cases and 976 tumor-free controls. Serum

immunoglobulin G antibodies to *Helicobacter pylori* (*H. pylori*) of all subjects were detected by enzyme-linked immunosorbent assay. CD24 expression was evaluated by immunohistochemistry in 131 GC specimens. Correlations between SNPs and risk of GC or GA were shown by *P* values and odd ratios (ORs) with 95% confidence intervals (95%CI) compared with the most common genotype of each SNP using the unconditional logistic regression model after adjusting for age, sex and *H. pylori* infection. Survival within each SNP group was plotted by Kaplan-Meier method and compared by log-rank test (recessive model). Hazard ratios with 95%CIs were computed by Cox regression model after adjusting for age, sex, histological type, tumor differentiation, clinical stage and post-operational chemotherapy.

RESULTS: All of the three loci were in Hardy-Weinberg equilibrium in the control group. Median follow-up time for the 600 GC patients included in the survival analysis was 36.2 mo (range, 2.1-66.7 mo; 95%CI: 34.3-36.5 mo). Patients with the P-534 A/A genotype had significantly shorter survival (HR = 1.38, 95%CI: 1.01-1.88, *P* = 0.042) than did the C/C or C/A genotype carriers after adjusting for age, sex, histological type, tumor differentiation, clinical stage and post-operational chemotherapy. This trend was more evident in patients who lived longer than 2.5 years (HR = 7.55, 95%CI: 2.16-26.32, *P* = 0.001). The P170 T/T genotype was associated with a shorter lifespan than the non-T/T genotypes, but not significantly so. None of the three genetic variants was found to be associated with risk of GC (including tumor stage, grade and distant metastasis) or with risk of gastric atrophy. Furthermore, no difference of CD24 expression was found among the genotypes.

CONCLUSION: The P-534 site in *CD24* gene affects the overall survival of gastric cancer and may serve as a prognostic marker for gastric cancer.

Key words: Gastric cancer; *CD24*; Single nucleotide polymorphisms; Gastric atrophy; Overall survival

Core tip: We evaluated the role of three genetic variants of *CD24* in gastric cancer (GC) risk and prognosis using 679 GC cases and 976 controls. We observed that GC cases with the A/A genotype of P-534 (which lies in the *CD24* promoter) had a significantly shorter survival (HR = 1.38) especially among patients who lived longer than 2.5 years (HR = 7.55) after adjusting for age, sex, histological type, tumor differentiation, clinical stage and post-operational chemotherapy. Our study provides the first evidence that P-534 site in *CD24* may serve as a prognostic marker for gastric cancer.

Jia ZF, Wang LZ, Cao XY, Wang C, Cao DH, Wu X, You LL, Jin MS, Wang YP, Zhou BS, Jiang J. *CD24* genetic variants contribute to overall survival in patients with gastric cancer. *World J Gastroenterol* 2016; 22(7): 2373-2382 Available from: URL: http://www.wjgnet.com/1007-9327/full/v22/i7/2373.htm DOI: http://dx.doi.org/10.3748/wjg.v22.i7.2373

INTRODUCTION

Gastric cancer (GC) is one of the most common malignancies and the third cause of cancer-related death worldwide[1]. *Helicobacter pylori* (*H. pylori*) infection has been established to cause GC and was classified as carcinogenic to humans (Group 1) by IARC in 1994[2]. Although over half of the world's population are estimated to be infected with *H. pylori*[3], relatively few develop GC, and gastric damages induced by *H. pylori* infection vary widely, which together imply a role for host genetic factors in response to chronic *H. pylori* infection and subsequent GC development.

CD24 is a glycosylphosphatidylinositol (GPI)-anchored cell-surface glycoprotein with functions in signal transduction and cell adhesion. It is expressed in a large variety of human malignancies. Over-expression of CD24 results in a more aggressive malignant phenotype with greater proliferative and cell migration capabilities, whereas its down-expression shows a less malignant phenotype[4-6]. CD24 is reportedly associated with tumor growth, invasion, metastasis, recurrence and treatment response in various cancers, including breast cancer[7,8], prostate cancer[9], colorectal cancer[10,11], hepatocellular carcinoma[12], esophageal squamous cell carcinoma[13] and GC[14,15]. CD24 is also a potential marker of cancer stem cells, which possess capabilities for tumorigenesis, self-renewal and producing differentiated progeny[16-18].

In GC, CD24 can mediate carcinogenesis and promote GC progression[14,15]. CD24 expression gradually increases in the progression of normal gastric mucosa, non-atrophic chronic gastritis, chronic atrophic gastritis (CAG), CAG with intestinal metaplasia, dysplasia and finally, GC[14]. Mice with normal *CD24* expression show more gastric inflammation, parietal cell atrophy and gland hyperplasia following *Helicobacter felis* infection compared with *CD24*-null mice which have the genetic background of inbred *CD24*-normal mice[19].

Given the important role of CD24 in GC, we tested whether single nucleotide polymorphisms (SNPs) in the *CD24* gene are associated with genetic susceptibility to GC tumor progression and prognosis in a Chinese population.

MATERIALS AND METHODS

Subjects

From July 2008 to December 2012, patients with

Table 1 Primer sequences used for polymerase chain reaction

Primer	Sequence	Length of product	Endonucleases	Bands
P-534F	5′-AGAGATAACCCTGCCCGAG-3′	209 bp	BsrFI	C: 126 bp + 83 bp
P-534R	5′-CCAAGTTTCCTTTGTTTCCC-3′			
outerF	5′-CCACTTGGCATTTTTGAGGCATCT-3′	1882 bp	-	-
outerR	5′-TGTGTCGAGGCAGTTGTAAAAG-3′			
P170F	5′-CTAAAGAGAATGACCTTGGTGGGTTGAG-3′	404 bp	BstXI	T: 275 bp + 129 bp
P170R	5′-GGATTGGGTTTAGAAGATGGGGAAA-3′			
P1527F	5′-GCCAGGGCAATGATGAATGAG-3′	847 bp	BsrI	TG: 645 bp + 202 bp
P1527R	5′-TGTGTCGAGGCAGTTGTAAAAGAT-3′			

histologically diagnosed GC who underwent tumorectomies at the Department of Gastric and Colorectal Surgery of the First Hospital of Jilin University were invited to join this study. Patients with gastric atrophy (GA) and controls with no tumor history were recruited at the Physical Examination Center of the same hospital during the same period. A total of 1766 individuals, 679 GC cases, 111 GA cases and 976 controls signed the informed consent forms and agreed to participate in the study. The study protocol was reviewed and approved by the Ethics Committee of the First Hospital of Jilin University.

Gastric cancer cases were followed-up by telephone calls three months, six months, and one year after each patient's tumorectomy and every one year thereafter until the end of the study or the death of the patients. Cases would not be included in the survival analysis if (1) they were lost to follow-up by the first telephone interview; or (2) they died of surgical complications in the perioperative period. Survival time was defined as the duration from the date of surgery to the date of death if the patients died, or to the date of the last successful interview if the patients were lost to follow-up or alive until the end of the study. Survival time was right-censored except for patients who died of GC.

Treatment information after surgery was also collected during the follow-up period. Post-operational chemotherapy is defined as at least 3 cycles of chemotherapy received after surgery. One third of the GC patients received this type of therapy. The treatment was classified into three regimens: FOLFOX-4 (combination of 5-fluorouracil, leucovorin and oxaliplatin); XELOX (capecitabine and oxaliplatin) and "other" (such as capecitabine or 5-fluorouracil alone).

Genotyping

Blood samples were collected in EDTA tubes and stored at -80 ℃ until DNA extraction. Genomic DNA was isolated following the protocol provided by the manufacturer (Axygen Biosciences, United States).

The full length of the *CD24* gene was first identified by our previous study and was mapped to Chromosome 6q21 by fluorescence *in situ* hybridization (submitted to NCBI database, accession number FJ226006)[20]. Although SNP data on *CD24* was unavailable in HapMap project or dbVar database, we have identified three linkage disequilibrium (LD) blocks that cover the promoter region and exons 1-2 of the *CD24* locus[20]. Haplotype tagging SNPs (tag SNPs) were identified from the three LD blocks with the pairwise $r^2 \geqslant 0.9$ and miner allele frequency > 0.05.

Three tagging SNPs, P-534C/A, P170C/T and P1527TG/del were genotyped to evaluate the association of *CD24* and genetic susceptibility to GC. P-534C/A is located in the promoter region of *CD24* and is 534bp away from the translation-starting site. P170C/T is located in the coding region of exon 2 and its C-to-T transition leads to an alanine to valine substitution at codon 57 of the CD24 protein. P1527TG/del, 1527bp down from the translation-starting site, is located in the 3′ untranslated region.

Genotypes of the selected sites were determined by polymerase chain reaction- restriction fragment length polymorphism (PCR-RFLP) as described by Li *et al*[21] and our previous study[20] (Primers used are listed in Table 1 and Figure 1 and were synthesized by Takara, Dalian, China). Briefly, the PCR products of P-534 were digested with endonuclease *Bsr*FI overnight at 37 ℃ and the restriction site indicated the presence of the C allele (126 bp and 83 bp) (All restriction endonucleases were bought from New England Biolabs, United States). For P170 and P1527, a nested PCR in which one of the primers for the first PCR mapped to an intron was performed to increase specificity as the exon 2 of *CD24* shows high homology with the intronless pseudogenes in Chromosomes 1, 15 and Y[22]. The second PCRs were amplified independently for P170 and P1527 using the 1000-fold-diluted products of the first PCR as templates (all reagents for PCR were from Tiangen, Beijing, China). These PCR products were then digested overnight with the restriction enzyme *Bst*XI (for P170, 37 ℃) and *Bsr*I (for P1527, 65 ℃). The T allele of P170 produced two fragments, 275 bp and 129 bp; the TG allele of P1527 produced 645 and 202 bp fragments. All products were separated by electrophoresis on 1.5% agarose gels with ethidium bromide staining and scanned on gel imaging system (Gel Doc™ XR+ system, Bio-Rad, United States). Fifty samples were randomly selected to be genotyped by direct sequencing to confirm the validity of PCR-RFLP;

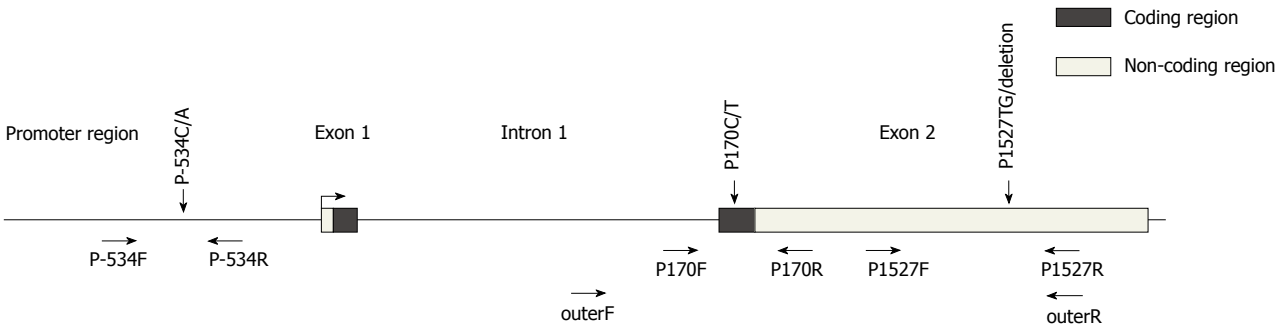


Figure 1 Human *CD24* gene. Primers used were demonstrated by arrows.

three of them with different genotypes were used as positive controls for each PCR-RFLP run. The overall concordance was 100%.

Testing for H. pylori infection and diagnosis of gastric atrophy

Serum immunoglobulin G (IgG) antibodies to *H. pylori* were detected by enzyme-linked immunosorbent assay (ELISA) using *H. pylori*-IgG ELISA kits (Biohit, Finland) according to the manufacturer's protocol. Titers higher than the cut off value of 30 EIU were considered positive for *H. pylori* infection. The inter-day coefficient variations (CV) of the negative and the positive control samples were 4.5% and 1.4%, respectively.

Diagnosis of GA was described elsewhere[23]. Briefly, serum pepsinogen I (PGI) and Ⅱ (PGⅡ) were quantified by ELISA kits (Biohit, Finland). Individuals with PGI < 82.3 ng/mL and PGI/PGⅡ < 6.05 were diagnosed as GA.

Immunohistochemistry of CD24

CD24 expression was assessed in tumor tissue of 131 gastric cancer patients by immunohistochemistry (IHC) method. The detailed procedure is described elsewhere[24]. Briefly, the 4-μm-wide tissue sections were deparaffinized and stained using a streptavidin-biotin immunoperoxidase technique. All slides were then incubated with anti-human CD24 polyclonal antibody (1:100 diluted, sc-7034, Santa Cruz, United States) and developed by 3, 3-diaminobenzidine (DAB). As negative controls, the slides were treated with the IgG isotypes in place of primary antibodies and all negative controls demonstrated negligible background staining. The stained slides were independently evaluated by two pathologists (MSJ and YPW) who were blinded to clinical data and outcomes. The HSCORE system was used to assess the staining results and was calculated by a following equation: HSCORE = ΣPi(i) (I = 0, 1, 2, 3, Pi = 0-100). The i means the intensity of staining (no staining: 0; weak staining: 1; moderate staining: 2; and strong staining: 3). Pi represents percentages (0-100) of stained cells with intensities. The HSCORE ranges from 0 to 300.

Statistical analysis

Continuous data were summarized as medians (25^{th} to 75^{th} percentiles) and compared by Mann-Whitney *U* test or Kruskal-Wallis test. Categorical variables were described as frequencies and percentages and compared using χ^2-test. Correlations between SNPs and risk of GC or GA were demonstrated by *P* values and odd ratios (ORs) with 95% confidence intervals (95%CI) compared with the most common genotype of each SNP. The *P* values and ORs with 95%CIs were calculated using the unconditional logistic regression model after adjusting for age, sex and *H. pylori* infection. Survival functions of the GC patients within each SNP were plotted by Kaplan-Meier method and compared by log-rank test using the recessive model. Hazard ratios (HRs) with 95%CIs were used to quantify the influence of genotypes of each SNP on overall survival and were calculated with Cox regression model after adjusting for age, sex, histological type, tumor differentiation, clinical stage and post-operational chemotherapy. For haplotypes with frequencies > 1%, their associations with risk of GC or GA were assessed compared to the most common haplotype using the logistic regression model with the HAPSTAT software 3.0[25]. Unless otherwise stated, analyses were performed in SAS 9.1.3 software (SAS Institute Inc, United States). A two-tailed *P* value < 0.05 was considered to be statistically significant.

RESULTS

Subject characteristics

A total of 679 GC cases, 111 GA cases and 976 tumor-free controls were included in the study. The baseline characteristics of the subjects are summarized in Table 2. The GC group was oldest in the three group and the control group was youngest (median age: 61.0 years *vs* 50.0 years *vs* 48.5 years, $P < 0.001$ for all pairwise comparisons). And there were more males in the cancer group (71.7% *vs* 59.5% *vs* 59.2%, $P < 0.001$ for comparisons to the atrophy cases or the controls). In the GC group, 67.8% were positive for *H. pylori* infection, significantly higher than the control

Table 2 Characteristics of subjects included *n* (%)

	Cancer	Atrophy	Controls	*P* value
n	679	111	976	
Gender				
Male	487 (71.7)	66 (59.5)	578 (59.2)	< 0.0001
Female	192 (28.3)	45 (40.5)	398 (40.8)	
Age (yr)	61.0	50.0	48.5	< 0.0001
	(54.0-70.0)	(47.0-57.0)	(44.0-55.0)	
≤ 55	204 (30.0)	76 (68.5)	756 (77.5)	< 0.0001
55-70	310 (45.7)	28 (25.2)	181 (18.5)	
> 70	165 (24.3)	7 (6.3)	39 (4.0)	
H. pylori				
Positive	453 (67.8)	84 (75.7)	478 (49.7)	< 0.0001
Negative	215 (32.2)	27 (24.3)	483 (50.3)	
Differentiation				
Poor	437 (68.4)			
Moderate to well	202 (31.6)			
Pathologic type				
Tubular adenocarcinoma	545 (82.2)			
Signet ring cell	50 (7.5)			
Other	68 (10.3)			
TNM stage				
Ⅰ	97 (15.0)			
Ⅱ	227 (35.1)			
Ⅲ	224 (34.6)			
Ⅳ	99 (15.3)			
Distant metastasis				
Positive	573 (85.3)			
Negative	99 (14.7)			
Post-operational Chemotherapy				
No	456 (67.2)			
FOLFOX-4	100 (14.7)			
XELOX	47 (6.9)			
Other	76 (11.2)			

Data are presented as frequency counts (percentage of total) or median (25^{th} to 75^{th} percentiles).

group (49.7%, $P < 0.001$) but non-significantly lower than the GA group (75.7%, $P = 0.097$). Therefore, comparisons of genotype distribution below were adjusted by age, sex and *H. pylori* infection.

The GC cases were mainly of tubular adenocarcinoma type (82.2%), with low-grade differentiation (68.4%), at TNM stage Ⅱ (35.1%) or Ⅲ (34.6%). One third of the cases received chemotherapy after operation (32.8%); 14.7% received FOLFOX-4 and 6.9% received XELOX.

Association of SNPs with risk of gastric cancer or gastric atrophy

All of the three SNPs were in Hardy-Weinberg equilibrium in the control group (P-534: $P = 0.612$; P170: $P = 0.413$; P1527: $P = 0.423$). Distributions of genotypes and alleles are listed in Table 3. Compared with the most common genotype of each SNP, no difference was observed for the distributions of the three loci between the GC and control groups after adjusting for age, sex and *H. pylori* infection. No allele or haplotype was associated with risk of GC. Similar negative results were obtained for GA risk (Table 3). Moreover, no associations were observed between SNPs and risk of *H. pylori* infection (data not shown).

Association of SNPs with clinicopathologic parameters of GC

Genotypic distributions of SNPs were analyzed by clinicopathologic parameters such as histological type, tumor differentiation, TNM stage and distant metastasis in GC cases. However, no significant association was observed (Table 4).

Association of SNPs with survival of gastric cancer

Follow-up information was available for 610 of the 679 GC patients (89.8%). Ten patients died of postoperative complications within 30 d at the beginning of the study period (range, 0-29 d, median: 15.5 d) and these cases were excluded from analyses of effects of SNPs on survival. The median follow-up time for the remaining 600 GC patients was 36.2 mo (range, 2.1-66.7 mo; 95%CI: 34.3-36.5 mo). Two hundred and sixty patients (43.3%) died from GC during the follow-up, 272 patients (45.3%) lived and 68 (11.3%) died of other causes or were lost to follow up.

Survival curves were plotted and compared according to genotypes of each SNP using the recessive model. The patients who carried the A/A genotype of P-534 had shorter survival than those carrying C/C or C/A after adjusting for age, sex, histological type, tumor differentiation, clinical stage and post-operational chemotherapy (HR = 1.38, 95%CI: 1.01-1.88, $P = 0.042$; Table 5 and Figure 2A). This trend was more evident in patients who lived longer than 2.5 years (HR = 7.55, 95%CI: 2.16-26.32, $P = 0.001$). Similarly, the P170 T/T carriers tended to have shorter survival time than the C/C or C/T carriers, although not significantly so (Figure 2B). No meaningful correlation could be observed between the variation of "TG" deletion in P1527 and GC survival ($P = 0.799$).

Multivariate Cox regression analysis showed that three other factors-degree of differentiation, TNM stage and post-operational chemotherapy-were associated with the prognosis of GC. Patient whose GC had low-grade differentiation or advanced clinical stage or who did not received post-operational chemotherapy had shorter survival time (Table 5).

CD24 expressions in tissues of GC

To assess whether SNPs were associated production of CD24 protein, CD24 expression was evaluated in cancerous tissue of 131 GC cases using IHC. Genotypic distributions of the three SNPs in selected cancer cases were similar to non-selected cases (data not shown). CD24 expression was seen mainly in membranes of tumor cells (Figure 3). However, CD24 expression did not observably differ among genotypes of each SNP (Figure 3 and Table 3).

Table 3 Distributions of genotypes in three groups *n* (%)

	Controls	Cancer	*P* value	OR[1] (95%CI)	Atrophy	*P* value	OR[1] (95%CI)
P-534							
C/C	271 (27.8)	181 (26.7)	-	Reference	29 (26.1)	-	Reference
C/A	488 (50.0)	358 (52.7)	0.099	1.1 (0.86-1.48)	62 (55.9)	0.204	1.2 (0.74-1.91)
A/A	217 (22.2)	140 (20.6)	0.145	0.9 (0.61-1.20)	20 (18.0)	0.328	0.8 (0.46-1.54)
C	1030 (52.8)	720 (53.0)	0.886	-	130 (54.1)	0.716	-
A	922 (47.2)	638 (47.0)		1.0 (0.86-1.14)	102 (45.9)		0.9 (0.72-1.25)
P170							
C/C	419 (42.9)	295 (43.4)	-	Reference	60 (54.1)	-	Reference
C/T	439 (45.0)	308 (45.4)	0.277	1.1 (0.82-1.38)	37 (33.3)	0.082	0.6 (0.40-0.96)
T/T	118 (12.1)	76 (11.2)	0.369	0.9 (0.60-1.29)	14 (12.6)	0.724	0.9 (0.47-1.65)
C	1277 (65.4)	898 (66.1)	0.673	-	157 (70.7)	0.114	-
T	675 (34.6)	460 (33.9)		1.0 (0.83-1.12)	65 (29.3)		0.8 (0.58-1.06)
P1527							
TG/TG	826 (84.6)	559 (82.3)	-	Reference	95 (85.6)	-	Reference
TG/del	142 (14.6)	117 (17.2)	0.069	1.3 (0.97-1.82)	15 (13.5)	0.940	0.9 (0.50-1.59)
del/del	8 (0.8)	3 (0.4)	0.162	0.4 (0.09-1.77)	1 (0.9)	0.935	0.9 (0.10-7.30)
TG	1794 (91.9)	1235 (90.9)	0.956	-	205 (92.3)	0.821	-
del	158 (8.1)	123 (9.1)		1.1 (0.88-1.45)	17 (7.7)		0.9 (0.56-1.58)
Haplotype[2]							
ACTG	45.6	47.0	-	Reference	45.4	-	Reference
CTTG	33.6	33.7	0.946	1.0 (0.85-1.16)	28.7	0.407	0.9 (0.63-1.21)
CCTG	11.4	10.2	0.382	0.9 (0.71-1.14)	17.7	0.072	1.6 (0.99-2.37)
CCdel	8.0	9.1	0.370	1.1 (0.87-1.46)	7.7	0.919	1.0 (0.56-1.67)

Data are presented as frequency counts (percentage of total). [1]ORs of the genotypes were calculated adjusting for age, sex and *H. pylori* infection in logistic regression model; [2]The haplotype was lined with P-534, P170 and P1527 and displayed as percentage.

Table 4 Distributions of genotypes according to clinical parameters in gastric cancer cases

	P-534			*P* value	P170			*P* value	P1527		*P* value
	C/C	C/A	A/A		C/C	C/T	T/T		TG/TG	TG/del	
n	181	358	140		295	308	76		559	120	
Age	60 (53-70)	61 (54-71)	61 (55-70)	0.715	61 (53-71)	61 (54-70)	63 (56-70)	0.658	61 (54-70)	60 (51-71)	0.307
Sex											
Male	27.3	50.3	22.4	0.092	43.9	44.2	11.9	0.485	83.6	16.4	0.172
Female	25.0	58.9	16.1		42.2	48.4	9.4		79.2	20.8	
H. pylori											
Positive	26.3	53.4	20.3	0.905	42.6	46.1	11.3	0.769	82.3	17.7	0.996
Negative	27.0	51.6	21.4		45.6	43.7	10.7		82.3	17.7	
Differentiation											
Poor	24.7	55.8	19.5	0.070	43.5	47.4	9.2	0.055	81.5	18.5	0.500
Moderate to well	30.2	46.0	23.8		45.0	40.1	14.8		83.7	16.3	
TNM stage											
Ⅰ-Ⅱ	26.2	52.8	21.0	0.999	45.1	44.7	10.2	0.695	82.4	17.6	0.986
Ⅲ-Ⅳ	26.3	52.6	21.1		42.7	45.2	12.1		82.4	17.6	
Pathologic type											
Tubular adenocarcinoma	26.4	52.3	21.3	0.754	45.0	43.9	11.2	0.173	82.8	17.2	0.751
Signet ring cell	26.0	60.0	14.0		34.0	60.0	6.0		80.0	20.0	
Other	27.9	50.0	22.1		38.2	47.1	14.7		85.3	14.7	
Distant metastasis											
Positive	32.3	48.5	19.2	0.323	40.4	44.4	15.1	0.374	79.8	20.2	0.454
Negative	25.1	53.9	20.9		44.3	45.2	10.5		82.9	17.1	
CD24 staining	60 (0-120)	60 (0-120)	100 (20-140)	0.215	60 (0-120)	60 (20-120)	40 (0-100)	0.482	60 (0-120)	60 (40-100)	0.922

Data are presented as percentage of total or median (25th to 75th percentiles).

Table 5 Results of multivariate Cox regression analysis

	P value	HR	95%CI
P-534			
C/C + C/A	-	1.00	-
A/A	0.0416	1.38	1.01-1.88
Age	0.1875	1.01	1.00-1.02
Sex			
Male	-	1.00	-
Female	0.2315	0.83	0.61-1.13
Differentiation			
Moderate to well	-	1.00	-
Poor	0.0089	1.50	1.11-2.04
Pathologic type			
Tubular adenocarcinoma	-	1.00	-
Signet ring cell	0.4750	0.83	0.50-1.39
Other	0.9469	1.01	0.67-1.53
TNM stage			
Ⅰ	-	1.00	-
Ⅱ	0.0003	5.50	2.18-13.86
Ⅲ	< 0.0001	22.29	9.05-54.89
Ⅳ	< 0.0001	32.12	12.63-81.70
Chemotherapy			
No	-	1.00	-
FOLFOX-4	0.0195	0.64	0.45-0.93
XELOX	0.0021	0.43	0.25-0.74
Other	0.0004	0.45	0.29-0.70

DISCUSSION

In this study, we explored the association between variants of *CD24* gene and GC. We found that patients who harbored the P-534 A/A genotype tended to have shorter survival than those who carry P-534 non-A/A genotypes.

This is the first study on the association between SNPs of *CD24* gene and GC, as no *CD24* SNPs were included in any genome-wide association studies of GC[26,27]. Distribution of the P-534 genotypes of *CD24* differs slightly from that of Caucasian populations. The minor allele C of P-534 in Caucasian population (37.2%[20]) was the major allele (52.8%) in Han Chinese in our study. Distributions of P170 and P1527 were similar to those of other ethnicities[28,29].

Numerous studies have reported that SNPs of *CD24* gene are correlated with risk of various autoimmune diseases, such as systemic lupus erythematosus (SLE)[28-31], multiple sclerosis[28,32-35] and inflammatory bowel disease[20,36]. Li *et al*[21] reported that P170 and P1527 of *CD24* affected risk and progression of chronic hepatitis B infection and Sheng *et al*[37] showed that the T/T genotype of P170 correlated with a 2.96-fold increased of risk of hepatocellular carcinoma. In our study, however, we did not observe any influence of *CD24* polymorphisms on risk of *H. pylori* infection (data not shown, but available on request), gastric atrophy, precancerous lesions of GC that are induced partly by *H. pylori* infection[38,39], or GC (Table 3).

Polymorphisms of CD24 have been related to prognosis in several cancers. In breast cancer, CD24 expression was associated with adverse prognosis[7,8] and *CD24* P170 polymorphism could predict response

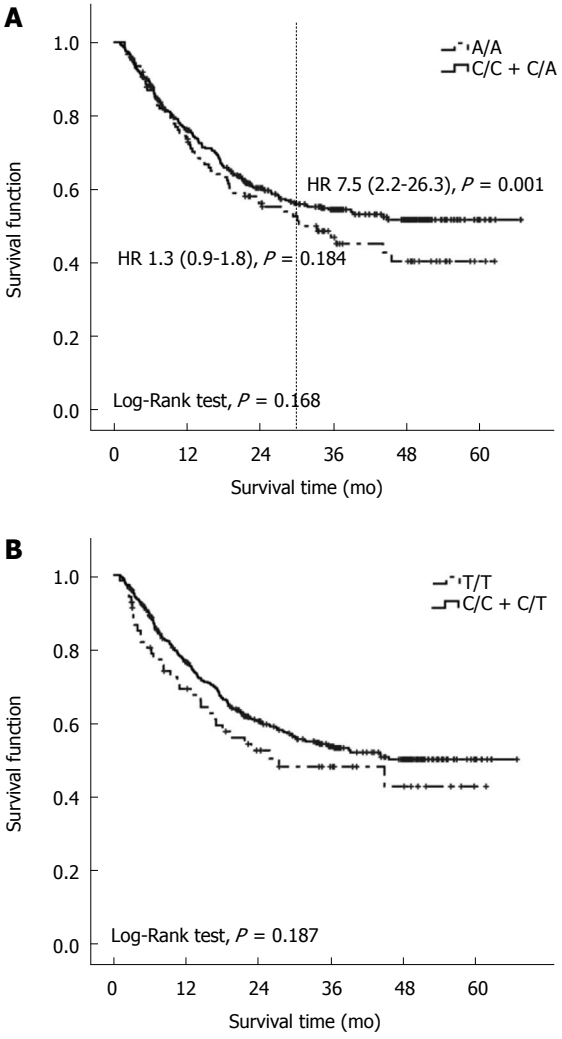


Figure 2 Survival plots of gastric cancer patients. A: Plot for P-534 using the recessive model (A/A *vs* C/C + C/A); B: Plot for P170 using the recessive model (T/T *vs* C/C + C/T).

to chemotherapy[40-42]. In esophageal cancer, P170 of *CD24* was involved in regional lymph node metastasis[43]. In our study, we found that P-534 of *CD24* affected long-term survival of GC, as P-534 A/A genotype carriers have a 7.5-fold increased mortality risk compared wirh non-A/A carriers among patients who lived longer than 2.5 years (Figure 2A). P170 T/T carriers also tended to have shorter survival than did non-T/T carriers, although not significantly so (Figure 2B).

The P-534, which is located in the promoter region of CD24, may influence transcriptional activity. Our previous work showed that a hypomorphic haplotype that contained the C allele of P-534 was associated with risk of multiple sclerosis and this haplotype was involved in higher transcriptional activity and increased expression of CD24 in peripheral blood lymphocytes[20]. The non-synonymous variant P170 may alter the quantity and quality of CD24. Zhou *et al*[32] found that the P170T/T genotype expressed more cell-surface CD24 than did the C/T or C/C genotypes using flow

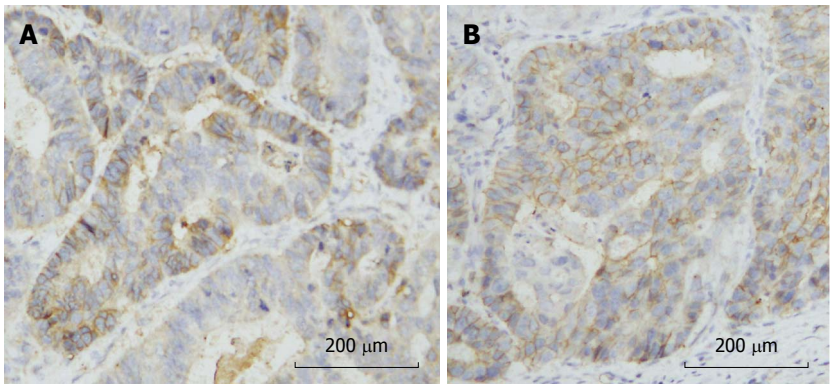


Figure 3 Expression of CD24 by immunohistochemistry. A: expression of CD24 from a gastric cancer case with P-534 AA, P170 CC and P1527 TG/TG genotypes; B: expression of CD24 from a gastric cancer case with P-534 CC, P170 TT and P1527 TG/TG genotypes.

cytometry, which showed an increased risk and more rapid progression of multiple sclerosis. In our study, we evaluated CD24 expression using IHC and found that CD24 was expressed mainly in the membranes of GC cells. However, we did not observe any differences of CD24 expression among genotypes of P-534, P170 or P1527.

Three limitations should be noted in our study. The first one is that some baseline characteristics such as age are different among the three study groups, and we cannot rule out the possibility that individuals in the control group could develop GC when they are older. However, we control the potential influences to the greatest extent by adjusting for these factors in the multivariate analysis. The second is that the follow-up time of the GC cases seems insufficient because most of cases on the right side of the survival plots are censored. This may explain that although individuals carrying P-534 A/A genotype tended to have shorter observable survival time, *P* value from log-rank tests is not significant. However, when we adjust the potential influencing factors and divide the patients to subgroups who live shorter than 2.5 years and those who live longer than 2.5 years, the association of P-534 with long-term survival is statistically significant (HR = 7.5, 95%CI: 2.2-26.3). Nonetheless, longer follow-up time is needed to re-evaluate the role of *CD24* SNPs in prognosis of GC. The last one is that we semi-quantified CD24 expression in tissue using IHC and the influence of SNPs on CD24 might be offset, as protein production can be regulated by factors known and unknown *e.g.*, regulations of transcription, post-transcription and translation. Therefore, more rigorous design should be applied in our future study.

In summary, we find that polymorphisms of the *CD24* gene affect the overall survival of GC, as patients who bear the P-534 A/A genotype tend to have shorter survival than do patients with P-534 non-A/A genotypes. However, we do not observe any associations between *CD24* SNPs and risk of *H. pylori* infection, GA or GC. More studies with larger samples and longer follow-up time are needed to clarify the role of CD24 in GC.

ACKNOWLEDGMENTS

The authors would like to thank all of those who participated in this study, especially to Ying Song for her work on following-up of subjects. The authors would also like to thank the Biospecimen Bank of the First Hospital of Jilin University for their kindness in supplying the specimens to our research.

COMMENTS

Background

CD24 expression as a potential biomarker is associated with poor prognosis in patients with gastric cancer (GC) but its genetic basis still remains to be elucidated.

Research frontiers

GC is one of the most common malignancies and the third cause of cancer-related death worldwide. CD24 mediates gastric carcinogenesis and promotes GC progression. Elucidation of the association between CD24 genetic variants and risk and prognosis of GC may provide novel biomarkers to discriminate individuals with higher risk of GC or to predict prognosis for GC cases.

Innovations and breakthroughs

This study for the first time evaluates the effect of CD24 genetic variations in GC carcinogenesis and prognosis. Its results indicate that CD24 variants may serve as a marker for GC prognosis, but not for carcinogenesis.

Applications

P-534 site of *CD24* might be used as a prognostic predictive marker for GC.

Terminology

CD24 is a glycosylphosphatidylinositol-anchored cell-surface glycoprotein with functions in signal transduction and cell adhesion. CD24 over-expression is associated with a more aggressive malignant phenotype of greater proliferative and migration capability; down-expression shows a less malignant phenotype.

Peer-review

This study investigated the role of *CD24* genetic variants in susceptibility and overall survival of GC and shows that P-534 of *CD24* may serve as an independent prognostic marker for GC.

REFERENCES

1 **Ferlay J**, Soerjomataram I, Ervik M, Dikshit R, Eser S, Mathers C, Rebelo M, Parkin D, Forman D, Bray F. GLOBOCAN 2012 v1.0,

Cancer Incidence and Mortality Worldwide: IARC CancerBase No. 11 [Internet]. Lyon, France: International Agency for Research on Cancer 2013. Available from: URL: http://globocan.iarc.fr, accessed on 15/01/2015

2 Schistosomes, liver flukes and Helicobacter pylori. IARC Working Group on the Evaluation of Carcinogenic Risks to Humans. Lyon, 7-14 June 1994. *IARC Monogr Eval Carcinog Risks Hum* 1994; **61**: 1-241 [PMID: 7715068]

3 **Cao XY**, Jia ZF, Jin MS, Cao DH, Kong F, Suo J, Jiang J. Serum pepsinogen II is a better diagnostic marker in gastric cancer. *World J Gastroenterol* 2012; **18**: 7357-7361 [PMID: 23326145 DOI: 10.3748/wjg.v18.i48.7357]

4 **Naumov I**, Zilberberg A, Shapira S, Avivi D, Kazanov D, Rosin-Arbesfeld R, Arber N, Kraus S. CD24 knockout prevents colorectal cancer in chemically induced colon carcinogenesis and in APC(Min)/CD24 double knockout transgenic mice. *Int J Cancer* 2014; **135**: 1048-1059 [PMID: 24500912 DOI: 10.1002/ijc.28762]

5 **Baumann P**, Cremers N, Kroese F, Orend G, Chiquet-Ehrismann R, Uede T, Yagita H, Sleeman JP. CD24 expression causes the acquisition of multiple cellular properties associated with tumor growth and metastasis. *Cancer Res* 2005; **65**: 10783-10793 [PMID: 16322224 DOI: 10.1158/0008-5472.can-05-0619]

6 **Sagiv E**, Starr A, Rozovski U, Khosravi R, Altevogt P, Wang T, Arber N. Targeting CD24 for treatment of colorectal and pancreatic cancer by monoclonal antibodies or small interfering RNA. *Cancer Res* 2008; **68**: 2803-2812 [PMID: 18413748 DOI: 10.1158/0008-5472.can-07-6463]

7 **Horiguchi K**, Toi M, Horiguchi S, Sugimoto M, Naito Y, Hayashi Y, Ueno T, Ohno S, Funata N, Kuroi K, Tomita M, Eishi Y. Predictive value of CD24 and CD44 for neoadjuvant chemotherapy response and prognosis in primary breast cancer patients. *J Med Dent Sci* 2010; **57**: 165-175 [PMID: 21073135]

8 **Athanassiadou P**, Grapsa D, Gonidi M, Athanassiadou AM, Tsipis A, Patsouris E. CD24 expression has a prognostic impact in breast carcinoma. *Pathol Res Pract* 2009; **205**: 524-533 [PMID: 19243896 DOI: 10.1016/j.prp.2009.01.008]

9 **Wang L**, Liu R, Ye P, Wong C, Chen GY, Zhou P, Sakabe K, Zheng X, Wu W, Zhang P, Jiang T, Bassetti MF, Jube S, Sun Y, Zhang Y, Zheng P, Liu Y. Intracellular CD24 disrupts the ARF-NPM interaction and enables mutational and viral oncogene-mediated p53 inactivation. *Nat Commun* 2015; **6**: 5909 [PMID: 25600590 DOI: 10.1038/ncomms6909]

10 **Sahlberg SH**, Spiegelberg D, Glimelius B, Stenerlöw B, Nestor M. Evaluation of cancer stem cell markers CD133, CD44, CD24: association with AKT isoforms and radiation resistance in colon cancer cells. *PLoS One* 2014; **9**: e94621 [PMID: 24760019 DOI: 10.1371/journal.pone.0094621]

11 **Weichert W**, Denkert C, Burkhardt M, Gansukh T, Bellach J, Altevogt P, Dietel M, Kristiansen G. Cytoplasmic CD24 expression in colorectal cancer independently correlates with shortened patient survival. *Clin Cancer Res* 2005; **11**: 6574-6581 [PMID: 16166435 DOI: 10.1158/1078-0432.ccr-05-0606]

12 **Yang XR**, Xu Y, Yu B, Zhou J, Li JC, Qiu SJ, Shi YH, Wang XY, Dai Z, Shi GM, Wu B, Wu LM, Yang GH, Zhang BH, Qin WX, Fan J. CD24 is a novel predictor for poor prognosis of hepatocellular carcinoma after surgery. *Clin Cancer Res* 2009; **15**: 5518-5527 [PMID: 19706825 DOI: 10.1158/1078-0432.ccr-09-0151]

13 **Sano A**, Kato H, Sakurai S, Sakai M, Tanaka N, Inose T, Saito K, Sohda M, Nakajima M, Nakajima T, Kuwano H. CD24 expression is a novel prognostic factor in esophageal squamous cell carcinoma. *Ann Surg Oncol* 2009; **16**: 506-514 [PMID: 19050962 DOI: 10.1245/s10434-008-0252-0]

14 **Wang YC**, Wang JL, Kong X, Sun TT, Chen HY, Hong J, Fang JY. CD24 mediates gastric carcinogenesis and promotes gastric cancer progression via STAT3 activation. *Apoptosis* 2014; **19**: 643-656 [PMID: 24327257 DOI: 10.1007/s10495-013-0949-9]

15 **Takahashi M**, Nakajima M, Ogata H, Domeki Y, Ohtsuka K, Ihara K, Kurayama E, Yamaguchi S, Sasaki K, Miyachi K, Kato H. CD24 expression is associated with progression of gastric cancer. *Hepatogastroenterology* 2013; **60**: 653-658 [PMID: 23159387 DOI: 10.5754/hge12763]

16 **Zhang C**, Li C, He F, Cai Y, Yang H. Identification of CD44+CD24+ gastric cancer stem cells. *J Cancer Res Clin Oncol* 2011; **137**: 1679-1686 [PMID: 21882047 DOI: 10.1007/s00432-011-1038-5]

17 **Ke J**, Wu X, Wu X, He X, Lian L, Zou Y, He X, Wang H, Luo Y, Wang L, Lan P. A subpopulation of $CD24^+$ cells in colon cancer cell lines possess stem cell characteristics. *Neoplasma* 2012; **59**: 282-288 [PMID: 22329848 DOI: 10.4149/neo_2012_036]

18 **Li C**, Heidt DG, Dalerba P, Burant CF, Zhang L, Adsay V, Wicha M, Clarke MF, Simeone DM. Identification of pancreatic cancer stem cells. *Cancer Res* 2007; **67**: 1030-1037 [PMID: 17283135 DOI: 10.1158/0008-5472.can-06-2030]

19 **Duckworth CA**, Clyde D, Pritchard DM. CD24 is expressed in gastric parietal cells and regulates apoptosis and the response to Helicobacter felis infection in the murine stomach. *Am J Physiol Gastrointest Liver Physiol* 2012; **303**: G915-G926 [PMID: 22899822 DOI: 10.1152/ajpgi.00068.2012]

20 **Lisiansky V**, Kraus S, Naumov I, Kazanov D, Nabiochtchikov I, Toledano O, Leshno M, Avivi D, Dotan I, Arber N, Moshkowitz M. Role of CD24 polymorphisms in the susceptibility to inflammatory bowel disease. *Int J Biol Markers* 2014; **29**: e62-e68 [PMID: 24557789 DOI: 10.5301/jbm.5000072]

21 **Li D**, Zheng L, Jin L, Zhou Y, Li H, Fu J, Shi M, Du P, Wang L, Wu H, Chen GY, Zheng P, Liu Y, Wang FS, Wang S. CD24 polymorphisms affect risk and progression of chronic hepatitis B virus infection. *Hepatology* 2009; **50**: 735-742 [PMID: 19610054 DOI: 10.1002/hep.23047]

22 **Zhou X**, Cao Y, Luo J, Zeng X. [Association between CD24 polymorphism and genetic susceptibility to breast cancer: a case-control study]. *Zhongnan Daxue Xuebao Yixueban* 2013; **38**: 1122-1129 [PMID: 24316932 DOI: 10.3969/j.issn.1672-7347.2013.11.007]

23 **Jiang J**, Jia Z, Cao D, Jin MS, Kong F, Suo J, Cao X. Polymorphisms of the DNA methyltransferase 1 associated with reduced risks of Helicobacter pylori infection and increased risks of gastric atrophy. *PLoS One* 2012; **7**: e46058 [PMID: 23049933 DOI: 10.1371/journal.pone.0046058]

24 **Cao X**, Cao D, Jin M, Jia Z, Kong F, Ma H, Wang Y, Jiang J. CD44 but not CD24 expression is related to poor prognosis in non-cardia adenocarcinoma of the stomach. *BMC Gastroenterol* 2014; **14**: 157 [PMID: 25212506 DOI: 10.1186/1471-230x-14-157]

25 **Lin DY**, Zeng D, Millikan R. Maximum likelihood estimation of haplotype effects and haplotype-environment interactions in association studies. *Genet Epidemiol* 2005; **29**: 299-312 [PMID: 16240443 DOI: 10.1002/gepi.20098]

26 **Sakamoto H**, Yoshimura K, Saeki N, Katai H, Shimoda T, Matsuno Y, Saito D, Sugimura H, Tanioka F, Kato S, Matsukura N, Matsuda N, Nakamura T, Hyodo I, Nishina T, Yasui W, Hirose H, Hayashi M, Toshiro E, Ohnami S, Sekine A, Sato Y, Totsuka H, Ando M, Takemura R, Takahashi Y, Ohdaira M, Aoki K, Honmyo I, Chiku S, Aoyagi K, Sasaki H, Ohnami S, Yanagihara K, Yoon KA, Kook MC, Lee YS, Park SR, Kim CG, Choi IJ, Yoshida T, Nakamura Y, Hirohashi S. Genetic variation in PSCA is associated with susceptibility to diffuse-type gastric cancer. *Nat Genet* 2008; **40**: 730-740 [PMID: 18488030 DOI: 10.1038/ng.152]

27 **Shi Y**, Hu Z, Wu C, Dai J, Li H, Dong J, Wang M, Miao X, Zhou Y, Lu F, Zhang H, Hu L, Jiang Y, Li Z, Chu M, Ma H, Chen J, Jin G, Tan W, Wu T, Zhang Z, Lin D, Shen H. A genome-wide association study identifies new susceptibility loci for non-cardia gastric cancer at 3q13.31 and 5p13.1. *Nat Genet* 2011; **43**: 1215-1218 [PMID: 22037551 DOI: 10.1038/ng.978]

28 **Wang L**, Lin S, Rammohan KW, Liu Z, Liu JQ, Liu RH, Guinther N, Lima J, Zhou Q, Wang T, Zheng X, Birmingham DJ, Rovin BH, Hebert LA, Wu Y, Lynn DJ, Cooke G, Yu CY, Zheng P, Liu Y. A dinucleotide deletion in CD24 confers protection against autoimmune diseases. *PLoS Genet* 2007; **3**: e49 [PMID: 17411341 DOI: 10.1371/journal.pgen.0030049]

29 **Sánchez E**, Abelson AK, Sabio JM, González-Gay MA, Ortego-Centeno N, Jiménez-Alonso J, de Ramón E, Sánchez-Román J, López-Nevot MA, Gunnarsson I, Svenungsson E, Sturfelt

G, Truedsson L, Jönsen A, González-Escribano MF, Witte T, Alarcón-Riquelme ME, Martín J. Association of a CD24 gene polymorphism with susceptibility to systemic lupus erythematosus. *Arthritis Rheum* 2007; **56**: 3080-3086 [PMID: 17763438 DOI: 10.1002/art.22871]

30 **Piotrowski P**, Lianeri M, Wudarski M, Łacki JK, Jagodziński PP. CD24 Ala57Val gene polymorphism and the risk of systemic lupus erythematosus. *Tissue Antigens* 2010; **75**: 696-700 [PMID: 20230526 DOI: 10.1111/j.1399-0039.2010.01447.x]

31 **Dawidowicz K**, Dieudé P, Avouac J, Wipff J, Hachulla E, Diot E, Tiev K, Cracowski JL, Mouthon L, Amoura Z, Frances C, Carpentier P, Meyer O, Kahan A, Boileau C, Allanore Y. Association study of B-cell marker gene polymorphisms in European Caucasian patients with systemic sclerosis. *Clin Exp Rheumatol* 2011; **29**: 839-842 [PMID: 21961844]

32 **Zhou Q**, Rammohan K, Lin S, Robinson N, Li O, Liu X, Bai XF, Yin L, Scarberry B, Du P, You M, Guan K, Zheng P, Liu Y. CD24 is a genetic modifier for risk and progression of multiple sclerosis. *Proc Natl Acad Sci USA* 2003; **100**: 15041-15046 [PMID: 14657362 DOI: 10.1073/pnas.2533866100]

33 **Goris A**, Maranian M, Walton A, Yeo TW, Ban M, Gray J, Dubois B, Compston A, Sawcer S. CD24 Ala/Val polymorphism and multiple sclerosis. *J Neuroimmunol* 2006; **175**: 200-202 [PMID: 16631259 DOI: 10.1016/j.jneuroim.2006.03.009]

34 **Otaegui D**, Sáenz A, Camaño P, Blázquez L, Goicoechea M, Ruíz-Martínez J, Olaskoaga J, Emparanza JA, López de Munain A. CD24 V/V is an allele associated with the risk of developing multiple sclerosis in the Spanish population. *Mult Scler* 2006; **12**: 511-514 [PMID: 16900767]

35 **Ronaghi M**, Vallian S, Etemadifar M. CD24 gene polymorphism is associated with the disease progression and susceptibility to multiple sclerosis in the Iranian population. *Psychiatry Res* 2009; **170**: 271-272 [PMID: 19896210 DOI: 10.1016/j.psychres.2009.01.002]

36 **Diaz-Gallo LM**, Medrano LM, Gómez-García M, Cardeña C, Rodrigo L, Mendoza JL, Taxonera C, Nieto A, Alcain G, Cueto I, López-Nevot MA, Urcelay E, Martin J. Analysis of the influence of two CD24 genetic variants in Crohn's disease and ulcerative colitis. *Hum Immunol* 2011; **72**: 969-972 [PMID: 21684315 DOI: 10.1016/j.humimm.2011.05.028]

37 **Sheng L**, Shui Y. Clusters of differentiation 24 polymorphism and hepatocellular carcinoma. *Hepatology* 2011; **54**: 2273; author reply 2273-2274 [PMID: 21932403 DOI: 10.1002/hep.24676]

38 **Matysiak-Budnik T**, Mégraud F. Helicobacter pylori infection and gastric cancer. *Eur J Cancer* 2006; **42**: 708-716 [PMID: 16556496 DOI: 10.1016/j.ejca.2006.01.020]

39 **Kabir S**. Effect of Helicobacter pylori eradication on incidence of gastric cancer in human and animal models: underlying biochemical and molecular events. *Helicobacter* 2009; **14**: 159-171 [PMID: 19702845 DOI: 10.1111/j.1523-5378.2009.00677.x]

40 **Marmé F**, Werft W, Walter A, Keller S, Wang X, Benner A, Burwinkel B, Sinn P, Hug S, Sohn C, Bretz N, Moldenhauer G, Rupp C, Rupp AK, Biakhov MY, Bottini A, Friedrichs K, Khailenko VA, Manikhas GM, Ruiz A, Sánchez-Rovira P, Santoro A, Segui MA, Villena C, Lichter P, Kristiansen G, Altevogt P, Schneeweiss A. CD24 Ala57Val polymorphism predicts pathologic complete response to sequential anthracycline- and taxane-based neoadjuvant chemotherapy for primary breast cancer. *Breast Cancer Res Treat* 2012; **132**: 819-831 [PMID: 21960110 DOI: 10.1007/s10549-011-1759-9]

41 **Zhou X**. CD24 polymorphisms cannot predict pathologic complete response to anthracycline- and taxane-based neoadjuvant chemotherapy in breast cancer. *Clin Breast Cancer* 2014; **14**: e33-e40 [PMID: 24393851 DOI: 10.1016/j.clbc.2013.11.001]

42 **Buck K**, Hug S, Seibold P, Ferschke I, Altevogt P, Sohn C, Schneeweiss A, Burwinkel B, Jäger D, Flesch-Janys D, Chang-Claude J, Marmé F. CD24 polymorphisms in breast cancer: impact on prognosis and risk. *Breast Cancer Res Treat* 2013; **137**: 927-937 [PMID: 23314606 DOI: 10.1007/s10549-012-2325-9]

43 **Sadot E**, Kraus S, Stein M, Naboishchikov I, Toledano O, Kazanov D, Arber N, Kashtan H. CD24 gene polymorphism--a novel prognostic factor in esophageal cancer. *Int J Biol Markers* 2014; **29**: e49-e54 [PMID: 24474454 DOI: 10.5301/jbm.5000071]

P- Reviewer: Zhang J **S- Editor**: Yu J
L- Editor: A **E- Editor**: Liu XM

World Journal of Gastroenterology

Submit a Manuscript: http://www.wjgnet.com/esps/
Help Desk: http://www.wjgnet.com/esps/helpdesk.aspx
DOI: 10.3748/wjg.v22.i7.2383

World J Gastroenterol 2016 February 21; 22(7): 2383-2390
ISSN 1007-9327 (print) ISSN 2219-2840 (online)

CASE REPORT

Rare type of pancreatitis as the first presentation of anti-neutrophil cytoplasmic antibody-related vasculitis

Tomoya Iida, Takeya Adachi, Tetsuya Tabeya, Suguru Nakagaki, Takashi Yabana, Akira Goto, Yoshihiro Kondo, Kiyoshi Kasai

Tomoya Iida, Takeya Adachi, Suguru Nakagaki, Takashi Yabana, Akira Goto, Yoshihiro Kondo, Department of Gastroenterology, Otaru City General Hospital, Otaru, Hokkaido 047-8550, Japan

Tetsuya Tabeya, Department of Internal Medicine of Connective Tissue Disease, Otaru City General Hospital, Otaru, Hokkaido 047-8550, Japan

Kiyoshi Kasai, Department of Diagnostic Pathology, Otaru City General Hospital, Otaru, Hokkaido 047-8550, Japan

Author contributions: All authors helped to perform the research; Iida T wrote the paper; all authors have approved the final draft of the manuscript.

Supported by Otaru City General Hospital, Otaru, Hokkaido, Japan

Institutional review board statement: Otaru City General Hospital Institutional Review Board for Conduction and Submission of the study.

Informed consent statement: The patient provided informed consent prior to study enrollment.

Conflict-of-interest statement: To the best of our knowledge, no conflict of interest, financial or other, exists for any authors listed in this manuscript.

Correspondence to: Tomoya Iida, MD, Department of Gastroenterology, Otaru City General Hospital, 1-1 1-chome, Wakamatu-cho, Otaru, Hokkaido 047-8550, Japan. tomoya.iida.0306@gmail.com

Telephone: +81-134-251211
Fax: +81-134-326424

Received: July 22, 2015
Peer-review started: July 30, 2015
First decision: August 28, 2015
Revised: September 11, 2015
Accepted: December 12, 2015
Article in press: December 12, 2015
Published online: February 21, 2016

Abstract

A pancreatic tumor was suspected on the abdominal ultrasound of a 72-year-old man. Abdominal computed tomography showed pancreatic enlargement as well as a diffuse, poorly enhanced area in the pancreas; endoscopic ultrasound-guided fine needle aspiration biopsy and endoscopic retrograde cholangiopancreatography failed to provide a definitive diagnosis. Based on the trend of improvement of the pancreatic enlargement, the treatment plan involved follow-up examinations. Later, he was hospitalized with an alveolar hemorrhage and rapidly progressive glomerulonephritis; he tested positive for myeloperoxidase-anti-neutrophil cytoplasmic antibody (ANCA) and was diagnosed with ANCA-related vasculitis, specifically microscopic polyangiitis. It appears that factors such as thrombus formation caused by the vasculitis in the early stages of ANCA-related vasculitis cause abnormal distribution of the pancreatic blood flow, resulting in non-uniform pancreatitis. Pancreatic lesions in ANCA-related vasculitis are very rare. Only a few cases have been reported previously. Therefore, we report our case and a review of the literature.

Key words: Pancreas; Pancreatitis; Antibodies; Anti-neutrophil cytoplasmic; Vasculitis; Microscopic poly-

angiitis

Core tip: Pancreatic lesions in anti-neutrophil cytoplasmic antibody (ANCA)-related vasculitis are very rare. Only few cases of pancreatic lesions in ANCA-related vasculitis have been reported previously. We encountered a case presenting with pancreatic enlargement and a diffuse, poorly enhanced area in the pancreas during the early stages of ANCA-related vasculitis. In light of the clinical course, it appears that factors such as thrombus formation caused by the vasculitis during the early stages of ANCA-related vasculitis cause abnormal distribution of pancreatic blood flow, resulting in non-uniform pancreatitis manifested in the imaging findings.

Iida T, Adachi T, Tabeya T, Nakagaki S, Yabana T, Goto A, Kondo Y, Kasai K. Rare type of pancreatitis as the first presentation of anti-neutrophil cytoplasmic antibody-related vasculitis. *World J Gastroenterol* 2016; 22(7): 2383-2390 Available from: URL: http://www.wjgnet.com/1007-9327/full/v22/i7/2383.htm DOI: http://dx.doi.org/10.3748/wjg.v22.i7.2383

INTRODUCTION

Pancreatic lesions in anti-neutrophil cytoplasmic antibody (ANCA)-related vasculitis are very rare. We encountered a patient presenting with pancreatic enlargement and a diffuse, poorly enhanced area in the pancreas during the early stages of ANCA-related vasculitis. Although it is difficult to histopathologically prove findings of vasculitis in the pancreas with endoscopic ultrasound-guided fine needle aspiration biopsy (EUS-FNA) or endoscopic retrograde pancreatography (ERP), in light of the clinical course, it appears that factors such as thrombus formation caused by the vasculitis in the early stages of ANCA-related vasculitis cause to be abnormal distribution of pancreatic blood flow, resulting in non-uniform pancreatitis manifested in the imaging findings described herein. Our report also includes a discussion of the related literature, since there are few previous reports on patients with pancreatic lesions in ANCA-related vasculitis presenting with pancreatitis or nodular shadows in the pancreas.

CASE REPORT

A 72-year-old man had been regularly visiting a clinic for diabetes exhibited weight loss and exacerbation of his diabetes; a pancreatic tumor was suspected on a subsequent abdominal ultrasound, and he was referred to our department in April 2014.

Upon admission, his height and weight were 175 cm and 63.7 kg, respectively; the following were also measured: blood pressure, 130/80 mmHg; pulse, 80 beats/min (regular); and body temperature, 37.0 ℃. He was in a lucid state of consciousness with no neurological abnormalities. There was no anemia in the palpebral conjunctiva or yellowing of the bulbar conjunctiva. Superficial lymph nodes were not palpated. Lung and heart sounds were free of abnormal findings. The abdomen was flat, soft, and without tenderness. There was no lower leg edema.

The laboratory findings upon admission indicated that amylase and lipase were normal (59 IU/L and 53 IU/L, respectively), while trypsin level was slightly elevated (723 ng/mL; normal, 100-500 ng/mL). Findings also indicated mild inflammation: white blood cell count, 10100/μL and C-reactive protein level, 0.97 mg/dL. IgG4 level was normal, and the level of antinuclear antibodies increased 80-fold; carcinoembryonic antigen and cancer antigen 19-9 levels were normal at 2.6 ng/mL and 3.6 U/mL, respectively. Hemoglobin A1c was somewhat elevated at 10.8%.

On chest radiography, a reticular shadow from both hilar areas to the lower lung field was observed.

On abdominal ultrasonography, there was mild swelling from the pancreatic body to the tail, with irregular hypoechoic masses observed in both the margins and interior of the same sites. The splenic artery had traveled through the inside of the tumor; however, the boundary was clear, and there was no obvious invasion into the surrounding adipose tissue. In the pancreatic body, the pancreatic duct was disrupted, but there was no dilation of the cephalic main pancreatic duct.

Contrast-enhanced abdominal/pelvic computed tomography (CT) (Figure 1A-C) showed pancreatic enlargement with a diffuse, poorly enhanced area in the uncinate process and pancreatic body tail.

On magnetic resonance cholangiopancreatography, the path of the main pancreatic duct in the body tail could not be identified, but dilation of the cephalic main pancreatic duct was not observed. Diffusion-weighted images showed diffuse signal changes in the pancreatic body tail.

On EUS (Figure 2), a hypoechoic mass was noted in a form in which the pancreatic lobe structure was maintained in the uncinate process and from the pancreatic body to the tail.

On EUS-FNA, the hypoechoic masses of the uncinate process and pancreatic tail were each punctured three times with a 22G puncture needle (ExpectTM, Boston Scientific, Tokyo, Japan); malignant cells were not detected, and the diagnosis was nonspecific pancreatitis.

On ERP (Figure 3A-C), a slight disparity of the opening diameter was noted in the main pancreatic duct, but localized stenosis or diffuse narrowing were not observed. No abnormality was observed in the

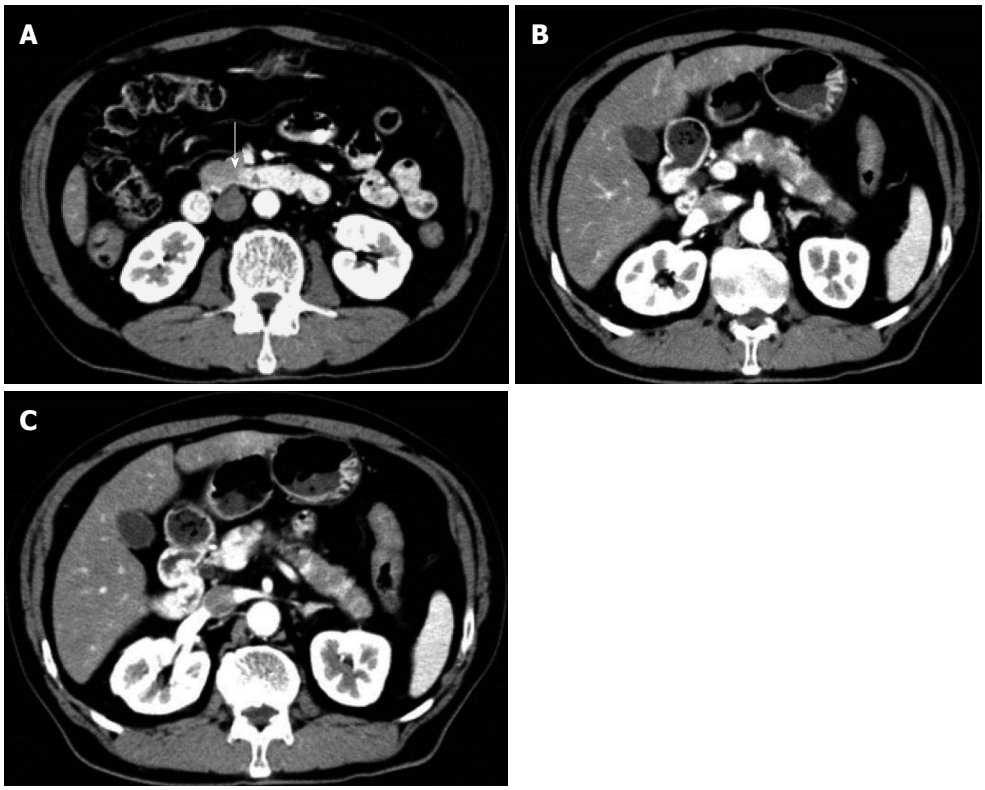


Figure 1 Contrast-enhanced abdominal/pelvic computed tomography showing pancreatic enlargement with a diffuse, poorly enhanced area in the uncinate process (arrow) and pancreatic body tail (A-C).

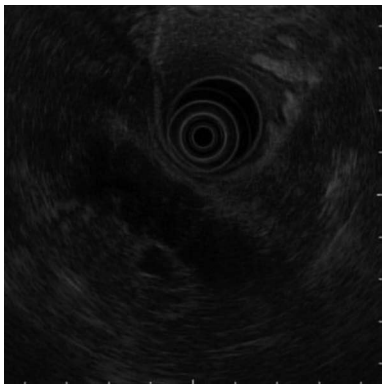


Figure 2 On endoscopic ultrasound, a hypoechoic mass in a form in which the pancreatic lobe structure was maintained in the uncinate process and from the pancreatic body to the tail.

papilla of Vater, but the biopsy revealed thrombus formation.

The patient was suspected of having pancreatic cancer presenting with a special distribution, malignant lymphoma, tumor-forming pancreatitis, or autoimmune pancreatitis (AIP); however, despite the various laboratory tests, a definitive diagnosis was not reached. A contrast-enhanced CT performed in May 2014 showed improvement in the pancreatic enlargement (Figure 4); therefore, it was believed to be nonspecific pancreatitis, and follow-up observation was the chosen strategy. Blood collection and CT scans were subsequently performed every three months, but these did not demonstrate any major changes. However, in January 2015, he was admitted to our hospital's respiratory medicine department for an alveolar hemorrhage and pneumonia (Figure 5); in addition to rapidly progressive glomerulonephritis, he tested positive for myeloperoxidase-ANCA, and he was diagnosed with ANCA-related vasculitis, specifically microscopic polyangiitis (MPA). Contrast-enhanced CT performed during the same period showed that the pancreatic enlargement and poorly enhanced area had disappeared. Despite immunosuppressive therapy with steroids, his respiratory condition worsened, and he passed away in April 2015.

DISCUSSION

The Chapel Hill Consensus Conference (CHCC) published in 1994 classifies the ten diseases of primary vasculitis into three categories by affected vessel size (large vessels, medium vessels, and small vessels)[1]. Although this classification has been widely used around the world, nearly 20 years have passed, and as research on the etiology and pathological condition of vasculitis has advanced, issues with the classification have arisen. A new classification and definitions have been developed and published in January 2013 as "CHCC2012"[2], in which four categories of 16 diseases, including secondary vasculitis and others, have been added to the original three categories of large-vessel vasculitis, medium-vessel vasculitis, and small-vessel

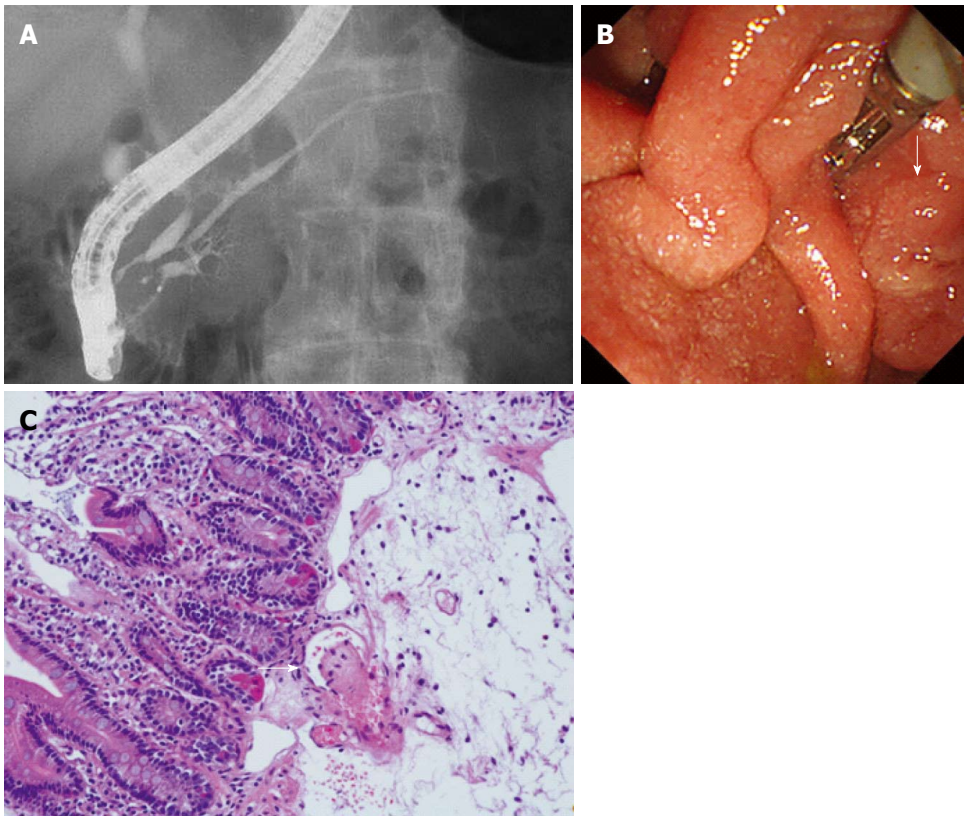


Figure 3 Endoscopic retrograde pancreatography. A: A slight disparity of the opening diameter in the main pancreatic duct, but no localized stenosis or diffuse narrowing observed; B: No abnormality in the papilla of Vater (arrow); C: The biopsy reveals thrombus formation (arrow).

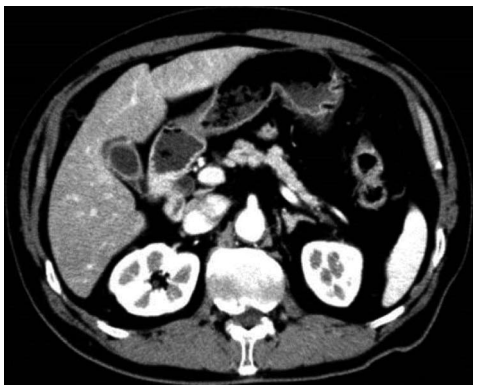


Figure 4 Contrast-enhanced abdominal/pelvic computed tomography performed in May 2014 showing a trend of improvement in the pancreatic enlargement.

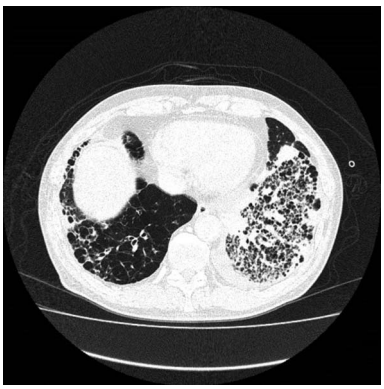


Figure 5 Chest computed tomography demonstrating an alveolar hemorrhage and pneumonia.

vasculitis; the current understanding of vasculitis now encompasses diverse concepts.

In the CHCC2012, MPA belongs to small-vessel vasculitis, with the definition that "MPA is necrotizing vasculitis, with few or no immune deposits, predominantly affecting small vessels (*i.e.*, capillaries, venules, or arterioles). Necrotizing arteritis involving small and medium arteries might be present. Necrotizing glomerulonephritis is very common. Pulmonary capillaritis often occurs. Granulomatous inflammation is absent[2]. The onset of MPA often occurs at ⩾ 50 years of age, and it occurs more frequently in men (male-to-female ratio, 1.5:1)[3]. Sixty percent of cases are positive for myeloperoxidase-ANCA[4], and 51%-94% of cases are reportedly positive for all ANCAs, including PR3-ANCA[4,5]. There are two basic types of findings: those based on bleeding, infarction, and other vascular disorders caused by the rupture of blood vessels and those based on inflammation such as fever and elevated C-reactive protein levels. The main target organs are the kidneys or lungs, with lesions also observed in the skin, muscles, and brain; 30%-50% of lesions are also reportedly observed in the digestive tract[3,6], but it is rare for lesions to be found in the pancreas.

Table 1 Cases presented for pancreatic lesion in anti-neutrophil cytoplasmic antibody-related vasculitis

Authors	Year	Age (yr), sex	Symptoms	Pancreatic enzyme	ANCA	Vasculitis	Pancreatic lesion Imaging	Diagnostic method	Other organ disorder	Treatment Pancreas Other organ	Outcome Pancreas Other organ
O'Neil *et al*[8]	1992	44, M	Jaundice	ND	+	GPA	Ph tumor susp US: hypoechoic CT: 3 cm mass	Renal biopsy	Kidney Nose	Treated PSL, CYC PSL, CYC	Alive Improved Improved
Stuckey *et al*[9]	1992	45, M	Epigastric pain Nausea	AMY: 55	-	GPA	Pancreatitis susp CT: enlargement, sporadic low density lesions	Parotid gland biopsy	Lung	Treated Conservative PSL, CYC	Alive Improved Improved
Berney *et al*[10]	1997	32, M	Epigastric pain	Raised of AMY, Lipase	PR3	MPA	Pancreatitis susp CT: edematous	Renal biopsy	Kidney	Treated Conservative PSL, CYC	Alive Improved spontaneously Improved
Matsubayashi *et al*[11]	2001	65, M	Left abdominal pain	Trypsin: 550 Elastase-I: 440	PR3	GPA	Pbt tumor susp CT: enlargement, sporadic low density lesions	Autopsy	Kidney Lung Spleen	None None None	Died Necrotizing pancreatitis Hemorrhagic pneumonia
Christl *et al*[12]	2004	55, F	Abdominal pain Weight loss	ND	PR3	GPA	Pt tumor susp CT: enlargement, sporadic low density lesions	Postoperative pathology Renal biopsy	Kidney	Treated Ope PSL, CYC	Alive Improved Improved
Iwasa *et al*[13]	2005	84, F	Hematuria Fever	N.D.	MPO	MPA	Normal	Autopsy	Kidney Lung	Treated PSL PSL	Died Necrotizing pancreatitis Lung hemorrhage
Haraguchi *et al*[14]	2005	84, F	Fever	AMY: 130	MPO	MPA	Normal	Autopsy	Kidney Lung	Treated PSL PSL	Died Necrotizing pancreatitis Lung hemorrhage
Tinazzi *et al*[15]	2007	48, F	Epigastric pain	N.D.	-	GPA	Ph tumor susp US: 2cm, mass, hypoechoic MRCP: obstruction of MPD	Postoperative pathology	-	Treated Ope, PSL, CYC, MTX -	Alive Improved -
Joshipura *et al*[16]	2007	47, M	Epigastric pain Fever	AMY: 874 Lipase: 1294	PR3	GPA	Pancreatitis susp CT: Pbt edematous	Turbinate biopsy	Nose	Treated PSL, CYC PSL, CYC	Alive Improved Improved
Abu-Hilal *et al*[17]	2008	20, F	Epigastric pain Nausea	Normal	PR3	GPA	Pancreatitis susp CT: Pt edematous	Renal biopsy	Kidney Lung Skin Intestine	Treated Conservative PSL, CYC	Died Improved spontaneously Lung hemorrhage

Chawla *et al*[18]	2011	60, F	Epigastric pain Nausea	Lipase: 1316	PR3	GPA	Pancreatitis susp CT: diffusely edematous, Ph hypo attenuated lesion	Renal biopsy	Kidney Lung Heart	Treated Conservative PSL, CYC, AZA	Alive Improved spontaneously Improved
Valerieva *et al*[19]	2013	62, F	Epigastric pain	Normal	PR3	GPA	Pt tumor susp CT: Pt, 3cm, mass	Postoperative pathology	-	Treated Ope, PSL, AZA	Alive Improved
Iida *et al* (this case)	2015	72, M	Weight loss	Trypsin: 723	MPO	MPA	Pancreatitis susp CT: enlargement, multiple hypo attenuated lesions	Labo data Imaging Vater biopsy	Kidney Lung	- Treated Conservative PSL, CYC	Died Improved spontaneously Lung hemorrhage

ANCA: Anti-neutrophil cytoplasmic antibody; ND: No data; AMY: Amylase; Ph: Pancreas head; Pbt: Pancreas body and tail; Pt: Pancreas tail; MRCP: Magnetic resonance cholangiopancreatography; MPD: Main pancreatic duct; PSL: Prednisolone; CYC: Cyclophosphamide; Ope: Operation; MTX: Methotrexate AZA: Azathioprine; M: Male; F: Female.

In the present case, it was difficult to histopathologically prove findings of vasculitis in the pancreas with EUS-FNA or endoscopic retrograde cholangiopancreatography; however, lung lesions progressed later, and it is characteristic that imaging showed abnormalities in the pancreas before the diagnosis of ANCA-related vasculitis could be determined. Initially, ANCA was not measured, and the differential diagnoses included pancreatic cancer, malignant lymphoma, autoimmune pancreatitis, and tumor-forming pancreatitis. Irregular, hypoechoic masses were observed in the pancreas, and carcinoembryonic antigen and cancer antigen 19-9 levels were elevated; however, any findings of pancreatic cancer were negated by the fact that no abnormality was observed in the pancreatic ducts and the lesions were scattered (regarding a diagnosis of cancer of the entire pancreas). Malignant lymphoma was considered as a differential disease in part because the artery penetrated the lesion, but enlarged lymph nodes were not observed, and a pathologically definitive diagnosis could not be reached. The diagnosis of AIP was rejected because, although pancreatic enlargement was observed, the diffuse poorly enhanced area was nonspecific, and hyper-IgG4 disease, irregular narrowing of the main pancreatic duct in ERP, or extrapancreatic lesions were not observed. Regarding tumor-forming pancreatitis, tumor signs were not localized, and the pancreatic duct images also showed no abnormalities; therefore, it could not be said to be typical. Although the abdominal pain was not clear, his mild inflammatory reaction, elevated trypsin levels, and pancreatic enlargement suggested pancreatitis. In light of his clinical course, it appears that factors such as thrombus formation caused by the vasculitis in the early stages of ANCA-related vasculitis caused pancreatic blood flow to be abnormally distributed, resulting in non-uniform pancreatitis and manifesting in the presentation of the imaging findings. In AIP, IgG4-positive cells are reportedly detected from the papilla of Vater in a high proportion of biopsies[7]; in the present case, the papilla of Vater was biopsied to exclude AIP even though no abnormalities were observed endoscopically. IgG4-positive cells were not observed, but thrombus formation was present (Figure 3B); conceivably, this also occurred in the peripancreatic vessels, causing an abnormal distribution of the pancreatic blood flow and producing irregular pancreatitis.

When PubMed was searched for previous reports published between 1990 and 2015 of ANCA-related vasculitis presenting with pancreatic lesions, 12 cases were found[8-19] (Table 1). The mean age was 55.2 years (20-84 years), with a male-to-female ratio of 6:7; 11 cases were ANCA-positive, and granulomatosis with polyangiitis was the most frequent diagnosis (9 cases), while there were 4 cases of MPA and no cases of eosinophilic granulomatosis with polyangiitis. In 6 cases, symptoms were accompanied by findings of pancreatitis on imaging; 5 cases presented with nodular shadows that were difficult to differentiate from tumors in the pancreas, and no antemortem pancreatic lesions were indicated, but postmortem autopsy indicated pancreatic lesions in 2 cases. Regarding pathologically definitive diagnoses of pancreatic lesions, 3 cases were diagnosed following a surgical procedure because of the difficulty differentiating the lesions from a tumor, 3 cases were diagnosed by postmortem autopsy, and 7 cases had a diagnosis indirectly proven by biopsies from other organs because a definitive diagnosis could not be reached for the pancreas. None of the cases had a definitive diagnosis of ANCA-related vasculitis based on pancreatic lesions before treatment. Thus, similar to the present case, pancreatic lesions in ANCA-related vasculitis are extremely difficult to diagnose by endoscopic biopsy or similar methods before

treatment, and it is important to indirectly diagnose the condition from the involvement of other organs.

Regarding the treatment of pancreatic lesions, of the 6 cases that presented with findings of pancreatitis on imaging, 5 were successfully treated with conservative treatment. Therefore, it is possible that pancreatitis caused by ANCA-related vasculitis could follow a transient course; however, there are few reports in which ANCA-related vasculitis resolved spontaneously[20], and this remains largely speculative. Despite the possibility that the pancreatitis is transient, remission of pancreatitis has been followed by organ failure in other cases owing to the manifestation of ANCA-related vasculitis in other organs such as the kidneys or lungs, and the patient died, as in the present case. Therefore, we believe that ANCA-related vasculitis should be differentially included as a cause of pancreatitis of unknown etiology, and an early and appropriate diagnosis is required, followed by the start of treatment.

In addition to cases with ANCA-related vasculitis, some cases with Kawasaki disease, polyarteritis nodosa, or other types of vasculitis have presented with pancreatitis or nodules in the pancreas[21,22]. As already described, although the CHCC2012 classifies vasculitis by vascular diameter, there is considerable overlap in the vessels invaded in each group, and vessels of any size can be affected; therefore, we feel that care should be taken regarding the relationship with pancreatic lesions in all forms of vasculitis, including ANCA-related vasculitis. However, because there are so few previous reports regarding vasculitis and pancreatic lesions, the details of the relationship remain unclear, and additional cases will need to be described.

COMMENTS

Case characteristics

Pancreatic lesions in anti-neutrophil cytoplasmic antibody (ANCA)-related vasculitis are very rare. This is a case of rare type of pancreatitis as the first presentation of anti-neutrophil cytoplasmic antibody-related vasculitis.

Clinical diagnosis

Factors such as thrombus formation caused by the vasculitis in the early stages of ANCA-related vasculitis cause abnormal distribution of the pancreatic blood flow, resulting in non-uniform pancreatitis.

Differential diagnosis

The patient was suspected of having pancreatic cancer presenting with a special distribution, malignant lymphoma, tumor-forming pancreatitis, or autoimmune pancreatitis.

Laboratory diagnosis

On second admission, myeloperoxidase-ANCA was positive.

Imaging diagnosis

First, it was believed to be nonspecific pancreatitis because of improvement in the pancreatic enlargement.

Pathological diagnosis

On endoscopic ultrasound-guided fine needle aspiration biopsy, malignant cells were not detected, and the diagnosis was nonspecific pancreatitis. On endoscopic retrograde pancreatography, no abnormality was observed in the papilla of Vater, but the biopsy revealed thrombus formation.

Treatment

First, it was believed to be nonspecific pancreatitis, and computed tomography showed improvement in the pancreatic enlargement, follow-up observation was the chosen strategy. For an alveolar hemorrhage and pneumonia, immunosuppressive therapy with steroids was performed.

Related reports

ANCA-related vasculitis presenting with pancreatic lesions published between 1990 and 2015 were found 12 cases in PubMed.

Experiences and lessons

ANCA-related vasculitis should be differentially included as a cause of pancreatitis of unknown etiology, and an early and appropriate diagnosis is required, followed by the start of treatment.

Peer-review

The case report by Iida T and co-workers describes a rare case of ANCA-related vasculitis with pancreatic involvement. It is a well-constructed case report and a short but good review of the corresponding literature.

REFERENCES

1 **Jennette JC**, Falk RJ, Andrassy K, Bacon PA, Churg J, Gross WL, Hagen EC, Hoffman GS, Hunder GG, Kallenberg CG. Nomenclature of systemic vasculitides. Proposal of an international consensus conference. *Arthritis Rheum* 1994; **37**: 187-192 [PMID: 8129773 DOI: 10.1002/art.1780370206]

2 **Jennette JC**, Falk RJ, Bacon PA, Basu N, Cid MC, Ferrario F, Flores-Suarez LF, Gross WL, Guillevin L, Hagen EC, Hoffman GS, Jayne DR, Kallenberg CG, Lamprecht P, Langford CA, Luqmani RA, Mahr AD, Matteson EL, Merkel PA, Ozen S, Pusey CD, Rasmussen N, Rees AJ, Scott DG, Specks U, Stone JH, Takahashi K, Watts RA. 2012 revised International Chapel Hill Consensus Conference Nomenclature of Vasculitides. *Arthritis Rheum* 2013; **65**: 1-11 [PMID: 23045170 DOI: 10.1002/art.37715]

3 **Villiger PM**, Guillevin L. Microscopic polyangiitis: Clinical presentation. *Autoimmun Rev* 2010; **9**: 812-819 [PMID: 20656070 DOI: 10.1016/j.autrev.2010.07.009]

4 **Kallenberg CG**, Heeringa P, Stegeman CA. Mechanisms of Disease: pathogenesis and treatment of ANCA-associated vasculitides. *Nat Clin Pract Rheumatol* 2006; **2**: 661-670 [PMID: 17133251 DOI: 10.1038/ncprheum0355]

5 **Vamvakopoulos J**, Savage CO, Harper L. ANCA-associated vasculitides-lessons from the adult literature. *Pediatr Nephrol* 2010; **25**: 1397-1407 [PMID: 20358231 DOI: 10.1007/s00467-010-1496-z]

6 **Fukushima M**, Inoue S, Ono Y, Tamaki Y, Yoshimura H, Imai Y, Inokuma T. Microscopic polyangiitis complicated with ileal involvement detected by double-balloon endoscopy: a case report. *BMC Gastroenterol* 2013; **13**: 42 [PMID: 23452722 DOI: 10.1186/1471-230X-13-42]

7 **Kamisawa T**, Tu Y, Egawa N, Tsuruta K, Okamoto A. A new diagnostic endoscopic tool for autoimmune pancreatitis. *Gastrointest Endosc* 2008; **68**: 358-361 [PMID: 18513718 DOI: 10.1016/j.gie.2008.02.018]

8 **O'Neil KM**, Jones DM, Lawson JM. Wegener's granulomatosis masquerading as pancreatic carcinoma. *Dig Dis Sci* 1992; **37**: 702-704 [PMID: 1563310 DOI: 10.1007/BF01296425]

9 **Stuckey SL**, Smart PJ. Wegener's granulomatosis: parotid

involvement and associated pancreatitis with C.T. findings. *Australas Radiol* 1992; **36**: 343-346 [PMID: 1299199 DOI: 10.1111/j.1440-1673.1992.tb03217.x]
10 **Berney T**, Persoz C, Leski M, Morel P. Antineutrophil cytoplasmic antibodies and acute pancreatitis. *Pancreas* 1997; **15**: 106-107 [PMID: 9211500 DOI: 10.1097/00006676-199707000-00015]
11 **Matsubayashi H**, Seki T, Niki S, Mizumura Y, Taguchi Y, Moriyasu F, Go K. Wegener's granulomatosis with onset of acute pancreatitis and rapid progress. A case report. *Pancreatology* 2001; **1**: 263-266 [PMID: 12120205 DOI: 10.1159/000055821]
12 **Christl SU**, Borchard F, Keller R, Engemann R, Fischbach W. [Pancreatic tail tumor as an unusual first manifestation of Wegener's disease]. *Z Gastroenterol* 2004; **42**: 513-516 [PMID: 15190447 DOI: 10.1055/s-2004-813113]
13 **Iwasa S**, Katoh R. Autopsy case of microscopic polyangiitis with crescentic glomerulonephritis and necrotizing pancreatitis. *Pathol Int* 2005; **55**: 520-523 [PMID: 15998382 DOI: 10.1111/j.1440-1827.2005.01863.x]
14 **Haraguchi K**, Gunji K, Ito Y, Yokomori N, Kawaguchi A, Ohomori M, Inoue H, Shimura H, Saito T, Kobayashi T. Extensive pancreatic necrosis in microscopic polyangiitis. *Clin Exp Nephrol* 2005; **9**: 326-331 [PMID: 16362161 DOI: 10.1007/s10157-005-0378-3]
15 **Tinazzi I**, Caramaschi P, Parisi A, Faccioli N, Capelli P, Biasi D. Pancreatic granulomatous necrotizing vasculitis: a case report and review of the literature. *Rheumatol Int* 2007; **27**: 989-991 [PMID: 17265156 DOI: 10.1007/s00296-007-0314-9]
16 **Joshipura VP**, Haribhakti SP, Pandya SC, Soni HN, Patel NR. Wegener's granulomatosis--an etiology of acute pancreatitis. *Indian J Gastroenterol* 2007; **26**: 89-90 [PMID: 17558075]
17 **Abu-Hilal M**, Abu-Hilal M, McPhail MJ, Zeidan B, Bryant T, Bateman A, Johnson CD. Acute pancreatitis as the first presentation of Wegener's granulomatosis. *JOP* 2008; **9**: 300-304 [PMID: 18469442]
18 **Chawla S**, Atten MJ, Attar BM. Acute pancreatitis as a rare initial manifestation of Wegener's granulomatosis. A case based review of literature. *JOP* 2011; **12**: 167-169 [PMID: 21386646]
19 **Valerieva Y**, Golemanov B, Tzolova N, Mitova R. Pancreatic mass as an initial presentation of severe Wegener's granulomatosis. *Ann Gastroenterol* 2013; **26**: 267-269 [PMID: 24714250]
20 **Yanagawa T**, Andoh T, Ikushima S, Akiyama O, Oritsu M, Takemura T. [A case of Wegener's granulomatosis which showed early spontaneous remission]. *Nihon Kokyuki Gakkai Zasshi* 1998; **36**: 256-261 [PMID: 9656673]
21 **Reynaud-Mendel B**, Lemann M, David F, Menasché S, Bachelez H, Dubertret L. Adult Kawasaki disease complicated by pancreatitis. *Am J Gastroenterol* 1997; **92**: 1239-1240 [PMID: 9219820]
22 **Yokoi Y**, Nakamura I, Kaneko T, Sawayanagi T, Watahiki Y, Kuroda M. Pancreatic mass as an initial manifestation of polyarteritis nodosa: a case report and review of the literature. *World J Gastroenterol* 2015; **21**: 1014-1019 [PMID: 25624739 DOI: 10.3748/wjg.v21.i3.1014]

P- Reviewer: Goetze TO, Kleeff J, Ramia JM
S- Editor: Gong ZM **L- Editor**: A **E- Editor**: Liu XM

World Journal of Gastroenterology

Submit a Manuscript: http://www.wjgnet.com/esps/
Help Desk: http://www.wjgnet.com/esps/helpdesk.aspx
DOI: 10.3748/wjg.v22.i7.2391

World J Gastroenterol 2016 February 21; 22(7): 2391-2397
ISSN 1007-9327 (print) ISSN 2219-2840 (online)

CASE REPORT

Cystic micropapillary neoplasm of peribiliary glands with concomitant perihilar cholangiocarcinoma

Tsuneyuki Uchida, Yusuke Yamamoto, Takaaki Ito, Yukiyasu Okamura, Teiichi Sugiura, Katsuhiko Uesaka, Yasuni Nakanuma

Tsuneyuki Uchida, Yusuke Yamamoto, Takaaki Ito, Yukiyasu Okamura, Teiichi Sugiura, Katsuhiko Uesaka, Division of Hepato-Biliary-Pancreatic Surgery, Shizuoka Cancer Center Hospital, Sunto-gun, Shizuoka 4118777, Japan

Tsuneyuki Uchida, Yasuni Nakanuma, Division of Diagnostic Pathology, Shizuoka Cancer Center Hospital, Sunto-gun, Shizuoka 4118777, Japan

Author contributions: Uchida T, Uesaka K and Nakanuma Y did study design and manuscript preparation; Uchida T, Yamamoto Y, Ito T, Okamura Y, Sugiura T and Uesaka K did clinical diagnosis and management; Nakanuma Y contributed to pathological diagnosis.

Institutional review board statement: The study was reviewed and approved by the Shizuoka Cancer Center Hospital Institutional review board.

Conflict-of-interest statement: None of the authors has a conflict of interest.

Correspondence to: Yasuni Nakanuma, MD, Division of Diagnostic Pathology, Shizuoka Cancer Center Hospital, 1007 Shimonagakubo, Nagaizumi-cho, Sunto-gun, Shizuoka 4118777, Japan. y.nakanuma@scchr.jp
Telephone: +81-55-9895222
Fax: +81-55-9895783

Received: August 3, 2015
Peer-review started: August 5, 2015
First decision: September 29, 2015
Revised: October 23, 2015
Accepted: November 24, 2015
Article in press: November 24, 2015
Published online: February 21, 2016

Abstract

We report a case of a 75-year-old man with cystic micropapillary neoplasm of peribiliary glands detected preoperatively by radiologic examination. Enhanced computed tomography showed a low-density mass 2.2 cm in diameter in the right hepatic hilum and a cystic lesion around the common hepatic duct. Under a diagnosis of perihilar cholangiocarcinoma, right hepatectomy with caudate lobectomy and bile duct resection were performed. Pathological examination revealed perihilar cholangiocarcinoma mainly involving the right hepatic duct. The cystic lesion was multilocular and covered by columnar lining epithelia exhibiting increased proliferative activity and p53 nuclear expression; it also contained foci of micropapillary and glandular proliferation. Therefore, the lesion was diagnosed as a cystic micropapillary neoplasm of peribiliary glands and resembled flat branch-type intraductal papillary mucinous neoplasm of the pancreas. Histological examination showed the lesion was discontinuous with the perihilar cholangiocarcinoma. Immunohistochemistry showed the cystic neoplasm was strongly positive for MUC6 and that the cholangiocarcinoma was strongly positive for MUC5AC and S100P. These results suggest these two lesions have different origins. This case warrants further study on whether this type of neoplasm is associated with concomitant cholangiocarcinoma as observed in pancreatic intraductal papillary mucinous neoplasm with concomitant pancreatic duct adenocarcinoma.

Key words: Intraductal papillary neoplasm of the bile duct; Peribiliary gland; Gastric type; Perihilar

cholangiocarcinoma

Core tip: This report highlights intraductal papillary neoplasm of bile duct (IPNB) arising from peribiliary glands (PBGs) in a case of perihilar cholangiocarcinoma, which is of special interest because to our knowledge this is the first report of IPNB arising from PBGs with concomitant perihilar cholangiocarcinoma occurred separately, and the neoplasm may be regarded as the biliary counterpart of branch duct-type intraductal papillary mucinous neoplasm of pancreas with concomitant pancreatic duct adenocarcinoma.

Uchida T, Yamamoto Y, Ito T, Okamura Y, Sugiura T, Uesaka K, Nakanuma Y. Cystic micropapillary neoplasm of peribiliary glands with concomitant perihilar cholangiocarcinoma. *World J Gastroenterol* 2016; 22(7): 2391-2397 Available from: URL: http://www.wjgnet.com/1007-9327/full/v22/i7/2391.htm DOI: http://dx.doi.org/10.3748/wjg.v22.i7.2391

INTRODUCTION

Intraductal papillary neoplasm of the bile duct (IPNB) is characterized by exophytic proliferation of neoplastic epithelial cells with fine fibrovascular stalks in the dilated bile duct lumen and mucin hypersecretion[1-3]. IPNB and pancreatic intraductal papillary mucinous neoplasm (IPMN) share some clinicopathological characteristics[1-5], and IPNB can be regarded as a biliary counterpart of IPMN. However, IPNB differs from IPMN in several aspects. In particular, IPMN can be divided into the main pancreatic duct and branch pancreatic duct types[6]. Meanwhile, most previously reported cases of IPNB occurred in the extrahepatic, hilar, and large intrahepatic bile ducts; such IPNB cases can be regarded as counterparts of IPMN, particularly the main duct type[4,6,7]. So far, the IPNB type corresponding to branch duct-type IPMN (BD-IPMN) remains to be established.

Several cases of IPNB arising from peribiliary glands (PBGs) exhibiting grossly visible papillary lesions have recently been reported[8-10]. Nakanuma *et al*[4,5,11] recently reported that the biliary tract can be regarded as an incomplete pancreas and that PBGs and their own conduits around the large bile ducts may correspond to the branches of the pancreatic duct and exocrine pancreas[12]. In this context, IPNBs arising from PBGs could be regarded as branch duct-type IPNB (BD-IPNB) corresponding to BD-IPMN. Sato *et al*[13] recently reported an entity of cystic and micropapillary epithelial lesions of PBGs by surveying many autopsy cases; these lesions are characterized by grossly visible multicystic epithelial tumors with foci of micropapillary patterns. After extensive analysis, they concluded these lesions are neoplastic; therefore, the term "cystic micropapillary neoplasm of PBGs" is preferable in this context.

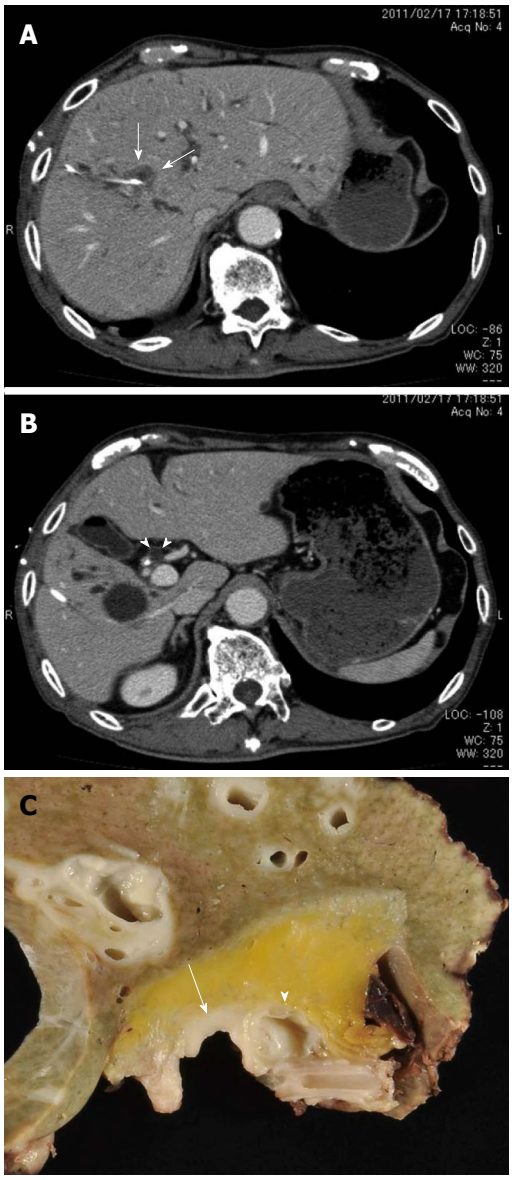


Figure 1 Preoperative images. A: Enhanced computed tomography showing a 2.2-cm low-density tumor (arrows) in the right hepatic hilum. The white tube is the percutaneous transhepatic biliary drainage tube; B: Enhanced computed tomography showing a cystic lesion (arrowheads) by the common bile duct; the endoscopic nasobiliary drainage tube appears as a white dot. A solitary cyst can also be observed in the right lobe; C: Surgically resected specimen showing a cystic lesion (arrowhead) in the hilar connective tissue near the common bile duct involving the carcinoma (arrow).

IPNB is a pre-invasive lesion that is eventually followed by invasive carcinoma (*i.e.*, IPNB with an associated invasive carcinoma)[1,2]. IPMN is also a pre-invasive neoplasm that is followed by invasive carcinoma. In addition, IPMN is not uncommonly associated with concomitant pancreatic duct adenocarcinoma (PDAC) (*i.e.*, IPMN with concomitant PDAC)[14-16], while no such cases of IPNB with concomitant cholangiocarcinoma (CCA) have been reported. Herein, we report a case of cystic micropapillary neoplasm of PBGs that was

detected preoperatively by radiologic examination. The neoplasm was associated with perihilar CCA, suggesting concomitance similar to BD-IPMN with concomitant PDAC.

CASE REPORT

A 75-year-old man complaining of obstructive jaundice was referred to our hospital. He previously underwent endoscopic mucosal dissection for gastric cancer and pharyngolaryngoesophagectomy for hypopharyngeal carcinoma. Laboratory test results on admission were as follows: aspartate aminotransferase, 87 IU/L (normal: 10-40 IU/L); alanine aminotransferase, 84 IU/L (normal: 5-40 IU/L); γ-glutamyl transpeptidase, 309 IU/L (normal: < 70 IU/L); alkaline phosphatase, 909 IU/L (normal: 115-359 IU/L); total bilirubin, 8.6 mg/dL (normal: 0.2-1.0 mg/dL); carcinoembryonic antigen, 2.7 ng/mL (normal: < 5.0 ng/dL); and carbohydrate antigen 19-9, 112 IU/mL (normal: < 37 IU/mL). After hospitalization, serum total bilirubin and liver enzyme levels normalized because of endoscopic nasobiliary drainage and percutaneous transhepatic biliary drainage. Enhanced computed tomography showed a low-density mass 2.2 cm in diameter in the right hepatic hilum (Figure 1A) and a cystic lesion near the common bile duct (Figure 1B); this cyst was retrospectively diagnosed as a peribiliary cyst. After a pathological diagnosis of adenocarcinoma on the basis of cholangioscopic biopsy, right hepatectomy with caudate lobectomy and bile duct resection were performed. The postoperative course was uneventful, and he was discharged on the 17th postoperative day. During follow-up, multiple liver metastases were found, and he died one year postoperatively.

Pathological findings

Macroscopic examination revealed the tumor spread from the right hepatic duct to the common hepatic duct. The cystic lesion was 1.0 cm × 1.0 cm and had a multilocular appearance in the hilar connective tissue near the common bile duct (Figure 1C, 2A and 2B).

Histologically, the tumor was well-to-moderately differentiated tubular adenocarcinoma of the right hepatic duct extending to the common bile duct (Figure 2A and Figure 3) and was therefore diagnosed as perihilar CCA. The cystic lesion was multilocular with fine fibrous septae. A large part of the inner surfaces of cystic spaces were covered with columnar epithelium resembling gastric epithelia (Figure 2C). Glandular components resembling pyloric glands were focally found under the lining epithelia of cystic spaces (Figure 2D). Micropapillary projections with intermediate-grade intraepithelial neoplasia were focally found (Figure 2E). These cystic lesions were rimmed by non-neoplastic PBGs (Figure 2F). In addition, the lesion was near the common hepatic duct, suggesting it might have originated from PBGs. These findings were compatible with a diagnosis of cystic micropapillary neoplasm of PBGs[13]. The hilar CCA and cystic micropapillary neoplasm were close but not continuous (Figure 2A).

Immunohistochemical staining for MUC1, MUC2, MUC5AC, MUC6, CK7, CK20, S100P, estrogen receptor, progesterone receptor, Ki67, and p53 was performed (Figure 4 and Table 1). No ovarian-like stroma or stromal cells positive for estrogen receptor or progesterone receptor were observed, indicating this cystic neoplasm differed from the hepatic mucinous cystic neoplasm. The perihilar CCA was strongly and diffusely positive for MUC5AC and S100p, while the cystic papillary neoplasm was strongly and diffusely positive for MUC6 and focally positive for MUC5AC. Both were strongly positive for CK7 and focally positive for p53. These findings suggest both neoplasms had different phenotypes.

DISCUSSION

There have been several reports of neoplastic changes of PBGs[8-10,17], showing that CCA[17] and grossly visible papillary neoplasms can arise from PBGs[4,5,10]; the latter are termed BD-IPNB[5,8-10]. However, the clinicopathological characteristics of BD-IPNB remain incompletely understood. Sato *et al*[13] recently found 9 cases of cystic micropapillary neoplasms of PBGs among 938 consecutive autopsied livers. In the present case, the lesion comprised multilocular cysts covered by columnar epithelial cells with mucinous cytoplasm, increased proliferative activities, and frequent nuclear expression of p53. In addition, the lesion exhibited micropapillary projections. The lesion was located in the hilar connective tissue near the common bile duct and was rimmed by non-neoplastic PBGs. Hence, this lesion was diagnosed as cystic micropapillary neoplasm of PBGs.

The present case differs from previously reported BD-IPNBs in that papillary lesions were not grossly visible; rather, this case histologically resembled flat BD-IPMN[6,15,16,18]. Furthermore, this lesion was positive for MUC6 and focally positive for MUC5AC, suggestive of gastric-type phenotype and phenotypically similar to flat BD-IPMN[6]. In fact, there were several foci of pyloric glands beneath the cyst-lining surface epithelia within the lesion. In this context, the lesion could be also termed branch-type IPNB without a grossly visible papillary component (*i.e.*, flat-type BD-IPNB), such as flat BD-IPMN.

In the pancreas, IPMN is not infrequently associated with PDAC (*i.e.*, IPMN with concomitant PDAC)[15,16,18]. Retrospective studies on BD-IPMN with concomitant PDAC report its incidence among IPMNs to range from 3.3%-9.2%[15,16,19]. The clinical outcome of patients with IPMN with concomitant PDAC is better than that of ordinary PDAC (*i.e.*, without concomitant IPMN); this is because IPMN concomitant with pancreatic cancer is detected at an earlier stage because of

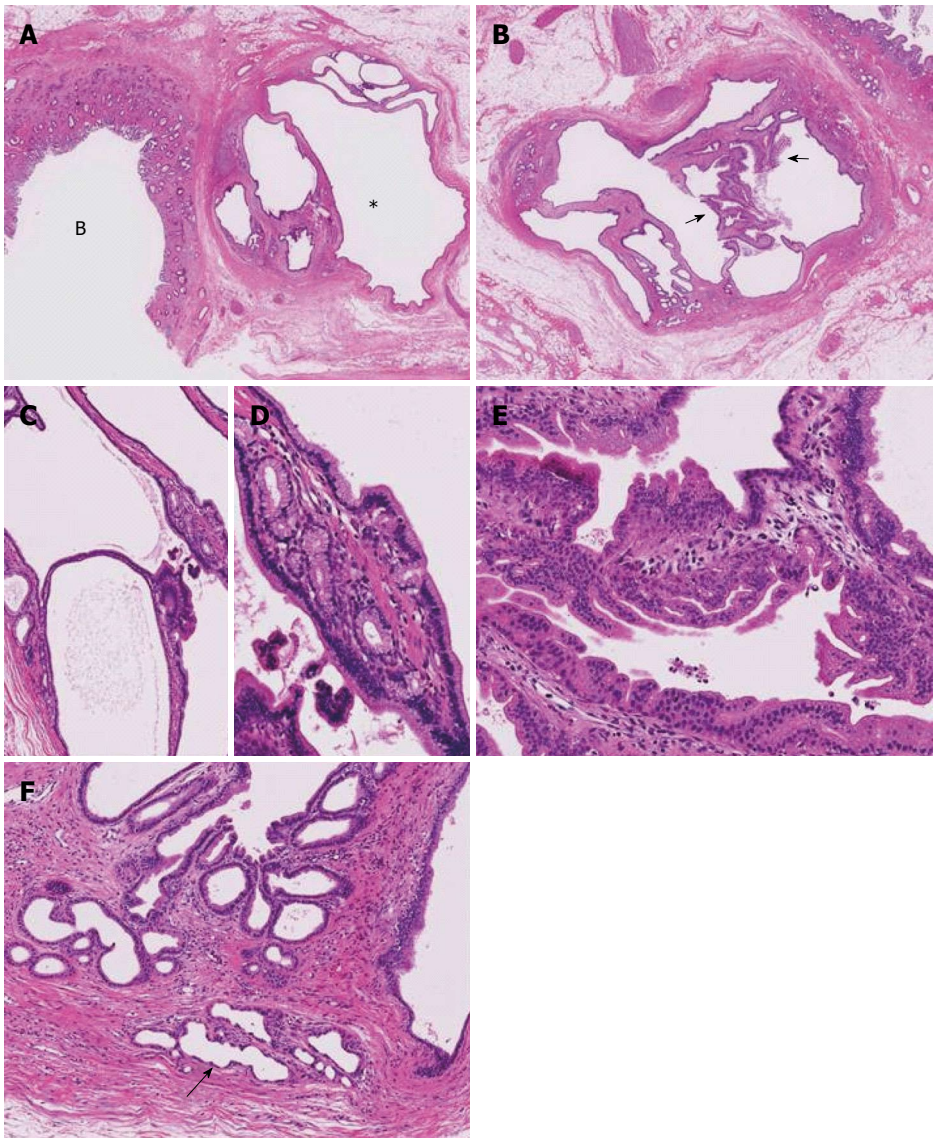


Figure 2 Pathological findings. A: Low-power histologic image of the same region showing a multilocular cystic lesion (*) and the common hepatic duct involving the carcinoma; B: Another level of a cystic lesion shows a multilocular cystic lesion with some areas exhibiting a micropapillary pattern (arrows), HE; C: The multilocular parts show fine septae lined by columnar epithelium, HE; D: The lining epithelium is columnar with clear cytoplasm, and a pyloric glandular pattern is visible underneath, HE; E: Micropapillary patterns, HE; F: The border of the cystic lesion is rimmed by non-neoplastic peribiliary glands (arrow), HE. HE: Hematoxylin and eosin.

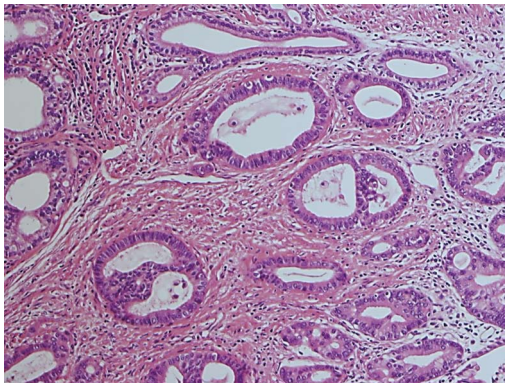


Figure 3 Well-to-moderately differentiated tubular adenocarcinoma of the perihilar bile duct (hematoxylin and eosin).

the presence of IPMN[16]. Gastric-type BD-IPMN with concomitant PDAC does not exhibit GNAS mutation in contrast to the majority of gastric-type IPMNs[18].

Interestingly, the lesion in the present case was associated with perihilar CCA; they were discontinuous, and their phenotypes were different, suggesting the flat BD-IPNB and hilar CCA occurred separately. Such an association has not been reported in cases of hilar CCA or IPNB; furthermore, our survey of 59 surgically resected perihilar CCAs at our hospital failed to find another case of cystic micropapillary neoplasm of PBGs (*i.e.*, flat BD-IPNB). Therefore, to our knowledge the case presented herein could be the first case of flat BD-IPNB with concomitant perihilar CCA.

Because few cases of flat BD-IPNB have been

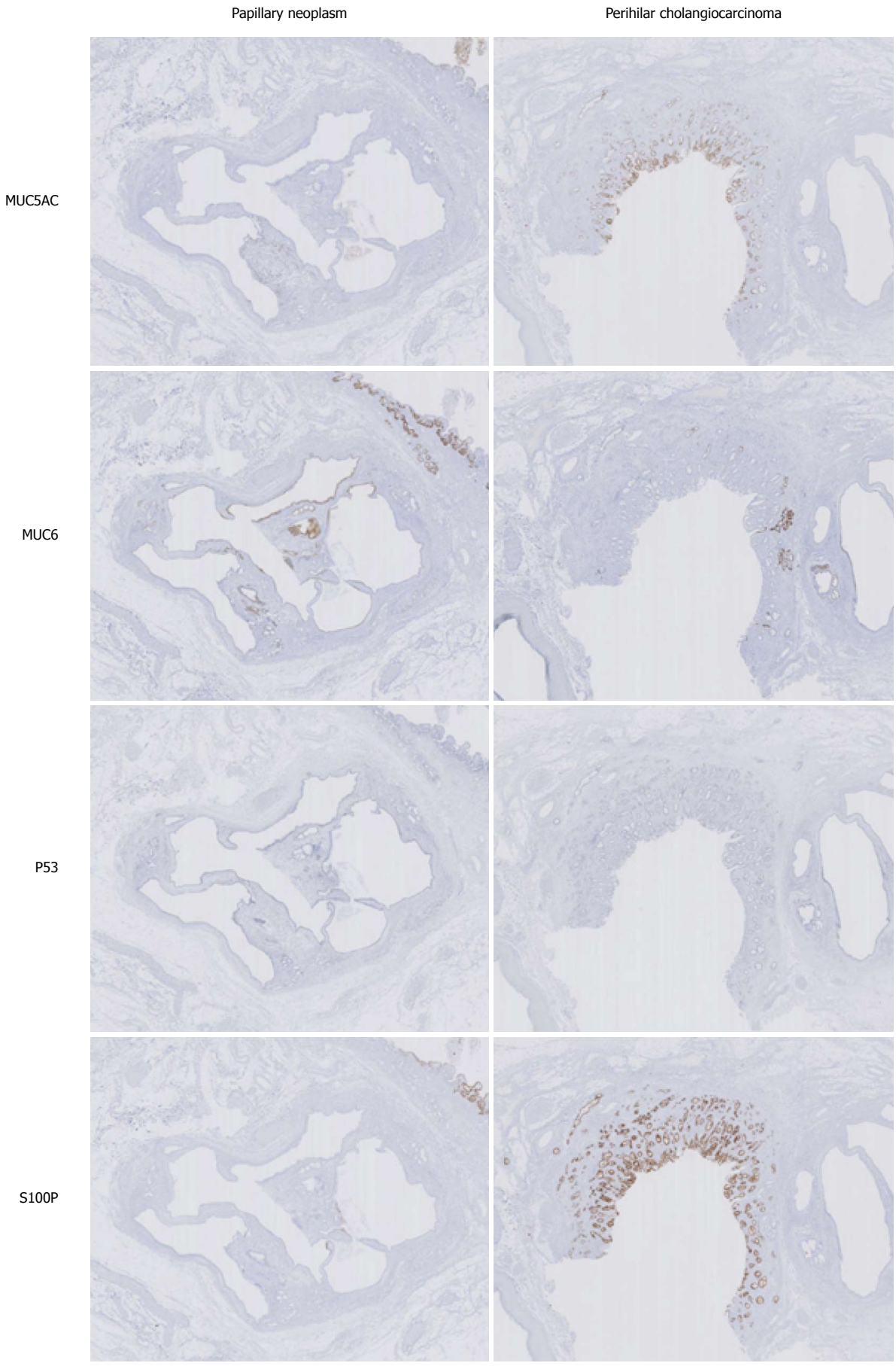


Figure 4 Immunohistochemistry of papillary neoplasm and Perihilar cholangiocarcinoma.

Table 1 Immunohistochemical profiles of papillary neoplasm and perihilar cholangiocarcinoma

	Papillary neoplasm	Perihilar cholangiocarcinoma
MUC1	+	++
MUC2	-	-
MUC5AC	+	+++
MUC6	+++	-
p53	+	+
Ki67	20%	30%
CK7	+++	+++
CK20	-	-
S100P	-	++
ER	-	-
PgR	-	-

reported, it is unknown if flat BD-IPNB is associated with a high incidence of CCA. Therefore, the recognition of flat BD-IPNB or cystic micropapillary neoplasm of PBGs as well as analyses of more cases of flat BD-IPNB with or without concomitant CCA are required.

In conclusion, this is the first report of cystic micropapillary neoplasm of PBGs (*i.e.*, flat type BD-IPNB) resembling flat BD-IPMN with concomitant perihilar CCA to our knowledge. Further studies are required to establish the concept of flat BD-IPNB with concomitant perihilar CCA.

ACKNOWLEDGMENTS

We thank Mr. Shogo Fujii and Ms. Asuka Fukushima for their technical assistance.

COMMENTS

Case characteristics

A 75-year-old man complained of obstructive jaundice.

Clinical diagnosis

His skin and palpebral conjunctiva showed jaundice.

Differential diagnosis

Malignant tumors (cholangiocarcinoma, pancreatic cancer, carcinoma of the ampulla of Vater) and benign lesions (common bile duct stone, cholangitis).

Laboratory diagnosis

He had elevated hematological values for aspartate aminotransferase (87 IU/L) alanine aminotransferase (84 IU/L), γ-glutamyl transpeptidase (309 IU/L), alkaline phosphatase (909 IU/L), total bilirubin (8.6 mg/dL), carcinoembryonic antigen (2.7 ng/mL) and carbohydrate antigen 19-9 (112 IU/mL).

Imaging diagnosis

Enhanced computed tomography showed a low-density mass 2.2 cm in diameter in the right hepatic hilum and a cystic lesion near the common bile duct.

Pathological diagnosis

Intraductal papillary neoplasm of bile duct (IPNB) arising from peribiliary glands (PBGs) with concomitant perihilar cholangiocarcinoma occurred separately.

Treatment

Right hepatectomy with caudate lobectomy and bile duct resection were performed.

Term explanation

IPNB is characterized by exophytic proliferation of neoplastic epithelial cells with fine fibrovascular stalks in the dilated bile duct lumen and mucin hypersecretion.

Experiences and lessons

This is the first report of cystic micropapillary neoplasm of PBGs resembling flat branch duct-type (BD)-intraductal papillary mucinous neoplasm (IPMN) with concomitant perihilar concomitant cholangiocarcinoma (CCA) to our knowledge and further studies are required to establish the concept of flat BD-IPNB with concomitant perihilar CCA.

Peer-review

This is a case report presenting a cystic micropapillary neoplasm of peribiliary glands with concomitant perihilar cholangiocarcinoma. The authors conclude that this case warrants further study as it may be correspond to the combination of IPMN with concomitant pancreatic duct adenocarcinoma. This is the first case of such combination of tumours and deserves publication.

REFERENCES

1 **Nakanuma Y**, Curado MP, Franceschi S, Gores G, Paradis V, Sripa B, Tsui WMS, Wee A. Intrahepatic cholangiocarcinoma. In: Bosman FT, Carnoiro F, Hruba RH, Theise ND, editors. WHO classification of tumours of the digestive system, Fourth Edition. Lyon: IARC Press, 2010: 217-224

2 **Zen Y**, Fujii T, Itatsu K, Nakamura K, Minato H, Kasashima S, Kurumaya H, Katayanagi K, Kawashima A, Masuda S, Niwa H, Mitsui T, Asada Y, Miura S, Ohta T, Nakanuma Y. Biliary papillary tumors share pathological features with intraductal papillary mucinous neoplasm of the pancreas. *Hepatology* 2006; **44**: 1333-1343 [PMID: 17058219 DOI: 10.1002/hep.21387]

3 **Zen Y**, Fujii T, Itatsu K, Nakamura K, Konishi F, Masuda S, Mitsui T, Asada Y, Miura S, Miyayama S, Uehara T, Katsuyama T, Ohta T, Minato H, Nakanuma Y. Biliary cystic tumors with bile duct communication: a cystic variant of intraductal papillary neoplasm of the bile duct. *Mod Pathol* 2006; **19**: 1243-1254 [PMID: 16741522 DOI: 10.1038/modpathol.3800643]

4 **Nakanuma Y**. A novel approach to biliary tract pathology based on similarities to pancreatic counterparts: is the biliary tract an incomplete pancreas? *Pathol Int* 2010; **60**: 419-429 [PMID: 20518896 DOI: 10.1111/j.1440-1827.2010.02543.x]

5 **Nakanuma Y**, Harada K, Sasaki M, Sato Y. Proposal of a new disease concept "biliary diseases with pancreatic counterparts". Anatomical and pathological bases. *Histol Histopathol* 2014; **29**: 1-10 [PMID: 24108502 DOI: 10.14670/HH-29.1]

6 **Adsay NV**, Fukushima N, Furukawa T, Hruban RH, Klimstra DS, Klöppel G, Offerhaus GJA, Pitman MB, Shimizu M, Zamboni G. Intraductal neoplasms of the pancreas. In: Bosman FT, Carnoiro F, Hruba RH, Theise ND, editors. WHO classification of tumours of the digestive system, Fourth Edition. Lyon: IARC Press, 2010: 304-313

7 **Nakanuma Y**, Zen Y, Harada K, Ikeda H, Sato Y, Uehara T, Sasaki M. Tumorigenesis and phenotypic characteristics of mucin-producing bile duct tumors: an immunohistochemical approach. *J Hepatobiliary Pancreat Sci* 2010; **17**: 211-222 [PMID: 19680592 DOI: 10.1007/s00534-009-0158-7]

8 **Nakanishi Y**, Zen Y, Hirano S, Tanaka E, Takahashi O, Yonemori A, Doumen H, Kawakami H, Itoh T, Nakanuma Y, Kondo S. Intraductal oncocytic papillary neoplasm of the bile duct: the first case of peribiliary gland origin. *J Hepatobiliary Pancreat Surg* 2009; **16**: 869-873 [PMID: 19322511 DOI: 10.1007/

s00534-009-0070-1]
9 **Nakanishi Y**, Nakanuma Y, Ohara M, Iwao T, Kimura N, Ishidate T, Kijima H. Intraductal papillary neoplasm arising from peribiliary glands connecting with the inferior branch of the bile duct of the anterior segment of the liver. *Pathol Int* 2011; **61**: 773-777 [PMID: 22126388 DOI: 10.1111/j.1440-1827.2011.02738.x]
10 **Lim JH**, Zen Y, Jang KT, Kim YK, Nakanuma Y. Cyst-forming intraductal papillary neoplasm of the bile ducts: description of imaging and pathologic aspects. *AJR Am J Roentgenol* 2011; **197**: 1111-1120 [PMID: 22021503 DOI: 10.2214/ajr.10.6363]
11 **Nakanuma Y**, Hoso M, Sanzen T, Sasaki M. Microstructure and development of the normal and pathologic biliary tract in humans, including blood supply. *Microsc Res Tech* 1997; **38**: 552-570 [PMID: 9330346]
12 **Terada T**, Kida T, Nakanuma Y. Extrahepatic peribiliary glands express alpha-amylase isozymes, trypsin and pancreatic lipase: an immunohistochemical analysis. *Hepatology* 1993; **18**: 803-808 [PMID: 8406353 DOI: 10.1002/hep.1840180409]
13 **Sato Y**, Harada K, Sasaki M, Nakanuma Y. Cystic and micropapillary epithelial changes of peribiliary glands might represent a precursor lesion of biliary epithelial neoplasms. *Virchows Arch* 2014; **464**: 157-163 [PMID: 24458517 DOI: 10.1007/s00428-014-1537-2]
14 **Tada M**, Kawabe T, Arizumi M, Togawa O, Matsubara S, Yamamoto N, Nakai Y, Sasahira N, Hirano K, Tsujino T, Tateishi K, Isayama H, Toda N, Yoshida H, Omata M. Pancreatic cancer in patients with pancreatic cystic lesions: a prospective study in 197 patients. *Clin Gastroenterol Hepatol* 2006; **4**: 1265-1270 [PMID: 16979953 DOI: 10.1016/j.cgh.2006.07.013]
15 **Yamaguchi K**, Ohuchida J, Ohtsuka T, Nakano K, Tanaka M. Intraductal papillary-mucinous tumor of the pancreas concomitant with ductal carcinoma of the pancreas. *Pancreatology* 2002; **2**: 484-490 [PMID: 12378117 DOI: 10.1159/000064716]
16 **Yamaguchi K**, Kanemitsu S, Hatori T, Maguchi H, Shimizu Y, Tada M, Nakagohri T, Hanada K, Osanai M, Noda Y, Nakaizumi A, Furukawa T, Ban S, Nobukawa B, Kato Y, Tanaka M. Pancreatic ductal adenocarcinoma derived from IPMN and pancreatic ductal adenocarcinoma concomitant with IPMN. *Pancreas* 2011; **40**: 571-580 [PMID: 21499212 DOI: 10.1097/mpa.0b013e318215010c]
17 **Terada T**, Nakanuma Y. Pathological observations of intrahepatic peribiliary glands in 1,000 consecutive autopsy livers. II. A possible source of cholangiocarcinoma. *Hepatology* 1990; **12**: 92-97 [PMID: 2165033 DOI: 10.1002/hep.1840120115]
18 **Ideno N**, Ohtsuka T, Matsunaga T, Kimura H, Watanabe Y, Tamura K, Aso T, Aishima S, Miyasaka Y, Ohuchida K, Ueda J, Takahata S, Oda Y, Mizumoto K, Tanaka M. Clinical significance of GNAS mutation in intraductal papillary mucinous neoplasm of the pancreas with concomitant pancreatic ductal adenocarcinoma. *Pancreas* 2015; **44**: 311-320 [PMID: 25479586 DOI: 10.1097/mpa.0000000000000258]
19 **Sohn TA**, Yeo CJ, Cameron JL, Iacobuzio-Donahue CA, Hruban RH, Lillemoe KD. Intraductal papillary mucinous neoplasms of the pancreas: an increasingly recognized clinicopathologic entity. *Ann Surg* 2001; **234**: 313-321; discussion 321-322 [PMID: 11524584 DOI: 10.1097/00000658-200109000-00005]

P- Reviewer: Cathomas G, Tsolakis A, Xu Z
S- Editor: Ma YJ **L- Editor**: A **E- Editor**: Liu XM

World Journal of Gastroenterology

Submit a Manuscript: http://www.wjgnet.com/esps/
Help Desk: http://www.wjgnet.com/esps/helpdesk.aspx
DOI: 10.3748/wjg.v22.i7.2398

World J Gastroenterol 2016 February 21; 22(7): 2398-2402
ISSN 1007-9327 (print) ISSN 2219-2840 (online)

CASE REPORT

Laparoscopic resection of adult colon duplication causing intussusception

Kennoki Kyo, Masaki Azuma, Kazuya Okamoto, Motohiro Nishiyama, Takahiro Shimamura, Atsushi Maema, Motoaki Shirakawa, Toshio Nakamura, Kenji Koda, Hidetaro Yokoyama

Kennoki Kyo, Masaki Azuma, Kazuya Okamoto, Motohiro Nishiyama, Takahiro Shimamura, Atsushi Maema, Motoaki Shirakawa, Toshio Nakamura, Hidetaro Yokoyama, Department of Surgery, Fujieda Municipal General Hospital, Fujieda, Shizuoka 426-8677, Japan

Kenji Koda, Department of Pathology, Fujieda Municipal General Hospital, Fujieda, Shizuoka 426-8677, Japan

Author contributions: Kyo K served as an attending doctor for the patient, designed the report and wrote the manuscript; Kyo K and Azuma M performed the surgery; Azuma M, Okamoto K, Nishiyama M, Shimamura T, Maema A, Shirakawa M, Nakamura T, Koda K and Yokoyama H were involved in editing the manuscript; Koda K performed the pathological examination.

Supported by Fujieda Municipal General Hospital, Surugadai, Fujieda, Shizuoka, Japan.

Institutional review board statement: This study was reviewed and approved by the Institutional Review Board of Fujieda Municipal General Hospital.

Informed consent statement: Written informed consent was obtained from the patient for publication of this case report and the accompanying images.

Conflict-of-interest statement: The authors declare that there are no conflicts of interest for this article.

Correspondence to: Kennoki Kyo, MD, PhD, Department of Surgery, Fujieda Municipal General Hospital, 4-1-11 Surugadai, Fujieda, Shizuoka 426-8677, Japan. kkyo@vega.ocn.ne.jp
Telephone: +81-54-6461111
Fax: +81-54-6461122

Received: September 9, 2015
Peer-review started: September 16, 2015
First decision: October 14, 2015
Revised: November 3, 2015
Accepted: December 12, 2015
Article in press: December 12, 2015
Published online: February 21, 2016

Abstract

Gastrointestinal duplications are uncommon congenital malformations that can occur anywhere along the gastrointestinal tract. Most cases are recognized before the age of 2 years, and those encountered in adults are rare. We describe here a case of ascending colon duplication in a 20-year-old male that caused intussusception and was treated laparoscopically. Although computed tomography revealed a cystic mass filled with stool-like material, the preoperative diagnosis was a submucosal tumor of the ascending colon. We performed a laparoscopic right colectomy, and the postoperative pathological diagnosis was duplication of the ascending colon, both cystic and tubular components. We conclude that gastrointestinal duplications, although rare, should be considered in the differential diagnosis of all abdominal and submucosal cystic lesions and that laparoscopy is a preferred approach for the surgical treatment of gastrointestinal duplications.

Key words: Gastrointestinal duplication; Colonic duplication; Laparoscopy; Intussusception; Congenital abnormalities

Core tip: Gastrointestinal duplications are uncommon congenital malformations and are rarely encountered

in adults. We describe an adult case of ascending colon duplication resected by laparoscopic right colectomy. We conclude that gastrointestinal duplications should be included in the differential diagnosis of all abdominal and submucosal cystic lesions and that laparoscopy is a preferred approach for the surgical treatment of gastrointestinal duplications.

Kyo K, Azuma M, Okamoto K, Nishiyama M, Shimamura T, Maema A, Shirakawa M, Nakamura T, Koda K, Yokoyama H. Laparoscopic resection of adult colon duplication causing intussusception. *World J Gastroenterol* 2016; 22(7): 2398-2402 Available from: URL: http://www.wjgnet.com/1007-9327/full/v22/i7/2398.htm DOI: http://dx.doi.org/10.3748/wjg.v22.i7.2398

INTRODUCTION

Gastrointestinal duplications are uncommon congenital malformations and are estimated to occur in 1 of 4500 births[1]. These malformations can occur anywhere along the gastrointestinal tract from the mouth to the anus, but the ileum is the most common site (30%-35%) and colonic duplications are rare (7%-20%)[2,3]. Most cases (67%-80%) are recognized before the age of 2 years as an acute abdomen or bowel obstruction, and those condition is rarely encountered in adults[2,3]. We describe here a case of adult colon duplication that caused intussusception and was treated by laparoscopic resection.

CASE REPORT

A 20-year-old otherwise healthy male was referred to our hospital because of a one-year history of intermittent right flank pain and a large submucosal mass in the ascending colon that had been observed by colonoscopy at a clinic. All laboratory tests performed resulted in values within the normal range. An abdominal computed tomography scan revealed intussusception of the right colon with a cystic mass 4 cm in diameter. Although stool-like material was observed within the mass, it did not lead to the diagnosis (Figure 1A and B). A barium enema showed a large submucosal mass in the ascending colon that originated near the ileocecal valve (Figure 2). Colonoscopy also revealed a large submucosal mass in the ascending colon, and two mucosal defects were observed on its surface (Figure 3). Histological examinations of biopsy specimens taken from one of the mucosal defects revealed only necrotic tissue. No other abnormalities were found in either physical or radiologic examinations. A neoplastic submucosal tumor causing intussusception was suspected, and a laparoscopic right colectomy with ileocolic anastomosis was performed. Intraoperatively, a round mass was observed in the hepatic flexure of the colon that caused an invagination of the ileocecal region into the ascending colon (Figure 4). No other abnormalities such as Meckel's diverticulum or malrotation were found. Careful inspection of the resected specimen revealed not only a cystic submucosal mass 4 cm in diameter but also a submucosal tubular bulge measuring 5 cm in length and extending from the mass to the ileocecal valve (Figure 5A). Both the cystic and tubular parts of the lesion were on the mesenteric side. Histopathologically, both the cystic and tubular parts of the lesion were lined by with normal colonic mucosa; the cystic part had its own muscular layer, whereas the tubular part shared the muscular layer with the native ascending colon, which led to the diagnosis of colon duplication (Figure 5B-D). Both of the mucosal defects on the cystic lesion were communication sites with the native bowel, and the cystic lesion contained fecal material and blood clots. No neoplastic lesion or ectopic mucosa was identified. The postoperative course was uneventful, and the patient was discharged on post-operative day 7.

DISCUSSION

In 1876, Suppinger reported the first case of this congenital malformation, and in 1937, Ladd described in detail the clinical and pathological aspects of the lesions and recommended using the term "duplications of the alimentary tract"[4]. These lesions have 3 defined features: (1) well-formed smooth muscle layers; (2) an epithelial lining consisting of some portion of the alimentary tract; and (3) contiguity with a portion of the alimentary tract. There may or may not be communication with the gastrointestinal tract, and the dividing septum may be muscular or merely a double layer of epithelium[5]. Additionally, these malformations may be found in the intermuscular, submucosal or subserosal layer of the intestinal wall and are typically located on the mesenteric side of the bowel[6]. Duplications are divided into cystic (86%) and tubular types (14%), and the cystic lesion usually does not communicate with the lumen of the adjacent bowel and contains a sticky mucoid fluid that is chocolate or *café au lait* colored in some instances and almost colorless in others[2,4,7]. Tubular lesions often have one or more direct communications with the adjacent bowel and can appear either as double-barreled or Y-shaped forms. Gross *et al*[7] described four variations of the duplications: (1) a tubular structure that branches out from the intestine and extends for some distance between the mesenteric leaves; (2) a double-barreled structure communicating with the intestinal lumen at one or both ends; (3) a cystic structure lying free in the peritoneal cavity, attached only by a thin mesenteric stalk (this type is rare); and (4) most common, a spherical lesion contiguous with some part of the bowel, particularly along the ileum. Although both cystic and tubular parts were observed in the present case, we think it plausible that stool accumulation in the tubular duplication caused cystic

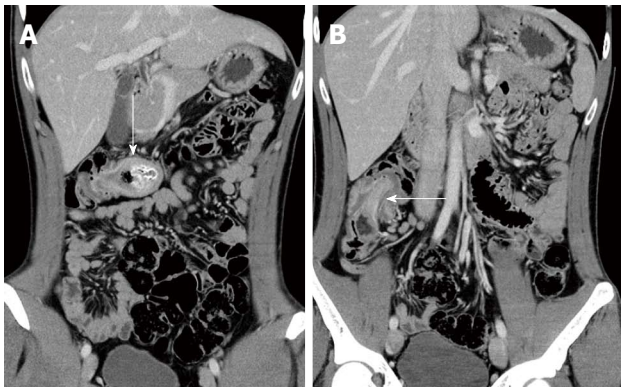


Figure 1 Coronal computed tomography of the abdomen. A: A cystic lesion 4 cm in diameter in the transverse colon (arrow). The lesion contained stool-like material and acted as a lead point for intussusception; B: Intussusception of the right colon (arrow).

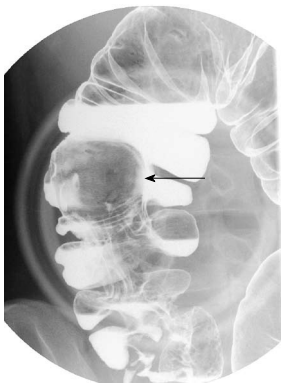


Figure 2 Barium enema. A large submucosal mass (arrow) in the ascending colon originating near the ileocecal valve.

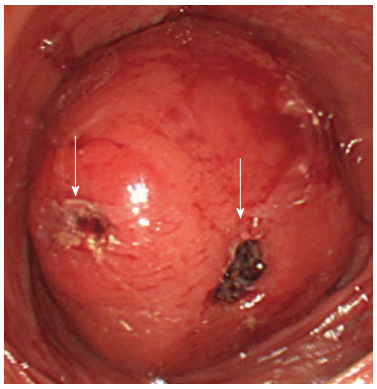


Figure 3 Colonoscopy. A large submucosal mass in the ascending colon. Arrows indicate mucosal defects on the surface of the mass.

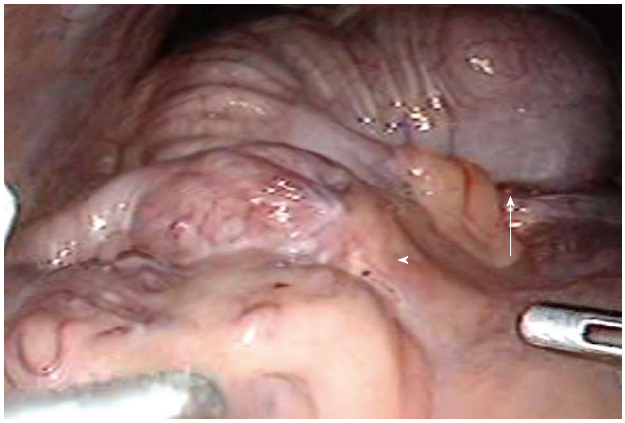


Figure 4 Intraoperative laparoscopic view. A round mass in the hepatic flexure of the colon (arrow) causing an invagination of the ileocecal region into the ascending colon (arrowhead).

dilatation that protruded into the intestinal lumen over the years; therefore, this case should be classified as a double-barreled tubular structure type. Similar cases have been reported in which the end of a Y-shaped tubular colonic duplication had become a large cystic mass containing stool[8,9].

Signs and symptoms of the duplications are nonspecific and depend on their location; oral and esophageal lesions may cause dysphagia and respiratory difficulties, and other intra-abdominal types may cause an abdominal mass, pain, constipation, intestinal obstruction, volvulus, intussusception, hemorrhage or perforation[2,6,7,10]. Hemorrhage often occurs from the ectopic ulcerating gastric mucosa in the duplication. Ectopic gastric mucosa was observed frequently in the duplications irrespective of their locations in the gastrointestinal tract (20%-50%) and was particularly common in esophageal duplications[2,3,6]. The occurrence of carcinoma in a duplicated cyst has also been reported, and 67% of malignancies occurred in colonic duplication, although colonic duplications are relatively rare[11].

Although no other abnormalities were found in the present case, 80% of patients with tubular colonic duplication have been reported to have associated anomalies; urogenital duplications are the most notable, and skeletal abnormalities, including malformations or duplications of the spine and sacrum, are also often observed[10,12]. The etiology of intestinal duplications and the associated anomalies is poorly understood, although several theories have been proposed[10].

The treatment of choice for duplications is surgical excision. Although the treatment strategy for asymptomatic cases is not clearly established, surgical excision is generally recommended to prevent the complications described above and the occurrence of malignancies. However, complete excision may not be possible for a long tubular duplication. In such a case, selective mucosal excision with preservation of the seromuscular layer[6,10,13] or distal internal drainage by excision of the common wall may be effective alternatives[2,3,10]. Although some recent studies have recommended the use of laparoscopy for the diagnosis and surgical treatment of gastrointestinal duplications, few have reported its use in surgery for duplications[2,14]. We believe that laparoscopic surgery, if possible, is a preferred approach because of its

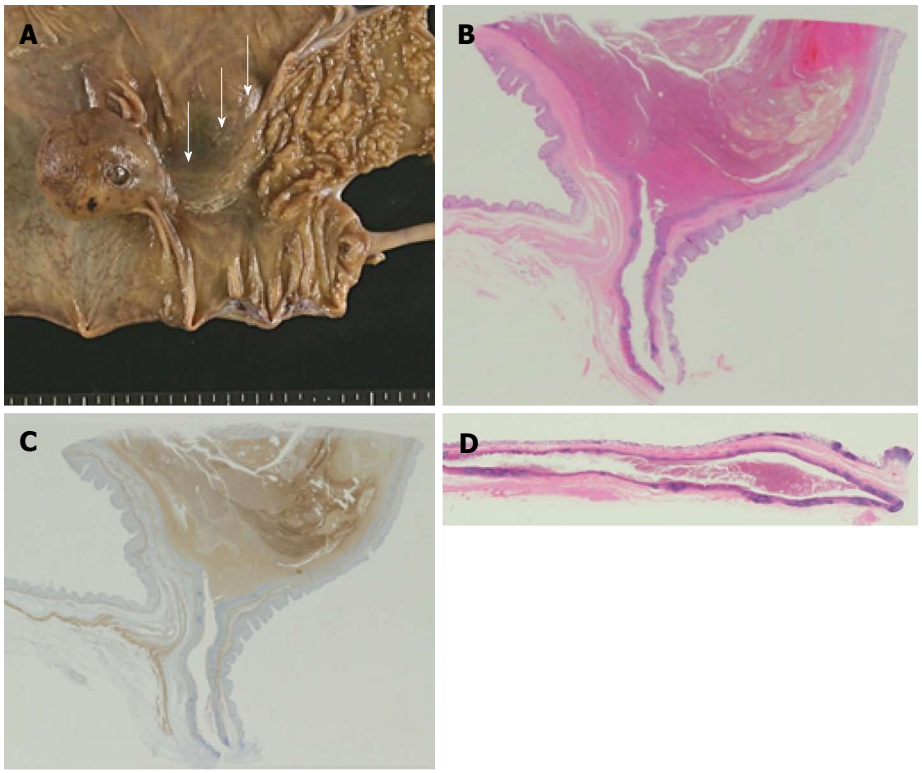


Figure 5 Pathological analysis. A: A macroscopic view of the resected specimen. A round mass 4 cm in diameter is observed in the ascending colon. A submucosal tubular bulge measuring 5 cm in length extends from the round mass to the ileocecal valve (arrows); B and C: Magnified sectional views of the cystic lesion (loupe images; B: hematoxylin and eosin; C: desmin). The cystic lesion is lined by normal colonic mucosa and possesses its own muscular layer; D: A magnified sectional view of the tubular bulge (loupe image; hematoxylin and eosin). A blind-end tubular structure extends from the cystic lesion toward the proximal side to the ileocecal valve. This structure is lined by normal colonic mucosa and shares the muscular layer with the native ascending colon.

minimal invasiveness.

In conclusion, although gastrointestinal duplications, particularly adult cases are rare, they should be considered in the differential diagnosis of all abdominal and submucosal cystic lesions, and laparoscopy should be a preferred approach for the surgical treatment of gastrointestinal duplications. The differential diagnosis of other gastrointestinal cystic lesions can include heterotopic pancreas, lymphangiomas, cystic degeneration of solid tumors such as gastrointestinal stromal tumors and schwannomas, Brunner's gland hyperplasia and gastritis cystica profunda[15-17]. The majority of duplications reported in the literature were unsuspected before surgery, and the diagnoses were established during or after the surgery. It is difficult to make a correct diagnosis without knowledge of the disease, and practitioners should be familiar with the characteristics of this disease.

COMMENTS

Case characteristics

A 20-year-old male was referred to our hospital because of a one-year history of intermittent right flank pain and a large submucosal mass in the ascending colon which had been observed by colonoscopy at a clinic.

Clinical diagnosis

Intermittent right flank pain.

Differential diagnosis

A submucosal tumor of the ascending colon.

Laboratory diagnosis

All labs were within normal limits.

Imaging diagnosis

CT showed intussusception of the right colon with a cystic mass 4 cm in diameter.

Pathological diagnosis

Ascending colon duplication.

Treatment

Laparoscopic right colectomy.

Related reports

Gastrointestinal duplications are uncommon congenital malformations, and those encountered in adults are rare. There are only a few reports on laparoscopic surgery for this condition.

Term explanation

Gastrointestinal duplications are uncommon congenital malformations that possess 3 defined features: (1) well-formed smooth muscle layers; (2) an epithelial lining consisting of some portion of the alimentary tract; and (3) contiguity with a portion of the alimentary tract.

Experiences and lessons

Although gastrointestinal duplications, particularly adult cases are rare, they should be included in the differential diagnosis of all abdominal and submucosal cystic lesions.

Peer-review

This article presents a rare case of adult colon duplication that was treated by laparoscopic resection.

REFERENCES

1 **Schalamon J**, Schleef J, Höllwarth ME. Experience with gastrointestinal duplications in childhood. *Langenbecks Arch Surg* 2000; **385**: 402-405 [PMID: 11127525 DOI: 10.1007/s004230000170]

2 **Puligandla PS**, Nguyen LT, St-Vil D, Flageole H, Bensoussan AL, Nguyen VH, Laberge JM. Gastrointestinal duplications. *J Pediatr Surg* 2003; **38**: 740-744 [PMID: 12720184 DOI: 10.1016/jpsu.2003.50197]

3 **Holcomb GW**, Gheissari A, O'Neill JA, Shorter NA, Bishop HC. Surgical management of alimentary tract duplications. *Ann Surg* 1989; **209**: 167-174 [PMID: 2916861 DOI: 10.1097/00000658-198902000-00006]

4 **Ladd WE**. Duplications of the alimentary tract. *South Med J* 1937; **30**: 363-371 [DOI: 10.1097/00007611-193704000-00002]

5 **Smith JR**. Accessory enteric formations: a classification and nomenclature. *Arch Dis Child* 1960; **35**: 87-89 [PMID: 13832044 DOI: 10.1136/adc.35.179.87]

6 **Iyer CP**, Mahour GH. Duplications of the alimentary tract in infants and children. *J Pediatr Surg* 1995; **30**: 1267-1270 [PMID: 8523222 DOI: 10.1016/0022-3468(95)90482-4]

7 **Gross RE**, Holcomb GW, Farber S. Duplications of the alimentary tract. *Pediatrics* 1952; **9**: 448-468 [PMID: 14920118]

8 **Chaiyasate K**, Bruch S. Colonic duplication associated with anterior spinal bar and left-sided inferior vena cava. *Surgery* 2007; **141**: 823-825 [PMID: 17560260 DOI: 10.1016/j.surg.2006.06.024]

9 **Ohno T**, Shiogama T, Mochizuki S, Mizutani A, Tsurunaga Y, Fukui H, Aso N. Huge cystic communicating duplication of the right colon with perforated appendicitis. *Surgery* 2005; **137**: 477-479 [PMID: 15800498 DOI: 10.1016/j.surg.2003.11.007]

10 **Stern LE**, Warner BW. Gastrointestinal duplications. *Semin Pediatr Surg* 2000; **9**: 135-140 [PMID: 10949423 DOI: 10.1053/spsu.2000.7565]

11 **Inoue Y**, Nakamura H. Adenocarcinoma arising in colonic duplication cysts with calcification: CT findings of two cases. *Abdom Imaging* 1998; **23**: 135-137 [PMID: 9516499 DOI: 10.1007/s002619900305]

12 **Yousefzadeh DK**, Bickers GH, Jackson JH, Benton C. Tubular colonic duplication--review of 1876-1981 literature. *Pediatr Radiol* 1983; **13**: 65-71 [PMID: 6856378 DOI: 10.1007/BF02390103]

13 **Ildstad ST**, Tollerud DJ, Weiss RG, Ryan DP, McGowan MA, Martin LW. Duplications of the alimentary tract. Clinical characteristics, preferred treatment, and associated malformations. *Ann Surg* 1988; **208**: 184-189 [PMID: 3401062 DOI: 10.1097/00000658-198808000-00009]

14 **Kiu V**, Liang JT. Laparoscopic resection of Y-shaped tubular duplication of the sigmoid colon: report of a case. *Dis Colon Rectum* 2010; **53**: 949-952 [PMID: 20485011 DOI: 10.1007/DCR.0b013e3181d96e5d]

15 **Lee J**, Park CM, Kim KA, Lee CH, Choi JW, Shin BK, Lee SJ, Choi D, Jang KT. Cystic lesions of the gastrointestinal tract: multimodality imaging with pathologic correlations. *Korean J Radiol* 2010; **11**: 457-468 [PMID: 20592930 DOI: 10.3348/kjr.2010.11.4.457]

16 **Deesomsak M**, Aswakul P, Junyangdikul P, Prachayakul V. Rare adult gastric duplication cyst mimicking a gastrointestinal stromal tumor. *World J Gastroenterol* 2013; **19**: 8445-8448 [PMID: 24363539 DOI: 10.3748/wjg.v19.i45.8445]

17 **Ikematsu Y**, Nishiwaki Y, Kida H, Iwaoka Y, Nagashima S, Ozawa T, Hasegawa S, Okawada T, Waki S. Gastric outlet obstruction caused by a heterotopic pancreas in a pregnant woman: report of a case. *Surg Today* 2003; **33**: 952-955 [PMID: 14669092 DOI: 10.1007/s00595-003-2614-3]

P- Reviewer: Kir G, Leao P, Leao P **S- Editor**: Yu J **L- Editor**: A
E- Editor: Zhang DN

Published by **Baishideng Publishing Group Inc**
8226 Regency Drive, Pleasanton, CA 94588, USA
Telephone: +1-925-223-8242
Fax: +1-925-223-8243
E-mail: bpgoffice@wjgnet.com
Help Desk: http://www.wjgnet.com/esps/helpdesk.aspx
http://www.wjgnet.com

ISSN 1007-9327